E/CONF. 69/4

THIRD UNITED NATIONS CONFERENCE ON THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Vol. II. Technical papers
Athens, 17 August–7 September 1977

TROISIÈME CONFÉRENCE DES NATIONS UNIES SUR LA NORMALISATION DES NOMS GÉOGRAPHIQUES

Vol. II. Documents techniques
Athènes, 17 août–7 septembre 1977

TERCERA CONFERENCIA DE LAS NACIONES UNIDAS PARA NORMALIZAR LOS NOMBRES GEOGRAFICOS

Vol. II. Documentos técnicos
Atenas, 17 de agosto–7 de septiembre de 1977

UNITED NATIONS/NATIONS UNIES/NACIONES UNIDAS

Department of Technical Co-operation for Development – Département de la coopération technique pour le développement – Departamento de Cooperación Técnica para el Desarrollo

THIRD UNITED NATIONS CONFERENCE ON THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Vol. II. Technical papers
Athens, 17 August–7 September 1977

TROISIÈME CONFÉRENCE DES NATIONS UNIES SUR LA NORMALISATION DES NOMS GÉOGRAPHIQUES

Vol. II. Documents techniques
Athènes, 17 août – 7 septembre 1977

TERCERA CONFERENCIA DE LAS NACIONES UNIDAS PARA NORMALIZAR LOS NOMBRES GEOGRAFICOS

Vol. II. Documentos técnicos
Atenas, 17 de agosto–7 de septiembre de 1977

UNITED NATIONS/NATIONS UNIES/NACIONES UNIDAS
NEW YORK/NUEVA YORK, 1981

NOTE

Symbols of United Nations documents are composed of capital letters combined with figures. Mention of such a symbol indicates a reference to a United Nations document.

NOTE

Les cotes des documents de l'Organisation des Nations Unies se composent de lettres majuscules et de chiffres. La simple mention d'une cote dans un texte signifie qu'il s'agit d'un document de l'Organisation.

NOTA

Las signaturas de los documentos de las Naciones Unidas se componen de letras mayúsculas y cifras. La mención de una de tales signaturas indica que se hace referencia a un documento de las Naciones Unidas.

E/CONF.69/4

UNITED NATIONS PUBLICATION

Sales No. E./F./S.81.I.7

Price: $U.S. 29.00

PREFACE

The official records of the Third United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held at Athens from 17 August to 7 September 1977, are issued in two volumes: volume I, *Report of the Conference*,[1] and the present publication, which contains the texts of the technical background papers submitted to the Conference by the participating Governments.

These technical papers are grouped according to the agenda item to which they relate.[2] They are reproduced in the language in which they were received (English, French or Spanish) and each is preceded, whenever possible, by a summary in the two other languages. They have been edited in accordance with United Nations practice and requirements.

The designations employed and the presentation of the material in this publication do not imply the expression of any opinion whatsoever on the part of the Secretariat of the United Nations concerning the legal status of any country, territory, city or area or of its authorities, or concerning the delimitation of its frontiers or boundaries.

---

[1] *Third United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.79.I.4).

[2] The agenda is reproduced in the annex.

PREFACE

Les documents officiels de la troisième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, qui s'est tenue à Athènes du 17 août au 7 septembre 1977, sont publiés en deux volumes: le volume I, *Rapport de la Conférence*[1], et le présent volume, qui contient les documents techniques d'information présentés à la Conférence par les gouvernements participants.

Ces documents techniques sont groupés par points de l'ordre du jour de la Conférence[2]. Ils sont reproduits dans la langue dans laquelle ils ont été présentés (anglais, espagnol ou français) et chacun est précédé, dans la mesure du possible, d'un résumé dans les deux autres langues. Ils ont été édités conformément aux pratiques et exigences de l'Organisation des Nations Unies.

Les appellations employées dans cette publication ainsi que la présentation des données n'impliquent de la part du Secrétariat de l'Organisation des Nations Unies aucune prise de position quant au statut juridique des pays, territoires, villes ou zones, ou de leurs autorités, ni quant au tracé de leurs frontières ou limites.

---

[1] *Troisième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.79.I.4.).

[2] L'ordre du jour est reproduit à l'annexe.

PREFACIO

Los documentos oficiales de la Tercera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, celebrada en Atenas del 17 de agosto al 7 de septiembre de 1977, se publican en dos volúmenes: el volumen I, *Informe de la Conferencia* [1], y la presente publicación, en que figuran los textos de los documentos técnicos presentados a la Conferencia por los gobiernos participantes.

Estos documentos técnicos se han agrupado según el tema del programa a que se refieren[2]. Se reproducen en el idioma en que se recibieron (inglés, francés o español) y cada uno de ellos va precedido, cuando ha sido posible, por un resumen en los otros idiomas. Se han editado con arreglo a las prácticas y requisitos de las Naciones Unidas.

Las denominaciones empleadas en esta publicación y la forma en que aparecen presentados los datos que contiene no implican, de parte de la Secretaría de las Naciones Unidas, juicio alguno sobre la condición jurídica de países, territorios, ciudades o zonas, o de sus autoridades, ni respecto de la delimitación de sus fronteras o límites.

---

[1] *Tercera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos*, vol. I, *Informe de la Conferencia* (publicación de las Naciones Unidas, No. de venta: S.79.I.4).

[2] El programa se reproduce en el anexo.

CONTENTS – TABLE DES MATIÈRES – INDICE

Page

[a] [b] No papers were submitted.
[c] Aucune communication n'a été présentée qui traite de ce point de l'ordre du jour.
No se presentaron los informes.

AGENDA ITEM 7 – POINT 7 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR – TEMA 7 DEL PROGRAMA

INFORME DE LA DIVISION DE AMERICA LATINA*

Summary

As may be inferred from the title, this report is a summary, undertaken by the expert for the Latin America Division, of the Division's main activities, the existing situation and the progress made in the standardization of geographical names in Latin America since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names.

The report notes that not all countries in the region are included in the Latin America Division and sets forth some considerations relating to the problem of geographical names and their categories.

Information is provided on two meetings scheduled for 1978: the first Conference of the Latin America Division, for which the Republic of Suriname has offered to act as host, and the Fifth Regional Meeting for Central America, for which the Government of El Salvador has offered to act as host.

Résumé

Comme l'indique le titre, le présent rapport donne un résumé des principaux travaux de l'expert de la Division de l'Amérique latine sur la situation actuelle en ce qui concerne la normalisation des noms géographiques en Amérique latine et sur les progrès réalisés en la matière depuis la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques.

Il est expliqué pourquoi tous les pays de l'Amérique latine ne sont pas représentés dans la Division du même nom, et quelques considérations sont présentées sur le problème des noms géographiques et leurs catégories.

L'auteur donne par ailleurs des indications sur deux réunions prévues pour 1978: la première Conférence de la Division de l'Amérique latine, que la République du Suriname a offert d'accueillir, et la cinquième Réunion sur la normalisation des noms géographiques pour la région d'Amérique centrale que le Gouvernement salvadorien a proposé d'accueillir.

*

* *

Se presenta un resumen sobre la situación existente desde la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, verificada en Londres en mayo de 1972, a la fecha.

En el momento en que se escribe este informe, no se ha obtenido respuesta de muchos de los países, por lo cual estos datos serán presentados con posterioridad.

Desea hacerse hincapié en el hecho que de parte de un organismo especializado de una institución en el continente americano, de manera unilateral y no obstante ser ello materia exclusiva de las Naciones Unidas, se tomó en forma unilateral varias atribuciones ajenas que no le correspondían, con lo cual es indudable que trató de justificar su funcionamiento y, a la vez, quizá influenciar a varias personas en algunos de los países de la región. Por ahora, el Experto que tiene a su cargo la División de América Latina no desea entrar en pormenores, en beneficio de la unidad continental, pero al lamentar lo sucedido, se reserva una posible acción para dejar aclarado en el futuro lo relacionado con la intromisión.

Reuniones regionales

Conforme a la resolución 7 de la Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Uniformar los Nombres Geográficos, celebrada en Ginebra (septiembre de 1967)[1], el Experto de la División promovió y logró que se realizasen hasta ahora cinco reuniones regionales: cuatro en América Central y una en América del Sur. De conformidad con la situación existente en los países de América Latina, las reuniones promovidas por el Experto, son convocadas por el respectivo país sede, quien emite asimismo lo referente a cada reunión por conducto de su Cancillería. Ello tiene también entre sus ventajas, que al invitar a un país a concurrir, él mismo ha enviado a sus técnicos, quienes actúan así en lo oficial.

A la fecha, se han ofrecido dos países sede para otra reunión en ámbito de América Central y una de toda la División, las que están programadas, aún sin fechas exactas, para el año de 1978. También se podrá informar en breve de otra reunión sudamericana, ya que la que debía haberse verificado no lo pudo ser por motivos ajenos a la mejor buena voluntad y que surgieron de imprevisto.

Tercera Reunión Regional de América Central sobre Normalización de Nombres Geográficos

Se verificó en San José, Costa Rica, del 25 al 29 de marzo de 1974, con seis delegaciones oficiales y seis de

* El texto original de este informe, preparado por el Profesor Francis Gall, Experto de la División de América Latina del Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos, ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF.69/L.5.

[1] *Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Uniformar los Nombres Geográficos*, vol. I, *Informe de la Conferencia* (publicación de las Naciones Unidas, No. de venta: S.68.I.9), cap. III.

observadores. Asistieron en total 31 personas de 10 países, así como dos delegaciones institucionales. Se entrega en esta ocasión una copia del informe de la Reunión, remitida por el Ministerio de Relaciones Exteriores de Costa Rica. Entre las principales resoluciones, que fueron 30, pueden mencionarse:

Número	*Título*
2	Mesoamérica
3	Iberoamérica
4	Términos comunes usados en América Central
6	Términos geográficos específicos de Costa Rica
7	Normalización nacional
8	Grupo de Trabajo sobre Definiciones de las Naciones Unidas
10	Glosario de varios términos geográficos
11	Cursos de entrenamiento en toponimia
14	Concurrencia al sexto período de sesiones del Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos
15	Asistencia a la Tercera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos
20	Cincuentenario del Consejo Superior Geográfico de Madrid

Además de la requerida asesoría y ayuda, el Experto presentó 14 documentos de trabajo, los que se repartieron. Uno de ellos, con las resoluciones aprobadas por la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas en Londres, mayo de 1972[2].

Cuarta Reunión Regional de América Central sobre Normalización de Nombres Geográficos

Convocada por conducto del Ministerio de Relaciones Exteriores de Honduras, se realizó en Tegucigalpa del 17 al 21 de mayo de 1976. Se hicieron presentes cinco delegaciones oficiales y cinco observadores. Concurrieron en total 34 personas de 8 países y dos delegaciones internacionales. Se entrega una copia del Acta Final (informe de la reunión). De las 25 resoluciones, las consideradas como principales fueron:

Número	*Título*
7	Repetición de topónimos de lugares poblados
8	Diccionarios geográficos
9	Publicación de guías de alfabetos de idiomas minoritarios oficializados
11	Término antropológico Mesoamérica
12	Nombres normalizados en documentos cartográficos
13	Necesidad de divulgar lo relativo a nombres geográficos
14	Cursos de toponimia
15	Reducción de exónimos (nombres convencionales, nombres tradicionales)
17	Lineamientos para la elaboración de un manual de reducción de exónimos
20	Asistencia a la Tercera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos
21	Términos geográficos de litorales e islas

Además de la asesoría y ayuda, el Experto presentó 17 trabajos que se dieron a conocer como documentos de trabajo.

Primera Conferencia Regional Sudamericana sobre Normalización de Nombres Geográficos

A sugerencia de la Fundación Instituto Brasileño de Geografía y Estadística, el Ministerio de Relaciones Exteriores de Brasil giró las invitaciones para la Conferencia, que se realizó en Brasilia del 17 al 22 de septiembre de 1973, según el informe impreso que ahora se entrega. Participaron 31 personas de 11 países. Se emitieron 16 resoluciones, entre las que están:

Número	*Título*
1	Recomendaciones de las Primera y Segunda Conferencias de las Naciones Unidas sobre Normalización de Nombres Geográficos
2	Sistemas de grafías
3	Glosario de Terminología Toponímica
4	Lista básica de nombres geográficos
5	Términos grafía, transcripción y transliteración
6	Normalización de nombres geográficos de la carta al millonésimo
7	Autoridades nacionales en nombres geográficos
8	Normas a incluirse entre las disposiciones de las autoridades nacionales en nombres geográficos de América del Sur
9	Publicación de alfabetos oficializados de los idiomas minoritarios
10	Necesidad de cursos de entrenamiento sobre toponimia
11	Asistencia al sexto período de sesiones del Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos
12	Asistencia a la Tercera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos

ASESORÍA TÉCNICA

Además de la asesoría y ayuda, a efecto de que las reuniones dentro de la División a cargo del Experto

[2] *Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos*, vol. I, *Informe de la Conferencia* (publicación de las Naciones Unidas, No. de venta: S.74.I.2), cap. III.

resulten lo mejor posible y que va desde sugerir los temas de las agendas provisionales, formular documentos de trabajo, etc., siempre y a solicitud, he arribado con varios días de antelación a las reuniones regionales. Entre la asesoría específica requerida y dada, puede mencionarse lo siguiente.

Nicaragua

Managua, del 12 al 17 de febrero de 1974, ayudando en la elaboración de las disposiciones legales para oficializar la normalización de los nombres geográficos.

Curso de capacitación sobre los nombres geográficos al personal del Instituto Geográfico Nacional.

Suriname

A solicitud del Ministerio de Reconstrucción, el Experto estuvo en el país del 9 al 22 de septiembre de 1974. El programa fue elaborado por la respectiva institución cartográfica oficial, *Centraal Bureau Luchtkaartering*, cuyo titular también es Presidente de la Comisión Cartográfica de Suriname.

Se participó de manera activa en un seminario que se desarrolló en su primera fase en Oons Derf, luego cerca del aeropuerto internacional de Zanderij y por último en la isla de Dritabiki, para una demostración *in situ* sobre la obtención y tratamiento en el campo de lo relacionado con los nombres geográficos. También se asesoró en la formulación de dos proyectos de acuerdo y reglamento general sobre el establecimiento, fines y principales aspectos de un Consejo de Nombres Geográficos (*Raad voor Geografische Namen*).

Conforme a noticias recientes, en abril del presente año se realizó en Paramaribo un Segundo Seminario sobre la Normalización de Nombres Geográficos, el que abarcó de manera principal los siguientes aspectos:

a) Escritura correcta del nombre del país, o sea Suriname, y no Surinam, para evitar en lo posible exónimos;

b) La grafía exacta en los mapas del país, de los nombres geográficos en el idioma vernáculo sranantongo, al tenor de la disposición legal No. 8072 del 17 de agosto de 1960;

c) Aprobación de los nombres geográficos dados a las entidades en el oeste de ese país.

QUINTA REUNIÓN REGIONAL DE AMÉRICA CENTRAL

Conforme a la resolución 18 de la Cuarta Reunión Regional verificada en Tegucigalpa en mayo de 1976, el Gobierno de El Salvador ofreció ser país sede para la Quinta Reunión Regional de América Central para la Normalización de los Nombres Geográficos. Este evento se ha fijado para el segundo semestre de 1978.

PRIMERA CONFERENCIA DIVISIONAL

Debido a que Guatemala, país sede del Experto para América Latina, por motivos que no viene al caso mencionar aquí no podía ser la sede de la Primera Conferencia de América Latina sobre Normalización de Nombres Geográficos, el Gobierno de la República de Suriname ofreció en Tegucigalpa la sede para la citada Conferencia, según la resolución 19 de la antes mencionada Cuarta Reunión Regional. Lo anterior fue comunicado de manera oficial al Experto de la División el 4 de abril. En la actualidad se está tratando todo lo relacionado con la Conferencia, tanto en lo técnico como en lo administrativo.

GLOSARIO DE TERMINOLOGÍA TÉCNICA

Como miembro del respectivo Grupo de Trabajo, el Experto ha trabajado conjuntamente con el doctor Rafael Lapesa Melgar (España) en la versión en español del Glosario de la terminología usada en la normalización de nombres geográficos.

LISTA DE NOMBRES DE LOS PAÍSES DEL MUNDO

Como miembro del Grupo de Trabajo que tiene a su cargo la elaboración de la lista de nombres de los países del mundo y que está a cargo del ingeniero François Nédélec (Francia), el Experto ha colaborado no sólo en lo que atañe a la División a su cargo de América Latina, sino también en lo referente a la parte en español de la mencionada lista, que se relaciona con otros países del mundo.

MÉXICO

Sabido es que en los Estados Unidos Mexicanos, los nombres geográficos en mapas a diferentes escalas, los tiene a su cargo la Comisión de Estudios del Territorio Nacional (CETENAL). Como ejemplo de lo que realiza CETENAL, inclusive con elaboración automática de datos al igual que varios países de América Latina, está lo llevado a cabo en el Estado de Aguascalientes como nomenclátor general, que se acompaña, y que fue presentado ante la IV Reunión Regional en Tegucigalpa.

GUATEMALA

La síntesis de lo que se realizó en este país, está contenido en el informe del Gobierno, preparado por separado. En ocasión de la IV Reunión Regional (Tegucigalpa, mayo de 1976), se entregaron unas contadas copias de 16 páginas impresas del primer tomo del *Diccionario*. Se hace entrega ahora de otra copia de esa rareza bibliográfica.

EL SALVADOR

Al igual que en la mayoría de los países de América Latina, todo lo referente a los nombres geográficos lo realiza la institución geográfica, que en el presente caso es el Instituto Geográfico Nacional Ingeniero Pablo Arnoldo Guzmán. Dicho Instituto ha publicado en 4 tomos que hoy se entregan, el *Diccionario Geográfico de El Salvador*, con 24.800 acepciones. Contiene también información de los aspectos físico, económico, cultural y

político-administrativo del país. Asimismo, el Instituto trabaja en la tercera edición del *Atlas de El Salvador* que contendrá temas referentes a los recursos naturales y humanos, el que satisfará a la vez los requerimientos de los programas educativos. Está preparado para su publicación un *Listado de términos geográficos utilizados en El Salvador* con los usados popularmente para establecer su significado al emplearse en la toponimia geográfica. Si bien no se ha integrado en forma oficial la Autoridad de Nombres Geográficos, la normalización de los mismos es un hecho, especialmente en los de ascendencia indígena. Por razones presupuestarias, no pudo concurrir al sexto período de sesiones de nuestro Grupo de Expertos (marzo de 1975), ni a esta Tercera Conferencia.

Honduras

Está pendiente el decreto para crear en lo oficial la Comisión Nacional de Nombres Geográficos de Honduras, aunque de hecho sí funciona en lo que se refiere a la normalización de nombres geográficos de parte del Instituto Geográfico Nacional. Se presenta por separado un proyecto de creación de la mencionada Comisión; el primer volumen (edición provisional) del *Indice del Departamento de Atlántida*, así como el primer tomo de dicho Departamento correspondiente al *Diccionario Geográficc de Honduras* con 1.005 topónimos y un glosario de 30 definiciones geográficas más usuales en el trabajo.

El Instituto tiene también preparado el índice y monografías del Departamento de Cortés, estando bajo investigación los municipios, ciudades y otros accidentes destacados para su publicación, de 1.608 topónimos. Asimismo, en el Instituto se ha compilado y clasificado la información toponímica del Departamento de Copán. Está en proyecto la publicación de un *Atlas Escolar*, con los nombres geográficos normalizados.

Nicaragua

El Instituto Geográfico Nacional tiene a su cargo todo lo referente a la publicación de los mapas oficiales del país. En consecuencia, está bajo estudio la creación de su respectiva autoridad nacional, aunque de hecho los nombres geográficos son normalizados previamente. Se está planificando el trabajo para realizar un *Diccionario Geográfico*, el que se publicará. También realiza el Instituto importantes estudios de toda índole sobre los nombres geográficos en ámbito nacional:

Costa Rica

Cuenta con su Comisión Nacional de División Territorial Administrativa, creada por la Ley No. 2535 del 3 de agosto de 1965 y el decreto 2411-C del 19 de junio de 1972, que la reglamentó. Todo lo referente a los nombres geográficos es incumbencia del Instituto Geográfico Nacional. Ha publicado diversas obras relacionadas con los nombres geográficos del país y sus categorías. Está actualizando el Registro Nacional de Nomenclatura. En la Escuela de Historia y Geografía de la Universidad se imparte la cátedra de Geografía y se están organizando cursos de Toponimia. Se ha iniciado el trabajo para el *Diccionario Geográfico de Costa Rica.*

Panamá

Se han publicado dos tomos del *Diccionario Geográfico de Panamá*; el primero abarca hasta la letra "CH" y el segundo a la letra "M", cuyas copias se entregan ahora. Está en impresión el tercer tomo hasta la letra "Z". La obra ha sido impresa en la Editorial Universitaria de Panamá; los trabajos respectivos están a cargo de su Departamento de Geografía. Se ha publicado asimismo la obra, que se entrega ahora, sobre los nombres geográficos de la Provincia Bocas del Toro; están en proceso los volúmenes referentes a las Provincias del Darién, Herrera, Colón, Panamá, Chiriquí, Veraguas, Los Santos y la Comarca de San Blas.

Si bien mediante Decreto Ejecutivo desde 1970 se cuenta con una autoridad de nombres geográficos, su funcionamiento y objetivos está en proceso de estudio para poder llevar a cabo su reestructuración de manera más efectiva.

Varios

De manera adicional, el Experto Jefe de la División de América Latina desea mencionar que los diccionarios geográficos han sido publicados como resultado de sus gestiones directas. Empero, se cree del caso mencionar aquí, que en su oportunidad indicó que, de ser posible, las coordenadas geográficas se presentasen de manera uniforme, al más cercano segundo geográfico. Además, aunque es privilegio de cada país hacer la compilación en la forma que estime más conveniente en lo nacional, la opinión del Experto es en el sentido de que fuera de un dado país no se sabe a ciencia cierta a cuál Departamento dentro de la división geográfico-administrativa del Estado corresponde un dado nombre geográfico, por lo que para una localización más rápida de un accidente geográfico, se estima que sería mejor hacer la publicación por riguroso orden alfabético general.

Cae dentro de lo posible, que algunos de los países de la División de América Latina concurrirán a la Tercera Conferencia por medio de sus representantes. En estos casos, ellos darán los informes detallados en ámbito nacional.

Cualquier información adicional que se desee con relación a este informe, será proporcionada con todo agrado por el Experto para América Latina.

REPORT OF THE EAST-CENTRAL AND SOUTH-EAST EUROPE DIVISION*

Résumé

Au cours de la période qui s'est écoulée entre la deuxième et la troisième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, la Division a tenu, de concert avec la Division de l'Union des Républiques socialistes soviétiques, deux réunions à Budapest, la première en juin 1975 et la deuxième en juin 1977.

Des représentants de la Bulgarie, de la Hongrie, de la Pologne, de la République démocratique allemande, de la Tchécoslovaquie et de l'Union des Républiques socialistes soviétiques ont assisté à la réunion tenue en 1975. Ils ont examiné divers points de l'ordre du jour de la sixième session du Groupe d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques, concernant en particulier les nomenclatures, la romanisation et les exonymes.

Les représentants des mêmes pays qu'en 1975 ont assisté à la réunion de 1977, et la Roumanie était représentée en qualité d'observateur. Ils ont étudié les points de l'ordre du jour de la troisième Conférence.

La réunion de la Division, tenue en juin 1977, a décidé que pour la prochaine période quinquennale (1978–1982) la Pologne sera chargée de diriger les activités de la Division, y compris la représentation de la Division au Groupe d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques.

Resumen

Dos reuniones de la División tuvieron lugar en el período comprendido entre la Segunda y la Tercera Conferencias de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos. Ambas se celebraron en Budapest, la primera en enero de 1975 y la segunda en junio de 1977, en conjunción con la División de la Unión de Repúblicas Socialistas Soviéticas.

A la reunión de 1975 asistieron delegados de Bulgaria, Checoslovaquia, Hungría, Polonia, la República Democrática Alemana y la Unión de Repúblicas Socialistas Soviéticas. Se sometieron a debate temas acerca del programa del sexto período de sesiones del Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas sobre Nombres Geográficos, incluyendo cuestiones tales como los nomenclátores, la romanización y los exónimos.

A la reunión de 1977 asistieron delegados de los mismos países que en 1975, y Rumania en calidad de observador. En ella se sometieron a debate temas acerca del programa de la Tercera Conferencia.

En la reunión de la División celebrada en junio de 1977 se decidió que en el próximo quinquenio (1977–1982) Polonia se encargaría de dirigir la actividad de la División, incluida la representación de la División en el Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos.

*

* *

Two divisional meetings have taken place in the period between the Second and Third United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names. Both were held at Budapest, the first in January 1975 and the second in June 1977, in conjunction with the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics Division.

The 1975 meeting was attended by delegates from Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, the German Democratic Republic, Hungary, Poland and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics. Items on the agenda of the sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names (UNGEGN) were discussed, including such questions as gazetteers, romanization and exonyms.

The 1977 meeting was attended by delegates from the same countries as in 1975 and by Romania as observer. It discussed items on the agenda of the Third Conference.

The divisional meeting held in June 1977 has decided that for the next five-year period (1977–1982) Poland will be in charge of leading the activity of the East-Central and South-East Europe Division, including the representation of the division in the UNGEGN.

* The original text of this paper appeared as documents E/CONF.69/L.25 and Add. 1 and Corr. 1.

REPORT OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA–CANADA DIVISION*

Résumé

La Division Etats-Unis d'Amérique-Canada n'a tenu aucune réunion officielle pendant la période 1972–1977, mais les représentants des deux pays ont continué à correspondre et à se rencontrer officieusement afin d'examiner les questions d'intérêt mutuel et de résoudre les problèmes intéressant les deux pays.

Bien que les deux pays soient séparés par la plus longue frontière internationale du monde, et bien que cette frontière soit traversée par d'innombrables cours d'eau, chaînes de montagnes et lacs, les Etats-Unis d'Amérique et le Canada n'ont pas beaucoup de problèmes importants concernant des différences de nomenclature. Seules quelques questions toponymiques ont été portées à l'attention du Comité permanent canadien des noms géographiques (CPCNG) et du United States Board on

* The original text of this document, prepared by Richard R. Randall, Executive Secretary, United States Board on Geographic Names, and Alan Rayburn, Executive Secretary, Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.32.

Geographic Names (BGN) au cours de la période 1972–1977, et toutes ont été résolues de manière satisfaisante. Au fur et à mesure que l'établissement des cartes des deux pays se poursuit à des échelles plus grandes, on prévoit qu'un nombre croissant de problèmes seront soumis aux autorités toponymiques et seront également résolus à l'amiable et immédiatement.

Le Secrétaire exécutif du United States Domestic Names Board, M. Donald Orth, a participé à la réunion annuelle du CPCNG tenue à Ottawa en octobre 1975. Il a fait plusieurs observations sur les points inscrits à l'ordre du jour du CPCNG.

En octobre 1976, le Secrétaire exécutif du BGN, M. Richard R. Randall, a assisté à la réunion annuelle du CPCNG tenue à Winnipeg (Manitoba). Lors de cette session, qui a permis aux représentants des provinces et des territoires de décrire les activités locales et d'élaborer des programmes en coordination avec le Comité national, M. Randall a mis l'accent sur différents programmes et questions dont s'occupe l'Organisation des Nations Unies et qui intéressent à la fois le Canada et les Etats-Unis. En avril 1977, M. Alan Rayburn, secrétaire exécutif du CPCNG, a assisté à son tour à une réunion trimestrielle du BGN à Washington. Il a également rendu visite à M. Donald Orth et au personnel du Domestic Names Board, qui s'occupe des noms à l'intérieur des Etats-Unis. Plusieurs questions relatives aux noms de détails communs aux deux pays ont été examinées.

A la suite des réunions de Washington, qui ont permis d'éclaircir certains points touchant non seulement les problèmes de nomenclature intéressant le Canada et les Etats-Unis, mais aussi des questions dont s'occupe l'ONU, les deux secrétaires exécutifs ont eu l'occasion d'échanger des vues sur des documents concernant les principes et les méthodes adoptés par l'ONU pour la nomenclature des détails sous-marins.

Il est naturel que les deux pays, qui ont des côtes contiguës d'une longueur totale de 20 800 km, aient des traditions bien établies dans le domaine de l'élaboration de cartes marines, surtout pour les régions adjacentes aux côtes. Le développement récent des recherches pétrolières en mer a mis en évidence la nécessité d'établir des cartes hydrographiques et des cartes des fonds océaniques. On se préoccupe donc d'identifier les détails sous-marins et de leur attribuer des noms. Le rôle important joué par les deux pays dans les programmes d'établissement de cartes de l'Organisation hydrographique internationale a encore renforcé leur intérêt pour les programmes nationaux et internationaux d'attribution de noms aux détails. En 1968, le CPCNG a créé le Comité consultatif pour les détails sous-marins, qui est l'homologue de l'organe du BGN portant le même nom. M. Randall, secrétaire exécutif du BGN, et le Comité consultatif du CPCNG ont consacré un temps considérable à l'examen du programme du Groupe de travail des Nations Unies chargé d'étudier les détails sous-marins et marins, à la suite de quoi un texte concernant les principes et les méthodes a été rédigé et distribué aux membres du Groupe d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques par M. Randall, responsable du Groupe de travail. Ce texte contient les idées émises par les deux pays; il a été approuvé par le BGN et sera soumis pour approbation au CPCNG cette année. Le Canada et les Etats-Unis ont également effectué des études sur les termes et les définitions applicables aux détails sous-marins, qui ont été aussi distribuées aux membres du Groupe de travail. On peut prévoir une extension de la coopération entre les deux pays, à mesure qu'on aura besoin d'informations plus détaillées sur les détails sous-marins.

On espère que, progressivement, les autorités toponymiques du Canada et des Etats-Unis renforceront encore les bonnes relations qu'elles entretiennent et joueront ensemble un rôle important dans l'élaboration de principes, de méthodes et de politiques applicables au traitement des noms géographiques, qui pourront servir de modèle pour d'autres pays.

Resumen

La División Estados Unidos de América-Canadá no ha celebrado ninguna reunión oficial durante el período 1972–1977, pero los representantes de ambos países han seguido manteniendo correspondencia y reuniéndose oficiosamente a fin de examinar las cuestiones de interés recíproco y de resolver los problemas que interesan a ambos países.

Pese a que ambos países están separados por la frontera internacional más larga del mundo, y pese a que hay innumerables ríos, cadenas de montañas y lagos que atraviesan esa frontera, los Estados Unidos de América y el Canadá no tienen problemas importantes con respecto a las diferencias de nomenclatura. En el período 1972–1977, sólo se han señalado unas pocas cuestiones toponímicas a la atención del Comité permanent canadien des noms géographiques (CPCNG) (Comité Canadiense Permanente de Nombres Geográficos) y de la United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) (Junta de Nombres Geográficos de los Estados Unidos), y todas ellas se han resuelto de manera satisfactoria. A medida que continúa el trazado de mapas de los dos países a escalas cada vez mayores, se prevé que se presentará un número creciente de problemas a las autoridades toponímicas, que también serán resueltos amigable e inmediatamente.

El Secretario Ejecutivo del United States Domestic Names Board (Junta de los Estados Unidos de Nombres Nacionales), Sr. Donald Orth, participó en la reunión anual del CPCNG, celebrada en Ottawa, en octubre de 1975. El Sr. Orth formuló diversas observaciones sobre los temas del programa del Comité.

En octubre de 1976, el Secretario Ejecutivo de la BGN, Sr. Richard R. Randall, asistió a la reunión anual del CPCNG, celebrada en Winnipeg (Manitoba). En esta reunión, durante la cual los representantes de las provincias y los territorios describieron las actividades locales y prepararon programas en coordinación con el Comité Nacional, el Sr. Randall hizo hincapié en diferentes programas y cuestiones de los que se ocupan las Naciones Unidas y que interesan tanto al Canadá como a los Estados Unidos. En abril de 1977, el Sr. Alan

Rayburn, Secretario Ejecutivo del CPCNG, asistió, a su vez, a una reunión trimestral de la BGN, celebrada en Washington. Además, el Sr. Rayburn visitó al Sr. Donald Orth y al personal de la Domestic Names Board, que se ocupa de los nombres en el territorio de los Estados Unidos. Se consideraron diversas cuestiones relativas a los nombres de los accidentes geográficos comunes a los dos países.

Tras las reuniones celebradas en Washington, que permitieron aclarar ciertos puntos relativos no sólo a los problemas de nomenclatura que interesan al Canadá y a los Estados Unidos, sino también cuestiones de las que se ocupan las Naciones Unidas, los dos Secretarios Ejecutivos tuvieron oportunidad de intercambiar opiniones sobre documentos relativos a los principios y los métodos adoptados por las Naciones Unidas para la nomenclatura de los accidentes geográficos submarinos.

Es natural que ambos países, que tienen costas contiguas de una longitud total de 20.800 km, tengan tradiciones bien establecidas en la esfera de la preparación de mapas marinos, sobre todo para las regiones adyacentes a las costas. Las recientes investigaciones petroleras en el mar han puesto de manifiesto la necesidad de preparar mapas hidrográficos y mapas de los fondos oceánicos. En consecuencia, se trata de identificar los accidentes geográficos submarinos y de asignarles nombres. El rol importante que los dos países desempeñaron en los programas de preparación de mapas de la Organización Hidrográfica Internacional, ha reforzado aún más su interés por los programas nacionales e internacionales de asignación de nombres a los accidentes geográficos. En 1968, el CPCNG creó el Comité Consultivo para los accidentes geográficos submarinos, homólogo del órgano de la BGN. El Sr. Randall, Secretario Ejecutivo de la BGN, y el Comité Consultivo del CPCNG dedicaron un tiempo considerable al examen del programa del Grupo de Trabajo de las Naciones Unidas encargado de estudiar los accidentes geográficos submarinos y marinos, tras lo cual se redactó un texto sobre los principios y los métodos, que el Sr. Randall, responsable del Grupo de Trabajo, distribuyó entre los miembros del Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas para los nombres geográficos. Ese texto contiene las ideas formuladas por los dos países; fue aprobado por la BGN y será presentado este año a la aprobación del CPCNG. Además, el Canadá y los Estados Unidos han realizado estudios sobre los términos y las definiciones aplicables a los accidentes geográficos submarinos, que también se distribuyeron entre los miembros del Grupo de Trabajo. Cabe prever que la cooperación entre los dos países aumente, a medida que se tenga necesidad de informaciones más pormenorizadas sobre los accidentes geográficos submarinos.

Se espera que las autoridades toponímicas del Canadá y de los Estados Unidos refuercen progresivamente aún más las buenas relaciones que mantienen y que desempeñen conjuntamente un importante papel en la elaboración de principios, métodos y políticas aplicables a la consideración de los nombres geográficos, que puedan servir de modelo a otros países.

*

* *

Although the United States of America–Canada Division held no formal meetings during the period from 1972 to 1977, representatives of both countries continued to correspond and to meet informally to discuss items of mutual interest and to resolve problems concerning both countries.

Although the world's longest international boundary separates the two nations, and although so many rivers, mountain chains and lakes cross the boundary, the United States of America and Canada have few outstanding problems involving differences in nomenclature. This state of affairs is reflected in the fact that only a few questions involving names came to the attention of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names (CPCGN) and the United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) in the 1972–1977 period, and that all were resolved satisfactorily. As mapping of the two countries continues at larger scales, it is anticipated that an increasing number of problems will come before the names authorities and that they will be resolved in the same amicable and forthright way.

The Executive Secretary of the United States Domestic Names Board, Donald Orth, participated in the CPCGN annual meeting, held in Ottawa in October 1975. He offered several comments on the CPCGN agenda items.

In October of 1976, the Executive Secretary of BGN, Dr. Richard R. Randall, attended the annual meeting of CPCGN in Winnipeg, Manitoba. At this session, which permitted provincial and territorial members to report on local activities and to work out programmes in co-ordination with the national committee, Dr. Randall pointed out various United Nations programmes and issues that concern both Canada and the United States. In April of 1977, Alan Rayburn, Executive Secretary of CPCGN, reciprocated by attending a quarterly meeting of BGN in Washington. While in Washington, he also visited Donald Orth and the Domestic Names staff, which is responsible for working on names in the United States. Various questions about names of features common to both countries were discussed.

Following the Washington meetings, which resulted in clarification of issues concerning not only Canada–United States names problems but also United Nations topics, the two executive secretaries had an opportunity to elaborate on documents dealing with United Nations principles and procedures for undersea feature names.

It is natural that both nations, with a combined coastline of 13,000 miles, should have strong traditions of nautical charting, particularly for areas adjacent to their coasts. The recent surge of off-shore oil exploration has highlighted requirements for hydrographic—and ocean-floor—charting. All of these factors lead to concern for identification and naming of undersea features. The

strong roles played by both countries in charting programmes of the International Hydrographic Organization further reinforce their interests in national and international programmes for naming undersea features. In 1968, CPCGN established a committee to process undersea names, the Advisory Committee on Undersea Features, a counterpart to the BGN body of the same name. Dr. Randall of BGN and the Advisory Committee of the CPCGN have spent considerable time working on the programme of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names (UNGEGN) Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features, with the result that a statement on principles and procedures was drafted and circulated to UNGEGN members by Dr. Randall, Convenor of the Working Group. The statement, which incorporates ideas of both nations, has been approved by BGN and will be submitted for endorsement by CPCGN this year. At the same time, Canada and the United States have worked on undersea terms and definitions which also have been distributed to members of the Working Group. Further co-operation between the two countries can be expected as requirements develop for more detailed information about undersea features.

With time, it is expected that the names authorities of Canada and the United States will strengthen further the good relationship that ties them together, and will collectively play a leading role in developing principles, procedures and policies for dealing with geographical names that can serve as models for other nations.

REPORT OF THE DUTCH-SPEAKING AND GERMAN-SPEAKING DIVISION*

The Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names has held two meetings since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names was held in London in 1972.

The first meeting was held at Frankfurt am Main in 1976. The main item on the agenda was the unification of country names in the German language, which had been requested by the Translation Section of the United Nations Secretariat. A list approved by all member countries of the Division was compiled and sent to the New York Office.

The second meeting was held at Enschede, Netherlands, 16 May 1977. The meeting discussed the working papers to be submitted at the Third UN Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, to be held at Athens, using the provisional agenda of the Conference as a basis for discussion.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.75.

REPORT OF THE ASIA SOUTH-EAST DIVISION*

Introduction

At the seventh United Nations Regional Cartographic Conference for Asia and the Far East, held at Tokyo in October 1973, Malaysia was elected Asia South-East Divisional Representative for the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names.

Malaysia therefore took over from Thailand, the previous Divisional Representative, the responsibility of convening regional meetings to enable member States of this region to get together to discuss and to present their views so that a consolidated stand can be taken on problems concerning the standardization of geographical names.

First meeting of the Asia South-East Division

The first meeting of the Asia South-East Division was convened at Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, from 6 to 10 January 1975.

This meeting was attended by delegates from Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore and Thailand.

Burma, Democratic Kampuchea, Laos and Viet Nam were also invited but did not attend.

Map of south-east Asia

At this meeting, it was agreed that the countries of this region should get together and publish a map of south-east Asia in which each member would be responsible for the correctness of the names shown for its country. This unique project would at the same time represent a concrete example of regional co-operation.

The Directorate of National Mapping, Malaysia, undertook the preparation and printing of the map.

A preliminary three-colour edition of the map was produced in time for the sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names, held in New York in March 1975. Initially, five countries (Indonesia, Democratic Kampuchea, Malaysia, Singapore and Thailand) participated in the project by supplying the correct geographical names of places in their countries.

A full nine-colour version of the map, with some modifications in format, was later prepared and published, with two more countries (Philippines and Viet Nam) participating. Burma and Laos were also invited to participate in the project but there was no response from those countries.

* The original text of this paper, presented by Paul Foo, Director of National Mapping, Malaysia, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.76.

Paper on the work of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names

At the request of the meeting, and for the benefit of the members of the region, Major-General Banlang Khamasundara of Thailand was requested to prepare a paper on the history, aims, objectives, conclusions, recommendations and other matters connected with the work done so far by the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. The paper was subsequently prepared by Major-General Banlang Khamasundara, edited by Mr. Paul Foo of Malaysia and printed by the Directorate of National Mapping, Malaysia.

Each member of the Division was supplied with 20 copies for distribution, if he so wished, to his country's Government departments, ministries and other agencies.

Sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names

This meeting was held in New York from 5 to 26 March 1975. The Asia South-East Division was represented by three members: Mr. Kok Swee Tuck of Malaysia, as the Divisional representative; Major General Banlang Khamasundara of Thailand; and Colonel Bunserm Narmwang of Thailand.

The proceedings of the sixth session were reported by Mr. Kok Swee Tuck at the second meeting of the Asia South-East Division, held at Jakarta in September 1975.

Members of the Asia South-East Division were at first excluded from participation in the proposed training course in toponymy, which was to have been sponsored by the Netherlands Government. However, at the urging of Mr. Kok, the session subsequently agreed that the course should also be opened to the English-speaking countries of the Asia South-East Division.

Second meeting of the Asia South-East Division

This meeting was held at Jakarta from 25 to 29 September 1975.

Delegates from Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore and Thailand attended the meeting. Burma, Democratic Kampuchea, Laos and Viet Nam were also invited but did not attend.

Course in toponymy

In view of the importance of toponymy, it was proposed that a course should be organized specifically for the countries of the Asia South-East Division, to be held in a member country of the Division.

Concise gazetteer

It was agreed to prepare a concise gazetteer of the region, based on the map of south-east Asia. The Directorate of National Mapping, Malaysia, will undertake the preparation and compilation of this gazetteer.

Regional gazetteer

It was decided that the countries of this region would get together and produce a regional gazetteer, to consist of all names appearing within 30 kilometres on either side of a common international land boundary. The Directorate of National Mapping, Malaysia, will also undertake to compile this gazetteer.

Physical edition of the map of south-east Asia

At this meeting, it was also proposed to produce a physical edition of the map of south-east Asia, which will show physical features, including marine and undersea features. The Directorate of National Mapping, Malaysia, will undertake the preparation and printing of the map.

Working Group of the Asia South-East Division

It was agreed to set up a Working Group to be represented by members of this region. This Working Group would meet regularly to discuss and deal with all the technical problems connected with the work of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names, Asia South-East Division.

First meeting of the Working Group

The first meeting of the Working Group was held at Bangkok, Thailand, from 14 to 19 April 1976.

At this meeting, technical details were discussed and agreed upon in connection with the compilation and production of the physical map of south-east Asia. Technical details for the production and publication of the concise gazetteer and the regional gazetteer were also discussed and agreed upon. Formats for these two gazetteers were also prepared and adopted.

The meeting noted that nothing had been heard from the Netherlands Government regarding the course in toponymy, which was to have been sponsored by the Netherlands Government and was to have been held between 26 April and 22 May 1976. It was decided that Malaysia, as the Divisional Representative, would write to Mr. Ormeling, the Chairman of the Working Group on Training Courses on Toponymy, to inquire about the proposed course and also to request copies of the syllabus, lecture notes, reading list etc. Malaysia has accordingly written to Mr. Ormeling.

Third meeting of the Asia South-East Division

The third meeting of the Division was held at Manila from 10 to 14 June 1976.

Only four of the member countries invited to the meeting attended; these were Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines and Thailand.

Course in toponymy

The chief delegate from Indonesia made an offer at the meeting that the proposed course in toponymy to be specifically held for the Asia South-East Division could

be held in Indonesia, subject to the approval of the Indonesian Government.

It was also felt that for practical reasons the course should be held in rotation in each of the countries of the region.

Regional atlas

As a long-term project, it was agreed that member countries of the region should get together to produce a regional atlas, with particular emphasis on geographical names and toponymy. Thailand was requested to prepare the specifications and format for the proposed atlas, for distribution to member countries of the region.

Newsletter

In order to disseminate information on current activities of members of the Asia South-East Division in regard to standardization of geographical names and other aspects of map-making, it was decided that a newsletter, to be known as *GEONAMES*, should be produced and circulated among member countries. The Philippines was to undertake the publication of the newsletter, on the basis of news items sent by member countries from time to time.

Divisional representative of the Asia South-East Division

The meeting agreed to recommend to the Eighth Regional Cartographic Conference for Asia and the Far East, to be held at Bangkok from 17 to 28 January 1977, that Malaysia continue to be the divisional representative, both for the sake of continuity and because several ongoing projects were currently under way.

Fourth meeting of the Asia South-East Division

The fourth meeting of the Asia South-East Division was held at Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, from 14 to 18 April 1977.

The meeting was attended by delegates from Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines and Thailand.

Map of south-east Asia (political)

The third edition of this map, prepared and printed by the Directorate of National Mapping, Malaysia, was distributed to all delegates at the meeting. It was decided that this map, although specifically prepared for the purpose of showing geographical names, should be referred to as a "political map", in line with international and standard usage.

Map of south-east Asia (physical, including marine and undersea features)

The first edition of this map (in draft form) was prepared and printed by the Directorate of National Mapping, Malaysia, and was distributed to the delegates. Each member country was requested to study the draft map and to indicate any additions or amendments it might wish to make.

It was noted that when marine and undersea features were required to be shown on the map, the symbols used would be in accordance with International Hydrographic Organization (IHO) specifications.

Concise gazetteer

The meeting was briefed on the various problems and difficulties that were encountered on the compilation of the concise gazetteer. It was decided that all countries would review and compile a new list, based on the third edition of the political map. All names appearing in this map were to be included in the list, which would also include a description of each feature together with its geographic co-ordinates. For this purpose, as agreed in Bangkok in April 1976, if the feature was a point on the map, the geographic co-ordinates of the point would be shown; if the feature was not a point, the geographic co-ordinates shown would refer to the approximate centre point of the feature. It was also agreed that when the same name had been allotted to two different features (e.g. to a municipality and to an island) both names could appear on the listing, but with the appropriate geographic descriptions.

Regional gazetteer

At the time of the meeting Malaysia had received lists from all member countries concerned. The regional gazetteer is now under preparation by the Directorate of National Mapping, Malaysia.

Regional atlas

At the Manila meeting, in June 1976, Thailand had agreed to put up the necessary specifications for the regional atlas. It was decided at the fourth meeting that the specifications would include the following:

(*a*) Designation (types of maps to be shown);
(*b*) Scale, projection and other geographical values;
(*c*) Sheetlines, general format and number of pages;
(*d*) Drawing specifications (number of colours, styles and sizes of lettering, symbolization, marginal notes etc.); and
(*e*) Size.

With respect to this last point, a preference was expressed for a volume of a size that could be handled easily.

Course in toponymy

Indonesia has indicated that two officials will be sent to the Netherlands at Government expense to gather facts and information on courses in toponymy. It was agreed that Malaysia, as divisional representative, will write to the Secretary of the Cartographic Section of the United Nations Department of Economic and Social Affairs to inquire about the provision of funds to obtain the services of suitable lecturers. One of the sources of funds could be the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization.

Exonyms

The meeting took note of the importance of resolutions Nos. 28 and 29 of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names,[1] held in London in 1972, and decided that each member country should compile a list of the exonyms in use in that country and send it to the divisional representative to be compiled into a publication for distribution to other member countries.

Names of features lying beyond a single sovereignty

It was agreed that, for the time being, where more than one name exists for features lying beyond a single sovereignty, all such names would be shown on the maps and in the gazetteers. Each member country was requested to prepare a list of such names for discussion in due course with a view to standardization.

Non-participating member countries

The meeting expressed the hope that Burma, Kampuchea, the Lao Republic and Viet Nam would participate in and support the activities of this Division by attending future meetings. It was also hoped that Singapore, which had participated in the first and second meetings, would continue to support the work of this division by attending future meetings, for the benefit of the region and to further the cause of mutual understanding and co-operation.

Although they had been unable to attend this meeting, it was agreed to continue the past practice of sending them, for their information, copies of reports of all meetings. In addition, copies of *GEONAMES* would be sent to them by the divisional representative.

It was also noted that even though Laos and Viet Nam did not attend the divisional group meetings, they nevertheless did submit geographical names of their countries for inclusion in the south-east Asia map.

DIVISIONAL REPRESENTATIVE OF THE ASIA SOUTH-EAST DIVISION

As noted above, it was agreed at the third meeting of the Asia South-East Division, held at Manila from 10 to 14 June 1976, to recommend to the Eighth Regional Cartographic Conference for Asia and the Far East that for the sake of continuity (and in view of the fact of several ongoing projects currently being under action) Malaysia should continue as the divisional representative. Malaysia therefore continues to be the divisional representative.

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

REPORT OF THE AFRICA WEST DIVISION*

The former Africa South of the Sahara Division was constituted into two Divisions at the fifth meeting of the Group of Experts in March 1973. The two Divisions are Africa East and Africa West. The countries in the Africa West Division, which are covered by this report, are: Benin, Cameroon, Central African Empire, Chad, Congo, Equatorial Guinea, Gabon, Gambia, Ghana, Guinea, Guinea-Bissau, Ivory Coast, Liberia, Mali, Niger, Nigeria, Senegal, Sierra Leone, Togo and Upper Volta.

No formal meeting of the Division has so far been held but the standardization of geographical names was one of the topics discussed at the Organization of African Unity (OAU) Symposium on Manpower Requirements and the Development of Cartographic Services in Africa, held at Cairo from 22 to 26 July 1974, where it was recommended that geographical names committees should be established in African countries where they did not already exist and that African regional meetings on geographical names should be organized.

A meeting of the Inter-African Committee on Surveys and Maps of OAU is to be held to follow up the recommendation of the Symposium. Nairobi has been proposed for this meeting but there has been no reaction yet to the letter sent to Nairobi to this effect. Another letter is to be sent to Nairobi about hosting the meeting, and if there is no positive response the possibility of holding the meeting somewhere else will be explored.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.108.

REPORT OF THE AFRICA EAST DIVISION*

The Africa East Division came into being after the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, when the Africa South of the Sahara Division was subdivided into two divisions, the other being Africa West. I was then nominated to represent the Africa East Division until such time as the divisional members would be able to elect their representative.

Attempts were made before March 1975 to hold some divisional meetings, but these were unsuccessful due to

* The original text of this paper, prepared by W. J. Absaloms, Secretary, Standing Committee on Geographical Names, Kenya, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.113.

lack of funds to organize the meetings. However, I was able, through my Government, to attend both meetings of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names in New York in March 1973 and March 1975. While in New York, in March 1975, Mr. Coker (representing the Africa West Division) and I were introduced to the officials of the Ford Foundation by the chairman of the Group of Experts, Dr. Burrill. There we made inquiries about funds to support divisional activities. We were referred to the Foundation's regional offices, with whom contacts have not yielded much fruit.

I attempted to push in an agenda item on geographical names during the inaugural meeting of the Regional Centre for Services in Surveying and Mapping, held in Nairobi in December 1975, but due to shortage of time it was not included in the agenda. The Regional Centre has been set up to serve the Eastern, Central and Southern Africa region with their surveying and mapping requirements. So far, only five members of the region have joined the Centre, but it will be a good platform for raising the question of divisional activities once a majority of the regional members have joined.

While the Division's activities have been rather dormant, individual countries have been actively continuing with their activities in the field of standardization of geographical names, as will be reflected in their individual reports.

INFORME PRESENTADO POR GUATEMALA*

Summary

The present report describes the situation and the progress made in the standardization of geographical names in the country since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names.

The report indicates that the standardization of geographical names, including all processes relating to categorical and descriptive terms, has been made the responsibility of the National Geographic Institute (IGN), headed by Colonel René Aguiluz Morales. IGN, for its part, has entrusted the work relating to this matter to the Chief of its Department of Human Geography, Dr. Francis Gall.

There is also, in accordance with existing international and regional resolutions on the subject, a National Geographical Names Authority.

The critical compilation of the entirely new Geographical Dictionary, consisting of more than 13,000 typed pages, has been completed. For the reasons stated in the report, the dictionary will be limited for the time being to an edition of 3,000 copies. Thanks to the full co-operation given at all times by Augusto Nicolás Reyes Soto, the Director of Tipografía Nacional, the State publishing house, and his entire staff, approximately the first 700 pages of the Geographical Dictionary are submitted for the particular purpose of showing what is being done in this field.

It should be noted that although a copy of the Geographical Dictionary, consisting of about 7,000 typed pages and with partial coverage up to the letter "P", was submitted to the United Nations Library in 1975, the material has subsequently been augmented as a result of the research constantly being carried on.

Since 1975 the General Directorate of Statistics has been receiving the co-operation it requires to enable it to ensure that all documentation relating to the Eighth General Population Census, taken in 1973, shows the official categories and names.

Successful efforts have been made to establish officially accepted alphabets for the country's 20 principal unwritten minority languages. This material will appear as an appendix in the last volume of the Geographical Dictionary and it is also intended to issue it separately.

The institutions and branches of the various ministries enumerated in the report have continued to provide the necessary advisory services relating to this matter.

Résumé

Le présent rapport décrit la situation actuelle et les progrès réalisés en matière de normalisation des noms géographiques dans le pays depuis la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques.

On indique que l'ensemble du processus lié au classement, à la terminologie et, en général, à la normalisation des noms géographiques est confié à l'Institut géographique national (IGN), dont le Directeur est le colonel René Aguiluz Morales. L'IGN a, pour sa part, délégué toutes les activités en la matière au chef de son Département de géographie humaine, le Professeur Francis Gall.

Un Bureau national des noms géographiques remplit les tâches prévues conformément aux résolutions internationales et nationales en vigueur sur la question.

On a terminé la compilation critique, entièrement nouvelle, du *Dictionnaire géographique*, qui compte plus de 13 000 pages dactylographiées. Pour les raisons indiquées dans le rapport, le tirage de ce dictionnaire sera d'abord limité à 3 000 exemplaires.

Grâce à la collaboration permanente du Directeur de l'Imprimerie nationale, Augusto Nicolás Reyes Soto, et de tout le personnel de cet établissement d'Etat, les 700 premières pages du dictionnaire sont présentées séparément, afin de montrer ce que l'on réalise actuellement dans ce domaine.

En 1975, un exemplaire du *Dictionnaire géographique*

*El texto original de este informe, preparado por el Profesor Francis Gall, Guatemala, ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF.69/L.4.

allant jusqu'à la lettre "P" et comptant environ 7 000 pages dactylographiées a été remis à la bibliothèque des Nations Unies. Bien entendu, des additifs ont été incorporés depuis, du fait des constantes recherches qui sont effectuées.

Afin que toutes les données du huitième recensement général de la population réalisé en 1973 respectent la classification et la terminologie officielles, depuis 1975, on a prêté les concours voulus à la Direction générale de statistique.

On a réalisé des alphabets officialisés des 20 principaux idiomes non écrits, parlés par les minorités du pays. Ces alphabets seront publiés en appendice dans le dernier tome du *Dictionnaire géographique*, et on envisage également de les publier séparément.

On a continué à offrir des services consultatifs aux institutions et services des divers ministères qui en font la demande.

*

* *

El tema 7 del programa provisional de la Tercera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, especifica un informe sobre la situación existente y los progresos en materia de normalización de nombres geográficos en el país, desde la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas, realizada en Londres en mayo de 1972.

Además de varios aspectos específicos dentro del campo altamente especializado y que conforme al programa provisional se presentarán por separado de parte del representante del Gobierno, puede informarse en especial como sigue:

El Gobierno de Guatemala está consciente de que en todo documento cartográfico, es menester representar tanto la categoria y término denominativo de cualquiera entidad, así como su nombre geográfico normalizado;

Todo el proceso anterior lo realiza, de consiguiente, el Instituto Geográfico Nacional, que es una dependencia del Ministerio de Comunicaciones y Obras Públicas. A la fecha, el Director General del Instituto Geográfico Nacional (IGN), quien asimismo por razón de oficio es el Presidente de la Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos, lo es el Coronel René Aguiluz Morales;

Por su parte, el IGN sigue la política de no dar a conocer ni publicar documento cartográfico alguno en el que no aparezca el respectivo nombre geográfico normalizado a la fecha de compilación así como la respectiva categoría de la entidad, lo cual es verificado en su Departamento de Geografía Humana cuyo titular, como Vocal y Secretario Ejecutivo de la Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos, es quien tiene a su cargo todo lo relativo al análisis y registro oficial de toda entidad y de su respectivo nombre geográfico normalizado en el ámbito nacional;

Asimismo y por tener el IGN dentro de sus funciones específicas lo que atañe a la geografía del país, desde hace años ha encomendado lo relacionado con esa disciplina al citado Jefe del Departamento de Geografía Humana, Profesor Francis Gall, quien es a la vez Presidente Honorario de la Sociedad de Geografía e Historia de Guatemala, Representante del Centro Internacional de Estudios Onomásticos (ICOS) así como Experto para América Latina del Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos, lo que le da el requerido respaldo científico a su labor.

Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos

Bajo la Presidencia del titular del IGN, la Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos ha incluido dentro de sus funciones, de manera especial, no sólo las resoluciones emanadas de las respectivas conferencias mundiales de las Naciones Unidas y las de los períodos de sesiones de su Grupo de Expertos en Nombres Geográficos, sino también las de las diferentes reuniones regionales que caen dentro del campo de acción del Experto para América Latina del arriba citado Grupo de Expertos.

Diccionario Geográfico de Guatemala

Consecuencia de la magnífica acogida nacional e internacional que obtuvo el ahora agotado *Diccionario Geográfico de Guatemala* (1961, 1962), en su oportunidad se dispuso la compilación crítica de una obra totalmente nueva. El original de la misma en más de 13.000 hojas dactilográficas, compendio de unas 200.000 fichas individuales y cuyo trabajo se encomendó al Jefe del Departamento de Geografía Humana del IGN, se terminó de faccionar en el año de 1975, así como 23 croquis del actual territorio nacional, todo lo cual se está procediendo a ser publicado en unos estimados cuatro tomos voluminosos, después de realizar corrección de pruebas de galera y de página, para ser impreso por la Tipografía Nacional. Si bien debido al elevado costo actual del material de impresión la edición será solamente de 3.000 ejemplares, para contrarrestar esta publicación que se considera mínima, se ha llegado a un convenio en el sentido que se faccionarán las respectivas matrices para que en el avenir y, conforme se requiera, pueda llevarse a cabo un tiraje adicional.

Más que un *diccionario geográfico*, es en realidad una obra enciclopédica dentro del campo de la geografía humana y sus disciplinas conexas. No escatimando esfuerzo alguno dentro de sus posibilidades, el IGN desea así mostrar una de las fases que representan la mejor forma y rinden dividendos los aportes destinados por el Gobierno al presupuesto fiscal de la institución, representando algo que se considera básico para conocer la realidad nacional a la fecha de la compilación crítica del *Diccionario* y poner a disposición tanto de las dependencias estatales como de los interesados, el elemento de juicio indispensable, a efecto de poder evaluar de manera racional tanto los recursos naturales, como su mejor aprovechamiento en beneficio de Guatemala.

Con ocasión del sexto período de sesiones del Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos que se verificó en Nueva York en el mes de marzo de 1975, se entregó a la Biblioteca Dag Ham-

marsköld de las Naciones Unidas una copia del *Diccionario Geográfico* hasta parte de la letra "P" en unas 7.000 páginas dactilográficas, material que es lógico que con posterioridad haya sido incrementado debido a nuevas entradas de última hora, como resultado de la constante investigación que se realiza.

Gracias a la plena colaboración del Director de la Tipografía Nacional, Augusto Nicolás Reyes Soto y de todo el personal de dicha casa editora estatal, se pueden mostrar en esta fecha y de manera muy especial, aproximadamente 700 páginas impresas de lo que será el *Diccionario Geográfico*. El trabajo del *Diccionario* constituye, pues, un aporte más a la familia guatemalteca, dentro de los deseos del IGN que la obra coadyuve a que se cuente con material imprescindible en todo orden de lo que los guatemaltecos somos, tenemos y valemos.

Dirección General de Estadística

Si bien antes de que se realizara en marzo de 1973 el VIII Censo General de Población en el país se ofreció toda la ayuda posible dentro de las posibilidades del IGN a la Dirección General de Estadística, no fue sino en octubre de 1975 cuando se inició el trabajo colaborativo en lo que atañe revision y actualización de categorías y nombres oficiales de lo censado, dentro de cada municipio. Con la consiguiente suspensión temporal del trabajo debido al terremoto de febrero de 1976, a la fecha se ha realizado labor de gabinete en unos 300 municipios de 20 departamentos, por lo cual queda pendiente el trabajo en unos 26 municipios de 2 departamentos, sin incluir el territorio guatemalteco de Belice. Es decir, resta cierta verificación tanto de gabinete como de campo para resolver dudas existentes, previo a que la Dirección General de Estadística esté en posición de publicar la respectiva información a nivel detallado por municipio, con los nombres y categorías oficiales de todo lo censado en su oportunidad.

Alfabetos oficializados en idiomas ágrafos minoritarios

Como apéndice al segundo tomo del *Diccionario Geográfico* (1962) se publicaron trece alfabetos oficializados de idiomas minoritarios, válido en su fecha de edición. Dicho material ha sido de gran valor no sólo para fines cartográficos, sino también para utilizar recursos humanos y didácticos netamente indígenas, por ejemplo, en su respectiva capacitación. El apéndice con los trece alfabetos también se publicó como separata para el Instituto Indigenista Nacional y su utilización no sólo por esa dependencia, sino también por otras, como el Instituto Lingüístico de Verano, etc.

En el último tomo del *Diccionario Geográfico* que en la actualidad está siendo impreso, figurarán veinte idiomas indígenas minoritarios, de los cuales diecinueve son de origen maya, mientras que el otro es el araguaco o caribe centroamericano, que se habla en especial en el municipio de Livingston, departamento de Izabal. Todos ellos, que son ágrafos, contienen explicación de los símbolos gráficos utilizados y algunos ejemplos fonémicos y fonéticos en sus tres posiciones (inicial, media y final). Al igual que en el pasado, este material también está destinado para ser utilizado en primer lugar en el respectivo material cartográfico.

Asesoría

Por último, se informa que en lo que atañe al IGN se ha reiterado y prestado la asesoría para que se utilicen las diferentes categorías oficiales de los respectivos accidentes y sus nombres geográficos en el ámbito nacional, a instituciones y dependencias de diversos Ministerios, pudiéndose mencionar entre ellos a Relaciones Exteriores, Defensa Nacional, Gobernación, Salud Pública y Asistencia Social, Comunicaciones y Obras Públicas y los demás, con el fin de terminar con la anarquía que ha existido en la materia.

REPORT PRESENTED BY AUSTRIA*

Résumé

Le rapport détaillé présenté par l'Autriche à la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, tenue à Londres en 1972, reste valable. Il n'est nécessaire d'y ajouter que les précisions suivantes: une nouvelle Commission toponymique a été créée dans la province de Salzbourg et la mise sur pied d'une telle commission à Vienne est en cours. Le Bureau topographique fédéral a presque terminé la carte de l'Autriche au 1:50 000. La carte complète compte 213 feuillets, dont 113 contiennent déjà des noms normalisés.

L'Académie des sciences a publié, conformément aux recommandations de l'Organisation des Nations Unies, une nomenclature toponymique de l'Autriche comprenant toutes les catégories de noms géographiques.

Le Bureau central de la statistique a publié une nomenclature très détaillée des lieux habités du pays, fondée sur le recensement de 1971. Sur le plan international, l'Autriche a collaboré avec les pays de langues néerlandaise et allemande au sein du Groupe d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques.

Resumen

El extenso informe presentado por Austria a la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, Londres, 1972, sigue siendo válido. Unicamente se precisan los siguientes datos suplementarios: en la provincia de Salzburgo, se ha

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.9.

fundado una nueva comisión de toponimia, y en Viena se encuentra en marcha la fundación de una comisión de ese tipo. La Oficina Federal de Aforos y Agrimensura ha ultimado casi por completo el trabajo sobre el mapa de Austria a escala 1:50.000. La cobertura total es de 213 hojas, 113 de las cuales contienen nombres ya normalizados.

La Academia de Ciencias de Austria ha publicado, de conformidad con las recomendaciones de las Naciones Unidas, un *Diccionario Geográfico de Austria* que comprende todas las categorías de nombres geográficos.

La Oficina Estadística Central de Austria ha publicado un *Diccionario Geográfico* muy detallado de los lugares habitados de Austria, basado en el censo de 1971. En el plano internacional, Austria ha cooperado con los países de expresión holandesa y alemana en la división respectiva del Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas sobre Nombres Geográficos.

*

* *

Austria presented an extensive report on the situation in the field of the standardization of geographical names to the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in 1972.[1] This report is still valid today, requiring only the following supplementations:

(*a*) Several new provincial commissions should be mentioned:

Salzburg. Salzburger Ortsnamenkommission des Salzburger Instituts Für Raumforschung (Salzburg Place-Names Commission of the Salzburg Institute for Regional Research). Correspondence should be addressed as follows: Attention Mr. Kurt Conrad, Salzburger Institut für Raumforschung, Postfach 2, 5033 Salzburg, Austria. The commission was founded in 1975.

As the Salzburg Institute for Regional Research is a private institution, the Salzburg Place-Names Commission can function only as an unofficial, advisory body to the Provincial Government of Salzburg and to the federal agencies dealing with geographical names.

Vienna. Wiener Nomenklaturkommission (Vienna Toponymic Commission). Correspondence should be addressed as follows: Attention Mr. Felix Czeike, Wiener Stadt- und Landesarchiv, Rathaus, 1082 Wien, Austria. The foundation of this commission is planned for 1977.

The commission will be attached to the Wiener Stadt- und Landesarchiv (Vienna Provincial and City Archives) and will have official status as an advisory body to the Provincial Government and the city administration of Vienna.

Upper Austria. The formation is planned of a provincial commission within the framework of the Upper Austrian Provincial Archives.

(*b*) The Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen (Federal Office of Gauging and Surveying) has continued its work in the field of the standardization of geographical names in accordance with the new instructions based on the recommendations of the United Nations. These instructions and specifications are described in detail in the above-mentioned Austrian report of 1972. The new Österreichische Karte (Austrian map) 1:50,000 is almost completed. Two hundred seven of the total number of 213 sheets will be ready in 1978; of these, 113 sheets contain standardized names.

(*c*) In 1975 the Austrian Academy of Sciences published a gazetteer of Austria in accordance with the recommendations of the United Nations. It is a selective gazetteer in the sense of resolution No. 35 of the London Conference of 1972,[2] containing all categories of geographical names. Each headword is followed by an indication of the pronunciation, a description of features, grammatical information, the names of the pertinent administrative units, co-ordinates etc. A glossary of geographical appellatives is annexed.

(*d*) Between 1974 and 1977 the Österreichisches Statistisches Zentralamt (Austrian Central Statistical Office), assisted by the provincial place names commissions, published an *Ortsverzeichnis* (*Gazetteer of inhabited places*) in eight volumes, based on the census of 12 May 1971.[3] Each volume covers one province, with the exception that Lower Austria and Vienna are covered in a single volume. Each provincial volume is divided into a systematic section (showing the administrative divisions and subdivisions) and an alphabetical register. A register comprising the place names of the whole country in one alphabetical sequence will be published later.

(*e*) Internationally, Austria has participated as far as possible in the meetings of the Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division of the United Nations Group of Experts for Geographical Names and of the Ständiger Ausschuss für geographische Namen (Permanent Committee on Geographical Names), Frankfurt am Main.

---

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), pp. 6–9.

[2] *Ibid.*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

[3] *Ortsverzeichnis 1971, bearbeitet auf Grund der Ergebnisse der Volkszählung vom 12. Mai 1971*, ed. Österreichisches Statistisches Zentralamt, Wien; *Burgenland* 1974, *Kärnten* 1975, *Niederösterreich/Wien* 1977, *Oberösterreich* 1976, *Salzburg* 1975, *Steiermark* 1976, *Tirol* 1974, *Vorarlberg* 1974, *Register* (not yet published).

REPORT PRESENTED BY THE UNION OF SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLICS*

In the period from 1972 to 1977 a considerable amount of work was carried out in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics in the field of standardization of geographical names. These activities have been and are carried on under three main directions.

The first is aimed at provision of means for the correct and unified rendering of Soviet and foreign geographical feature names into Russian and into other languages of the peoples of the USSR in Soviet publications of all kinds. Applying Lenin's national policy to this field, we try to treat the national names as carefully as possible and not to allow any distortions to them. Thus we meet the requirement to reflect accurately and exhaustively the phonetic, graphic, grammatical and (where possible) lexical characteristics of the names transposed. This objective is being achieved by elaboration not only of general principles but also of specific rules for rendering geographical names—rules that have been developed on the basis of profound and comprehensive studies of the original (national) names and of the potential of the receiver-language to reflect the features of the original language.

In the Soviet socialist multinational State, which celebrates this year its sixtieth anniversary, the equal nations and nationalities living within the State use over 60 literary languages. Under these conditions Russian is accepted by all the peoples of the USSR as the language for international exchange and co-operation; the use of Russian enables people of any nationality to have access to the scientific and cultural progress being made by all other peoples of the USSR. That is why the elaboration of rules for rendering non-Russian geographical names into Russian provides at the same time a general basis for the national standardization of geographical names in the USSR. These rules become, as well, the core of the instruction booklets for the transfer of geographical names into other languages in all Russian-language Soviet publications.

Each of these instruction booklets is a comparatively small, but very pithy work, incorporating the following sections: general principles; sources for name identification; rules for name rendering; transfer of geographic terms; spelling of compound names; and conventional names. Appendices include a short treatise on the language and toponymy of the country, republic or province concerned as well as a glossary of geographical terms and other words used in forming geographical names.

In 1972–1977 more than 30 instruction booklets of this kind were worked out and published; the total number of instruction booklets in current use, including those published earlier, is 65. A list of the most important of these publications is printed in the annex to this paper.

Publication has been completed of instruction booklets on the Russian rendering of geographical names of all the Federal Republics except one and of the majority of the Autonomous Republics.

Compilation has been carried on of glossaries of the geographical terms that make up the toponymy of the USSR and some other countries.

As a result of the vast development of international relations and the consequent increase in the demand for correct rendering of foreign geographical names, 18 instruction books were developed in recent years on the Russian rendering of foreign geographical names. These included instructions for rendering into Russian geographical names from the most diverse occidental (and some Oriental) languages—English, French, Spanish, German, Vietnamese, Japanese and others. At the same time we were solving a complicated problem: On the one hand it was necessary to adjust the rules of rendering of foreign-language geographical names into Russian to the norms of modern foreign literary languages; on the other hand, different pronunciations and spellings of a number of non-Russian geographical names are deeply rooted in the Russian language. A number of such names entered the classical Russian literature and became current, and have been preserved, without alteration, as the conventional ones.

The elaboration of instructions incorporating scientifically based rules, unified for each language, for rendering geographical names is a necessary and a basic element for standardization of geographical names. But even the most sophisticated instruction can not foresee all the problems that will emerge in the practical transcription of geographical names belonging to another language. Gazetteers, compiled on the basis of the above-mentioned instructions, enable us to fully avoid possible discrepancy in name rendition. More and more of our personnel are being switched over to the solution of this complicated and labour-consuming problem as the elaboration of the instructions is completed. Nine dictionaries of geographical names for the Federal and Autonomous Republics of the USSR and for a number of foreign countries were elaborated and published; from this point on, the compilation of gazetteers becomes our main objective.

This is the situation in the field of normalization of Russian transposition of geographical names belonging to other languages.

Transposition of geographical names to the national languages of the non-Russian-speaking peoples of the USSR is conducted in compliance with the rules of orthography, using orthographic dictionaries compiled by the institutes of literature and language under the direction of the Academies of Sciences of each of the Soviet Federal and Autonomous Republics. The use of such rules and dictionaries, and the use of Russian as the intermediate language, facilitates the transfer of geographical names of the USSR and those of foreign countries to the national languages of the Soviet peoples via all kinds of publications, including maps, manuals, reference and scientific materials as well as the multi-

* The original text of this paper, prepared by A. M. Komkov, Vice-Chairman, Permanent Joint Commission on Geographical Names, USSR, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.19.

volume encyclopaedias published by all the Federal Republics and many of the Autonomous Republics of the USSR.

The legal aspect of geographical name standardization means that the established rules of name rendering, and the names of specific geographical features as fixed in gazetteers, must be given compulsory status for application in official documents, maps, educational, scientific, reference and other materials published by all institutions, organizations and establishments throughout the country. In the USSR this is done through legislative acts and through governmental notifications regulating the general procedure for naming (or renaming) geographical features within the USSR and for determination of the names of geographical features belonging to other countries. In order to co-ordinate the activities connected with determination of names in Russian a Permanent Joint Commission on Geographical Names was set up within the Main Administration for Geodesy and Cartography. The Commission includes representatives of the range of the Soviet ministries, organizations and establishments concerned. The Commission considers and makes recommendations on all propositions concerning naming and renaming of objects and physical-geographical features under All-Union (central) jurisdiction. After that, the proposals are approved by the corresponding governmental departments. Drafts of instructions on Russian rendering of names belonging to other languages of the USSR and foreign countries are also discussed at the Commission sessions. After concordance of the instructions and gazetteers with all the organizations concerned and endorsement by the Commission, the drafts are approved by the Main Administration for Geodesy and Cartography under the Council of Ministers of the USSR and become compulsory for the whole territory of the USSR.

The same procedure is accepted for establishment of geographical feature names in other national languages of the peoples of the USSR. There is a Permanent Joint Commission on Geographical Names in each of the Federal Republics, which functions the same way as the All-Union (central) Commission.

Success in the standardization of geographical names has many organizational and technical aspects. That is, such success depends on conditions and organization of labour and on the technical equipment provided for the specialists. The elaboration of scientific-methodological documents, the preparation of materials to be considered by the Joint Commission and current operative work (i.e., regular maintenance of the geographical name catalogue, the determination and examination of names by request of mapping agencies, and the preparation of replies to requests of other organizations concerned)—all these require concentrated and continuous efforts on the part of a large team of specialists. Such a team, which actually constitutes a permanent service for geographical names in Russian, works in the system of the USSR State Cartographic-Geodetic Service.

Many participants in the Twenty-third International Geographic Congress and the Eighth International Cartographic Conference, held in Moscow in August 1976, visited our Service for Geographical Names and there became acquainted with its activities.

Since no single higher school can be expected to train universal specialists ready to solve all the complex problems connected with standardization of geographical names, the Service for Geographical Names is a combined team, incorporating scientists and specialists from a number of different fields: linguists specializing in Slavic, Germanic, Roman, oriental and other languages; toponymists; geographers; and cartographers. Organized, efficient co-operation among all specialists is the main condition—and guarantee—of the successful solution of scientific, methodological and practical problems of geographical name standardization.

The development of the public economy, the growth of science and culture and new developments in international relations all increase the demand for standardization of geographical names, thus increasing the volume of work. This calls for the perfection of methods and technical means of carrying out the work. The effect is felt first of all in a number of labour-consuming processes in which manual labour prevails: catalogue maintenance, compilation of gazetteers, preparation of map indexes and the like.

Instead of card-index boxes, which weigh 15 kg each, we have introduced special light-weight boxes produced by ZIPPEL of Hungary, and thus facilitated the work on the catalogue.

The development of the Automatic Informational Retrieval System for Toponyms (AIRST) has been completed and the system is now undergoing test runs. The system utilizes the principle of coding the information on geographical names, recording it on information carriers for input, processing and output from the computer, and finally typing and copying the reference data.

The results obtained from research and experiments facilitated the elaboration of methods for providing the output of information on geographical names in various forms: gazetteers for specific countries or regions, alphabetical indexes to maps, lists of names of specific features (populated places, rivers etc.), indexes of names within specific geographical or rectangular co-ordinates and so on. AIRST has been shown to handle the work at a rate two to three times faster than the traditional methods of handling reference documents of this type. The system provides not only for output of Russian standard spelling of foreign names but also for preservation of the national spelling. The system also provides a name index in the alphabetical order of the original script. In the near future we shall rely fully upon this system, a development that will make the information on the results of the geographical name standardization rapidly available for all the organizations concerned.

Annex

LIST OF INSTRUCTIONS (IN EFFECT AS OF JULY 1977) FOR RUSSIAN RENDERING OF NON-RUSSIAN GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES, DICTIONARIES OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES AND GLOSSARIES OF GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS

INSTRUCTIONS FOR RUSSIAN RENDERING OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES (BY STATE OR REGION)

Armenian SSR (1975)
Azerbaijan SSR (1971)
Byelorussian SSR (1971)
Estonian SSR (1972)
Georgian SSR (1972)
Kazakh SSR (1971)
Kirghiz SSR (1975)
Latvian SSR (1972)
Lithuanian SSR (1971)
Moldavian SSR (1971)
Tajik SSR (1976)
Turkmen SSR (1971)
Ukrainian SSR (1971)
Abkhazian ASSR (1977)
Kara-Kalpak ASSR (1977)
Komi ASSR (1974)
Mari ASSR (1977)
Mordovian ASSR (1971)
Udmurt ASSR (1973)
Yakut ASSR (1977)
Khakassian AO (1977)
Arabic-speaking countries (1967)
Burundi, Zambia, Kenya, Congo (Kinshasa), Malawi, Rwanda, Tanzania, Uganda and Southern Rhodesia (1969)
Cambodia (1967)
Chinese People's Republic (1967)
Denmark (1974)
English-speaking countries (1976)
Ethiopia (1971)
France (1975)
German-speaking countries (1975)
Indonesia (1977)
Ireland (1970)
Italy (1977)
Japan (1975)
Korea (1972)
Laos (1967)
Malagasy Republic (1967)
Maori (1974)
Norway (1974)
Poland (1975)
Portugal and Brazil (1974)
Somalia (1976)
South-African Republic (1968)
Spanish-speaking countries (1975)
Sweden (1976)
Viet Nam (1973)
Wales (1976)

Volumes in preparation

Uzbek SSR
Buryat ASSR
Dagestan ASSR
Gorno-Altai AO
Burma
Czechoslovakia
Finland

DICTIONARIES OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

The USSR (1968)
Orographic features of the USSR (1976)
Ukrainian SSR (4 volumes) (1977)
Komi ASSR (1976)
Mordovian ASSR (1976)
Foreign countries (1970)
Arab countries (2 volumes) (1973)
Ethiopia (1974)
German Democratic Republic (2 volumes) (1976)
Korea (1973)
Latin America (4 volumes) (1975)

GLOSSARIES OF GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS

Azerbaijan SSR (1971)
Buryat ASSR (1969)
Chukchi, Koriaks and Eskimo toponymy (1971)
Dagestan ASSR (1972)
Even and Evenks toponymy (1967)
Gorno-Altai AO (1969)
Khakassian AO (1968)
Komi ASSR (1968)
Mansi, Khanti and Selkup toponymy (1973)
Nanai toponymy (1968)
Nenets toponymy (1971)
Tajik SSR (1975)
Tuva ASSR (1971)
Iran (1971)

Volumes in preparation

Byelorussian SSR
Dagestan ASSR
Tuva ASSR
Uzbek SSR
Federal Republic of Germany
United States of America

REPORT OF THE HUNGARIAN COMMITTEE ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES*

Résumé

Au cours de la période écoulée entre la deuxième et la troisième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, le Comité hongrois des noms géographiques s'est occupé de la normalisation des noms géographiques intéressant à la fois la Hongrie et les autres pays, la normalisation des noms géographiques hongrois étant considérée comme la tâche la plus importante.

Le décret ministériel du 31 mars 1974 a marqué une date importante car il stipulait qu'une nomenclature nationale devait être établie. Il réglementait également les domaines de compétence et la marche à suivre pour la normalisation des noms géographiques. En vertu de ce décret, la création et la modification des noms géographiques désignant de petits détails topographiques d'importance locale sont du domaine de compétence des autorités locales. Autrement dit, c'est l'usage local qui prime. Les noms des détails plus importants (en général, ceux qui recouvrent une zone étendue) relèvent du Ministère de l'alimentation et de l'agriculture, auprès

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.26.

duquel le Comité exerce les fonctions d'organe consultatif. Les noms de caractère administratif sont, comme auparavant, de la compétence du Conseil des ministres.

Il a été décidé que la nomenclature comporterait un volume par canton. La série complète contiendra environ 70 000 noms. Chaque volume sera complété par une carte au 1:150 000. Les noms seront indiqués à la fois par ordre alphabétique et par agglomération. La nature du détail topographique sera indiquée dans la nomenclature tandis que son étendue et sa position pourront être déterminées d'après la carte jointe, étant donné que tous les noms seront suivis par des chiffres et des lettres renvoyant à la carte.

L'élaboration des volumes de la nomenclature comportera les étapes suivantes:

a) Rassemblement des noms d'après des cartes et d'autres sources, y compris des collections publiées ou non;

b) Vérification des noms par les autorités locales et autres;

c) Vérification linguistique;

d) Approbation par le Comité;

e) Travaux de rédaction, dactylographie, dessin et reproduction.

Les premiers volumes seront disponibles au début de l'année prochaine; le dernier doit être publié en 1980.

Avant le début du travail, le Comité a examiné les principes à suivre pour l'élaboration de la nomenclature, et il se prononcera sur tous les problèmes qui se poseront.

Le principe le plus important consiste à relever les noms tels qu'ils ressortent de l'usage local, y compris les noms en d'autres langues. Les formes dialectales ne sont données dans la langue littéraire que si l'identification est possible sans difficulté. Dans le cas des ruisseaux et des petits cours d'eau, en raison des allonymes entrés dans les usages locaux, il faudra peut-être choisir un seul nom, ce qui veut dire qu'il conviendra de faire une exception à la règle et qu'il ne sera pas tenu compte du nom local.

Le fait que le Comité ait adopté des règles détaillées pour l'orthographe des noms des banlieues et des quartiers des villes et agglomérations facilite beaucoup l'élaboration de la nomenclature. Ces règles complètent les décisions antérieures touchant l'orthographe des noms géographiques.

Le Comité a pris une part active à la mise au point de règles juridiques régissant l'attribution de noms aux rues et quartiers des villes et des agglomérations y compris la modification et le remplacement de ces noms. Notre tâche à cet égard a consisté surtout à faire appel à notre expérience en matière de normalisation des noms.

Le Comité ne cesse de s'occuper des noms géographiques intéressant d'autres pays. Des décisions touchant des nouveaux noms de pays ont été approuvées récemment. On examine les principes devant régir l'utilisation des noms géographiques dans un nouvel atlas mondial, en commençant par la question des exonymes et des méthodes de transcription. La réduction du nombre des exonymes est l'un des principes qui ont déjà été adoptés.

Resumen

En el período comprendido entre la Segunda y Tercera Conferencias de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, el Comité de Hungría sobre Nombres Geográficos trató de la normalización, tanto de los nombres del interior como del exterior de Hungría. De ellos, la normalización de nombres nacionales se consideró la más importante.

El decreto ministerial promulgado el 31 de marzo de 1974 representó un paso importante, ya que en él se concretaba que se iba a preparar un nomenclátor nacional. El decreto regulaba también las esferas de jurisdicción y procedimientos referentes a nombres geográficos. Según esto, el establecimiento y la enmienda de nombres geográficos que designan accidentes de menor importancia local entran dentro de la competencia de las autoridades locales. Eso significa que se da prioridad al uso local. Los nombres de accidentes más importantes (generalmente los que abarcan una considerable superficie) entran dentro de la competencia del Ministerio de Alimentación y Agricultura, con el cual el Comité actúa como órgano consultivo. Los nombres de carácter administrativo, como anteriormente, siguen siendo de la competencia del Consejo de Ministros.

Se decidió preparar el nomenclátor en volúmenes por distritos territoriales. La serie completa contendrá unos 70.000 nombres. Cada nomenclátor tendrá como suplemento un mapa a escala 1:150.000 (de esta escala se origina la cantidad de nombres). Los nombres figurarán por orden alfabético y por núcleos rurales. En el nomenclátor figurará el carácter del accidente, mientras que su extensión y posición se pueden consultar en el mapa suplementario, ya que todos los nombres irán acompañados de las cifras y letras del índice con referencia al mapa.

La preparación de los diferentes nomenclátores se llevará a cabo por etapas, del modo siguiente:

a) Colección de nombres de los mapas y otras fuentes, inclusive las colecciones especiales publicadas o no publicadas;

b) Verificación de los nombres por autoridades locales y otras;

c) Comprobación lingüística;

d) Aprobación por el Comité;

e) Trabajos de edición, mecanografiado, dibujo y reproducción.

Los primeros volúmenes estarán disponibles a principios del próximo año; el último se va a publicar en 1980.

El Comité sometió a debate los principios que han de aplicarse en los nomenclátores antes de iniciar la labor efectiva, y adoptará una posición sobre cualquier cuestión que se plantee durante su preparación.

El principio más importante es aplicar los nombres tal como aparecen en el uso local, inclusive nombres en otros idiomas. Las formas dialectales se dan en el idioma literario únicamente, si es posible identificarlas sin dificultad. En el caso de arroyos y riachuelos, a causa de los alónimos en el uso local, es posible que haya que elegir un solo nombre, lo que significa que se hará una excepción a la regla y se prescindirá del nombre local.

El hecho de que el Comité haya adoptado reglas detalladas para la ortografía de los nombres de los asentamientos situados en las afueras de ciudades, así como de divisiones de pueblos y ciudades, ha servido de gran ayuda en la preparación de los nomenclátores. Estas reglas complementan decisiones anteriores sobre la ortografía de nombres geográficos.

El Comité ha participado activamente en la preparación de reglas jurídicas para la denominación de calles y divisiones de pueblos y ciudades, inclusive el cambio y la enmienda de esos nombres. Nuestra tarea principal a este respecto fue incorporar nuestras experiencias en la normalización de nombres.

El Comité se ocupa continuamente de las materias relativas a nombres geográficos fuera de Hungría. Recientemente se aprobaron decisiones sobre nuevos nombres de países. Los principios sobre la utilización de nombres geográficos en un nuevo atlas mundial son actualmente objeto de debate, en primer lugar con respecto a la utilización de exónimos y métodos de transcripción. La reducción de exónimos es uno de los principios que ya han sido adoptados.

*

* *

In the period between the Second and Third United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names, the Hungarian Committee on Geographical Names dealt with the standardization of geographical names both inside and outside Hungary. Of these, the standardization of domestic names was considered to be the more important.

The ministerial decree enacted on 31 March 1974 was a significant achievement, as it specified that a national gazetteer was to be prepared. The decree also regulated the spheres of authority and the procedures regarding geographical names. According to this, the establishment and amendment of geographical names designating minor features of local importance fall within the competence of the local authorities. This means that priority is given to local usage. Names of more important features (generally those covering a considerable area) fall within the competence of the Minister of Food and Agriculture, with the Committee acting as a consultative body. Names of administrative character are, as before, within the competence of the Council of Ministers.

It was decided to prepare the gazetteer in country volumes. The whole series will contain about 70,000 names. Each gazetteer will have a map supplement at the scale of 1:150,000 (the quantity of names originates from this scale). The names will be given both in alphabetical order and by settlement. The character of the feature will be given in the gazetteer, while its extent and position can be read from the supplemented map, as all names will be accompanied by the index figures and letters referring to the map.

Preparation of the various gazetteers will be carried out in stages, as follows:

(*a*) Collection of names from maps and other sources, including published or unpublished field collections;

(*b*) Verification of names by local and other authorities;

(*c*) Linguistic check;

(*d*) Committee approval; and

(*e*) Editorial work, typing, drawing and reproduction.

The first volumes will be available early next year; the last one is to be published in 1980.

The Committee discussed the principles to be applied in the gazetteers before starting the actual work, and will take a stand on all matters arising during their preparation.

The most important principle is to apply names as they appear in the local usage, including names in other languages. Dialect forms are given in the literary language only if identification is possible without difficulty. In the case of brooks and creeks, because of allonyms in the local usage, a single name may have to be chosen, which means that an exception will have to be made to the rule and the local name disregarded.

The fact that the Committee had adopted detailed rules for the spelling of names of outskirts settlements of cities, as well as of divisions of towns and cities, aided greatly in the preparation of the gazetteers. These rules complement previous decisions on the spelling of geographical names.

The Committee has taken an active part in the preparation of legal rules for the naming of streets and divisions of towns and cities, including the change and amendment of such names. Our main task in this respect was to incorporate our experiences in name standardization.

The Committee continuously deals with matters relating to geographical names outside of Hungary. Decisions on new country names were approved recently. Principles on the use of geographical names in a new world atlas are being discussed at present, first of all with respect to the use of exonyms and methods of transcription; the reduction of the use of exonyms is one of the principles that has already been adopted.

REPORT PRESENTED BY AUSTRALIA*

Australia has no national authority for the coordination of geographical names for any purpose other than mapping, which is effected through the National Mapping Council as necessary.

However, the Division of National Mapping has produced a gazetteer of all names taken from the series of 541 maps that cover Australia at the scale of 1:250,000. Not all of these names have been approved by the

* The original text of this paper, prepared by the Division of National Mapping, Canberra, Australia, appeared as document E/CONF. 69/L.38.

responsible state or territory, and they are subject to change.

Each state (New South Wales, Queensland, South Australia, Tasmania, Victoria and Western Australia) and each territory (Northern Territory and Australian Capital Territory) has its own authority for geographical names. Brief reports by each of these authorities follow, with a report by the Antarctic Names Committee of Australia.

State of New South Wales

Authority

Geographical Names Board of New South Wales
GPO Box 39
Sydney, 2001
Australia

Activities

The major function of the Board at the present time is the collection and review of place names within the State and the preparation of a register of such names. In carrying out this function the Board is working in close co-operation with the State's mapping authority, which is currently engaged in an active programme to map the State at scales of 1:25,000, 1:50,000 and 1:100,000. A preview is made of the provisional maps and all place names are the subject of a nomenclature check to eliminate anomalies. Each map is finally published with a footnote, "Place names on this map are approved geographical names under the provisions of the Geographical Names Act, 1966". To date, about 55,000 place names have been formally assigned and indexed.

In addition to the normal review of place names, the Board makes decisions on the many miscellaneous applications received involving the naming of unnamed features. The majority of these applications are received from local government authorities and involve the naming of parks, reserves, suburbs etc. Again, a considerable number of applications are received from the State's Education Department, as the naming of all public schools is a matter for final decision by the Board. Over and above this, many inquiries of a varied nature are received seeking information on place names generally.

Little or no research has been carried out to date into the origin and history of the place names assigned, although endeavours are being made to have qualified persons appointed for this purpose. Likewise, the Board has not yet been successful in having an automatic data-processing programme introduced, although action is in progress.

State of Queensland

Authority

The Queensland Place Names Board
Office of the Surveyor General
127 Creek Street, Brisbane 4000
Australia

Activities

During the period under review, the Board approved 355 place names. These included 171 suburbs and 40 localities of the City of Brisbane. The defining and naming of the suburbs of the City of Brisbane, undertaken at the request of the Brisbane City Council, took three years to complete.

The Board has compiled a gazetteer of approximately 58,000 place names in the State. These were previously listed on indexed cards and form a complete list of all place names appearing on official maps, i.e. maps published by the Surveyor General. Information on the origins of place names is included in the gazetteer under the relevant entry. Because of incomplete records, such information is included for only a small proportion of the 58,000 names. It is intended to produce an additional gazetteer of unofficial place names, i.e. those place names which appear on 1:100,000 topographical maps published by authorities other than the Surveyor General. So far, only provisional approval has been given to these names.

State of Tasmania

Authority

The Nomenclature Board of Tasmania
Lands Department
134 Macquarie Street
Hobart, 7001
Australia.

Activities

The Board has continued to be primarily engaged in the consideration of names for the 1:100,000 series; this mapping is approximately 90 per cent complete at this stage. Since 1972 there have also been numerous additions and some anomalies, with which the Board has dealt, concerning nomenclature for subsequent editions of this series.

Work on the production of a Tasmanian gazetteer is well advanced.

State of South Australia

Authority

Geographical Names Board of South Australia
Department of Lands
GPO Box 293A
Adelaide, 5001
Australia

Activities

Apart from the administration of the Geographical Names Act, which was described in the report to the last Conference, little progress has been made. The Board is presently endeavouring to have staff appointed to commence the compilation of a gazetteer as required under the Act.

State of Victoria

Authority

Office of the Place Names Committee
Department of Crown Lands and Survey
State Public Offices
Melbourne, 3002
Australia

Activities

To date, the Committee has compiled a register of approximately 16,000 place names in the State. In conformity with modern mapping and recording practices, the use of an apostrophe in the spelling of place names is avoided.

Historical research on the origins of place names is done by the Central Plan Office, Department of Crown Lands and Survey, and by the Royal Historical Society of Victoria. On occasion, other authorities and representative groups submit historical information on request. All place names of proven aboriginal derivation are, as far as possible, retained in as authentic a form as possible.

State of Western Australia

Authority

Nomenclature Advisory Committee
Department of Lands and Surveys
Perth, 6000
Australia

Activities

Primarily the approval of names in connexion with topographic mapping projects.

Australian Capital Territory

Authority

Canberra National Memorials Committee
PO Box 158
Canberra City, 2601
Australia

Activities

The National Memorials Ordinance provides for the naming of streets, suburbs and public places within the Australian Capital Territory, but there is no legislation at this stage covering the naming of geographical or topographical features.

Legislation is being drafted to overcome this deficiency and it is anticipated that a draft Geographical Names Ordinance could be ready for consideration by interested parties by mid-1977.

Northern Territory

Authority

Place Names Committee
Australian Survey Office
PO Box 927
Darwin, 5794
Australia

Activities

The Place Names Committee investigates and recommends to the Administrator names for public places and natural features. During the period 1972–1977 the Committee has investigated a large number of place names in support of topographic mapping and charting activities in the Northern Territory. The names on all new maps are checked by the Committee before publication.

Antarctica

Authority

Antarctic Names Committee of Australia
Antarctic Division
Department of Science
568 St. Kilda Road
Melbourne, 3004
Australia

Activities

During the period 1972–1977, the Antarctic Names Committee of Australia (ANCA) met four times and also carried out work by correspondence between the Secretary and members.

The Committee was reconstituted in May 1975.

The Committee accepted a number of names appearing on maps published by the Ministry of the Merchant Fleet of the USSR, the New Zealand Department of Lands and Survey, the United States Geological Survey and the *Atlas of Parts of the Antarctic Coastal Lands* by H. E. Hansen, published in Oslo in 1946. The Committee also approved a number of new names for features explored by the Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions in Enderby Land; in the Prince Charles Mountains, Mac-Robertson Land; and in the Vestfold Hills, Princess Elizabeth Land.

The Committee agreed to adopt the modified Hepburn system for the romanization of Japanese place names and to use diacritical marks when they occurred in foreign names.

The Secretary prepared four papers, ANCA Papers 76/1, 76/2, 76/3 and 76/4, listing the Committee's decisions, which await ratification by the Minister for Science, the Minister to whom the Committee is responsible.

Names approved by the Committee were indexed by computer according to the following categories:

(*a*) Alphabetical;
(*b*) ANCA Paper number;
(*c*) 1:250,000 map sheet; and
(*d*) Nation of origin.

REPORT PRESENTED BY FINLAND*

Résumé

Le rassemblement, l'archivage et la tenue à jour des fichiers officiels de noms géographiques finlandais ont été réorganisés en 1976. Les organisations privées (Archives des noms propres finlandais et Archives des noms propres de la Société suédoise de littérature en Finlande) ont cessé leurs activités et c'est le Centre de recherche finlandais pour les langues nationales, créé à cette époque sous l'égide du gouvernement, qui s'est chargé de cette tâche. Une coopération étroite et régulière se poursuit entre le Centre de recherche, le Conseil topographique national et la Société finlandaise de géographie.

Près de 293 000 fiches ont été ajoutées aux collections de noms finnois et 33 000 fiches aux collections de noms suédois en Finlande. D'après les estimations, environ 80 p. 100 des noms finnois et 85 p. 100 des noms suédois en Finlande ont été réunis. Les langues officielles de la Finlande sont le finnois et le suédois. En 1975 il y avait 4 415 000 personnes parlant finnois et 303 000 parlant suédois, auxquelles s'ajoutaient 2 300 personnes parlant le lapon (sami) en Finlande. Sur les cartes, la signalisation urbaine et routière, etc., des zones bilingues, le nom est d'abord indiqué dans la langue de la majorité, puis dans la langue de la minorité. Quand le rapport linguistique existant dans une paroisse change, l'ordre des noms est changé.

Le Bureau d'onomastique finnoise et le Bureau pour la langue suédoise du Centre de recherche finlandais pour les langues nationales donnent aux fonctionnaires des administrations centrales et locales des avis autorisés au sujet des questions relatives aux propositions de nouveaux noms et de changement de noms. Ils ont de plus vérifié les noms figurant sur 800 nouvelles feuilles de la carte de base (environ 220 000 noms) entre 1972 et 1976. Le Conseil topographique national a achevé en 1975 les travaux topographiques pour la carte de base, dont l'impression en sera achevée en 1977.

Des visiteurs de pays africains ont pris connaissance des principes de l'onomastique et des travaux sur le terrain en Finlande.

En outre, en 1974, le Conseil topographique national a publié une *Carte du réseau postal finlandais* et un *Index des noms de lieux*. Plusieurs petites publications devant servir de guides pour l'orthographe et la normalisation des noms en Finlande ont paru entre 1972 et 1976.

Les adresses suivantes pourront être utiles:

Centre de recherche finlandais pour les langues nationales, Liisank, 16 A 2, 00170 Helsinki;

Société finlandaise de géographie, Département de géographie, Université d'Helsinki, Hallitusk, 11–13, 00100 Helsinki 10;

Conseil topographique national, Kirkkok, 3, 00170 Helsinki 17;

Service cartographique du Conseil topographique national Eteläesplanadi, 10, 00130 Helsinki 13.

Resumen

La reunión, el archivo y el mantenimiento oficial de los nombres geográficos finlandeses fueron reorganizados en 1976. Las organizaciones privadas (Archivos de Nombres Finlandeses y Archivos de Nombres de la Sociedad Sueca de Literatura en Finlandia) dejaron de funcionar y sus tareas quedaron a cargo del Centro de Investigaciones de Finlandia para los Idiomas Internos, que fue creado a la sazón y es patrocinado por el Gobierno. Continúa la cooperación estrecha y regular entre el Centro de Investigaciones, la Junta Nacional de Levantamientos Cartográficos y la Sociedad Geográfica de Finlandia.

Alrededor de 293.000 tarjetas se agregaron a las colecciones de nombres finlandeses y 33.000 tarjetas a las colecciones de nombres suecos en Finlandia. Se ha calculado que se han reunido aproximadamente el 80 % de los nombres finlandeses y el 85 % de los nombres suecos existentes. Los idiomas oficiales en Finlandia son el finlandés y el sueco. En 1975 había en Finlandia 4.415.000 personas que hablaban finlandés, 303.000 personas que hablaban sueco y 2.300 personas que hablaban lapón (sami). En los mapas, los carteles indicadores de las calles, los hitos camineros, etc., de las zonas bilingües, el nombre aparece primero en el idioma de la mayoría, luego en el de la minoría. Cuando cambian las proporciones lingüísticas que prevalecen en una parroquia, se modifica el orden de los nombres.

La Oficina de Onomástica Finlandesa y la Oficina de Idioma Sueco del Centro de Investigaciones de Finlandia para los Idiomas Internos han suministrado a los funcionarios estatales y locales opiniones autorizadas sobre cuestiones relativas a propuestas de nuevos nombres oficiales y modificaciones de nombres, además de verificar durante el período 1972–1976 los nombres de 800 nuevas planchas del Mapa Básico (aproximadamente 220.000 nombres). La Junta Nacional de Levantamientos Cartográficos completó la labor topográfica para el Mapa Básico en 1975 y la impresión quedará terminada en 1977.

Algunos visitantes procedentes de países africanos han pasado algún tiempo en Finlandia familiarizándose con los principios del mantenimiento onomástico y la labor sobre el terreno.

En 1974, la Junta Nacional de Levantamientos Cartográficos publicó el *Mapa Postal de Finlandia* y el *Indice de Nombres de Lugares*. Durante el período 1972–1976 se editaron algunas pequeñas publicaciones destinadas a servir de guía para la ortografía y normalización de nombres finlandeses.

Pueden ser de interés las siguientes direcciones:

Centro de Investigaciones de Finlandia para los Idiomas Internos, Liisank, 16 A 2, 00170 Helsinki;

Sociedad Geográfica de Finlandia, Departamento de Geografía,

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.40.

Universidad de Helsinki, Hallitusk, 11–13, 00100 Helsinki 10;
Junta Nacional de Levantamientos Cartográficos, Kirkkok, 3, 00170 Helsinki 17;
Servicio Cartográfico de la Junta Nacional de Levantamientos Cartográficos, Eteläesplanadi 10, 00130 Helsinki 13.

*

* *

General

The collection, archiving and official maintenance of Finnish geographical and personal names was reorganized after the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names. In 1976 the private Finnish Name Archives ceased operations, its tasks being assumed by the Office for Finnish Onomastics of the Finnish Research Centre for the Domestic Languages, which was established at that time and is sponsored by the Government. Work concerning Swedish names in Finland became the responsibility of the Office for the Swedish Language of the Research Centre. A board for the Lappish (Sami) language functions as an organ providing linguistic expertise in matters concerning Lappish names in Finland.

The Office for Finnish Onomastics has a staff of ten: eight linguists and two historians; the Onomastics Division of the Office for the Swedish Languages has a staff of two, both linguists.

The address of the Centre is:

Kotimaisten kielten tutkimuskeskus
(Finnish Research Centre for the Domestic Languages)
Liisank. 16 A 2
00170 Helsinki 17
Finland

National standardization

Field collection of names

Finnish names

About 293,000 new cards were added to the toponymy collections during the period 1972–1976. Besides listing the standardized form of the toponym, each card also lists it according to the local dialect and according to its location (commune, village, farmstead and geographical index on a 1:20,000-scale map) as well as providing a brief explanation of the entity as well as any possible explanations of the etymology or linguistic elements contained in the toponym, the history of the location and so on. In gathering names, efforts are made to record all that are extant, including the names of small topographical features. The field workers are researchers with a good background in linguistics. The Research Centre grants some 50–60 stipends annually for the collection of Finnish names; one stipend is sufficient for approximately a month and it usually results in a collection of 600 to 700 cards.

At the beginning of 1977 the toponymy collections contained approximately 2,000,000 cards. It has been estimated that approximately 80 per cent of existing Finnish names have been collected. The onomastics collections are intended to serve the needs of both scientific research and normative maintenance.

Swedish names

During the period 1972–1976 a total of approximately 33,000 new cards were collected in the Swedish-language areas of Finland. At the beginning of 1977 the collections contained about 195,000 cards in all. It has been estimated that approximately 85 per cent of existing Swedish names in Finland have been collected. The Research Centre grants six or seven monthly stipends. The collection of the Swedish names in Finland is expected to be completed in five or six years.

Lappish (Sami) names

Lappish names are to be found only in the three northernmost communes of Finland. The onomastics collections contain 6,600 cards with Lappish names. Some of the names have not yet been standardized, because there is as yet no officially sanctioned norm for the Lappish literary language of Sweden, Norway and Finland.

The field collection and standardization of names is being continued during the summer of 1977 in the areas in which all three languages are spoken.

Treatment of names

The Office for Finnish Onomastics and the Office for the Swedish Language have continued work on the maintenance of toponyms by providing State and local officials with authoritative opinions in matters concerning proposals for new official names and alterations of names. In addition, these offices checked the names on a total of 800 new sheets of the Basic Map (containing approximately 220,000 names) during the period 1972–1976. The National Board of Survey completed the topographical work for the Basic Map in 1975, and the printing will be completed in 1977. The Basic Map will contain a total of approximately 750,000 names, so it will be of fundamental importance from the standpoint of the maintenance of names. The map will be continuously updated and as new editions are prepared the names appearing on it will be reviewed. The names appearing in small-scale maps (such as road maps at scales of 1:200,000 or 1:400,000) are based on the Basic Map. Maps compiled by the National Board of Survey may be ordered from:

Map Service of the National Board of Survey
Eteläesplanadi 10
00130 Helsinki 13
Finland

Treatment of names in bilingual areas

There are two official languages in Finland: Finnish and Swedish. A commune is described as bilingual if at

least 10 per cent of the population speaks the other language. (There are approximately 300,000 speakers of Swedish in Finland, a figure amounting to 6.5 per cent of the population.) On the maps, street signs, road markers etc. of bilingual areas the name first appears in the majority language, then in the minority one. When the prevailing linguistic proportions change in a community, the order of the names is changed. The Lappish language does not have the status of an official language (there are approximately 2,300 speakers of Lappish in Finland, a figure amounting to 0.05 per cent of the population), but efforts are made in the practical maintenance of names to protect Lappish names by following the same principles used in those communes where Swedish is spoken as a minority language.

Training and instruction

In accordance with the recommendations of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, and within the framework of the programme for Finnish Aid to the Developing Countries, two Tanzanian specialists spent two months in 1973 familiarizing themselves with the organization of research, maintenance and instruction in the mother language as it exists in Finland. They spent some of their time in acquainting themselves with the principles of onomastic maintenance and field-work. Representatives of certain other African countries have made brief visits to the Office for Finnish Onomastics and The National Board of Survey. Clarification of the work and principles of operation followed by the onomastics office has also been given by mail.

Gazetteers and other publications

In 1974 the National Board of Survey published the *Postal Map of Finland* and the *Index of Place Names*.[1] Together, these constitute an extensive source of data for the location of about 2,000 physical and 12,000 cultural features in Finland, including lakes, rivers, peatlands, towns, boroughs, rural districts, post offices and railway stations.

The *Index* takes into account the recommendations of the first two United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names. The classifications and symbols used were devised especially with international use in mind. The *Index* includes more features than could be placed on the *Postal Map*. The *Index* can also be used with the Motoring Road Map and Road Map of Finland, which have the same graticule and references.

It is often necessary to locate post offices in everyday life, so post office presentation has been given considerable emphasis both on the *Map* and in the *Index*, though it was not possible to include all offices. The data on the *Map* and in the *Index* correspond to conditions as of 1 February 1974. A sample page from the Gazetteer, and instructions for its use, are given in the annex to this paper.

In 1976 there was published a special name issue of *Kielikello*, a publication edited by the Finnish Research Centre for the Domestic Languages.[2] Thirty-two pages in length, and published in an edition of 25,000 copies, it is intended as a guide for the orthography and standardization of Finnish toponyms. It also contains the names of countries in the recommended Finnish form. In 1976 the Finnish Association for Standardization published a list of the codes for the representation of names of countries,[3] the basis of which is the *United Nations Standard Country Code*.[4] This publication represents an effort to standardize both the codes and the orthography of the complete names of countries in the Finnish language. In drawing up the publication, authoritative opinion in matters pertaining to onomastics was provided by the Finnish Geographical Society and by the Office for Finnish Onomastics in the Research Centre for the Domestic Languages. A publication containing the Finnish and Swedish terminology used in onomastic research in Finland appeared in 1974.[5] Since 1972 nothing of significance has been published concerning exonyms, but efforts have been made to follow the list of names and the general principles published in accordance with the recommendations of the First United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names[6] in most school atlases and encyclopaedias. This has established the use of exonyms in Finnish in accordance with United Nations recommendations, as well as limiting their increase.

International co-operation

Together with the other Nordic countries, Finland has clarified the terminological questions linked with onomastic research and drawn up plans for the utilization of automatic data processing in onomastic archiving and research. A Nordic symposium dealing with the protection and maintenance of names as well as with the planning of names for new urban areas will be held in Helsinki in September 1977. It will have a direct bearing on the standardization of names.

[1] *Postal Map of Finland* and *Index of Place Names*, Helsinki, National Board of Survey, 1974.

[2] *Kielikello* 8, Suomen Akatemia, Kielitoimisto, Helsinki, 1976 (ISBN 0355-2675).

[3] *Codes for the Representation of Names of Countries*, Helsinki, 1976, Suomen Standardisoimisliitto.

[4] United Nations publication, Sales No. E.70.XVII.13.

[5] Eero Kiviniemi, Ritva Liisa Pitkänen and Kurt Zilliacus, Nimistöntutkimuksen terminologia (Terminologin inom namnforskningen (Castrenianumin toimitteita) 8, Helsinki, 1974 (ISBN 951-45-0304-X).

[6] *Terra: Journal of the Geographical Society of Finland*, vol. 81, No. 2, Helsinki, 1969.

SAMPLE PAGE FROM *INDEX OF PLACE NAMES*, WITH DIRECTIONS FOR USING THE *INDEX*

I. SAMPLE PAGE

HAKEMISTO — REGISTER — INDEX

A

L 33	Aakenusjoki ◘	
L 33	Aakenustunturi ▲	KITTILÄ
H 04	Aakoinen ○	PAIMIO
K 31	Aalisjärvi ◘	KOLARI
K 31	Aalistunturi ▲	KOLARI
V 28	Aallokkokoski ≋	KUUSAMO
K 27	Aapajoki ○ ✉ 95560	TORNIO
A 31	Aapajärvi ○ ✉ 98570	PELKOSENNIEMI
K 27	Aapajärvi ○	TORNIO
S 15	Aappola ○ ✉ 71810	SIILINJÄRVI
F 04	Aaslaluoto ⋗	RYMÄTTYLÄ
U 31	Aatsinginjoki ◘	
U 30	Aatsinki ○	SALLA
J 28	Aavasaksa ○ ✉ 95620 ⊖	YLITORNIO
J 28	Aavasaksa ▲	YLITORNIO
O 04	Abborfors (Ahvenkoski) ○ ✉ 07960	STRÖM-FORS
M 18	Ahde ○	NIVALA
M 04	Ahjo ○ ⊖	KERAVA
U 23	Ahjola ○ ✉ 89730	SUOMUSSALMI
R 15	Ahkiolahti ○	MAANINKA
R 15	Ahkionlahti ✉ 71760 [Ahkiolahti]	MAANINKA
F 09	Ahlainen (Alakylä) ● /Ahlainen ✉ 29700	PORI
J 07	Ahlajärvi ○	KALVOLA
P 21	Ahmas ○ ✉ 91660 ⊖	UTAJÄRVI
O 21	Ahmasjärvi ◘	UTAJÄRVI
V 33	Ahmatunturi ▲	
G 08	Ahmaus ○	KULLAA
X 17	Ahmavaara ○	LIEKSA
K 03	Ahmoo ●	KARKKILA
K 05	Ahmoonkylä ✉ 03630 [Ahmoo]	KARKKILA
X 15	Ahmovaara ○ ✉ 75330	JUUKA
M 14	Aho ✉ 42610 [Aho-Vastinki]	KARSTULA
S 28	Aho ○	POSIO
K 06	Ahoinen ○	RENKO
P 18	Ahokylä ○ ✉ 92920	PYHÄNTÄ
X 20	Ahola ○	KUHMO
V 25	Ahola ○	KUUSAMO
T 27	Ahola ●	POSIO
V 23	Ahola ○	SUOMUSSALMI
U 10	Aholahti ● ⊖	SAVONLINNA
T 16	Aholansaari ⋗	NILSIÄ
U 28	Aholanvaara ○ ✉ 98770	SALLA
S 06	Ahomäki ✉ 54490 [Muurola]	MIEHIKKÄLÄ
A 07	Aho-Nikki ○	SAVITAIPALE
H 14	Ahonkylä ●	ILMAJOKI
V 13	Ahonkylä ○ ✉ 83480	LIPERI
L 20	Ahonperä ○	OULAINEN
K 12	Ahonperä ⊖	VIRRAT
Y 15	Ahovaara ⊖	LIEKSA
M 14	Aho-Vastinki ○	KARSTULA
P 37	Ahppestuoddarak (Appistunturi) ▲	INARI
N 06	Ahtiala ○ ⊖	LAHTI
J 04	Ahtiala ○	SUOMUSJÄRVI
L 06	Ahtola ✉ 14160 [Löyttymäki]	JANAKKALA
P 08	Ahvenainen ✉ 52980 [Ahvenisto]	MANTYHARJU
B 03	Ahvenanmaa (Åland) ⋗	
A 02	Ahvenanmeri (Ålands hav) ◘	
A 04	Ahvenanrauma (Södra Kvarken) ◘ [< Ahvenanmeri]	
Y 14	Ahveninen ○ ✉ 81260	ENO
P 14	Ahveninen ◘	TERVO
O 14	Ahveninen ○	VESANTO
K 06	Ahvenisto ●	HAMEENLINNA
P 08	Ahvenisto ○	MANTYHARJU
T 38	Ahvenjärvi ○	INARI
O 04	Ahvenkoski (Abborfors) ○ ✉ 07960	RUOTSINPYHTAA
F 04	Ahvensaari (Åvensor) ○ ▶	KORPPOO
T 11	Ahvensalmi ○ ✉ 58140	SAVONLINNA
T 30	Ahvenselkä ○ ✉ 98630	SALLA
P 11	Ahventaipale ○	KANGASNIEMI
H 08	Ahvenus ○ ⊖	KOKEMÄKI
L 33	Ahvenvuoma ▽	KITTILÄ
P 05	Ahvio ○ ✉ 46950	ANJALA
U 09	Ahvionsaari ○ ⋗	SAVONLINNA
I 03	Aijala ○ ✉ 25550	KISKO
V 27	Aikkila ○ ✉ 93820 [Rukajärvi]	KUUSAMO
E 38	Ailakkajärvi (Aillahasjavri) ◘	ENONTEKIÖ
E 38	Ailakkavaara (Aillahasvarri) ▲	ENONTEKIÖ
N 40	Ailigas ▲	UTSJOKI
R 42	Ailigas ▲	UTSJOKI
E 38	Aillahasjavri (Ailakkajärvi) ◘	ENONTEKIÖ
E 38	Aillahasvarri (Ailakkavaara) ▲	ENONTEKIÖ
M 19	Ainali ○ ✉ 86630	HAAPAVESI
J 19	Ainali ○	HIMANKA
M 19	Ainalinjärvi ◘	HAAPAVESI
L 18	Ainastalo ✉ 85560 [Aittoperä]	NIVALA
R 13	Airaksela ○ ✉ 71490 ⊖	KARTTULA
F 04	Airismaa ⋗	RYMÄTTYLÄ
G 04	Airisto (Erstan) ◘	
M 06	Airola ⊖	KARKOLA
R 16	Aisomäki ○	LAPINLAHTI
P 27	Aitakumpu ○ ✉ 97740	RANUA
K 31	Aitamännikkö ○	KOLARI
J 09	Aitolahti ○	TAMPERE
P 06	Aitomäki ✉ 45270 ⊖	VALKEALA
I 11	Aitoneva ⊖	KIHNIÖ
J 09	Aitoniemi ○	TAMPERE
K 08	Aitoo ● ✉ 36720	LUOPIOINEN
P 04	Aittakorpi ●	KOTKA
H 04	Aittala ✉ 21580 [Finkulla]	SAUVO
F 08	Aittaluoto ⊖	PORI
S 28	Aittaniemi ○ ✉ 97860	POSIO
O 41	Aittijoki ○	UTSJOKI
O 17	Aittojärvi ○ ✉ 74740 ⊖	KIURUVESI
P 24	Aittojärvi ○	PUDASJÄRVI
R 17	Aittokoski ○ ✉ 74310	SONKAJÄRVI
U 22	Aittokoski ○	SUOMUSSALMI
U 22	Aittokoski ◘	SUOMUSSALMI
S 22	Aittokylä ○	PUOLANKA
X 10	Aittolahti ○	KESALAHTI
P 06	Aittomäki ○	VALKEALA

Directions for Using the Index

Reference	Name	Symbols	Municipality
K 07	Iittala	● 〒 14500 ⊖	KALVOLA

Reference

The reference shows the degree square on the map in which the feature is located. The map's graticule is formed by the meridians and parallels, between 30' from west to east and 15' from south to north. For a feature of extensive area the location given is its centre, for a municipality its administrative centre, and for a river its mouth.

Name

Any alternative name is placed in parentheses, for instance **Vantaa (Vanda)**. In certain cases the name which is actually used in a district is printed in bold letters and the less frequent name in thinner type, for instance **Lapua (Lappo)**, **Mariehamn** (Maarianhamina).

The name in brackets means either

— the locality of a post office, for instance, **Kyrönlatva** 〒 61960 [Kauhajärvi] KAUHAJOKI,

— a municipality's administrative centre, for instance, Asikkala ◇ [Vääksy], or

— a **feature** of which the area designated by the **reference** word forms part, for instance, **Vanajanselkä** ▫ [< Vanajavesi]. The point of the **sign in** brackets points toward the partial feature.

Symbols

The various categories of features are shown with **symbols** according to the following **general classification:**

Administrative and nature conservation units

- ◆ town
- ◈ borough
- ◇ rural district
- ◇ nature park, national park

Localities

- ● moderately large locality (densely settled area)
- ○ moderately small locality (part of densely settled area, neighbourhood)

Operative points

- 〒 post office
- ⊖ railway station

Land features

- ▲ elevation
- ▽ peatland
- ⊳ island
- ⊳ cape
- △ other topographic feature

Hydrographic features

- ▫ lake, sea or part of them
- ▫ river
- ▫ rapids

Municipality

The index also usually lists the municipality of location. If the feature is extensive or long or if it extends through more than one municipality, its location is shown only with a reference.

Abbrevations

as. st.	station
kk. kby	main village
mlk. lk.	rural district

Post office

The name and symbol of the post office are followed by a five digit number which is the postal code number. For technical reasons the postal code number could not be placed *before* the name of the post office which is its true place. The name of the post office is written in capitals on a postal item.

All post offices and their code numbers are listed in the index except those whose name is taken from the locality's name and a sign number. For instance 00100 HELSINKI 10 is presented as **Helsinki** 〒. In these cases only the main post office is listed on the map. Only the most important post offices are shown on the map for Espoo and Vantaa. With these exceptions, all other post offices are shown on the map using the symbol 📯.

The map also shows the actual name of the locality. The locality of the post office is shown in the index in brackets when the post office and locality have different names. A considerable number of names of small localities, post offices and railway stations are missing from the map.

Reference				
Rural district of Kangasala	K 08	Kangasala ◇		
Densely settled area of Kangasala	K 08	- Kangasala ●	〒36200	Post office called Kangasala
Densely settled area of Kangasala station	K 08	- Kangasalan as. ●	/Kangasala as. 〒36100/	Post office called Kangasala as.
		Kangasala ⊖		Railway station called Kangasala

REPORT PRESENTED BY THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY*

Résumé

Conformément à la résolution 4 relative à la normalisation des noms géographiques adoptée par la Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques[1] et aux recommandations concernant l'élaboration de nomenclatures toponymiques nationales, approuvées par la deuxième Conférence[2], la République fédérale d'Allemagne a commencé à compiler et à publier une nomenclature toponymique du pays. Tous les noms qui figurent sur la carte topographique à l'échelle de 1 : 500 000 y seront inclus. Cette nomenclature sera publiée en plusieurs volumes, soit un volume pour chaque *Land*. Le premier volume paru porte sur la Basse-Saxe. La République fédérale a fourni des documents de travail spéciaux donnant des renseignements sur le volume et la forme des nomenclatures et sur l'expérience acquise en matière d'emploi du traitement automatique des données aux fins de l'élaboration de ces nomenclatures.

Sur une suggestion du Ständiger Ausschuss für Geographische Namen (STAGN), le Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut de Hambourg a établi une liste de noms géographiques normalisés pour la région de la côte de la mer du Nord et de la mer Baltique sur le territoire de la République fédérale d'Allemagne.

Le Ministère des affaires étrangères, en collaboration avec le Ministère fédéral de l'intérieur, a publié une *Ländernamenliste* (liste des noms de pays) révisée en graphie allemande pour l'emploi officiel.

Le Ständiger Ausschuss für Geographische Namen a continué de compiler la nomenclature toponymique mondiale allemande, dont le volume intéressant l'Europe a été publié en 1966.

Resumen

La República Federal de Alemania, atendiendo a la resolución 4, sobre uniformación de nombres geográficos, de la Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Uniformar los Nombres Geográficos[3], y con el fin de llevar a la práctica las recomendaciones relativas a la preparación de nomenclátores geográficos nacionales, confirmadas en la Segunda Conferencia[4], ha comenzado a compilar y publicar un nomenclátor geográfico de la República Federal de Alemania. Se incluirán en él todos los nombres que figuran en el mapa topográfico en escala 1 : 500.000. El nomenclátor geográfico se publicará en forma de volúmenes separados, uno para cada *Land* (Estado Federal de la República). Se acaba de publicar el primer volumen, correspondiente a *Niedersachsen*. Se han presentado también documentos de trabajo especiales que contienen información sobre la extensión y el formato del nomenclátor geográfico y sobre la experiencia adquirida en el uso de la elaboración automática de datos durante su compilación.

En atención a una sugerencia del Comité Permanente de Nombres Geográficos (*Ständiger Ausschuss für Geographische Namen*), el Instituto Hidrográfico Alemán de Hamburgo, (*Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut Hamburg*) ha compilado una lista de nombres geográficos normalizados correspondientes à la costa del Mar del Norte y el Mar Báltico situada dentro del territorio de la República Federal de Alemania.

El Ministerio de Relaciones Exteriores, en cooperación con el Ministerio Federal del Interior, ha publicado una lista revisada de nombres de países (*Ländernamenliste*) con la ortografía alemana, para uso oficial.

El Comité Permanente de Nombres Geográficos ha continuado compilando el nomenclátor geográfico mundial alemán, cuyo primer volumen, correspondiente a Europa, se publicó en 1966.

*

* *

In pursuit of resolution 4 on the standardization of geographical names, adopted by the United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names,[5] and in implementation of the recommendations for the preparation of national gazetteers, confirmed by the Second Conference,[6] the Federal Republic of Germany started to compile and publish a gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany. All names appearing on the topographic map 1 : 500,000 will be included. The gazetteer will be published in the form of separate volumes, one for each *Land* (Federal State of the Bundesrepublik). The volume *Niedersachsen* has been published as the first volume. Special working papers have been submitted, containing information on the size and form of the gazetteer and the experience gained in the use of automatic data-processing in compiling it.

---

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.43.

[1] *Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.68.I.9), p. 11.

[2] *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.2), par. 31.

[3] *Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Uniformar los Nombres Geográficos*, vol. I, *Informe de la Conferencia* (publicación de las Naciones Unidas, No. de venta: S.68.I.9), cap. III.

[4] *Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos*, vol. I, *Informe de la Conferencia* (publicación de las Naciones Unidas, No. de venta: S.74.I.2), parr. 31.

[5] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.68.I.9), chap. III.

[6] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), para. 31.

Following a suggestion of the Ständiger Ausschuss für Geographische Namen (StAGN), the Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut, Hamburg, compiled a list of standardized geographical names shown at the coast of the North Sea and the Baltic Sea within the territory of the Federal Republic of Germany.

The Foreign Office, in co-operation with the Federal Department of the Interior, published a revised *Ländernamenliste* (list of country names) in the German spelling for official use.[7]

The Ständiger Ausschuss für Geographische Namen has continued to compile the *German World Gazetteer*; the volume covering Europe (excluding the USSR) came out in 1966.

[7] See *Gemeinsames Ministerialblatt* 28 Jg. No. 10, 20 April 1977.

REPORT PRESENTED BY THE GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC*

On the occasion of the Third United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names the following report is submitted on the progress made in the field of standardizing geographical names in the German Democratic Republic since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names (1972).

First, on 18 September 1973, the German Democratic Republic was admitted to the United Nations Organization. This implied for the German Democratic Republic the possibility of actively and constructively co-operating in solving the tasks facing the Conferences of the United Nations in connexion with the standardization of geographical names. Even before the admission of the German Democratic Republic to the United Nations, reports on developments in the German Democratic Republic of activities in this field were presented to the two preceding Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names (in 1967 and 1972) through the good offices of friendly socialist countries. These were published in the United Nations documents on these conferences (E/CONF.53/L.81 and E/CONF.61/L.94).

These reports elucidated the principles and regulations worked out in the German Democratic Republic for the national standardization of geographical names and specified the relevant documents published. The German Democratic Republic is fully aware of the great significance of the standardization of geographical names for purposes of communication and sees in it a means to a better understanding among nations and to the peaceful co-operation of countries in many spheres of social life.

Secondly, following the German Democratic Republic's admission to the United Nations Organization the Government of the German Democratic Republic took decisions for active and constructive co-operation in the United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names. They relate in particular to the further qualification of activities in the field of the standardization of geographical names in the German Democratic Republic and to the evaluation of the outcome of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in 1972, and of the results of the deliberation of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names in New York in 1975.

In the period under review the German Democratic Republic also took an active part in the sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names in New York (March 1975) and in the deliberations of the Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division, as well as those of the East-Central and South-East Europe and of the USSR Divisions; in the two last-mentioned divisions the German Democratic Republic was present only as an observer.

Thirdly, progress was also made in the national standardization of geographical names in the terrirory of the German Democratic Republic. In addition to the publication *General Guidelines for the Spelling of Geographical Names of the German Democratic Republic*,[1] which covers the names of the country's most important mountain ranges, mountains, lakes, rivers and so forth, two publications by Staatsverlag der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik, the *Encyclopaedia of Places in the German Democratic Republic*[2] and the *List of Communities in the German Democratic Republic*[3] also present newly revised bases for the spelling of place names in the German Democratic Republic.

According to article 40 of the Constitution of the German Democratic Republic, geographical names in regions of the countries of Dresden and Cottbus, which are inhabited by people of the Sorb nationality, are used also in their Sorb linguistic form. The spelling of these names is specified in the publication *Sorb-German and German-Sorb List of Place Names in the Bilingual Districts of the Counties of Dresden and Cottbus*.[4]

Fourthly, the implementation of resolutions 28 and 29, adopted at the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, led to further advances in reducing exonyms. In keeping with resolution 28, a list of exonyms was compiled and published in 1975 under the title *General Guidelines for the Spelling of Other Geographical Names in Cartographic Products of the German Democratic Republic*.[5]

* The original text of this paper, prepared by the Board of Surveying and Mapping, Ministry of the Interior, German Democratic Republic, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.45.

[1] *Allgemeine Richtlinie für die Schreibweise geographischer Namen der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik*, 2nd ed. (Berlin, 1970).

[2] *Ostlexicon der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik*, 1974.

[3] *Verzeichnis der Gemeinden der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik*, 1976.

[4] *Sorbisch-deutsches und deutsch-sorbisches Ortsnamenverzeichnis der zweisprachigen Kreise der Bezirke Dresden und Cottbus* (Bautzen, Domowina-Verlag, 1969).

[5] *Allgemeine Richtlinie für die Schreibweise sonstiger geographischer Namen in kartographischen Erzeugnissen der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik*, 1975.

Fifthly, the publication entitled *Instructions for the Spelling of Geographical Names in Cartographic Products of the German Democratic Republic*[6] was published by the Ministry of the Interior, Board for Surveying and Mapping, in its fifth revised edition in 1974 and in its sixth revised edition in 1977. These *Instructions* are continuously brought up to date and it has turned out to be an effective document on the standardized spelling of geographical names in the German Democratic Republic. Particulars concerning the structure and the contents of the *Instructions* are contained in the publication *Report on the Level Reached in the Standardization of Geographical Names in the German Democratic Republic*,[7] which was submitted on the occasion of the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names (Geneva, 1967) as document E/CONF.53/L.81.

Sixthly, guidelines were published for a number of European countries under the general title *General Guidelines for the Spelling of Geographical Names*.[8] These *Guidelines* contain information on documents relating to the established spelling of names in cartographic products, the application of exceptions to the rules and the appellatives as well as the lists of geographical names. Lists of the most important abbreviations were included as well. In the period under review such *Guidelines* were issued for Albania (1972), Norway (1973), Sweden (1973), Poland (1974), Luxembourg, Malta, Liechtenstein, Andorra, San Marino, the Holy See and Monaco (1974), Greece (1975), and for Finland (1976). All these documents continue the series of *Guidelines*, the publication of which started in 1967. Similar *Guidelines* for Yugoslavia and Ireland are to be published soon.

[6] *Instruktion für die Schreibweise geographischer Namen in kartographischen Erzeugnissen der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik.*

[7] *Bericht über den Stand der Standardisierung geographischer Namen in der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik.*

[8] *Allgemeine Richtlinien für die Schreibweise geographischer Namen.*

RAPPORT PRÉSENTÉ PAR MADAGASCAR*

Summary

The present report outlines the main activities and progress achieved in Madagascar in the standardization of geographical names since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London from 10 to 31 May 1972.

The National Committee for Geographical Names was set up in 1973 and immediately undertook a study of the problems related to generic terms and to the names of some of the more important cities.

The Cartographic Institute has published three maps for use in schools at the scale of 1:1,250,000, using, for the first time, local generic terms and national place names only.

Resumen

El presente informe expone los principales acontecimientos y progresos realizados en Madagascar respecto a la normalización de los nombres geográficos desde la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, celebrada en Londres del 10 al 31 de mayo de 1972.

Un Comité Nacional de los Nombres Geográficos fue establecido en 1973 e inmediatamente se puso a resolver los problemas planteados por los términos genéricos y los nombres de las ciudades más importantes.

El Instituto Geográfico publicó tres mapas al 1:1.250.000 para uso en las escuelas, empleando únicamente el idioma malgache.

* Le texte original de ce rapport, préparé par le secrétariat du Comité national des noms géographiques, Institut cartographique de Madagascar, B.P. 32, Antananarivo, Madagascar, a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.51.

COMITÉ NATIONAL DES NOMS GÉOGRAPHIQUES

L'événement qui a marqué la période écoulée depuis la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques a été l'aboutissement des efforts consacrés à la création d'un Comité national des noms géographiques.

Une Commission de toponymie existait déjà au sein du Service géographique depuis 1967 mais sa fonction était limitée car elle ne pouvait décider que sur le choix des noms géographiques d'importance mineure (petits villages ou campements perdus en pleine campagne, petites rivières ou détails peu connus et de faible importance). Cette Commission de toponymie était composée des ingénieurs et techniciens du Service géographique et bénéficiait de l'appui logistique du Service géographique pour la collecte des données sur le terrain; le volume de ces dernières était déjà important et couvrait tout le territoire national: noms géographiques de localités (y compris les grandes villes), noms géographiques hydrographiques et maritimes, termes génériques.

Il était nécessaire alors de créer un comité ayant l'autorité et la compétence pour délibérer à l'échelle nationale: c'est ainsi qu'en 1973 fut formé, après approbation du Conseil des Ministres, le Comité national des noms géographiques (décret n° 73-157 du 15 juin 1973).

Ce Comité, composé de 21 membres, comprend des linguistes, géographes, scientifiques, techniciens, administrateurs provenant des grands services gouvernementaux traitant des noms géographiques: Ministère des travaux publics, Ministère de l'intérieur, Institut cartographique, Service topographique, Service hydrographique, Académie malgache, Université (Facultés des Lettres et de géographie), Ministère de l'information, Institut national de la statistique.

Le Comité est un organisme consultatif et ne peut pas décider de la modification d'un nom géographique ou de l'attribution d'un nom à une entité géographique du territoire national: ses propositions seront présentées pour approbation éventuelle au Conseil des Ministres qui décide en dernier lieu.

Le Comité s'est réuni à plusieurs reprises. Après avoir défini les principes directeurs relatifs au traitement des noms géographiques, il a étudié les termes génériques à utiliser dans la langue nationale à la place de termes génériques français auxquels l'usage scolaire est habitué. Les noms géographiques de localités proprement dits font l'objet de recherches en cours.

Etude des termes génériques

Une des premières tâches du Comité a été d'étudier la possibilité de publier des cartes destinées au public national et donc rédigées dans la langue malgache qui est à la fois langue nationale et officielle.

En effet, toutes les cartes publiées jusqu'à ce jour, aussi bien les cartes topographiques que les cartes thématiques, et en particulier les cartes destinées à l'usage scolaire, ont été rédigées en français.

Sous l'impulsion des ingénieurs de l'Institut cartographique et avec le concours de l'Académie malgache, des chercheurs et enseignants du Ministère de l'éducation nationale, de la radio et d'un vaste public contacté par correspondance, radio ou visite sur place, ces efforts viennent d'être couronnés de succès par la publication d'un vocabulaire usuel bilingue, français-malgache et malgache-français des termes génériques usuels (400 termes environ) utilisés en géographie et cartographie.

Certes, la liste n'est ni complète, ni entièrement satisfaisante mais l'accueil favorable obtenu auprès des enseignants et des établissements scolaires de toute l'île constitue un très bon point pour les efforts accomplis par le Comité.

Etude des noms géographiques locaux

Etant donné l'étendue du territoire (453 feuilles au 1 : 100 000, de dimensions 30 sur 40 km sont nécessaires pour couvrir l'île entière) et le pourcentage de noms litigieux dans chaque feuille (environ 8 p. 100), le volume des noms qui doivent être examinés par le Comité est énorme; en effet, une feuille contient de 200 à 400 noms géographiques environ, ce qui donnerait un total de 11 000 noms litigieux environ.

Le Comité a limité, dans un premier temps, ses études et recherches sur les noms géographiques figurant sur la carte routière au 1: 2 000 000; une attention particulière a été portée sur les noms de villes les plus importantes dont la prononciation a été déformée par les étrangers tels que Tananarive, Majunga et Tuléar, ou qui ont reçu des noms absolument différents des noms consacrés par l'usage local tels que Diégo-Suarez.

Ainsi, on peut citer, à titre d'exemple, les propositions suivantes présentées par le Comité en vue d'attribuer de nouveaux noms à quelques villes:

Ancien nom	Nom proposé	
Tananarive	Antananarivo	/$\tilde{\alpha}$tananariv^{u}/
Majunga	Mahajanga	/ mahadz$\tilde{\alpha}$g^{a} /
Diégo-Suarez	Antseranana	/$\tilde{\alpha}$tseranan^{a}/
Tamatave	Toamasina	/ tuamasin^{a}/
Tuléar	Toliara	/ tuliar^{a}/

Un pas important sera déjà fait quand le problème des noms géographiques et des termes génériques figurant sur la carte routière au 1: 2 000 000 sera résolu dans un avenir proche; le reste du travail, en passant aux échelles supérieures, ne posera que le problème du volume important des noms à traiter.

Réalisation

Les résultats des études menées par le Comité national, et en particulier par les chercheurs et enseignants du Ministère de l'éducation nationale et par l'Institut cartographique, ont permis à celui-ci de publier trois cartes au 1: 1 250 000 rédigées entièrement dans la langue nationale et destinées à l'usage scolaire; il s'agit de:

a) La carte physique;
b) La carte du tapis végétal;
c) La carte des climats.

Des essais de présentation d'une légende bilingue français-malgache devant satisfaire les usagers étrangers et nationaux sont en cours à l'Institut cartographique; ils concernent en principe toute la gamme de productions cartographiques de cet établissement, à savoir: cartes routières (au 1:2 000 000 et au 1:500 000), cartes topographiques (au 1:100 000 et au 1:50 000), cartes générales.

Par contre, les moyens de diffusion autres que les cartes n'ont été jusqu'ici que très peu utilisés.

REPORT PRESENTED BY JAPAN*

Standardization of geographical names

The Antarctic Place-Names Committee of Japan is the only organization of the Japanese Government that deals with geographical names in the Antarctic; there is no Government agency responsible for centralized collection, registration and administration of geographical names.

The Antarctic Place-Names Committee of Japan was

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.54.

established within the National Polar Research Institute, the purpose of which is to name appropriately places in the Antarctic area with a view to preparing maps of the Antarctic area and facilitating its observation and survey. Up to now, 188 place names have been selected and approved by the Committee.

The Joint Committee on the Standardization of Geographical Names has decided on about 1,000 place names since its activities were previously reported at the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Names. Using the adopted place names, the 1 : 500,000-scale maps have been completed and further work will be done on place names for the preparation of larger-scale maps.

The Joint Committee on the Standardization of Geographical Names was established to carry out the work of standardizing the place names adopted by the Geographical Survey Institute, the Ministry of Construction and the Hydrographic Department of the Maritime Safety Agency, Ministry of Transport. The place names to be standardized by the Committee will be used in maps issued by the Geographical Survey Institute and in the Nautical and Aeronautical Charts and Publications issued by the Hydrographic Department. Any decision by this Committee is not binding on other ministries. However, representatives of the Elementary and Secondary Education Bureau of the Ministry of Education and the Broadcast Culture Research Institute of the Japan Broadcasting Corporation (NHK) take part in the Committee as observers, with a view to making use of the names adopted by the Committee in elementary education and broadcasting.

On the other hand, the Textbook Research Center, an extra-departmental body for the Ministry of Education, is scheduled to establish a committee in the near future for the purpose of assisting in the adoption of place names.

Romanization of geographical names

As to methods of expressing Japanese place names in Roman letters, there are two systems now in use: Kunrei Siki (a system adopted under a Government ordinance) and Syūsei Hebon Siki (modified Hepburn system). Kunrei Siki is used in topographic maps, nautical charts and Antarctic maps; Syūsei Hebon Siki is used in aeronautical charts and geological maps.

Geographical names of oceans, seas and undersea features

The names adopted by the International Hydrographic Organization (IHO) on the basis of international consensus are now used as the geographical names of oceans and seas.

As regards the geographical names of undersea features, the Assembly on Geographical Names of Oceans, sponsored by the Hydrographic Department of the Maritime Safety Agency, is engaged in naming or standardizing the names of undersea topographical features, as required for nautical and bathymetric charting. The Assembly has met five times since the Second Conference. Two hundred sixteen names have been adopted so far.

The procedures and standards for naming are as follows:

(*a*) When the need arises to give a geographical name to any sea-bottom feature disclosed by a recent survey within or near the territorial waters, the Hydrographic Department proposes a name on the basis of the information collected on the particular spot surveyed as well as one for referential documents. The name proposed is then discussed by the above-mentioned Assembly and adopted for general use when found appropriate;

(*b*) Standards for names are established by the Assembly on Geographical Names of Oceans. This organization is sponsored by the Hydrographic Department of the Maritime Safety Agency. Members of the Assembly are specialists/experts from various governmental agencies and scientific organizations related to oceanic researches, i.e. the Ministry of International Trade and Industry, the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry, the Ministry of Transport, the Ministry of Education, the University of Tokyo, the Scientific Council of Japan, the Association of Japanese Geographers, the Oceanographical Society of Japan and the Japanese Society of Scientific Fisheries.

REPORT PRESENTED BY THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA*

Résumé

Depuis la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, tenue en 1972, les Etats-Unis d'Amérique ont poursuivi leurs travaux concernant les programmes de normalisation des noms géographiques des Etats-Unis ainsi que des pays étrangers. Compte tenu des directives formulées par le United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) pour la normalisation de tous les noms utilisés à des fins officielles aux Etats-Unis, ces programmes portent surtout sur les noms utilisés à l'intérieur des Etats-Unis ainsi que sur les noms de détails situés dans des pays étrangers souverains et non souverains. En ce qui concerne les noms des Etats-Unis, les travaux du BGN sont exécutés par le Comité des noms des Etats-Unis. Depuis la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, le Comité a examiné quelque 82 000 noms, cette activité comprenant plusieurs tâches telles que l'examen des propositions de nouveaux noms, le contrôle de certains noms afin de vérifier leur exactitude, et les réponses aux demandes de renseignements con-

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Richard R. Randall, Executive Secretary of the United States Board on Geographic Names, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.62.

cernant des noms. Les décisions officielles prises par le BGN au sujet de noms des Etats-Unis, soit un total d'environ 6 000 entre 1972 et 1977, ont continué à être publiées dans des listes trimestrielles intitulées *Decisions on Geographic Names in the United States* (*Décisions concernant les noms géographiques des Etats-Unis*). Un nouveau programme entrepris par le United States Geological Survey en coopération avec le BGN a permis de mettre au point un système informatisé de traitement des données toponymiques.

En ce qui concerne les pays étrangers, le BGN a publié, dans le cadre de programmes exécutés par le Comité des noms étrangers, 37 nomenclatures contenant ensemble 383 850 noms. Afin de permettre une diffusion rapide des décisions concernant les noms étrangers, une série de brochures seront distribuées aux utilisateurs des nomenclatures du BGN afin de leur communiquer des informations sur les décisions dès qu'elles auront été prises. Parmi les programmes en cours d'élaboration, il y aura une nouvelle série de nomenclatures qui viendront remplacer les anciens documents du BGN. Conçues afin de mieux satisfaire les besoins des utilisateurs, ces publications seront à peu près semblables aux anciens documents de référence. Le Comité consultatif des noms de l'Antarctique du BGN et le Comité consultatif des noms des détails sous-marins ont poursuivi leurs programmes, le premier de ces comités ayant proposé environ 750 noms depuis 1972 et le deuxième ayant examiné quelque 400 noms. Un nouvel organe créé en 1974, le Comité consultatif des noms des détails extraterrestres, est chargé d'examiner les noms des détails extraterrestres afin de répondre aux besoins des organes officiels des Etats-Unis qui élaborent des cartes des planètes et autres corps célestes. Les Etats-Unis ont également collaboré activement aux programmes internationaux et bilatéraux concernant la toponymie.

Resumen

Desde la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, celebrada en 1972, los Estados Unidos de América han continuado trabajando en sus programas para normalizar los nombres geográficos, tanto en el país como en el extranjero. Reflejando las directrices de la Junta de Nombres Geográficos de los Estados Unidos (BGN) encaminadas a normalizar todos los nombres, para los fines oficiales de los Estados Unidos estos programas se concentran en los nombres del territorio de los Estados Unidos y de zonas extranjeras soberanas y no soberanas. En la zona nacional, la labor de la BGN es administrada por el Comité de Nombres Nacionales. En el lapso transcurrido después de la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas, ese Comité pasó revista a unos 82.000 nombres, lo que comprendió diversas tareas, tales como examinar las propuestas de nuevos nombres, revisar los nombres para verificar su exactitud y dar respuesta a pedidos de información sobre nombres. Las decisiones oficiales de la BGN sobre nombres nacionales, que ascendieron a unas 6.000 entre 1972 y 1977, continuaron apareciendo en la publicación trimestral *Decisions on Geographic Names in the United States* (Decisiones sobre nombres geográficos en los Estados Unidos). Como resultado del nuevo programa iniciado por el Estudio Geológico de los Estados Unidos, en cooperación con la BGN, se ha elaborado un sistema para manejar la información relativa a los nombres utilizando técnicas de elaboración electrónica de datos.

En lo que respecta a las zonas extranjeras, la BGN publicó 37 nomenclátores con un total de 383.850 nombres, en virtud de los programas que administra el Comité de Nombres Extranjeros. A fin de permitir una difusión más rápida de las decisiones relativas a los nombres extranjeros, se distribuirá una serie de folletos a los usuarios de los nomenclátores de la BGN, para proporcionarles información sobre las decisiones poco después de la adopción de éstas. Entre los programas que se están preparando, figura una nueva serie de nomenclátores para reemplazar a los documentos de la BGN. Las publicaciones serán muy similares a los artículos de consulta anteriores y estarán diseñadas para satisfacer necesidades mas amplias de los usuarios. El comité Asesor sobre Nombres Antárticos y el Comité Asesor sobre Accidentes Geográficos Submarinos, ambos pertenecientes a la BGN, continuaron sus programas: el primero, de ellos aprobó unos 750 nombres y el segundo revisó unos 400. En 1974 se creó el Comité Asesor sobre Nombres de Accidentes Topográficos Extraterrestres para que revisara ese tipo de nombres con arreglo a las necesidades de los organismos de los Estados Unidos que preparan mapas de cuerpos planetarios. Los Estados Unidos también llevaron a cabo actividades en programas de nombres internacionales y programas bilaterales.

*

* *

Introduction

Since the Second United Nations Conference on Geographical Names, the United States has continued to be active in programmes for standardizing geographic names to meet requirements of the federal Government. The management of these programmes has been exercised by the United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN), an interdepartmental body created originally in 1890 and established in its present form by a public law in 1947. This report will describe major developments concerning geographic names programmes in the United States between the Second and Third United Nations Conferences.

General

As has been cited in documents made available at the previous conference, BGN operates in two major areas: domestic and foreign. Domestic interests are managed by the Domestic Names Committee, and foreign interests (here meaning areas under the sovereignty of other nations) are the responsibility of the Foreign Names

Committee. In addition, the following committees are responsible for non-sovereign areas: the Advisory Committee on Antarctic Names, the Advisory Committee on Extraterrestrial Feature Names and the Advisory Committee on Undersea Features. Helping with the administration of over-all BGN programmes are the Executive Committee and the Publications Committee.

Several changes have taken place since 1972. Dr. Meredith Burrill, long-time Executive Secretary of BGN, retired in February 1973 after serving in this capacity since 1947. He was succeeded by Dr. Richard R. Randall. At about the same time, other persons long affiliated with BGN also retired. These retirements, associated with a government-wide occurrence of retirements, brought new people—and new ideas—into BGN, with the result that certain procedures were changed. These and other changes will be discussed elsewhere in the report.

Domestic Names Committee

This Committee added new members, not only because of retirements but also because two departments decided to have three representatives (instead of the normal two). These new members helped introduce new ideas concerning Committee operations. Out of these new ideas, many of which are still being developed, came one major improvement affecting Committee operations. Formerly, it was customary for the Committee to examine lists of names repeatedly at monthly meetings until all names had received final action (either approved or rejected) and lists were no longer subject to review. At the suggestion of new members, the Committee staff now processes names that require routine examination, with the result that the Committee, by seeing only a fraction of the names, has more time to study other important matters.

During the interval between the Second and the Third United Nations Conferences, the Committee processed some 82,000 names. This entailed a variety of actions, including verification of names, review and research of conflicting names data for the purpose of making a decision, response to official and public inquiries for names information and consideration of proposals for new names or name changes. Of this total number, the Committee made decisions to approve 6,211 names on behalf of BGN. These decisions were listed in the BGN quarterly entitled *Decisions on Geographic Names in the United States.*

Two major domestic names proposals that have occupied the Committee's attention are worthy of mention.

In 1973 the Committee, acting on behalf of the full Board, voted to change the name of a geographic feature, Cape Kennedy (in Florida) to Cape Canaveral, the original name. The name "Cape Kennedy" had been applied by BGN, in the aftermath of the assassination of President Kennedy in 1963, to a feature in Florida that was the site of a new United States space exploration facility. Following the example of the State of Florida to restore the name Cape Canaveral several years later, and after a public hearing on the case that attracted national interest, the Committee followed suit in 1973.

The second proposal calls for a change of the name of Mt. McKinley (in Alaska) to Denali. The present name, which honours a former United States president, was applied in 1926. The proposal, initiated by the Legislature of the State of Alaska, seeks to restore the original Indian appellation, Denali, which means "big one". Many people believe that the feature should be renamed. Plans are now being made to hold a public hearing in view of the widespread interest in this, North America's highest mountain.

During the period between the two Conferences, the Domestic Names Committee was also involved in a programme to develop a plan for automatically processing domestic names information. Called the Geographic Names Information System, this programme was initiated by the United States Geological Survey (which agency supports domestic-names programmes of BGN) to determine whether needs for names information could be met through automation. This programme, which already covers several states and which could constitute the beginning of a United States national gazetteer project, is described in a paper submitted by the United States under item 11 of the provisional agenda.

The Committee has corresponded with its counterparts in Canada and Mexico to study various nomenclatural problems of features common to the respective countries. Despite the presence of long borders both to the north and to the south, there are actually few names problems, and they have been satisfactorily and expeditiously solved.

The United States Geological Survey of the Department of the Interior provides staff support for the domestic activities of BGN and is responsible for publishing various documents concerning domestic names.

Foreign Names Committee

In the period 1972–1977 the BGN Foreign Names Committee and its support staff continued with programmes to produce gazetteers, preparing 27 gazetteers covering nearly 30 countries. The following list indicates the areas or subjects covered, dates of issuance, and approximate number of entries.

United States Board on Geographic Names gazetteers
Published since 1972

1972	*Entries*
Africa and South-west Asia Supplement	3,150
Algeria	45,200
Asia Supplement	2,075
Australia, New Zealand and Oceania Supplement	700
Conventional Names	900
Dominican Republic	28,400
Hong Kong and Macao	3,000
Zambia	38,000

1973	Entries
Haiti	13,000
Laos	21,000
Libya	37,500
Southern Rhodesia	22,500
1974	
British Solomon Islands and Gilbert and Ellice Islands	12,450
Republic of China	25,000
Fiji, Tonga and Nauru	14,275
French Guiana	8,000
New Caledonia and Wallis and Futuna	5,950
New Hebrides	4,500
Surinam	3,500
1976	
Bahrain, Kuwait, Qatar and United Arab Emirates	7,650
Bangladesh	33,700
Guyana	7,300
Nicaragua	7,500
Oman	5,600
Liberia	10,600
Yemen Arab Republic	10,600
People's Democratic Republic of Yemen	11,800

A reorganization of United States federal agencies resulted in the establishment of the Defense Mapping Agency (DMA) in 1972. With this event, the staff supporting BGN foreign-names programmes was attached to the DMA Topographic Center, one of several DMA elements. At the same time, the Executive Secretariat for BGN was placed in the DMA headquarters.

These changes also affected the BGN gazetteer production programme. Because these place-name reference works were to some degree duplicative of other gazetteer-like documents published by DMA, a decision was made to develop a single new publication. Planning for the new gazetteer (which will closely resemble BGN gazetteers) is now being completed, and the first work in the series should appear in 1978. In the meantime, work will continue on BGN gazetteers already under production (*Antarctica*, *Kenya* and *Papua New Guinea*). In addition, a new gazetteer on BGN conventional names is scheduled for release soon.

Another important development was the 1977 programme to reprint all BGN gazetteers that were out of stock. Even though some of these are relatively old, their renewed availability should meet the requirements for gazetteers that come to BGN from many quarters. The titles reprinted in 1977 are:

Chad
Denmark
Ecuador
Hawaiian Islands
Paraguay
South Atlantic Islands
Spanish Guinea
USSR (vol. V)
Algeria
British Honduras
East Germany
France (vols. I and II)
Mexico
Poland (vols. I and II)
Spain
Turkey
West Germany (vols. I and II)
Yugoslavia
Australia, New Zealand and Oceania (Supplement)
Luxembourg
Netherlands Antilles
Switzerland
Togo
North Viet Nam
Thailand
Ireland
Hungary
India (vol. I)

Persons desiring a complete list of BGN gazetteers should correspond with:

Executive Secretary of BGN
Building 56
United States Naval Observatory
Washington, D.C. 20305
United States of America

To bring information about new or changed foreign names to users more expeditiously, BGN has developed a pamphlet series that will be issued periodically. This series, the first issue of which will be released in July 1977, will contain data concerning names approved by the Committee for official United States purposes, along with supporting information as required. It is primarily intended to provide users of the BGN gazetteers with a means of updating their records.

The staff of the Committee, while continuing work on gazetteer programmes, also performed a variety of tasks, including responding to inquiries about foreign names from federal and non-federal agencies and individuals, preparing materials for consideration at the Committee's periodic meetings and supporting the Executive Secretary by preparing special materials required for international conferences and providing experts to accompany him to such sessions.

The staff for the Foreign Names Committee (and for the BGN Advisory Committees) is provided by the Defense Mapping Agency, which agency also prints and distributes gazetteers and other materials for BGN.

Antarctic names

The BGN Advisory Committee on Antarctic Names has processed about 750 names since 1972, during the course of 20 meetings. The third edition of the *Antarctic Names Gazetteer* is now being planned. This publication will carry biographical information on persons commemorated by place names. As an interim measure, Antarctic names approved by BGN since the last edition of the *Gazetteer* (1969) appeared in the March-June 1977 issue of the *Antarctic Journal*, published by the United States National Science Foundation.

Extraterrestrial names

In 1974, BGN established the Advisory Committee on Extraterrestrial Feature Names. The task of this body is to ensure that United States mapping and charting agencies can acquire names of extraterrestrial features in time to meet production schedules. Much of the Committee's time has been occupied with establishing mechanisms to manage names information; close co-operation with the appropriate bodies of the International Astronomical Union is envisaged. Additional facts about extraterrestrial names are found in a report submitted by the United States under item 14 of the provisional agenda.

Undersea features

The BGN Advisory Committee on Undersea Features continued to process names, about 400 having been approved for official United States purposes since the Second United Nations Conference. Attention has been paid to developing new terms and definitions to meet international objectives and to satisfy requirements for working with small features found on the United States continental shelf. A report on United States activities in this area was submitted by the United States under item 14 of the provisional agenda.

Bilateral and international co-operation

In keeping with tradition, BGN maintained close ties during the period with the Permanent Committee on Geographical Names for Official British Use. In addition to frequent correspondence about names problems, representatives of the two organizations held their tenth conference in London in September 1976. At that time, discussions covered a broad range of questions and led to agreement in many areas.

The United States and Canada also continued to engage in discourse on various topics of common interest. The report submitted by the United States-Canada Division under item 16 (*c*) of the provisional agenda covers the relations between the two countries.

As regards co-operative efforts elsewhere, the United States worked successfully with Guyana and Kenya in producing gazetteers. Of significance also is the fact that the United States responded to a request by the Yemen Arab Republic for advice about the establishment of a Yemen Arab Republic Board on Geographic Names. The advice included detailed suggestions for every phase of names standardization.

The United States also was active in the international arena through its work with the Pan American Institute on Geography and History (PAIGH). As described in a report prepared by the United States for item 16 (*e*) of the provisional agenda, Dr. Randall, Executive Secretary of BGN, has acted as President of the PAIGH Committee on Geographical Terminology since 1974. This committee is making progress on publishing a glossary of geographical (or generic) terms used in Central and South America.

REPORT PRESENTED BY NORWAY*

Since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in 1972, work on national standardization of geographical names for official use has gone forward in Norway in accordance with the rules adopted for the writing of Norwegian and Lapponian names. The major work on standardization of geographical names has been carried out in conjunction with the national topographic mapping programme (at scale 1:50,000) and the hydrographic charting programme on the coast. Only small areas in the south-west of southern Norway remain in the topographic programme. The same is true of northern Norway, where mapping of Finnmark, for example, is nearly completed. In large areas inland from the coast most of the maps will contain only Lappish names.

New maps of Dronning Maud's Land (Antarctica) and of Svalbard (Arctic) are also being drawn up. The official road-mapping programme carried out by the Norwegian Road Direction at scale 1:250,000 has been completed and names have been given to all of the roads.

After the London Conference the Nordic group held a symposium in 1972 on terminology in place-name research. Another was held in 1973 for the purpose of co-ordinating common rules for the processing of name data in Norden. After several meetings of the group the common rules so far obtained were published in *Norna Rapporter* (Uppsala, 1974).

Norsk Stadnamnarkiv (The Norwegian Place-Names Archives) in co-operation with the Government's name advisers is still at work preparing a list of definitions of Norwegian undersea feature terms compared with the GEBCO nomenclature. A glossary of designatory terms (with definition and meaning) and a glossary of generic terms in use in official Norwegian maps and charts are still in preparation. Lack of time impeded the co-ordination of the different lists included; the presentation is therefore postponed to next year.

A special committee appointed by the Norwegian Language Council has been at work during the past few years preparing a proposal for new rules for domestic standardization of Norwegian and Lapponian geographical names and for a special authority law for place names. So far only small changes will be made in the writing system of place names.

After the Third (Athens) Conference the Nordic group will hold a symposium in Helsinki, dealing, *inter alia*, with domestic writing systems and standardization of geographical names in Norden.

We wish to draw attention to the *Norsk Stadnamnleksikon* (Norwegian Place-names Dictionary), published in Oslo in 1976 and containing (in alphabetical order) the best-known Norwegian place names. The Dictionary provides, in addition to the correct pronunciation of each name, the etymology of each. Unfortunately, the Dictionary provides no map references and gives neither latitude nor longitude for individual features; nevertheless it will be of great interest to people dealing with and interested in Norwegian place names.

The Nordic Language Committee presented in 1961 a list giving Nordic spelling forms of States, colonies, inhabitant names and connected adjectives. Changes in sovereignty required comprehensive modifications and

*The original text of this paper appeared as documents E/CONF.69/L.64 and Add. 1.

extensions to be made in the list. A new list was therefore presented in 1973, including Danish, Norwegian, Swedish and Finnish spelling. The list covers autonomous States only according to the United Nations Terminology Bulletin, and with Southern Rhodesia and Namibia added (printed in *Språk i Norden* 1973, 73–107, and as offprint Lund (Sweden) 1973, 1–35). In the same publication is a list containing the same names adopted by Iceland and the Faroe Islands (1974, 81–113).

Finally, a gazetteer is now in preparation that will include all the place names on the maps in the 1:50,000 series. Although nothing has been published so far, those parts of the gazetteer dealing with southern Norway and with the two northernmost counties are almost complete and the whole gazetteer will be complete by the time all the maps in the series have been published. The gazetteer will be published in Norwegian and English, in accordance with the standard rules for gazetteers.

REPORT PRESENTED BY TURKEY*

Résumé

Les travaux de la Turquie relatifs à la normalisation des noms géographiques sont effectués par l'intermédiaire d'une Commission permanente d'experts composée de professeurs, de cartographes, de topographes et de représentants des ministères intéressés. Les noms de tous les lieux habités sont normalisés par cette Commission et regroupés dans diverses publications officielles. Les études sur la normalisation des noms des détails topographiques naturels se poursuivent. Il est jugé utile de revoir la composition et les travaux de cette Commission et de la réorganiser, si nécessaire, de manière qu'elle soit en mesure de contribuer davantage aux activités internationales et d'accélérer les travaux en cours en matière de normalisation des noms géographiques, compte tenu des résolutions qui seront adoptées à cet effet à la troisième Conférence – dans la mesure où elles seront acceptables pour la Turquie – et des études pertinentes faites par d'autres pays.

Les travaux relatifs à la normalisation des noms géographiques ont été effectués, en particulier au cours des dernières années, en liaison beaucoup plus étroite avec les activités concernant la production de cartes; en conséquence, on envisage de produire des feuilles de la carte internationale du monde au millionième couvrant la Turquie, ainsi qu'une nomenclature.

La Turquie apprécie les stages de formation en matière de normalisation des noms géographiques qui doivent être organisés par les Nations Unies et elle aimerait qu'une coopération plus étroite s'établisse dans ce domaine entre les organisations internationales, ainsi qu'entre ces organisations et les pays intéressés.

La Turquie, en tant que pays convaincu de la nécessité de préserver la paix et de l'importance du rôle que jouent les Nations Unies à cet égard, est favorable à la poursuite des activités internationales concernant la normalisation des noms géographiques (comme elle serait favorable à toute autre activité qui contribuerait à la paix mondiale et à la coopération internationale) et elle est d'avis qu'il faut encourager la tenue de réunions régionales dans ce domaine.

Resumen

En Turquía, la normalización de los nombres geográficos corre a cargo de una Comisión Permanente de Expertos, que está formada por profesores, cartógrafos, topógrafos y representantes de los ministerios interesados. Los nombres de todos los núcleos poblados son normalizados y reunidos en diversas publicaciones oficiales. Siguen realizándose estudios sobre la normalización de los nombres de los accidentes naturales. Se estima que es conveniente revisar la composición y la labor de dicha Comisión, y reorganizarla si fuera necesario, a fin de que pueda aportar una mayor contribución a las actividades internacionales en esta esfera y acelerar la labor ya realizada respecto de la normalización de los nombres geográficos, teniendo en cuenta las resoluciones que se aprueben a este respecto en la Tercera Conferencia —que sean aceptables para Turquía—y los estudios realizados por otros países en la materia.

La labor de normalización de los nombres geográficos está más estrechamente vinculada, en especial en los últimos anos, con las actividades de elaboración de mapas, y en consecuencia, se prevé la elaboración de láminas del Mapa Internacional del Mundo a Escala de un Millonésimo sobre Turquía, junto con un nomenclátor.

Turquía reconoce la importancia de los cursos de capacitación que van a organizar las Naciones Unidas sobre normalización de nombres geográficos, y es partidaria de que se establezca una cooperación más estrecha entre las organizaciones internacionales y de que éstas colaboren con los países interesados a este respecto.

Turquía, que cree en el mantenimiento de la paz y en el importante papel que las Naciones Unidas desempeñan a este fin, apoya la continuación de las actividades internacionales sobre normalización de los nombres geográficos (de la misma manera que apoyaría cualesquiera otros trabajos que contribuyan al mantenimiento de la paz y la cooperación internacionales) y estima que se debe fomentar la celebración de reuniones regionales sobre la materia.

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.65.

* * *

Although Turkey did not participate in the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in 1972, it has followed up the resolutions of the Conference and implemented them to the extent possible.

This report summarizes Turkish views on such basic topics as the activities carried out in Turkey on the standardization of geographical names, measures to be taken for improvement of these studies and the means for achievement of further progress in international co-operation in this regard.

Activities carried out in Turkey on the standardization of geographical names and its organization

Activities on the standardization of geographical names started long ago in Turkey. Initially, the geodetic and cartographic organizations were directed by geographers within the Ministry of the Interior. A 1957 Government decree reorganized these activities, and a Commission of Experts was established within the Ministry of the Interior. This Commission consists of representatives of the Ministry of the Interior, the Ministry of National Defence, the Ministry of National Education, the General Staff, the appropriate faculties of the several universities, the Turkish National Linguistics Centre and the General Directorate of Mapping. It is the responsibility of this Commission to carry out the activities on the standardization of the names of settlement centres—which make up such administrative divisions as provinces, districts, subdistricts and villages—and of geographical features and regions, including seas.

Geographical names and facts are first collected by topographers in the field according to certain forms. They are then reviewed and standardized by the Commission of Experts. In the course of this review work, the Commission takes into consideration the need for conformity of the geographical names with the rules of spelling as well as the measures necessary to differentiate between places in various regions of the country (especially inhabited places) that have the same name. In compliance with concerned legislation in this regard, the names reviewed by the Commission are first forwarded to the Governorships for the approval of the Administrative Boards and General Councils of the provinces. Depending on the views expressed (through the Governorships) by the Boards and Councils, the names are reviewed again, if necessary, before being finalized. Under existing legislation, the standardization of the names determined by the Commission for such administrative divisions as provinces and districts can be finalized only by new legislation, to be adopted to this end. This is why the names of provinces and districts reviewed by the Commission are submitted, through the Ministry of Interior, to the Turkish Grand National Assembly, where they are finalized after approval is secured.

The names of other administrative divisions and of geographical features are submitted, for the approval of the Ministry of Interior. Upon completion of standardization by the Commission of Experts, these names, when approved, are published in the official *Gazette* for the benefit of all official and private establishments; it is obligatory to use the standardized names published in the official *Gazette*.

Within the framework of the activities carried out in this regard, priority has been given to the names of settlement centres. Of these, the names of 67 provinces, 672 districts and their component divisions, covering all of Turkey, are completely standardized and have been published in a book.

On the other hand, studies on the standardization of the names of such natural features as gulfs, bays, rivers and mountains (as well as lighthouses etc.) have progressed much more slowly. One reason for this is the heavy work load in this area; another is the necessity of arranging to carry out studies to this end simultaneously with map production and revision activities.

It is expected that the present Commission of Experts will be reorganized, with an eye to promoting and accelerating its activities on the standardization of geographical names, in light of developments at the Third Conference and of the studies presented at the Conference by other countries.

Co-ordination between map production and standardization of geographical names

Due importance must be given to the production of maps at various scales (especially at large scales), not only in Turkey but in other countries as well, because of the considerable contribution of map-making to national development efforts. The large-scale maps are produced by photogrammetric methods and are then edited, and names added, as a result of activities carried out in the field on the spot. On the other hand, smaller-scale maps are produced by conversion from those of the larger scale through cartographic procedures carried out in the office. Therefore, except for a few exceptional cases, the initial work in the collection of names is carried out by topographers during production of large-scale maps or during their revision in the field. In principle, topographers collect the names by consulting the competent administrative authorities and the elderly citizens resident in each area, giving particular weight to the names used by the people. During this process, a name overlay of transparent base material is used in order to place the names at their exact locations on the map; the collected names are also listed in a table.

The names thus collected in the field are reviewed and finalized by the above-mentioned Commission of Experts and then printed on maps at a size (and in a typeface) suitable to the scale of the map. The number and distribution of names on each map are dependent on its scale and are defined in the instructions for the map's preparation.

In the beginning, some gaps have been encountered in the standardization of geographical names because of lack of sufficient co-ordination in names collection. However, action is taken for elimination of these de-

ficiencies during the revision of base maps, and the appropriate corrections are inserted in the smaller-scale maps when new editions are produced.

Sheets of Turkey for the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale

Turkey does not accept the sheets of Turkey as indicated in the *International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale*, Report for 1973[1] as official map sheets of Turkey, because Turkey did not produce them. Turkey therefore plans to produce eight sheets, covering Turkey, in conformity with the specifications determined for the *International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale*, applying the same sheet-line system. During the production of sheets, simultaneous preparation of a gazetteer has been considered. Initially for this purpose, a new gazetteer, dependent on the 1:500,000-scale map, has been prepared solely for national use. The 1:1,000,000 gazetteer will be produced by taking into consideration the experience gained in the production of the recently completed *Gazetteer* and by implementing the resolutions adopted in this connexion at the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names. The name and address of the establishment responsible for the preparation of the above-mentioned 1:1,000,000-scale map and the gazetteer are as follows:

Harita-Genel Müdürlüğü
Cebeci, Ankara
Turkey

During the course of these activities, it is expected that collaboration will be undertaken with the neighbouring countries on the spelling of the names that fall outside Turkish territory.

The map and gazetteer in question are expected to be completed by the time the forthcoming Third United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names opens.

Other topics

Training courses

Turkey supports the suggestion for the arrangement of training courses on the standardization of geographical names by the United Nations. It would be useful to circulate the course programmes to the nations in time for them to make their own arrangements for distribution of these programmes to the concerned establishments, which in turn will nominate the trainees.

Automatic data processing

Turkey already makes use of automatic data processing techniques in the compilation of gazetteers. It is also planned to improve the automatic data processing capability in such a way as to cover the other fields of work related to geographical names.

[1] United Nations publication, Sales No. E/F.75.I.4.

RAPPORT PRÉSENTÉ PAR L'EMPIRE CENTRAFRICAIN*

Un organisme national de cartographie, le Service topographique national, vient d'être créé dans l'Empire centrafricain. Ce Service, placé sous l'autorité directe du Ministère des travaux publics de l'équipement et de l'aménagement du territoire, a compétence générale sur tout le territoire de l'Empire centrafricain en matière de travaux cartographiques. Seules existent les publications de l'Institut géographique national français (IGN). Cet établissement assume la totalité de la cartographie de base du pays sur financement du Ministère français de la coopération ou sur budget local.

L'Empire centrafricain qui participe pour la première fois à une Conférence internationale sur la normalisation des noms géographiques n'a pas l'intention de présenter un document technique et se contentera de faire un exposé très bref à ce sujet.

L'Empire centrafricain dispose de documents cartographiques laissés par l'administration coloniale et n'est pas encore doté d'une institution nationale chargée de la normalisation des noms géographiques; c'est pourquoi la préparation et la normalisation de la cartographie de base sont toujours confiées à l'IGN.

Les principes de transcription de la toponymie africaine sont appliqués depuis 1964 sur toutes les cartes publiées par l'IGN. Les noms figurant sur les cartes de l'Empire centrafricain sont, depuis 1964, en accord avec ces principes de transcription (accord du Gouvernement centrafricain en date du 31 janvier 1964).

Cartes au 1:50 000 et au 1:200 000. Carte routière au 1:1 500 000, éditée en 1968,

Atlas de l'Empire centrafricain, édité en 1975.

La commission de toponymie de l'IGN a, pour sa part, contrôlé l'application de ces principes sur quatre feuilles au 1:200 000 éditées en 1975 (N'Délé, Pata, Ouadda, Haute-Kotto), sur neuf feuilles au 1:200 000 en cours d'édition (Batangafo, Bouca, Kaga-Bandoro, Bogangolo, Grivaï-Pamia, Zémio, Obo, Bambouti, Djema, Mont-Dangoura). Onze autres feuilles au 1:200 000 sont inscrites ou prévues sur les prochains programmes FAC, ainsi que la réalisation de la carte générale de l'Empire centrafricain au 1:1 500 000.

Normalisation nationale

A suivre pour information et application éventuelle dans l'avenir.

* Le texte original de ce rapport a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.66.

Coopération internationale

La délégation de l'Empire centrafricain sera amenée à donner son avis et à indiquer sa position lors de la discussion des différentes questions comprises dans ce point.

CONCLUSION

Le Gouvernement centrafricain tient à souligner l'intérêt qu'il porte à la normalisation des noms géographiques. Il espère pouvoir tirer profit de sa participation à la Conférence et être en mesure d'élaborer par la suite un programme ayant pour objectifs:

a) La création d'un organisme national chargé officiellement des noms géographiques;

b) L'élaboration de règles de transcriptions reconnues sur le plan national:

i) Soit par l'adoption ou l'adaptation des principes de l'IGN de 1964. (Il faut rappeler ici que les cartes réalisées par l'IGN ont subi des changements par suite de la création et des modifications du réseau routier, de l'implantation de nouveaux villages et de la détermination de nouvelles limites administratives.);

ii) Soit par la mise au point d'un système différent;

c) L'utilisation du recensement récent de 1975 pour l'établissement d'un répertoire alphabétique des noms de villages tenant compte des règles de transcriptions adoptées, ce répertoire devant être officialisé sur le plan national et utilisé par tous les services publics.

Ces objectifs peuvent paraître modestes, mais en pratique, s'ils pouvaient être atteints, un grand pas serait fait dans le sens de la normalisation des noms géographiques.

RAPPORT PRÉSENTÉ PAR LA FRANCE*

Depuis la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, tenue à Londres en 1972, l'Institut géographique national (IGN) a établi les nomenclatures toponymiques de plusieurs séries de cartes dont les feuilles ont été publiées au cours des cinq dernières années.

a) Cartes topographiques:

630 feuilles nouvelles
650 feuilles révisées
} au 1:25 000,

157 feuilles nouvelles
160 feuilles révisées
} au 1:50 000;

b) Cartes dérivées (séries touristiques):

57 feuilles au 1:100 000,
12 feuilles au 1:250 000;

c) Cartes spéciales: 48 feuilles.

L'étude des toponymes recueillis sur le terrain au cours des opérations effectuées en vue de l'établissement de la carte au 1:25 000 est confiée à la Commission de toponymie de l'IGN. On peut estimer à 10 000 environ le nombre des modifications apportées à ces toponymes depuis cinq ans.

La Commission procède à l'examen de l'état justificatif des noms que lui remet le topographe; ce document[1] a été présenté au cours de la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques. Dans les cas, assez fréquents, où l'enquête sur le terrain est insuffisante, des recherches complémentaires sont entreprises en bibliothèque et des renseignements sont demandés aux services nationaux ou départementaux des Archives de France.

Sur les feuilles révisées, les interventions de la Commission sont sensiblement moins nombreuses; elles ont pour but, outre la normalisation des noms nouveaux ajoutés à la carte ancienne, l'homogénéisation de la nomenclature par l'élimination des divergences que l'adjonction de noms nouveaux pourrait apporter sur la nouvelle édition.

Enfin, le nom des unités administratives est systématiquement repris selon un "gammage" relatif à l'importance de la population.

Depuis 1975, la Commission de toponymie est dotée d'un Bureau permanent, ce qui a accru considérablement son efficacité dans le domaine de la production cartographique. Le Bureau a rédigé des instructions générales à l'intention des opérateurs topographes, ainsi que des notes particulières en vue des travaux de terrain à exécuter dans les régions de toponymie dialectale. En particulier, à l'occasion de travaux en Savoie concernant la zone frontière, l'IGN a obtenu des autorités italiennes le relevé des dénominations recueillies sur le terrain. La Commission de toponymie entreprend l'étude de ces documents afin de normaliser les graphies des toponymes dialectaux dans cette région sur les productions de l'IGN.

Enfin, le Bureau a établi les nomenclatures toponymiques de diverses cartes thématiques ou touristiques et de cartes générales.

Représentant l'IGN, la Commission de toponymie participe aux travaux de la Commission consultative sur les noms de commune auprès du Ministère de l'intérieur. Ces derniers travaux sont exposés dans le rapport intitulé "Evolution des noms de commune en France entre 1970 et 1975 et leur normalisation", dont le texte est reproduit dans la présente publication sons le point 8.

* Le texte original de ce rapport a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.69.

[1] "Normalisation nationale: recherche sur le terrain des données relatives aux noms géographiques", *Deuxième Conférence de Nations Unies sur le normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. II, *Documents techniques* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.4), p. 93.

REPORT PRESENTED BY NIGERIA*

In Nigeria, the authority for the standardization of geographical names is the National Committee on the Standardization of Maps and Geographical Names. This Committee, of which the Director of Federal Surveys is the chairman, includes all the surveyors-general of the states; representatives of federal Government departments and agencies interested in geographical names and maps (such as agriculture and forestry, geological surveys and statistics); representatives of the surveying, geography and related departments in universities and institutions of higher learning; historians; and linguists. Similar committees also exist at the state level, with the surveyors-general as chairmen, but the state committees also include representatives of local governments, education authorities and organizations for the promotion of local languages and cultures. It may be mentioned that until the end of 1975 the Federation of Nigeria consisted of 12 states, but that more states were created early in 1976, bringing the total number of states up to 19; some of the newly created states have not yet established their local committees on the standardization of geographical names.

The Federal Surveys, the national mapping agency, is charged with the responsibility of compiling the geographical names since the names are required primarily for mapping. This is done in close collaboration with the survey departments of the states. The country is virtually covered with maps at the scale of 1:50,000 and the standardization of geographical names is based on this map series. The standardization of geographical names is not confined, however, to the names of settlements and features appearing on the 1:50,000 map series; it also extends to names on large-scale maps, including maps for cities and towns.

Before Nigeria attained independence, the spelling of geographical names was based on the system of the United Kingdom Royal Geographical Society. This necessitated the use of digraphs, and as a result some of the names were anglicized. Some of the names were also wrongly recorded, due possibly to the lack of knowledge of the local languages by the collectors of names. The standardization of geographical names is now based on local names, the collection of names is being undertaken by those with local knowledge of the particular area being dealt with and the names are further cross-checked by the local Government authority. This has created other problems, however, because of the variety of languages spoken in Nigeria. At present the number of Nigerian languages already identified lies between 380 and 390. This number may alter slightly either as new languages are discovered or as it becomes possible to join several speech forms together as dialects of a single language. But it has been claimed that whatever happens the ultimate number of Nigerian languages will not be less than 350, excluding the dialectal variations within a language. Of this large number of languages only a very small percentage have been studied adequately—that is, to the extent that it could be said that a practical orthography is available for each of them. Another problem resulting from the large number of languages is that of different spelling conventions for different languages: it is known that there are records of literary activity in well over 70 different Nigerian languages.

In the circumstances, the task of standardization of geographical names is far from easy. It has, however, been agreed, in accordance with the principle already adopted by the United Nations Conference on Geographical Names, to continue with the romanization of place names, resorting to the use of diacritical marks where this was considered necessary.

A third edition of the *Gazetteer of Geographical Names for Nigeria* was produced and printed but it has had to be withdrawn because of the subsequent decision to adopt the names used by the local inhabitants and not anglicized names or those adopted by our former colonial masters. Revisions were also needed to reflect the major administrative changes resulting from the creation of additional states within the country. The *Gazetteer* has now been completely revised using names based on the 1:50,000 topographical-map series. It is now at the final stage of processing for publication.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69./L.78.

REPORT PRESENTED BY GREECE*

Since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, considerable work has been carried out in Greece in the fields of collection, office treatment and standardization of geographical names. The main agencies involved were the Center for the Historical Dictionary of the Greek Language and the Mediaeval Hellenism Research Centre, both of the Academy of Athens; the Departments of Linguistics of the Universities of Athens, Thessaloniki and Ioannina; the Army Geographical Service; the Hydrographic Service; the Committee of Toponyms in the Ministry of Interior; and the National Statistical Service.

In the field of the collection of geographical names, the work has been carried on by specialized personnel (officers and civilians) of the Army Geographical Service, who have continued, year by year, the field collection of names. Assisted by community secretaries, archaeologists, teachers, country guards, forest rangers and even shepherds, they have collected new names of inhabited

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.79.

regions, mountains, hills, rivers, lakes, springs, valleys and so on as well as ancient Greek toponyms and names of new artificial works. All names thus collected are verified through cross-references before they are entered on maps. A similar approach is employed by the Hydrographic Service, whose specialized personnel work closely with local fishermen and islanders as well as with officers of the local Coast Guard units. The centres of the Academy of Athens and the Departments of Linguistics of the universities continued their programmes for the collection of geographical names from specialized treatises on the toponyms of various localities of Greece and from various publications of general interest as well as from manuscript collections of toponyms submitted by individuals to the institution concerned and, finally, by participants in the annual competition held by the Linguistic Society of Greece. In addition, each summer trained personnel from the Academy of Athens and the universities conduct on-the-spot collection of names as part of a long-term programme covering all the regions of Greece. In the past five years more than 20,000 new geographical names have been collected annually by the various institutes and specialized agencies.

All geographical names thus collected are transferred to individual cards (their proper spelling being verified by trained linguists) and finally arranged in alphabetical order, ready to be used in the *Gazetteers*. Final decisions on the proper orthography of names are reached at the level of the Committee on Toponyms of the Ministry of Interior. The geographical names thus adopted are then published in the *Gazetteers* of the National Statistical Service, which are made available to the mapping services of Greece for proper use on maps.

Turning to the sphere of specialized publications, the following activities should be noted:

(*a*) The Centre for the Historical Dictionary of the Greek language of the Academy of Athens continued work on the preparation of the etymological dictionary of toponyms and Greek proper names. Its director, Mr. D. Vayacacos, continued the publication of the bibliography on Greek toponyms and Greek proper names for the period from 1963 to 1976, which appeared in the volume of *Ohoma* for the period 1963–1976;

(*b*) Professor M. Setatos, of the University of Thessaloniki, completed the modern Greek version of the *Glossary of Technical Terminology for Employment in the Standardization of Geographical Names*;

(*c*) The Army Geographical Service has prepared a two-volume gazetteer of Greek geographical names contained in the maps at the 1:50,000 scale. The first volume has already been published, while the second is in the final stages of publication;

(*d*) The Hydrographic Service has also prepared a gazetteer, listing the coastal topographical features of Greece that appear in the four volumes of the *Sailing Directions for the Greek Coasts*;

(*e*) Similarly, the Hydrographic Service, within the framework of the construction of the 1:250,000 bathymetric charts for the Mediterranean and Black Seas under the aegis of UNESCO, has compiled a gazetteer for names and positions of submarine features.

(*f*) The National Statistical Service of Greece published the following:

(i) *The Gazetteer of Municipalities, and Communities and Localities of Greece*, Athens, 339 pages, 1971 (in Greek);
(ii) *Population of Greece based on the census of 14 March 1971*; De facto *Population by Department* (Nomos), *Eparchy, Municipality and Community*;
(iii) 54 maps at scale 1:200,000 for each nomos of Greece (1971);
(iv) *Results of the Census of 1971*, including all changes of geographical names adopted during the period 1961–1971. (in preparation).

Between the years 1973 and 1976 the National Centre for Social Research published a three-volume work by M. Chouliarakis of the National Statistical Service entitled *Geographical, Administrative and Population Evolution of Greece 1821–1971*. The author has prepared two more studies, now in preparation, under the titles *Oikismoi tis Ellados* and *Istorikon Lexicon Oikismon tis Ellados, 1821–1971*.

Finally, in accordance with the resolutions of the Second United Nations Conference on Geographical Names, the Ministry of Culture and Sciences, in co-operation with the Government of Cyprus, prepared and will submit to the present Conference a romanization system for the Greek alphabet. The issue was discussed during the fifth and sixth sessions of the Group of Experts, held in New York. A detailed report will be given during the discussion in the appropriate committee of the Conference.

REPORT PRESENTED BY THE PHILIPPINES*

The task of establishing uniform usage in regard to geographical nomenclature throughout the executive departments of the Philippine Government has been the responsibility of the Philippine Committee on Geographical Names (PCGN) since 1903. However, in 1973, when a major revision in the executive branch of the Government was carried out, PCGN was adversely affected. Most of the member agencies were restructured and the office of the *ex-officio* chairman was abolished. Since then the Committee has become dormant. Steps have been taken to initiate its reactivation but the proposal remains under study.

Meanwhile another Government body which is charged with co-ordinating and standardizing surveying

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.81.

and mapping activities in the country has taken steps to help resolve problems on geographical names that are brought to its attention, pending the reactivation of the PCGN.

After the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in 1972, significant progress has been accomplished by some Government agencies involved in either mapping or data collection. For instance, the National Census and Statistics Office published a list of Philippine geographical names of political divisions and subdivisions and another volume on the geographical names of topographical and hydrographical features. At the same time, the Bureau of Coast and Geodetic Survey (BCGS) is in the process of updating and revising the *Gazetteer of the Philippines*, which was originally published by the United States Coast and Geodetic Survey (Washington, D.C.) in 1945. Field verification of geographical names shown on existing maps has been accelerated. The Bureau of Coast and Geodetic Survey is taking the lead in the gathering of information for editing of geographical names appearing in the 1:50,000 topographic map series, which was adopted as the basic reference series map for use on other series maps.

An Inter-Agency Committee on Geographical Classification completed its studies on a standard coding for municipalities and *barangays* (formerly referred to as *barrios*). The Standard Geographic Code, consisting of two parts, has been prepared and submitted for approval of higher authority. The Municipality Code Book is a listing in alphabetical order and coding of all municipalities and cities in each province, while the Barangay Code Book contains all *barangays* in each municipality and city. There are 13 volumes of the *Barangay Code Book*, covering each of the 13 administrative regions in the Philippines.

It is expected that such a geographical classification coding system would be adopted by all Government agencies concerned with the compilation and use of statistics referring to geographic areas in the country.

The Philippines, through the Bureau of Coast and Geodetic Survey and the Bureau of Lands, participated in the activities of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names, Asia South-East Division, for the past two years. During the third divisional meeting, held in Manila from 10 to 14 June 1976, it was agreed that the newsletter *GEONAMES* will be published periodically as the official publication of the Division, with the aim of conveying timely and relevant information on current activities of the Division in regard to standardization of geographical names and other aspects of map-making. *GEONAMES* hopes to serve as a forum for the presentation of divergent regional viewpoints, thereby leading to a better understanding among nations.

REPORT PRESENTED BY CYPRUS*

Establishment of the Permanent Committee on Names

The Government of the Republic of Cyprus has appointed a Committee, the Cyprus Permanent Committee on the Standardization of Geographical Names, which is entrusted with all matters connected with geographical names.

The five-member Committee, composed of linguists, historians, philologists and cartographers, has as its main aim the collection, domestic standardization and transcription of all names on the island of Cyprus. The two departments most concerned with the collection and standardization of geographical names in Cyprus are the Cyprus Research Center and the Department of Lands and Surveys. A detailed description of the procedures used by both organizations is given in another paper under item 8 of the agenda of the present Conference.

Progress made

During the last five years, the Cyprus Research Center has continued its scientific collection of place names for the compilation of a national gazetteer and for an etymological study. The Center is planning to compile and publish the national gazetteer of current place names as well as a special gazetteer of historic place names. The latter will be compiled from ancient inscriptions, codes, manuscripts, old maps, books and various other sources. As is well known, Cyprus has continuous written records of place names, dating back to 600 years B.C.

The Department of Lands and Surveys has continued its work on the compilation and production of maps. The collection and standardization of geographical names and their transcription into English are part and parcel of the mapping process. The mapping programme at the scale of 1:5,000, which commenced in 1973 as a joint project of the Cyprus Department of Lands and Surveys and the Directorate of Overseas Surveys of the United Kingdom, has proceeded satisfactorily. Up to now, about 48 per cent of the area of Cyprus has been mapped, covering some 1,714 square miles.

Other maps prepared by the Department of Lands and Surveys and produced in Cyprus include the following:

(*a*) The general use map of Cyprus, at scale 1:500,000;

(*b*) The administrative and road map of Cyprus in English, Greek and Turkish, at scale 1:250,000;

(*c*) The topographical map, in four sheets, at scale 1:100,000; and

(*d*) The topographical series, in 24 sheets, at scale 1:50,000.

All the above maps are in the metric system.

It is an unfortunate fact that the progress of work by

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.82.

both departments in the collection, standardization and transcription of names has been curtailed as a result of the Turkish invasion of the island in 1974. A large part of the area of the Republic of Cyprus, approximately 40 per cent, is still under Turkish army occupation, and therefore inaccessible to the lawful Government agencies for any operation. In addition to the resultant retarding effect, the forces of occupation have brought about a complete change of geographical names in the occupied area: town and village names, place names, street names and so on, which form part of the cultural property and heritage of the people of Cyprus as a whole, have been changed arbitrarily. The new names given have been taken from the history and geography of Turkey. This action is regarded by the Government of the Republic of Cyprus as a deliberate attempt by Turkey to destroy the cultural past of the island.

Linguistic division

The United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names has placed Cyprus in the Romano-Hellenic linguistic division. The Hellenic and Cyprus Committees on geographical names have submitted a joint system of transcription of the Greek alphabet to the Roman alphabet.

Future programme

At the exhibition, delegates may see samples of the maps of Cyprus in English, Greek and Turkish. They may also obtain from the Cyprus delegation a copy of the gazetteer containing the names changed in the north. It is hoped that by the time of the next Conference, Cyprus will be in a happier position and will be able to exhibit its *National Gazetteer*.

REPORT PRESENTED BY IRAN*

Introduction

The present report is an attempt to review briefly the progress made in Iran during the period since the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, as required by the report of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names, at its sixth session, held in New York in March 1975. Throughout this report the various items concerned have been dealt with, as far as possible, in the order resolved by the above session and observed in the preparation of the agenda for the present Conference. However, certain points reported to the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in 1972, have been reviewed briefly in this report.

National standardization

The National Geographic Names Authority, created as a sub-committee of the Iranian Academy in 1968, has continued to function regularly as the main centre for standardization of geographical names. It has made full use of the guidelines and recommendations adopted by the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names.[1] The number of place name cards so far prepared for inclusion in the *Gazetteer of Iran* stands at 14,000. A sample of the old village information sheet still in use for field studies is given below.

Field collection of information

The ambitious project of revision of existing geographical information, undertaken many years ago by the National Geographic Organization of Iran, has gone on unceasingly through interpretation of aerial photographs supported by ground surveys and gathering of information by means of questionnaires, tape recorders etc. Along with that activity a scheme was introduced several years ago for the standardization and verification of geographical names by comparison with written and spoken names. In addition, a phonetic archive was created, in which records of geographical names, written in the Persian as well as the standard Latin alphabet and recorded on tape, are filed for future reference. All this is done by means of completing village identification booklets (see annex II), which are carefully filled out in the field by well-trained experts.

The procedure adopted is to start field-work on individual 1:250,000 sheets, of which a total of 132 cover the entire territory of Iran. For each name mentioned on the sheet, as well as for places not named, a village identification booklet, a good portion of which is devoted to the village name, is thus completed. In June 1977 the number of such booklets received by the National Geographic Organization was 13,995, which related to 47 map sheets as shown in annex III.

Office for the treatment of names

As already indicated, the main office responsible for the treatment of geographical names is the National Geographic Organization, which, apart from participating actively in the geographic committee of the Iranian Academy, controls all cartographic and map-making activities in the country.

In July 1976 a new joint committee comprising representatives of the Iranian Academy, the National Geographic Organization and the Ministry of the Interior was created to consider and approve certain changes in place names as proposed by local authorities. This

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.86.

[1] See *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.68.I.9), chap. III, resolution 4.

committee, after holding several meetings, approved the changes in place names as shown in annex IV.

In 1976 an *ad hoc* committee was formed upon the initiative of the Iranian Ministry of Natural Resources and the Office of Tourism to fix names for a group of islands in Lake Rezâiyeh in north-western Iran, most of which were uninhabited and had no previous names, simply being numbered on the large-scale maps of the lake. This committee came up with a list of new geographical names for both named and hitherto unnamed islands, as shown in annex V.

Administrative structure of national names authorities

As already suggested above, there are at present two official authorities for national names operating in Iran. These are administratively under the control of the Ministry of War and the Ministry of the Interior, respectively. The second of these authorities has for some time past been engaged in the difficult issue of revising the administrative divisions of Iran. However, no definite results have been obtained so far, although a temporary listing of administrative divisions of the country has appeared, as shown in annex VI.

Training

For the purpose of the project referred to above for the field collection of information, university graduates or holders of high school certificates of the necessary competence are recruited for permanent employment. In addition, conscripts of similar qualifications are called to the office of the National Geographic Organization, which is itself under the authority of the War Ministry and whose director is a deputy to the Minister of War. Before their dispatch to the field, these individuals are put through an extensive training period, sometimes lasting as much as six months. Among the various subjects of training is familiarization with the standard system for romanizing geographic names, as approved by resolution 13 of the Geneva Conference. In addition, each field group is accompanied by a person trained in linguistics, whose function is to record vernacular for the Iranian Academy. Local pronunciation of geographical names is recorded by the linguist of each group and the tapes so obtained are used for later verification of geographical names.

National gazetteers

The ultimate objective of the information collection project is to provide information for the updating of the existing geographical dictionary of Iran and to produce a new geographical dictionary in 132 volumes, each relating to one of the 1:250,000 map sheets for the country. Under this project, two sample volumes have been printed (as of June 1977). These are available at the desk of the Iranian delegation and may be examined by interested members of the Conference. A comprehensive gazetteer of Iran is expected to appear upon termination of the Project.

The old geographical dictionary of Iran (known as the *Razm-Ara Geographical Dictionary*) was published in 10 volumes some 30 years ago and is now being reprinted by the National Geographic Organization in its original form, without any modification.

Similarly, the geographical dictionary of Iran by L. Mofakham Payan, printed in November 1960, is now being reprinted by a private firm.

The National Geographic Organization has recently given out two new volumes: the *Dictionary of the Mountains of Iran* (February 1973) and the *Dictionary of the Rivers of Iran* (September 1974). Both were extracted by L. Mofakham-Payan from the *Razm-Ara Geographical Dictionary*.

Terminology

A joint committee of the Iranian Academy and the National Geographic Organization, in which a number of university professors and linguists also participate, has been meeting weekly at the National Geographic Organization headquarters. One of the objectives of this committee is to decide on terminology. The procedure is to find Persian (and if possible ancient) equivalents for the geographical terms. Once found, such terms are first introduced in universities and schools as well as in the press and other media. If they pass this test successfully, the terms are then incoporated into text books.

Exonyms

In line with the policy adopted by the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names, the National Geographic Organization has compiled a world list of countries and their capitals (see annex VII), including, in addition to the Persian pronunciation of names, local as well as English usages.

As of this date there is no programme for reducing the number of exonyms in use in Iran.

Regional activities and divisional meetings

When the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names met at Geneva in 1967, Iran presented a system for the transliteration of Farsi geographic names into the Latin alphabet, which was accepted by the Conference.[2] Iran was then asked to bring the system to the attention of authorities in the Persian-speaking part of south-west Asia, which covered Afghanistan and Pakistan as well as some Soviet Republics. During the period under consideration a total of three divisional meetings were held in Iran, as follows:

First divisional meeting, 1973

At the first divisional meeting, held at Teheran in February 1973, only one delegate from Afghanistan participated. This meeting lasted for a week and considered all points involved in the Conference resolutions,

[2] *Ibid.*, resolution 13.

but focused its attention mostly on transliteration systems. After long discussion, full agreement was reached on 23 letters of the Persian system and hopes were expressed that the remaining nine letters would be agreed upon at a later meeting. The Afghan delegate confirmed that the proposals put forth by him and discussed at the meeting would meet the requirements of the Afghan languages (Pashtu and Dari).

Second divisional meeting, 1974

The second divisional meeting was held at Teheran from 26 September to 2 October 1974. This meeting, in which delegates from Iran and Pakistan participated, was held at the invitation of the Iranian Government. To begin with, this meeting discussed at some length two publications, presented by the delegates from Pakistan: a publication on the transliteration of names to Roman characters on *Survey of Pakistan* maps, and another on the Urdu alphabet and the difference in the systems of transliteration in use in Iran and Pakistan.

There was complete agreement on the transliteration of 23 letters of the alphabet. As regarded the remaining letters, the meeting asked the Iranian delegation to seek approval of their authorities for the removal of macrons and cedillas from the seven letters shown below:.

		S in Iran			S in Pakistan		
1.	ث	$\overline{S}$			S		
2.	ص	$\underline{S}$	=	=	S	=	=
3.	ذ	$\overline{Z}$	=	=	Z	=	=
4.	ض	$\underline{Z}$	=	=	Z	=	=
5.	ظ	$\underline{Z}$	=	=	Z	=	=
6.	ح	$\underline{H}$	=	=	H	=	=
7.	ط	$\underline{T}$	=	=	T	=	=

The meeting also agreed that the following 14 letters and aspirated consonants in Urdu, which did not exist in the Persian (Farsi) alphabet, should continue to be transliterated as at present in the Pakistani system:

1.	ٹ ط	T	5.	پھ	PH
2.	ڈ ط	D	6.	تھ	TH
3.	ڑ ط	R	7.	ٹھ ط	TH
4.	بھ	BH	8.	جھ	JH
9.	چھ	CHH	12.	ڑھ	RH
10.	دھ	DH	13.	کھ	KH
11.	ڈھ ط	DH	14.	گھ	GH

Third divisional meeting, 1977

Delegates from all three countries of the region (Iran, Afghanistan and Pakistan) participated in the third divisional meeting, which was held at Teheran from 5 to 9 May 1977. This meeting summarized all the work done at the two previous meetings and came up with a table that shows, comprehensively, the alphabets of the three countries and their unified transliteration system (see annex VIII). As indicated in the table in the annex, full agreement has been reached on letters that are common to all three countries. However, in the case of letters exclusively used in Urdu or Pashtu, the meeting could only propose that efforts be made by each Government to minimize the existing differences in the transliteration of names and to report the result to this Conference. Consequently, in Iran, the National Geographical Organization arranged a conference of all Government and private authorities engaged or interested in the transliteration of geographical names. This conference proposed the following general guidelines in adopting letters for transliteration of geographical names:

(*a*) As far as possible, combined letters, such as KH for خ, should be avoided;

(*b*) As far as possible, selection of letters should be made in such a way as to fit IBM machines;

(*c*) As far as possible, macrons and cedillas should not be used; and

(*d*) As far as possible, correspondence with the international phonetic system should be observed.

This conference also adopted the following letters, which can be considered by the Third Conference, for the transliteration of geographical names:

Persian letter	*Corresponding English letter*
چ	Č
خ	X
ژ	Ž
ش	Š
ج	J
آ	Â
او	OW

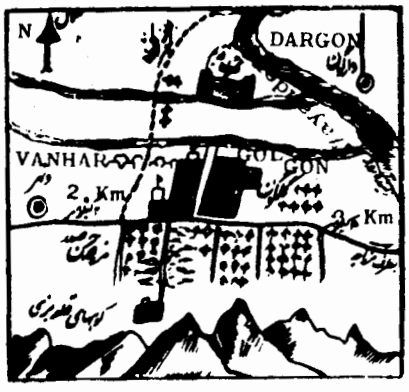
Annex I

VILLAGE INFORMATION SHEET FOR USE IN FIELD STUDIES

National Geographic Organization
Geographic Information Directorate Village Information Sheet

Village name: Village name with syllables and separate alphabet:
Province: Governory: City: Town: Village:
Other names (past and present): Village name: Village name with syllables:
1. Village name 2. Village name in full (separate letters):
Natural position:
Foothills ☐ Plain ☐ Forest ☐ Seaside ☐ Riverside ☐
Climate:
Cold ☐ Hot ☐ Dry ☐ Wet ☐
Potable water:
Pipe laying (processed water) ☐ Pipe-laying ☐ Spring ☐ Canal ☐
River ☐ Well ☐
Roads crossing the village:
Railroad ☐ Hard-surfaced road ☐ Foot road ☐ Dirt road ☐

Village site sketch



Distance from the centre of county (in kilometres):
Distance from main road (in kilometres):
Distance to the nearest village (in kilometres):
Game, wild animals or fish available in the neighbourhood of the village:

Forest or woods near the village:
Name: Approximate area: Kinds of trees: Forest products:
Prevalent wind:
Kind of wind: Name of wind: Windy season: Wind times: Wind effect:

Annex II

VILLAGE IDENTIFICATION BOOKLET

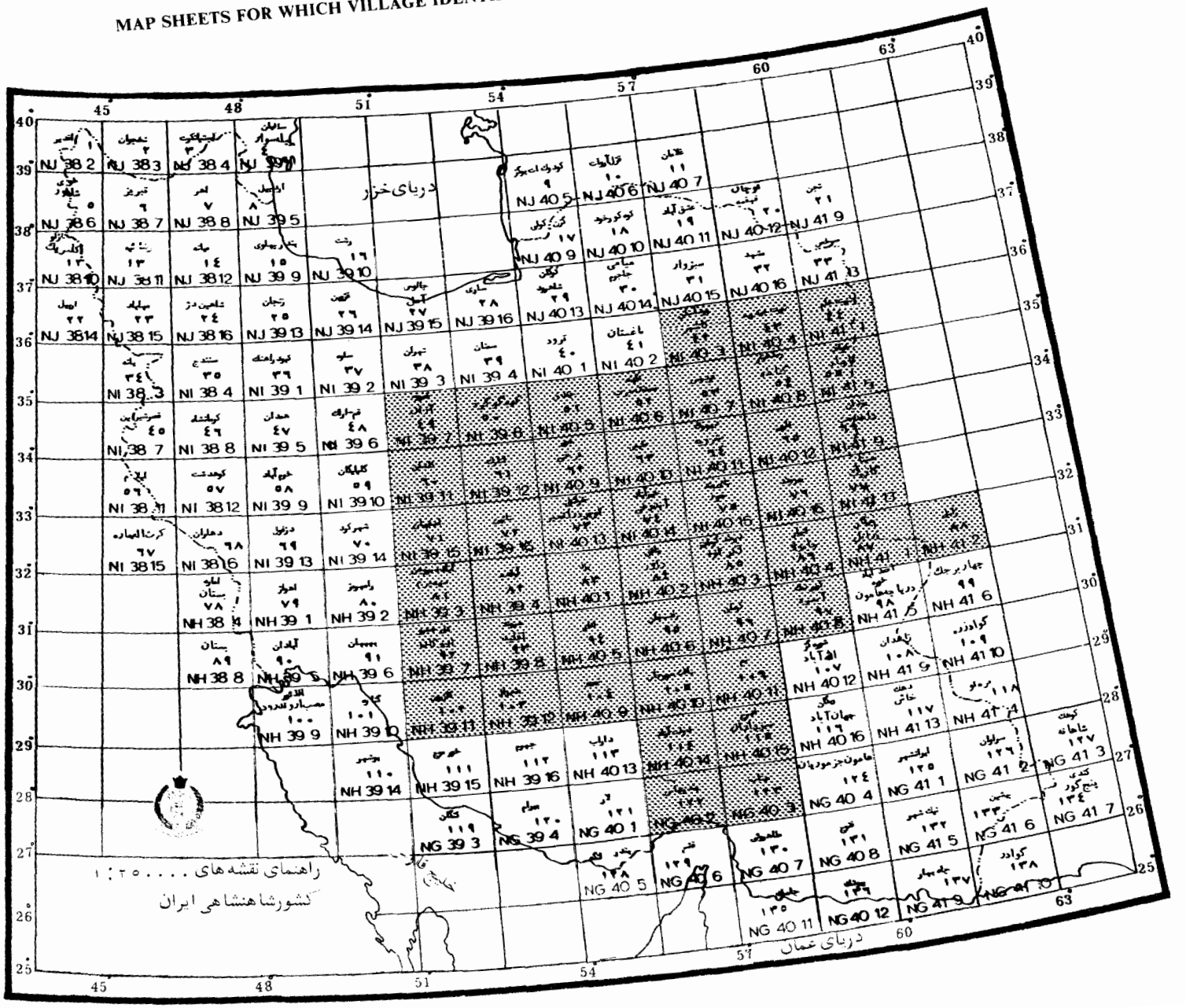
Social situation, history and background of building of the village

Approximate population: Prevailing language: Prevailing race:
Religion: Approximate number of literate people:
Hygiene:
Bath ☐ Dispensary ☐ Barber ☐ Mortuary ☐
Light:
Electric power ☐ Kerosene lamp ☐ Candle ☐
Fuel:
Kerosene ☐ Coal ☐ Charcoal ☐ Wood ☐
Administration building(s):
Gendarme post ☐ Post office ☐ Telegraph office ☐ Telephone office ☐
Boundary post ☐ Customs ☐ School ☐ Literacy corporation ☐
Hygiene corps ☐ Propagation corps ☐ Rural co-operative ☐
Ancient buildings, mosques and shrines:

Natural features around the village:
Kinds of cultivation:
Dry-farming ☐ Irrigated ☐ Mechanical ☐ Manual ☐
Agricultural products and fruits:
Arts and industry:
Mining: Businesses:
Additional information and observations:
Name: Family: Literacy corps No.: Village: City:
Date: Signature:

Annex III

MAP SHEETS FOR WHICH VILLAGE IDENTIFICATION BOOKLETS HAVE BEEN COMPLETED



Annex IV

GEOGRAPHIC NAMES OFFICIALLY ALTERED AND ANNOUNCED BY THE GOVERNMENT OF IRAN

New name	*Co-ordinates*	*Old name*	*New name*	*Co-ordinates*	*Old name*
Asvâr	31–08 = 49–59	Ab-ol-Fâres	Pardis	30–16 = 48–27	Tare baxâj
Mehrzi	30–27 = 48–13	Moharrazi	Samand	30–17 = 48–26	Tare xezr
Bardân	30–47 = 48–44	Omm-os-saxr	Moxestan	30–19 = 48–23	Moqeytiyye
Xarmân	30–27 = 48–07	Xayyen	Abšin	30–07 = 48–33	Qafâs
Barzin	30–25 = 48–12	Rovays	Sâybân	30–24 = 48–14	Fiye
Râme	31–18 = 48–33	Ramle	Šânel	30–18 = 48–24	Abu-šânek
Azâde	30–49 = 49–23	Abdoliyye	Hakim	30–19 = 48–22	Seyyed-Hasan-e hakim
Rivâr	31–33 = 49–13	Raqive			
Now-âbâd	30–22 = 48–12	Moammare	Âhuvand	30–43 = 49–16	Omm-ol-qazlân
Surin	30–44 = 49–44	Sovayre	Foruzân	31–39 = 49–04	Omm-os-seràje
Šâdbeh	31–58 = 48–36	Šoaybe	Parvast	31–13 = 48–44	Alaqdâ
Mongašt	31–33 = 50–00	Ab-ol-Abbâs	Mâkiyân	31–20 = 49–13	Omm-od-dayâye
Behdašt	33–41 = 50–11	Karmu	Sepidân	30–00 = 52–25	Bayzâ
Xorangan	28–52 = 53–47	Xaranǰân	Abarkuh	31–10 = 53–17	Abarqu
Hovisâr	30–45 = 48–25	Omm-ol-hazin	Âzarân	37–34 = 46–38	Sareskand
Tâbân	31–02 = 48–33	Abusoxayr	Zargân	29–47 = 52–43	Zarqân
Sepandân	39–09 = 48–41	Abudabis	Estahbân	29–09 = 54–04	Estahbânât
Kupâl	31–03 = 49–09	Abusalixân	Huzgân	31–26 = 48–04	Hovayze
Farroxzâd	30–20 = 48–20	Âlbuebâdi	Hormozgân	27–30 = 56–30	Ostân-e-sâheli-ye Banàder va xalij-e Fârs va daryâ-ye Omân
Bahâr-tange	30–10 = 48–28	Tangeh-e-yek			
Âzâd-tange	30–11 = 48–25	Tangeh-e-do			
Sarv-tange	30–13 = 48–24	Tangeh-e-se			
Čovide	30–08 = 48–32	Čavib-deh			

Annex V

OFFICIAL NAMES OF ISLANDS IN LAKE REZÂIYEH

New name	*Old name (if any)*	*New name*	*Old name (if any)*
Markid		Ârâm	
Sepid	Âq-Dâq	Panâh	
Pišvâ	Mollâ-Yurki	Omid	
Bardin	Dâš-Âdâ	Miyâne	Uhun
Sangu		Ardešir	Ardaše
Siyâvoš	Qara-Âdâ	J̌oveyn	Âna-daresi
Taxt	Yâsti-Âdâ	J̌owzâr	Ârpâ-daresi
Xersak		J̌ow-dare	Ârpa-daresi
Sangân		Espiru	
Šâhi		Espir	
Zirâbe	Ab-ol-qâsem-dâši	Espirak	
Kâkâi-bâlâ	Gulâyân-dâši	Siyâh-tappe	Qara-tappe
Kâkâi-miyâne	Gulâyân-dâši	Nehest	
Kâkâi-Pâin	Gulâyân-dâši	Tanjak	
Bozorg-tappe	Boyuk-Tappe	Nâdid	
Naviyân	Gâmici	Tanje	
Kučak-Tappe	Bâlâ-Tappe	Nahân	
Nâxodâ	Gamiči	Kabudân	
Nâvi		Zar-kang	Qezel-kongur-e-bâlâ
Samâni		Gorz	Amu-J̌ânlar
Âzin		Zarkamân	Qezel-kongur-e Pâin
Mehr	Šah-sarâncar	Šâhin	Sâin-Qal'e
Zâq	Komor-dâq	Bard	
Meškin		Âzar	Čâyerli
Šabdiz		Šur-tappe	
Šuš-tappe		Nâhid	Andali
Taxtân	Yâsti-dâši	Čâk-tappe	Čât-tappe
Bostur	Ahmad-dâši	Dey	
Ârezu		Mâq	
Bahrâm	Âq-maste	Šamširân	Qelič-yâqli-qara
Golsang	Kačal-dâši	Irân-nežâd	
Kâme		Gorde	
Kâm		Giv	
Sohrân	Gânâjânâ	Mahvâr	
Sorx	Gânâjânâ	Mahdis	
Golgun	Gânâjânâ	Âtaš	Yânexli
Karkas		Siyâh-sang	Yâsti-yâqli-qara

New name	*Old name (if any)*	*New name*	*Old name (if any)*
Osku		Čašme-kenâr	
Âraš		Bon-ašk	
Barzin		Tak	Doqquzlar
Borzu	Ali-Mirzâ	Kamân	Doqquzlar
Borz	Ali-Mirzâ	Soruš	Doqquzlar
Ašk-sar		Tir	Doqquzlar
Zar-tappe	Sâri-tappe	Kenârak	Doqquzlar
Ašk	Išŝak	Panhân	Doqquzlar
Garive	Gaduk-tappe	Kafče-Nuk	Doqquzlar
Garivak		Bon	Doqquzlar
Tus		Bardak	
Meydân	Išŝak-meydânlar		

Annex VI

LIST OF LATEST ADMINISTRATIVE DIVISIONS OF IRAN, INCLUDING PROVINCIAL CENTRE OF EACH

Number	*Name*	*Provincial centre*	*Number*	*Name*	*Provincial centre*
1	Markazi	Tehrân	14	Hamadân	Hamadân
2	Gilân	Rašt	15	Hormozgân	Bandar-e-Abbâs
3	Mâzandarân	Sâri	16	Lorestân	Xorram-Âbâd
4	Azarbâyjân-e-Xâvari	Tabriz	17	Zanjân	Zanjân
5	Azarbâyjân-e-Bâxtari	Rezâiyye	18	Yazd	Yazd
6	Kermânšâhân	Kermânšâh	19	Xalij-e-Fârs	Bušehr
7	Xuzestân	Ahvâz	20	Čahâr-Mahâl and Baxtiyâri	Šahr-e-Kord
8	Fârs	Širâz	21	Ilâm	Ilâm
9	Kermân	Kermân	22	Semnân	Semnân
10	Xorâsân	Mašhad	23	Boyer-Ahmad and Koh-Giluye	Dehdašt
11	Esfahan	Esfahan			
12	Balučestân and Sistân	Zâhedân			
13	Kordestân	Sanandaj			

Annex VII

WORLD COUNTRIES AND CAPITALS: LIST PREPARED BY THE NATIONAL GEOGRAPHIC ORGANIZATION OF IRAN*

NOTE: The following notation has been used throughout this list:
(1) Native name of the country;
(2) Persian name of the country;
(3) English name of the capital;
(4) Persian name of the capital.

Afghanistan

(1) Afghânistân
(2) Afqânestân — افغانستان
(3) Kâbul
(4) Kâbol — کابل

Albania

(1) Shqipëria
(2) Âlbâni — آلبانی
(3) Tirane
(4) Tirânâ — تیرانا

Algeria

(1) (El) Djazair
(2) Alǰazâyer — الجزایر
(3) Alger (Algiers)
(4) Alǰazire — الجزیره

Argentina

(1) Argentina
(2) Âržântin — آرژانتین
(3) Buenos Aires
(4) Buenos-Âyres — بوئنوس‌آیرس

Australia

(1) Australia
(2) Ostorâliyâ — استرالیا

* The names of countries and capitals listed below do not always correspond to the terminology used by the Secretariat of the United Nations.

(3) Canberra

(4) Kânberrâ — کانبـرّا

Austria

(1) Österreich

(2) Otriš — اتریـش

(3) Wien (Vienna)

(4) Viyan — ویـن

Bahamas

(1) Bahamas

(2) Bâhâmâ — باهاما

(3) Nassau

(4) Nâso — ناسـو

Bahreyn

(1) Bahrayn

(2) Bahreyn — بحـرین

(3) Al-Manamah

(4) Manâme — منامه

Bangladesh

(1) Bangladesh

(2) Banglâdeš — بنگلادش

(3) Dacca

(4) Dâkâ — داکـا

Barbados

(1) Barbados

(2) Bârbâdos — باربادوس

(3) Bridgetown

(4) Brijton — بریج تـون

Belgium

(1) België or Belgique

(2) Belžik — بلـژیك

(3) Bruxelles (Brussels)

(4) Bruksel — بـروکسل

Bhutan

(1) Druk-Yul

(2) Butân — بـوتان

(3) Paro and Thimbu

(4) Timbu. — تیم بـو

Bolivia

(1) Bolivia

(2) Bolivi — بولیـوی

(3) Sucre and La Paz

(4) Lâpâz — لاپـاز

Botswana

(1) Botswana

(2) Botsvânâ — بتسـوانا

(3) Gaborone

(4) Gâboron — گابـورون

Brazil

(1) Brasil

(2) Berezil — بـرزیل

(3) Brasilia

(4) Brâziliyâ — برازیلیـا

Bulgaria

(1) Bălgarija

(2) Bolqârestân — بلغارستـان

(3) Sofija (Sofia)

(4) Sofiyâ (Sufiyye) صوفیّه

Burma

(1) Myanma

(2) Berme برمه

(3) Rangoon

(4) Rângon رانگون

Burundi

(1) Burundi

(2) Burundi بوروندی

(3) Bujumbura

(4) Bujumburâ بوجوم بورا

Byelorussia

(1) Belorussija (Belarus)

(2) Rusiyyeh-e-Sefid (Biyelorusi) روسیه‌سفید (بیلو روسی)

(3) Minsk

(4) Minsk مینسك

Cameroon

(1) Cameroon or Cameroun

(2) Kâmerun کامرون

(3) Yaoundé

(4) Yâunde یااوندہ

Canada

(1) Canada

(2) Kânâdâ کانادا

(3) Ottawa

(4) Otâvâ اوتاوا

Central African Republic

(1) Central African Republic

(2) Âfriqâ-Ye-Markazi آفریقای‌مرکزی

(3) Bangui

(4) Bângi بانگی

Ceylon

(1) Sri Lanka (Ilangai)

(2) Seri-Lanka (Seylân or Sar-Andib) سری لانکا (سیلان یا سراندیب)

(3) Colombo

(4) Kolombo کولومبو

Chad

(1) Tchad

(2) Câd چاد

(3) Fort-Lamy

(4) Fort-Lâmi فورت لامی

Chile

(1) Chile

(2) Šili شیلی

(3) Santiago

(4) Sântiyâgo سانتیاگو

China

(1) Zhongguo

(2) Cin چین

(3) Peking or Beijing

(4) Pekan پکن

Colombia

(1) Colombia

(2) Kolombiyâ کولومبیا

(3) Bogota

(4) Bogotâ بوگوتـا

Congo

(1) Congo

(2) Kongo کنگـو

(3) Brazzaville

(4) Brâzâvil برازاویل

Costa Rica

(1) Costa Rica

(2) Kostâ-Rikâ کستاریکـا

(3) San Jose

(4) Sânžoze سان خوزه

Cuba

(1) Cuba

(2) Kubâ کـوبا

(3) Habana or Havana

(4) Hâvânâ هاوانـا

Cyprus

(1) Kypros (Kibris)

(2) Qebres قبـرس

(3) Levkosia or Nicosia

(4) Nikoziyâ نیکوزیـا

Czechoslovakia

(1) Ceskoslovensko

(2) Čekoslovâki چکوسلوواکی

(3) Praha or Prague

(4) Perâg پـراگ

Dahomey

(1) Dahomey

(2) Dâhome داهومـه

(3) Porto-Novo

(4) Porto-Novo پرتونـوو

Denmark

(1) Danmark

(2) Dânmârk دانمارك

(3) Kobenhaven or Copenhagen

(4) Kopenhâg کپنهاك

Dominican Republic

(1) Dominican Republic

(2) Dominikan دومینیکن

(3) Santo Domingo

(4) Sânto-Domingo سانتودومینگو

Ecuador

(1) Ecuador

(2) Ekuâtor اکواتـور

(3) Quito

(4) Kuito کیتـو

Egypt

(1) Misr

(2) Mesr مصـر

(3) Cairo or Al-Qāhirah

(4) Qâhere قاهـره

El Salvador

(1) El Salvador

(2) Sâlvâdor سالوادور

(3) San Salvador

(4) Sân-Sâlvâdor — سان سالوادور

Equatorial Guinea

(1) Guinea Ecuatorial

(2) Gineh-e-Estevâi — گینهٔ استوائی

(3) Santa-Isabel

(4) Sântâ-Izâbel — سانتا ایزابل

Ethiopia

(1) Ityopya

(2) Habaše — حبشه

(3) Addis-Abeba

(4) Adis-Âbâbâ — آدیس آبابا

Federal Republic of Germany

(1) Deutschland

(2) Âlmân-e-Federâl — آلمان فدرال

(3) Bonn

(4) Bon — بن

Fiji

(1) Fiji

(2) Fiji — فیجی

(3) Suva

(4) Suvâ — سووا

Finland

(1) Suomi

(2) Fanlând — فنلاند

(3) Helsinki or Helsingfors

(4) Helsinki — هلسینکی

France

(1) France

(2) Farânese — فرانسه

(3) Paris

(4) Pâris — پاریس

Gabon

(1) Gabon

(2) Gâbon — گابون

(3) Libreville

(4) Libervil — لیبرویل

Gambia

(1) Gambia

(2) Gambiyâ — گامبیا

(3) Banjul

(4) Banjul — بانجول

Germany (Democratic)

(1) Deutsche Demokratische Republik

(2) Âlmân-e Xâvari — آلمان خاوری

(3) Ost-Berlin or East Berlin

(4) Berlan-e Xâvari — برلن خاوری

Ghana

(1) Ghana

(2) Gânâ — گانا

(3) Accra

(4) Âkrâ — آکرا

Greece

(1) Hellás

(2) Yunân — یونان

(3) Athinai or Athens

(4) Âten — آتـــن

Guatemala

(1) Guatemala

(2) Guâtmâlâ — گوآتمالا

(3) Guatemala

(4) Guâtmâlâ — گوآتمالا

Guinea

(1) Guinée

(2) Gine — گینـــه

(3) Conakry

(4) Konâkri — کوناکـری

Guyana

(1) Guyana

(2) Guyân — گویـــان

(3) Georgetown

(4) Žoržton — ژرژتـــون

Haiti

(1) Haiti

(2) Hâiti — هائی تـی

(3) Port-au-Prince

(4) Port-o-Perans — پـورتو پرنس

Holy See

(1) Vaticano

(2) Vâtikân — واتیکـان

(3) Vatican City

(4) Vâtikân — واتیکـان

Honduras

(1) Honduras

(2) Hondurâs — هوندوراس

(3) Tegucigalpa

(4) Tegusigâlpâ — تگوسیگالپـا

Hungary

(1) Magyarország

(2) Maǰârestân (Hongri) — مجارستان (هونگری)

(3) Budapest

(4) Budâpest — بوداپست

Iceland

(1) Island

(2) Island — ایسلنـــد

(3) Reykjavik

(4) Rikǰâvik — ریك جاویك

India

(1) Bhārat

(2) Hendustân — هندوستـــان

(3) New Delhi

(4) Delhi-Ye-Now — دهلی نـــو

Indonesia

(1) Indonesia

(2) Andonezi — آندونزی

(3) Djakarta

(4) J̌âkârtâ — جاکارتـا

Iran

(1) Irân

(2) Irân — ایـــران

(3) Teheran

(4) Tehrân تهـــران

Iraq

(1) Irâq

(2) Arâq عـــراق

(3) Baghdad

(4) Baqdâd بغـــداد

Ireland

(1) Ireland

(2) Irland ايـــرلند

(3) Dublin or Baile-Átha-Cliath

(4) Dublin دوبلين

Israel

(1) Israil (Yisrael)

(2) Esrâil اسرائيل

(3) Jerusalem or Yerushalayim

(4) Uršalim اورشليـم

Italy

(1) Italia

(2) Itâliyâ ايتاليـا

(3) Roma or Rome

(4) Rom م

Ivory Coast

(1) Côte d'Ivoire

(2) Sâhel-e Âǰ ساحل‌عـاج

(3) Abidjan

(4) Âbiǰân آبی‌جان

Jamaica

(1) Jamaica

(2) J̌âmâikâ جاماٸيکا

(3) Kingston

(4) Kingston کينگس‌تون

Japan

(1) Nippon or Nihon

(2) Žâpon ژاپـــن

(3) Tokyo

(4) Tokyo توکيـــو

Jordan

(1) Urdunn

(2) Ordon اردن

(3) Ammân

(4) Ammân امّـــان

Kenya

(1) Kenya

(2) Kenyâ کنيـــا

(3) Nairobi

(4) Nâyrobi نايـــروبی

Khmer Republic

(1) Khmer

(2) Xemer (Kâmboǰ) خمر (کامبوج)

(3) Phnum-Pénh or Phnom-Penh

(4) Penom-Pen پنوم بـــن

Korea

(1) Daehan

(2) Koreh-e-J̌anubi کره جنوبی

(3) Sŏul or Seoul

(4) Seul — سئـــول

Korea (Democratic)

(1) Chosŏn

(2) Koreh-e-Šamâli — کره شمالی

(3) P'yŏngyang

(4) Piyungyang — پیونگ یانـــگ

Kuwait

(1) Kuwayt

(2) Koveyt — کویت

(3) Al-Kuwayt

(4) Koveyt — کویت

Laos

(1) Lâos or Lao

(2) Lâos — لائوس

(3) Vientiane

(4) Viyantjyân — وین تیان

Lebanon

(1) Loubnâne

(2) Lobnân — لبنان

(3) Bayrūt or Beirut

(4) Beyrut — بیـــروت

Lesotho

(1) Lesotho

(2) Bâsutoland — باســوتولند

(3) Maseru

(4) Mâseru — ماســرو

Liberia

(1) Liberia

(2) Liberiyâ — لی بریـــا

(3) Monrovia

(4) Monroviyâ — مـــن رو ویـــــا

Libyan Arab Republic

(1) Lībiyâ

(2) Libi — لیبـــی

(3) Trābulus (Tripoli) and Banghāzi (Bengasi)

(4) Tripoli and Banqâzi — تری پولی (طرابلس) و بنغازی

Liechtenstein

(1) Liechtenstein

(2) Lixtenštayn — لیختنشتیـــن

(3) Vaduz

(4) Vâduz — وادوز

Luxembourg

(1) Lezebuurg

(2) Lukzâmburg — لوکزامبورگ

(3) Luxembourg

(4) Lukzâmburg — لوکزامبورگ

Madagascar

(1) Madagascar

(2) Mâdâgaskar — ماداگاسکار

(3) Tananarive

(4) Tânânâriv — تاناناریـــو

Malawi

(1) Malawi

(2) Malâvi — ملاوی

(3) Zomba

(4) Zombâ زومبـا

Malaysia

(1) Malaysia

(2) Mâlezi مالـزی

(3) Kuala Lumpur

(4) Kuâlâ-Lâmpur کوآلا لامپور

Maldives

(1) Maldives

(2) Mâldiv مالدیو

(3) Male

(4) Mâle مالـه

Mali

(1) Mali

(2) Mâli مالـی

(3) Bamako

(4) Bâmâko باماکـو

Malta

(1) Malta

(2) Mâlt مالت

(3) Valletta

(4) Vâllettâ والتّا

Mauritania

(1) Mauritanie

(2) Moritâni موریتانی

(3) Nouakchott

(4) Nuâkšott نواك شـوت

Mauritius

(1) Mauritius

(2) Moris موریـس

(3) Port-Louis

(4) Port-Luiz پورت لوئیـز

Mexico

(1) México

(2) Mekzik مکزیك

(3) Mexico City

(4) Mekziko مکزیکو

Monaco

(1) Monaco

(2) Monâko موناکـو

(3) Monaco

(4) Monâko موناکـو

Mongolia

(1) Mongol

(2) Moqolestân مغولستـان

(3) Ulaanbaatar or Ulan Bator

(4) Ulân-Bâtor اولان باتور

Morocco

(1) Maghreb

(2) Marâkeš مراکش

(3) Rabat

(4) Rabât رباط

Nauru

(1) Nauru

(2) Noru نـورو

(3) Yangor

(4) Yângor — یان گور

Nepal

(1) Nepál

(2) Nepâl — نپـال

(3) Kâtmându

(4) Kâtmându — کاتماندو

Netherlands

(1) Nederland

(2) Holand — هلنـد

(3) Amsterdam and 'S Gravenhage (The Hague)

(4) Lâhe — لاهه ـ آمستردام

New Zealand

(1) New Zealand

(2) Niyuziland — نیوزی لند

(3) Wellington

(4) Vellington — ولّینگتـون

Nicaragua

(1) Nicaragua

(2) Nikârâguâ — نیکاراگوآ

(3) Managua

(4) Mânâguâ — ماناگوآ

Niger

(1) Niger

(2) Nižer — نیـژر

(3) Niamey

(4) Niyâmi — نیامـی

Nigeria

(1) Nigeria

(2) Nižeriyye — نیژریه

(3) Lagos

(4) Lâgos — لاگـوس

Norway

(1) Norge or Noreg

(2) Norvež — نروژ

(3) Oslo

(4) Oslo — اوسلـو

Oman

(1) Umân

(2) Omân — عمـان

(3) Masqat (Muscat)

(4) Masqat — مسقـط

Pakistan

(1) Pâkistân

(2) Pâkestân — پاکستـان

(3) Islamabad

(4) Eslâm-âbâd — اسـلام آباد

Panama

(1) Panamá

(2) Pânâmâ — پاناما

(3) Panamá

(4) Pânâmâ — پاناما

Paraguay

(1) Peraguay

(2) Pârâgue — پاراگوئه

(3) Asunción

(4) Assânsiyon — آسانسیون

Peru

(1) Peru

(2) Peru — پرو

(3) Lima

(4) Limâ — لیما

Philippines

(1) Pilipinas

(2) Filipin — فیلیپین

(3) Quezon City

(4) Kezon Siti — کزون سیتی

Poland

(1) Polaka

(2) Lahestân — لهستان

(3) Warszawa or Warsaw

(4) Varšow — ورشو

Portugal

(1) Portugal

(2) Portoqâl — پرتقال

(3) Lisboa or Lisbon

(4) Lisbon — لیسبن

Qatar

(1) Qatar

(2) Qatar — قطر

(3) Ad-Dawhah or Doha

(4) Dowha — دوحه

Romania

(1) Romania

(2) Românî — رومانی

(3) Bucureşti (Bucharest)

(4) Buxârest — بوخارست

Rwanda

(1) Rwanda

(2) Ruândâ — روآندا

(3) Kigali

(4) Kigâli — کیگالی

San Marino

(1) San Marino

(2) Sân-Mârino — سان مارینو

(3) San-Marino

(4) Sân-Mârino — سان مارینو

Saudi Arabia

(1) Arabîyah-as-Sa'ûdîyah

(2) Arabestân-e Saudi — عربستان سعودی

(3) Ar-Riyâd (Riyâdh)

(4) Riyâz — ریاض

Senegal

(1) Sénégal

(2) Senegâl — سنگال

(3) Dakar

(4) Dâkâr — داکار

Sierra Leone

(1) Sierra Leone

(2) Sierrâ-Leon — سیّرالئون

(3) Freetown

(4) Feriton فـــری‌تون

Singapore

(1) Singapura (Xinjiapo)

(2) Sangâpur سنگاپـــور

(3) Singapore

(4) Sangâpur سنگاپـــور

Somalia

(1) Somaliya

(2) Sumâli سومالـــی

(3) Magadisho

(4) Mâgâdišo ماگادیشـــو

South Africa

(1) Suid-Afrika

(2) Afriqâ-ye Janubi آفریقای جنوبی

(3) Pretoria and Cape Town

(4) Peretoriyâ and Keyp-Ton پرتوریا و کیپ تون

Spain

(1) España

(2) Espânyâ اسپانیـــا

(3) Madrid

(4) Mâdrid مادریـــد

Sudan

(1) Sudan

(2) Sudân ســـودان

(3) Al-Khurtum (Khartoum)

(4) Xartum خـــرطوم

Swaziland

(1) Swaziland (Ngwane)

(2) Suâziland سوآزیلند

(3) Mbabane

(4) Mebâbân مبابان

Sweden

(1) Sverige

(2) Sued ســـوئـــد

(3) Stockholm

(4) Ostokholm اوستکهلـــم

Switzerland

(1) Suisse

(2) Suis ســـــوئیس

(3) Bern

(4) Bern بـــرن

Syria

(1) Sūrīyah

(2) Suriyye ســـوریّه

(3) Dimashq (Damascus)

(4) Damešq دمشق

Tanzania

(1) Tanzania

(2) Tânzâniyâ تانزانیا

(3) Dar-es-Salaam

(4) Dâr-os-Salâm دارالسّـــلام

Thailand

(1) Prathet Thai or Muang Thai

(2) Siyâm (Tâyland) سیـــام (تایلند)

(3) Bangkok (Krung-Thep)

(4) Bânkok بانکوك

Togo

(1) Togo

(2) Togo توگـو

(3) Lome

(4) Lome لـومه

Trinidad and Tobago

(1) Trinidad and Tobago

(2) Terinidâd-va-Tobâgo تری‌نیداد و توباگو

(3) Port-of-Spain

(4) Port-e-Espâny پورت اسپانی

Tunisia

(1) Tûnis

(2) Tunes تونس

(3) Tunis

(4) Tunes تونـس

Turkey

(1) Turkiye

(2) Torkiyye ترکیـه

(3) Ankara

(4) Ânkârâ آنکارا

Uganda

(1) Uganda

(2) Ugândâ اوگاندا

(3) Kampala

(4) Kâmpâlâ کامپـالا

Ukraine

(1) Ukraina

(2) Ukren اوکـرانی

(3) Kijev (Kiev)

(4) Kiyef کیـف

United Arab Emirates

(1) Imârât al 'Arabiyah al Mittahidah

(2) Emârât-e Mottahedeh-e-Arabi امارات متحده عربی

(3) Abû-Zaby

(4) Abu-Zabi ابوظبـی

United Kingdom

(1) United Kingdom

(2) Engelestân انگلستان

(3) London

(4) Landan لنـدن

United States

(1) United States

(2) Kesvarhâ-ye Mottahedeh-e-Âmrikâ کشورهای متحده آمریکا

(3) Washington

(4) Vâšington واشینگتـن

Upper Volta

(1) Haute-Volta

(2) Voltâ-ye Bâlâ ولتای بالا

(3) Ouagadougou

(4) Uâgâdugu اوآگادوگو

Uruguay

(1) Uruguay

(2) Urugue اوروگوئـه

(3) Montevideo

(4) Montevideo منتویدئو

Union of Soviet Socialist Republics

(1) Union of Soviet Socialist Republics

(2) Rusiyye (Ettehâd-e Jamâhir-e Sowravi) روسیه (اتحاد جماهیر شوروی)

(3) Moskva (Moscow)

(4) Moskow مسکو

Venezuela

(1) Venezuela

(2) Venezuela ونزوئلا

(3) Caracas

(4) Kârâkâs کاراکاس

Viet-Nam

(1) Viet-Nam Cong-Hoa

(2) Viyet-Nâm-e J̌anubi ویتنام جنوبی

(3) Sai-gon

(4) Sâygon سایگون

Viet-Nam (Democratic)

(1) Viêt-Nam Dân-Chu Công-Hôa

(2) Viyet-Nâm-e Šamâli ویتنام شمالی

(3) Ha-noi

(4) Hânoy هانوی

Western Samoa

(1) Samoa i Sisifo

(2) Sâmoâ ساموآ

(3) Apia

(4) Âpiyâ آپیا

Yemen

(1) Yaman

(2) Yaman-e Samâli یمن شمالی

(3) Ṣan'â

(4) San'â صنعا

Yemen (Democratic)

(1) Yaman Ash Sha 'Biyah

(2) Yaman-e-J̌anubi یمن جنوبی

(3) Aden

(4) Adan عدن

Yugoslavia

(1) Jugoslavija

(2) Yugoslâvi یوگوسلاوی

(3) Beograd (Belgrade)

(4) Belegerâd بلگراد

Zaire

(1) Zaïre

(2) Zair زئیر

(3) Kinshasa (Léopoldville)

(4) Kinšâsâ (Leopoldvil) کین شازا (لئوپولد ویل)

Zambia

(1) Zambia

(2) Zâmbiyâ زام بیا

(3) Lusaka

(4) Lusâkâ لوساکا

Annex VIII

COMPLETE LIST OF LETTERS USED IN THE ALPHABETS OF IRAN, AFGHANISTAN AND PAKISTAN

Afghanistan		*Iran*		*Pakistan*		*Remarks*
Pashtu and Dari	*Romanized*	*Persian*	*Romanized*	*Urdu*	*Romanized*	
ب	b	ب	b	ب	b	All three identical
پ	P	پ	P	پ	P	All three identical
ت	t	ت	t	ت	t	All three identical
ټ	ṭ	—		ط ت	t	Iran, none; Afghanistan and Pakistan different
ث	s	ث	s	ث	s	All three identical
ج	J	ج	ǰ[a]	ج	J	All three identical
چ	č	چ	č[a]	چ	çh	Iran and Afghanistan identical
ح	h	ح	h	ح	h	All three identical
خ	x	خ	x[a]	خ	kh	Iran and Afghanistan identical
د	d	د	d	د	d	All three identical
ډ	ḍ	—	—	ط د	d	Iran, none; Afghanistan and Pakistan different
ذ	z	ذ	z	ذ	z	All three identical
ر	r	ر	r	ر	r	All three identical
ړ	ṛ	—	—	ط ر	r	Iran, none; Afghanistan and Pakistan different
ز	z	ز	z	ز	z	All three identical
ژ	ž	ژ	ž[a]	ژ	zh	Iran and Afghanistan identical
ږ	ẓ	—	—	—	—	Iran and Pakistan none
س	s	س	s	س	s	All three identical
ش	š	ش	š	ش	sh	Iran and Afghanistan identical
ښ	ṣ	—		—		Iran and Pakistan, none
ص	s	ص	s	ص	s	All three identical
ض	z	ض	z	ض	z	All three identical
ط	t	ط	t	ط	t	All three identical
ظ	z	ظ	z	ظ	z	All three identical
ع	Omitted	ع	ʾ	ع	ʿ a i o u	All three different
غ	ğ	غ	q	غ	gh	All three different
ف	f	ف	f	ف	f	All three identical

Afghanistan		*Iran*		*Pakistan*		*Remarks*
Pashtu and Dari	*Romanized*	*Persian*	*Romanized*	*Urdu*	*Romanized*	
ق	q	ق	q	ق	q	All three identical
ك	k	ك	k	ك	k	All three identical
گ	g	گ	g	گ	g	All three identical
ل	L	ل	L	ل	L	All three identical
م	m	م	m	م	m	All three identical
ن	n	ن	n	ن	n	All three identical
ن	n	—	—	—	—	Iran and Pakistan none
و	w	و	v	و	v, w In exceptional cases	All three different
ه ـ ـ هـ	h	ه ـ ـ هـ	h	ه ـ ـ هـ	h	All three identical
ء	Omitted		Omitted	ء	Omitted	Afghanistan and Pakistan identical
ی	y	ی	y	ی	y	All three identical
تنوین	–n	تنوین	–n	تنوین	an	All three identical
څ	c					Iran and Pakistan none
ځ	ځ					Iran and Pakistan none
				بھ	bh	Only Pakistan
				پھ	ph	Only Pakistan
				تھ	th	Only Pakistan
				ٹھ	th	Only Pakistan
				جھ	jh	Only Pakistan
				چھ	chh	Only Pakistan
				دھ	dh	Only Pakistan
				ڈھ	dh	Only Pakistan
				رھ	rh	Only Pakistan
				کھ	kh	Only Pakistan
				گھ	gh	Only Pakistan
زبر	a	زبر	a	زبر	a	All three identical
زیر	I	زیر	e	زیر	İ	All three different
پیش	u	پیش	o	پیش	u	Afghanistan and Pakistan identical
الف معد ود ه	ā	الف معد ود ه	âª	الف معد ود ه	ā	All three identical
واو معروف	ū	واو معروف	u	واو معروف	ū	Afghanistan and Pakistan identical, Iran different
واو مجهول	o			واومجهول	o	Iran, none; Afghanistan and Pakistan identical

Afghanistan		*Iran*		*Paksitan*		*Remarks*
Pashtu and Dari	*Romanized*	*Persian*	*Romanized*	*Urdu*	*Romanized*	
واومعد وله	a	واو معد ولـه	v	واومعد وله	w	All three different
ی ــ معروف	i	ی ــ معروف	i	ی ــ معروف	ī	Iran and Afghanistan identical
ی ــ مجهول	e	ی ــ مجهول		ی ــ مجهول	e	Afghanistan and Pakistan identical, Iran different
ی ر	ay					Only Afghanistan
زورکی	a					Only Afghanistan
Short الف	a	Short الف	a	Short الف	a	All three identical
کسره Possessive, attributive or descriptive	-yi	کسره Possessive, attributive or descriptive	=ye	کسره Possessive, attributive or descriptive	-i-	All three different
Hardness sign to lay stress on consonant	Letter to be doubled	Hardness sign to lay stress on consonant	Letter to be doubled	Hardness sign to lay stress on consonant	Letter to be doubled	All three identical
Unpronounced	Omitted	Unpro-nounced	h	Unpro-nounced	Omitted	Afghanistan and Pakistan identical

[a] Latest proposal by Iran.

REPORT PRESENTED BY YUGOSLAVIA*

The delegation of Yugoslavia wants to confirm its agreement with the view expressed by several countries at the first (Geneva) United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, i.e. that the standardization of geographical names falls within the competence of the State in which the described features are located.[1] It follows, therefore, that the international standardization of geographical names can be based only on the national standardization.

The recommendations of resolution 31 entitled "A common understanding of the aims and objects of the international standardization of geographical names",[2] adopted by the Second Conference in London in 1972 and reflecting these principles, can be good basis for the successful work of the Third Conference.

REPORT ON THE SITUATION AND ON THE PROGRESS MADE SINCE THE SECOND UNITED NATIONS CONFERENCE ON THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

The report submitted by Yugoslavia to the Second United Nations Conference in 1972 contained the principles on the basis of which Yugoslavia's questions of the standardization of geographical names are to be resolved (bearing in mind that Yugoslavia is a State in which several nations and nationalities live).[3]

Problems of geographical names should, in our view, be treated according to the general principles regarding the right of nations and nationalities to the free use of their own language, script and spelling. The right to use geographical names of their own language, script and spelling is thus an integral, inseparable and inalienable aspect of the socio-political and economic rights of the members of all nations and nationalities.

Our basic attitude is that the members of all nations

* The original text of this paper, prepared by M. Peterca, Yugoslavia, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.87 (part I).

[1] For objective reasons, it was not possible for Yugoslavia to submit documents in time for their inclusion in the official documents of the Conference, the sudden and unfortunate death during the preparation of the official papers for this Conference of Professor Branko Borčić, the eminent Yugoslav expert in this field, having caused the cessation of the work. Wishing to contribute nevertheless to the successful work of the Third Conference, Yugoslavia takes advantage of the possibility offered by the Conference, which provides that "documents that a Government may wish the Secretariat to distribute as information papers only, will be accepted at the Conference site", (E/CONF.69/INF/I, para. 3).

[2] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

[3] *Ibid.*, vol. II. *Technical papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), p. 171.

and nationalities, without regard for their number and for the administrative-political borders of their ethnic territories, have the right to use the names of geographical features in their own language, script and spelling. Geographical names should reflect the views of the population to whose territory they refer. We also affirm that those members of our nations who live beyond the borders of those nations should have adequate rights.

According to the Yugoslav Constitution, the Socialist Federal Republic of Yugoslavia is a federal State consisting of six socialist republics: Bosnia and Herzegovina Montenegro; Croatia; Macedonia; Slovenia; and Serbia. There are also two autonomous regions in Serbia: Kosovo and Vojvodina. However, the members of all nations and nationalities have the right to use their own language, script and spelling, regardless of their number and of the territory on which they live. Within the territory of Yugoslavia the languages of all the nations and nationalities are equal, as are their scripts and spellings.

In accordance with the constitutional principles cited, in Yugoslavia there is neither one national language, nor one State language, nor one main or principal language that can claim the broadest sphere of influence. Neither is there any single State script or spelling.

The recommendations of the Second Conference induced the formation of the Yugoslav Commission for the Standardization of Geographical Names. The suggestion has been made that the Commission consist of the names authorities from all the republics and regions, together with representatives from the Council of the Academy of Science and Art, the Yugoslav Institute for Standardization, the Federal Statistical Office and the Military Geographical Institute. The Commission will be a suitable forum for settling all questions connected with the standardization of geographical names in the different language regions of Yugoslavia and for developing more effective co-operation in that field.

One of the first tasks of the Commission will be to prepare a gazetteer (register of geographical names) for the entire territory of Yugoslavia. A working group is already engaged in research with the aim of proposing solutions to problems connected with the scope of the data, taking into consideration the sources to be used (topographic maps at scales of 1:25,000, 1:50,000, 1:100,000 and 1:200,000), the classification, systematization and code marking of data, location of names, automatic data processing and so on.

As regards recent activity in cartographic publishing, it is interesting to note that the Aeronautical Chart (ICAO 1:500,000 chart) was prepared in 1975. In accordance with international standards and the recommendations of the International Civil Aviation Organization, Roman script is used for all names. Geographical names on the encircled parts of Italy, Austria, Hungary, Romania and Albania are written in the original form with all the diacritical marks; the names on the territories of Bulgaria and Greece are romanized using the systems that are officially accepted in these countries. The system used for the romanization of geographical names within the territory of Bulgaria was that adopted at the Second Conference (see resolution 5 entitled "Bulgarian Cyrillic alphabet").[2]

RAPPORT PRÉSENTÉ PAR LE MAROC*

Introduction

Le Maroc est très intéressé par les problèmes de translittération et de transcription des noms géographiques d'une langue dans une autre, et surtout de l'arabe en latin.

Il a été l'un des premiers pays à développer les techniques cartographiques. On se rappelle, à ce sujet, l'apport du géographe Ach-Charif Al Idrissi Assabti qui a établi le premier globe terrestre au début du XII[e] siècle (1153), ainsi que les nombreuses informations géographiques recueillies sur les pays d'Afrique septentrionale, d'Europe et d'Asie par un autre géographe marocain, Ibn Battouta. Il est à rappeler également que l'une des dynasties marocaines, celle des Almohades (XII[e] et XIII[e] siècles), avait procédé à des levés cadastraux couvrant une grande partie du Maghreb afin de pouvoir percevoir les impôts sur les cultures.

Etat actuel de la cartographie au Maroc

Depuis son indépendance en 1956, le Royaume du Maroc a réalisé un volume de travaux cartographiques cinq fois supérieur à celui réalisé par le protectorat durant un demi-siècle.

Il va sans dire que l'infrastructure géodésique et la carte topographique à différentes échelles sont d'une nécessité absolue pour tout pays, car elles constituent l'instrument de base indispensable à toute étude, recherche ou mise en valeur.

A cet effet, l'organisme officiel chargé de l'établissement de la carte topographique s'est fixé les objectifs suivants:

a) Couverture de l'ensemble du pays par une carte de base à l'échelle de 1:50 000;

b) Révision, entretien et extension du réseau de triangulation et du réseau de nivellement;

c) Etablissement de plans de villes aux échelles de 1:10 000, 1:5 000 et 1:2 000;

* Le texte original de ce rapport, paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.89, était accompagné de deux documents intitulés "Etat justificatif des noms" (E/CONF.69/L.89/Add.1) et "Organisation territoriale du Royaume du Maroc" (E/CONF.69/L.89/Add.2). Les textes originaux de ces deux documents peuvent être obtenus, sur demande, à la Direction de la conservation foncière et des travaux topographiques, Ministère de l'agriculture et de la réforme agraire, Maroc.

d) Centralisation des documents cartographiques et photographiques par la création d'une cartothèque et d'une photothèque nationales.

Tous ces travaux ont nécessité l'acquisition d'un équipement de pointe en photogrammétrie, en reproduction et tirage et en informatique. Il convient de mentionner ce qui suit:

a) Les ateliers de photogrammetrie, équipés en matériel moderne, sont chargés de la vérification de tous les travaux topographiques effectués dans le Royaume;

b) L'amélioration et la mécanisation des procédés actuels ont nécessité un équipment moderne en informatique;

c) Une banque de données foncières pour l'ensemble du pays a été constituée;

d) L'automatisation des travaux cartographiques (calculs scientifiques, dessins automatiques) a été généralisée;

e) Un système de microfiches a été établi afin de résoudre le problème d'archivage, de s'assurer de la conservation des documents et de faciliter leur consultation.

Il est évident que la mutation totale que connaît le Maroc par ses programmes de développement fait changer la physionomie de l'espace national et nécessite, par conséquent, une révision périodique des cartes topographiques.

Cette révision est faite tous les cinq ou six ans pour les cartes régulières au 1:100 000 et au 1:50 000. A cette occasion il y a une reprise totale de la toponymie des cartes par la Commission nationale de toponymie qui décide des corrections à porter quant à la translittération ou transcription.

Normalisation nationale

Il est évident que la normalisation des noms géographiques et cartographiques à l'échelon national présente un intérêt certain pour les travaux de cartographie.

La Direction de la conservation foncière et des travaux topographiques (Division de la carte) est l'organisme officiel qui est chargé de l'établissement et de la révision de la carte topographique du Maroc à différentes échelles. Généralement cette carte est éditée en deux langues: une édition arabe et une édition latine.

Il n'existait pas d'organisme national chargé de déterminer aux fins d'usage officiel le nom ou l'orthographe des lieux figurant sur les cartes et autres documents officiels, à l'exception de certains noms administratifs. C'est donc la Direction de la conservation foncière et des travaux topographiques (Division de la carte) qui a toujours assuré la responsabilité de décider de l'orthographe de ces noms. Elle se base sur l'usage local et procède aux enquêtes et consultations qui lui semblent utiles pour nommer chaque détail géographique dans la forme et l'orthographe les plus appropriées. (Voir l'imprimé qui figure dans le document intitulé "Etat justificatif des noms" [E/CONF.69/L.891 Add. 1].) A ce niveau, elle se trouve confrontée aux problèmes de transcription (ou translittération) des caractères arabes en caractères latins.

Structure administrative des organismes nationaux charges de l'étude des noms géographiques

Dans le cadre de la normalisation des noms géographiques et cartographiques et pour définir des règles de transcription et translittération, une Commission nationale de toponymie a été créée, secondée par un Comité national de cartographie. Cette Commission est composée de toponymistes, de linguistes, de techniciens topographes et cartographes, de géographes et d'historiens.

Formation

La formation du personnel intéressé par les questions de normalisation des noms géographiques, et en général par les noms géographiques, se fait au Maroc de deux façons:

a) La formation à tous les niveaux du personnel technique (cartographes, topographes et géographes) s'effectue à l'Ecole nationale de topographie (Département de l'Institut agronomique et vétérinaire Hassan II) et dans différentes écoles techniques spécialisées;

b) La formation d'historiens, de géographes et de linguistes est dispensée dans les Facultés des Lettres et des Sciences humaines, en collaboration avec l'Institut d'études et de recherches pour l'arabisation et l'Institut universitaire de la recherche scientifique.

Nomenclature nationale

Le Maroc est divisé en 33 provinces et 2 préfectures qui se divisent en cercles, eux-mêmes divisés en communes urbaines et rurales.

Chaque commune porte un nom qui fait l'objet d'une loi (*Dahir*); ce nom est publié dans le *Bulletin officiel* en arabe et en caractères latins.

La nomenclature nationale donne les noms des 825 communes urbaines et rurales du Royaume avec leurs coordonnées géographiques (voir "Organisation administrative du Royaume" [E/CONF.69/L.89/Add.2]).

Traitement automatique des données

Les travaux de recherche menés au sein de l'Institut d'études et de recherches pour l'arabisation ont abouti à la mise au point d'un système de codage binaire Arabe standard voyellé-Code arabe (ASV-CODAR).

Ce système touche plusieurs domaines:
L'imprimerie: caractères typographiques,
La décalcomanie: lettres adhésives,
Les matrices ligne: bloc,
Les machines à composer: caractères mobiles,
La photocomposition,
La dactylographie: machine à écrire,
L'informatique et la transmission de données,
Les télécommunications: TELEX.

Par ailleurs un terminal bilingue (EURAB) [caractères arabes/caractères européens] a été conçu pour l'arabe à partir des données du système ASV-CODAR.

Terminal EURAB

Il permet de visualiser entièrement et de traiter en synchrone et en vis-à-vis sur l'écran l'alphabet latin et l'alphabet arabe voyellé.

Il a été perfectionné pour traiter jusqu'à huit alphabets différents.

Au Maroc, nous avons un problème de translittération de l'arabe au latin et inversement en cartographie, dans l'état civil, dans les banques . . .

Un système de translittération a été mis au point. Il est commandé par un codage linguistique qui permet de restituer en caractères latins n'importe quel nom ou mot écrit en caractères arabes. De la même façon, il permet de restituer en caractères arabes tous les noms ou mots écrits en caractères latins. La résolution 9 intitulée "Romanisation des caractères arabes"[1], adoptée à la présente Conférence, contient une proposition marocaine à ce sujet.

Le système ASV-CODAR a fait l'objet de recommandations à la Conférence régionale des ministres des Etats arabes chargés de l'application de la science et de la technologie au développement (CASTARAB) tenue à Rabat, en août 1976, d'une résolution adoptée à la dix-neuvième session de la Conférence générale de l'UNESCO tenue à Nairobi en novembre 1976 et d'une résolution de l'Organisation de la Ligue arabe pour l'éducation, la culture et la science (ALECSO). Ces résolutions ont été présentées conjointement par le Maroc et 20 autres pays arabes.

Exonymes

A la veille de l'indépendance, il existait au Maroc une série de noms géographiques introduits par la colonisation et qui n'avaient aucun lien avec le patrimoine national tels que Petit Jean, Mogador, Mazagan et Louis Gentil.

Cette situation a motivé des recherches et enquêtes en vue de changer ces exonymes en toponymes nationaux adéquats, qui ont abouti aux résultats suivants:

Ancien nom	*Nouveau nom*
Petit Jean	Sidi Kacem
Mogador	Essaouira
Mazagan	El Jadida
Port Lyautey	Kénitra
Marchand	Rommani
Louis Gentil	Youssoufia
Saint Jean de Fédala	El Louizia

[1] *Troisième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.79.I.4), chap. III.

Système d'écriture

Lakhdar ghazal de composition standard

Le système comprend un ensemble de signes destinés à la fabrication de caractères typographiques, de matrices ou de types à l'usage de tous les moyens de composition de textes et en particulier ceux de l'imprimerie (typographie manuelle, composition mécanique à chaud et à froid). (Voir le rapport intitulé "Système Lakhdar de composition standard et la nomenclature ASV-CODAR" dont le texte figure dans la présente publication sous le point 11.)

Reproduisant l'alphabet arabe total (voyellation incluse) sans modification majeure de l'esthétique calligraphe habituelle et pour un nombre limité de caractères, le système, qui comprend outre les lettres et les signes de voyellation, les chiffres et la ponctuation, permet de constituer des polices standard dans les normes mêmes du caractère latin, donc adaptables aux procédés et aux machines conçus sur la base de ces normes.

Coopération internationale

Le Maroc n'a pas cessé de montrer son intérêt pour toutes les manifestations scientifiques, aussi bien au niveau international que régional (pays arabes, pays méditerranéens, pays africains, etc.). C'est ainsi qu'il a participé à différents congrès, conférences et séminaires ayant trait à la discipline cartographique:

- Conférences cartographiques régionales des Nations Unies pour l'Afrique, Nairobi, 1963 et Tunis, 1966
- Conférences de l'Association cartographique internationale
- Conférences de l'UNESCO
- Conférences de l'ALECSO organisées sous l'égide de la Ligue arabe.

Par ailleurs il a été le pays hôte en août 1976 pour la conférence régionale (CASTARAB) organisée sous l'égide de l'UNESCO.

L'effort accompli par le Maroc sur la normalisation des noms géographiques montre l'intérêt qu'il porte à la question. Ceci explique aussi sa réponse à l'invitation du Conseil économique et social pour participer à la présente Conférence.

Le Maroc, fervent croyant des principes de la coopération internationale, ne peut que présenter tous ses remerciements et toutes ses félicitations au comité chargé de l'organisation de cette importante manifestation scientifique. Il tient aussi à remercier le Gouvernement et le peuple grecs pour leur hospitalité exemplaire. Il espère que cette Conférence aboutira à des recommandations et à des résolutions à l'échelle des objectifs des pays participants.

REPORT PRESENTED BY CZECHOSLOVAKIA*

Both the Czech Terminological Commission of the Czech Office of Geodesy and Cartography and the Slovak Terminological Commission of the Slovak Office of Geodesy and Cartography have been very active since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in May 1972. Fundamental problems and reports based on the conclusions of the London Conference were discussed at the meetings of the Commissions, as were issues concerning the demands of both national departments of geodesy and cartography and various other institutions.

The representatives of the terminological commissions also took part in the Second and Third Conferences of the Socialist Countries of the Seventh and Eighth United Nations Regional Groups on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held at Budapest in January 1975 and June 1977 and hereinafter referred to as the "Second Conference" and the "Third Conference", respectively.

In accordance with the recommendations of the Second Conference, both national terminological commissions are tackling the standardization of geographical names in such a way as to follow the recommendations of the United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names as well as to meet Czechoslovakia's own needs.

In accordance with these recommendations, a draft list of Czech and Slovak equivalents has been completed for the dictionary of technical terms used by the United Nations for the standardization of geographical names. The worked-out draft is being submitted by the Czechoslovak delegation to the present Conference as an independent document.

The Czech and Slovak Offices of Geodesy and Cartography are also working out, in accordance with these recommendations, a list of names of oceans, undersea forms and sea currents.

Also in accordance with the recommendations of the Second Conference, a draft list of the names of outstanding Czechoslovak scientific and cultural personalities has been worked out. This list is now being considered by the appropriate official bodies and it will be submitted as soon as it has been approved. The draft of a general system of organization of the names of extraterrestrial topographical phenomena has not yet been worked out.

The official names of Czechoslovakia, as well as of its two national republics, have been sent to the Hungarian Geodetic Service together with the versions for use in the United Nations official languages; for Chinese, the Pinyin transcription has been used.

In accordance with the recommendations of the Second Conference, changes have been made in the projected international dictionary of technical terms used in general geographical maps, including changes in the basic concepts as well as changes in the arrangement of specific entries. A separate report on this subject has been submitted for discussion under agenda item 10.

In accordance with these recommendations, both of the national commissions have been preparing lists of traditional geographical names. Names have been drawn, first and foremost, from cartographic publications and the results of the work of the Slovak terminological commission to date have been published as part of the *Cartographic Information* series, as follows:

Volume 2, *Zoznam vžitých názvov riek a vodných plôch sveta* (*A List of Traditional Names of the Rivers and the Water Areas of the World*);

Volume 3, *Zoznam štátov a krajín sveta* (*A List of States and Countries of the World*; *Traditional Slovak and Official Names*);

Volume 4, *Zoznam vžitých slovenských názvov miest sveta* (*A List of Traditional Slovak Names of Towns and Cities of the World*);

Volume 5, *Zoznam vžitých slovenských názvov útvarov horizontálneho členenia zemského povrchu* (*A List of Traditional Slovak Names of Forms of Horizontal Profile of the Earth's Surface*);

Volume 6, *Zoznam vžitých slovenských názvov útvarov vertikálneho členenia zemského povrchu* (*A List of Traditional Slovak Names of Forms of Vertical Profile of the Earth's Surface*); and

Volume 7, *Zoznam vžitých slovenských názvov mimozemských objektov* (*A List of Traditional Slovak Names of Extraterrestrial Bodies*).

The lists of geographical names published by the Slovak Office for Geodesy and Cartography are being sent to all offices of geodesy and cartography whose representatives took part in the meetings of the Seventh and the Eighth Regional Groups according to a list of addresses mutually approved at the Budapest Conference.

Both terminological commissions are now carrying out very extensive work on the territory of Bohemia and Slovakia respectively. They are revising and standardizing geographical names of the 1:50,000 official map of Czechoslovakia. So far some 30,000 names from the territory of the Czech Socialist Republic and some 17,000 names of non-inhabited geographical features from the territory of the Slovak Socialist Republic have been revised. The Slovak Terminological Commission has published a part of this work (covering the territory of the region of East Slovakia) in volume 8 of *Cartographic Information*.

At present another volume containing names from the region of Central Slovakia is being printed and by 1978 a list of names from the region of Western Slovakia will also have been published.

The revision of geographical names for a new 1 : 10,000 official map of Czechoslovakia is also progressing well. This revision is being carried out as an integral part of mapping and cartography.

Both national commissions are also preparing identificators of regional evidence units, designed to help set up

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.93.

an information system within the Czechoslovak territory. Some 10,000 names of villages, cadastral territories and localities have been checked.

A list of names of countries and their territorial sections is being worked out as a joint document of both commissions, in connexion with the CMEA norm (*Standardt SEV* 252–76, *gruppa* T 62, *Kody nazvanij stran i drugich geografičeskich jedinic*). In addition to the abbreviated (exonymic) form, in Czech and Slovak, of the name of each country and section, the list will also contain the corresponding exonyms in English, Russian, French, German and Spanish; the official name in the official language of the country; the official names in Czech and Slovak; the names of official tongues; the political system; and the names of capitals, together with the Czech and Slovak exonyms and co-ordinates for their location.

Czech and Slovak linguists, cartographers and geographers are paying more and more attention to geographical names. The Second Czech Onomastic Conference (Prague 1975), the Thirteenth Congress of the Czechoslovak Geographical Society (Plzeň 1975), the Fourth Cartographic Conference (Brno 1975) and the Seventh Slovak Onomastic Conference (Zemplínska Šírava 1976) all dealt with geographical names. These conferences showed that one of the most important problems is the relation between official names and exonyms. It is necessary to tackle this problem simultaneously with the standardizing of geographical names. For this reason Czechoslovakia is submitting to the present Conference, under agenda item 13 below a report entitled "*Notes on the relationship of official names and exonyms as a problem in the standardization of geographical names*".

According to the transcription system adopted for the Bulgarian Cyrillic alphabet and recommended for international usage according to resolution 5 of the Second United Nations Conference,[1] work was started in both the Czech and Slovak terminological commissions. In the first half of 1976 a list of names from the territory of Bulgaria, compiled by the Slovak Terminological Commission, was sent to the Bulgarian Geodetic Service for review.

Both commissions co-operate with one another and work out material for the compilation of all important cartographic publications. They also co-operate with the ministries and other institutions that issue various standards and norms. Thus the impact of the commissions' work is considerably enhanced.

The commissions have reached the conclusion that it is necessary to review new cartographic publications in scientific journals specifically from the point of view of the use of geographical names. The first reviews focusing on this aspect have already been submitted for publication.

The conclusions and recommendations of the Third Conference of the Socialist Countries in the Seventh and Eighth Regional Groups for the Standardization of Geographical Names (Budapest, June 1977) confirmed the validity of the conclusions of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names as well as the working out of these conclusions by the Second Conference of the Socialist Countries in the Seventh and Eighth Regional Groups (Budapest, January 1975).

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

REPORT PRESENTED BY BULGARIA*

The People's Republic of Bulgaria takes an active part in the work done by the United Nations in the field of the standardization of geographical names. International co-operation in that field not only plays an important role in the further solution of the problems connected with the standardization of geographical names, but also exerts a positive influence on cultural intercourse and rapprochement among nations. Our country supports this international co-operation and has made its contribution to it as participant in its first and second United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names (Geneva, 1967 and London, 1972) and in the forthcoming (Third) Conference (Athens, 1977).

The resolutions taken by these Conferences are exceptionally important and guiding documents for the future activities of the various national institutions along such important lines as the unification of geographical names and geographical terminology, the compilation of gazetteers of maritime, underwater and extraterrestrial features, the preparation of lists of exonyms and so on.

In accordance with the recommendations of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names and of the conferences of the Seventh and Eighth Regional Groups at Budapest, the activity of the People's Republic of Bulgaria on the standardization of geographical names for the period from 1972 to 1977 was aimed at the fulfilment of the following main tasks:

Research work on orthography and transcription of geographical names

Systematic research has been carried out at the University of Sofia, Faculty of Philology, and at the Bulgarian Academy of Sciences, Institute of the

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.96.

Bulgarian Language, on problems connected with the etymology, toponymy, onomastics and transcription of names in the different languages, directed at overcoming the difficulties arising from differences in the phonemic systems involved. The results of this work have been reflected in a series of publications and monographs. Special mention should be made in this connexion of the publication entitled *Pronunciation and Transcription of Foreign Names in the Bulgarian Language* (Sofia, 1974).

The problems that have been elaborated are not only of theoretical importance, but have also a practical application in cartography and in various other scientific and cultural fields.

Lists of geographical names in the territories of other countries, with transcriptions in the Bulgarian language

This activity is carried on by the Council of Orthography and Transcription of Geographical Names under the Central Administration of Geodesy, Cartography and Cadastre. The Council has super-departmental functions and its decisions on matters of orthography and transcription of geographical names are obligatory on a national scale, not only in the field of small-scale cartography, but also for the television and radio services, for all educational establishments and for the press.

Considerable work has been done in the 1972–1977 period on questions of orthography and transcription of geographical names. Lists have been made out and transcribed for the following countries and territories: Andorra, the French Territory of the Afars and the Issas,[1] Afghanistan, Bahrain, Belgium, the Byelorussian Soviet Socialist Republic, Czechoslovakia, Denmark, Egypt, Ethiopia, France, the Federal Republic of Germany, the German Democratic Republic, Iran, Iraq, Spain, Democratic Yemen, Jordan, Kuwait, Lebanon, the Libyan Arab Jamahiriya, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, the Moldavian Soviet Socialist Republic, Monaco, Norway, Pakistan, Poland, Portugal, Qatar, San Marino, Saudi Arabia, the Sudan and the Syrian Arab Republic.

With the transcription of the geographical names in the above countries and the publication of the respective lists, the task was completed of transcribing the geographical names in the territory of Europe, the Near East and the Middle East.

For the establishment of a correct written form for foreign names, a great number of sources have been used, including maps, atlases, dictionaries, onomastic directories and the like. Transcriptions have been made on the basis of a General Instruction that determines and systematizes into a single system the main principles of orthography and transcription in accordance with the peculiarities of our language and our system of writing. All lists begin with brief indications of the principal rules of transcription, making it possible independently to transcribe names that are not contained in the list.

What has been stated so far shows that a considerable amount of transcription work has been done of geographical names over large territories in accordance with the Bulgarian phonetic and graphic system.

In view of the great volume of work required for the making out of the alphabetical lists of transcribed names, a programme has been worked out for the use of an electronic computer, making possible the automatic systematization and arrangement of geographical names.

Transliteration and transcription of Bulgarian geographical names from the Cyrillic into the Roman alphabet

The rendering of the Bulgarian geographical names in the Latin alphabet is a very complicated task. Many organizations have worked for many years on the establishment of a universal system of transliteration.

In 1971, a system for transliteration of geographical names from Bulgarian into Latin was devised by the Council of Orthography and Transcription of Geographical Names. The monographic principle underlies the system of transliteration, the tendency being to render our letter system with Latin characters, by using the same signs and letters for all corresponding signs and letters. On the basis of the General Geographical Map of Bulgaria (at scale 1:300,000), a list of geographical names has been made and issued for general use in the People's Republic of Bulgaria.

Our system of transliteration has certain features in common with some of the variations of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) system, with the system of the Academy of Sciences of the USSR and with the project now being developed within the framework of the Council of Mutual Economic Assistance.

The main efforts are focused on improving the system for the purpose of its universal application in the countries using the Cyrillic alphabet, with due consideration for national peculiarities and traditions.

Making out lists of the traditional geographical names (exonyms)

In its work, the Council of Orthography and Transcription of Geographical Names has been guided by the recommendation of the Second United Nations Conference that national official names should be taken as the basis for the standardization of geographical names. This recommendation, envisaging a maximum curtailment of exonyms, is perfectly reasonable, because it aims at establishing unified written means of com-

[1] Today known as Djibouti.

munication in the interest of broadening international intercourse in the spheres of scientific, cultural and economic relations.

The complete elimination of Bulgarian exonyms is impossible, however, because of certain historical circumstances and because of such other factors as differences in systems of writing and phonetic and grammatical peculiarities. As a result of our intercourse with other nations through the ages, some names whose spelling or pronunciation differs from the original have in different ways entered the basic stock of words of our people. These traditional names require greater attention, because they substantially impede international contacts in all spheres of social and political, cultural, scientific and economic life.

A list of exonyms is now being prepared at the Council of Orthography and Transcription of Geographical Names. This list will comprise the names of countries, capitals, larger cities, hydrographic and orographic features. The list will contain the traditional form of the name, its national official form and its normal Bulgarian form. After a detailed discussion of the list, it will be established which traditional names will be preserved and which will be replaced with the corresponding national official form.

The list of exonyms being thus prepared should be considered the initial stage in determining, in detail, the stock of exonyms in the Bulgarian language.

In accordance with the recommendations of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, work is being done in the People's Republic of Bulgaria also on some other problems, including the compilation of a dictionary of special terms and of a dictionary of terms contained in geographical maps, the compilation of an international gazetteer, the naming of extraterrestrial features and the working out of a draft for compiling a unified dictionary of geographical names in the region of the valley of the Danube River.

The Council of Orthography and Transcription of Geographical Names is continuing to edit the *Collection of Materials for the Orthography and Transcription of Geographical Names*. This is a specialized publication for the elaboration of theoretical and practical problems connected with the standardization of geographical names and for generalizing and popularizing the experience gained in this field. Issues No. 2 and No. 3 have already been published. Issue No. 2 contains articles by some distinguished linguists, among them Professor I. Douridanov, Professor T. Tomov and Professor M. Mladenov, on different questions of topographic toponymy and on peculiarities in the transcription of Spanish, Portuguese and Romanian geographical names. Issue No. 3 is devoted entirely to the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names.

The Council of Orthography and Transcription of Geographical Names will be pleased to make space in the *Collection* available to foreign authors for the publication of materials on the standardization of geographical names.

The Council is intensifying its activity on the exchange of materials with kindred organizations abroad.

As can be seen even in this brief account, the work of the Council of Orthography and Transcription of Geographical Names in the period from 1972 to 1977 has been both versatile and useful. We can say with satisfaction that international co-operation in the standardization of geographical names is a sign of an ever-widening development and progress, which both promotes the mutual exchange of experience and helps to elucidate the tasks and trends of our future activities. Within its capabilities, our country will continue in future to take an active part in the development of this useful activity.

REPORT PRESENTED BY CHINA*

Résumé

Le présent document contient les vues du Gouvernement de la Chine sur la normalisation des noms géographiques. Il commence par un examen de la confusion qui régnait en Chine autour des noms géographiques avant la libération. Ensuite, il passe en revue les principaux travaux accomplis en Chine nouvelle sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, en rappelant que la Chine a pour politique de transcrire les noms géographiques chinois à l'aide de l'alphabet phonétique chinois. Enfin, il y est proposé que l'orthographe des noms géographiques chinois dans l'alphabet phonétique chinois devienne la norme internationale pour la romanisation des noms géographiques chinois.

Resumen

En el presente documento se exponen las opiniones del Gobierno de China sobre la estandarización de los nombres geográficos. El documento comienza con una reseña de la confusión en materia de nombres geográficos que se produjo en China antes de la liberación. Más adelante, ofrece un cuadro general de la labor realizada en la Nueva China sobre la estandarización de los nombres geográficos, y reitera la política establecida de China de escribir los nombres geográficos chinos con el alfabeto fonético chino. Por último, en el documento se propone la adopción del alfabeto fonético chino como norma inter-

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.102.

nacional para la romanización de los nombres geográficos chinos.

*

* *

This is the first time the Chinese delegation is attending the United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names. First of all, we would like to outline our views on the work of international standardization of geographical names.

At present, countries want independence, nations want liberation, and the people want revolution—this has become the irresistible trend of history. The world situation is developing in a direction favourable to the peoples of the world. We are glad to see that many countries have developed their national economies and cultures and have also made gratifying progress in standardizing their geographical names after shaking off colonial rule and achieving independence.

We hold that the work of international standardization of geographical names must be carried out with the aim of facilitating economic and cultural exchange and friendly co-operation among the peoples of all countries. Therefore, a reasonable solution of the questions concerned should be sought through full consultations without imposing one's views upon others. Still less is it permissible to use standardization of geographical names as a pretext to encroach on the sovereignty of other countries and interfere in their own affairs.

We have always maintained that all countries, big or small, should be equal. The affairs of a country should be handled by its own people and the affairs of an international organization should be managed jointly by its members. The international standardization of geographical names should be based on the national standardization of geographical names of each country. In standardizing romanized geographical names, the opinions of the sovereign countries concerned should be respected. The standard Roman spellings chosen by each country for the names of geographical places within its sovereign jurisdiction should be adopted as part of the international standard. The international standard names of geographical features common to two or more countries should be agreed on by the countries concerned through consultations. The standardization of names of geographical features in international areas beyond national jurisdiction should be agreed on by all countries through consultations.

China is a socialist country and also a developing country belonging to the third world. In the past, the people of China and those of most other countries in Asia, Africa and Latin America had a common lot, being subjected alike to prolonged imperialist aggression and oppression. In order to plunder our treasures and wealth and enslave our people, the imperialists used different means to probe military and economic information of our country, illegally surveyed and mapped many parts of China, wilfully altered our geographical names or designated our places behind the backs of the Chinese people. As a result, there used to be some Chinese geographical names, imposed upon us by imperialists, that were associated with foreign aggression; there also are cases where several names exist for the same feature. These are harmful to China's sovereignty and national dignity. In romanizing Chinese geographical names, the imperialists contrived as they pleased several systems for transliterating Han characters to suit their own needs and their own ways. This resulted in a welter of romanized spellings of Chinese geographical names. Not only is a place name spelt differently in different foreign languages using the Roman alphabet, but it may also have a number of different spellings in the same foreign language. These spelling systems are unscientific and cannot correctly convey the standard pronunciation of the Chinese language. As is well known, geographical names are constantly used in communication among peoples. The coexistence of several names for a feature and of several romanized spellings for a name is detrimental to friendly exchanges between nations and to the promotion of economic and cultural development.

The Chinese people's great leader Chairman Mao Tsetung and the Chinese Government have all along attached importance to the standardization of geographical names. After nationwide liberation, a great number of investigations about our geographical names were made by relying on the toponymists and the broad masses and it was decided, with the approval of our Government, to abolish or alter old names that were wrong and improper. To uphold our country's sovereignty and national independence, we abolished those geographical names that were tinged with colonialism because of having been given by imperialists during their aggression against China. To give effect to our policy of equality and solidarity of all the nationalities in our country, we carefully checked and changed those geographical names, left over by the past governments, that implied discrimination against, or insult to, minority nationalities. In the spirit of proletarian internationalism, we also altered those geographical names left over by history which were tinged with big-power chauvinism. Thus, along with the development of our socialist construction and surveying undertaking, large numbers of new geographical names have appeared. The formulation of new names and the editing of old ones constitute the first steps in our work of standardizing Chinese geographical names.

Chairman Mao Tsetung pointed out that "the Chinese written language must be reformed in the direction of adopting a phonetic alphabet as is common with the languages of the world." He also pointed out that a lot of work should be done in preparation for the romanization of the Han characters; but before their romanization, Han characters must be simplified in the interest of present use, even while such preparations are being actively made. According to Chairman Mao's instructions, our Government published in 1956 the *Scheme for Simplifying Han Characters*. On this basis, the Committee for Reforming the Chinese Written Language compiled a *Comprehensive Glossary of Simplified Characters*, thus

creating favourable conditions for the standardization of the Han written form of geographical names. In 1958 our Government published the *Scheme for a Chinese Phonetic Alphabet*, which had been approved by the fifth session of the First National People's Congress. The scheme adopts the Roman alphabet, which is used by most countries of the world, to spell the Chinese (Han) language, providing good conditions for the standardization of romanized Chinese geographical names.

Our esteemed and beloved late Premier Chou En-lai attached great importance to this matter. As he pointed out, "the *Scheme for a Chinese Phonetic Alphabet* can be used to transcribe the names of Chinese persons and places in documents, books and newspapers dealing with other countries". In the last 20 years, in accordance with Premier Chou's instructions, the Chinese people have used the Chinese phonetic alphabet to spell large numbers of Chinese geographical names. Now this alphabet is already in use in spelling the names of domestic post and telegraph offices, weather stations, railway stations and city streets and in investigating and recording minority nationality place names by the surveying department. In recent years, an *Atlas of the People's Republic of China*, nautical charts and other materials have been published in China using Chinese phonetic spelling, and have been well received at home and abroad. Dictionaries published in our country, in which Han characters are annotated with the Chinese alphabet, provide the basis of pronunciation for the romanization of Han place names. With a view to accurately conveying the pronunciation of minority nationality languages, we have drawn up the publication *Rules for Transliterating Minority Nationality Place Names with the Chinese Phonetic Alphabet.*

The above is a general picture of our work in standardizing Chinese geographical names.

China is a developing country. Although we have had some gratifying results in standardizing our geographical names, much work remains to be done in this field. The current situation in our country is excellent. Under the leadership of the Party Central Committee, headed by our wise leader Chairman Hua Kuo-feng, the Chinese people are united as one and in high spirits; holding high the great banner of Chairman Mao and carrying out his behests, we are working hard to realize the great strategic policy decision of "grasping the key link of class struggle in running the country well", which was formulated by Chairman Hua. A new historical period of development has begun in China's socialist revolution and socialist construction, and a new leap forward in China's national economy is taking shape. We are confident that our work of standardization of geographical names, like our work in other fields, will make even more rapid progress. We are ready to learn with modesty from the advanced experience of the people of other countries. We are prepared to do our best, together with other delegations and through consultations on an equal footing, to fulfil the tasks confronting the Conference and make it a success.

At the sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names, we brought up for discussion the question of adopting Chinese geographical names spelt with the Chinese phonetic alphabet as the international standard for the romanization of Chinese geographical names. We are glad to see that it received support from the majority of the experts. We reiterate that the *Scheme for a Chinese Phonetic Alphabet* is the official Roman alphabet scheme in China. Its use in spelling Chinese geographical names is China's established policy. It is already in wide use in China and will be applied more extensively as it becomes more widely popularized. Therefore, we propose that this Conference give full consideration to adopting Chinese geographical names spelt with the Chinese phonetic alphabet as the international standard for the romanization of Chinese geographical names.

REPORT PRESENTED BY SWEDEN*

Since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in 1972, a number of organizational changes have been made in Sweden that are important with regard to the handling of name problems. In 1974 the National Survey Board and the Geographical Survey Office were merged to form the National Land Survey of Sweden (Statens Lantmäteriverk). One of the tasks of this authority is "to promote a well-adapted and correct use of place names with the authority to standardize place names". This means that the Land Survey now standardizes names used both in the property registers and on the official maps. Standardization is always preceded by a philological examination at the Place-Name Institute in Uppsala. However, the Land Survey does not have total responsibility in these matters; the names of administrative districts (municipalities, parishes), post offices, railway stations and streets, for example, are standardized by other bodies.

The Board of Dialect and Toponymy Archives (Styrelsen för Dialekt- och Ortnamnsarkiven m m), mentioned in the 1972 report, has been reorganized as the Committee of Dialect and Toponymy Institutes (Nämnden för Dialekt- och Ortnamnsarkiven m m) under the National Board of Archives (Statens Arkivstyrelse), which was established at the same time (1 July 1977). The Committee functions through the Place-Name Institute

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.103.

in Uppsala as an advisory authority on the standardization of place names.

The National Land Survey of Sweden has begun reorganizing the property registers with the aim of achieving an integrated property register for the whole country. This register will be ADP-based. At the same time, the property names will be rechecked. In the report to the Second Conference in London fears were expressed that many traditional and well-known place names, and place names exceeding a certain number of letters, would disappear. According to new general outlines laid down in 1974 almost every name can be retained.

In 1978, publication of the first editions of the *Land Use Map* and the *Topographic Map* will be completed. The *Land Use Map* will run to 12,800 sheets, about 1,000 of them at the scale of 1:20,000 and the rest at the scale of 1:10,000. The map will cover the whole country except for the greater part of the high mountain areas. The *Topographic Map* will run to 690 sheets, edited at the scale of 1:100,000 for the mainly mountainous north-west part of the country and at the scale of 1:50,000 for the rest of the country. This means that as of 1978 there will be, in map form, a philologically approved place name collection covering the whole country. A typical *Land Use Map* sheet covers 25 square kilometres and contains about 80 place names; a *Topographic Map* sheet covers 625 square kilometres and contains about 1,200 place names.

REPORT PRESENTED BY POLAND*

Following the recommendations adopted by the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London 1972, and by the Second Meeting of the Seventh and Eighth United Nations Regional Divisions, held in Budapest in 1975, the following topics have been dealt with by the Polish names authorities.

Country names

The list of the names of States Members of the United Nations has been adapted to the Polish language. The list consists of the following items:

(*a*) Polish and national short name;
(*b*) Polish and national full official name;
(*c*) Adjective of nationality as derived from the country's name;
(*d*) Name applied to the country's inhabitants;
(*e*) Polish and national name of the capital;
(*f*) Adjective as derived from the capital name; and
(*g*) Name of the capital's inhabitants.

For each name mentioned, both the genitive and locative form are also given.

The list has been published in the *Official Gazette* of the Ministry of Science, Higher Education and Technology, and as such it is obligatory for use in official documents, radio, television, press, literature and other mass media.

Exonyms

The discussion of the definition of the term "exonym", formulated in the report of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names on its fifth session, which is reproduced under agenda item 16 below, was undertaken from the point of view of the specificity of Polish language rules. As a result, the definition has been enlarged. The Polish proposal will be presented at the present Conference.

We have also begun preparation of a full list of Polish exonyms. The list will be based on the improved definition of "exonym", and will consist of the names of settlements as well as of other geographical features. The exonyms for the following countries have been already worked out: Estonian SSR, Latvian SSR, Lithuanian SSR, Kaliningrad district of the Russian SFSR, the German Democratic Republic, the Federal Republic of Germany, Austria, Switzerland, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg and Czechoslovakia. Other exonyms are in preparation.

Extraterrestrial features

The list of 60 outstanding Poles and of ten geographical features in Poland, as suggested for the naming of extraterrestrial objects, was submitted to Professor Komkov, the member of the United Nations Group of Experts for the Standardization of Geographical Names. The list of outstanding Poles who had a considerable share in the development of world science and culture has been prepared in close co-operation with the numerous Polish national scientific societies.

Polish gazetteer

We have also begun the preparation of a Polish gazetteer. The existing "List of Settlements in the Polish People's Republic", published by the Ministry of Transport and Communication in 1967, is now out of date as a result of the administrative reorganization carried out in 1975. The preliminary materials for the new gazetteer are nearly completed.

Polish names authorities

Two official bodies are engaged in the standardization of geographical names in Poland:

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.107.

(*a*) Research problems involving the geographical names of territories outside Poland, terminology, exonyms, naming of features beyond a single sovereignty and writing systems are the responsibility of the Commission on the Standardization of Geographical Names of the World, created by the Minister of Science, Higher Education and Technology in 1973. The Commission closely collaborates with both the Main Board of Geodesy and Cartography and the Commission of Polish Language Culture of the Polish Academy of Sciences. Resolutions of the Commission are ratified by the Minister of Science, Higher Education and Technology and then published in the Ministry's *Official Gazette*.

(*b*) The Ministry of the Administration, Territorial Economy and Environmental Protection is responsible for all problems concerning geographical names in any territory under Polish sovereignty.

REPORT PRESENTED BY AFGHANISTAN*

In Afghanistan, geographical names are usually written in Pashto or Dari, the national languages, using the Pashto-Dari alphabet. A system of transliteration for geographical names, based on the Latin alphabet, was established for the first time in 1957. A second, revised edition of this system was published in English-Dari (Afghan Persian) in August 1962.

The system was simplified once again in 1973 and a phonetic-type alphabet was established.

In 1976 a committee of experts was appointed to discuss the matter of standardization of geographical names on maps and a phonemic alphabet was established for Pashto and Dari which was produced at the regional conference (which included Afghanistan, Iran and Pakistan) held at Teheran from 9 to 10 May 1977.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.111 and Add.1.

REPORT PRESENTED BY KENYA*

Since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names the standardization of geographical names in Kenya has continued steadily under the guidance of the Standing Committee on Geographical Names (SCGN), as constituted by Kenya's Survey Act. Work on the field collection and office treatment of names and on the national gazetteer has been intensified during that time.

Over 150 maps at scale 1:50,000 have been either revised or constructed since 1972 and new editions produced. About 100 of these maps have been produced with the technical assistance of the Governments of Canada, Japan and the United Kingdom. In every case our surveyors and cartographers have been sent out to verify the old names and collect additional names. As a result of their experience, the surveyors and cartographers have returned with more names, most of which have the correct spelling. The field collection has been made easier by sending surveyors or cartographers who speak the local dialect of the particular area; the results have been very good.

It was the intention of the Government of Kenya after the Second United Nations Conference to re-organize the local committees in the various districts, but this has not been effectively done due to the Government's development priorities. Our surveyors, however, work very closely with the administrative officers in the districts during their collection of names. The progress that has been realized in the collection of geographical names can also be attributed to the great number of people who can speak KiSwahili, the national language. Since education at lower primary school was declared free by the Government, more children have been able to go to school, hence the increase in the number of people who can speak both KiSwahili and English.

The office treatment of geographical names has been strictly based on the principles laid down by SCGN, and very few cases have had to be referred to local committees. None of the approved names has been gazetted as required by the Survey Act, but it has been always accepted that the names as they appear on our topographical maps are authoritative until proved otherwise. The office processing is done through a programme that was laid down by SCGN. An index card is made out for each new name when it is approved. A new card is also prepared for any old name whose spelling has been corrected; the old card is destroyed after adequate referencing has been made.

When there is evidence that there has been a substantial

* The original text of this paper, prepared by W. J. Absaloms, Secretary of the Standing Committee on Geographical Names, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.112.

increase in the number of new names, steps are then taken to produce a new edition of the national gazetteer. At the moment we are in the process of producing the second edition of our national gazetteer with the kind help of the United States Board on Geographical Names. The second edition will contain some 40,000–50,000 names as compared with 26,000 names in the first edition.

It was our hope that the pilot training course in toponymy, which had been proposed to be held in the Netherlands, would provide a good training for our officers involved in the field collection and office treatment of geographical names. It is still sincerely hoped that these courses will eventually get off the ground, as planned, and that officers from developing countries will get the opportunity to learn something new in the field of standardization of geographical names.

REPORT PRESENTED BY ZAMBIA*

On behalf of my Government I wish to extend our gratitude to the Secretary-General of the United Nations for extending the invitation to the Zambian Government to participate in this international Conference for the first time. I also wish to thank the host country, Greece, for the good hospitality it is giving to us here.

Since this is our first opportunity to participate in this Conference, I have very little to report to the Conference about standardization of geographical names in Zambia except to say that Zambia is a developing country and that it is hoped that Zambia, from participation in such a conference as this, will learn more about the standardization of geographical names from the distinguished experts who are participating in this Conference.

Precise and systematic rendering of geographical nomenclature is essential for technical and geographical studies. There is much attendant confusion when speakers of another language distort a name in their efforts to say it, usually producing, in the case of non-European languages, an incorrect and garbled version. In order to avoid this and to obtain uniformity of practice, the Geographical Place Names Committee was appointed by the Government in May 1953. The Committee's terms of reference were:

> "To advise the Government on questions relating to geographical nomenclatures in the Territory, such nomenclatures covering names of rivers, hills, mountains and features of local interest—i.e. any proper names which possess definite geographical and special significance".

The Committee met several times a year but transacted most of its routine business by circulating materials to its members. This manner of conducting business was rather lengthy and slow and in some ways unsatisfactory.

In 1964 as a result of the reallocation of survey functions consequent upon the dissolution of the Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland, the responsibility for national mapping was passed to the Zambian Department of Surveys. The Place Names Committee again became of more importance, and the task of reviving its functions was given to the Assistant Surveyor General in charge of mapping in the department of the Surveyor General. Then, upon the appointment of the second Committee, the current gazetteer of the whole country was published in 1966. This edition has never been revised, even though there is now a great need for its revision.

This *Gazetteer of Geographical Names* for all of Zambia contains some 35,000 names arranged alphabetically; code letters, numbers and abbreviations have been used to describe types of features and their administrative divisions within the provinces. Entries in the first and fifth columns consist of approved standard names, unapproved variant names cross-referenced to the approved version and unapproved names.

This Committee has since died, all its members having either retired or resigned from the Government. The Government has already started to work on reconvening the next committee. It is hoped that if the Committee is brought into existence again, efforts will be made to see that it does not again collapse. With the co-operation of other countries who form the Africa East Division, this committee can be expected to work very effectively.

* The original text of this paper, presented by C. M. Mubita, Zambia, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.117.

INFORME PRESENTADO POR CHILE*

Generalidades

Chile ha cumplido con las normas establecidas en la Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Uniformar los Nombres Geográficos, efectuada en Ginebra (Suiza), entre el 4 y el 22 de septiembre de 1967, y en la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, efectuada en Londres (Reino Unido), entre el 10 y el 31 de mayo de 1972.

Chile se anticipó en 10 años a lo recomendado en la primera Conferencia, o sea, en 1957 empezó a normalizar las nomenclaturas cartográficas con el levantamiento regular a escala 1:100.000 y posteriormente de 1:50.000 y 1:25.000.

* El texto original de este informe, preparado por el Instituto Geográfico Militar, Comando de Fabricaciones Militares, Ejército de Chile, ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF.69/L.120.

Nuestro país ha dado término a la confección de la primera parte del *Diccionario de Nombres Geográficos*, que contiene aproximadamente 50.000 topónimos que incluyen las secciones D, E, F, G y H. Las secciones A, B y C, se encuentran en trabajo, quedando para fecha posterior las secciones I, J, K, L y M, o sea, una vez que se cuente con la cartografía proveniente del levantamiento regular de la zona más difícil del territorio nacional, que abarca desde el paralelo 43° 30' S., hasta el Cabo de Hornos 56° S., dado que su topografía constituida por numerosísimas islas, canales y fajas de territorio continental impide contar con los medios de comunicación y transporte adecuados. Sus condiciones climáticas son totalmente adversas para el desarrollo de operaciones de campo (llueve aproximadamente un promedio de 200 días en el año). No obstante se están arbitrando los medios necesarios para llevar adelante el plan de ejecución de los trabajos de terreno.

Se expone a continuación como información general, los antecedentes que ha considerado el Instituto Geográfico Militar de Chile.

Estudio de los nombres geográficos en el Instituto Geográfico Militar de Chile

A. *Importancia y significado*

Es un hecho que la geografía y la cartografía necesariamente requieren el uso intensivo de vocablos y palabras para nombrar, individualizando, los diferentes y variados elementos geográficos y topográficos que comprenden sus estudios, descripciones y representaciones. En consecuencia, la designación de los nombres geográficos es el resultado de un análisis profundo y de documentados trabajos de investigación, cuya característica debe ser una prolija acuciosidad para poder cumplir, como mínimo, con las siguientes exigencias:

a) Que los nombres autóctonos correspondan a su realidad etimológica y puedan demostrarse documentadamente cada vez que sea posible;

b) Que el léxico gramatical concuerde con el idioma oficial; para el caso de Chile, la Real Academia de la Lengua Española;

c) Que individualicen característicamente el accidente geográfico, para que no exista lugar a dudas;

d) Que los nombres extranjeros sólo correspondan a personas o hechos de real mérito para las ciencias geográficas.

La importancia del estudio de los nombres geográficos es tal que, prácticamente, son ellos los que "le dan el valor de uso y empleo a las representaciones cartográficas;" sin nombres los usuarios no podrían aprovechar sus bondades; de poco servirían las mejores y exactas planificaciones geodésicas y mediciones matemáticas materializadas en la carta si después no se pudieran individualizar y denominar correctamente los lugares, ríos, elevaciones, localidades, zonas importantes, etc., haciendo posible su comprensión. Por esto se dice que los nombres geográficos son los que "hacen hablar a la carta topográfica".

El Instituto Geográfico Militar, consciente de la importancia de los nombres geográficos, realiza su estudio en forma científica y detallada; para su estudio se requiere de conocimientos de geografía, filología e historia a fin de evaluar y resolver los múltiples y variados problemas a que debe dar solución; por ejemplo, seleccionar los nombres autóctonos originarios de dialectos diversos; descubrir las designaciones híbridas; seleccionar el origen, motivo y mérito de los nombres extranjeros; estudiar los patronímicos nacionales, seleccionar la clase y cantidad adecuada de nombres que deba llevar la carta, según su escala, a fin de que su número no perjudique la claridad de la representación cartográfica, etc.

B. *Procedimientos*

Las comisiones de terreno recogen información de los nombres locales; el nombre lo escriben en los fotogramas en el lugar que corresponde y al reverso estampan las notas aclaratorias necesarias.

En el gabinete se vacían estos nombres a un gráfico general de papel transparente, sobrepuesto al original, de restitución; luego se elabora una planilla de estudios con la información del gráfico y otros documentos cartográficos, estadísticos, laudos arbitrales, diccionarios etimológicos de lenguas autóctonas, de la lengua española, etc.

El resultado de la evaluación determina la designación del nombre definitivo, con lo que se obtiene además de su precisa definición (río, lago, laguna, cerro, etc.), la correcta denominación del accidente y su escritura, como también su "uniformidad".

Desde 1965, las cartas del Levantamiento Regular (escala 1:50.000) llevan impreso al reverso un Indice de Nombres Geográficos que comprende: el nombre o topónimo, el tipo de accidente o genérico, las coordenadas geográficas al minuto y su cota.

Después de este proceso, se inicia el estudio de Nombres Geográficos a base del reconocimiento y clasificación del terreno y documentos pertinentes de los topónimos que debe llevar cada hoja.

C. *Transcendencia*

Todo mapa, carta o plano (cartografía en general) constituye en nuestra época, y sin duda por mucho tiempo más, el medio de información más accesible en lo concerniente a la descripción de la superficie de la Tierra en que habitamos y lo que ella tiene en el aspecto natural, artificial e informativo. Para que dicha cartografía sea completa debe contener los términos geográficos y los nombres (topónimo) de los diversos lugares que representa.

Tanto el *término geográfico* como el *topónimo* son el mejor medio que tenemos para designar una entidad geográfica, cualquiera que sea su importancia. El mismo propósito podría obtenerse por el empleo de coordenadas geográficas (latitud y longitud) o cualquier otro dato numérico, pero evidentemente eso sería mucho menos práctico para la mayoría de los usuarios.

La función del *topónimo* se cumplirá plenamente si a cada término le corresponde nada más que una sola denominación o nombre. Sabemos que un mismo nombre puede utilizarse para designar objetos diferentes y que por el contrario, un mismo accidente topográfico, puede recibir nombres distintos.

Sin que nos detengamos a analizar en forma amplia sobre los orígenes de los diversos topónimos (físico, social, cultural, religioso, histórico, etc.), se puede constatar que el nombre de un determinado lugar no perdurará sino en la medida que éste sea útil al intercambio diario de la información necesaria para una población cualquiera, ya sea rural o urbana. Se comprende bien que si ciertos nombres de lugares desaparecen por causa de inutilidades, otros nacen espontáneamente cada vez que la necesidad se hace sentir.

Para reforzar la argumentación, basta con hacer intervenir ciertos parámetros tales como idiomas empleados por los usuarios de los topónimos, tipos de escritura, noción del tiempo como factor de cambio, de evolución o de modificaciones.

Todos estos hechos ligados a nuestra existencia humana concurren a hacer a menudo difíciles los problemas toponímicos aplicados a la cartografía, lo que tiene repercusión a quien hace un mapa, carta o plano, o bien lo edita.

RAPPORT PRÉSENTÉ PAR LE CONGO*

Au nom de mon gouvernement, je remercie le Conseil économique et social qui a bien voulu inviter la République populaire du Congo à prendre part aux travaux de la présente Conférence.

Mon pays, qui participe pour la première fois à ces travaux, n'a pas de document spécial à présenter. Cependant, le Congo est très intéressé à la normalisation des noms géographiques car ses documents cartographiques établis par l'IGN, organisme du pays colonisateur (la France), souffrent d'une toponymie qui n'est pas tout à fait conforme aux dialectes des ethnies du pays.

Au début de 1976, le gouvernement a établi le Département de la recherche scientifique qui est désormais chargé des problèmes de recherche.

Un Institut géographique qui prend la relève de l'IGN-France est déjà créé.

Les investigations et compilations des documents ont commencé en vue de la révision totale des toponymes déjà établis. La normalisation des noms géographiques sera ensuite effectuée par les comités de recherche qui seront organisés. Mais la tâche n'est pas facile car la pénurie des cadres et leur formation posent de sérieux problèmes.

Nous pensons, comme prévu dans l'ordre du jour de la Conférence, que le moment est favorable pour nous pour recevoir l'aide éventuelle que le Conseil économique et social entend accorder à tous les pays en ce qui concerne des stages de formation de toponymistes.

Cependant, je voudrais relever que l'Afrique au sud du Sahara, ainsi dénommée dans la résolution 4[1] adoptée par la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, ne comprend que deux divisions linguistiques et géographiques représentées par le Nigéria et le Kenya.

Je suis persuadé que les résultats des travaux dans le domaine de la normalisation des noms géographiques ne sont pas suffisamment diffusés. Ce manque d'information explique sans doute l'absence d'un nombre important de pays africains à le présente Conférence, notamment les pays francophones. Le système de répartition en cinq sous-régions africaines (Nord, Sud, Est, Ouest et Afrique centrale) adopté par la commission économique pour l'Afrique serait peut-être plus efficace.

* Le texte original de ce rapport, présenté par M. Martial Bizengua, ingénieur directeur de l'Institut géographique et délégué du Congo à la Conférence, a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.127.

[1] *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.2), chap. III.

INFORME PRESENTADO POR CUBA*

Summary

Continued and significant political, economic and social changes within the Republic of Cuba have had a beneficial impact on toponymy and have contributed to the standardization of Cuban geographical names.

At the present stage in the institutionalization of the Cuban revolutionary process, the most important factors giving rise to these changes have been the holding of the First Congress of the Communist Party of Cuba; the establishment of the institutions of government of the people, with their municipal, provincial and national assemblies; the establishment of the new political and administrative divisions; and the introduction of the new system for planning and controlling the economy.

The Socialist Constitution of Cuba of 1976 and the law on the organization of the central administration of the State complete the political, economic and social context for the standardization of geographical names in Cuba.

* El texto original de este informe ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF.69/L.134.

For the preparation of the report on the new political divisions, which was discussed and approved at the First Congress of the Communist Party, all social, physical and geographical factors were investigated that would affect the new division.

An extensive study of economic regionalization was carried out, resulting in the establishment of 14 provinces and 169 municipalities.

The political division is based on the premise that in the new society, the State, under the guidance of the Party, exercises the direction, control and planning of all social activities. The territorial organization of State management of the economic, social and political processes must offer the best possible conditions for managing and administering society; accordingly, it must be adapted to the territorial structure of economic activities, taking into account the prospects for their development and the distribution of the population throughout the national territory.

The new division is based on criteria of economic regionalization, taking into account present and prospective geographical and demographic factors, as well as on the entire network of villages and towns used as administrative centres for the various authorities; it takes account of the most important towns and the progress achieved by all sectors of the economy.

The institutions of government of the people, established in the municipalities and provinces in the full exercise of the democracy, which the people have won and which the Socialist Constitution of 1976 confers upon them, will form an undeniably effective basis for the toponymic research now being conducted in the territory and, consequently, a useful point of reference for the standardization of geographical names. The Committee on Geographical Names carried out an extensive study and a thorough linguistic, historical and geographical investigation in connexion with the official names to be given to the new provinces and municipalities. The committee's conclusions regarding the toponyms will be reflected in the new law on the political and administrative division of Cuba's territory.

The names employed in the aforementioned legislation have been given standardized form, which is now obligatory in the official documents of Cuba. The technical instructions prepared for the naming of provinces, provincial capitals, municipalities and administrative centres have aimed at maintaining the historical, geographical and linguistic sequence of the toponyms, from aboriginal patronymics such as Guamá, Moa and Guantánamo to contemporary names such as Bartolomé Masó, Jesús Menéndez and Frank País.

During the period covered by this report, the list of geographical names of the basic map of the national territory, consisting of 29,000 toponyms, was completed. This list, which we mentioned at the London Conference in 1972, is now being made ready for publication.

An *Atlas of Cuba* will be published in 1978–1979, in commemoration of the twentieth anniversary of the victory of the Cuban Revolution. An index is also being prepared of the geographical names that will be contained in the *Atlas*.

Cuba has also participated in international efforts towards standardization of geographical names.

In response to an invitation by the Secretary-General of the United Nations, the Government of Cuba appointed a specialist who participated in the meetings of the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts held in 1973 and 1975 at United Nations Headquarters in New York.

The Government of Cuba also sent a delegation to the first United Nations Regional Cartographic Conference for the Americas, held in Panama. The Cuban expert participated in the preparation of the recommendations on standardization of geographical names adopted by that Conference.

Résumé

De nombreux changements ont continué d'intervenir à Cuba dans les domaines politique, économique et social; ils ont exercé une influence favorable dans le domaine de la toponymie et ont favorisé la normalisation des noms géographiques dans le pays.

Dans la période actuelle d'institutionnalisation du processus révolutionnaire cubain, les facteurs les plus importants qui ont motivé ces changements ont été la tenue du premier Congrès du Parti communiste cubain, la mise en place des organes du pouvoir populaire avec ses assemblées municipales, provinciales et nationales, la création des nouvelles divisions politico-administratives et l'établissement du nouveau système de planification et de direction de l'économie.

La Constitution socialiste de Cuba de 1976 et la loi sur l'organisation de l'administration centrale de l'Etat complètent le tableau politique, économique et social qui a permis la normalisation des noms géographiques à Cuba.

En effet, pour la thèse sur les nouvelles divisions politiques qui a été discutée et approuvée au premier Congrès du Parti communiste, on a effectué des recherches sur tous les éléments sociaux et physico-géographiques intéressant les nouvelles divisions.

Une vaste étude de régionalisation économique a été effectuée, qui a débouché sur la création de 14 provinces et de 169 communes nouvelles.

Pour les divisions politiques, on s'est fondé sur les prémisses suivantes:

Dans la nouvelle société, l'Etat, sous la direction du Parti, dirige, contrôle et planifie toutes les activités sociales.

L'organisation territoriale de la direction qu'exerce l'Etat sur les activités économiques, sociales et politiques doit garantir les meilleures conditions possibles de direction et de gestion de la société et doit donc correspondre à la structure territoriale des activités économiques, aux perspectives de développement et à la répartition de la population sur le territoire national.

Les nouvelles divisions sont essentiellement conformes aux critères de la régionalisation économique, compte tenu des facteurs géographiques et démographiques, ainsi

que de la situation actuelle, des perspectives de développement et de tout le réseau de villages et de villes dans lesquels siègent les diverses instances; il est tenu compte des villes les plus importantes et des progrès accomplis dans tous les secteurs de l'économie.

Les organes du pouvoir populaire, fondés sur les communes et les provinces, dans l'exercice complet de la démocratie que le peuple a conquise et que la Constitution socialiste de 1976 garantit, constituent un bastion remarquablement efficace sur lequel s'appuient les recherches toponymiques effectuées dans le territoire et, par conséquent, un point d'appui obligatoire en matière de normalisation des noms géographiques.

En ce qui concerne la dénomination officielle des nouvelles provinces et communes, la Commission des noms géographiques a effectué une vaste etude et une enquête linguistique, historique et géographique approfondie, et ses conclusions, en ce qui concerne les toponymes, sont concrétisées dans la loi sur les divisions territoriales politico-administratives.

Les noms mentionnés dans la loi en question ont été normalisés et l'usage en est obligatoire dans les documents officiels du pays.

Les instructions techniques élaborées en ce qui concerne la dénomination des provinces et de leur capitale, ainsi que des communes et de leur chef-lieu, visent à préserver le caractère historique, géographique et linguistique des toponymes, en mettant en relief des patronymes indigènes comme Cuamá, Noa et Guantánamo, notamment, aussi bien que des patronymes contemporains tels que Bartolomé Masó, Jesús Menéndez et Frank País.

Pendant la période sur laquelle porte le présent rapport, on a achevé de dresser la liste des noms géographiques figurant sur la carte de base du territoire national, qui compte 29 000 toponymes; il s'agit de la liste que nous avons mentionnée à la Conférence de Londres en 1972, qui est maintenant en cours de préparation en vue de sa publication.

Entre 1978 et 1979, on publiera un atlas de Cuba, pour commémorer le vingtième anniversaire du triomphe de la Révolution cubaine, et on prépare pour cet atlas un index des noms géographiques qui y figureront.

Cuba a également participé aux efforts internationaux visant à la normalisation des noms géographiques.

Répondant à une invitation du Secrétaire général de l'Organisation des Nations Unies, le Gouvernement cubain a désigné un spécialiste qui a participé aux réunions du Groupe d'experts tenues en 1973 et en 1975 au Siège de l'Organisation des Nations Unies.

En vue de la première Conférence cartographique régionale des Nations Unies pour les Amériques, le Gouvernement cubain a envoyé une délégation à Panama, pays où se tenait la Conférence, et l'expert de Cuba a participé à l'élaboration des recommandations sur la normalisation des noms géographiques qui ont été approuvées à la Conférence.

*

* *

PARTICIPACIÓN NACIONAL

En la República de Cuba han continuado desarrollándose importantes cambios en los órdenes político, económico y social, que han influido favorablemente en el campo de la toponimia y propiciado la normalización de nuestros nombres geográficos.

En el actual período de institucionalización del proceso revolucionario cubano, los factores más importantes que han motivado esos cambios lo constituyen: la celebración del Primer Congreso del Partido Comunista de Cuba; la instauración de los Organos del Poder Popular, con sus Asambleas Municipal, Provincial y Nacional; la aplicación de la nueva división político-administrativa, y el establecimiento del nuevo sistema de planificación y dirección de la economía. La Constitución socialista de Cuba de 1976 y la Ley de Organización de la Administración Central del Estado, completan el panorama político, económico y social adecuado para la normalización de los nombres geográficos en Cuba.

Para la tesis discutida y aprobada en el Primer Congreso del Partido Comunista sobre la nueva división política, fueron investigados todos los elementos sociales y físico-geográficos que incidirían en la nueva división. Un amplio estudio de regionalización económica se efectuó y su resultado final fue la creación de las nuevas 14 provincias y 169 municipios.

La división política parte de las siguientes premisas: en la nueva sociedad, el Estado, bajo la orientación del Partido, ejerce la direción, el control y la planificación de todas las actividades sociales; la organización territorial de la dirección estatal sobre los procesos económicos, sociales y políticos debe garantizar las óptimas condiciones de dirección y gestión de la sociedad, para lo cual debe estar en correspondencia con la estructura territorial de las actividades económicas, con las perspectivas de su desarrollo y con la distribución de la población en el territorio nacional.

La nueva división se conforma en base a criterios de regionalización económica, considerando factores geográficos, demográficos, en su situación actual y en su desarrollo perspectivos, así como toda la red de pueblos y ciudades que sirven como cabecera de las diferentes instancias; toma en consideración las ciudades más importantes y los avances logrados por todos los sectores de la economía.

Los Organos del Poder Popular, asentados en los muncipios y provincias, en el ejercicio pleno de la democracia que el pueblo ha conquistado y que la Constitución socialista de 1976 les confiere, formarán un baluarte de innegable eficacia para las investigaciones toponimísticas que se realicen en sus territorios, y, consecuentemente, un obligado punto de apoyo en la normalización de los nombres geográficos.

Para la denominación oficial de las nuevas provincias y municipios, la Comisión de Nombres Geográficos realizó un amplio estudio y una profunda investigación lingüística, histórica y geográfica, y sus conclusiones, referidas a los topónimos, quedaron plasmadas en la Ley de División Territorial Político-administrativa. Los nombres ex-

presados en la referida ley, han quedado normalizados, y sus formas son de uso obligatorio en los documentos oficiales del país.

Las instrucciones técnicas elaboradas para la denominación de las provincias y sus capitales, y los municipios y sus cabeceras, consideraron mantener la secuencia histórica, geográfica y lingüística de los topónimos, poniendo de relieve desde los patronímicos aborígenes como Guamá, Moa y Guantánamo, entre otros, hasta los contemporáneos Bartolomé Masó, Jesús Menéndez y Frank País.

En el período que abarca el presente informe fue terminada la lista de nombres geográficos del mapa básico del territorio nacional, con 29.000 topónimos, de la que hicimos mención en la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, celebrada en Londres en 1972, encontrándose en el proceso de preparación para la edición.

Entre los años de 1978 y 1979 será editado un *Atlas de Cuba*, en conmemoración del XX aniversario del triunfo de la Revolución Cubana, y para el mismo se preparó el índice de los nombres geográficos que contendrá.

Participación internacional

Atendiendo a una invitación cursada por el Secretario General de las Naciones Unidas, el Gobierno de Cuba designó un especialista que participó en las reuniones del Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos, efectuadas en los años de 1973 y 1975, en Naciones Unidas, Nueva York.

Con motivo de la Primera Conferencia Regional de Cartografía de las Naciones Unidas para las Américas, el Gobierno de Cuba envió una delegación a Panamá, país sede, participando el experto de Cuba en la preparación de las recomendaciones sobre la normalización de nombres geográficos, aprobadas en la misma.

REPORT PRESENTED BY BANGLADESH*

Bangladesh is participating for the first time in the United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names.

It is inherent in the nature of every human being that he likes to be called or identified by his name—by his exact name—the name that remains unaltered or undistorted when pronounced by others in their languages. Likewise, every nation in the world desires that its places and distinct geographical features be known to others by the names the country has given, and that others should accept these names. This is equally applicable to every nation in the world, small or big, developed or underdeveloped. In the past, this intention was not acted on very widely. With the democratic principles upheld under the Charter of the United Nations, however, even smaller nations do demand this right and thus these sentiments have given rise to this United Nations Conference on this subject.

The standardization of geographical names is a problem for every country, both at home and abroad. At home, a country that has more than one lingua franca faces the problem of identifying a place or a geographical feature by a single (if not a unique) name, for the sake of uniformity within the national framework. Abroad, the problem is that geographical names must be so written in foreign languages that the names are pronounced with least distortion. On both of these fronts the problems are acute.

In a country, such as Bangladesh, with a single lingua franca, the problem is not that acute on the home front. When the British were in India, many places and geographical features in the area now known as Bangladesh were given English names. In many cases, these English renderings are not the exact names, but are slightly distorted. These now have the status of exonyms. With the passage of time these exonyms have also become very popular, though their exact and true names are still there and very much alive. It is quite fitting that these exonyms be done away with and replaced by the exact names, spelled correctly in any foreign language. Of course, the exact names cannot be absolutely or correctly transliterated in foreign languages, but very satisfactory approximations can be worked out, though with difficulty.

In publishing standard maps at scale 1:50,000 (the primary scale in our country), official surveyors visit the area or the place and collect the names from the local people, accepting those spelled in Bangla when corroborated in writing by a member of the local Union Council. The name thus derived gets a more-or-less official status because the Union Council is the basic administrative unit. Since Bangla is a rich language, there is no difficulty in getting every place name authenticated this way. The English rendering of these names is done under the direct supervision of a superintendent of survey, who is an officer of higher authority and is well versed in the process of transliteration, in the event that a simple conversion does not suffice. The maps thus prepared go under the scrutiny of Directors and are ultimately published under the authority of the Surveyor General of Bangladesh. Although no gazetteer of geographical names (that is to say, a national gazetteer) has been either compiled or published, the original records of the surveyors are preserved for quite some time for reference in the Survey of Bangladesh.

The Department of Hydrography of the Bangladesh Inland Water Transport Authority, under the Ministry of Communications, deals with all kinds of hydrographic

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF/69/L.135.

surveys of the inland and coastal waters of Bangladesh and is responsible for the publication of nautical charts. While publishing the nautical charts, the Department of Hydrography, in collaboration with the Survey of Bangladesh, enters the geographical names for maritime features in the charts.

REPORT PRESENTED BY LIBERIA*

Liberia's first formally standardized geographical names list was prepared in 1955 by the Liberian Board of Geographic Names commissioned by the President of Liberia under the chairmanship of Mr. Arthur Sherman, the then Director of Bureau of Mines. Among other members were the Director of the Liberian Cartographic Service and representatives from the Ministries of Education and of Local Governments Rural Development and Urban Reconstruction (the then Departments of Education and of the Interior, respectively).

Although two of Liberia's 27 linguistic groups have their own scripts, with characters that differ from any others in the world, Liberia from its inception adopted the English language as the lingua franca, using Roman letters. This arrangement facilitates our interrelationships in the comity of nations. The spelling of words in the list followed, for the most part, the international phonetic arrangement. The exceptions were spellings of major towns that had had long usage.

This first list has been expanded considerably and we now have a gazetteer, showing in alphabetical sequence the standardized spelling and geographic position of 11,000 names. The United States Defense Mapping Agency was of great assistance.

This standardization is one of the factors in achieving unity of approach in the unification and integration of the many elements that make up the Liberian Republic. Maps help considerably in bringing the standardized spelling to the public. The process of expanding the gazetteer with additional names continues.

It is necessary, when deciding upon the correct spelling, to know the meaning of the word in the language of the locality. Such knowledge would enable the Board to utilize the correct tones, cadences and accents. The difficulty of this task is obvious if one bears in mind the country's 27 different linguistic groupings. The principal members of the Board must therefore be persons who have travelled considerably throughout Liberia and who have at their command several of the languages. Having access to such experienced persons both within and outside of the Board, the Board could then be expected to review effectively the name cards presented by the surveyors who make the field photo classification of the aerial photographs.

It can be readily seen that the gazetteer will need revision as more experienced linguists become available and as more places are identified. Towns and farms named after chiefs or farmers often change names to those of the successor. These also make it necessary to have revised editions. In order to be more meaningful to the layman, the next edition should, in addition to giving location in latitude and longitude, show the chiefdoms, districts and counties in which the places named are situated.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.146.

REPORT PRESENTED BY BOTSWANA*

Introduction

In May 1965 the Surveyor-General proposed that a Place Names Commission be appointed for the purpose of examining names that occurred on existing maps, with a view to ascertaining their authenticity and ensuring their correct spelling. Prior to this proposal the Surveyor-General's Department had relied upon information obtained from District Commissioners, Government departments and their field officers, but this means of verification had been found wanting in many respects.

A decision to establish a Place Names Commission was not finally made until October 1967. Commissioners were appointed on the basis of their knowledge of the country, its history and the various languages and dialects spoken in different areas. No terms of reference were provided. The Commission met for the first time in January 1968.

Activities of the Place Names Commission, 1968–1977

The Commission has met over 60 times during the last nine years and has examined most of the standard maps of Botswana, in particular the 1:125,000 sheets. It has also examined a number of new maps prior to their publication.

After 26 meetings the Commission published in 1970 a booklet containing over 1,000 place names with their recommended or accepted spellings. This list of names has formed the basis for the provision of authentic names and correct spellings on maps produced since that date. During the last six years much attention has been devoted

* The original text of this paper, prepared by A. C. Campbell, Curator of the National Museum of Botswana, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.147.

to more specialized maps and to district maps. About 1,500 further names have been verified and a new list is now being compiled. This list will contain all the names so far examined by the Commission, including those that appeared in the first list.

Modus operandi

The Director of Surveys and Lands selects those maps he considers to require attention most urgently. In addition, maps are sent to the Commission by departments or even private organizations such as the railways. The Commission's secretary extracts all the names from the maps and places them on a schedule, which also includes alternative names and spellings that have occurred on other maps or have previously been recommended by the Commission. Such schedules are supplied, with their base maps, to the commissioners and are also sent to people living in the areas who have indicated a willingness to assist the Commission.

The Commission meets approximately eight times a year. The schedules of names are examined in conjunction with the appropriate maps and discussed by the Commission. Whenever possible, persons with local knowledge who are not Commissioners are co-opted to assist the Commission.

The Commission records what it considers to be the correct name with its correct spelling. Should the Commission be doubtful about the authenticity or spelling of a name it is marked for further checking. In addition the meanings or derivations of names are recorded whenever possible. Lists of recommended spellings are submitted to Cabinet.

Terms of reference

When the first list of recommended spellings was submitted to the Cabinet it became apparent that some proper guidelines should be laid down for determining the way names should be written. The Cabinet, at that stage, rejected some of the Commission's recommendations without giving reasons for its decision. It was obvious, however, that the decision was based mainly on common usage and did not involve any basic principles. As a result, the Commission proposed terms of reference for itself, which were eventually accepted. The terms of reference set out the composition of the Commission, the number of Commissioners necessary to form a quorum, provision for co-option of persons to assist the Commission, the minimum number of meetings to be held annually, the need for the Commission to submit its findings to the Cabinet and the Commission's objectives. Because of their importance, the objectives are listed here in full:

(*a*) To examine all geographical place names shown on any map sheets relating to this country with a view to ascertaining the correct spelling.

(*b*) The criteria for this examination shall be:

(i) The language from which the name derives;
(ii) The local pronunciation;
(iii) The recognized meaning;
(iv) The historical background and the place to which the name is ascribed; and
(v) Conformity with recognized orthographies.

These terms of reference now form the basis for all recommendations made by the Commission.

Remaining problems

Two major problems still remain to be overcome. The first involves the difficulty of ascertaining the correctness for names of places that are extremely remote and generally unknown outside their immediate neighbourhood. The Commission has adopted two methods for verification: the first is for a commissioner to visit the place, but this is often difficult and expensive; the second and more common method is to seek someone with local knowledge. To obtain such people the Commission has run a series of programmes over Radio Botswana and in the local paper, the *Daily News*, explaining the work of the Commission and its importance in the compilation of accurate maps. Interested listeners and readers, particularly those living in remote areas, have been asked to submit their names. A further method has been for the Commission to ask such departments as the police, and Wildlife Department and National Parks Department, who draw staff from remote areas to work in the capital, to make such staff available to the Commission. The general public is also asked to comment on the Commission's recommendations when they are published.

The second problem involves the multiplicity of languages in use in the country and the lack of a recognized orthography for many of these. Two of the main languages, Setswana and Sekgalagadi, are similar in many respects, having evolved from the same protolanguage in the past. Because Setswana is the language most widely understood, Sekgalagadi names have tended in the past to be written in the more commonly accepted Setswana orthography. In the same way, names appearing in, for instance, Chiyei, an unwritten language belonging to Central rather than Southern Africa, have been recorded in the orthography of Setswana, whereas it might well be better to write them in the orthography determined for the Central African Bantu language group. (To cite a single concrete problem that has emerged, for example, the symbol used in Setswana for an unvoiced fricative is used in Chiyei for a voiced palatal stop, though the two sounds are totally unrelated).

A further problem occurs with the large number of names that have a Khosian (Bushman or Hottentot) origin. These languages involve a number of phonemes that cannot easily be converted into Roman lettering: there are, for instance, 15 different click sounds, nine of which are, in Southern Africa, generally expressed by "c", "q" and "x" with a combination of other letters to denote if they are voiced or aspirated, thus "Xangqane" and "Caecae". However, if written in the recognized orthography for such languages, the International Phonetic Alphabet, then they appear as: "//ang!ane" and "/ae-/ae", which would look strange on a map and would be incomprehensible to the average map reader.

Since something like 80 languages or dialects are in use in Botswana (although some of these relate to a very few people) it will be necessary to evolve an orthography that, while not clashing with existing orthographies, will make it possible for the average person to achieve some semblance of the correct pronunciation of a name.

Conclusion

From the number of maps that have been submitted to the Commission and the volume of correspondence it receives, it is apparent that at the time of its inception in 1968 the formation of the Commission was long overdue and that its work has considerable relevance in mapping.

The publication of the next list of approximately 2,500 names will provide a basis for much of Botswana's future mapping. Most of the names of inhabited places listed in the 1971 census will be included, as will the names of most major geographical features. This does not mean that the work of the Commission will be drawing to a close; the Commission recognizes that many thousands of "new" names will appear as mapping becomes more detailed. It is also aware that the last word has not been pronounced on all of its previous recommendations and that some of these are bound to reappear for reconsideration; some, in fact, have already done so.

AGENDA ITEM 8 – POINT 8 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR – TEMA 8 DEL PROGRAMA

AUTORIDADES ENCARGADAS DE LA NORMALIZACION NACIONAL

Informe presentado por Guatemala*

Summary

Guatemala is one of the countries that has established a National Geographical Names Authority. In Guatemala everything relating to this subject falls officially within the competence of the National Geographic Institute (IGN), whose Chief is also *ex officio* Chief of the National Geographical Names Authority. That Authority was established in 1958 and has been in operation since 22 July 1960.

The report states that the modern pioneer in the standardization of Guatemalan geographical names is Alfredo Obiols Gómez, who has always been deeply involved in this matter. The work begun by Mr. Obiols Gómez has been continued by the General Directors of IGN, Manuel Angel Castillo Barajas and Federico Hernández Cruz, and by the present Chief, René Aguiluz Morales. These men have always given their full support and decisive help to Mr. Francis Gall, who, by virtue of his position as member of the Board and Executive Secretary of the National Geographical Names Authority and of the Department of Human Geography of IGN, is in charge, *inter alia*, of matters relating to national standardization of geographical names.

As Guatemala has its own National Geographical Names Authority, the existing Guatemalan provisions with respect to this matter are indicated so that every free, sovereign and independent country, whose privileges include that of having access to whatever is most suitable from the standpoint of its national interests, may perhaps adopt some of the features of what is submitted here for purely informational purposes.

Résumé

Le Guatemala figure parmi les pays ayant un bureau national des noms géographiques. Tout ce qui touche à la question des noms géographiques relève officiellement de l'Institut géographique national (IGN), dont le chef, pour des raisons de service, est également chef du Bureau national des noms géographiques. Celui-ci a été créé en 1958 et fonctionne depuis le 22 juillet 1960.

On indique dans le rapport que c'est l'ingénieur Alfredo Obiols Gómez qui a ouvert la voie en ce qui concerne la normalisation des noms géographiques du Guatemala, question à laquelle il a toujours consacré toute son attention. Après lui, les directeurs généraux de l'IGN, les ingénieurs Manuel Angel Castillo Barajas et Federico Hernández Cruz, ainsi que le Directeur actuel, le colonel René Aguiluz Morales, poursuivant l'œuvre entreprise par Obiols Gómez, ont eux aussi apporté leur appui total au professeur Francis Gall qui, en tant que membre et secrétaire exécutif du Bureau national des noms géographiques et chef du Département des géographies humaines de l'IGN, a notamment pour attributions tout ce qui concerne la normalisation nationale.

On présente les dispositions en vigueur au Guatemala pour la normalisation des noms géographiques afin que chaque pays libre, souverain et indépendant, dont l'une des prérogatives est de prendre des mesures qui servent au mieux ses intérêts nationaux, puisse au besoin adopter certaines de ces dispositions, lesquelles ne sont présentées qu'à titre d'information.

*

* *

Es un hecho de todos conocido, que resulta casi imposible el que a la fecha en cada país funcione una autoridad que tenga a su cargo todo lo que atañe a la normalización en ámbito nacional, tanto de los nombres geográficos como de sus respectivas categorías.

Lo anterior ya fue contemplado con ocasión de nuestra primera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas Para Uniformar los Nombres Geográficos (Ginebra, 1967), al haber emitido la resolución número 4 sobre uniformación nacional,[1] que con posterioridad se modificó en parte. También se trató del asunto tanto en el seno de nuestra Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos (Londres, 1972), así como en los períodos de sesiones de nuestro Grupo de Expertos en Nombres Geográficos.

Como resultado de lo expuesto y debido a que todo lo relacionado con el proceso irreversible de normalización de los nombres geográficos cae dentro del campo específico de las Naciones Unidas, en ámbito latinoamericano el Experto para América Latina del Grupo de Expertos de

* El texto original de este informe, preparado por el Profesor Francis Gall, Guatemala, ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF.69/L.3.

[1] *Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Uniformar los Nombres Geográficos*, vol. I, *Informe de la Conferencia* (publicación de las Naciones Unidas, No. de venta: S.68.I.9), cap. III.

las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos, ha abogado en reiteradas ocasiones para que en cada uno de los países dentro de su campo de acción se integre la mencionada autoridad a nivel nacional, así como que en aquellos países en que ya exista, en caso de que fuese necesario, sea reestructurada para hacerla más funcional en lo que atañe a sus atribuciones.

Guatemala está entre las naciones que cuentan a nivel nacional con el citado cuerpo. Efectivamente, a partir del 22 de julio de 1960 funciona la actual Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos (en esa época Comisión Mixta de Nombres Geográficos), creada en el año de 1958 gracias a la amplia visión que siempre ha caracterizado al Ingeniero Alfredo Obiols Gómez, entonces Director General de lo que hoy en día es el Instituto Geográfico Nacional (IGN). Es natural que los procedimientos normativos básicos hayan sido modificados con posterioridad, ya que a los mismos se agrega de manera constante lo que al respecto sigue presentándose en ámbito nacional, así como lo de las resoluciones internacionales que se adoptan para mantener actualizado el funcionamiento de la Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos.

Por lo anterior, con el agradecimiento específico del autor que aquí se reitera al Ingeniero Alfredo Obiols Gómez, se estima muy justo dejar constancia que dicho profesional puede ser considerado como el pionero moderno en lo referente a la normalización geográfica de mi patria, compenetrado y preocupado como ha estado en la materia, para evitar en lo posible la anarquía que sobre ese particular ha existido. Después del Ingeniero Alfredo Obiols Gómez, los siguientes Directores Generales del IGN, Ingenieros Manuel Angel Castillo Barajas y Federico Hernández Cruz, así como el actual, Coronel René Aguiluz Morales, también han brindado siempre todo su pleno apoyo y decidida ayuda en lo que se relaciona con la normalización nacional. Por ello y al mencionarlos, el autor asimismo desea patentizarles su agradecimiento por toda la plena comprensión y colaboración prestada a él en la materia especializada.

Se entiende, por supuesto, que siendo cada país libre, soberano e independiente, dentro de sus privilegios está disponer lo que más convenga a sus intereses nacionales. Por ello, vuelve a repetirse, lo relativo a la Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos en mi patria se presenta únicamente en vía informativa y para que se utilice lo que se estime más adaptable.

También se desea mencionar aquí que, como se ha expuesto en uno de los documentos de trabajo que el autor ha presentado ante esta Tercera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas, por los motivos indicados en el mismo no se ha podido cumplir a cabalidad en lo que respecta a las autoridades nacionales encargadas de la normalización.

Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos de Guatemala

Según se desprende del cuarto párrafo introductorio que precede y con la seguridad de que *mutatis mutandis* en otras partes podrá utilizarse algo de lo que existe en mi patria, los principales procedimientos sobre la materia en vigor en mi país se exponen a continuación.

Definiciones generales

Se entenderá por *nombre geográfico* al nombre propio con que se designa un accidente geográfico. También se le conoce como topónimo.

Se entenderá por *entidad geográfica*, *característica geográfica* o *accidente geográfico*, a la parte de la superficie de la Tierra que posee una identidad reconocible.

Se entenderá por *accidente geográfico artificial*, al accidente geográfico hecho o modificado substancialmente por el hombre.

Se entenderá por *accidente natural*, al accidente topográfico no hecho ni modificado en grado importante por el hombre.

Se entenderá por *accidente hidrográfico*, al accidente topográfico relacionado esencialmente con el agua. Un *hidrónimo*, es el nombre propio de un accidente hidrográfico.

Se entenderá por *accidente submarino*, a la porción de la superficie terrestre que yace directamente debajo de un océano o mar, y que tiene identidad reconocible.

Se entenderá por *accidente topográfico*, a la parte de la superficie de cualquier planeta que posee una identidad reconocible.

Se entenderá por *accidente topográfico extraterrestre*, a la parte de la superficie de cualquier planeta, a excepción de la Tierra, que posee una identidad reconocible.

Se entenderá por *exónimo*, al nombre propio, o forma escrita suya, usual en un país para designar un accidente geográfico cuyo nombre propio (convencional o tradicional) oficial del accidente, o su forma escrita, son distintos. En caso de que se quiera subrayar la tradicionalidad, puede emplearse libremente *exónimo tradicional*. En lo posible, es menester evitar un *exónimo* y utilizar solamente el nombre geográfico oficial.

Se entenderá por *indicación* o *información cartográfica*, al rótulo que aparece en un mapa y que no representa un nombre geográfico, sino que sirve para describir una característica topográfica del lugar correspondiente.

Se entenderá por *rotulación cartográfica*, al microlenguaje empleado en la rotulación de mapas.

Se entenderá por *término descriptivo*, al que se emplea en la información cartográfica para describir una característica topográfica del lugar correspondiente.

Se entenderá por *término designativo*, al que comprende un grupo específico de tipos de accidentes.

Se entenderá por *término específico* o su sinónimo *elemento específico* de un nombre geográfico, a la parte que lo singulariza.

Se entenderá por *término genérico* al incluido en un nombre propio, que indica el tipo de la entidad designada y que tiene el mismo significativo como sustantivo común.

Se entenderá por *transcripción*:

a) Acción y efecto de registrar los elementos fonéticos o fonológicos y morfológicos de un idioma, dialecto o habla, mediante un sistema específico de escritura;

b) Resultado de esta acción.

Se entenderá por *transliteración*:

a) Acción y efecto de representar los signos gráficos de un sistema de escritura, mediante los signos gráficos correspondientes a otro sistema de escritura;

b) Elemento de un idioma que ha sido sometido a este proceso.

Se entenderá por *alfabeto* al conjunto específico de símbolos gráficos que puede emplearse para representar los elementos fonológicos de un idioma.

Se entenderá por *comunidad lingüística* la totalidad de los individuos que se comunican con relativa facilidad en un dialecto, idioma o sistema de escritura.

Se entenderá por *convencional* o *usual*:

a) Que resulta o se establece en virtud de precedente o de costumbre;

b) Lo que el uso corriente y amplio sanciona.

Se entenderá por *normalización de un nombre geográfico* la recomendación o designación por la autoridad competente, de una forma gráfica específica para un nombre geográfico.

Se entenderá por *orónimo* al nombre geográfico aplicado a un accidente orográfico.

Se entenderá por *paraje* a un sitio o lugar de poca extensión, carácter indeterminado, linderos a veces no definidos y que posee designación propia.

Se entenderá por *formato* el tamaño, forma y presentación general de un documento.

Se entenderá por *indicación* o *información cartográfica*, el rótulo que aparece en un mapa y que no representa un nombre geográfico, sino que sirve para describir una característica topográfica del lugar correspondiente.

Se entenderá por *oficial*, lo sancionado explícitamente por parte de la entidad legalmente constituida.

Consideraciones generales

La ciencia de los *nombres geográficos* necesita para su estudio de personal capacitado en geografía, lingüística, onomástica e historia.

Un *nombre geográfico*, denominado también *topónimo* es, asimismo, un testimonio histórico que debe dar vida y personalidad a un mapa o a una carta. Debe ayudar a su exacta identificación y correcta comprensión y, por lo general, está sujeto a cambios o evoluciones que deben ser controlados.

Un *mapa* o una *carta* es un registro científico; un documento de investigación válido en su fecha de compilación y un objeto de arte.

En consecuencia y sin perder de vista los problemas de *normalización*, el establecimiento de un nombre geográfico necesita de estudios detenidos a base de pesquisas, análisis, comparaciones, interpretaciones, etc., hasta llegar a la correcta selección, sin descuidar lo relacionado a su simplicidad y fácil aceptación de parte del usuario.

En los trabajos específicos de campo, al surgir un nombre geográfico nuevo dentro de una circunscripción municipal, previo a la obtención de un documento que lo certifique, es requisito indispensable que dicho nombre geográfico sea reconocido y aceptado, utilizando para ello, según el caso: "Informe de Nombre Geográfico Doméstico" y "Formulario para Nominación de un Accidente Geográfico Prominente sin Nombre", lo cual se hará constar así en la respectiva certificación.

Nunca se debe decidir la incorporación de un nombre dudoso a un documento oficial de gran valor como lo es el mapa, la carta, el diccionario geográfico, el glosario, el nomenclátor, etc.

Todo nombre geográfico, inclusive uno considerado dudoso, debe estudiarse en sus aspectos geográfico, lingüístico (onomástico), etimológico, de tradición, etc., de acuerdo con la zona o región a que pertenezca.

De la Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos

Corresponde al Presidente de la República, por el órgano del Ministerio de Gobernación, la facultad de nominar, redenominar o cambiar de nombre o categoría de las entidades, características o accidentes geográficos.

De conformidad con las respectivas disposiciones legales, antes de tomar una resolución sobre la materia, el Ejecutivo dará audiencia a la Dirección General de Estadística, Instituto Geográfico Nacional y la asesoría legal que estime del caso.

El Instituto Geográfico Nacional (IGN), por la índole de los trabajos que lleva a cabo, es por disposición gubernativa el órgano encargado en lo oficial del estudio, dictamen final y registro de los nombres geográficos. Ningún nombre se considera oficial, mientras no consta su registro en la Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos.

Por razón de oficio, el Director General del IGN es a la vez Presidente de la Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos. De consiguiente, todo lo relacionado con los nombres geográficos ha sido encargado por el IGN a la ya citada Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos, integrada por dos organismos: el Grupo de Trabajo y el Grupo Consultivo.

El primero está formado por el Director General del IGN y el Jefe del Departamento de Geografía Humana, cuyo titular actúa como Vocal y Secretario Ejecutivo de la ya mencionada Autoridad Nacional. En este campo, depende directamente del Director General del IGN, quien es a la vez Presidente de la citada Autoridad Nacional.

El IGN no dará a conocer ni publicará documento cartográfico alguno en el que no figure el respectivo nombre geográfico normalizado y su categoría respectiva, conforme aparezca en su Departamento de Geografía Humana cuyo titular, quien tiene a su cargo todo lo relativo a la materia, así lo hará constar por escrito.

Las atribuciones del Grupo de Trabajo comprenden entre otras:

a) Efectuar la labor de pesquisa, análisis, comparación, interpretación y evaluación de cada nombre geográfico y de su correspondiente categoría;

b) Incorporar dentro de sus atribuciones, lo que sobre la materia se resuelva ya sea en las Naciones Unidas u otras reuniones regionales o internacionales específicas;

c) Someter a la Autoridad Nacional, cuando sea procedente, los proyectos de resoluciones, métodos y procedimientos en el campo de la normalización;

d) Registrar, transcribir y divulgar las resoluciones emitidas, así como atender la comunicación e intercambio con los organismos extranjeros encargados de la normalización de nombres geográficos.

El segundo grupo lo constituye el Grupo Consultivo de la Autoridad Nacional, presidido por el Director General del IGN y teniendo como Vocal y Secretario Ejecutivo al Jefe del Departamento de Geografía Humana del IGN, así como Vocales también a los representantes de las siguientes instituciones, cuyas disposiciones serán por escrito y con las firmas de cada uno de los participantes: Universidad de San Carlos de Guatemala; Ministerio de Relaciones Exteriores; Instituto Geográfico Nacional; Instituto Indigenista Nacional; Dirección General de Estadística; Instituto Guatemalteco de Turismo (INGUAT); Academia Guatemalteca correspondiente a la Española de la Lengua.

Figuran entre las atribuciones fundamentales de la Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos:

a) Fijar principios generales claramente delineados y plenamente dados a conocer, para ayudar a la fácil aceptación de los nombres geográficos y sus categorías, que sean normalizados;

b) Aprobar o improbar los dictámenes solicitados por escrito, de los nombres geográficos de la República;

c) Aprobar o modificar los métodos y procedimientos de la normalización de todo lo atinente a los nombres geográficos;

d) Asesorar en materia de su especialización.

De las disposiciones normativas

La Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos de Guatemala, resolverá sobre el método a emplearse para determinar el nombre actual, su categoría y su correcta grafía. Este método puede tener las variantes que se requieran en las diferentes zonas lingüísticas y deberá tomar en cuenta;

a) Las resoluciones específicas de índole internacional o regional;

b) Una investigación lo más integral posible, que proporcione información sobre: grafía del nombre en mapas antiguos; grafía y categoría del nombre en mapas modernos; grafía y categoría del nombre en documentos de registros de la propiedad, catastrales, etc.; grafía y categoría del nombre en acuerdos gubernativos y otros, también oficiales; grafía del nombre en archivos y en la literatura histórica, arqueológica, etc.;

c) La extensión y carácter del accidente geográfico deberá determinarse lo más exacto posible, utilizando para ello los formularios específicos;

d) En lo posible, es conveniente omitir un exónimo (nombre convencional; nombre opcional), ya que se considera menester adoptar un solo nombre, de ser posible corto y eufónico;

e) En la investigación, deberá emplearse de preferencia a personal lo suficientemente capacitado para saber reconocer y examinar los fenómenos, incluyendo a los lingüísticos locales;

f) Para determinar la ortografía en lo nacional, deberá atenerse a: las disposiciones de la Academia Española de la Lengua, respecto de los nombres en español; las disposiciones de la Academia Guatemalteca correspondiente a la Española, si se trata de guatemaltequismos; las disposiciones del Instituto Indigenista Nacional, si se trata de nombres indígenas en general;

g) En lo que respecta a la ortografía en lo internacional, deberá atenerse a lo que sobre el particular se resuelva, ya sea en conferencias mundiales o regionales específicas. La normalización internacional de nombres geográficos, para lo cual deberá tenerse presente su grafía respectiva nacional, en síntesis es una regulación internacional de la escritura de los nombres geográficos y de los nombres topográficos de otros cuerpos del sistema solar, mediante normalización nacional o acuerdos internacionales, incluso con establecimiento de equivalencias con otros sistemas de escritura.

Se requiere el establecimiento de principios generales, claramente delineados y dados a conocer de la manera más amplia posible, para poder facilitar la aceptación de los nombres normalizados. Dentro de los citados principios que por su propia índole no pueden ser estáticos sino dinámicos, y con inclusión de lo que al respecto se resuelva en lo internacional o regional, es menester contemplar:

a) La eficacia con la cual los nombres identifican y facilitan la referencia a las entidades geográficas individuales;

b) Los principios que fundamentan las decisiones entre retención y cambio de nombre;

c) El método de revisión y actualización de las medidas mencionadas en el inciso *b*) que precede;

d) No perder de vista el hábito ni las actitudes observadas o deducidas de las personas, especialmente locales, hacia los nombres geográficos;

e) El tratamiento sistemático debe tender hacia la retención en contra del cambio, salvo cuando esto último, después de estar plenamente justificado, ya cuente con la respectiva sanción oficial;

f) No suprimir en lo posible, elementos significativos en los nombres estudiados;

g) No hacer traducciones, ni aceptar hibridismos, a menos que ello esté plenamente aceptado;

h) Suprimir la duplicación, en lo posible. Para ello: se propondrá el cambio del nombre duplicado, ya sea por el nombre de menor peso, o de categoría inferior; si el cambio no fuese conveniente ni aceptado, se introducirá al nombre geográfico un elemento significativo, que no sea por ejemplo números ordinales ni cardinales y, en todo caso, es necesario establecer el grado de duplicación dentro de una jurisdicción municipal;

i) No se deberá emitir alguna resolución sobre cambio de un nombre geográfico, conforme al inciso *h*) que precede, ni seleccionar alguno entre varios nombres de igual peso, sin oír previamente a los habitantes locales y

determinar su probable reacción. Es menester dejar bien claro que, a menos que existan suficientes razones en contra, debidamente justificadas y contándose para ello con el respectivo acuerdo del Ejecutivo, un nombre geográfico establecido y promulgado como el oficial, no debe ser alterado ni cambiado por otro;

j) No se permitirá el uso de números cardinales u ordinales como parte de un nombre geográfico;

k) Para la grafía de los nombres indígenas, se utilizarán los respectivos signos gráficos estudiados y aprobados por el Instituto Indigenista Nacional;

l) Los nombres de las respectivas entidades geográficas deben ser claros y precisos. En otras palabras, es menester establecer y fijar lo que el nombre significa y su extensión;

m) Debe procederse a nominar las características físicas en general de accidentes orográficos que sólo tengan nombres parciales consagrados por el uso local. En este caso ellos también deben figurar, de acuerdo con la escala, aunque en tipo de rotulación menor;

n) En lo posible, deben evitarse los exónimos (nombres opcionales; nombres tradicionales). Cuando ello no sea posible, se procederá a: que primero figure el nombre oficial y seguidamente el exónimo, ya sea utilizando para ello "o . . .", o bien haciendo figurar al exónimo entre paréntesis; cuando un nombre con exónimo constituya frontera internacional y así figure en el texto respectivo de la convención o en sus mapas, se harán las consultas respectivas, utilizando para ello la vía diplomática usual, y en la misma forma se ratificará lo que de mutuo acuerdo se resuelva sobre el particular;

o) Cuando los términos genéricos se consideren indispensables para evitar confusiones, o bien si dichos términos por tradición forman parte de un nombre geográfico no deben ser suprimidos;

p) Sólo en aquellos casos plenamente comprobados y usuales, en lo oficial se retendrá la advocación de un santo como parte del respectivo nombre geográfico. Con excepción de las propiedades rurales, no se permitirá que la advocación forme parte de algún nombre geográfico que no aparezca con antelación registrada en esa forma;

q) Al utilizarse guatemaltequismos, es menester proporcionar asimismo su significado;

r) De manera clara, es menester indicar cuándo se ha de incluir en el nombre geográfico el artículo, o bien la preposición;

s) Es menester reglamentar el uso de las siglas y abreviaciones;

t) Al describir localizaciones, debe hacerse en la forma más precisa posible, ya sea utilizando de preferencia coordenadas geográficas referidas al meridiano de Greenwich, o bien distancias referidas a un punto fijo conocido;

u) En los casos en que fuese necesario, deberá indicarse el género, la categoría, etc.

Se entiende que los procedimientos normativos indicados no deben ser considerados exhaustivos, ya que en el futuro y cuando se presenten los casos, tendrán que incluirse procedimientos normativos adicionales, que la práctica y el uso aconsejen.

Se considera que entre los procedimientos normativos a emitirse por cualquier país, es menester reglamentar sobre lo siguiente:

a) Todo cambio innecesario e irreflexivo de un nombre geográfico equivale a la destrucción de monumentos vivos de la historia y del idioma, ya que los topónimos son consagrados por el uso y el destruirlos, representa borrar los rastros de la historia, con lo cual se sacrifica el carácter nacional para satisfacer, en la mayoría de los casos, vanidades del momento;

b) Los topónimos tienden a ser idiosincráticos en su patrón sintáctico, por lo que los cambios del sonido o del idioma del que forman parte, conduce a un reflejo anormal en relación con su significado etimológico;

c) A través del nombre geográfico se halla la característica más sugerente de la región que se designa, ya que es sabido que los que impusieron los nombres que se han conservado, buscaron siempre la nota de más colorido y con ella al expresarla, formaron el vocablo rico y eufónico para bautizar los sitios por donde pasaban, o donde moraban. Sin embargo, debe tenerse muy presente que el análisis de la escritura del nombre geográfico dice de la genealogía del accidente, de sus variaciones y de su vida, porque las palabras—como todo lo que posee vida—también están sujetas a la evolución y es necesario controlarla en los nombres geográficos;

d) No se considera conveniente introducir en la nomenclatura geográfica del país nombres propios que honren a cualquier persona, hasta después de un período no menor de quince años del fallecimiento de la misma;

e) El ideal a perseguirse es que todos los nombres sean concisos, eufónicos y, en lo posible, nominativos del lugar al cual se aplican;

f) Bajo todo punto de vista, deben considerarse inaceptables los nombres geográficos que contengan: combinaciones afectadas o discordantes, provenientes de voces de idiomas diferentes, a menos que estas últimas estén consagradas por el uso y en lo oficial hayan sido aceptadas; términos corruptos o modificados; connotación de obscenidad o blasfemia; aquellos nombres geográficos que en ciertos casos pueden interpretarse como publicidad de alguna empresa, ya sea comercial o industrial;

g) Solamente se aceptarán para su estudio, aquellos nombres geográficos sobre los cuales se proporcione, por escrito, la información requerida para tal fin;

h) Ninguna dependencia estatal, autónoma, semiautónoma o privada, puede usar nombre geográfico alguno, o categoría de poblado, a menos que sea lo declarado como oficial en el país.

Anexo I

INFORME DE NOMBRE GEOGRAFICO DOMESTICO

INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL
GUATEMALA, AMÉRICA CENTRAL

	Nombre controversial	Nombre recomendado:	Categoría:
	Carece de nombre		
	Otro	Nombre actual:	Municipio
			Departamento:

Latitud_____° _____"norte,
Longitud_____° _____' _____"oeste' (Greenwich)

Descripción del accidente: En lo pertinente, proporciónese configuración, longitud, ancho, dirección o rumbo, dirección y distancia de las extremidades desde puntos con nombres establecidos, elevación en metros SNM (si es conocido) y otros detalles adicionales:

Mapas en que figura el nombre actual (incluyendo fechas y escalas, u otras fuentes)	Nombre variante	Mapa o fuente usando el nombre variante

Información disponible en cuanto al origen, grafía y significado etimológico del nombre recomendado, y/o declaración relacionada con la naturaleza de la diferencia en su uso, o aplicación:

Nombre propuesto por:

(Nombre)	(Firma)	(Dirección)
(Cargo u oficio)	(Años de residencia)	(Fecha)

Dato obtenido por:

(Nombre y firma)	(Cargo)	(Fecha)

AUTORIDAD NACIONAL DE NOMBRES GEOGRAFICOS

Resolución

Ciudad de Guatemala,_____de_____ _____de 19_____
Nombre geográfico aprobado y registrado: _____ Accidente:_____

Visto Bueno:

Secretario Ejecutivo

Presidente

Anexo II

FORMULARIO PARA NOMINACION DE UN ACCIDENTE GEOGRAFICO PROMINENTE SIN NOMBRE

INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL

GUATEMALA, AMÉRICA CENTRAL

Nombre propuesto: _____ a Pronunciación fonética: _____
b Lengua: _____
Municipio: _____ Departamento: _____

Ubicación del accidente — Latitud _____ ° _____ ′ _____ ″ norte
Longitud _____ ° _____ ′ _____ ″ oeste (Greenwich)

Descripción y extensión del accidente:

Base de conocimiento que el accidente no está nominado:

Motivo de selección del nombre
- ☐ descriptivo
- ☐ por un accidente cercano
- ☐ otro (indíquese el motivo): _____

Si es descriptivo, especifíquese el motivo por el cual es apropiado: _____

Si es nominado por otro accidente, especifíquese por cual: _____

1. Nombre: _____ Lat. _____ ° _____ ′ _____ ″ norte,
   Long. _____ ′ _____ ″ oeste (Greenwich)
2. Variantes conocidas en la grafía, u otros nombres: _____
3. Años conocido por su nombre actual _____ Optativo (menor peso): _____
4. Relación entre los dos accidentes: _____

Menciónense los anexos que se incluyen como ayuda en la identificación:
a. Mapa en que se ha señalado: _____
b. Fotografía aérea clasificada: _____
c. Otros: _____

Presentado por: _____ _____
(Nombre y firma) (Cargo u oficio)

_____ _____
(Institución) (Fecha)

AUTORIDAD NACIONAL DE NOMBRES GEOGRAFICOS

Resolución

Ciudad de Guatemala, _____ de _____ de 19 _____
Nombre geográfico aprobado y registrado: _____ Accidente: _____
Visto Bueno:

_____
Secretario Ejecutivo

_____
Presidente

ALGUNAS NOTAS REFERENTES A LA GEOGRAFIA HUMANA DE GUATEMALA

Informe presentado por Guatemala*

Summary

After briefly discussing the human geography of the country so that those not familiar with it can form some idea of Guatemala, the paper describes the languages and ethnic groups that are to be found in the Republic.

Existing geographical names and name categories must be studied and analysed, in each case, within the framework of an appropriate comprehensive interpretation, in order to show their development and whether they are standard or acceptable terms.

This is, in brief, the purpose of and reason for standardization, and the work can therefore never be divorced from reality.

Finally, the paper gives some examples, drawn from several centuries of research, concerning geographical names that are already standardized; their development is traced, and at the same time some comments are made on the categories into which these names fall.

Résumé

Après avoir donné les grandes lignes de la géographie humaine du pays, afin de permettre à ceux qui ne connaissent pas le Guatemala de s'en faire au moins une idée sommaire, le professeur Gall présente des considérations sur les caractéristiques des langues et des races que l'on y trouve.

Les noms géographiques actuels, ainsi que les catégories dans lesquelles ils entrent, doivent toujours être étudiés et analysés dans le cadre d'une interprétation globale de la question, afin de montrer ainsi leur évolution et de pouvoir éventuellement les ranger parmi les termes normaux ou acceptables.

Tels sont en résumé l'objectif de la normalisation et la raison pour laquelle elle est nécessaire, et c'est pourquoi ce travail ne doit jamais être séparé de la réalité.

Enfin, le rapport contient un certain nombre d'exemples des recherches, portant sur plusieurs siècles, qui ont été réalisées au sujet des noms géographiques actuellement normalisés. Cela permet de montrer l'évolution de ces derniers et en même temps de faire quelques remarques en ce qui concerne les catégories dans lesquelles ils entrent.

*

* *

Es un hecho sabido que la República de Guatemala, ubicada en el centro del continente americano, colinda al norte y oeste con México, al este con el Mar Caribe (Océano Atlántico), las Repúblicas de Honduras y El Salvador, mientras que por el sur lo es con el Océano Pacífico. Su área aproximada es de 131.800 kilómetros cuadrados (unas 50.888 millas cuadradas), entre los paralelos 13°44′ a 18°30′ Norte y meridianos 87°24′ a 92°14′ al Oeste de Greenwich.

De conformidad con los datos obtenidos del Censo General de Población de 1973, la población de la República de Guatemala (exceptuando Belice) fue de 5.160.221 habitantes, de los cuales 2.589.264 eran hombres y 2.570.957 mujeres. En las áreas urbanas residía un total de 1.878.191 (hombres 905.685, mujeres 971.506), mientras que el total de habitantes para las áreas rurales fue de 3.282.030 (hombres 1.683.579, mujeres 1.598.451) e "ignorados", según asimismo por la Dirección General de Estadística ascendió a 5.080 (urbano 3.399 y rural 1.681). En el mencionado total de población, de acuerdo con el mismo Censo de 1973, se incluyeron 2.260.024 indígenas (hombres 1.142.042, mujeres 1.117.982), de los cuales 438.133 (hombres 215.815, mujeres 222.318) correspondían a la parte urbana y 1.821.891 (hombres 926.277, mujeres 895.664) a la rural. Según publicado por las Naciones Unidas (A/AC.109/L.1025, 4 de agosto de 1975), con base en el Censo de 1970, Belice tenía 119.862 habitantes, de los cuales 39.332 vivían en la ciudad de Belice. Según se desprende del citado VIII Censo General de Población realizado en 1973 por la Dirección General de Estadística, en Guatemala había en esa ocasión un total de 1.012.817 viviendas de todo tipo.

En lo que atañe a su división político-administrativa, el país está dividido en departamentos y éstos en municipios. Con excepción de Belice, en la actualidad hay 22 departamentos y 326 municipios. La principal autoridad civil en cada departamento lo es el Gobernador, que representa al Ejecutivo y es nombrado por conducto del Ministerio de Gobernación. Las municipalidades son autónomas, elegidas por sufragio popular. En lo militar, Guatemala está dividida en seis zonas y tres bases militares. En lo que respecta a los distritos electorales, además del central que comprende la capital de la República, en la actualidad se cuenta con 22, que corresponden al mismo número de departamentos.

La Constitución de la República fue decretada por la Asamblea Nacional Constituyente el 15 de septiembre de 1966. Su sistema de Gobierno es representativo republicano y democrático. Delega el ejercicio de su soberanía en las ramas Ejecutiva, Legislativa y Judicial, entre las que no existe subordinación. El Presidente de la República es elegido por votación popular para un período de cuatro años en la misma planilla que el Vicepresidente, el que a la vez es el Presidente del Consejo de Estado.

La potestad legislativa corresponde al Congreso de la República, cuyos miembros son elegidos directamente por votación popular. En la actualidad el Congreso cuenta con 61 diputados y entre ellos eligen cada año a su Presidente y otros directivos. El Presidente del Poder Judicial lo es también de la Corte Suprema de Justicia.

Existe libertad de cultos. La religión predominante es la apostólica, católica y romana. En la actualidad se cuenta

* El texto original de este informe, preparado por el Profesor Francis Gall, Guatemala, ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF.69/L.6.

con un arzobispo, ocho obispos, dos administraciones apostólicas y dos prelacías.

La "Cordillera de Los Andes" como la denominan muchos, creyendo que forma parte de una cordillera continental cuando en realidad se origina en las Antillas, penetra procedente de México, donde en Chiapas se la conoce como "Sierra Madre" y dentro del territorio nacional se divide en dos ramales: uno en el departamento de San Marcos, que es el origen del sistema de la "Sierra Madre" y el otro en el departamento de Huehuetenango, que constituye el sistema de "Los Cuchumatanes".

En el país existen más de treinta volcanes; todos ellos alineados sobre la cordillera que corre paralela a la costa del Pacífico en unos 260 kilómetros, desde la frontera con México a la de El Salvador y constituye el eje volcánico que en todo tiempo se encuentra de unos 70 a 80 kilómetros del Océano Pacífico. Hacia el norte de dicho eje no se han localizado vestigios de formaciones volcánicas recientes.

En una referencia lo más abreviada posible que se refiera a la estructura geológica, América Central presenta dos partes o provincias diferentes, una septentrional y la otra meridional, que son el resultado de historias también diferentes. Sin embargo, ambas presentan una zona de historia geológica común, más joven, paralela a la costa del Océano Pacífico.

América Central septentrional, en lo que concierne a su estructura e historia geológica, es parte del continente norteamericano. Algunos consideran que el límite estructural es diferente desde el punto de vista geológico, el que se puede situar en la parte central de Nicaragua. Este mismo límite separa las partes septentrional y meridional de América Central y, geológicamente, se evidencia mejor tomando como base la distribución de las rocas anteriores al volcanismo del terciario superior. Como es sabido, dicho volcanismo fue común a ambas áreas y sus productos cubren en gran parte el registro geológico preexistente, pero aún así es posible reconocer las características diferenciables.

Guatemala se ubica en la extensión tierra adentro del rasgo estructural conocido como "Fosa de Bartlett", también designada por algunos geólogos como del Caimán, al final septentrional del cinturón volcánico cuaternario de América Central; área que contiene las rocas más antiguas que se conocen en la región y que constituyen una parte importante para la interpretación de la tectónica del Caribe. Geográficamente, América Central colinda al norte con la parte sur de México y, hacia el sur, con la cuenca del río Atrato entre Panamá y Colombia.

En el país se distinguen cuatro provincias fisiográficas, que son de sur a norte: 1) la planicie costera del Pacífico; 2) la provincia volcánica; 3) la cordillera central, y 4) las tierras bajas del Petén.

Existen cinco lagos principales, además de un número regular de lagunas y lagunetas.

El sistema orográfico del país, determina claramente dos regiones hidrográficas: la de los ríos que desembocan en el Océano Pacífico y la de los que vierten sus aguas en el Mar Caribe. Esta última se divide, a su vez, en dos: la región hidrográfica del Golfo de México y la del de Honduras.

La temperatura de las diversas localidades es tan variada como la superficie del suelo, pero sin tocar en ninguna de ellas los extremos del frío o del calor. Las estaciones del año se diferencian apenas una de la otra, conociéndose comúnmente sólo dos: verano, o época seca, de noviembre hasta abril, e invierno, o época de lluvias, de mayo a octubre. For ello, no es enteramente hiperbólico el común proloquio que atribuye a Guatemala una eterna primavera.

En lo que respecta la Flora, pueden distinguirse cuatro zonas diferentes: las tierras bajas o calientes, de ambas planicies costeras, hasta una altura de unos 600 metros sobre nivel del mar y a lo largo de las principales corrientes; la zona templada de 600 a 1.800 metros sobre nivel del mar; las tierras frías a mayor altura y, hacia el norte, una selva tropical húmeda casi impenetrable hasta en años recientes, aunque en otro tiempo la región fue asiento de una población maya de alta civilización.

Además del idioma oficial, que es el español, en Guatemala se hablan unos veinte idiomas indígenas principales.

En lo que atañe a América Latina, siendo para ello menester tomar en consideración que en este trabajo por su propia dimensión sólo se hará referencia a los países dentro del campo específico de acción de las Naciones Unidas a cargo del suscrito, puede decirse que después del primer viaje de descubrimiento de Cristóbal Colón, el Gran Almirante retornó a España con siete indígenas, según lo asentara: "De siete que yo fice tomar para los llevar y deprender nuestra fabla y bolbellos".

Después de las experiencias que se obtuvieron en Santo Domingo, Cuba, la región norte de América del Sur y otras partes, muchos de los vocablos empleados fueron incorporados dentro del habla usual de los conquistadores y colonizadores en tal grado, que asimismo y de manera inconsciente llegaron a ser objeto de difusión amplia. Lo anterior, debido al hecho de que gran parte de los usuarios no estaban familiarizados con el origen de esas locuciones.

Puede constatarse ello, al encontrarse un considerable número de ejemplos hojeando las obras de Pedro Mártir de Anglería, Bartolomé Cassaus o de Las Casas, Antonio de Herrera y Tordesillas, Gonzalo Fernández de Oviedo y Valdés, así como de muchos otros, no sólo españoles sino que también italianos como Francisco Antonio Pigafetta y otros cronistas de diferentes nacionalidades. Sería demasiado prolijo entrar en detalle alguno y, además, el autor considera que ello no cae dentro de los fines de una exposición breve como la presente.

En la actualidad y por lo menos en español, existe una tendencia hacia escribirlo conforme se pronuncia y no pronunciarlo según se escribe. También, de consiguiente, se considera que cualquier estudio etimológico de un dado nombre geográfico debe ser tan dinámico como el propio idioma, ya que no se tiene en mente reconstruir

locuciones muertas o arcaicas y no existe interés alguno en revivirlas, a menos que fuese con fines históricos para poder mostrar su evolución. Al contrario, los respectivos nombres debieran en cada caso ser estudiados y analizados dentro de cualquiera deseable interpretación integral actual, a efecto de que los estudios de un dado idioma estén dentro de los términos normales o actuales, utilizados hoy en día.

El autor está firmemente convencido de que por múltiples razones existe el hecho de que un dado nombre geográfico o topónimo aún pueda figurar con diferente grafía y variantes en diversos mapas, documentos estadísticos, guías u horarios de los ferrocarriles, publicaciones turísticas, listas de asociaciones automovilísticas, etc. La meta a la que debe anhelarse llegar es que no sólo el nombre figure escrito de manera uniforme, sino también en tal forma que no pueda dar lugar a equivocos, ni en lo que atañe a su categoría.

Como resultado del precedimiento enunciado, debe ser aceptado y su ubicación exacta identificada por los usuarios locales, a efecto de evitar error alguno y estar en contacto con el usuario, para que así el trabajo nunca pueda estar divorciado de la realidad.

En síntesis, lo precedente constituye el objetivo y, sobre todo. la necesidad de normalizar un dado topónimo. Cómo realizarlo es función inherente de la institución nacional establecida para tal fin.

Conforme expuesto en la versión española de la obra *La Lucha por la Justicia en la Conquista de América*, de Lewis Hanke, a muchos les agrada creer que lo pasado debe considerarse como un prólogo, ya que la orientación del hombre reflexivo de nuestros tiempos tiende más a ver hacia atrás en el tiempo. También es un hecho sabido que en la actualidad vivimos con tal urgencia de resolver los problemas momentáneos y con tal temor de que si no los comprendemos y resolvemos adecuadamente podríamos destruir el mañana, que solamente nos queda tiempo para un débil interés en el pasado.

Resulta imposible ignorar el hecho de que muchos países de nuestro planeta, durante siglos, han permanecido casi olvidados. Aunque se ha manifestado que reducidos como fueron los descubrimientos llevados a cabo por Cartago, Atenas, Venecia y Roma, creando lo que se dio en llamar "El Mundo de Occidente", los mismos no se multiplicaron sino hasta que España, Portugal y Gran Bretaña enviaron a sus naves con gente de guerra en pos de las nuevas tierras y de riquezas. Para el logro de lo anterior, tuvieron que cruzar los entonces ignotos mares y encontrar como recompensa a sus afanes y sacrificios pueblos de culturas disímiles, aunque organizados con vida independiente, con sus idiomas e instituciones propias y que poseían costumbres bastante símiles entre sí.

Cruel y sanguinario como lo ha sido siempre en la naturaleza el choque de dos grupos étnicos de culturas diferentes que han llegado a confrontarse en un momento dado de la humanidad, es menester tener siempre en mente que lo resultante fue el origen de las naciones que integran América Continental e Insular, o sea el hondo producto de los pueblos en el vasto escenario como lo constituye nuestro nuevo mundo. Lo precedente logró producir una de las más fuertes transfusiones de sangre que ha registrado el proceso de la humanidad.

Al igual que con los seres y las cosas, los pueblos ocupan un lugar en este nuestro planeta. Por ello, es inherente a su existencia el espacio que llenan y, en esta forma, nace la geografía que demarca, ubica y delimita continentes, regiones y países. Y cuando esos continentes, esas regiones y esos países se encuentran poblados por seres humanos, se origina y desarrolla su historia, al dar cuenta y razón de su vida como nación, ya sea de manera aislada o en convivencia con otros países.

De consiguiente, no es dable negar a los pueblos, a los grandes por grandes y a los pequeños por pequeños, que posean su historia en la medida y amplitud de su propia cultura que, ciertas veces, en los pequeños se encuentra más desarrollada que entre los grandes.

Sin duda alguna, las características de idioma y de raza figuran entre los mejores elementos con que se cuenta hoy en día para explicar la designación de América Latina, debido al hecho de que en este continente predominan el español y el portugués, por el motivo que los que realizaron el descubrimiento y pacificación, así como la conquista fueron latinos, los que coadyuvaron de manera fundamental en la población y cultura de sus habitantes primigenios. Esto, naturalmente, se refleja en los respectivos nombres geográficos.

En lo que respecta a Guatemala y corroborando lo que sobre el particular se ha escrito, el autor ha sustentado siempre la opinión de que debe llevarse a cabo una investigación integral, a efecto de investigar los nombres geográficos. A continuación se proporcionan algunos ejemplos dentro de mi patria.

Es así como, con respecto al poblado denominado hoy en día "Ingenio de Anís", hacia fines del siglo XVII el cronista, capitán don Francisco Antonio de Fuentes y Guzmán, anotó en su *Recordación Florida* que la voz resultaba una corruptela de "Ingenio de Donis", precisamente por haber sido un ingenio de azúcar de una persona apellidada "Donis". Unos pocos años más tarde, por el tercer quinquenio del siglo XVIII, el dominico Francisco Ximénez anotó en el libro quinto de su *Historia de la Provincia de Guatemala* que el 19 de enero de 1665 murió Fray Joseph de Ocampo: "Hiciéronlo prior del convento de San Juan Amatitan [*hoy en día Amatitlán*] y siendo prior compró para aquel convento el ingenio de fabricar azúcar, que llaman *de Donis* y hoy corruptamente de *Anís*".

También en el interrogatorio que se realizó el 1° de mayo de 1646 sobre la donación que el Correo Mayor Pedro Crespo Suárez hizo para una Universidad en Guatemala, el albacea testamentario Juan Bautista Bartolomé hizo referencia a "la parte que tenía en un ingenio de azúcar, que quedó por muerte de Juan González *Donis*, su suegro". Alguna persona que desconociera los hechos históricos, sin duda alguna proporcionaría la etimología de *Anís* como perteneciente a una planta de la familia umbelífera, lo que en este caso es del todo inexacto.

La real cédula del monarca español fechada en Madrid el 10 de junio de 1540 y remitida al obispo de Guatemala,

licenciado don Francisco Marroquín, fue el origen de los poblados españoles, ya que ordenaba que se procediese a reunir a los indios en pueblos. Muchos de los mismos, naturalmente, conservaron sus nombres originales, a los que se agregó el de algún santo bajo cuya advocación se puso, como por ejemplo Santo Domingo de Cobán, San Pedro Carchah o Carchá y otros, o bien el poblado recibía el nombre de su propietario español, o una combinación de ambos casos, como "San Juan del Obispo" debido a que pertenecía al obispo Marroquín, "San Rafael Urías", etcétera.

El dominico Antonio de Remesal escribió en el transcurso de la segunda década del siglo XVII su *Historia General de las Indias Occidentales y en particular de la Gobernación de Chiapa* y *Guatemala* sobre cómo se erigían los poblados en cuadrados semejantes a un tablero de ajedrez, dando a la vez detalles y nombres de lugares poblados fundados entre los años de 1540 y 1550: "El pueblo de Chiapa fundóle el capitán Diego de Mazariegos, sacando los indios del peñol en que antes vivían, como se dijo. Los padres le ordenaron del modo y forma que ahora tiene. En Ostustla se juntaron dos pueblos. En Yztapa cinco, sin otros muchos indios que moraban en milpas y salinas, estancias y barrancas. En Chamula tres. En Tecpatlán cinco, sin los que moraban en milpas, y salinas y estancias.

> "En la sierra de Zacapula, Chajul, allí se juntaron a petición de los padres fundadores del convento, por orden y diligencia del licenciado Pedro Ramírez de Quiñones, los pueblos de Huyl, Boob, Ylom, Honcab, Chaxá, Aguazaq, Huiz y otros cuatro, y cada uno de éstos tenía otros pueblezuelos conjuntos como sufragáneos.
>
> "Al pueblo de Aguacatlán, Nevá, se juntaron Vacá, Chel, Zalchil, Cuchil y otros muchos, más de doce. Al pueblo de Cozal se le juntaron Namá, Chicuí, Temal, Caquilax y otros muchos. En el Quiché, en el pueblo que hoy se llama Santa Cruz, se juntaron Zaguaquip, Niab, Achavil, Quiché Tamub y otros muchos. En el pueblo de Santo Tomás, Carrabarracan, Chulimal, Huylá, Zizicastenango y otros muchos con los que les estaban sujetos.
>
> "En Zacualpa, Ahauquiché, Hiayb, Caquequib, Roqché y otros muchos con los de su jurisdicción. En el pueblo de Santa María se juntaron los mismos que en Santa Cruz para guardar aquel paso de los de Rabinal, y estaban allí como en frontera y hoy dura el castillo de las centinelas o atalayas, que en su lengua llaman Chuixoyabah.
>
> "Lo mismo fue en los demás pueblos de San Antón, San Bartolomé, San Miguel, Chalxcuá, San Pedro Xocopila y Cunén, que todos se formaron de muchos pueblos pequeños y a donde se juntaron más, fue en San Andrés . . .".

En la antes citada obra de Fuentes y Guzmán, se encuentra el dato de que el nombre aborigen del poblado pocomam que en la ciudad de Amatitlán era Pampichí o Pampichín. Esto también es corroborado por el fraile irlandés Tomás Gage, quien en 1635 era vicario del pueblo de San Cristóbal Amatitán (ahora Palín, en el departamento de Escuintla). Interesante información adicional es a la vez proporcionada por Fuentes y Guzmán, en el sentido de que el poblado no se trasladó a su ubicación actual desde Pampichí o Pampichín, sino a otro sitio llamado por los pocomchíes Tzacualpa o Zacualpa, que puede identificarse como estar en un pequeño cerro al este del lago de Amatitlán cuyo desagüe lo constituye el río Michatoya.

Prosiguiendo con una requerida investigación geográfica e histórica en lo que respecta a la ubicación y nombre de la hoy en día ciudad de Amatitlán, puede encontrarse información adicional en la relativamente escasa primera edición de la obra del cronista y sacerdote Domingo Juarros quien, con base en documentos originales, escribió durante la primera década del siglo XIX que en la provincia de Sacatepéquez y Amatitanes estaba el pueblo de "San Juan Amatitan", ubicado tres leguas españolas del sitio primitivo, en el cual existía una pequeña ermita en que se veneraba una imagen del Niño Jesús y que por eso se llamó "Betlem", así como que el arzobispo doctor Cayetano Francos y Monroy la mandó trasladar en el año de 1789 a la actual iglesia.

La fundación española de Amatitlán bien pudo ser en 1549, uno de los años de más intensa actividad en reducir los indios a poblados, durante la Presidencia del licenciado don Alonso López de Cerrato. Estando bajo la advocación de San Juan y por ser la fiesta de la natividad de San Juan Bautista el 24 de junio, cae en lo posible haber sido entonces. Uno de los cinco poblados que se redujeron para formar Amatitlán, además de entre otros Pampichí o Pampichín y Tzacualpa o Zacualpa ha de haber sido Panquejechó, hoy en día una finca cuyo casco está aproximadamente a 11 kilómetros al este-sureste de la ciudad de Amatitlán. Gage escribió en su obra publicada en 1648 que Pampichí estaba al pie de una alta montaña, posible referencia al volcán de Pacaya.

En otras palabras, conociendo el terreno se puede establecer que el asiento original fue Pampichí o Pampichín, después, la finca y actual caserío Belén; de allí se trasladó el pueblo al lugar mencionado como Tzacualpa o Zacualpa y, antes de 1789, a su ubicación actual.

Un investigador encontrará también que otra sorpresa le está reservada: si bien Antonio de Remesal en su obra se refiere a que fray Diego Martínez introdujo en el lago de Amatitlán la variedad de pescado conocida como pepesca, en otra parte posterior hace referencia al capítulo intermedio de los dominicos celebrado en Sacapulas (mencionado como Zacapula) el 18 de enero de 1607:

> "Murió en Zacapula el padre fray Gerónimo Martínez, padre antiguo a quien debe su ser el pueblo de San Juan Amatitan, porque le fundó donde ahora está, y los indios le están muy obligados por la renta que les dejó en la pesquera de la laguna que él trajo con gran diligencia el pescado de mar y lo echó en ella . . .".

Al consultar la edición príncipe de Remesal, impresa en 1620 en Madrid por Francisco de Abarca y Angulo, se pudo constatar asimismo que a su página 509 se menciona

a fray Diego y a página 733 a fray Gerónimo Martínez. Sin embargo, esto se considera ser asunto diferente.

Lo ya citado, muestra que no sólo se puede obtener la fecha de fundación de poblados al consultar las obras de cronistas e historiadores, sino asimismo la evolución natural de un dado nombre geográfico.

Por ejemplo, Remesal transcribe una real providencia emanada de la Real Audiencia de la isla de Santo Domingo el 6 de diciembre de 1553, dirigida a los "Honrados caciques de los pueblos de Zacapula, e Aguacatlan, e Zacabaha, Huil e Ylom, e Chacoá . . .".

Asimismo, en la edición príncipe (1851) de la obra del arzobispo Francisco de Paula García Peláez, entre muchos interesantes datos relativos a los nombres geográficos de Guatemala, aparece que el común del actual pueblo Santa Catarina Pinula obtuvo en 1595 una posesión de dos caballerías de tierra, autorizada con la firma del cacique don Pedro Pérez de Espinal después de la del Oidor de la Real Audiencia nombrado para el efecto.

Un factor también importante que debe tenerse muy presente, es la romanización, como se constata en los nombres geográficos de ciertas zonas que, hasta hace relativamente muy pocos años, poseían sólo sus nombres aborígenes que habían conservado, los que en la actualidad han sido o bien transliterados al español, o cambiados por otros vocablos españoles similares, con lo cual se ha perdido el nombre primitivo.

Resumiendo, puede decirse que no resulta hiperbólico del todo, afirmar que los nombres geográficos o topónimos constituyen las inscripciones grabadas sobre el suelo, que de manera exacta determinan la ubicación de los diferentes accidentes geográficos a los que nominan. En igual forma como el agrimensor y el cartógrafo tienen como meta la perfecta representación de la tierra sobre una superficie plana que se llama mapa, un geógrafo entrenado en la disciplina de los nombres geográficos, o bien un experto en ella, trata de captar lo más fielmente posible los nombres con los cuales el hombre designa y diferencia los más significativos rasgos culturales y naturales de la tierra. Dichos nombres son indispensables en la comunicación: identifican tanto a los accidentes geográficos como a los hidrográficos, a los lugares poblados y a todos aquellos rasgos que facilitan su referencia, en igual forma en que los nombres personales diferencian a las personas entre sí.

UNAS POCAS ANOTACIONES SOBRE CARTOGRAFIA Y GEOGRAFIA HUMANA

Informe presentado por Guatemala*

Summary

The author first gives a concise definition of cartography and human geography.

He then presents some brief observations on geographical names in Latin America, a subject which falls exclusively within the competence of the various members of the United Nations Group of Experts and on the influence which the geographical names in question have in the social, cultural and economic spheres.

Observations of a popular nature regarding the need for standardization are also included in order to make this specific phase of the work and its objectives comprehensible to the layman.

Résumé

L'auteur du rapport commence par donner une définition concise de la cartographie et de la géographie humaine.

Il présente ensuite quelques brèves considérations sur les noms géographiques en Amérique latine, question qui relève exclusivement de la compétence des membres du Groupe d'experts des Nations Unies, et sur l'influence des noms géographiques en ce qui concerne l'ordre social, culturel et économique.

Le document contient également des considérations élémentaires sur la nécessité de la normalisation, afin qu'un profane puisse connaître cet aspect particulier du travail et les objectifs poursuivis.

*

* *

Existe una antigua expresión latina en el sentido de que no hay nada nuevo debajo del sol. Las siguientes anotaciones lo confirman: *Nil novi sub sole.*

Es un hecho sabido que podría describirse de manera breve a la cartografía como el dibujo de cartas o mapas. En efecto, el topógrafo mide la tierra, el cartógrafo recopila las mediciones y las representa como un mapa, mientras que el geógrafo interpreta los hechos así proporcionados. Con base en las técnicas modernas y a efecto de evitar una definición que fuese demasiado estrecha, podría aducirse que tanto la facción de un mapa como la ciencia sobre la cual se apoya, es de manera principal el resultado de la fotogrametría en combinación con ciertos métodos tradicionales, e incluyendo los problemas relativos a la proyección.

La disciplina considerada por las Naciones Unidas como la ciencia de preparar cualquier tipo de mapas y cartas incluye en sí cada una de las operaciones involucradas, a partir de los primeros levantamientos hasta su reproducción final.

En lo que atañe a la geografía humana, de manera sucinta podría indicarse que constituye una de las más recientes partes de la geografía. Se basa en la teoría de

* El texto original de este informe, preparado por el Profesor Francis Gall, Guatemala, ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF.69/L.7.

todo tipo de vida. En otras palabras, en la influencia de los medios físicos sobre el hombre y sus actividades y, de manera recíproca, en la influencia del hombre sobre el medio físico al que transforma.

Empero, en esta ocasión no se estima del caso entrar en pormenores en lo que atañe a cartografía y geografía humana en general. Séame sólo permitido señalar de manera específica, que existe el hecho de no contarse con un "mapa mudo", o sea uno que a una escala convencional previamente adoptada no contenga referencia alguna sobre un nombre cualquiera, lo cual por supuesto sería un absurdo. Y es aquí, precisamente, donde entra una de las ciencias auxiliares de la geografía, denominada "nombres geográficos" o "toponimia".

A estas alturas, séame permitido mencionar que todos sabemos que la onomástica es la ciencia que, precisamente, tiene como uno de sus principales objetivos el estudio de los nombres geográficos. De consiguiente, aun corriendo el riesgo de repetir lo que todos saben, se considera del caso hacer referencia a algunos de sus aspectos generales.

Quizá algunos se pregunten sobre el porqué de todo lo relacionado con los nombres geográficos. Empero, la respuesta es bastante sencilla: Aun en un mapa fotogramétrico, por más cuidado que se haya puesto a efecto de que la línea de remate dentro de sus respectivas coordenadas geográficas (*neatline*) esté exacta; que las curvas de nivel estén correctas y con sus intervalos adecuados en función de la escala fijada; que la exactitud de reproducción como resultado de trabajos técnicos de gabinete y de campo en un documento de gran valor como lo constituye un mapa o una carta sea lo más perfecto posible; si un lego o aun un profesional cuyo campo de interés radique en otra fase diferente de trabajo llegase a constatar que un nombre no sea el adecuado, o bien que su grafía presente variantes, su primera reacción podría ser de que el documento cartográfico en sí no está correcto. Lo anterior no es nada nuevo: ha sucedido reiteradas veces en diferentes países de América Latina, que es mi campo de acción.

El nombre que figure en cualquier tipo de mapa y utilizado para nominar a un dado accidente, debe ser confiable y estar correcto a la fecha de compilación. De consiguiente, resulta imperativo que dicho nombre haya sido sometido a un proceso designado "normalización".

Aun si en este continente las funciones delineadas en el párrafo que precede y las cuales han estado exclusivamente dentro del campo de acción de nuestro Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos han sido asumidas de manera unilateral por cierta institución panamericana, sin mediar arreglo alguno con el nombrado y aceptado Experto en Nombres Geográficos de las Naciones Unidas, el citado hecho se desea mencionar sólo de manera muy escueta, ya que resulta en una interferencia y en otros daños que no necesitan ser enumerados ni mucho menos juzgados aquí. Baste mencionar solamente que cualquiera futura ayuda, asistencia o como desee llamársela y que trate sobre el particular, la misma debe ser evaluada desde todos los puntos de vista y tomarse en consideración también la no tan buena voluntad que crearía en determinada parte, al ofrecer y de por sí programar funciones cierta institución que no es precisamente nuestro Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos, que si bien a primera vista parezcan ser colaborativas, en realidad caen dentro de otro campo que podría ser calificado de muy diferente.

Fue precisamente en el seno de las Naciones Unidas, como consecuencia de prolongados debates, en donde se pudo más o menos llegar a definir lo que significa normalización. Esto, debe subrayarse, cae completamente dentro del campo de las labores que realiza nuestro Grupo de Expertos en Nombres Geográficos.

En lo que respecta a la normalización a nivel nacional, lo que es el privilegio de cualquier país libre, soberano e independiente, de acuerdo con un documento de las Naciones Unidas y en traducción a la fecha no oficial del inglés por el suscrito, es la "recomendación o designación, por la autoridad competente, de una forma gráfica específica o de formas gráficas específicas, para un topónimo".

Con motivo de nuestra primera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Uniformar los Nombres Geográficos, celebrada en Ginebra en 1967, entre otras se promulgó la resolución 4, modificada posteriormente de manera parcial, que se refiere a la normalización nacional[1]. Se entiende, por supuesto, que en la mayoría de los casos, la normalización internacional es el resultado directo de la nacional y es por ello que por ahora no entraré en mayores detalles sobre este tópico.

Cuanto más se retroceda en el pasado, puede comprobarse que el hombre siempre ha tratado de nominar con un nombre específico a un dado accidente. Ello llegó a ser más complejo con el transcurso de los siglos, debido a que la gente daba muchas veces de manera arbitraria un nombre específico y que tampoco se tomaba la precaución de que a una distancia relativamente corta, otras personas aplicaban el mismo nombre o uno parecido a un accidente similar, creando la inherente duplicación y confusión. Con el transcurso del tiempo y al mejorar los sistemas de locomoción acortando las distancias, la situación llegó a ser más bien caótica. No obstante lo anterior, no se hace aquí mención de ciertos términos que muchos creen no poder separarse de cierto nombre geográfico.

Con relación a los nombres geográficos y debido al hecho de que en la realidad la toponimia viene a estar dentro de la geografía humana, de manera bien clara se estima necesario recalcar que los mismos no son propiedad exclusiva de los expertos o técnicos, sino que pertenecen al público mundial. Es por ello que siempre debe tenerse presente la necesidad de mantener el contacto con el público y en especial con el usario, así como divulgar por todos los medios posibles lo inherente, a efecto de que el trabajo no esté divorciado de la realidad.

[1] *Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Uniformar los Nombres Geográficos*, vol. I, *Informe de la Conferencia* (publicación de las Naciones Unidas, No. de venta: S.68.I.9), cap. III.

Nosotros, los expertos de las Naciones Unidas en nombres geográficos, tenemos como uno de nuestros objetivos el proporcionar coordinación continua y enlace entre los países.

Es por ello que un experto debe trabajar sin interferencia dentro de su área específica asignada dentro de las acordadas divisiones lingüístico-geográficas, con los operativos fijados de manera específica y los que constantemente deben ser mejorados o modificados, de acuerdo con los requerimientos que surjan.

Dentro del espíritu de una necesaria explicación de índole popular, es menester hacer constar de manera clara que nosotros, los expertos de las Naciones Unidas en nombres geográficos, podemos actuar y actuamos conforme lo permitan las circunstancias y el trabajo, dentro de nuestros propios países. Empero, cuando se requiere nuestra asesoría de parte de otro país, solamente podremos hacer sugerencias técnicas, a efecto de que dicho país libre, soberano e independiente, pueda adoptar las formas y procedimientos que estime más convenientes.

También debe subrayarse, y esto lo considero en forma asaz firme, que todo lo relacionado con los nombres geográficos *cae directa y solamente* dentro del campo de acción de nuestro Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos y que, por ende, no podría ni debería existir interferencia alguna de parte de algún organismo, comisión o como quiera que se le designe, con ubicación en un dado país. Al contrario, dicho organismo debería laborar *solamente* en estrecha colaboración con el Experto de las Naciones Unidas para una dada región y en lo absoluto pasarlo por alto, ya que es él el responsable para que se realice el trabajo específico dentro de su región asignada.

Además de lo que se ha hecho hincapié en el párrafo precedente, cualquier normalización de nombres geográficos debe ser realizada solamente a través de un organismo nacional de nombres geográficos, que debe ser un cuerpo al que se le ha otorgado autoridad de decisión por una institución legalmente constituida. En los países dentro de su campo de acción, el autor ha manifestado que considera que el citado organismo debe ser creado lo antes posible, o bien si el mismo ya existiera, que fuese reestructurado para hacerlo más funcional.

Como el autor lo ha divulgado reiteradas veces, todas las decisiones de un organismo nacional deben ser publicadas y diseminadas en forma íntegra, para que tanto el público como cualquiera dependencia – oficial o no – dentro de un dado país, pueda ser mantenido informado en lo que atañe a lo resuelto. Para ello y contando con la asistencia técnica del Experto de las Naciones Unidas, es menester que tanto la forma de actuar como los correspondientes procedimientos a utilizarse sean fijados de antemano de manera bien clara; los mismos no pueden ser estáticos sino que actualizados, mejorando y enmendando las respectivas medidas. Ello constituye un paso muy importante, ya que el resultado final mostrará un nombre normalizado.

Lo anterior quiere decir que, una vez haya sido fijado un nombre, éste debe permanecer así, a menos que en el porvenir surjan elementos significativos de juicio para mejor fallar, ya que se recomienda la retención contra precipitados cambios innecesarios e indeseables. De consiguiente, no se pueden tomar acciones unilaterales. Esto constituye también un objetivo dentro de la normalización, lo que significa que al seleccionar un nombre, quizá entre varios opcionales, el mismo procedimiento de selección ya constituye en sí una manera de normalización.

Sin duda alguna, las características de raza e idioma figuran entre los mejores elementos disponibles para explicar la designacion de "América Latina". La mayoría de esos procedimientos se realizaron en épocas pretéritas y continuarán en el futuro. De consiguiente, resulta un hecho que puede darse por cierto, en el sentido de que nuestra geografía actual ha evolucionado del paso y que está íntimamente relacionada con la que vendrá, por constituir precisamente una ciencia aplicada.

No debemos olvidar el hecho de que precisamente dentro de América Latina, una considerable parte de su población está formada por los aborígenes de este continente, que poseen tradiciones y sabiduría secular, y que sobre este tronco se injertó, de manera especial desde principios del siglo XVI, el elemento latino. Así, en la mezcolanza de las diversas razas, ello ha constituido la base del origen para el establecimiento de nuevas formas de convivencia, quizá irrealizable en otras partes. Cada una de las corrientes que han coadyuvado a dar forma a la actual población, ha contribuido con su óbolo de ancestrales hábitos y antiguas costumbres sobre lo que se extendió, cual manto protector, la Latinidad y el Cristianismo profesado por nuestros antepasados.

En esta forma, América Latina ha llegado a constituir la más genuina expresión de nuestro continente en evolución progresiva donde aún perviven los indígenas, ya sea en su supuesto estado puro, o mezclados con otras razas y que han contribuido a la formación de los pueblos. No así en otras partes del mundo, donde después de la extinción de las comunidades aborígenes se estableció una nueva forma de vida, como consecuencia de determinativos acontecimientos históricos, los que en las citadas regiones no siempre obraron en el mismo sentido. Como resultado de ello estuvo la formación de rasgos peculiares que sólo pueden dejar la impronta de sus características específicas en la estructura de su existencia, donde hoy en día se están realizando grandes cambios dentro de las tradiciones básicas, debido a los requerimientos de una moderna sociedad tecnológica.

Más allá de las investigaciones de un geógrafo, de un historiador o de un etnólogo; aún más allá de las disquisiciones de un filósofo y los estudios de un sociólogo como también los de un sicólogo, es donde debe encontrarse la definición de esta nuestra parte del mundo designado como *Nuevo* y dividido entre tantas barreras artificiales, a efecto de poder explicar por qué una población de aborígenes americanos y otras sucesivas razas americanas conservan un modo común de razonar y de sentir, proclamando al mismo tiempo con orgullo su propio origen.

Es un hecho sabido que inmediatamente después de realizada la Conquista ibera, el idioma como los derechos humanos ejercieron su influencia en las clases menos privilegiadas. Tanto la cultura como la religión obraron sobre quienes se consideraban estar a un nivel más alto y, con posterioridad, en sus luchas por la emancipación que se logró a través de América Latina durante las primeras décadas del siglo XIX, al haber llegado en lo político a la mayoría de edad. Quizá ello pueda coadyuvar para explicar tanto el desarrollo como la especie de prosperidad que se ha logrado obtener, de manera parcial, en nuestro tal llamado "Tercer Mundo".

La aglutinación dentro de nuestro continente, que ha unido a diversos pueblos proporcionándoles a la vez un elemento común entre los vaivenes políticos por los que tuvieron que atravesar, tiene raíces profundas y muchas veces ignotas. El origen de los habitantes, sus vicisitudes históricas, el suelo sobre el que viven, las condiciones climáticas que los condicionan, así como los idiomas que utilizan, todo ello constituye algunos de los muchos elementos que ayudan a comprender este Nuevo Mundo. En realidad, la concepción de las ciencias tan estrechamente relacionadas que profesamos se ha modificado y cambiado de manera substancial en los años recientes.

En lo que atañe a mis breves y varias consideraciones sobre cartografía y geografía humana, es menester no olvidar que, ante todo, somos humanos. Como geógrafo que me precio ser, la opinión que sustento es en el sentido de que, para poder alcanzar nuestras metas, es menester trabajar muy estrechamente, de ser posible ayudándonos mutuamente y, por supuesto, tratar de enmendar a su debido tiempo los errores incurridos o las omisiones realizadas.

Por último, permítaseme expresar lo siguiente: en nuestro mundo actual en donde sobre todo debemos de manera constante ocuparnos de la reconstrucción; donde surge una demanda cada vez mayor en lo que atañe a nueva y diferente utilización de nuestros recursos naturales, así como a su aprovechamiento racional, nada puede lograrse sin aplicación de las ciencias dentro de la geografía humana y su inherente representación exacta y confiable de una dada región.

TOPONYMY RESEARCH AT THE FEDERAL LEVEL IN CANADA
Report presented by Canada*

Résumé

La Division de la toponymie de la Direction des levés et de la cartographie (Ministère de l'énergie, des mines et des ressources) effectue des recherches toponymiques. La Section de recherche groupe des renseignements sur l'origine des noms, organise des programmes sur le terrain en coopération avec les autorités provinciales et répond à divers renseignements de caractère toponymique. Depuis 1972, deux études toponymiques ont été publiées: *Noms géographiques de l'île du Prince Edouard, 1973* et *Noms géographiques du Nouveau-Brunswick, 1975*. Des études sont actuellement en cours en ce qui concerne la Nouvelle-Ecosse, le Manitoba et les territoires du nord-ouest. On envisage d'étudier ultérieurement Terre-Neuve et la Colombie britannique.

Resumen

Las investigaciones toponímicas las realiza la División de Toponimia, de la Subdivisión de Topografía y Cartografía del Departamento de Energía, Minas y Recursos Naturales (Toponymy Division, Surveys and Mapping Branch, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources). La Sección de Investigaciones mantiene la información de origen, organiza programas sobre el terreno en cooperación con las autoridades provinciales y contesta a una variedad de preguntas sobre cuestiones toponímicas. Desde 1972 se han producido dos estudios sobre toponimia: *Geographical Names of Prince Edward Island, 1973* (Nombres geográficos de la Isla Príncipe Eduardo, 1973); y *Geographical Names of New Brunswick, 1975* (Nombres geográficos de Nueva Brunswick). En la actualidad se están realizando estudios sobre Nueva Escocia, Manitoba y los territorios del Noroeste. Se está considerando también la realización de futuros estudios sobre Terranova y la Columbia Británica.

*

* *

Function

The Toponymy Research Section is responsible for the acquisition of geographical name information as required by the Toponymy Division, Surveys and Mapping Branch, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. This information is gathered from documentary sources, such as maps, other archival records and the files of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names (CPCGN), and from field research. Work in the field is conducted in co-operation with the province concerned, and is usually undertaken at a province's request as part of a complete toponymic review programme.

Another related function is the maintenance of reference materials and of origin details on file, in order to provide information on the origin and application of names to inquirers from other Government agencies, private industry and the general public. Since the Toponymy Division acts as the Secretariat of the CPCGN, specialists in the Research Section inevitably

* The original text of this paper, prepared by W. B. Yeo, Toponymy Division, Surveys and Mapping Branch, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Canada, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.10.

become involved in processing the submission of names in their areas of expertise.

Projects

Since 1972 work has been performed on the following projects:

Geographical names of Prince Edward Island

Office research was completed and a published volume on the origin and usage of Island names was produced in time to mark the centennial of this province's entry into the Canadian Confederation.

Geographical names of New Brunswick

Although research had been completed earlier on this project, publication of the resulting toponymy study was delayed until 1975 in favour of the prior appearance of the Prince Edward Island work, and to permit the New Brunswick study to be published with a map reflecting the latest decisions of the Committee.

Geographical names of Nova Scotia

Field-work for this project began in 1972 and was completed in 1974. The processing of the resulting name changes and new name recommendations was finished in 1976. In the meantime, research has continued in documentary sources and a draft manuscript of a toponymy study should be completed in 1978.

Geographical names of the Northwest Territories

Office research for this project was suspended for some months following the retirement in 1974 of the specialist who had worked on it for many years. Work has since resumed, however, and considerable progress has been made in exploiting new sources of northern name information, particularly with respect to native toponyms. This toponymy study is being prepared without a preliminary over-all field study, an undertaking that would require extensive resources and many man-years to complete. The last major published work on northern toponyms appeared in 1910. The new work should be in draft manuscript form in the early 1980s. It may be necessary to reconsider seriously the scope of this project in light of the intended function to be performed by the resulting publication.

Manitoba field research

In 1975 work began on a comprehensive on-the-ground survey of geographical names in Manitoba, in co-operation with the provincial Government. The following year the project was stepped up with the addition of another field researcher, under contract, who operated in the northern areas of the province and gained access to remote areas by flying his own aircraft. This work is continuing, and it is expected that the 1977 field season will see this phase of the project completed. Initial steps are being taken to undertake documentary research to complement the field information. It is intended to produce a publication titled *Geographical Names of Manitoba* in 1981.

A previous publication, issued by the old Geographic Board of Canada, appeared in 1933 under the title *Place Names of Manitoba*. Since that date another toponymy study was published privately in 1970, and a third is now in the hands of the publisher. However, it is felt that a publication based on the results of field-work and the resources of the CPCGN will be a much more definitive work than its predecessors and will, in addition, fulfil the terms of the original agreement with Manitoba under which the programme was undertaken.

As was expected, field research in the northern areas of Manitoba has resulted in the recording of a large number of Amerindian names for natural features. The problems arising from dialect differences among a number of native languages, none of which has a standard Roman orthography, have led to the formation of operating guidelines for the submission of these names in a suitable form. This form should both provide names for map use and reflect the native toponymy. The additional complexity of this process has been accepted as a necessary part of a field programme in this area.

Other projects

Due to pressures of work the anticipated completion of the *Annotated Gazetteer of Undersea Feature Names* has not been realized. The process of updating the now obsolete *Selected Bibliography on Canadian Toponymy* (1964) is proceeding slowly, although a proposed plan for using automated text processing methods might produce preliminary results before the end of 1977.

Future Plans

If field research is to continue as an integral part of our programme it will be necessary to look to new areas. Both British Columbia and Newfoundland have requested information on the requirements and benefits of such work, but as yet no commitment has been made, although both provinces are long overdue for such a programme.

Alternative areas under consideration include National Parks, with the intention of producing local toponymy guides similar in scope to those studies produced under the supervision of the Geological Survey of Canada. It may also prove worth while to direct field studies in areas of concentrated new mapping, especially where this activity is to cover a remote region likely to undergo massive development.

JURISDICTION AND THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN QUEBEC
Report presented by Canada*

Résumé

Dans la province du Québec, plusieurs autorités s'occupent à des degrés divers de l'approbation des noms géographiques. En 1975, la Commission géographique du Québec a nommé un comité ayant pour tâche d'examiner les problèmes de compétence posés par cette dissémination des responsabilités et de faire des recommandations en vue de normaliser l'administration de la toponymie au Québec. Le Comité a proposé que l'autorité unique de la Commission en matière de contrôle de l'attribution des noms géographiques au Québec soit confirmée dès que possible. Dans certains cas, ce contrôle serait absolu et, dans d'autres, prédominant.

Resumen

Son varias las autoridades en la provincia de Quebec que se ocupan en diversa medida de patrocinar los nombres geográficos. En 1975 la Comisión Geográfica de Quebec (Quebec Geographical Commission) nombró un comité para que investigara los problemas jurisdiccionales debidos a la dispersión de autoridad y para indicar cómo podrían normalizarse en Quebec las tareas administrativas relacionadas con la toponimia. El Comité propuso que se confirmara la autoridad exclusiva de la Comisión sobre el control de los nombres geográficos en Québec tan pronto como fuera posible. En algunas situaciones el control sería absoluto, en otras predominante.

*

* *

The problems raised by the implementation of acts and regulations governing toponymic standardization have only recently become the concern of researchers. Although there has been much pragmatic research (surveys or inventories) and also much scientific research in toponymy, up until the past few years the field had almost never been approached from a legal perspective, despite the fact that this is an important facet of standardization.

Yet the jurisdictional problems arising from the standardization of geographical names become all the more significant, at both the national and international levels, in the preparation of directories and atlases and in the writing of treaties, statutes and regulations, publicity material and addresses. The absence of a proper allocation of jurisdictions in this area leads to a form of anarchy that is hardly justifiable.

Confronted with the innumerable problems raised by this situation, the Quebec Geographical Commission decided in February 1975 to set up an *ad hoc* committee to determine the primary causes of this disorder and to present the Commission with different proposals for improving the administration of Quebec's toponymy with a view to standardization.

Chaotic state of choronymy in Quebec

About a year before the *ad hoc* committee launched its studies on choronymic jurisdictions, two jurists, M. Dominique Alhéritère and M. Jean-Paul Lacasse, showed in a study on current legal problems in Quebec's geographical nomenclature[1] that a large number of organizations performed some choronymic activity (as a principal activity or as a subsidiary control or creating activity), that authority in matters of choronymy varied considerably (and even frequently conflicted) from one organization to another and that there were a large number of statutes dealing with choronymy.

Multiplicity of sources of nomenclature

By virtue of powers delegated to them or else through established custom, several organizations or individuals exert considerable influence in their respective domains on Quebec's geographical nomenclature.

This is true, for example, of the Quebec Department of Transport, the federal Ministry of Transport, the Canadian Transport Commission and the Quebec Autoroutes Board with respect to railways, airports, canals, highways and freeways. It is also true of the federal Department of Consumer and Corporate Affairs and its Quebec counterpart, the Department of Financial Institutions, Companies and Co-operatives, with respect to company names with a geographical component. It applies to the federal Post Office Department with respect to the establishment of post offices and to the Department of Municipal Affairs with respect to the choice of names for municipalities; it can also be said of the municipalities themselves with respect to the naming of streets and of the Department of Tourism with respect to the naming of parks, sanctuaries and so on.

And of course there is virtually no limit to the number of private organizations and individuals—ranging from prospectors to real-estate promoters to open-air sports enthusiasts—who may affect our toponymy in one way or another.

Multiplicity of legal texts

Although Quebec has but a single statute dealing specifically with toponymy (the Geographical Commission Act), there are numerous other legal provisions referring to geographical names in statutes enforced by other departments.

---

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Mr. Bonnelly, geographer with the secretariat of the Quebec Geographical Commission, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.15. The French version of this paper appears in a special issue of the bulletin entitled *CANOMA* (vol. 3, No. 1), distributed at the Conference.

[1] *Les Juridictions choronymiques au Québec* (Quebec, GECET, Laval University, 1974), typescript.

Furthermore, in a number of instances orders-in-council, regulations and resolutions have been specifically adopted to determine certain geographical names.

Finally, there are a very large number of legislative texts that establish legal usage in respect of place names, though not expressly determining them.

In the light of these factors, the Committee therefore concluded that despite the act establishing the Commission, the latter was operating within a veritable labyrinth of acts, regulations and decisional powers that seriously limited its authority and as a result hampered the standardization of geographical names in Quebec.

Consequences

It is clearly apparent that the execution of the various statutory provisions referring to toponymy and the numerous decisions made by various departments on Quebec toponymy often make the Geographical Commission Act inoperative.

Far from tending towards a degree of uniformity and standardization, as would be desirable, the toponymy currently established by the public administration is so inaccurate and incoherent as to be virtually unacceptable.

Because of this ignorance and failure to observe the elementary rules of choosing and writing geographical names, we have been witnessing the establishment of parallel toponyms. These spread confusion among users, entail considerable losses of money, markedly reduce administrative financial performance and in certain cases threaten public safety.

Solutions

In view of the multiple drawbacks caused by excessive laxness in the defining of toponymy jurisdictions, the Committee was instructed to propose to the Geographical Commission various solutions for remedying the situation and devising a more satisfactory method of dealing with geographical names with a view to a greater degree of standardization.

There were three primary objectives: making Quebec's position in its negotiations with the other levels of government more coherent, making government publications reliable for reference purposes and ensuring that Quebec's toponyms reflected the province's cultural and territorial policy. The proposed solutions tended, on the whole, towards consolidation of the Commission's powers.

The Committee considered it requisite that the authority of a central agency, responsible for controlling Quebec's geographical nomenclature, be confirmed as soon as possible. This control, which involves the stages or operations of collecting, naming, processing, extending official recognition to and publicizing official names, should be more or less absolute depending on the toponymic level. Hence the control powers of the Geographical Commission should be exclusive with respect to the names of natural geographical features, but also preponderant with respect to other designated space, as, for example, all types of administrative divisions or public thoroughfares outside municipal or metropolitan settings. In addition, the Commission should be free to serve municipal organizations in an advisory capacity and could even act as an umpire in disputes concerning the choice and handling of geographical names for which they are responsible (particularly the names of streets).

The means

To achieve the necessary objective of confirming a sole authority in the matter, which constitutes a prerequisite to any effective reform of toponymy management in Quebec, the Committee has formulated 19 recommendations, several of which are designed to overcome the administrative constraints that may result from such action.

These recommendations assume that it will be possible—and necessary—to proceed with legislative amendments to consolidate the powers of the Geographical Commission. To this end, specifying the powers of the Commission in the Act is obviously necessary.

A newer and more effective Geographical Commission or Toponymy Commission Act would serve to recognize and substantiate the Commission's authority, which is scattered now because of the multiplicity of texts and toponymic practices. It would also correct our present situation, which is characterized by a multitude of incorrect, extraneous and parallel geographical names dotted throughout the province—the legacy of naming by too many organizations.

Conclusion

The present Government's positive attitude to greater administrative efficiency and the keen interest that it has shown in revision of the Official Language Act give us reason to believe that a solution will be proposed to remedy, once and for all, the problem of jurisdictions for geographical names. A project to standardize toponymy more extensively should become reality in the very near future.

LA NORMALISATION DES NOMS GÉOGRAPHIQUES: RÊVE ET RÉALITÉ
Rapport présenté par le Canada*

Summary

Each country should adopt a single form for each place-name. In each language, identical names should be treated and written in the same way according to the same rules. Only one form of each name should be used, or an equivalent obtained by means of an internationally standardized transliteration. Foreign names should be retained in their original form as far as possible, depending on the context. The use of an international transcription, rather than English, French or German systems, should be encouraged. Multilingual countries should use parallel, not superposed, bilingualism. Specialists in geographical names should be encouraged to think that the standardization of geographical names is the most important problem they have to solve.

Resumen

En todos los países, cada nombre de lugar debería tener una sola forma. En cada idioma, los nombres similares deberían tratarse y escribirse de igual manera, de acuerdo con las mismas reglas. Para cada nombre debería usarse una sola forma o un equivalente transalfabético internacionalmente normalizado. Los nombres extranjeros deberían usarse en sus formas originales, en la medida en que fuera posible y de acuerdo con el contexto. Debería alentarse el empleo de modos internacionales de transliteración en lugar de los sistemas inglés, francés o alemán. Los Estados multilingües deben buscar soluciones bilingües paralelas en lugar de soluciones bilingües superpuestas. Se exhorta a los especialistas en nombres geográficos a considerar que la normalización de los nombres geográficos es el problema más importante que tienen que resolver.

*

* *

Deux conférences internationales réalisées sous l'égide des Nations Unies, groupant des centaines de délégués et des dizaines de pays, des milliers de pages de documents techniques ou politiques, des dizaines de rencontres de groupes d'experts, voilà qui illustre, matériellement parlant, la mesure d'une préoccupation maintenant internationale qui touche au premier chef l'onomastique: la normalisation internationale des noms géographiques. C'est, sans contredit, l'aspect de l'onomastique qui a mobilisé le plus d'énergies depuis que cette science existe. Pourquoi?

D'abord, parce que les inconvénients de la situation actuelle, caractérisée par une grande anarchie dans l'usage des noms de lieux, coûtent cher aux différents organismes qui les emploient tels que l'UPU, l'OACI, l'UNESCO, la FAO et les organismes internationaux de documentation. Mais il y a aussi une seconde raison qui explique l'importance de cette préoccupation et qui fait l'objet de cette communication: c'est l'écart important qui existe entre, d'une part, les objectifs ultimes de cette normalisation internationale (le rêve) et, d'autre part, ce qu'il sera en fait possible de réaliser en ce sens, compte tenu des difficultés objectives et surtout subjectives qui empêchent ou freinent cette normalisation (la réalité).

L'objectif principal de la normalisation des noms géographiques est essentiellement onomastique, en ce sens que ce que l'on recherche, c'est l'univocité du nom géographique, la garantie de son caractère de "nom propre", c'est-à-dire la manière univoque de désigner un objet, un lieu unique. Cette recherche de l'univocité du nom géographique a trois objectifs principaux:

a) *Normalisation nationale*: chaque nom de lieu, à l'intérieur d'un pays, doit n'avoir qu'une seule forme;

b) *Normalisation régionale*: les noms de même type, dans les différents pays de même langue, devraient avoir une forme similaire;

c) *Normalisation internationale*: tout nom de lieu devrait avoir, à l'échelle internationale, une forme unique ou des formes inter-alphabétiques équivalentes reconnues.

Cette communication vise à expliquer chacun de ces trois objectifs et à montrer dans quelle mesure seulement ils peuvent être atteints. Autrement dit, nous cherchons à évaluer quelle distance sépare le rêve de la réalité, en matière de normalisation des noms géographiques.

NORMALISATION NATIONALE

La normalisation nationale s'attaque à des questions bien variées telles que le principe de choix des noms, les règles d'écriture et l'uniformisation dans l'usage des termes génériques. Mais l'objectif fondamental reste la préoccupation de bannir les noms parallèles. Il est, en effet, extrêmement fréquent que deux ou plusieurs noms, quelquefois ressemblants mais souvent complètement différents, désignent un même lieu. Il faut distinguer deux types de parallélisme: officiel/populaire et officiel/officiel.

C'est ce dernier type que vise d'abord la normalisation nationale. Les conférences des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques ont voulu d'abord convaincre les autorités toponymiques nationales de ne pas officialiser les noms géographiques dans plus d'une forme en vue de faciliter la normalisation internationale qui, à ce niveau, ne peut naturellement admettre qu'une seule forme; c'est la forme officialisée au niveau national qui doit devenir, telle quelle ou par adaptation transalphabétique, la forme normalisée au niveau international.

Bien sûr, le principe de l'unicité de forme au niveau national officiel rencontre des difficultés dont les principales tiennent au caractère bilingue ou multilingue de

* Le texte original de ce rapport, préparé par Henri Dorion, professeur de géographie à l'Université Laval, Québec, Canada, a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.31.

nombreux Etats. Le bilinguisme parallèle constitue à cet égard une solution théorique idéale: chaque région, sous-région, secteur ou même localité voit ses noms géographiques officialisés dans la langue propre à cette région ou secteur. Mais on sait bien que la situation n'est jamais simple: les régions multilingues sont légion; il n'est pas toujours facile d'établir l'importance relative des langues utilisées; la langue qui a un statut officiel dans un lieu donné ne correspond pas toujours, loin de là, à la langue effectivement parlée; les noms de lieux ont souvent été consacrés et sont utilisés dans une forme étrangère à la langue parlée dans la région; bref, nombreux sont les facteurs qui viennent minimiser l'application et même l'applicabilité du principe énoncé. Il reste que celui-ci (l'unicité de forme du nom officiel) doit constituer un objectif vers lequel toutes les autorités toponymiques doivent tendre, sous peine d'engendrer et perpétuer un babélisme toponymique néfaste à plusieurs points de vue. Le problème est de savoir où faire passer la frontière des formes doubles ou multiples tolérables; il faut sans doute accepter que Bienne (*Biel*), ville bilingue située à cheval sur la frontière linguistique entre la Suisse romande et la Suisse alémanique, conserve ses deux formes; par ailleurs, ce serait un grand pas vers la normalisation internationale si tous les francophones parlaient d'*Antwerpen* et tous les néerlandophones de *Mons* et non, respectivement, d'Anvers et de *Bergen* qui sont en réalité des "exonymes intérieurs", non justifiés par la langue de la population locale. Sur le plan linguistique, il y a autant de situations différentes qu'il y a de pays, et partant, autant de politiques choronymiques qu'il y a de politiques linguistiques.

Si, au niveau officiel, l'objectif de l'unicité rencontre le problème du multilinguisme, il est confronté, au niveau de la choronymie populaire, avec la pluralité et le dynamisme des usages. Cette pluralité prend des formes et a des origines multiples, de sorte que fort difficiles à établir sont les règles de choix entre les divers noms qui désignent un même lieu. En effet, deux principes souvent contradictoires se posent en objectifs: d'une part le respect de l'usage par l autorité officielle, d'autre part l'officialisation de noms univoques et stables. En face de ce dilemme, les autorités toponymiques, appuyées ou inspirées par les conférences des Nations Unies, n'ont pu faire mieux qu'édicter un certain nombre de règles qui, bien que partielles et générales, contribuent néanmoins à orienter quelque peu le choix des noms; il s'agit notamment d'éviter les changements fréquents, les noms de personnes vivantes, les noms difficiles et les homonymes. A côté de principes généraux comme ceux-là il faut aussi invoquer le concept de norme auquel se réfèrent les autorités soucieuses d'officialiser une choronymie correcte. On aborde cependant ici une question fort délicate et souvent controversée. Qui, de l'usager ou du grammairien, doit avoir raison lorsqu'il s'agit de noms propres? Le professeur Schüle de Neuchâtel disait: "En onomastique, un usage fautif, ça n'existe pas". C'est souligner toute la difficulté du problème, imprégné de subjectivisme et souvent d'arbitraire.

Un lieu, un nom, une forme: voilà un objectif lointain, un rêve qui, à force de croire en sa possibilité, peut devenir partiellement réalité. Mais il est évident que l'unicité de forme pour les noms géographiques doit préoccuper les organismes nationaux avant que les instances internationales puissent s'en charger.

Normalisation régionale

Un deuxième palier de normalisation est celui qui se situe au niveau supranational des aires linguistiques, niveau auquel des solutions, pour chacune de celles-ci, peuvent être adaptées par les autorités toponymiques des pays concernés. La variété des langues et des comportements toponymiques propres à chacune des aires linguistiques qui compliquent la carte du monde constitue un obstacle de taille dans le processus de normalisation. Mais, un grand pas serait fait déjà si les Etats ayant entre eux une ou des langues communes, s'entendaient sur des normes et principes de traitement des noms géographiques de l'aire linguistique à laquelle ils appartiennent (ce qui ne comprend pas les règles d'adaptation des noms d'une langue à l'autre, objet de notre troisième point). Cette action, au niveau régional, c'est-à-dire à celui des grandes aires linguistiques, a été reconnue comme une étape intermédiaire nécessaire par les Conférences des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques tenues à Genève en 1967 et à Londres en 1972.

Mais la mise au point et surtout l'application de règles uniformes d'écriture et de traitement, en général, des noms géographiques à un niveau supranational posent des problèmes délicats. Les régionalismes, existant déjà au niveau intranational, varient naturellement en fonction directe de l'étendue de l'aire linguistique considérée. Même en appliquant des politiques qui accordent une large place aux consécrations de l'usage local, il se pose le problème de la coordination, entre les Etats concernés, des règles de normalisation qu'ils ont établies: le choix et l'usage des termes génériques pour les appellatifs, l'usage des particules de liaison ou de l'ordre des éléments dans les choronymes composés, les règles concernant les majuscules ou les traits d'union, l'emploi de l'article ou autres désignatifs; les procédures de normalisation concernant les lettres ou autres éléments superfétatoires, les coupures et "mécoupures", règles d'ordonnancement alphabétique, voilà autant de matières à normalisation pour lesquelles des solutions différentes de pays à pays ont été apportées. Uniformiser ces règles, usages et politiques au niveau des groupes de pays ne constitue pas une mince tâche. Ce travail est commencé et même assez avancé pour le groupe des pays germanophones; il est moins avancé pour les pays anglophones (où le consensus existait par ailleurs déjà et assez malencontreusement) et moins encore pour les pays hispanophones et francophones.

Il faut ajouter que le traitement des noms géographiques est quelquefois fondamentalement différent d'un pays à un autre d'une même aire linguistique, lorsque le passage d'un alphabet à un autre est en cause. C'est le cas des pays arabes dont quelques-uns, en Afrique du Nord, ont adopté un système de translit-

tération inspiré de la phonologie française alors que ceux qui s'étendent à l'est, de la Jamahiriya arabe libyenne jusqu 'aux confins du golfe persique, ont hérité du mode de romanisation légué par l'influence anglo-saxonne. On devine que, lorsqu'une même langue est écrite, dans deux pays voisins, en deux alphabets différents, l'aboutissement dans un troisième système alphabétique n'est pas similaire, loin de là : c'est le cas des quelque 10 millions d'Azerbaïdjanais dont la moitié, en Union soviétique, écrivent leur langue en caractères cyrilliques, et l'autre moitié, en Iran, en caractères arabes: les translittérations parallèles vers l'alphabet latin sont loin de concorder.

Ce genre de situation complexe n'est pas rare. Il faut ajouter qu'en matière de normalisation une autre dimension au problème réside dans les divergences d'optique des spécialistes impliqués: le purisme de certains linguistes s'oppose quelquefois au pragmatisme des cartographes et des administrateurs; chez chacun, on peut aussi rencontrer des relents de chauvinisme et même d'impérialisme culturel. Ce sont là des obstacles subjectifs à vaincre pour atteindre l'objectif fixé.

En effet, établir des règles d'écriture applicables à l'onomastique officielle de tous les pays de même langue constitue un objectif souhaitable; il est sans doute plus réalisable sur le plan grammatical que sur le plan lexical. En effet, les normes lexicales sont différentes en terminologie géographique et en terminologie onomastique; et celles-là ne peuvent pas toujours régir celles-ci. En effet, l'objectif premier du nom propre n'est pas de situer le lieu nommé par rapport à des catégories (dimensionnelles, formelles, fonctionnelles . . .) comme c'est le cas en terminologie géographique, mais de l'identifier en le situant dans l'espace, de le localiser. Au chapitre, donc, des règles d'écriture, entre les objectifs théoriques (le rêve) et la réalité, il y a le poids très lourd de l'usage. La question est: doit-on le vaincre, lui obéir, ou composer avec lui? C'est cette dernière attitude qui nous semble la bonne, surtout si l'on considère les régionalismes notamment d'ordre lexical, non pas comme des déviations à un ordre théorique et factice, mais comme des contributions précieuses à la richesse du langage géographique et onomastique.

Normalisation internationale

Le troisième palier de normalisation des noms géographiques est le niveau international. L'objectif ultime peut s'exprimer ainsi: tout nom de lieu devrait avoir, dans l'usage international, une forme unique ou des formes interalphabétiques équivalentes reconnues. La règle impérative mais difficilement applicable, du moins totalement, qui permettrait d'atteindre cet objectif se résume à ceci: bannir les exonymes c'est-à-dire les noms adaptés vers chacune des langues d'usage, appelés improprement "noms conventionnels".

L'adaptation des noms géographiques étrangers rencontre deux types de problèmes bien différents selon que le passage se fait entre deux langues de même alphabet ou que l'adaptation est "transalphabétique".

Adaptation entre deux langues de même alphabet

Un nom de lieu étranger mais de même alphabet doit être utilisé dans sa forme originale (locale), y compris accents et diacritiques (*Warszawa* et non Varsovie, *Warsaw* ou *Warschau*; *Łódź* et non Lodz). Cette règle a été unanimement acceptée par les pays participant aux conférences des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques. Mais, en plus de heurter des habitudes depuis longtemps acquises, son application, même graduelle, pose de difficiles problèmes. Mentionnons-en quelques-uns.

La règle doit-elle s'appliquer de la même manière à tous les types de noms géographiques? On semble admettre que la règle, absolue pour les noms de localités (avec une tolérance – temporaire on l'espère – pour les grandes villes mondialement connues, surtout les capitales), l'est moins pour les noms d'accidents géographiques majeurs, alors qu'on admet que les noms de pays soient adaptés ou traduits.

La question de traduire ou non les termes génériques des noms d'accidents géographiques n'est pas facile à résoudre. Devrait-on utiliser, en français, *Góry Swiętokrzyskie*, Monts *Świętokrzyskie* ou Monts Sainte-Croix; la forme polonaise originale, la première, est celle qui devrait apparaître dans tous les atlas, mais qui alors saura qu'il s'agit de montagnes? La dernière forme en tout cas est à proscrire (ne voit-on pas d'un mauvais œil que le Saint-Laurent soit rendu, dans des atlas polonais, par *rzeka Świętego Wawrzyńca*?). La forme intermédiaire constituerait un moindre mal.

Dans plusieurs langues, la forme des choronymes varie selon la fonction du nom dans la phrase (les "cas"); ces altérations, qui affectent surtout les finales, ont une fonction sémantique et sont donc nécessaires (en hongrois, par exemple, Montreal felé, *Montrealböl*, *Montrealba* sont les seuls moyens d'exprimer des énoncés différents: vers Montréal, de Montréal, à Montréal). Les variations grammaticales en entraînent quelquefois d'autres (par assimilation vocalique ou consonantique, par exemple) et viennent singulièrement compliquer l'application de la règle, au premier abord simple, du respect de la forme originelle des noms de même alphabet.

Plusieurs autres problèmes se posent, comme le coût des chaînes de caractères d'ordinateur qu'exige l'emploi des signes diacritiques; l'ordonnancement alphabétique (à cause du fait que certains graphèmes sont, dans certaines langues, digraphes – *ch*, en espagnol, vient après *cu* – ou à cause des diacritiques: en suédois *ö* est la dernière lettre de l'alphabet); le choix pour l'usage international des noms doublés à l'échelon national par les politiques linguistiques internes tels que Bienne/*Biel* en Suisse.

Ces problèmes sont difficiles mais offrent l'avantage de pouvoir être traités objectivement. Tel n'est pas le cas du problème, d'un ordre tout différent, que posent les habitudes acquises depuis longtemps en matière d'adaptation des noms géographiques étrangers. Chauvinisme, courte vue, esprit de clocher, anti-internationalisme: ces qualificatifs sont à peine assez forts

pour décrire cette attitude qui caractérise pourtant même des esprits par ailleurs éclairés et qui s'obstinent à refuser d'employer les noms géographiques dans leur forme originale: écrire *Wien*, *London*, *Bucuresti* ou *Milano* au lieu de Vienne, Londres, Bucarest et Milan relève du snobisme ou de l'affectation sophistiquée. Il n'y a pas lieu de plaider ici la cause de l'internationalisme nécessaire devant un auditoire convaincu. Mais je me permets de rappeler l'importance de l'obstacle que représente l'obstination d'une gamme fort large d'éléments réactionnaires, depuis les compagnies aériennes qui diffusent leurs horaires multilingues avec des noms de villes francisés ou anglicisés jusqu'aux linguistes puristes qui clament du haut de leur tour d'ivoire l'assimilation linguistique des noms de lieux. Cette bataille est loin d'être gagnée.

A moyen terme la solution réside dans la diminution progressive et sélective des exonymes. La parution périodique des exonymes acceptés et, d'édition en édition, la diminution régulière des noms "adaptés" font partie d'un programme que les Etats-Unis d'Amérique et l'Union soviétique ont déjà commencé et qui devrait être imité par d'autres pays, surtout ceux qui utilisent l'une des grandes langues internationales. Une diminution sélective des exonymes fera porter l'action entreprise d'abord sur les noms de villes et autres agglomérations, puis sur les noms de divisions administratives et d'accidents topographiques (en commençant par ceux de moindre étendue et à l'exclusion de ceux qui sont en position transfrontalière et qui ont donc des noms "locaux" dans plusieurs langues), enfin sur les noms de régions géographiques. Les noms d'Etats demeureront sans doute toujours en situation exonymique.

Adaptation transalphabétique

Le passage d'un alphabet à un autre constitue, en choronymie, un problème d'adaptation bien spécifique, plus facile à cerner sinon à résoudre. Des spécialistes, individus et organismes, ont recommandé aux conférences des Nations Unies des systèmes de translittération, vers l'écriture latine, d'un bon nombre d'alphabets, systèmes maintenant utilisés par plusieurs organismes internationaux.

A cette étape-ci, il faut distinguer deux cas. Certains pays ont adopté leur propre système de transcription vers l'alphabet latin; c'est le cas de la Chine qui utilise maintenant le système PiN-YiN; comme les Chinois, tout le monde devrait désormais écrire *Beijing* et non Pékin, *Peking* ou *Peiping*, qui sont des exonymes. Certains autres pays n'ont pas encore adopté de système: des groupes d'experts des Nations Unies y travaillent, en mettant au point des systèmes de translittération lorsque c'est possible ou en élaborant des systèmes de transcription phonétique pour les langues à écriture non alphabétique (quasi alphabétique, syllabique ou idéographique).

Ici encore, le principal obstacle à la normalisation internationale, que l'on soit à l'intérieur d'un même système alphabétique ou au contraire que l'on doive passer d'un alphabet à un autre, est d'ordre subjectif: c'est le poids des habitudes exonymiques acquises. Lorsque seront vaincus le chauvinisme, l'impérialisme culturel et les habitudes que ces attitudes engendrent, l'application des principes et recommandations adoptés par les conférences des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques sera bien plus facile.

Conclusion

La normalisation des noms géographiques, tant au niveau national qu'international, est un objectif vers lequel doivent tendre les organismes. Il est réaliste d'accepter que cet objectif ne soit jamais atteint. Certains obstacles objectifs (différences grammaticales, différences phonétiques et phonologiques, consécrations légales d'usages différents . . .) ne peuvent être vaincus. Ce qu'il faut, c'est d'abord attaquer les obstacles subjectifs (chauvinisme, impérialisme, vis-à-vis des pays étrangers comme vis-à-vis des minorités), puis convertir l'opinion par divers moyens, en faveur de l'internationalisme et du respect des noms locaux. En ce sens, quelques recommandations pratiques peuvent être formulées.

1. Il faut convaincre les universitaires et tous ceux qui travaillent à la diffusion des connaissances et de l'information d'utiliser dans les textes et sur les cartes les noms de lieux étrangers dans leur forme originelle, particulièrement les noms de villes et de faire de même dans les communications orales, dans la mesure du possible et selon le contexte.
2. Il faut faire pression auprès des compagnies de transport, surtout aérien, pour que les noms de villes dans leur forme originale soient utilisés dans les horaires.
3. Il serait souhaitable, au premier cycle des études universitaires et même au niveau pré-universitaire, qu'un enseignement soit dispensé aux étudiants en matière de multiplicité linguistique dans le monde, afin de les familiariser avec les noms géographiques de différents pays et de différentes langues.
4. Il faut souhaiter que l'on généralise l'enseignement de l'alphabet phonétique international dans les écoles.
5. Il est souhaitable également que les atlas géographiques adoptent de plus en plus les modes de translittération internationale plutôt que les systèmes anglais, français ou allemand.
6. Il faudrait que les recommandations des conférences des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques soient beaucoup plus largement diffusées et connues.
7. Les politiques linguistiques des Etats multilingues devraient rechercher davantage des solutions de bilinguisme parallèle plutôt que de bilinguisme superpose.
8. Enfin, il serait souhaitable qu'un plus grand nombre d'onomasticiens s'intéressent à la normalisation des noms géographiques, fassent des analyses spécifiques des problèmes qu'elle pose, les discutent dans les congrès d'onomastique et publient leurs travaux sur cette question qui, du point de vue pratique, est, sans aucun doute, la plus importante qui préoccupe aujourd'hui la science onomastique.

En appliquant ces principes, en entreprenant cette action, il est possible qu'en matière de normalisation des noms géographiques la marge entre le rêve et la réalité puisse se réduire.

NATIONAL STANDARDIZATION
Report presented by Suriname*

Résumé

La République du Suriname se trouve sur la côte nord-est du continent sud-américain et est limitrophe de la Guyane française, de la Guyane et du Brésil.

La population est composée de descendants de plusieurs pays et d'Indiens qui sont les habitants d'origine. Tous ces pays ont marqué de leur empreinte l'étymologie des noms géographiques au Suriname.

Tandis que la zone côtière est marquée par l'influence des colonisateurs européens (espagnols, anglais, français et néerlandais), on trouve dans l'intérieur du pays des toponymes indigènes néerlandisés.

La situation polyglotte — d'où le danger potentiel d'interprétations erronées de l'origine et de la signification de noms géographiques — les changements survenus dans l'orthographe du lingua franca, le sranan, ont rendu nécessaire la normalisation des noms géographiques. De ce fait une Commission cartographique surinamaise a été créée par le gouvernement le 25 mai 1970, sous la présidence du Chef du Bureau central de photogrammétrie.

Parmi les activités de cette Commission on peut citer les suivantes:

a) Inventarisation des noms existants;

b) Promotion d'une émission de timbres-poste en relation avec 300 ans de cartographie au Suriname;

c) Participation comme observateur à la Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques tenue à Londres en 1972 et aux deux conférences régionales tenues au Costa Rica en 1974 et au Honduras en 1976;

d) Participation à la composition d'une œuvre cartographique (histoire de la cartographie surinamaise en trois langues);

e) Organisation du premier séminaire au sujet de la normalisation des noms géographiques au Suriname en 1974.

Une des résolutions de ce séminaire contenait une proposition au gouvernement de créer une autorité toponymique. Etant donné que ceci n'a pas encore été réalisé, un groupe d'experts sur la toponymie a été établi sous les auspices de la Commission officielle de cartographie surinamaise et travaille à la normalisation des noms géographiques désirée.

Le premier projet du groupe d'experts a été consacré à la toponymie du Suriname occidental. En vue d'un projet de développement gigantesque (exploitation de bauxite y compris la construction d'une ligne de chemin de fer et des travaux hydro-électriques) dans cette région pratiquement inhabitée et munie de peu de noms, il était désirable de nommer les objets géographiques y entrant en considération.

Au sujet de l'orthographe les règles suivantes ont été appliquées:

a) Tous les noms, sauf les européens, s'écrivent selon l'orthographe sranan;

b) Selon cette orthographe:

i) Les signes graphiques ne se doublent jamais;

ii) Les lettres *c*, *j*, *q*, *v* et *z* ne s'emploient pas;

iii) Le son néerlandais *oe* est représenté par le latin *u*, tandis que les diphtongues *ai*, *oi*, *ei* s'écrivent comme *ay*, *oy* et *ey*.

c) Au sujet des termes génériques:

i) Les îles fluviales s'indiquent comme *tabiki* au lieu de *tabbetje*;

ii) Les rapides avec une hauteur de chute de moins de 10 m s'appellent *sula* ou *dan*;

iii) En orographie, *bergi* représente des hauteurs au-dessus de 500 m, *hey* des hauteurs entre 200 et 500 m et *tapu* des hauteurs au-dessous de 200 m;

iv) En hydrographie, il est envisagé d'omettre les termes "*Kreek*" (crique) et "rivier" (rivière) et d'ajouter un article au nom propre.

Au Suriname occidental, la méthode de travail en toponymie consiste à:

a) Inventorier les noms existants et les objets géographiques sans nom dans la région;

b) Déterminer le choix d'une liste de noms indiens traditionnels mais tombés en désuétude, d'une liste de noms historiques non écrits mais utilisés dans la région ainsi qu'une liste de noms d'objets géographiques disparus pendant les inondations.

Les noms ainsi obtenus ont été mis sur carte à l'échelle de 1 : 200 000 et une nomenclature a été établie.

Comme activité la plus récente du groupe d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques il faut mentionner le second séminaire local tenu en avril 1977 où les points principaux de l'ordre du jour étaient:

a) L'orthographe du nom Suriname dans les langues étrangères qui emploient l'alphabet roman;

b) La normalisation des noms géographiques dans l'orthographe sranan;

c) L'approbation de la liste des toponymes au Suriname occidental.

Le premier séminaire sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, organisé au Suriname en septembre 1974, a conduit à la formulation des principes de base pour l'établissement d'une autorité toponymique et pour un modèle de recherches qui a été essayé dans un projet sur le Tapanahony (Haut-Maroni).

Ce projet, d'une durée de plus de six semaines dans la région d'habitation de la tribu des Aucanes, a révélé quelques problèmes fondamentaux en dehors des données obtenues au sujet des toponymes:

a) Après avoir recueilli des informations historiques sur un certain nom, il faut se renseigner sur ce qui peut être encore à découvrir du passé verbalement traditionnel.

---

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.37.

L'urbanisation croissante menace de faire disparaître cette forme d'information.

b) Les différences d'orthographe entre le sranan et les langues créoles indigènes ont clairement démontré la nécessité d'une orthographe uniforme au profit de ces langues créoles si l'on veut éviter, dans une certaine mesure, la domination culturelle du sranan sur les langues indigènes. Sans une orthographe uniforme, il se pourrait que des exonymes anciens continuent d'exister et que de nouveaux exonymes se créent;

c) En donnant des instructions à l'enquêteur il faudra mettre l'accent sur les aspects linguistiques, géographiques, cartographiques, historiques et culturels de l'enquête.

Le prochain projet consistera en travaux de recherche dans la région de la tribu des Saramaccas dans le Haut-Suriname, qui a subi de grands changements dans le domaine des toponymes existants, par suite de la construction d'un lac artificiel.

A l'intérieur du pays, les familles sont groupées en différents établissements:

a) *Les Kondre*, établissements permanents composés de noirs;

b) *Les Kampoe*, établissements non permanents, dont l'activité principale est l'agriculture;

c) *Les villages indiens*, semi-permanents, qui sont abandonnés après la mort du chef du village.

Dans la zone côtière se trouvent les établissements non agricoles, notamment les villes minières et administratives.

Les villages agricoles se trouvent dans les anciennes plantations.

L'immigration au Suriname a conduit vers un système de colonisation selon un modèle d'établissements de descendance directe. Pour pouvoir étudier ce genre d'établissements, il est nécessaire d'avoir recours à d'autres techniques.

L'histoire coloniale du Suriname se trouve reflétée sur la carte du pays. Les noms les plus anciens sont d'origine indienne. Parmi ceux-ci on trouve beaucoup de noms de cours d'eau, comme Suri*name*, Coppe*name*, Cott*ica*.

On retrouve différentes influences européennes dans les noms géographiques et avant tout l'influence du Royaume-Uni et des Pays-Bas. Les noms européens peuvent être classés comme suit:

a) Noms de migration: ce sont des noms repris inchangés de la métropole. Exemple: Groningen.

b) Noms avec l'élément *nieuw* devant le nom européen. Exemple: Nieuw-Amsterdam.

c) Noms européens qui n'existent même pas en Europe, tels que Rust en Werk, Ma Retraite, Mon Trésor.

De plus, l'influence européenne se retrouve dans l'adaptation de noms indigènes aux systèmes phonétiques des langues européennes, surtout dans le cas des phonèmes néerlandais, par exemple la diphtongue du *i* dans les hydronymes Marowijne Marowini.

Les langues créoles, arrivées au Suriname avec les Africains, ont donné naissance au lingua franca du pays qui est la langue de base acceptée dans la normalisation des noms géographiques.

La différence des noms d'objets géographiques entre la côte et l'intérieur constitue un problème en ce qui concerne la normalisation des noms géographiques. Nous appelons ce phénomène: exonymes dans le pays propre. La Commission cartographique s'efforce de donner la priorité aux noms tels qu'ils sont employés par les habitants de la région même.

Resumen

La República de Suriname, ubicada en la costa nordeste de la América del Sur, limita con la República de Guyana, la Guayana Francesa y el Brasil.

La población está integrada de descendientes de inmigrantes de muchas naciones y de los indios aborígenes. En el litoral han dejado sus huellas los colonizadores europeos (españoles, británicos, franceses y neerlandeses mientras que en el interior encontramos topónimos indígenas neerlandizados.

Dada la situación multilingüística – que puede dar origen a interpretaciones erróneas en cuanto a la etimología y la semántica de los nombres geográficos – y los cambios que sufrió la ortografía de la lengua franca, *el Sranan*, resultó necesario normalizar los nombres geográficos.

El 25 de mayo de 1970 el Gobierno instaló la Comisión Cartográfica de Suriname (Surinaamse Kartografische Commissie) presidida por el Director del Instituto de Cartografía Aérea (Centraal Bureau voor Luchtkartering).

Algunos proyectos ejecutados por la Comisión:

a) Realización del inventario de nombres geográficos;

b) Promoción de la emisión de un sello para conmemorar el tricentenario de la cartografía en Suriname;

c) Asistencia como observador a la II Reunión de las Naciones Unidas sobre Normalización de Nombres Geográficos, Londres (1972), y a dos Reuniones Regionales sobre el mismo tema, Costa Rica (1974) y Honduras (1976);

d) Colaboración en la preparación de una publicación cartográfica (*Historia de la Cartografía en Suriname*, en tres idiomas);

e) Organización del I Seminario sobre Normalización de Nombres Geográficos en Suriname (1974).

En este Seminario se resolvió recomendar al Gobierno nombrar una Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos.

Entretanto se formó un Comité de Trabajo "Geografische Naamgeving" (Nominación Geográfica) – auspiciado por la Comisión Cartográfica oficial de Suriname – que está realizando actividades encaminadas a lograr la normalización de topónimos.

El primer proyecto que inició el Comité de Trabajo fue la preparación de una lista de topónimos de los accidentes geográficos en el oeste de Suriname. Con motivo de la iniciación de un importante proyecto de desarrollo (exploración de bauxita, construcción de ferrocarriles y

estaciones hidroeléctricas) era necesario designar las principales entidades situadas en esta región.

Se preparó la lista de topónimos a base de criterios tales como una forma escrita única y la normalización de términos genéricos.

En cuanto a la ortografía se fijaron los siguientes lineamientos:

Todos los nombres geográficos, con excepción de los europeos, se escriben conforme a la ortografía del sranan;

Según esta ortografía:

a) No hay geminación de signos alfabéticos;

b) No se usan las letras *c*, *j*, *q*, *v* y *z*;

c) El sonido *u* (representado por *oe* en neerlandés) se designa con la *u* latina y los diptongos *ai*, *oi*, y *ei* se escriben *ay*, *oy* y *ey*;

d) En cuanto a los términos genéricos:

i) Se usa "tabiki" en vez de "tabbetje" para designar los islotes fluviales;

ii) Los rápidos con una caída de menos de 10 metros se designan con el término "sula" o "dan";

iii) Se usa "bergi" para designar las elevaciones de más de 500 metros; "hey" para las situadas entre 200 y 500 metros, y "tapu" para las de menos de 200 metros;

iv) Se está estudiando la oportunidad de suprimir los términos "kreek" (ensenada) y "rivier" (río), y de añadir el artículo definido "de" al nombre propio.

La nominación en el oeste de Suriname se realizó a base de: inventario de los nombres usuales y de las entidades sin nombres propios; opción a base de: *a*) una lista de nombres indígenas tradicionales que ya no son de mayor uso; *b*) una lista de nombres tradicionales (escritos o no) usuales en aquella región; *c*) una lista de nombres de accidentes geográficos que han quedado inundados.

Una vez fijados los nombres fueron incluidos en un mapa dibujado a escala de 1: 200.000 y se preparó una lista de topónimos.

Hace poco se celebró el II Seminario Nacional (abril de 1977) – organizado por el Comité de Trabajo "Geografische Naamgeving" – cuyos temas principales fueron: la forma escrita del nombre Suriname en las lenguas extranjeras con alfabeto latino; la normalización de nombres geográficos conforme a la ortografía del sranan; aprobación de la lista de topónimos del oeste de Suriname.

Con base en el I Seminario sobre Normalización de Nombres Geográficos, que se organizó en Suriname (setiembre de 1974), se formularon los principios que han de servir como pautas para la instalación de una Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos y se elaboró un modelo de investigación que fue ensayado durante un proyecto piloto a orillas del Tapanahoni. Este proyecto que duró más de seis semanas y que se realizó en el territorio de los *aucaners* (una tribu de negros cimarrones) rindió datos acerca de los topónimos de aquella región y lo más importante, resaltó algunos problemas claves:

a) Al recoger datos acerca del origen de un nombre hay que fiarse de la tradición oral. Este recurso está a punto de desaparecer a causa de la creciente urbanización;

b) Las diferencias entre la ortografía del sranan y las lenguas criollas que se hablan en el interior demuestran la urgencia de una ortografía única para estas lenguas criollas a fin de evitar que las lenguas que se hablan en el interior lleguen a ser dominadas culturalmente por el sranan. La falta de una ortografía única podría favorecer la subsistencia de exónimos internos y originar nuevos exónimos internos.

c) Durante la instrucción de los exploradores habrá que hacer hincapié en los aspectos antropológicos, lingüísticos, geográficos, cartográficos e histórico-culturales de la investigación.

El próximo proyecto de investigación abarcará el territorio de la tribu de *saramaccaners*, en el curso superior del río Suriname, que ha sufrido importantes cambios, entre otros en el terreno de los topónimos, como consecuencia de la construcción de un lago artificial.

Los establecimientos en el interior de Suriname, integrados de grupos de familias emparentadas, son: el *kondre* – establecimiento permanente de los negros cimarrones; el *kampoe* – establecimiento no permanente que sirve como base provisional desde la cual los negros del interior labran la tierra; y el *pueblo indio* – establecimiento semipermanente que se disuelve con la muerte del jefe.

En el litoral encontramos los establecimientos centrales no agrarios tales como ciudades mineras y las residencias de las autoridades de los distritos. Alrededor de las plantaciones encontramos los núcleos agrarios (pueblos).

En Suriname la inmigración dio origen a un sistema de colonización basado en establecimientos del tipo de descendencia directa. Para poder estudiar este tipo de establecimientos se necesitan otras técnicas de investigación.

También en el mapa de Suriname se refleja la historia colonial. Entre los nombres más antiguos, de origen indio, figuran muchos nombres de ríos, tales como Suri*name* Coppe*name*, Cotti*ca*.

En los nombres geográficos se reconoce la influencia de los diferentes países europeos, sobre todo del Reino Unido y los Países Bajos. Estos nombres europeos pueden clasificarse en: nombres relacionados con la migración, a imitación de los de la metrópoli, por ejemplo Groningen; nombres que llevan el elemento Nieuw (Nuevo) antepuesto al nombre europeo: Nieuw Amsterdam; nombres europeos que no existen en Europa: Rust en Werk, Ma Retraite, Mon Trésor.

Se percibe además la influencia europea en la adaptación de los nombres indígenas a los sistemas fonéticos de los idiomas europeos, sobre todo a los sonidos neerlandeses. Por ejemplo la diptongación de la *i* en los hidrónimos: Marowijne < Marowini.

Con la llegada de los africanos a Suriname nacieron las lenguas criollas, de las que el sranan – la lengua franca nacional – está sirviendo de base para la normalización de los nombres geográficos.

El hecho de que existen diferencias entre el litoral y el interior en cuanto a la designación de las entidades geográficas dificulta la normalización. Usamos el término

exónimo interno para indicar este fenómeno. La Comisión Cartográfica viene dando prioridad a las designaciones usuales entre los habitantes de la región misma.

*

* *

The Republic of Suriname is situated on the north-east coast of the South American mainland between 54° and 58° west longitude and between 2° and 6° north latitude; it is located between Guyana, French Guyana and the Federative Republic of Brazil and is divided into nine districts.

There are about five large rivers, which rise at the divide with the sources of the Amazon river, flow virtually north-easterly, and discharge into the Atlantic Ocean. Along these rivers, there are, besides the many settlements (of various tribes of descendants of Negro slaves and Maroons and many Indian tribes), many extensive rapids (*sulas*) and river islands (*tabikis*). Of Suriname's total area of 163,800 square kilometres, only a coastal strip, over a latitude of about 25 kilometres is intensively populated or cultivated.

The rivers in the western part of the country are uninhabited. The Surinamese population is composed of descendants of many races, apart from the aboriginal inhabitants already mentioned. These various races have also left their mark on the toponymy on the map.

Whereas the influence of former European colonizers (Spanish, English, French and Dutch) is evident in the coastal area, the toponyms in the interior, with the exception of oronyms, are predominantly indigenous, although they are indicated on the map in their Dutch interpretation.

The difference in language between the inhabitants of the coast and the population of the interior is clearly reflected in the geographical names, while spelling changes in Dutch also reacted on the toponymy. Many factors—multilingualism, the etymological and semantic misinterpretations of geographical names, the nomadic way of life of some Indian tribes and developments in the spelling of Sranan (the *lingua franca* of Suriname)—necessitated standardization of the geographical names on the map.

A Suriname cartographic Committee was therefore installed by the Government on 25 May 1970. In co-operation with the district authorities, an inventory was made of names on maps at the scales of 1:40,000 for the northern part of the country and 1:100,000 for the remainder.

At the time the Central Bureau for Aerial Surveying, the official body in charge of the composition and publication of topographic maps, had at its disposal aerial photos, at the scale of 1:40,000, showing the whole country (with the exception of the south-eastern and south-western parts, which could not be photographed because of constant clouds). It also had at its disposal photomosaics at scales of 1:40,000 and 1:100,000. The cartographic material consisted of topographical maps at scales of 1:10,000 (the so-called agricultural area), 1:20,000 (forestry and river maps), 1:40,000, 1:100,000, 1:200,000, 1:500,000 (in both two and four sheets) and 1:1,000,000. All the maps are available in black-and-white; the 1:500,000 and 1:1,000,000 maps are also available in colour. A separate aeronautical map at 1:1,000,000 was also published.

By virtue of his office, the head of this Bureau became the chairman of the Suriname Cartographic Committee. Apart from making an inventory, this committee standardized the references in the 1:40,000 maps and promoted the issue of a stamp in honor of the tricentennial of cartography in Suriname, to commemorate the fact that in 1671 the first map of Suriname based on measurements was published by the Dutch land surveyor W. Mogge. The chairman of the Cartographic Committee was also added, as an observer, to the Dutch delegation to the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in 1972. He also attended two relevant regional conferences, in Costa Rica and Honduras respectively, in March 1974 and May 1976. In Costa Rica he also contacted the officials of the United States Board on Geographical Names.

This Board was composing an official standard names gazetteer for Suriname. However, Suriname received the proofs too late for the desired corrections to be made.

In view of its somewhat (as we see it) incorrect spelling of names, the changed views in the spelling of Sranan, an unacceptable conception of the borders and an incorrect spelling of the name "Suriname", we found it better not to distribute this gazetteer in Suriname, which had in the meantime become a republic on 25 November 1975.

Another activity in which the members of the Cartographic Committee participated was the composition of a book, *Links with the Past*, on the cartographic history of Suriname. The book was prepared in three languages, Dutch, English and Spanish, and was published by S. Emmerinck in Amsterdam. In September 1974 the first seminar on the standardization of geographical names was held in Suriname. One of the positive results of the seminar was that a number of resolutions was carried, one of which advocated the establishment of a National Names Authority. This authority has no official status as yet, but a working group on toponymy is at work on the standardization of names under the auspices of the official Suriname Cartographic Committee. One project completed in this manner is the toponymy of western Suriname.

As already said, this region is practically uninhabited, and in consequence place names are scarce there. With a view to a large-scale development project in that area (the exploitation of bauxite deposits with appropriate railway construction and water-power works), it had become desirable to give names to its geographical entities. We proceeded on the basis of the following criteria:

(*a*) The name should be efficient and euphonious, and should possess meaningful components;

(*b*) It should be related to local conditions and should have historical justification; and

(*c*) The names should follow uniform roles of spelling.

As regards the last criterion, the following procedure was adopted:

(*a*) Dutch, French and English toponyms are written according to the official spelling of the language used;

(*b*) The remaining names are written according to the existing spelling in Sranan; and

(*c*) The generic term in a Dutch geographical name is retained in the same language as the descriptive part of that name. In all other languages (Indian, Ndyuka, Saramaka, Sranan, Hindi or English) the generic term will always be indicated in Sranan.

For natural entities, the naming procedure was as follows:

(*a*) Inventory of the existing toponymy;

(*b*) Identification of nameless entities;

(*c*) Determining the importance of the entity, with the principal focus of attention here being on its value within the group;

(*d*) Selection of a name from a list of Amerindian names once traditional in the area but fallen into disuse in recent years (e.g."Anorasula" in place of "Frederik Wilhelm Waterfall");

(*e*) Selection of a name, in other cases, from a list of historical names current in the area, whether or not these have been recorded in writing (e.g. "Doublestephey");

(*f*) Alternatively, selection of a name from a list of existing names of geographical entities that have disappeared (through inundation);

(*g*) Measurement and specification of each geographical entity with respect to others; and

(*h*) Application of a new name that is as closely suited as possible to the special characteristics of the geographical entity involved.

For man-made entities, the naming process involved:

(*a*) Derivation and/or joining together of names of surrounding geographical entities; or

(*b*) Fabricating entirely new names that correspond as much as possible to the special characteristics, if any, of the work.

After the toponymy had been completed for western Suriname, a gazetteer was composed, on the basis of the 1:200,000 topographic maps, which included the following information:

(*a*) The geographical name;

(*b*) Description of the entity;

(*c*) Geographic position (latitude and longitude, accurate to half a minute);

(*d*) Extent of the entity (in hectares);

(*e*) Altitude; and

(*f*) Etymological or semantic explanation of the name, or a translation of the name into Dutch.

Finally, the most recent activity of the toponymy working group was a second seminar on national standardization of geographical names. This seminar was attended by delegates of all the ministries directly or indirectly concerned with toponymy.

The most important items on the agenda were:

(*a*) The correct spelling of the name "Suriname" in foreign languages using the Roman alphabet;

(*b*) The standardization of geographical names in Sranan. (In the course of standardization a number of additional and essential changes in spelling were made.); and

(*c*) The approval of the toponymy proposed for western Suriname.

The remainder of this paper sets forth in somewhat greater detail Suriname's recent experience with toponym standardization, including field collection of names and the particular problems of multilingualism that can be traced back to their origins in the country's colonial past.

Geographical background of toponymy standardization in Suriname

Standardization of names of elevations

In the standardization of oronyms we proceeded from a definition of geographical entities based on their altitudes above mean sea level (MSL). Here it is not of primary importance to first have a picture of the country and divide it in regard to its surroundings.

In subsequent pilot projects we will try to find out to what extent the classification of entities can be applied to the newly selected division in respect of their immediate surroundings without far-reaching consequences.

The following divisions are used:

(*a*) Lowlands (0–200 m above MSL);

(*b*) Uplands (200–500 m above MSL);

(*c*) Mountainous areas (500–1500 m above MSL); and

(*d*) High mountains (altitudes greater than 1500 m; not in evidence in Suriname).

On the basis of this division, the following terms have been chosen for standard use in Suriname:

(*a*) The generic term *bergi* will be used exclusively for elevations greater than 500 m above MSL;

(*b*) The generic term *hey* will be used for elevations between 200 and 500 m above MSL; and

(*c*) The generic term *tapu* will be used for elevations between zero and 200 m above MSL; these must be named, in view of their significance in the country.

In consequence of this choice, such terms as *Mongo Kununu* and *Penti*, which were also used to denote hills and other elevations, will no longer be used.

The Surinamese landscape has the aspect of a peneplain that has been eroded. Erosion is especially intense where there is a climatic transition from a humid to a semi-arid climate and where there is a corresponding change in vegetation. Relief is further intensified by elevation (as at Wilhelminaen Bakhuisgebergte). The occurrence of weathering-resistant rocks, such as the dolomites in the Van Asch van Wijkgebergte, completes the picture of Suriname's topography.

The summit level of the Wilhelminagebergte is at about 1,000 to 1,100 m above MSL. The highest elevation in Suriname (1,280 m) occurs at Julianatop. Elevations are

found in south-east Suriname (Kassikassima, Rooseveltpiek etc.), at about 700 m above MSL. Summits of the Early Tertiary structures form the third level at about 500–700 m above MSL (Bakhuisgebergte, Nassaugebergte, Lelygebergte and Brouwnsberg). The fourth summit level is formed by the Late Tertiary level I, which is traceable in only a few places with heights of about 250 m above MSL (e.g. the Bongrowiri plateau of Brouwnsberg). The remaining elevations, at between 100 and 250 m above MSL, are in the Late Tertiary level II. The southern part of the summit level is slightly higher than the northern because of the peneplain.

Thus the generic term *bergi* is applied to elevations from the summit levels I, II and III. The generic term *hey* corresponds to the Late Tertiary level I. The generic term *tapu* corresponds to the Late Tertiary level II, where the waving pattern was mainly caused by downward erosion.

Surface waters

Suriname has particular problems of nomenclature with regard to the drainage system of surface waters because of the ruggedness of the normal channels of many waterways. The generic terms "river" and "creek" are both used to denote waterways. For the time being it has not proved possible to make these terms operative. But it is possible to restrict the term "creek" to the following:

(*a*) Waterways originating through tide streams, with sedimentation occurring at high tide;

(*b*) Tributary rivers;

(*c*) Waterways with little discharge; and/or

(*d*) Waterways that flow under a closed vegetation cover, where the tropical climax vegetation is such that the tops of the plants from both banks meet overhead.

Since these definitions are not yet operative, generic terms for such waterways will be avoided as much as possible, with only the proper name with article being used.

Waterfalls and rapids constitute a feature of special interest in the Surinamese landscape. From a geomorphological point of view, the occurrence of waterfalls and rapids in Surinamese rivers lends fresh energy to the old, meandering rivers.

The rapids originate through downward erosion of the weathering-layer of the Late Tertiary level II. Rapids form where there are differences in the extent of weathering, e.g. because of weathering-resistant rocks (dolomites) or tectonic factors.

Stream-propulsion and channel bifurcation also occur, with results that are comparable to a braided stream. These processes also contribute to the formation of islands in the river, called *tabikis*. It should be borne in mind that *tabikis* are islands of a permanent nature, unlike those occurring in real braided streams.

However, the difference in water-level between the rainy and the dry seasons may be great—as much as 7 metres; thus the rapids formed in this way are temporary in nature. For this reason the generic term "waterfall" is used only when the water falls from a height of at least 10 metres in the dry season, when the water is low; in the rainy season, when the water is high, these waterfalls still have a clearly discernible drop.

The term "sula" is used for obstacles less than 10 metres in height. In the area where the Saramaccaners live the corresponding word is "dan".

Nomenclature system for settlements

An occupation system is a coherent system of human geographical entities. Each system may be distinguished from other systems by the frequency and intensity with which such geographical entities are experienced. Viewed according to their visible and concrete additions and changes there are three different occupation systems in Suriname. These have resulted in three distinct types of settlements: nuclear settlements, linear settlements and scattered settlements. In addition to this classification, settlements in Suriname may be classified, according to their functional form, into two groups: interior settlements and coastal-plain settlements.

Interior settlements

In the interior of Suriname we find agricultural, rural nuclear settlements. Thus from a functional point of view, there are no towns in the interior of Suriname, but only villages. On the basis of the dominant socio-cultural determinants in the occupation system of the interior we distinguish the following generic terms:

(a) *Kampoe*. A non-permanent settlement of "Bush Negroes", whose aim it is to practise agricultural activities using the shifting-cultivation system. Being non-permanent, the *kampoe* has no official status;

(b) *Kondre*. A permanent settlement of a matrilineal-kinship group of "Bush Negroes". As artifacts of the social system the kinship group contributes a *faaga-tiki* (a totem pole of the relatives) and a *kee-oso* (a group mortuary). In terms of official status, each *kondre* should have at least one captain;

(c) *Indian villages*. Semi-permanent settlements, each consisting of a bilateral kinship group. The village is named after the senior member of the group, and is abandoned upon the death of that member.

Coastal-plain settlements

From a primarily morphological point of view the settlements of the coastal area may be grouped as follows:

(a) *Nuclear non-agricultural settlements*. These include Paramaribo, as the "primate city", the little bauxite towns of Moengo, Onverdacht and Paranam and the little administrative towns of Albina, Nieuw Amsterdam, Totness, Groningen and Nieuw Nickerie;

(b) *Nuclear agricultural settlements*. These developed concurrently with the plantation system. The nomenclature of these settlements, which is still dominant in the coastal area, is largely based on proper names rather than on the generic terms with which the Committee is concerned. These names may be divided into the following categories:

(i) Names derived from the home areas of the planters (e.g. Berlijn, Livorno, Clyde, Alkmaar);

(ii) Names derived from names of persons (e.g. Catharina-Sophia, Beekhuizen, Carolina); and
(iii) Names given according to the hopes or taste of the settlers (e.g. Zorg en Hoop, Morgenstond, L'Esperance).

(c) *Linear settlements.* Suriname's linear settlements took shape especially in the post-plantation period. The process usually began when the first emancipated slaves, joined later on by immigrants, settled along such communication axes as roads and rivers, without any clear object of association. Thus the original nuclear settlement was changed into an elongated type of settlement. Usually, the emancipated slaves lived in old villages, the names of which were not changed although the settlements themselves underwent visible and concrete additions and changes. Examples are Nieuw Amsterdam (1875), Domburg (1877) and Totness (1862).

In order to stimulate the permanent settlement of indentured labourers from India, places of settlement were proclaimed after 1894. The immigration system thus also become a system of colonization for such settlements as Alkmaar (1895), Pad van Wanica (1896), Laarwijk, Nieuw Waldeck, Hecht en Sterk, Johanna en Margaretha, Kroonenburg and Livorno. In these instances the old names of the villages were retained. Nevertheless, this immigration clearly had certain onomastic consequences: Some settlements were named after depots (Calcutta, Bombay) which others were named after the agents-general, who were the local patrons of the immigrants (Van Drimmelen Polder, Boonacker Polder, Weytingweg).

A number of linear village communities were settled by Indonesian immigrants and were given Indonesian names suggestive of a happy future (e.g. Kampong Baroe, Tamanredjo, Wonoredjo).

Among the interesting problems that arise in the study of linear settlements are:

(*a*) The effects of Suriname's re-orientation from water transport to road traffic, which also caused location changes of the settlements;

(*b*) The determination of the functional centres of these settlements, which do not always run concurrently with their physical centres, in an artifactual sense; and

(*c*) The demarcation of the boundaries of these settlements.

At present, the following provisional criteria are used in Suriname for defining linear settlements:

(*a*) The artifactual-morphological assumption;

(*b*) The sense of experiencing an entity (i.e. which area does a person feel he belongs to, and with what intensity?); and

(*c*) The frequency of connexions among neighbouring human geographical entities.

Field collection of names

As stated before, in September 1974 a seminar was held on the standardization of geographical names. At the invitation of the Suriname Cartographic Committee this seminar was attended by Professor Francis Gall, United Nations expert on geographical names for Latin America, and Dr. D. Blok, head of the Dutch Bureau for Onomastics, who took the place of Professor F. J. Ormeling.

The presence of these scholars was meant as a contribution to institutionalizing the standardization of toponymy in Suriname. The activities performed within the framework of this seminar had a dual nature:

(*a*) The first function was to establish the functions of a names authority (to be instituted), and to establish guidelines for the mode of working of this authority. This resulted in three bills dealing with the establishment of the names authority, and in a number of guidelines and rules that will further regulate the internal structure and proceedings of the authority;

(*b*) Second, a field trip was made to Tapanahony, in south-east Suriname. This area was selected for three reasons: it was within easy reach by plane; it was rather densely inhabited, as compared with other settlements in the interior of Suriname; and the vernacular spoken there, Ndyuka, virtually lacks a written form and differs greatly from Sranan, the lingua franca of Suriname.

The purpose of the field trip with the two foreign experts was to arrive at the formulation of operational procedures of work and a research model in the field collection of names, according to their initial experiences and insights. This has resulted in a provisional inquiry and has produced some practical guidelines that will be used in the field (e.g. the use of aerial photographs of the area concerned).

Because the local language was Ndyuka, not Sranan, the quality of field research obviously necessitated special requirements in order to obtain optimal information from the local population. Fortunately, the Suriname Cartographic Committee had at its disposal someone who had studied the historical and cultural backgrounds of the local tribe, the Aucaners, and who enjoyed their confidence.

The research model designed by the foreign experts and the Suriname Cartographic Committee was tested during more than six weeks of field research. After receiving the necessary instruction, the field-workers were provided with forms for the inquiry and with tape recorders, and a topographer was added to the team to localize the geographical entities. In evaluating the results of the research, we found the following points to be of major importance:

(*a*) The data obtained largely concerned the settlements and rapids (*sulas*) encountered *en route*, which, properly speaking, have yielded too few toponyms as yet;

(*b*) During the research, emphasis was laid on explicating the meaning of names that, for the most part, were known already but had not yet been standardized. Naturally, the explanation of these names yielded a wealth of cultural-historical data, which had to be recorded since, as a rule, documentation is lacking in this respect. The informants who were still able to provide traditional information appeared to be rather old, and increasing urbanization makes it doubtful that this

traditional and historical information will be passed on to the younger generations;

(*c*) The differences between Ndyuka, the local language, and Sranan (i.e. the lingua franca of Suriname) cause problems of spelling that can be solved only after a thorough study of the languages concerned; once uniformity of spelling is achieved this might lead to the desired standardization of geographical names in the area;

(*d*) In preparing for their work, researchers will have to orientate themselves towards several disciplines, and thus deepen their insights into various aspects of the research, in order to achieve maximum results. The relevant studies should be in the areas of anthropology, linguistics, history, geography and cartography.

At the second local seminar that was organized by the Suriname Cartographic Committee on the standardization of geographical names, the above-mentioned findings resulted in the acceptance of a resolution regarding the desirability of a unity of spelling for the creole languages in Suriname in support of the standardization of geographical names in the country. This resolution was presented to the Government of the Republic of Suriname together with a list of new names in western Suriname, spelled in accordance with the Committee's recommendations on spelling.

Pending the final decision of the Government, we will continue our research activities in a second pilot project, in the residential area of the Saramaccaners. In this area many villages disappeared as a result of flooding when a reservoir was built for generating electricity, while in other places new settlements with fresh names came into being, thus making it desirable for a thorough inventory to be made.

Multilingualism and toponymy in Suriname

Even in its geographical names Suriname bears the mark of its fluctuating colonial past. The aborigines were the Amerindians. Their languages have mainly been preserved in names of rivers and in a number of place names. Since there is as yet little conclusive evidence about the earliest habitation of the country, its migration history, the languages used and the principles used in name-giving, little can be said with certainty in explanation of the geographical names. The most that can be done is to classify (tentatively) those few toponymic and hydronymic elements that are in evidence. In the names of rivers, reference can be made to such frequently occurring elements as *-ini*, *-name* and *-ica* (e.g. Gonini, Sipaliwini, Cottica, Saramacca, Peninica, Suriname, Coppename). As regards place names, reference can be made to the spread of the element *-ibo*, which is to be found along the entire northern coast of South America (examples from Suriname include Paramaribo, Onoribo, Potribo and Acaribo).

The coming of the Europeans in the seventeenth century, and their activities of all sorts in subsequent centuries, caused a thorough change and an increase in the number of geographical names. On the whole, the changes are due to a misinterpretation by the Europeans of the aboriginal names. On old maps there are numerous examples of inconsistencies in the rendering of the same geographical name, which may have been caused by the linguistic differences among the English, Dutch and other European populations.

However, there are also many cases of adaptation. An example of this is the diphthongization by the Dutch of the /i:/ sound of the names of rivers. Thus Marowijne is the result of the diphthongization of Marowini; Commewijne similarly derives from Commewini, and Corantijn from Corantini. This diphthongization is not found with geographical names of the interior, since most of these names (e.g. Sipaliwini, Gonini) were recorded much later, when the diphthongization that took place in the seventeenth century was no longer operative.

The increase in the number of geographical names runs concurrently with the history of settlement in Suriname. These names are a reflection of the fluctuating European power and interest in the country. Thus on our maps we find French, English, Dutch and other names. Some of these names have merely been copied from the erstwhile "mother countries". Not only are there such "migration-names" as Gravenstraat, Wageningen and Groningen but the element "nieuw" has been prefixed to some names (e.g. Nieuw Amsterdam).

A third kind of name, though European in language, was formed in Suriname, and hence cannot be called a migration-name. Reference can be made here to numerous plantation names, both Dutch and French: Rust en Werk, Zorg en Hoop, Ma Retraite, Mon Plaisir.

Slavery and the slave trade brought to Suriname many Africans, who, through their creole languages (Sranan, Saramaka and Ndyuka), affected the existing names to such an extent that now Sranan may be taken as the basic language for the standardization of geographical names. The geographical names are written as much as possible according to the spelling of Sranan.

Later immigrations exerted no great influence on the form of the names or on the principles of name-giving.

In attempting to standardize Surinamese geographical names we meet with a problem that may be described as the existence of exonyms within the country itself. The question is this: from of old the coastal area has been the most densely populated and the most cultivated. The Government is situated there, and it is from there that standardization, among other things, takes place. The inhabitants of the coast, partly in imitation of the Europeans and partly of their own accord, have called the interior by names different from those used by the local inhabitants—the so-called "Bush Negroes" and the Amerindians. The point is how to correct this. Essentially, the Cartographic Committee gives priority to the form and the pronunciation used by the local population. The Committee thus wants to standardize the names as they are used in their own surroundings, even if this would entail profound changes in the names on the map.

The corrections, generally speaking, concern either:

(*a*) Names that have been wrongly heard and written, or that have been adapted (e.g. "Tapanahony" for "Tapama(r)oni", "tabbetje" for "tabiki"); or

(*b*) Names that do not occur at all in the interior. The "Bush Negroes", for example, call some entities by entirely different names (e.g. "Andobusiman" for "Lelygebergte").

As mentioned above, Sranan has been selected as the basis for the spelling of non-European geographical names. It is necessary, therefore, for Sranan itself to have a correct spelling. In other words, at least as regards spelling, one of the creole languages of the Caribbean is now being standardized. The first more-or-less official spelling of Sranan dates from 1960. At present a new spelling system has been proposed for Sranan, with a view towards the standardization of geographical names.

The above-mentioned corrections and this change of spelling will not create too many difficulties for names of sparsely populated or uninhabited areas or for new names (e.g. in western Suriname). However, the adaptation of old familiar names to the revised spelling, especially in the coastal area, will have to be considered with care. If the well-known map is changed too radically as regards spelling and names, the result may very well be to cause confusion and uncertainty, which might partly nullify the benefit of standardization. The Cartographic Committee has also taken these matters under consideration.

ADMINISTRATIVE STRUCTURE OF NATIONAL NAMES AUTHORITIES IN THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY

Report presented by the Federal Republic of Germany*

Résumé

Conformément à la structure fédérale de la République fédérale d'Allemagne, les administrations des affaires intérieures des *Länder* (Etats fédéraux) sont responsables, en partie conjointement avec les communes, de la graphie des noms géographiques.

Les services topographiques des *Länder*—qui relèvent du Ministère des affaires intérieures du *Land* et, dans certains *Länder*, du Ministère des finances du *Land*—emploient, sur les cartes topographiques, les noms géographiques officiels lorsqu'ils existent. A défaut, ils utilisent, dans toute la mesure possible, les noms traditionnellement les plus répandus, conformément aux règles générales relatives à l'emploi des noms géographiques.

La graphie des noms de localités ou de communes est définie dans des décrets promulgués par les administrations chargées des affaires intérieures.

La graphie des noms de parcelles est définie par l'administration du cadastre; elle figure sur le plan cadastral ou sur la carte de base allemande à l'échelle de 1 : 5000. Lorsque les noms du plan cadastral à petite échelle ou de la carte de base allemande sont employés dans la série officielle des cartes topographiques, ces noms font foi.

Rares sont les cas dans lesquels la graphie des noms de cours d'eau et de lacs est déterminée par décret de l'administration chargée des affaires intérieures. En général, on adopte la graphie employée dans les décrets promulgués par les ministères de l'agriculture des *Länder*. Dans le cas de cours d'eau très importants intéressant plusieurs régions, la graphie est définie par les règlements fédéraux.

Pour la série officielle de cartes topographiques, les bureaux topographiques des *Länder* emploient pour désigner les montagnes et les régions montagneuses les noms utilisés en "haut" allemand traditionnel, conformément aux règles générales relatives à l'utilisation des noms géographiques.

Outre les bureaux topographiques des *Länder*, le Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut (Institut hydrographique allemand) de Hambourg—qui relève du Ministère fédéral des transports—est compétent pour décider de la graphie des noms géographiques dans les régions côtières.

La définition de la graphie des noms des hautes mers et des océans incombe au Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut.

Le Ministère des affaires étrangères est responsable de la graphie des noms d'Etats et de leurs dérivés. Il publie périodiquement, en collaboration avec le Ministère de l'intérieur, des listes de noms d'Etats destinés à être employés officiellement dans un bulletin commun aux divers ministères.

Le Ständiger Ausschuss für Geographische Namen/StAGN (Commission permanente des noms géographiques), organisme indépendant chargé de déterminer la graphie des noms géographiques des régions de langue allemande, a été créé en 1959, d'un commun accord, par les Gouvernements de la République fédérale d'Allemagne, de l'Autriche et de la Suisse. Cette Commission se compose de scientifiques éminents de ces trois pays. Elle a pour objectif de formuler des recommandations et des directives pour la normalisation de l'emploi officiel et non officiel des noms géographiques et de publier les résultats de ces travaux.

Jusqu'à 1970, le bureau de la StAGN faisait partie de l'Institut für Landeskunde (Institut de géographie régionale) situé à Bonn-Bad Godesberg. Depuis lors, il a été intégré dans l'Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie (Institut de géodésie appliquée) de Francfort-sur-le-Main. Les dépenses du bureau sont prises en charge par le Ministère fédéral de l'intérieur.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.44.

Resumen

Según la estructura federal de la Repúlica Federal de Alemania, las administraciones del interior de los *Länder* (Estados Federales), en consulta parcial con los municipios, están encargadas de la ortografía de los nombres geográficos.

Las Oficinas de Levantamientos Cartográficos de los *Länder*—que dependen del Ministerio del Interior del *Land* y, en algunos *Länder*, del Ministerio de Finanzas del *Land*—usan en los mapas topográficos los nombres geográficos determinados en forma oficial, cuando ésta existe. En su defecto, utilizan en la mejor manera posible los nombres tradicionalmente más corrientes de conformidad con las normas generales de aplicación de nombres geográficos.

La ortografía de los nombres de lugares o municipios es determinada por decretos promulgados por las administraciones del interior.

La ortografía de los nombres de parcelas es determinada por la administración catastral y registrada en el plano catastral o en el Mapa Básico Alemán a escala de 1:5.000. En todos los casos en que en la serie de mapas topográficos oficiales se utilizan nombres del plano catastral en pequeña escala o del Mapa Básico Alemán, esos nombres son autorizados.

Sólo en algunos casos la ortografía de los nombres de aguas y lagos se determina por decreto de la administración del interior. En general, se adapta a la ortografía utilizada en los decretos promulgados por los Ministerios de Agricultura de los *Länder*. En el caso de aguas muy extensas o suprarregionales, la ortografía es determinada por reglamentación federal.

En la serie oficial de mapas topográficos, las Oficinas de Levantamiento Cartográfico de los *Länder* denominan las montañas y regiones montañosas con los nombres tradicionales en alto alemán según las normas generales de aplicación de los nombres geográficos.

Además de las Oficinas de Levantamiento Cartográfico de los *Länder*, el Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut (Instituto Hidrográfico de Alemania) de Hamburgo—que depende del Ministerio Federal de Transporte—está facultado para determinar la ortografía de los nombres geográficos en regiones costeras.

La ortografía de los nombres en alta mar y en los océanos compete al Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut.

El Ministerio de Relaciones Exteriores está encargado de la ortografía de los nombres de Estados y sus derivaciones. Periódicamente publica en una gaceta ministerial común, en cooperación con el Ministerio del Interior, listas de nombres de los Estados para su uso oficial.

Como comité independiente para la ortografía de los nombres geográficos en la región de habla alemana, la Ständiger Ausschuss für Geographische Namen/StAGN (Comisión Permanente de Nombres Geográficos) fue creada en 1959 por acuerdo mutuo entre los Gobiernos de la República Federal de Alemania, Austria y Suiza. Esta Comisión está formada por personalidades muy conocidas del ámbito científico de los tres países. Su objetivo es elaborar recomendaciones y directrices para la normalización del uso oficial y privado de los nombres geográficos y publicar los resultados de esas actividades.

Hasta 1970 la oficina de la StAGN era parte del Institut für Landes kunde (Instituto de Geografía Regional) en Bonn-Bad Godesberg. Posteriormente, fue afiliada al Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie (Instituto de Geodesia Aplicada) en Francfort del Meno. La oficina está financiada por el Ministerio Federal del Interior.

*

* *

According to the federal structure of the Federal Republic of Germany the responsibility for the spelling of geographical names rests with the Administrations of the Interior of the various *Länder* (federal states), in partial consultation with the communes.

In preparing topographic maps, the Survey Offices of the *Länder*—reporting to the *Land* Ministry of the Interior, and in certain *Länder* to the *Land* Ministry of Finances—use the officially determined geographical names, where such exist. Failing this, they make the best possible use of the traditionally most current names, in conformity with the general rules on the application of geographical names.

The spellings for place names or commune names are determined by decrees issued by the Administration of the Interior.

The spellings of parcel names are determined by the cadastral administration; they are recorded on the cadastral plan or on the 1:5,000 *German Basic Map*. Wherever names from the small-scale cadastral plan or the *German Basic Map* are used on the official topographical map series, these names are authoritative.

Only in a few cases are the spellings of the names of waters and lakes determined by decrees of the Administrations of the Interior. In general, these are adapted to the spelling used in the decrees issued by the *Land* Ministries of Agriculture. In the case of very extensive or supra-regional waters, the spelling is determined by federal regulation.

On official topographic map series, the Survey Offices of the *Länder* use for the names of mountains and mountainous regions the names of the traditional high language according to the general rules on the application of geographical names.

In addition to the Survey Offices of the Länder, the Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut (German Hydrographic Institute) in Hamburg—reporting to the Federal Ministry of Transport—is competent to determine the spelling of geographical names in coastal regions.

The spelling of names of the high seas and oceans comes under the scope of the Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut.

The Ministry of Foreign Affairs is responsible for the

spelling of state names and their derivations. It periodically publishes, in co-operation with the Ministry of the Interior, lists of state names for official use in a common ministerial gazette.

As an independent committee for the spelling of geographical names in the German-speaking area, the Ständiger Ausschuss für Geographische Namen (StAGN) (Permanent Commission for Geographical Names) was established in 1959 by mutual agreement of the Governments of the Federal Republic of Germany, Austria and Switzerland. This Commission consists of well-known personalities of the scientific world in the three countries. Its objective is to elaborate recommendations and guidelines for the standardization of the official and private use of geographical names and to publish the results of these efforts.

Until 1970, the office of StAGN was part of the Institut für Landeskunde (Institute for Regional Geography) at Bonn-Bad Godesberg. Since then, it has been affiliated with the Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie (Institute for Applied Geodesy) in Frankfurt-am-Main. The office is financed by the Federal Ministry of the Interior.

RULES FOR THE SPELLING OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN THE GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC

Report presented by the German Democratic Republic*

In the German Democratic Republic systematic studies concerning the standardization of the spelling of geographical names are being conducted. Primarily for practical purposes, these are centred on the rendering of these names in cartographic products, and they represent contributions to the scientific field of cartographic toponymy. The relevant experiences and advances constitute a good basis for giving an account, within the framework of the United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names, of some results of these activities under the aspect of the spelling of geographical names in the German language. To set up rules for the spelling of geographical names is a necessary precondition for a standardized rendering of these names. Notwithstanding the fact that the spelling of geographical names is, in general, subject to the current orthographic rules of the German language, it is essential to have exhaustive rules for the special purposes of cartography, which are not given, or are given only in part, in the relevant linguistic reference books and standard works (e.g. *Meyers Grosses Lexikon, Duden*).

The knowledge of the additional rules for the spelling of geographical names in cartographic products of the German Democratic Republic will certainly contribute to a correct and standardized rendering of the geographical names from territory of the German Democratic Republic both domestically and in other countries. Generally, the spelling of geographical names is documented in the cartographic documents themselves. The most important rules, which are explained below, have been applied in the publications of the German Democratic Republic's cartographic publishing houses (VEB Hermann Haack, Gotha/Leipzig, VEB TOURIST Verlag Berlin/Leipzig and VEB Räthgloben Verlag, Leipzig).

These are the most important rules:

(*a*) Names derived from the names of settlements are to be rendered in the spelling of the particular settlement name (e.g. Tharandter Wald, Gross Labenzer See);

(*b*) Names with a long-standing spelling that is inconsistent with today's orthographic rules are to be corrected (e.g. "Auf dem Gestüt" instead of "Auf dem Gestütt");

(*c*) If a name consists of several parts, all component parts of the word are to be capitalized. Exceptions are articles and prepositions forming part of the names, unless they stand at the beginning of the name (e.g. Unter den Linden, Am Tiefen Graben);

(*d*) In names derived from settlement names with a preceding adjective, such as *gross, klein* and *neu* ("large", "small" and "new"), the form of the adjective remains unchanged (e.g. the name "Grosslabenzer See", which is derived from a settlement called Grosslabenz, is *not* corrected to "Grosser Labenzer See").

Not all geographical names are determined by, or derive from, settlement names or rules. To set up rules for these cases made it necessary first to deal with all examples in which the geographical names consist of several words and are written as one word. Accordingly, these are dealt with as follows:

(*a*) Geographical names are written as one word if the determinative element is an unchanged geographical, historical or personal proper name, an unchanged noun, an unchanged adjective, a designation for a geographical location that derives from an adverb or a preposition and has no declension ending or a number which is written out (e.g. Dreieichen, Erzgebirge, Goetheplatz, Neuklostersee, Niederlausitz, Oberspreewald, Oderbruch, Ostseebezirk, Saaletalsperre, Schwarzatal, Spreesiedlung, Völkerschlachtdenkmal, Zigeunerberge);

(*b*) Compound geographical names are written as a single word if they have "es" or "s" inserted between the primary word and the determinative element (e.g. Landeskrone, Inselsberg, Erzgebirgsschanze);

(*c*) Endings and primary words of compound names may be abbreviated if at least two letters are saved. As a general principle, names thus abbreviated shall also be written as one word (e.g.:

* The original text of this paper, prepared by E. Haack of the Board of Surveying and Mapping, Ministry of the Interior, German Democratic Republic, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.46.

Fichtelberg	Fichtelbg
Eldekanal	Eldekan
Mühlenbach	Mühlenb
Elbsandsteingebirge	Elbsandsteingeb
Bernburg	Bernbg
Nordstrasse	Nordstr
Oberhermsdorf	Oberhermsdf.)

Should such abbreviations affect the legibility of names, e.g. Urbach (Urb.), Beetzsee (Beetzs.), it will be advisable to write the names in full; in this case they may be divided as well. On maps there is often not enough space left for the names. This is why, for instance, regulations for the division of compounds had to be laid down. One of these regulations states that whenever a word is divided the letter after the division mark should be a lower-case letter, (e.g. Elbsandstein-gebirge, Lenin-allee, Zens-see);

(*d*) An important element in the spelling of geographical names is the application of hyphens. Such a hyphen is to be used in compound names (e.g. Karl-Marx-Stadt, Wilhelm-Pieck-Stadt Guben, Oder-Spree-Kanal, Geschwister-Scholl-Strasse, Colbitz-Letzlinger Heide);

(*e*) Simple compound names are likewise hyphenated unless the last part of the compound denotes a geographical location (e.g. Halle-Ammendorf, Leipzig-Gohlis, Gera Süd, Dresden Mitte);

(*f*) A hyphen must be used also if the first part of a compound name is abbreviated (e.g. Ndr.-Lausitz, Kl.-Köriser See) or in the case of multipart personal names (e.g. W.-Pieck-St. Guben, Carl-v.-Ossietzky-Str).

Other rules apply to names which are written separately. Thus, multi-part names are written separately if an unchanged derivative from a geographical name ending in *-er* is concerned (e.g. Thüringer Wald, Darsser Ort).

Furthermore, names are written separately if an inflective derivative ending in *-isch* or *-sch*, or an inflective adjective is concerned (e.g. Havelländisches Luch, Niederer Fläming, Grosser Zernsee, Schwarzer Berg). Abbreviations of non-hyphenated preceding adjectives need no hyphen (e.g. Gr. Zernsee, Kl. Elster).

In the spelling of geographical names with a preceding article, this article should, as a rule, be eliminated (e.g. not "Die Müritz" but "Müritz"; not "Der Hohe Fläming" but "Hoher Fläming"). If the article is eliminated, the form of the determinative adjective (which in most cases forms part of the name) must be changed accordingly (e.g. "Das Breite Feld" must be changed to "Breites Feld"). The article must be written only if a general geographical appellative is used as a proper name (e.g. Die Au, Das Bruch) or, if the article is used in connexion with a preposition (e.g. Über der Spree, In der Aue).

As far as the spelling of dialectal names is concerned, it has been laid down that they shall not be put into standard German, but are always to be entered in the map in their dialectal form, even if they can be unmistakably interpreted and rendered in standard German. Particularly in the case of compound words, care should be taken that all component parts of the name are written in their dialectal form (e.g. "Lütt Portentieck", not "Kleiner Portentieck"). Dialectal forms on medium-scale and large-scale maps are, in most cases, appellatives. Their spelling differs from place to place and should be neither corrected nor standardized (e.g. Leite, Liete, Liede; Haardt, Hart, Hardt; Struth, Strutt, Strut; Wyck, Wiek, Wieck; Fehn, Fenn, Venn; Becke, Beeke, Bäck).

The application of all kinds of additions to settlement names required the establishment of detailed rules. These rules apply to additions that form part of the name, that indicate the particular function of a given settlement and that are essential for distinguishing between settlements of the same name. Their rendering on maps of different scales is subject to exhaustive regulations, which cannot be dealt with here.

Emphasis must be placed also on rules applicable to the spelling of geographical names in areas in the German Democratic Republic that are inhabited by the national minority of the Sorbs (i.e. in bilingual regions within the counties of Cottbus and Dresden). These rules are dealt with in the report entitled "The constitutional provisions of the German Democratic Republic for citizens of Sorb nationality in the bilingual region, and the spelling of geographical names", which is reproduced after the present paper.

Abbreviations are indispensable in the lettering on plans. Names on maps and supplementary explanations must not impair the representation on geographical maps. For this reason much attention has been given to the abbreviation of names on maps and an exhaustive list has been prepared of abbreviations for cartographic use.

The principles for the application of abbreviations involve a number of possibilities with a view to not reducing the legibility of names on maps or impairing the specific character of maps because of unintelligible abbreviations. Therefore abbreviations are envisaged mainly for explanatory purposes (e.g. mountain, brook, tower, school). Other regulations cover the use of capital and lower-case letters for abbreviations.

These remarks are intended to demonstrate that, despite the existence of general orthographic rules, lettering on plans involves a number of problems that need special regulations. In the German Democratic Republic such special rules for the spelling of geographical names in cartographic products have been prepared for some years now. On many occasions they have proved their practical value, and they enable the editors of maps to solve all problems in this field in a creative and independent manner.

THE CONSTITUTIONAL PROVISIONS OF THE GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC FOR CITIZENS OF SORB NATIONALITY IN THE BILINGUAL REGION, AND THE SPELLING OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by the German Democratic Republic*

The Sorbs in the German Democratic Republic represent the only national minority in this country. Most of them are domiciled in Lusatia, a region in the counties of Dresden and Cottbus. This region covers, in Dresden county, the districts of Bautzen, Kamenz and Niesky and, in Cottbus county, the districts of Cottbus (City), Cottbus (rural area), Hoyerswerda, Weisswasser, Spremberg, Guven, Forst, Calau and Lübben. These areas inhabited by the Sorbs are bilingual.

The Constitution of the German Democratic Republic (article 40) guarantees to people of Sorb nationality in the German Democratic Republic the cultivation of their mother language and culture. The article states:

> "Citizens of the German Democratic Republic of Sorb nationality are entitled to cultivate their mother language and culture. The execution of this right is promoted by the State."

The constitutional guarantee of this right corresponds to the respect for, and guarantee of, the rights of national minorities that is inherent in a socialist society.

In addition, the national equality of the Sorbs has been ensured by the Act on the Safeguarding of the Rights of the Sorb People, of 23 March 1948.

There exist quite a number of institutions which safeguard the rights of the Sorbs: working groups attached to the State bodies of the Republic and of the counties; the Institute of Sorb Folkloristic Research attached to the Academy of Sciences of the German Democratic Republic (Bautzen); the Sorbastic Institute of Karl Marx University (Leipzig); a Sorb teachers' training college; the nationally owned Domowina publishing house (Bautzen); the Nowa Doba printing office (Bautzen); a Sorb production department of Radio GDR; a Sorb cultural centre; a museum of the Sorbs' history and culture; a State Ensemble of Sorb Folklore; and a German-Sorb popular theatre.

The Sorbs' socialist national organization is the Domowina. The building of a socialist State and social order entailed the development of socialist relations between people of Sorb and German nationality, which are characterized by mutual respect, friendship and comradely co-operation. The developed socialist society ensures the full socio-political, intellectual and cultural equality of the Sorbs and offers them good prospects for the future. This is the reason why they actively participate in building this future. More than 2,000 Sorbs are, for instance, members of the community, district and county assemblies of this area, with its inhabitants of two nationalities, and of the People's Chamber. Since the end of the war more than 30,000 children have been taught the Sorb language and more than 1,000 have graduated from the Sorb extended secondary school.

On the basis of these facts the second edition of the *Allgemeine Richtlinie für die Schreibweise geographischer Namen der DDR* (*General Guidelines for the Spelling of Geographical Names in the German Democratic Republic*), published in Berlin in 1970, lays down that:

(*a*) Geographical names on maps and plans of regions inhabited by citizens of the German Democratic Republic of Sorb nationality must be rendered in two languages. This bilingual lettering must be applied

(i) On maps and plans at scales of up to 1:50,000, and

(ii) On administrative and other special maps at smaller scales, provided there is no lack of space;

(*b*) Sorb names must be written in letters of the Sorb alphabet. They must be entered either below or beside the German names. This is the Sorb (Upper Sorb) alphabet:

a, b, c, č, d, dź, e, ě, f, g, h, ch, i, j, k, l, ł, m, n, ń, o, ó, p, r, ř, s, š, t, ć, u, w, y, z, ž

The Lower Sorb alphabet includes three additional letters: dž, ź and ś.

The Sorbisch-deutsches und deutsch-sorbisches Ortsnamenverzeichnis der zweisprachigen Kreise der Bezirke Dresden und Cottbus[1] (Sorb-German and German-Sorb list of place names of the bilingual districts in the counties of Dresden and Cottbus), edited by Bjarnat Rachel and Herbert Noack, is based on the latest level regarding the ascertainment and determination of Sorb place names. Part I of this list is a revised reprint of the list of Upper Sorb and German place names of the bilingual districts in Dresden county, which had been compiled by Bjarnat Rachel and published in 1959. The revision was done on the basis of the more recent official lists of communities in the individual districts. Part II contains for the first time the Lower and Upper Sorb place names in Cottbus county. Altogether, 1,148 Sorb place names have been entered.

Sorb names are entered not only on cartographic products but also in many other reference books, particularly in literature intended for tourists.

The names of places in the Sorb language are contained in the above list. The most important geographical names in German and Sorb are listed herewith:

(a) *Waters*

German	*Sorb*
Order	Wódra
Neisse	Nysa
Sprec	Sprjewja
Schwarze Elster	Čorny Halštrow
Schöps	Šepc
Malxe	Małksa
Knappensee	Hórnikečanski jezor
Schwielochsee	Gojac

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Y. R. Pustkowski, German Democratic Republic, appeared as document E/CONF. 69/L.47.

[1] Bautzen, Domowina-Verlag, 1969.

(b) *Mountainous districts/mountains*

German	*Sorb*
Lausitzer Bergland	Łužiske hory
Czornoboh	Čornobóh
Bieleboh	Běłebóh
Löbauer Berg	Lubijska hora
Lausche	Luša
Thromberg	Lubin
Mönchswalder Berg	Mnišonc
Picho	Pichow
Hutberg	Pastwina hora
Hahnenberg	Kaponica
Hromadnik	Hromadnik

(c) *Other terrains*

German	*Sorb*
Spreewald	Błóta
Muskauer Forst	Mužakowska hola

RAPPORT PRÉSENTÉ PAR MADAGASCAR*

Summary

The National Committee for Geographical Names was set up in 1973. It consists of 21 members representing ministries or governmental organizations that deal with matters relating to geographical names.

Resumen

El Comité Nacional de los Nombres Geográficos es el organismo en Madagascar que se ocupa de los nombres geográficos. Se estableció en el año 1973 y se compone de 21 miembros que pertenecen a diferentes ministerios u organismos gubernamentales encargados de la nomenclatura geográfica.

*

* *

L'organisme national qui s'occupe des noms géographiques à Madagascar est le Comité national des noms géographiques.

Ce Comité a été créé par un décret gouvernemental n° 73-157 du 15 juin 1973.

Composition

La composition du Comité est la suivante :

Président : Le Ministre chargé des travaux publics

Vice-Présidents : Le Directeur de l'Institut cartographique de Madagascar
Un représentant du Ministère de l'intérieur

Secrétaire : Un représentant de l'Institut cartographique

Membres

1 représentant du Chef du gouvernement
2 représentants de l'Assemblée nationale populaire
1 représentant de l'Académie malgache
1 représentant du Ministère chargé des travaux publics
1 représentant de l'Institut cartographique
1 représentant de la Division hydrographique
1 représentant des postes et télécommunications
1 représentant du Service topographique
1 représentant de la Direction des eaux et forêts
1 représentant du Centre d'études et d'information sur la langue, littérature et la civilisation malgache, Université
1 représentant du Département d'histoire et de préhistoire, Université
1 représentant du Département des lettres malgaches, Université
1 représentant du Laboratoire de géographie, Université
1 représentant de l'Institut national de la statistique et de la recherche économique
1 représentant du Ministère chargé de l'information

Bureau permanent

Ce bureau est composé comme suit :
Président du Comité
Deux Vice-Présidents du Comité
Secrétaire
Trois membres élus par le Comité

Fonctionnement

Le Comité se réunit au moins une fois par an. Le Bureau permanent du Comité assure le secrétariat : préparation des dossiers, organisation des recherches, convocation et procès-verbaux.

Aucune disposition financière n'est prévue pour les dépenses relatives aux travaux du Comité; jusqu'à ce jour les enquêteurs envoyés pour des investigations sur place ont été choisis parmi le personnel de l'Institut cartographique qui a supporté, en conséquence, tous les frais y afférents.

Le Comité est un organisme consultatif et n'a pas pouvoir de décision sur les noms géographiques; après recherches, études et traitement, le Comité soumet ses propositions au Conseil du gouvernement qui décide en dernier lieu. Toutes propositions de création, de sup-

* Le texte original de ce rapport, préparé par le secrétariat du Comité national des noms géographiques de Madagascar, Antananarivo, Madagascar, a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.52.

pression ou de modification de nom géographique et approuvées par le Conseil du gouvernement feront l'objet d'un décret.

Il incombe au Comité d'assurer une diffusion la plus large possible des noms normalisés, aussi bien sur le plan national que sur le plan international.

FIELD COLLECTION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN THE PROVINCE OF ONTARIO, CANADA: PROCEDURES ENDORSED BY THE ONTARIO GEOGRAPHIC NAMES BOARD

Report presented by Canada*

Résumé

La Commission des noms géographiques de l'Ontario a mis au point des procédures pour la recherche sur le terrain des données relatives aux noms géographiques. Ces procédures sont efficaces quand on veut soumettre une zone à une recherche toponymique détaillée et elles permettent d'obtenir une nomenclature géographique précise pour la production de répertoires, de cartes marines et de cartes topographiques.

Voici les méthodes utilisées: préparation de la recherche sur le terrain, entrevues personnelles et interprétation des données. La préparation fait intervenir l'étude de la zone couverte par la carte et l'examen des matériaux écrits pour déterminer les problèmes qui se posent. Les personnes recommandées ou choisies pour l'enquête sont des habitants de la zone, représentatifs des divers groupes d'âge ainsi que des principales cultures et/ou activités économiques de la zone.

A l'occasion des entrevues personnelles, les problèmes de toponymie sont identifiés et on enregistre l'emplacement exact, la durée d'utilisation des noms, leur origine et leur traduction ainsi que d'autres renseignements pertinents.

L'interprétation des données comprend plusieurs opérations: exploitation et organisation des données, puis recherches consécutives. Des questions posées par téléphone ou des recherches historiques permettent souvent d'éclaircir les problèmes d'orthographe, d'origine et d'usage. Parmi les autres facteurs intervenant dans l'exploitation des données relatives aux noms géographiques, on peut citer les considérations cartographiques, les noms déjà donnés aux détails qui constituent ou chevauchent les frontières entre provinces ou entre pays et l'élaboration d'un nom pour un détail qui n'a pas de nom connu.

Resumen

La Junta de Nombres Geográficos de Ontario ha preparado procedimientos para la recopilación de nombres geográficos sobre el terreno. Estos procedimientos sirven para realizar una investigación toponímica global de una zona y permiten presentar una nomenclatura geográfica exacta en mapas, cartas y nomenclátores producidos en masa.

Los métodos comprenden la preparación para la investigación sobre el terreno, la realización de entrevistas personales y la interpretación de datos. La preparación incluye el estudio de la zona que abarca el mapa y el examen de materiales escritos para determinar los problemas que se plantean. Se recomienda que se escoja como informadores a residentes locales que constituyan una muestra de los grupos de edad y representen las principales actividades culturales o económicas de la región.

Durante las entrevistas personales se identifican los problemas de los nombres y se registran la localización exacta, la duración del uso del nombre, el origen o traducción del mismo y otras informaciones pertinentes.

La interpretación de los datos comprende su elaboración, organización e investigación ulterior. Mediante llamadas telefónicas o investigación histórica se aclaran con frecuencia problemas de escritura, origen y uso. Las consideraciones cartográficas, la nominación de accidentes geográficos que forman o cruzan las fronteras provinciales o internacionales y la nominación de un accidente anónimo son otros factores comprendidos en el tratamiento de nombres geográficos.

*

* *

Introduction

The Ontario Geographic Names Board has during the past four years developed specific procedures for the field collection of geographic names to increase the effectiveness of what is, in the Board's view, the most efficient means of conducting a comprehensive toponymic investigation of an area. Accelerated map production deadlines, created by technological innovations such as computer-assisted mapping systems (a factor faced by authorized naming bodies throughout Canada), have rendered imperative the necessity for efficient geographic name data collection.

At each United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographic Names to date, field collection has been raised as a major concern. It has been the experience of the Ontario Board that only through field name surveys carried out by trained personnel using a standard set of procedures is it possible to furnish map/chart and gazetteer producers with accurate geographic nomenclature in volume.

In authorizing geographic names for Government maps, charts and gazetteers, the Ontario Board has noted

* The original text of this paper, prepared by P. J. Roulston, Research Toponymist, which appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.53, is based on an Ontario Government publication, *Naming Ontario: A Guide to the Collection of Geographic Names* (Toronto, 1977).

that place and feature names used by various agencies and appearing on maps may differ from those used by area residents. During the formulation of its naming principles in 1975 the Board decided, in accordance with the naming guidelines of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographic Names, to give first consideration to names well established in local usage. The prime objective of the Board is to provide to mapping authorities information on locally used place and feature names.

The field procedures that have been endorsed by the Ontario Board for compilation and updating of geographic nomenclature are, in large part, based on the province's name survey experience in areas of both dense and sparse population. Areas chosen for name surveys are those in which new mapping or revised mapping, either federal or provincial, is being undertaken. For example, Ontario's current major field study is of a 52,000-square-kilometre area west of Lake Superior, preparatory to revision of 46 federal maps at the 1:50,000 scale.

Information collected about locally used geographic names is processed for consideration of the seven-member Ontario Geographic Names Board, which comprises four members appointed from the private sector and three from the province's public service. Submissions are presented in the format of recommendations for the approval, altered application, deletion or change of a geographic name supported by evidence concerning current local historical and/or official usage.

The Board recommends feature names to the province's Minister of Natural Resources for official approval. However, the Board has authority over the approval of names for unincorporated places. After ratification, Board decisions and supporting data are distributed to provincial map-producing agencies and, through the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names (which maintains a duplicate set of records) to federal map and chart producers in order that they may be shown on new or revised maps and listed in the *Gazetteer of Canada: Ontario* and supplements.

Discussions with other naming authorities and reports produced by these bodies, especially the Commission de Géographie du Québec and the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, have also provided considerable inspiration.

Board procedures outlined below for the collection of geographic names may be a base that can be modified and expanded upon by other naming authorities and researchers to fit particular needs.

Geographic names investigations: rationale and research methods

In 1972 the Ontario Board, as an aid to its decision-making, asked its staff to provide background information on any geographic name presented for consideration: length of time in use, name origin and other pertinent data. As a result of this request a thorough name investigation system was developed, of which the letter, telephone and personal interview were the main components.

During the initial stages of the research programme, letters and telephone calls were used exclusively for collecting toponymic data. However, researchers were often frustrated by incomplete replies, the length of time informants took to answer letters and the difficulty of determining precise locations by telephone. It soon became apparent that in order to obtain accurate information about a number of names *quickly* a telephone call or letter followed by a personal interview was the best procedure. The time factor in collecting geographic names has become increasingly critical with the advent of computer-assisted mapping programmes, which have accelerated map production.

It has been the experience of the Ontario Board that the most reliable method of obtaining data is by conducting a personal interview with individuals who are knowledgeable about the history and geography, and hence about the geographic names, of their area.

The advantages of a face-to-face interview over letter or telephone interviews are considerable, especially when several maps are being researched in one area. A rapport can be established between informant and interviewer, which is generally not possible by letter or phone. The interviewer can also follow up a line of questioning on the spot, whereas an incomplete reply by letter would necessitate writing back to the area.

In the field interview researchers are able to encourage an informant to provide necessary data or obtain names of persons to interview for further confirmation. They also have a better opportunity to evaluate sources and dispel any misunderstandings that might arise from unclear answers. There is greater likelihood, as well, that an informant will furnish material on features additional to those being investigated or recommend others who would also be good informants. This spillover of data, which seldom occurs in phone interviews or letters, is a bonus in many personal interviews.

Telephone inquiries and letters still should not be underestimated as useful means of collecting information. When there are only a few specific questions or when distance and cost do not permit a field survey, Board staff or other researchers can frequently solve contentious ame issues by making brief phone calls or writing preliminary letters and following them up by phone.

Toponymic investigations of Canada have sometimes added 100 per cent or more additional names to revised maps and have corrected inaccurate names (as many as 20 per cent for some maps at the 1:50,000 scale).[1] Detailed field name surveys, with trained personnel following specific guidelines, will assist Canada as well in having an up-to-date inventory of geographical names for map producers and users.

[1] Gordon F. Delaney, "Toponymy in Canada, an excellent record", paper delivered at the seventh annual meeting of the Canadian Institute of Onamastic Sciences, Kingston, 4 June 1973.

Preparation for field investigation

Study of the map area

The Ontario Board's name researchers familiarize themselves with the map area under study before a field survey. Experience has proven that maps of the 1:50,000 scale are usually the most useful as field copies. However, if an urban area is being studied, then maps at larger scales are more suitable; they are particularly effective for an investigation of subdivision and other urban community names.

Before beginning any interviews, researchers take note of major features, places or roads on the field maps. Sometimes it is necessary to use these as reference points during interviews, relating the location of features or places to them when questioning people who are not accustomed to orienting themselves with maps.

Examination of written materials

Before initiating name surveys, researchers examine both Ontario Forest Resources Inventory base maps, on which geographic names have been updated over the years, and published maps and charts. Surveyors' maps, patents plans, historical maps, books and tourist literature are among the many sources staff may check to obtain information about place and feature names. They note problems, such as unnamed prominent features, duplicated names or unnamed concentrations of buildings, on the field copy of maps to be used during the survey.

Because its researchers cannot personally conduct field name surveys for all maps published or revised, the Ontario Board asks others to assist in gathering name information. Ministry district staff, librarians, historians, planners and other researchers asked to assist the Secretariat frequently have access to source materials that can be easily checked. Historical atlases and books, tourist maps and brochures, timber maps and planning maps are among the many sources available.

Selecting informants

Board field staff have discovered that devoting time and thought to choosing informants and arranging introductory interviews with one or two recommended sources is worth while. These initial contacts are usually able to direct researchers to others knowledgeable about the feature and place names under study. The major economic activity in an area can be a factor for determining who is most familiar with its history and geography. For example, if it is dominated by the lumbering industry and has a similar history, loggers may be good initial contacts.

Trappers, commercial fishermen, lodge and marina operators, loggers, bush pilots, postmasters, Indian band councillors, historical society members, township clerks and local inhabitants of long standing, as well as its own Ministry personnel, are among the many likely interview sources available to the Board. However, field workers have to be open to any suggestions as to possible informants, since the most unlikely person may sometimes be the best source.

Researchers should remember to check with a variety of age groups to determine if names provided by older people have been replaced by newer names. It is desirable to interview people living or working near the map features and places being investigated.

It is also necessary to select people who represent the major cultures of an area (i.e. Amerindians, French), since geographic names may have originated with these groups and may reflect their language and history.

Arranging the interview

Researchers unfamiliar with the study area first refer to the local telephone book or government directory and make a list of local officials who might be good interview prospects or who might recommend other possible informants. A researcher can usually determine from an introductory call whether or not these authorities are familiar enough with the area to be good sources.

Asking sample questions about names in this preliminary phone call gives the local official an idea of the type of information needed. It also provides the researcher with an opportunity to determine what portion of the study area the official knows well. If he or she has considerable knowledge and there are many toponymic problems on the map the researcher may arrange a personal interview.

One essential question for any names researcher is this or a variation: "Can you think of anyone else who might be able to help with names of lakes and other features in the area?" Even if the official is new to the area or totally unfamiliar with the features, he or she can usually supply the name of someone else who is knowledgeable. Enough sources should be contacted to verify the entire map area; information from three sources is normally required before a geographic name is recommended for approval, deletion or alteration.

Several types of interview arrangements are used by Board staff. Experience has shown that in most cases two researchers are better than one. One person can direct questions to an informant and point out features on the map while the other takes notes and/or operates a tape recorder. The advantage of this system is that the main questioner, unencumbered with note-taking, can be involved on a more personal basis and establish a better rapport with the interviewee. The second researcher, being less directly involved, is often able to note omissions and can hence obtain clarification on particular points and ask follow-up questions.

Group interviews have proven to be the least effective arrangement, but may be necessary when researchers have a limited amount of time. Although this procedure is not recommended, in special cases one researcher can interview more than two sources at once, if he or she proceeds slowly and carefully, noting the comments of each in turn.

When suggesting an interview time and location, careful thought is given to the map problems and the

number of informants who can be questioned in one day. No more than two interviews per morning, afternoon or evening are arranged. This allows researchers some flexibility in contacting other people who might be recommended during an interview.

Interview tools

Prepared maps of the study area, questionnaires, telephones, note pads and tape recorders are used by Ontario Board staff in conducting geographic names investigations.

A well-prepared map of the study area, indicating the name problems, is essential. Data noted includes large unnamed features, problems related to the location or application of a place or feature name, variant names used for one feature, name duplications, and historic names. Old maps are examined to identify place names deleted from current maps, which may require further investigation. Colour-coding to differentiate problem categories has proven to be helpful.

Field workers find it useful to draw a rough diagram showing the location and relationship of maps of the study area, both to orient themselves and to assist them in providing appropriate maps when needed.

A field guide questionnaire is provided at the end of this paper. Interviewers familiarize themselves with the questions on this sheet before beginning field investigations. The form is of assistance for preliminary telephone conversations and initial interviews.

Inter-city telephone lines, which are available to Government personnel, allow researchers to contact informants easily in a wide area. If an interviewer telephones someone who is unavailable, he or she explains the reason for calling. Sometimes the person reached will know as much as the intended informant.

Although the telephone is an effective research tool, it can rarely be compared to a face-to-face interview, which offers an opportunity for an informant to see the map under review and for prolonged questioning in a relaxed atmosphere. However, telephones are particularly useful after a field name survey for follow-up interviews to resolve contradictions or obtain additional information.

For an interview involving many geographic names a note pad is often more useful than a prepared questionnaire. In it researchers note the title of the map being reviewed, date of interview, interviewee's name and the answers to questions. This allows researchers to proceed with the interview without stopping to use a separate question sheet for every name. Pertinent data may then be transferred to the field guide questionnaire after the interview is completed.

Board experience has been that tape recorders have both advantages and disadvantages for researchers. The worker who uses them exclusively instead of taking notes during interviews has to spend many hours listening to and/or transcribing recordings. For the most part taking notes and using the questionnaire is less time-consuming and just as effective.

However, in specific instances, such as when someone is being interviewed about Amerindian geographic names, a tape recorder has advantages. Such taped interviews are processed by Board members and staff, who render names in a form acceptable to the average map-user, in accordance with the Board's spelling system.

CONDUCTING THE PERSONAL INTERVIEW

If informants were previously contacted by phone, researchers only briefly remind them about the purpose of the interview (i.e. to verify location, spelling and usage of names appearing on maps and to record any names used by local residents that are not shown on current official maps). It might be pointed out that the Board gathers current geographic name data for both provincial and federal mapmakers.

Data on history, origin and/or meaning of toponyms obtained in the course of investigations is on record for the use of researchers, authors and other members of the general public.

The following steps have proven to be beneficial in conducting the interview:

(*a*) By talking to interview subjects about their associations with the surrounding locality interviewers obtain an indication of the area the informants know best. The interviewer then begins by asking toponymic questions about that area. A consistent pattern is followed when asking questions. For instance, if the person being interviewed can read a map well, the interviewer may ask about features following a planned route across the map from west to east or vice versa. If the informant is not familiar with maps the interviewer could move from a known place or feature to those surrounding it. Or if the informant is well acquainted with water routes the researcher could ask questions following the drainage systems;

(*b*) It is often advisable to identify a feature with reference to other predominant sites on the map, such as roads, populated places or large named lakes, when the informant is unfamiliar with map reading or elderly. Researchers find it useful to have felt-tip pens handy for writing clearly or boldly on the map, as well as a large magnifying glass for the use of interviewees with poor eyesight;

(*c*) Field investigations attempt to determine whether informants are referring to names local people use or to names they see on maps. Interviewers stress that the Board wants to know what names are used by area residents and will usually change the map name to accord with the name used by local residents and officials;

(*d*) As an aid in organizing their interview notes, researchers mark the map name and/or number on their pad whenever they begin questioning an informant about a different map. This is especially important if maps and charts at various scales overlap in area;

(*e*) As space allows, interviewers note the initials of each informant beside each feature name on the field map. This is particularly useful if two or more names are recorded for one feature. Check marks or other notations are employed beside the initials when the informant

verifies the usage of map names. Informants' names or initials are also recorded on the border adjacent to areas about which they were questioned; finally,

(*f*) The subject's name, occupation, address and/or telephone number and length of time resident in the area, information necessary for follow-up, are recorded at the close of every interview for future reference.

Specific topics for field investigation

Identifying the name problem

In the course of verifying map nomenclature, field researchers often encounter names that require special attention. The following examples illustrate some types of name problems dealt with by Board staff:

(*a*) Bridal Veil Falls, Manitoulin Island, Lake Huron, a popular tourist attraction for many years, and thus a name one would assume the Board would have information about, remained unrecorded by name authorities until a field survey was undertaken there in 1975;

(*b*) In another case, Manitoulin residents indicated that the name of a bay was "Honora Bay", used since mid-nineteenth century, not "Sounding Bay" as on the official map. The decision for this name along with 168 others appeared as new names, altered applications or name changes on six 1:50,000 topographic sheets covering the Manitoulin Island area;

(*c*) If more than one name is used locally, the Ontario Board needs to know which name is currently used by most people and which has been used for the longest period. As many people as possible are contacted in such situations. If a conflict exists concerning a local name or if there are two features with the same name near one another, researchers ask the opinions of those interviewed and explain Board policy on duplicated names;

(*d*) Geographic names do not always contain the generics ("island", "river", "valley", "portage", "lake" etc.) that one normally associates with names of geographic features. There is, for example, an island in Lac Seul in northwestern Ontario that is known both locally and officially as "Broken Stick". While the provincial gazetteer identifies this feature by adding the generic "island" in brackets, maps and charts simply depict the feature itself to provide that information. The gazetteer approach is recommended for recording such names in the field. The researcher notes the name used locally, providing an appropriate generic in brackets, e.g. "Broken Stick (island)", "Nebraska Avenue (passage)".

Referencing the location of a feature

On the field guide questionnaire, researchers note the geographic location (township, county, district or regional municipality) in which features are located. The location of a feature or place can be given approximately or measured precisely, depending upon tools or time available.

The Board uses latitude and longitude in referencing its information. Without any measuring aid a field researcher can estimate these to the nearest degree and minute, using the graduations on the map border. However, precision measurement in degrees, minutes and seconds is obtained by using a transparent gauge called a Co-ordi-Net.

Determining duration of name usage

Board staff attempt to obtain specific data during name surveys. This is particularly true with regard to the question, "How long has this name been used?" A pattern of answers normally emerges, either repetition of the phrase "many years" or a variation of "as long as I can remember" or "within living memory". The time limits on such phrases can vary considerably, depending on whether the interviewer is talking to a 45-year-old or an 80-year-old resident. The key is to probe for definite time links.

Amerindian geographic names often predate those of long-time local trappers, guides and hunters. Local band members likely know the meaning or origins of their names but are unable to date them exactly. However, in the majority of situations it is possible, by interviewing three or more reliable sources, to determine the approximate number of years the names have been used.

Sometimes historical documents, such as explorers' maps, journals or newspapers, can provide a more exact date of origin. However, this usually entails detailed archival research and, due to the time factor to meet map publication deadlines, it is not possible to follow this procedure for all field name surveys.

The length of time a name has been in use is a factor in the Board's deciding whether or not it should be approved for official purposes. For example, if a feature or unincorporated place name (rural or urban community, subdivision or the like) has been known to area residents for only a few years it may be unwise to show it on maps. It may easily be displaced by another name or simply not be used at all after a short period.

It is Board policy to examine closely geographic names that have been used for only a few years and have replaced established historical names. For instance, seasonal cottagers may originate names for islands and points and use them within a small group of friends and neighbours, unaware that other names for the features already exist and are used by older generations among the permanent community. In such cases origin and historical usage as well as current usage of the names are taken into account by the Board.

Origin and translation

The Board finds it valuable to have information on the origins of geographic names and translations if they are in languages other than English. Whenever possible, detailed information on name derivation is submitted to the Board together with name proposals.

Older residents frequently know the meaning of non-English geographic names and why they were applied. Many features have been named after early settlers or interesting events. Other toponyms, especially those of Amerindian origin, are descriptive. Sometimes a feature is

named because of its appearance or shape, as in the case of such a name as Teardrop Lake.

Cree, Ojibwa and other Amerindian names are normally collected by tape recorder unless the interviewer is familiar with the language and trained to record its sounds exactly. Mashkigomin Lake is an example of an Ojibwa name obtained on tape during a name survey of the White River and Wawa areas in northwest Ontario. The name, which means Cranberry, is descriptive, as the lake is shallow with many cranberry bushes growing around it.

Referencing written sources

An informant may refer to or show researchers local history books, newspaper articles, tourist maps, timber plans, mining claims or other written sources that provide information on usage, spelling or origin of names. Board staff reference all sources by author, title, place of publication, publisher and date. For maps the scale is also included.

Additional information

Informants frequently supply useful data not asked for in the questionnaire. Pertinent additional information could include any of the following: population; community facilities (church, school, cottagers' association) bearing the same name as the feature or place; pronunciation, if not apparent from the spelling; and/or a road sign bearing the local name or a different name.

Field investigators record the pronunciation of any name that is not self-evident. A researcher could indicate, for example, that "*Gower*" in "North Gower" and "*Sault*" in "Long Sault" are pronounced "*gore*" and "*soo*" respectively. If a tape recorder is unavailable, the phonetic scheme listed in the Oxford or a comparable dictionary is used, or the researcher may record the pronunciation in some other arbitrary (but consistent) fashion.

Interpretation of Data

Follow-up research

After names have been collected the Board often undertakes follow-up research to clarify spelling, origin or usage. Historical research and/or telephone calls frequently supply additional information required by the Secretariat for its submissions.

In some circumstances research may be lengthy. Such was the case for a lake in Campbell Township, Manitoulin Island, Lake Huron. A name survey revealed that three other names had been used for this feature at various times. After considerable consultation with area residents and officials, field workers discovered the most frequently used local name was pronounced "sayjon", that of the original patentee. However, no one locally was able to provide the spelling of the name.

By asking the Lands Administration Division of Indian and Northern Affairs, Ottawa, to trace the original patent, Board staff confirmed the spelling "*Saigeohn*", after William Saigeohn, a nineteenth-century settler. Although such a procedure is seldom required, this illustrates the depth of research that may be necessary to verify usage and spelling of a geographic name.

Cartographic Considerations

Scale

Scale is a major factor in determining what names are shown on maps. There is a great difference in what can be depicted on two maps at scales of, for example, 1:25,000 and 1:126,720 (1″ = two miles); the former is of a larger scale, hence it can accommodate more detail and more feature and place names.

Field researchers collect all local names regardless of the size of the feature or place. Although all names collected might not be officially processed for use on the map being produced at the time, they would be approved for reference purposes and would appear on any future larger-scale map.

Determining the extent of a feature

Board staff sometimes have difficulty identifying the extent of named features lacking obvious natural boundaries. A researcher may find that one name applies to a group of islands, chain of lakes, range of hills or the like, while specific names apply to individual features within the group. Difficulty arises for the cartographer in applying the name if the extent of the group has not been specifically determined in the field. Thus, field workers ask local people what they consider to be the extent of features and/or urban and rural communities in order to determine the placement of the name on a map.

Naming features that straddle provincial or international boundaries

In naming a feature shared by more than one jurisdiction, provincial or national, the Board solicits opinions from the appropriate names authorities as well as local people. It is Board policy to recognize only one name in one official language for each geographic feature and place in the Province, whenever possible. It is therefore necessary to co-operate with other naming jurisdictions towards the adoption of a single name. However, some features crossing or forming a boundary have a different well-established local name in each jurisdiction (e.g. "Ottawa River", "Riviere des Outaouais"). In all cases local usage remains the prime consideration.

A recent name change by both the Ontario Geographic Names Board and the Commission de Géographie du Québec concerns Chiyask Bay. Field research for the James Bay Toponymy Project in the summer of 1973 revealed that the local name for a feature on the Quebec-Ontario border was "Chiyask Bay", not "Gull Bay" or "Baie de la Mouette", the approved forms in Ontario and Quebec respectively ("chiyask" is the Cree word for *mouette* or gull). Naming authorities agreed to change

their official name to the most frequently used specific—"Chiyask".

When this type of case is encountered, researchers ensure that they consult all cultural groups concerned when determining which name is used by the majority. In arriving at a final decision the Board confers with the other names authority involved.

Naming for geographical referencing purposes

Reasons for naming features

The collection of geographic names in the field or by letter and phone is not the only method by which names are sanctioned for official usage on Government maps and charts and in gazetteers.

It is sometimes essential for referencing purposes to name a geographic feature that has no local name. If, for instance, a name is required to label a navigational hazard on hydrographic charts or to identify a feature referred to in a geological report, the Board will consider applying a name. For example, the Canadian Hydrographic Service requested a name for a group of rocks in deep water in Lake of the Woods, north-western Ontario. The rocks were designated as a navigational hazard and a name was required to facilitate the writing of sailing directions. Board staff determined that there was no local or historical name, so the name Voyageur Rocks was selected in memory of the French explorers Aulneau and La Vérendrye and their company of nineteen voyageurs who were massacred in the area in 1736.

Criteria for selecting names

Where no local name is known and it has been demonstrated to Board satisfaction that a name is required, historical records are examined. Patents plans, survey maps and other historical sources sometimes show a long-forgotten historical name for a feature. If a historical name is not found, the Board is obliged to originate a name. In such cases they consider the adoption of a suitably descriptive or commemorative name. Various types of names that have been used

(*a*) To uniquely describe the feature (e.g. "Cliffside Lake", "Leaning Pine Lake");

(*b*) To describe the shape of the feature on a map (e.g. "Footprint Lakes", "Gooseneck Lake");

(*c*) To recall an incident or event that took place near or on the feature concerned (e.g. "Massacre Island"); and

(*d*) To commemorate a person who made a significant contribution to or had an important association with the local area (e.g. "David Thompson Lake", after the famous explorer, or "J. E. H. MacDonald Lake", after a member of the famous band of artists known as the Group of Seven).

Conclusion

As more field name surveys are undertaken by the Ontario Geographic Names Board using the techniques outlined in this paper, the well-researched areas will be expanded until an accurate names base for the whole province is compiled. However, the geographic names base is not static; it reflects changes in the social, physical and economic fabric of our environment. Thus, the collection of geographic names is an ongoing process. It is hoped that the ideas presented here are of assistance to others in this task.

Annex

FIELD GUIDE QUESTIONNAIRE

(*facsimile*)

Please indicate location of geographic name on map or chart. Give latitude and longitude to nearest second, if possible, and provide details where available. List informants and/or written sources.

Local Name	Name on map or chart	Map/Chart

County/District/Regional Municipality	Geographic Township

Period of time local name used	Translation (if in a language other than English)

Origin of Name	Named after person
	☐ Living ☐ Deceased

If more than one name is used locally, list in order of frequency of use.

If a feature has no local name:

A. Please note any unique characteristics that would suggest a descriptive name and/or
B. Provide data on an interesting historical incident associated with the feature.

Written Sources (tourist pamphlets, local histories, maps, etc.)

Additional Data

Informants

Name	Name	Name
Address	Address	Address
Telephone	Telephone	Telephone
Occupation	Occupation	Occupation

Date	Field Worker

STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN JAPAN

Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

Pour établir une carte nouvelle, les données relatives aux noms de lieux sont rassemblées avec l'aide des autorités publiques de l'endroit.

Le régime juridique est pris en considération dans le cas de la désignation des collectivités publiques, à savoir *mati* (ville), *aza* (hameau), *si* (grande ville), *mura* (village); autrement dit, l'appellation de ces collectivités est régie par la loi. S'agissant des détails géographiques naturels et notamment de ceux qui couvrent de grandes étendues, leur appellation fait l'objet d'un traitement semi-officiel sur la carte des noms géographiques des régions naturelles établie par l'Institut géographique.

Alors que les détails géographiques naturels tels que montagnes, rivières et caps sont en général désignés par les noms que l'usage traditionnel a implantés, il arrive que, par exemple, une certaine montagne soit appelée par des noms différents dans les diverses localités du voisinage et que, de la même façon, un certain cours d'eau porte des noms différents selon que le lieu considéré se trouve en aval ou en amont. Aussi l'Institut géographique et le Département hydrographique ont-ils établi une commission mixte pour la normalisation des noms géographiques qui est chargée d'entériner les noms normalisés devant être utilisés sur les cartes topographiques et sur les cartes marines.

Resumen

Cuando se prepara un nuevo mapa, los datos para denominar lugares se recogen con la asistencia de las entidades públicas locales.

Se sigue un procedimiento reglamentado para designar las entidades públicas locales, por ejemplo, *mati* (pueblo), *aza* (lugar), *si* (ciudad), *mura* (aldea); en otras palabras, la denominación de esas comunidades está regulada por la ley. En el caso de los accidentes geográficos naturales, los que abarcan vastas zonas, se da un tratamiento semi-oficial a su denominación en el Mapa de Nombres

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.55.

Geográficos de Regiones Naturales compilado por el Instituto de Estudios Geográficos.

Mientras, en general, los accidentes geográficos naturales, como montañas, ríos, cabos, etc., se designan con nombres tradicionales, ocurre a veces que una determinada montaña recibe nombres diferentes en localidades diferentes situadas en torno a la montaña, e igualmente un determinado río tiene nombres distintos en lugares situados en la parte alta y baja de su curso. Ante esto, el Instituto de Estudios Geográficos y el Departamento Hidrográfico establecieron la Comisión Mixta de Normalización de Nombres Geográficos para adoptar nombres normalizados a los efectos de su utilización en los mapas topográficos y las cartas marinas.

*

* *

Collection of geographical names in Japan

As there is no Government agency for the centralized collection, registration and administration of geographical names in Japan, the data that are required to determine appropriate names for the preparation of a map are collected from local public bodies. In collecting such data, Form 1 (annex I) is used by the Geographical Survey Institute of the Ministry of Construction, which is in charge of topographic maps, while Form 2 (annex II) is used by the Hydrographic Department of the Maritime Safety Agency, which is in charge of nautical charts.

Both organizations are independently engaged in collecting geographical names, because the system for naming land features is different in nature from that used for naming features in the sea and along the seacoast; moreover, the users of the maps prepared by the respective organizations are of different categories. Consequently, it may happen that the names collected by the two organizations for a given place, particularly one located on the seacoast, will turn out to be different. For this reason, the geographical name of a place given in a topographic map is found to be different in a number of cases from the name given to the same place in a nautical chart. Such being the case, the Geographical Survey Institute and the Hydrographic Department established, in 1960, a Joint Committee on the Standardization of Geographical Names.

When the need arises for naming a geographical feature on the sea bottom in an area newly surveyed within Japanese territorial waters, the Hydrographic Department will seek counsel from the fisheries experimental stations, fisheries co-operative associations, universities and other interested organizations in the neighbourhood of the area surveyed. In the process of the naming in such cases, those names which have been traditionally used by the local residents will be recorded, particularly those used by the local fishermen for many years and those given by scientists. These names will be discussed, and a name will be adopted for the geographical feature on the sea bottom by the Assembly on Geographical Names of Oceans.

Treatment of geographical names

Names of local public bodies etc.

In Japan, the manner of dealing with geographical names varies depending on the type of place involved. The names of communities, known variously as *aza* (subvillage), *mura* (village), *mati* (town) and *si* (city), are stipulated by laws and regulations. For natural places that cover wide areas, such as mountain ranges and plains, the naming is dealt with semi-officially, while traditional names of individual mountains, rivers and capes are not subject to official treatment.

Map of Geographical Names of Natural Regions

In the past, mountain ranges, plains and groups of islands had such a variety of names, traditional or otherwise, that it was difficult to decide which name should be indicated on maps. In order to overcome this difficulty, the names that appeared in various types of literature were collected, and in 1954 the *Map of Geographical Names of Natural Regions* was compiled with advice from the Japan Science Council, mapping institutions and geographers at universities. The names standardized in this map are used in 1 : 200,000-scale topographic maps, 1 : 500,000-scale regional maps and the 1 : 1,000,000-scale map of Japan, which are prepared by the Geographical Survey Institute, Ministry of Construction. Some of these maps have been revised for use in elementary and secondary education.

The compilation of the *Map of Geographical Names of Natural Regions* was carried out in accordance with the following guideline:

Kinds and definition of natural regions

Santi (mountain): Any part of a land mass that projects upwards conspicuously; the term has a generalized implication.

Sanmyaku (mountain range): A chain of *santi* that conspicuously takes on a vein-like shape.

Kōti (highland): A type of *santi* with small undulations, significantly developed valleys and a generally flat surface. Topographically, *kōti* comes in between *santi* and *kōgen*. In terms of human geography, *kōti* represents an area where the valleys are heavily populated.

Kōgen (plateau): A type of *santi* with a flat surface, relatively small undulations and inconspicuously developed, heavily populated valleys.

Kyūryō (hill): A natural elevation lower than a *santi*, with insignificant undulations.

Heiya (plain): A flat expanse of land that fronts on a sea.

Bonti (basin): A flat expanse of land hemmed in by mountains.

Daiti (upland): A higher elevation of land, shaped like a platform, on a *heiya* or *bonti*.

Hantō (peninsula): An area of land jutting out into the water.

Syotō (islands, archipelago): A group of islands. The group is specifically called a *rettō* (island chain) if the islands form a distinct row.

Annex 1

FORM 1, USED BY THE GEOGRAPHICAL SURVEY INSTITUTE, MINISTRY OF CONSTRUCTION, FOR COLLECTION OF GEOGRAPHICAL DATA

（注） 通称を記載する場合は、(3)(4)欄のうちいずれかの該当欄に記入し、摘要欄に通称と記入する。

地名調書二号用紙

関係地形図※

都道府県	ふりがな 市・特別区・郡	ふりがな 区・町・村		1	2	3	4	5	6	※測量年数号
				昭和 年	昭和 年	昭和 年	昭和 年	昭和 年	昭和 年	
大阪府	泉南郡	岬町								

集落（居住地）の名称 (1)			5. 摘要	※補足事項						
ふりがな (2) 総称を統括する名称	ふりがな (3) 個々の名称の総称（町、大字）	ふりがな 4 個々の名称（字、小字）			号	号	号	号	号	号
	たんのわ		(4)欄は通称送り仮名不要							
	1淡輪	2淡輪								
		ひがしむら	通称							
		3東村								
		くろさき	〃							
		4黒崎								
		べっしょ	〃							
		5別所								
		やまだ	〃							
		6山田								
		みねじぞう	通称、峯は慣用漢字使用							
		7峯地蔵								
		はたけ	通称							
		8畑								
		ゆうえんち	愛宕遊園と呼ばれる、通称							
		9遊園地								
	ふけ									
	10深日									
	きょうし	しもきょうし	(4)欄は通称							
	11孝子	12下孝子								
		なかきょうし	通称							
		13中孝子								
		かみきょうし	〃							
		14上孝子								
たなかわ	たにがわ	おだべら	(2)(4)欄は通称							
15多奈川	16多奈川谷川	17小田平								
		ひがし	(4)欄は通称							
		18東								
		しんみなと	通称							
		19新湊								
		ひらの	〃							
		20平野								

照合者

※印の欄には市町村では記入しないこと。

地名調書三号用紙

関係地形図※

区分 (1)	ふりがな 2 名称	所在その他の説明 3	※補足事項	1	2	3	4	5	6
山岳	てらやま								
	100寺山	淡輪							
	いなりやま								
	101稲荷山	淡輪							
峠	なかのとうげ	小島多奈川谷川							
	102中ノ峠								
	さるさかとうげ	多奈川西畑							
	103申阪峠								
	おじろとうげ	多奈川東畑							
	104尾白峠								
	きょうしとうげ	孝子							
	105孝子峠								
	ひらいとうげ	孝子							
	106平井峠								
	しらとうげ	淡輪							
	107白峠								
	きもとうげ	多奈川東畑							
	108木本峠								
谷	いぬかいだに	多奈川谷川							
	109犬飼谷								
	ふんだに	多奈川谷川							
	110粉谷								
	おおさかわん								
	113大阪湾								
	きょうし	孝子							
	111孝子トンネル								
	112関西電力火力発電所	多奈川谷川							

照合者

※印の欄には市町村では記入しないこと

Annex II

FORM 2, USED BY THE HYDROGRAPHIC DEPARTMENT, MARITIME SAFETY AGENCY, FOR COLLECTION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAME DATA

水路部
地名

地名確認調査表

国土地理院への写送付
昭和　年　月　日

新・改測等の別または海図番号	新測海図または海図の図名

（照会の要旨）　海上保安庁刊行の海図および水路誌等に記載する資料といたしたいので、下記の地名について調査のうえ回答願います。なお、本表は複写のうえ国土地理院へ送付しますので、記入には墨または黒インキを用いて下さい。
特に読み方のうち、「つまる音」は小文字で、そのほか濁音、半濁音等ははっきり記入して下さい。

付図上の番号	当庁水路部の資料		回答欄		備考
			正しい地名	通称・別称	地名の起源、変遷およびその他参考となる事項
	読み方 地名	種類	読み方 地名	読み方 地名	

上記のとおり回答します。

昭和　年　月　日

殿

市町村長　　印

In addition to these names, conventional usage is retained for areas traditionally called by the names *gen'ya* (wasteland), *no* (plain), *hara* (field), *dai* (plateau) and *tani* (valley). However, the names *kazangun* and *kazantai* (group or chain of volcanoes) are not treated as falling under the category of natural regions, unless the name *santi* is conventionally used as a regional unit in referring to a volcano.

Standards for names of natural regions

The following standards are applied in giving names to natural regions:

(*a*) The common practice is to retain the traditional usage in the case of names that have been conventionally used on a national scale for many years and that therefore are accepted commonly in broad segments of society (e.g. Ōu Sanmyaku, Kantō Heiya);

(*b*) For a *santi*, the name of the main peak is used (e.g. Mahiru Santi, Ryōhaku Santi);

(*c*) For a *heiya* or *bonti*, the name of the main community is used (e.g. Osaka Heiya, Yamagata Bonti);

(*d*) In some cases, the names determined in accordance with the above standards are considered inappropriate. In such cases the name of the *kuni* (an old name for province) or *gun* ("county") is used, or the compound name of the *kuni* or *gun*, or the name of some other area (e.g. Iwami Kōgen, Uonuma Kyūryō, Tikuhi Santi, Kuzyūkuri Heiya);

(*e*) For a name ending in *-no*, *-dai*, *-hara* or any other suffix representing the name of a natural region, such appellations as *Daiti* and *Kogen* are not used (e.g. Musasino and Makinohara).

Joint Committee on the Standardization of Geographical Names

It happened that many mountains, rivers, capes etc., had a number of different names that were conventionally used. There was therefore some difficulty in standardizing those names. As mentioned earlier, the Geographical Survey Institute and the Hydrographic Department established the Joint Committee on the Standardization of Geographical Names in 1960. Since then the Committee has met two or three times a year and has standardized about 6,000 geographical names.

The Committee's guidelines for place name standardization are as follows:

(*a*) Locally used geographical names are respected;

(*b*) For a district that extends over more than one *si*, *mati* or *mura* and that has more than one name, a survey is carried out and the literature referred to before an appropriate name is determined;

(*c*) The names of territorial waters, international waters and other wide sea areas are determined by the International Hydrographic Organization (IHO) according to international consensus. In principle, the IHO's decisions are adhered to.

ADMINISTRATIVE AGENCIES DEALING WITH GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

As mentioned earlier, there is no centralized Government agency dealing with geographical names. Wherever necessary, the following administrative agencies deal with geographical names:

(*a*) The Administration Improvement Division, Local Administration Bureau, Minister of Home Affairs, handles the naming of communities designated as *to*, *dō*, *hu*, *ken*, *si*, *mati* (town) or *mura*. For smaller communities, at the *tyō* and *aza* levels, community names are dealt with by the respective *si*, *mati* or *mura*;

(*b*) The National Polar Research Institute, Ministry of Education, has authority for place names in the Antarctic;

(*c*) The Geographical Survey Institute, Ministry of Construction, establishes names of natural regions covering wide areas within Japan; finally,

(*d*) The Hydrographic Department of the Maritime Safety Agency has responsibility for names of sea-bottom features.

ÉVOLUTION DES NOMS DE COMMUNE EN FRANCE ENTRE 1970 ET 1975 ET LEUR NORMALISATION

Rapport présenté par la France*

Summary

In France, the standardization of names of municipalities—to which an official form of name is given—has proceeded concurrently with the enactment of legislation introducing changes in the administrative division of the country. Since 1970, this evolution has speeded up considerably.

Although there is a well-defined procedure for altering the name of a municipality, there are occasional divergences between custom and the official form published by the Ministry of the Interior.

The work of the advisory body and the use of modern data processing methods are seen as ways and means of achieving an acceptable solution to this complex problem.

Resumen

La normalización de los nombres de municipios, nombres cuya forma presenta un carácter oficial, se ha ido realizando en Francia a medida que se ha ido cambiando la legislación sobre la división administrativa del país.

* Le texte original de ce rapport a paru sous les cotes E/CONF.69/L.67 et Add.1.

Desde 1970, esta evolución se ha acelerado considerablemente.

Aunque la modificación de un nombre de municipio esté sometida a un procedimiento bien determinado, subsisten a veces divergencias entre el uso y la forma oficial publicada por el Ministerio del Interior.

Los trabajos de la Comisión Consultiva y la utilización de los medios modernos de la informática se presentan como los medios que permiten prever una solución aceptable de este complejo problema.

*

* *

LES ORIGINES LOINTAINES ET L'ÉVOLUTION PERMANENTE

La première loi municipale française promulguée le 14 décembre 1789 ne fut vraiment révolutionnaire que sur le plan administratif. Toutes les communautés de France, urbaines et rurales, formées au fil des siècles, reçurent toutes le même statut. Villes et bourgades, nées autour d'un marché ou par la grâce d'un privilège royal, paroisses paysannes créées au temps du défrichement de la forêt, toutes devinrent circonscription administrative de base.

Lorsque la Révolution institua les départements, elle s'efforça de les différencier des anciennes structures provinciales du royaume, et l'on prête ce mot à Mirabeau qui exprime parfaitement la pensée du législateur : "Plus il y en aura, plus on luttera contre la renaissance des provinces."

Ce principe du grand nombre resta vrai pour les communes, et les projets de création de municipalités importantes, comparables à nos cantons actuels, ne virent jamais le jour. Sur 44 000 paroisses dénombrées dans le royaume à la veille de la Révolution, 38 000 obtinrent le statut de commune, conservant ainsi leur territoire, leur clocher, leur nom.

Ce statut unique recouvrait et recouvre encore une très grande diversité. C'est ainsi que l'on vit coexister des communes d'une superficie de plus de 100 000 hectares comme celle d'Arles et d'autres de quelques hectares seulement comme celle de Castelmoron-de-Médoc dans la Gironde, qui n'en compte que 4. Quant à la population, sa répartition est tout aussi aléatoire.

Sur ces communautés aussi anciennes, aussi disparates, le choc de l'essor économique de notre siècle et de la transformation de la vie quotidienne n'allait pas être sans conséquence.

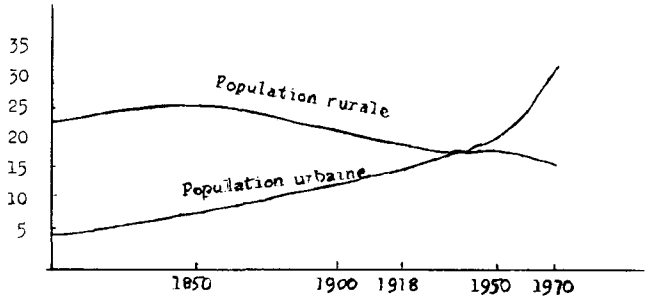
Cette étude se propose d'analyser leur évolution récente et plus particulièrement dans cette marque si sensible de leur personnalité de commune française qu'est leur dénomination.

Si sensibles peu après leur naissance, les municipalités révolutionnaires ne purent supporter aucune référence au vocabulaire de l'ancien régime, voire même à des vocables religieux. Versailles devint "Berceau-de-la-Liberté", Villedieu : "Vérité", St-Cloud : "La Montagne-Chérie". L'ardeur révolutionnaire ne survécut pas au 9 thermidor et, bien que certaines de ces créations aient été conservées, l'attachement des habitants au nom traditionnel de leur commune demeura très vif. Il fallut souvent plus d'un siècle pour que la gêne d'un nom ridicule ou malsonnant décidât les administrés à demander son changement.

Il fallut attendre aussi la fin de la première guerre mondiale pour que, devant l'accroissement des échanges et du trafic postal en particulier, le Ministère de l'intérieur suggère aux localités portant un nom identique d'adjoindre à celui-ci un déterminatif pour éviter les confusions; il est vrai que les 237 communes portant le vocable de Saint-Martin y avaient déjà songé.

A. *Précipitation de l'évolution*

C'est précisément à la fin de la première guerre mondiale qu'il faut rechercher les origines d'un mouvement dont l'ampleur se révélera déterminante 50 ans plus tard. En 1918 la France était encore rurale, en 1970 elle devient industrielle. L'examen du tableau ci-dessous sur la répartition de la population est significatif; on remarque aisément l'accroissement régulier de la population urbaine de 1800 à 1950, accroissement qui s'accélère considérablement ensuite, cependant que la population rurale après avoir augmenté jusque vers 1850 n'a cessé de décroître depuis.



ÉVOLUTION DE LA POPULATION FRANÇAISE URBAINE ET RURALE DE 1800 À 1970 (MILLIONS D'HABITANTS)

Enfin, si l'on considère qu'en 1851 433 communes avaient moins de 100 habitants et qu'en 1962 ce nombre était passé à 3 423, on peut mesurer le déséquilibre de la situation à laquelle étaient confrontées les municipalités à la veille des années 70. Pendant le même laps de temps, le nombre de communes urbaines était passé de 1 000 à 2 400.

Causes économiques et politiques

La divergence des évolutions du peuplement des villes et de celui des campagnes s'inscrit dans la transformation de la vie économique commencée au XIX[e] siècle. Relativement stable entre 1918 et 1945, la population rurale se trouve rapidement en surnombre en raison de l'amélioration des techniques agricoles; elle devient un réservoir de main-d'œuvre pour l'industrie dont le développement est encouragé par la décision politique et la conjoncture internationale favorable.

Causes sociologiques

Les facilités d'accueil et les perspectives d'emploi ont tout naturellement favorisé d'abord l'extension des centres urbains importants existant déjà; et avant que l'accent ne soit mis sur les métropoles d'équilibre et le développement des villes moyennes, on a constaté un veritable bouleversement des banlieues, voire la création de villes nouvelles satellites ou de villes-dortoirs en bordure des zones industrielles. De véritables cités hôtelières ont été érigées en montagne ou sur le littoral car la civilisation des loisirs a elle aussi contribué largement au choc qu'ont subi les vieilles municipalités.

Pour maîtriser les inconvénients nombreux résultant de cette évolution, le législateur s'est préoccupé depuis longtemps d'organiser le regroupement communal, la loi des 12 et 20 août 1790 encourageait déjà la réunion des petites communes. En 1970, malgré les nombreuses mesures législatives ou réglementaires déjà prises, il fallait bien constater que la fusion de 350 communes seulement ne suffisait pas à résoudre le problème.

La réforme projetée fera l'objet de la loi du 16 juillet 1971.

B. *La loi du 16 juillet 1971*

La procédure habituelle du regroupement communal etait auparavant à l'initiative des conseils municipaux intéressés.

L'originalité de la loi du 16 juillet 1971 est de donner aux préfets l'initiative d'une procédure exceptionnelle:

a) Le préfet arrête un plan départemental de fusions après examen des propositions faites par une commission d'élus, composée de conseillers généraux et de maires;

b) Les conseils municipaux concernés ont deux mois pour se prononcer sur la proposition de fusion faite par le préfet;

c) En cas d'accord unanime des conseils municipaux, le préfet prononce la fusion par arrêté;

d) Si l'unanimité de l'accord n'est pas obtenue dans les deux mois, le préfet saisit le conseil général. En cas d'avis favorable de celui-ci, le préfet prononce la fusion; en cas d'avis défavorable, il peut soit abandonner le projet, soit procéder à une fusion partielle des communes favorables, soit organiser un référendum intercommunal. Deux solutions sont possibles: la fusion simple et la fusion association.

La fusion simple entraîne la disparition des anciennes communes.

Le statut de commune associée peut être demandé par toutes les anciennes communes fusionnées, sauf celle où sera situé le chef-lieu de la nouvelle unité administrative; c'est au conseil municipal qu'il appartient d'en faire la demande.

La fusion association reconnaît à l'ancienne commune une certaine personnalité: elle conserve son nom.

Le maire devient maire délégue et conserve ses fonctions d'état civil. La mairie devient mairie annexe et le conseil municipal continue de siéger en tant que commission consultative.

Les effets de cette loi vont etre immediats. En quatre ans, de 1971 a 1975, le nombre de communes passe de 37 630 à 36 394, soit une diminution de 1 236 communes; ce nombre inclut les fusions simples et les fusions associations.

C. *Normalisation des noms de commune*

Terminologie

Il convient tout d'abord de préciser les termes de commune, chef-lieu, hameau. Au moins pour les deux premiers, ils sont souvent utilisés à tort l'un pour l'autre.

La commune est l'unité administrative de base: elle comprend une portion du territoire national. Elle porte un nom qui lui appartient en propre, mais les autorités municipales n'ont pas qualité pour le modifier à leur gré, car sa forme, publiée par le Ministère de l'intérieur, est considérée de fait comme officielle.

Le chef-lieu est l'endroit où se trouve centralisée l'administration municipale, c'est-à-dire où est située la mairie, où sont déposées les archives, où sont reçus les actes d'etat civil et où doit sieger le conseil municipal. Par chef-lieu il faut entendre non pas l'emplacement précis de la mairie, mais l'agglomération dans laquelle elle se trouve. Il existe ainsi des communes sans chef-lieu, dont la mairie est isolee dans la campagne. Il existe aussi des communes dont le nom est différent de celui de leur chef-lieu.

Le hameau est une agglomération d'importance quelconque, distincte du chef-lieu, son évolution propre lui a conféré parfois une notoriété que le centre administratif de la circonscription était loin de posséder.

Le Ministère de l'intérieur a estimé pendant longtemps que seul l'usage pouvait modifier un nom de hameau, sa dénomination n'étant pas officielle car elle ne correspondait à aucune circonscription administrative. Le Conseil d'Etat a finalement admis que le conseil municipal avait compétence pour régler cette question.

Sur le plan des principes, le caractère officiel des noms de commune est bien établi. Par sa circulaire du 15 mai 1884, le Ministère de l'intérieur rappelle aux préfets qu'ils doivent "considerer comme seule officielle l'orthographe que donnent les tableaux de la population des communes de France publiés par le Ministère de l'intérieur à la suite de chaque denombrement quinquennal".

Malgre cela, les discordances ne sont pas rares dans les documents des diverses administrations: cachets, papiers à en-tête, guides, panneaux indicateurs, listes, annuaires, dictionnaires...

Procédure de changement de dénomination

Le changement du nom d'une commune est décidé par décret, sur la demande du conseil municipal, le conseil général consulté et le Conseil d'Etat entendu. Avant la loi du 5 avril 1884, il n'y avait pas de règle de procédure à suivre pour les changements de dénomination des communes, mais la decision etait generalement prise après avis du conseil municipal et consultation du conseil

d'arrondissement. La loi du 5 avril 1884 a supprimé l'intervention obligatoire de ce dernier mais elle a donné au conseil municipal, et à lui seul, l'initiative du changement de nom: l'usage immémorial du nom de la commune était considéré comme un véritable droit de propriété pour celle-ci.

L'ordonnance du 2 novembre 1945 a, comme la loi du 5 avril 1884, exigé l'avis du conseil général, en même temps que celui du Conseil d'Etat et appelé le conseil municipal à prendre lui-même l'initiative de la demande de changement de nom.

Le conseil municipal formule la demande au cours d'une délibération dont le procès-verbal est adressé par le maire au sous-préfet. Ce dernier la transmet avec son avis au préfet qui doit consulter le conseil général et recueillir l'avis du directeur des services d'archives. Le dossier, accompagné d'un rapport motivé, est adressé alors au Ministre de l'intérieur.

Commission consultative

La Commission consultative ou Commission de révision du nom des communes a été créée par un arrêté du 15 août 1948 auprès du Ministère de l'intérieur en vue d'assurer l'unité de vue nécessaire pour une révision générale de la liste officielle des communes.

Présidée par le Directeur des affaires politiques du Ministère, elle est constituée par les représentants des administrations directement concernées ou particulièrement compétentes en la matière:

Archives de France
Ecole nationale des chartes
Centre national de la recherche scientifique (CNRS)
Institut géographique national
Institut national de la statistique et des études économiques
Secrétariat d'Etat au tourisme
Secrétariat d'Etat aux postes et télécommunications
Direction générale des collectivités locales
Direction générale de l'administration.

L'arrêté prévoit que cette commission sera consultée sur les questions d'ordre général intéressant la toponymie tant au point de vue scientifique qu'au point de vue administratif.

C'est à l'occasion du recensement de la population de 1946 qu'est apparue la nécessité d'une profonde remise en ordre dans le domaine des noms de commune. En 1947, le Ministre de l'intérieur soulignait la nécessité d'établir "une liste aussi complète que possible des communes dont la dénomination est critiquable ou incertaine" et de confier cette tâche "à une commission dont les travaux permettraient aux préfets des départements intéressés de provoquer la modification des dénominations défectueuses conformément à la procédure prévue par la législation en vigueur".

Dans cette procédure la commission n'a qu'un rôle consultatif: les dossiers qui lui sont transmis comprennent déjà, avec la demande du conseil municipal, les avis des instances administratives successives; seul, le Conseil d'Etat dispose d'un dossier complet pour émettre un avis.

Elle donne donc un avis motivé, favorable ou défavorable, mais elle peut également laisser le dossier en instance pour demander un supplément d'information ou suggérer même une autre dénomination.

Dès le début de ses travaux la commission a dû étudier un nombre considérable de dossiers qui avaient été classés en trois grandes catégories:

a) Cas d'homonymie à distinguer par l'adjonction d'un déterminatif;
b) Appellations usuelles à consacrer officiellement;
c) Rectifications orthographiques.

L'examen de cette première série a demandé près de 10 ans, à raison de trois à quatre séances annuelles. Il n'a plus été soumis ensuite à la commission que des demandes isolées dont le nombre ne dépasse guère 10 par an. Ceci ne signifie malheureusement pas que la remise en ordre souhaitée à l'origine soit terminée: on rencontre encore des divergences entre les noms usuels et les noms officiels. Il s'agit dans la plupart des cas de la méconnaissance de la forme officielle ou de l'emploi abusif d'une forme abrégée.

Actuellement donc les changements de nom sont devenus rares, et ils sont généralement motivés par des raisons économiques.

L'intérêt commercial ne saurait en aucun cas être pris en considération surtout lorsque le changement, en facilitant la vente d'un produit, serait de nature à tromper l'acheteur.

Afin de freiner cette tendance et de la décourager, la jurisprudence n'admet que des raisons d'ordre administratif et seulement lorsqu'un intérêt sérieux est en jeu.

Dans la plupart des cas le motif invoqué est celui de l'homonymie; mais depuis l'adoption par l'administration des postes et télécommunications du codage des bureaux distributeurs, cet argument a perdu beaucoup de sa valeur et n'est pris en considération que si la confusion peut être faite à l'intérieur d'un même département ou si les localités sont voisines.

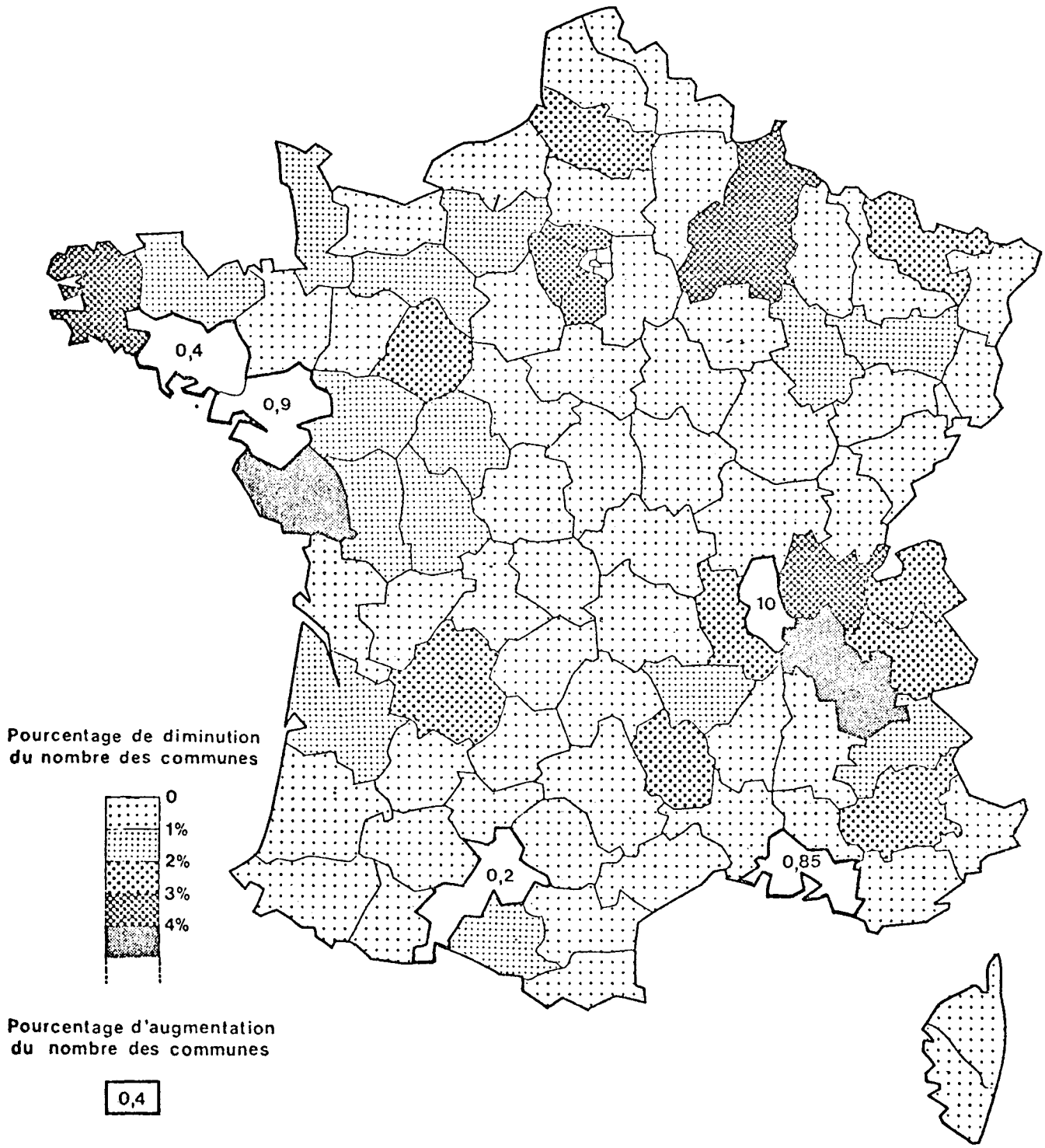
L'informatique et la normalisation

Devant les difficultés de la gestion d'un fichier aussi lourd que celui des noms de commune, il devenait indispensable de recourir aux moyens modernes de l'informatique pour s'affranchir au mieux de l'erreur humaine, inévitable lors de l'établissement et de la reproduction de cette liste riche de 36 000 noms. C'est la tâche entreprise par l'Institut national de la statistique et des études économiques (INSEE) depuis 1974 qui dispose désormais d'un fichier, code officiel géographique (COG).

Ce fichier comporte un enregistrement par communes existant ou ayant existé depuis 1943 avec diverses informations: le codage administratif, le libellé de la commune avec l'article éventuellement. Le libellé de la commune est le dernier en date, en cas de changement la forme périmée n'est pas rappelée.

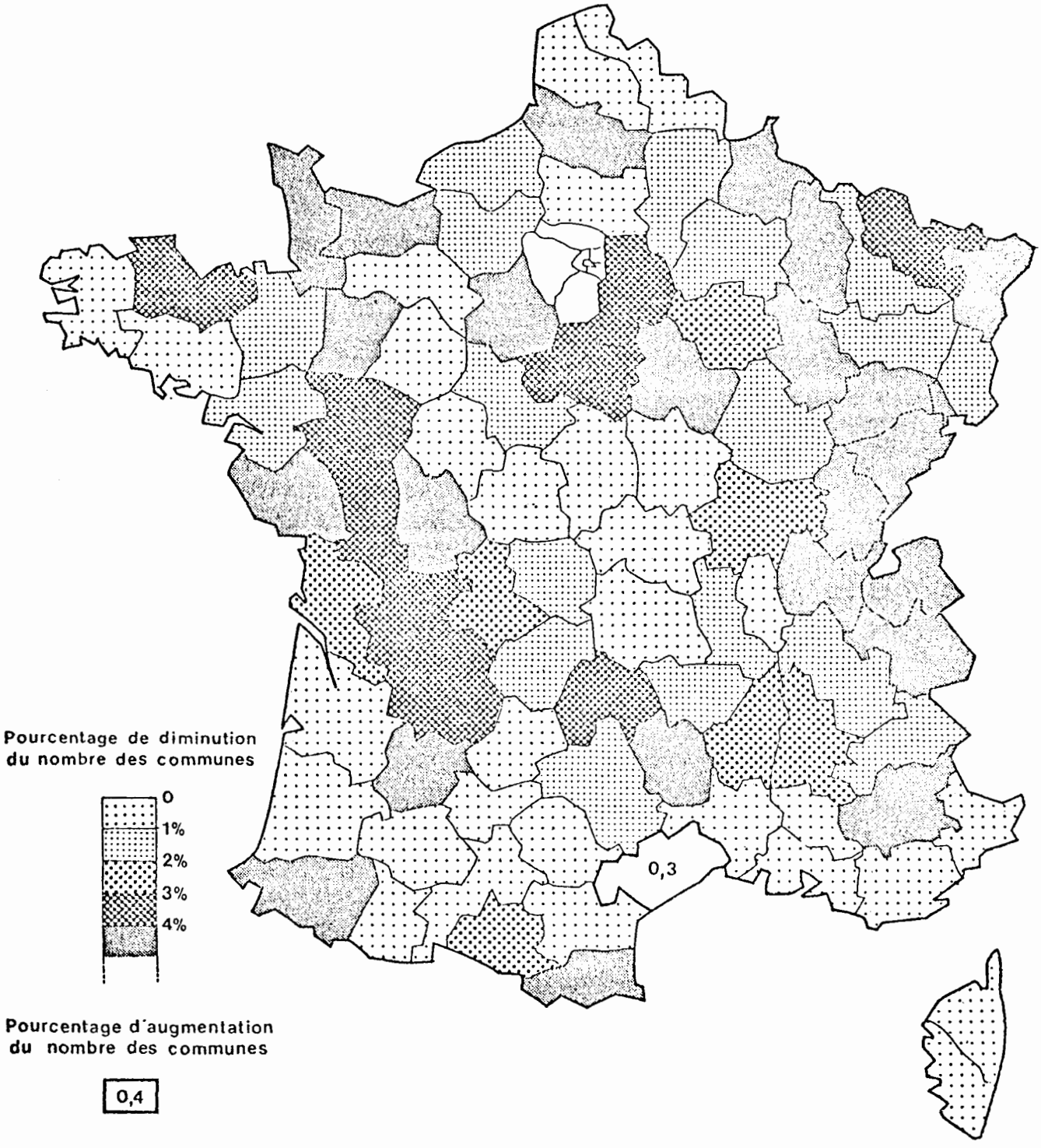
Chaque enregistrement comporte de plus une série de codes caractérisant la nature de la commune; commune disparue, existante, chef-lieu de canton, d'arrondissement, de département.

EVOLUTION DU NOMBRE DES COMMUNES ENTRE LE 10 MAI 1954 ET LE 1er JANVIER 1971



Date du recensement général de la population de 1954

EVOLUTION DU NOMBRE DES COMMUNES ENTRE LE 1er JANVIER 1971 ET LE 1er JANVIER 1975



Le nom peut être transcrit en typographie riche, c'est-à-dire en majuscules et minuscules; les accents et signes diacritiques sont représentés par des caractères symboliques.

Après la mise au point d'un tel outil, il est possible désormais, à l'aide de programmes particuliers, d'obtenir des listes photocomposées utilisables non seulement pour les publications spécialisées mais encore pour des travaux particuliers comme la cartographie générale ou thématique.

* * *

La langue d'une nation évolue, comme son génie propre, et il peut apparaître illusoire d'en prétendre fixer les termes à jamais. La toponymie d'un pays n'échappe pas aux règles générales du langage et évolue elle-même probablement plus vite que celui-ci; il n'est donc pas raisonnable d'espérer pouvoir imposer *ne varietur* les formes en usage à notre époque; c'est pourquoi la procédure de changement des noms de commune, dans la mesure où elle est appliquée à bon escient, est une disposition heureuse. Il n'en demeure pas moins qu'avoir le moyen de diffuser simultanément dans toutes sortes de documents la même forme du nom d'une unité administrative quelconque est un facteur majeur de succès pour aboutir rapidement à une parfaite harmonisation de l'usage et du langage officiel. L'informatique se présente donc comme l'auxiliaire indispensable de la normalisation.

Annexe I

EXEMPLE DE DIVERGENCES RELEVÉES À LA SUITE DU RECENSEMENT DE 1962 ENTRE LE DÉNOMBREMENT DE LA POPULATION DE 1946 TENU À JOUR ET LA POPULATION DE LA FRANCE DE 1962

Dénombrement de la population (1946)	*Population de la France (1962)*
Aisne	
Rouvroy	Rouvroy-sur-Serre
La *Fal*mengrie	La *Fla*mengrie
W*atti*gny	Wa*ti*gny
Fontenelle	Fontenelle-en-Brie
Ariège	
Bo*nn*ac	Bo*n*ac
Esplas	Esplas-de-Sérou
St-*Beauz*eil	St-*Bauz*eil
Calvados	
Cri*que*ville-en-Bessin	Cri*cque*ville-en-Bessin
Vendeuvr*e*	Vendeuvr*es*
Vieux-Bourg *(Le)*	Vieux-Bourg
Pont-Bell*e*nger	Pont-Bell*a*nger
Dordogne	
Nojals-et-Clott*es*	Nojals-et-Clott*e*
Conne-de-Labarde	Conne-de-la-Barde
St-Jory-de-Chal*eix*	St-Jory-de-Chal*ais*
Bassi*l*lac	Bassi*l*ac
Castelnaud-*et*-Fayrac	Castelnau*d*-Fayrac
Doubs	
Maizières-Notre-Dame	Maisières-Notre-Dame
Silley	Silley-Amancey
Longevelle	Longevelle-lès-Russey
St-Julien	St-Julien-lès-Russey
Chatillon	Chatillon-sous-Maîche
Eure	
Aubevo*ie*	Aubevo*ye*
Cailly	Cailly-sur-Eure
Gisay	Gisay-la-Coudre
Jonquerets-de-Livet (Les)	Jonquerets-de-Livet
Bosc-Renoult	Bosc-Renoult-en-Roumois
Appeville	Appeville-Annebault
Bonneville-A*ppe*tot	Bonneville-A*p*tot
Quillebeuf	Quillebeuf-sur-Seine
Barneville	Barneville-sur-Seine
St-Mes*lain*-du-Bosc	St-Mes*lin*-du-Bosc
Collandres	Collandres-Quincarnon
Conches	Conches-en-Ouche
Gaudreville	Gaudreville-la-Rivière
Ber*ang*eville-la-Campagne	Ber*eng*eville-la-Campagne
Gournay	Gournay-le-Guerin
Verneuil	Verneuil-sur-Avre
Noyers	Noyers *(Les)*

Annexe II

EXEMPLES DE DÉNOMINATIONS NOUVELLES À LA SUITE DE REGROUPEMENTS COMMUNAUX

Département de la Haute-Marne

Anciennes communes fusionnées	*Nouvelle commune*
Bannes, Bonnecourt, Frécourt, Dampierre, Changey, Charmes, Orbigny-au-Val, Lecey, Poiseul, Andilly-en-Bassigny, Chatenay-Yaudin, Neuilly-l'Evêque	Val-de-Gris (2 563 habitants)
Avrecourt, Épinant, Lécourt, Maulain, Provenchères-sur-Meuse, Ravennefontaines, Récourt, Saulxures, Montigny-le-Roi	Val-de-Meuse (Le) (2 251 habitants)
Champigny-sous-Varennes, Chézeaux, Varennes-sur-Amance	Terre-Natale (736 habitants)

Annexe III

FICHE DE DEMANDE DE CHANGEMENT DE NOM DE COMMUNE

(Article 1er du code de l'administration communale)

Département : Vendée
Arrondissement : Sables d'Olonne
Canton : Beauvoir-sur-Mer
Commune : Bouin

Nouveau nom propose par le conseil municipal (délibération du 9 octobre 1974)
Ile de Bouin

Motifs invoqués par le conseil municipal :

La commune a toujours gardé son caractère d'insularité du fait qu'elle est entourée en entier par un canal, le Dain, qui part de la mer au nord pour aboutir à la mer à l'ouest... d'où que l'on vienne il faut franchir un pont pour pénétrer sur le territoire communal.

Avis du conseil général (séance du 23 décembre 1974) : favorable.

Avis du directeur départemental des archives :

Bien que ne se justifiant plus sur le plan géographique, cette mention de l'insularité de Bouin peut trouver des explications dans le passé de

cette localité. On peut donc comprendre que le conseil municipal de cette commune désire reprendre l'ancienne appellation "Ile de Bouin" bien que cela ne paraisse pas indispensable.

Avis du directeur départemental des P.T.T: aucune objection.

Avis du Préfet: favorable.

Avis de la Commission consultative (séance du 17 décembre 1975)*:*

Défavorable en raison du déclassement alphabétique que produirait, dans les documents officiels de l'INSEE, l'adoption d'une telle formule, et parce que sa justification géographique paraît insuffisante.

Avis du Conseil d'Etat: favorable.

Décision: ajournement, il sera proposé à la commune l'appellation: Bouin-en-l'Ile.

Annexe IV

DEMANDES DE CHANGEMENT DE NOM REFUSÉES EN RAISON DE LEURS MOTIVATIONS RÉELLES RELEVANT D'INTÉRÊTS ÉCONOMIQUES

Commune	*Changement demandé*
Clansayes	Clansayes-en-Tricastin
Condom	Condom-en-Armagnac
Duilhac	Duilhac-lez-Peyrepertuse
Ginestas	Ginestas-Minervois
Lalande-de-Libourne	Lalande-de-Pomerol
Les Mayons	Les Mayons-des-Maures
Le Muy	Le Muy-de-Provence
Opoul-Perillos	Opoul-le-Château
Plérin	Plérin-sur-Mer
Privas	Privas-en-Vivarais
Propiac	Propiac-les-Bains
Rencurel	Rencurel-en-Vercors
Sainte-Croix	Sainte-Croix-du-Périgord
Sauveterre	Sauveterre-en-Quercy
Solérieux	Solérieux-en-Tricastin
Thiéry	Thiéry-en-Forêt
Toulouges	Toulouges-en-Roussillon

Annexe V

PHOTOCOMPOSITION OBTENUE Á PARTIR DU FICHIER INFORMATISÉ
(Programme 1977. Réfection au 100 000)

St-Priest-la-Feuille (C 0,7) Lizières (C 0,3) Noth (C 0,5) St-Priest-la-Plaine (C 0,4)

Fleurat (C 0,3) la Brionne (C 0,3) St-Fiel (C 0,5) Glénic (C 0,5) Jouillat (C 0,4)

St-Laurent (C 0,4) Ajain (C 0,9) Pionnat (C 0,7) Ladapeyre (C 0,4) Blaudeix (C 0,10)

Jarnages (CT 0,5) Rimondeix (C 0,11) Parsac (C 0,7) Domeyrot (C 0,4) Folles (C 0,8)

St-Pierre-de-Fursac (C 0,9) St-Etienne-de-Fursac (C 0,9) Chamborand (C 0,3) Marsac (C 0,9)

Mourioux (C 0,9) Aulon (C 0,2) Augères (C 0,2) Montaigut-le-Blanc (C 0,5) Gartempe (C 0,2)

St-Silvain-Montaigut (C 0,3) St-Léger-le-Guérétois (C 0,3) St-Victor (C 0,3) la Chapelle-Taillefert (C 0,3)

St-Christophe (C 0,12) Savennes (C 0,10) Peyrabout (C 0,11) Lépinas (C 0,3) la Saunière (C 0,3)

St-Yrieix-les-Bois (C 0,3) St-Hilaire-la-Plaine (C 0,2) Mazeirat (C 0,2) Moutier-d'Ahun (C 0,2)

Vigeville (C 0,13) Cressat (C 0,7) St-Pardoux-les-Cards (C 0,4) Laurière (CT 0,7)

la Jonchère-St-Maurice (C 0,9) Jabreilles-les-Bordes (C 0,3) Arrènes (C 0,4) St-Goussaud (C 0,3)

Châtelus-le-Marcheix (C 0,5) Ceyroux (C 0,2) Janaillat (C 0,5) Bosmoreau-les-Mines (C 0,4)

Azat-Châtenet (C 0,2) Thauron (C 0,2) St-Eloi (C 0,2) Pontarion (CT 0,4) Maisonnisses (C 0,3)

la Chapelle-St-Martial (C 0,13) St-Georges-la-Pouge (C 0,4) Sous-Parsat (C 0,2) le Donzeil (C 0,2)

St-Sulpice-les-Champs (CT 0,4) St-Avit-le-Pauvre (C 0,09) Chamberaud (C 0,10) Fransèches (C 0,3)

Ars (C 0,3) St-Martial-le-Mont (C 0,3) St-Médard-la-Rochette (C 0,8) Issoudun-Létrieix (C 0,4)

Alleyrat (C 0,2) St-Martin-Terressus (C 0,4) St-Laurent-les-Eglises (C 0,6) le Châtenet-en-Dognon (C 0,4)

les Billanges (C 0,4) St-Martin-Sainte-Catherine (C 0,5) St-Pierre-Chérignat (C 0,3)

St-Amand-Jartoudeix (C 0,3) Montboucher (C 0,4) Masbaraud-Mérignat (C 0,3) Faux-Mazuras (C 0,2)

Mansat-la-Courrière (C 0,11) Soubrebost (C 0,2) St-Pierre-Bellevue (C 0,3) St-Hilaire-le-Château (C 0,4)

Vidaillat (C 0,2) le Monteil-au-Vicomte (C 0,3) la Pouge (C 0,11) Chavanat (C 0,2)

Banize (C 0,2) Vallières (C 0,9) St-Michel-de-Veisse (C 0,2) St-Marc-à-Frongier (C 0,4)

Blessac (C 0,3)

LA SOUTERRAINE (CT 5,3) St-Vaury (CT 1,8) Bussière-Dunoise (C 1,3)

St-Sulpice-le-Guérétois (C 1,2) GUERET (P 14,8) Bénévent-l'Abbaye (CT 1,1)

le Grand-Bourg (CT 1,6) Ste-Feyre (C 1,5) Ahun (CT 1,6)

St-Sulpice-Laurière (C 1,3) St-Dizier-Leyrenne (C 1,1) Sardent (C 1,0)

Lavaveix-les-Mines (C 1,0) Sauviat-sur-Vige (C 1,2) Bourganeuf (CT 3,6)

0.7	0.3	0.5	0.4	0.3	0.3	0.5	0.5	0.4	0.4	0.9	0.7	0.4	0.10	0.5	0.11	0.7
0.4	0.8	0.9	0.9	0.3	0.9	0.9	0.2	0.2	0.5	0.2	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.12	0.10
0.11	0.3	0.3	0.3	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.13	0.7	0.4	0.7	0.9	0.3	0.4	0.3	0.5	0.2
0.5	0.4	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.4	0.3	0.13	0.4	0.2	0.2	0.4	0.09	0.10	0.3	0.3	0.3
0.8	0.4	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.4	0.5	0.3	0.3	0.4	0.3	0.2	0.11	0.2	0.3	0.4
0.2	0.3	0.11	0.2	0.2	0.9	0.2	0.4	0.3	5.3	1.8	1.3	1.2	14.8	1.1	1.6	1.5

NATIONAL STANDARDIZATION
Report presented by Cyprus*

Field collection of names

As mentioned in the country report for Cyprus, the field collection of geographical names is undertaken by the Department of Lands and Surveys and the Cyprus Research Center.

To avoid duplication of effort, field-work is organized by pre-allotted areas. The choice of such areas is governed by the programme for the systematic photogrammetric mapping of the island at the scale of 1:5,000 and by the research programme of the Cyprus Research Center.

The collection of names by the surveyors of the Department of Lands and Surveys is carried out as part of the field completion of the photogrammetric machine plots of the national mapping operation. The surveyors aim at selecting at least one name to fall roughly in the centre of each half-kilometre square. As there are many more place names than a map at this scale can accommodate, the surveyors choose the most widely used names in each area. These they obtain from discussion with shepherds, farmers or village elders, who sometimes are able to provide the surveyors with foot-notes in connexion with the derivation of each name.

The names are written on a copy of the map in English, transcribed from either Greek or Turkish, depending on the mapping area being covered. If a particular name is uncommon, its Greek or Turkish original name is written below the transcribed name in brackets. A list of all the names thus collected is prepared in alphabetical order and handed in to the office together with the field-completed photogrammetric plot.

The collection of names by the staff of the Cyprus Research Center is carried out slightly differently. The Center is concerned not only with place names as they are known today, but with all other names that refer to ancient times. The staff go into the history and derivation of names, scientifically and in depth, and prepare special historical gazetteers. Information on names is obtained by visiting the villages in a systematic manner and consulting with the rural constables, village elders and the like. Names are also collected from classical maps and land records held by various authorities. They are then listed in alphabetical order and passed on to the Cyprus Permanent Committee for the Standardisation of Geographical Names for further processing.

Office treatment of names

When the list of names from the Surveyor is received by the Cartographic Office, it is checked against older maps and against plans at other scales, prepared some 60 years ago. Names are then distributed evenly over the surface of the map and a comparison is made with adjoining sheets to ensure consistency.

A second attempt is made in the office to ensure standardization of common names and the correctness of the transcriptions made by the field surveyors. Finally, the revised list, containing the English transcription of each name with its Greek or Turkish equivalent, is submitted to the Cyprus Permanent Committee for the Standardisation of Geographical Names. The Committee meets at regular intervals as required, and approves or revises the submitted lists. A copy of the final list is then

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.80.

returned to the Cartographic Office, while a copy is retained by the Committee for the compilation of the National Gazetteer.

Names collected and listed by the Cyprus Research Center, as described above, are treated in a similar manner. Names proposed by local authorities for new townships, re-sited villages, new refugee settlements or street names are submitted to the Committee for domestic standardization and transcription into English which is the most used foreign language in the Island.

Transcription of the Greek alphabet into the Roman alphabet is by no means an easy or simple operation. The Committee is, however, trying to maintain a balance between national tradition and simplicity in presenting geographical names in a foreign language. No transcription difficulties are experienced with Turkish names.

Treatment of names in multilingual areas

In Cyprus, we have not experienced problems in multilingual areas. Until the Turkish invasion of Cyprus in July–August 1974, the inhabitants of the island lived either in mixed towns or villages or in purely Greek and purely Turkish villages, with a ratio of about five Greeks to one Turk. The *Cyprus Population Distribution Map*, presented at the Conference, demonstrates the accuracy of this statement.

In purely Greek or purely Turkish areas, names are treated as described in the earlier paragraphs. In mixed villages, each name is treated on the basis of its ethnic or linguistic origin and transcribed into English, using as a guide the *Romanization Guide* published by the Department of State of the United States in 1964.

In the British Sovereign Base Areas, names appear in all three languages (English, Greek and Turkish). Street names in the built-up areas of Akrotiri, Episkopi and Dhekelia are all in English.

In the northern part of Cyprus, which is under Turkish military occupation, all geographical names have been changed. By this action. Turkey has shown disrespect to history, culture and legality. Although there is an official edition of the Administration and Road Map of Cyprus in English, Greek and Turkish, the invaders renamed everything, contravening every law of ethics and creating confusion among members of the United Nations Force in Cyprus and among diplomats who visit the north part of Cyprus.

The Cyprus Government considers that this Conference is the most appropriate body to condemn the Turkish action in renaming geographical names in the northern part of the country, and seeks the support of the Conference in the maintenance of all geographical names throughout the territory of Cyprus as they existed prior to the invasion.

Administrative structure of national names authorities

The Cyprus Permanent Committee for the Standardization of Geographical Names was established by the Cyprus Council of Ministers' decision No. 15,769 of 21 April 1977. The decision provides, *inter alia*, that the Committee is to be composed of five members as follows:

(*a*) One member to be nominated by the Ministry of the Interior;

(*b*) One member to be nominated by the Department of Lands and Surveys;

(*c*) Two members to be nominated by the Ministry of Education; and

(*d*) One member to be nominated by the Cyprus Research Center.

The terms of reference of the Committee are:

(*a*) To organize, co-ordinate and administer the collection and domestic standardization of names and to undertake any other matter with local authorities with respect to names;

(*b*) To communicate and co-operate with the appropriate Section of the United Nations Organization in connexion with geographical names; and

(*c*) To communicate and co-operate with other national names authorities as the need arises.

The address of the Committee is

Cyprus Permanent Committee for the Standardisation of Geographical Names
c/o Cyprus Research Center
Post Office Box 1436
Nicosia, Cyprus

NATIONAL STANDARDIZATION: THE CYRILLIC AND THE ROMAN WRITING SYSTEMS IN YUGOSLAVIA

Report presented by Yugoslavia*

In standardizing geographical names and terms (names of populated places, hydronyms, oronyms and names of regions) within the boundaries of Yugoslavia in maps, atlases and all professional and scientific documentation, the method generally used is to write geographical names in Roman or Cyrillic characters in accordance with the spelling and pronunciation used in the language regions in which these named geographical features are situated. The purpose of this paper is to clarify the scripts used in Yugoslavia and to show the procedure used in their mutual transliteration.

At the Second United Nations Conference the resolution entitled "Cyrillic alphabets of Yugoslavia" was adopted. This resolution recommended that the system used in the official publication *Gazetteer of Inhabited*

* The original text of this paper, prepared by M. Peterca, Yugoslavia, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.87 (part II).

Annex

CYRILLIC AND ROMAN WRITING SYSTEMS IN YUGOSLAVIA

Cyrillic script of the Serbo-Croatian language standard	*Cyrillic script of the Macedonian language standard*	*Roman script of the Serbo-Croatian (Croato-Serbian) language standard*	*Roman script of the Slovenian language standard*	*Remarks*
А а	А а	A a	A a	
Б б	Б б	B b	B b	
В в	В в	V v	V v	
Г г	Г г	G g	G g	
Д д	Д д	D d	D d	
Ђ ђ	Ѓ ѓ	Đ đ		*See note (1)*
Е е	Е е	E e	E e	
Ж ж	Ж ж	Ž ž	Ž ž	
З з	З з	Z z	Z z	
	S s			*In Roman scripts replaced by* dz
И и	И и	I i	I i	
Ј ј	Ј ј	J j	J j	
К к	К к	K k	K k	
Л л	Л л	L l	L l	
Љ љ	Љ љ	Lj lj		
М м	М м	M m	M m	
Н н	Н н	N n	N n	
Њ њ	Њ њ	Nj nj		
О о	О о	O o	O o	
П п	П п	P p	P p	
Р р	Р р	R r	R r	
С с	С с	S s	S s	
Т т	Т т	T t	T t	
Ћ ћ	Ќ ќ	Ć ć		*See note (2)*
У у	У у	U u	U u	
Ф ф	Ф ф	F f	F f	
Х х	Х х	H h	H h	
Ц ц	Ц ц	C c	C c	
Ч ч	Ч ч	Č č	Č č	
Џ џ	Џ џ	Dž dž		
Ш ш	Ш ш	Š š	Š š	

Notes

In Roman scripts there are two exceptions:

(1) ѓ *in front of* е *and* и *changes into* g, *e. g.*

Ѓевгелија = Gevgelija

Ѓинтовци = Gintovci

(2) ќ *in front of* е *and* и *changes into* k, *e. g.*

Ќесендре = Kesendre

Ќирово = Kirovo

Places, published by the Federal Statistical Office, Belgrade (latest edition, 1971) be adopted as the international system for the romanization of the Cyrillic alphabets officially used for geographical names in the territory of Yugoslavia.[1]

This resolution can cause some difficulties in international use. Therefore a further step can be taken by explaining herein the system that is used in Yugoslav practice for the romanization of Cyrillic script.

The problem arises because in Yugoslavia there are several variants of both the Roman and Cyrillic scripts, each variant having its own characteristics.

The Roman alphabet as used on the Serbo-Croat (that is, on the Croato-Serbian language territory) consists of 30 sounds and 27 letters. This differs from the Roman alphabet used in the Slovenian language, which consists of only 25 sounds and 25 letters.

Similarly, the Cyrillic alphabet used on the Serbo-Croat consists of 30 characters and 30 sounds, whereas the Cyrillic alphabet used in the Macedonian language consists of 31 characters and 31 sounds.

The annex to this paper gives a table of the Cyrillic and the Roman scripts used in Yugoslavia. This table can be used as a transliteration key. The key is used for the romanization of the Cyrillic alphabets in the preparation of geographical and topographic maps on which Yugoslav geographical names are written in Roman script.

The chief characteristic of this system is its reversibility: the same system of transliteration is used for transcription either to or from either the Roman or the Cyrillic scripts. It must be borne in mind, however, that the sounds *lj*, *nj* and *dž* must not be substituted by the characters **лј**, **нј** and **џж**, but rather by the characters and sounds **љ**, **њ** and **џ**, and that the sound *dz* must be indicated by *s*, not by **дз**, when transliterating to the Macedonian Cyrillic alphabet. In all the other cases transliteration is done according to the "letter-for-letter" and "sound-for-sound" principles.

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III, resolution 6.

CRITICAL REMARKS ON THE TREATMENT OF SOME YUGOSLAV NAMES IN INTERNATIONAL USAGE

Report presented by Yugoslavia*

In some foreign cartographic publications (which are often intended for international use) the treatment of some names relating to geographical entities on the territory of Yugoslavia does not accord with our position regarding international usage of Yugoslav geographical names. This situation should be corrected, as the national standards of the countries on whose territory the described features are located must be respected in international usage.

Several examples of such incorrect treatment of Yugoslav geographical names, as published in several different atlases[1] and maps, are given in the following table:

Incorrect name	*Correct name*
Abbazia (Opatija)	Opatija
Bacher Gebirge	Pohorje
Celje (Cilli)	Celje
Dravograd (Unterdrauburg)	Dravograd
Karolyvaros (Karlovac)	Karlovac
Kočevje (Gottschee)	Kočevje
Kotor (Cattaro)	Kotor
Kranj (Krainburg)	Kranj
Krško (Gurkfeld)	Krško
Lastovo (Lagosta)	Lastovo
Ljubljana (Laibach)	Ljubljana
Maribor (Marburg)	Maribor
Novi Sad (Neusatz)	Novi Sad
Osijek (Esseg)	Osijek
Pancsova (Pančevo)	Pančevo
Petrovaradin (Peterwardein)	Petrovaradin
Pirano	Piran
Postojna (Adelsberg)	Postojna
Skopje (Usküb)	Skopje
Subotica (Maria Theresiopel)	Subotica
Ujvidek (Novi Sad)	Novi Sad
Varasd (Varaždin)	Varaždin
Veröce (Virovitica)	Virovitica
Vrhnika (Oberlaibach)	Vrhnika
Zagreb (Agram)	Zagreb
Zara (Zadar)	Zadar
Zemun (Semlin)	Zemun
Zengg (Senj)	Senj

A particularly striking example of disregard for our national standards is the treatment of our geographical names on the jacket of *Meyers Universal-Atlas*,[2] where all the geographical names on the territory of Slovenia and of part of Croatia are given only in their Germanized form. Thus, instead of the correct names of Ljubljana, Maribor, Celje, Ptuj, Kranj, Kočevje, Zagreb, Zagrebačka Gora etc., the reader sees the incorrect names "Laibach", "Marburg", "Cilli", "Pettau", "Krainburg", "Gottschee", "Agram", "Agramer Geb", etc.

Comparing the names from those publications to their correct forms, three types of errors can be found. Either

(*a*) The incorrect form of the name is given in brackets after the correct form;

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.87 (part III).

[1] *The Oxford Atlas*; *Hammond Ambassador World Atlas*; *Rand-McNally World Atlas*; *Atlas International Larousse*; *Bertelsmann Atlas International*; *Földrajzi Atlas*; *Schweizerischer Mittelschulatlases*; and *Meyers Universal-Atlas*.

[2] *Meyers Universal-Atlas*, (Mannheim/Wien/Zürich, Bibliographisches Institut, 1970).

(*b*) The correct form of the name is given in brackets after the incorrect form; or

(*c*) The correct form is not given at all.

We think that, disregarding the differences in treatment, none of the cases cited can be considered acceptable, because even the names in brackets must represent geographical information and thus must reflect national characteristics of the territory concerned.

In this regard, we regard as realistic the recommendations contained in resolutions 29 and 31 of the London Conference,[3] in which the need is emphasized for placing maximal limits on the use of exonyms.

This question is not only of a formal nature; it can imply much more important things. The names used, according to their manner and time of origin, often are associated with periods of subjugation of our territories in the near or distant past. Such names thus communicate incorrect information to non-Yugoslav users of these maps and atlases, because they do not reflect the objective picture of national possession of the populations that live on those territories.

In general, the problem of abolishing (or strictly limiting the use of) exonyms has become more and more current because many of the countries that have achieved independence tend also to express their national identity by having their own geographical names.

[3] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

A NATIONAL POLICY FOR THE BILINGUAL TREATMENT OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON CANADIAN MAPS

Report presented by Canada*

Résumé

Pour donner suite à une demande faite en 1960 par les éditeurs de cartes terrestres, cartes marines et nomenclatures toponymiques pour le compte du Gouvernement canadien, concernant l'élaboration d'une politique nouvelle et moderne en matière de noms géographiques qui puisse satisfaire les exigences linguistiques des deux groupes nationaux fondateurs du Canada dans la présentation des noms et des légendes sur les cartes, le Comité permanent des noms géographiques canadien a entrepris des recherches qui ont abouti à la formulation de cette politique en 1970. Les principes directeurs ci-après ont été adoptés en 1976:

a) Un moratoire est imposé en ce qui concerne la traduction des noms géographiques officiels au Canada utilisés pour les cartes terrestres, les cartes marines et les nomenclatures toponymiques du Gouvernement canadien quand cette traduction n'est pas reconnue comme officielle à l'intérieur des limites politiques de la province ou du territoire intéressé;

b) A l'intérieur de ces limites provinciales et territoriales, compatibles (chaque fois que cela est possible) avec le principe territorial de la dénomination géographique, un seul nom sera reconnu comme officiel par le Gouvernement canadien pour tout détail géographique ou lieu habité quel qu'il soit. Les noms "Rivière des Outaouais" et "Ottawa River" sont donc l'un et l'autre officiels à l'heure actuelle pour le même détail. Le premier est reconnu au Québec, le second dans l'Ontario. Les deux sont reconnus par le Canada;

c) L'application de cette politique est limitée dans ses effets aux cartes topographiques et planimétriques, aux cartes hydrographiques, aux nomenclatures toponymiques et autres publications du Gouvernement canadien qui ont surtout pour objet la représentation des faits plutôt que la traduction, officielle ou non, de noms géographiques officiels.

Cette politique ne s'applique pas aux autres publications cartographiques du Gouvernement, telles que l'atlas national, qui normalement utilisent les traductions intégrales ou partielles des noms géographiques en conformité avec les normes linguistiques et orthographiques agréées pour les publications scolaires et universitaires, ainsi que pour les services de presse, de radio et de télévision qui travaillent dans les deux langues officielles. La nouvelle politique met l'accent sur le facteur politique plutôt que sur le facteur linguistique dans le traitement des noms concernant les régions anglophones et francophones, accordant par là la priorité aux limites des provinces et non pas aux frontières linguistiques.

Cette politique constitue néanmoins un pas important vers l'élaboration d'une future politique fondée sur la langue qui reflétera plus équitablement qu'il n'est possible de le faire actuellement la répartition territoriale des deux langues officielles.

Resumen

En respuesta a una petición hecha en 1960 por los editores de mapas, cartas y nomenclátores del Gobierno canadiense para que se adoptara una política nueva y actualizada en materia de nombres geográficos que satisficiera las exigencias lingüísticas de los dos grupos nacionales fundadores del Canadá en la presentación de la nomenclatura y los textos de los mapas, la Comisión Permanente de Nombres Geográficos emprendió estudios

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Michael B. Smart, Executive Secretary, Ontario Geographic Names Board, Canada, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.88.

que desembocaron en la formulación de una política de ese tipo en 1970. En 1976 se adoptaron las directrices siguientes:

a) Se aplaza toda nueva traducción de los nombres geográficos oficiales canadienses utilizados en los mapas, las cartas y los nomenclátores del Gobierno canadiense cuando no se reconozca como oficial esa traducción dentro de los límites políticos de la provincia o el territorio de que se trate;

b) Dentro de dichos límites provinciales o territoriales, que se ajusten (cuando sea posible) al principio territorial de la denominación geográfica, en todo momento el Gobierno del Canadá reconocerá como oficial sólo un nombre para designar cualquier accidente geográfico o núcleo poblado. Por ello, en la actualidad *Rivière des Outaouais* y *Ottawa River* son los nombres oficiales del mismo accidente. Uno se reconoce en Quebec y el otro en Ontario. Ambos están reconocidos en el Canadá;

c) La aplicación de la política se limita en sus efectos a los mapas topográficos y planimétricos, las cartas hidrográficas, los nomenclátores y otras publicaciones del Gobierno del Canadá dedicadas principalmente a la representación objetiva más que a la traducción, oficial o no, de los nombres geográficos oficiales.

La política no se aplica a otras publicaciones cartográficas del Gobierno, como el atlas nacional, que normalmente utilizan traducciones totales o parciales de los nombres geográficos de acuerdo con las normas lingüísticas y ortográficas autorizadas para las publicaciones escolares y universitarias, así como para la prensa, la radio y la televisión que emplean ambos idiomas oficiales. La nueva política insiste más en el factor político que en el lingüístico en su tratamiento de los nombres de las zonas de habla inglesa y francesa, concediendo así prioridad a los límites provinciales más que a los idiomáticos.

La politica constituye, sin embargo, un paso importante hacia la formulación de una politica futura basada en los idiomas que reflejaria la distribución territorial de los dos idiomas oficiales más equitativamente de lo que es posible en la actualidad.

*

* *

The double name dilemma

At a meeting of the General Assembly of the Société du Parler Français au Canada in Quebec City in 1907, Société president, the Rev. Camille Roy, in a brief to the Geographical Board of Canada, delivered a strongly worded objection to the just-announced intention of that body to authorize a double geographical nomenclature for the Province of Quebec. In effect, a double name standard was being proposed for French Canada. The Board, established 10 years earlier by Order in Council as the first national organization to control geographical names in Canada, was to endorse simultaneous recognition of both French and English geographical names for the same rivers, lakes, islands, villages and towns in the province. The policy, in its various forms and modifications, was to last 70 years.

Quebec's argument against adoption and imposition of such a policy was as persuasive as it was fair. The importance of not losing sight of the territorial- or local-usage principle in mapping and charting geographical names and geographical name information (nature and extent of features named etc.) was stressed in the most convincing terms. The recording and official approval of names of topographical and hydrographic features firmly established in current local or regional usage as essential cartographic references should not, it was argued, be subject to the prejudicial treatment of one linguistic group. In 1907, cartographic toponymy at the federal level was dominated, as it had been since 1763, by the English-speaking group. Until very recently this continued to be the case. The current situation is one in which the French-speaking group has assumed—in fact, has reassumed—the dominant position in the Province of Quebec.

Gallicization of Quebec toponymy

Large numbers of geographical names of English-Scottish-Irish-Welsh origin for places and features in present-day Quebec have, for generations, been an integral part of the cultural landscape of the Ottawa and St. Lawrence valleys, the southern Laurentians and the Eastern Townships (none of which, of course, is today so named in the Province). Such names persist in local usage in spite of the fact that in recent years they have lost their official identity entirely in matters of administration and government. None appears in its original form any longer on contemporary documents authorized by the Province of Quebec.

Notwithstanding this fact, and the attendant loss of identity, the traditional names continue to be the only geographical references acceptable to a sizable portion of the English-speaking (and indeed the French-speaking) population; among the English-speaking population must be included many of the Amerindians and most if not all of the Inuit (Eskimos) in the north.

With the demotion of English in Quebec in 1977 (with the passage of Language Bill 1 by the new Partie Québecois government) to the same status as Naskapi, Cree and Italian in toponymic matters, and implementation of recent provincial government directives relating to and specifically designed for the gallicization of all media of administration, instruction and the like, the effect on English toponymy has been predictable. Unlike Cree or Inuit, which do not enjoy official status in Quebec or elsewhere in Canada, English is—with the exception of Quebec—official throughout the provinces and territories.

Ontario treats its Amerindian toponymy (largely Ojibway and Cree) as Quebec deals with its English toponymy now (i.e. since the proclamation of French as the official language in that province). Anglo-Saxon-based geographical names have thus become an en-

dangered species in their own country. Their demise east of the Riviere des Outaouais appears imminent.

The Amerindian and Inuit toponymies differ from the European in being oral and unwritten. For that reason they have been orthographically organized by the latter into two main notation systems, one French and one English. Fluctuations in and migrations of the real linguistic boundaries in Canada between the two founding European traditions have called for numerous phonemic modifications in the aboriginal names: Waswagami becomes Ouasouagami, Kinoje becomes Kinosheo and so on. Maps and charts reflect the political evolution of Canada in many ways. Toponymy provides insight into the manner in which the country's native geographical names have been recorded—or rerecorded—by the two European races for their respective user groups. All of which is quite apart from translation and deletion of the unwritten traditional forms, which was done everywhere in favour of European nomenclature—traditional and otherwise—and which tends to be the usual course of events in any case. It does provide toponymy with its fascinating dimensions and the historical or research toponymist with his *raison d'etre*.

English has, therefore, joined Cree, Montagnais, Naskapi and the various other unofficial languages of Quebec in having its toponymy organized into a carto-orthographic form acceptable to the French-speaking Quebeçois user group. In the process of being relegated to this level, large numbers of geographical names having their roots in the linguistic traditions of Cook, Wolfe, Hearne, Frobisher, MacKenzie, Thompson and Fraser are either translated out of existence and thus off the map entirely (specific plus generic) or in part (generic only). For example, a stream known as Bonnie Brook in Quebec would be transmogrified as Ruisseau Bonnie. While Ontario does not any longer do the same with its French names it continues to do very much the same thing (as do all the Provinces) with what are designated unofficial languages (Ojibway, Cree, Iroquois, Seneca, Greek, German, Ukrainian etc.) The Cree name "Kwastikamosipiy thus becomes anglicized as "Kwastigam Creek", for example. A standardized English orthography (with minor variations in various cultural regions of Canada) is employed in transcribing Ojibway and Cree into forms communicable to English-speaking Ontario map users.

French toponymy used to be subjected to the same forms of linguistic alteration and transmogrification in Ontario (as it probably still is in many parts of Canada) as is now being meted out to its Anglo-Saxon counterpart in most of French Canada. In other words, arbitrary translation of ostensibly descriptive or translatable English nomenclature proceeds apace. Feature names and unincorporated populated place names are stripped of their generic elements and provided with what the official translation authority deems to be approximate French equivalents. Toponymic policy in this regard has recently been reversed in Ontario. The result has been equal treatment for French and English toponymy. French names are now recognized and are shown in accordance with the orthographic norms (accents, apostrophes, hyphens etc.) appropriate to that linguistic tradition, wherever so indicated by local usage. Elsewhere the two traditions appear to be going in different directions.

Quebec is restoring its long-submerged toponymy. This is immediately evident to the traveller in its road signs, train and bus schedules, post offices and, of course, maps. In the process it has perforce rescinded and is rescinding, has hybridized and is hybridizing, other toponymic traditions in its own image, just as the English did to the French and the French to the Huron and Iroquois. In so far as English toponymy in Quebec is concerned, its non-translated, non-hybridized form has largely vanished or is vanishing from contemporary official maps, road signs, banks, post offices and train and bus timetables.

The future cartographic existence of English toponymy will in fact be limited to atlases, encyclopaedias and histories—if even there. Otherwise there remains only the oral tradition. It will be a new experience for English toponymy in Canada.

The inevitable result will be the disappearance of English lake, river, island, village and town names from maps, charts, gazetteers, commercial establishments (hotels, restaurants etc.), assessment rolls, electoral lists, letterheads, administrative and related official documents, legal descriptions, the press, radio and television.

The admonitions of the Société du Parler Français au Canada against just such a state of affairs seem to have fallen on deaf ears on both sides of the linguistic fence. Most likely, the 1907 recommendations and views of the Société were for years judged unworkable in the face of the continuing difficulties plaguing Canadian map and chart production agencies as they tried to equate local and official usage for cartographic referencing purposes while coping with the political vicissitudes of the day.

Viewed against this background, the 1907 Quebec position can be seen to have gained in stature. It has lost none of its impact or relevance. In fact, its message would appear more compelling than ever. Establishment in 1971 of the Sub-Committee (later the Advisory Committee) for the Study of a National Policy for Geographical Names on Canadian Maps under the aegis of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names (CPCGN)[1] was the federal Government's response to new legislation and to a new political climate that made it mandatory for future Canadian maps to be as acceptable to the French-Canadian map user as they had been to English-Canadian users for generations. Henceforward, maps would have to serve both languages. The question was: How?

The sub-committee was forced to meet head-on the long-imposed double standard in geographical naming fathered by the Geographical Board. As a result of that confrontation, and mindful of Quebec's growing independence in matters of language, especially toponymy, the Committee dismantled the 70-year-old policy of

[1] Established by Order-in-Council in 1961 as successor to the Geographical Board of Canada (1897–1948).

recognizing two names for virtually every major geographical feature and place in Canada. Ratification of its recommendations for a politically acceptable language policy for Canadian maps came from the CPCGN in 1976 at its Annual Meeting in Winnipeg. Unfortunately, however, dismantlement of an English-dominated dual-nomenclature policy for Canadian features and places (particularly Quebec's) did not come in time to ward off establishment in Quebec of a French-only policy for that province.

Both policies represent over-reactions to the previous toponymic order. Both contravene the fundamental tenet of cartographic toponymy that wherever possible, and only except where there are convincing reasons to the contrary, the local or territorial usage should prevail in determining what name should be adopted as official in any jurisdiction for any feature or place at a given time. One can only assume that convincing reasons of a political, linguistic and cultural nature exist in present-day Quebec to account for the fact that current Quebec policy has moved so far from the position espoused in 1907; there probably is no alternative.

The Québecois position in 1907

The Société du Parler Français au Canada brief of 1907 to the Geographical Board of Canada underscored the following points:

(*a*) If implemented (as it was), the Geographical Board dual-name formula would result in toponymic chaos and confusion in Quebec and across Canada;

(*b*) The position of the Société should be taken into account by the Geographical Board of Canada in any decision rendered by that body concerning the official treatment of French toponymy in Canada that would authorize adoption of a double geographical nomenclature standard for Quebec. The Quebec of 1907 was a much smaller province than it is today—it greatly increased its geographical area in 1912 with the acquisition of the District of Ungava (later known as New Quebec). The new territory brought with it thousands of Amerindians and Inuit whose second language was, and still is, English;

(*c*) The Société was adamant in its determination to resist the idea of a two-tiered geographical nomenclature being authorized and implemented for use in the Province, arguing—convincingly—that place and feature names, like personal names, are proper names. As proper names they are, by definition, untranslatable. The generic elements of such names are only translatable in an unofficial context. Thus, "Lac" in Lac Seul (Ontario) and "River" in Lost River (Quebec) cannot be regarded as interchangeable parts or components of a name (as distinct from M., Mme., Mr., Mrs., Ms., Herr, Frau, Señor or Señora etc.). Geographical entities, unlike people, tend to stay where they are; they are topographically locked in. Their generics should be treated accordingly;

(*d*) It was also noted that one consults an atlas if the question to be answered is not "What is the official (locally recognized) name of this feature?" but "What is the nature of this feature?" Generics are translated for that precise reason. The Canadian geographical name Davis Strait (between Baffin Bay and the Labrador Sea) emerges as *Davisstrasse* or *Detroit de Davis* in German and French text publications. This is perfectly reasonable; the non-English speaker needs to know that the feature depicted is a strait and not a sound or inlet. Official documents, in contrast, restrict themselves (at least they should) to official nomenclature only. Deliberately excluding a locally established name from an official map (either in part or entirely) is bad enough, but to replace it with another, which is meaningless to the community concerned, is infinitely worse. It makes as much cartographic sense as giving the map user a swamp for a lake or an apple orchard for a cemetery. Proper names don't translate: Joseph Green is not the same as, nor can it be associated with, its Italian counterpart, Giuseppe Verdi. The same can be said of the Danish-German Hans Hansen, which becomes an entirely different name when rendered in its slavic form, Ivan Ivanovich (or Ivanovic). In each example the one name is the linguistic equivalent of the other. On a passport, however, only one can be official. Encyclopaedias and historical texts, like atlases and unlike official maps, are neither expected nor obliged to use proper names. They don't;

(*e*) It was the Société's view in 1907 that geographical names, generic as well as specific, should be retained in their original form, whether of English, Scottish, Irish, Welsh or other origin; this applied equally to names of French origin. There was thus no reason to create a double nomenclature. These views were recorded by the General Assembly in Quebec City as part of the Special Committee's report and official statement on the subject, dated 9 May 1907.

The new national policy

The Advisory Committee's draft recommendations 69 years later were submitted by Committee Chairman Smart to the CPCGN Annual Meeting at Winnipeg. The CPCGN adopted the policy recommendations as presented.

The language policy addresses itself to the Canadian cartographic establishment. In so doing it has been specifically designed

(*a*) To bury the idea of a double name standard for Canada once and for all;

(*b*) To accord long-overdue recognition to the primacy of the territorial (local usage) principle;

(*c*) To attempt to create some semblance of name standardization for the nation, even if more time is required before the gap between local and official usage can be bridged in certain areas; and

(*d*) To provide the cartographers responsible for compiling data for federal map and chart production with guidelines necessary for negotiating routine problems of name translation and political-linguistic jurisdiction.

In accordance with the recommendations of the Advisory Committee for the Study of a National Policy

for Geographical Names (1976), the CPCGN has adopted the following policy as official for all federal agencies concerned with procedures governing field collection, office treatment, cartographic compilation, revision and up-dating of geographical nomenclature and related information required for the production of topographic and planimetric maps, hydrographic charts and gazetteers by the Government of Canada:

(*a*) A moratorium is imposed on all further translation of official geographic nomenclature in Canada used for Canadian maps, charts and gazetteers where such translation is not recognized as official within the political boundaries of the province or territory concerned;

(*b*) Within said provincial and territorial boundaries, consistently—wherever possible—with the territorial principle of geographical naming, one name only shall be recognized as official at any one time by the Government of Canada for any geographical feature or populated place within said provincial or territorial jurisdictions. The names Rivière des Outaouais and Ottawa River are, for example, both official at the present time for the same feature. One is recognized in Quebec, the other in Ontario. Both are recognized by Canada;

(*c*) Implementation of this policy is restricted in its effect to topographic and planimetric maps, hydrographic charts, gazetteers and all other publications of the Government of Canada concerned primarily with factual representation rather than translation, symbolization or other interpretation of official geographic nomenclature. As such it does not apply to other cartographic publications of the Government of Canada, such as the national atlas, which employ full or partial translations of geographical names as required of (and consistent with) linguistic and orthographic norms of those instructional and educational media (school and university publications, press, radio, television etc.) which serve both official languages of Canada.

Isopleth *versus* choropleth

Implementation of the above guidelines by the Government of Canada shall ensure a degree of toponymic credibility and national standardization for Canadian maps, charts and gazetteers not previously attainable. In the past, the users of federal maps and charts formerly would find themselves equipped with names that very often bore little correspondence with those used and officially recognized at the local and provincial level while users of provincial cartographic publications found themselves equally confused when trying to use federal and provincial maps; the current arrangement emphasizes standardization. The new policy should do much to ensure that a locally recognized geographical nomenclature (used for road signs, rail, bus and air service timetables, post offices, fire, health and law enforcement and the like) is provided the map and chart purchaser who correctly assumes he is being provided with that in the first place. To not record local nomenclature in the form in which it exists makes as much sense as refusing to record such other local features as roads, portages or rapids.

Much of what used to be provided in English in connexion with maps of Quebec will in future be relegated to English text atlases and other non-official publications. The function of such documents is not the representation of official names *per se* so much as their official translation for purposes of education, instruction or illustration in whatever language is required.

CPCGN endorsement of the "one name per feature per jurisdiction" formula may very well represent Canada's single most significant step in the field of national name standardization taken since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names was convened in London in 1972.

Background

The Advisory Committee (then still referred to as the Sub-Committee) was established in 1971 on the recommendation of the former Chief, Toponymy Division, Surveys and Mapping (Canada), G. F. Delaney. Mr. Delaney, whose distinguished career in the field of cartographic toponymy is well known to participants of this Conference, noted several years ago that extensive research on his part into the history of translation of geographical names had not led him to any conclusion that could be considered an improvement on what he had maintained for many years: that "the best statement on this whole subject is contained in the brief which was presented to the former Geographical Board of Canada in 1907 by the Société du Parler Français. In this the principle that the utmost effort should be made to avoid the establishment of a dual geographic nomenclature in Canada was most clearly enunciated."

Delaney took exception to the then (1969) actions of the Commission de Géographie du Quebec and "sundry translators in and out of Government" who had, he pointed out, "gone a long way toward the destruction of this principle, although . . . in fairness we have to recognize that there has been a natural growth of this duality by reason of ordinary usage in spoken French".

Delaney agreed that not much could be done about reversing this trend "except to try to influence key figures such as translators toward the recognition that a geographic name differs from a word or a grammatical expression" and concluded that "if they would entertain this concept they might be less inclined to translate names simply because they might be translatable".

Formation of a Sub-Committee

High on the agenda of the 1970 Ottawa Annual Meeting of the CPCGN was the recommendation of the Surveys and Mapping Branch (Canada) that consideration be given a position paper prepared by G. F. Delaney, in his capacity as CPCGN Executive Secretary, entitled "A new policy for geographical names on federal maps". The paper advanced the idea that a new national policy for the treatment of geographical names on Canadian maps was not only necessary but long overdue. Political change in the country was forcing cartographic

agencies to face up to the new bilingual and political priorities of the day. The paper emphasized the urgent need to formulate a new national directive for the official treatment of geographical names in a bilingual context. A Sub-Committee formed in April 1970, and consisted of the following six members:

Executive Secretary, CPCGN (Canada) G. F. Delaney;
Consultant to Director of Surveys and Mapping (Canada), Brigadier L. J. Harris;
Secretary, Commission de Géographie (Quebec), J. P. Poirier;
Provincial Archivist (New Brunswick), H. A. Taylor;
Chief Translator, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources (Canada), L. Verreault; and
Executive Secretary, Ontario Geographic Names Board, M. B. Smart.

The Ontario member was elected Chairman and C. Millette of CPCGN was elected Secretary.

Terms of reference

The Committee's terms of reference were:

(*a*) To review existing policies endorsed by federal and provincial agencies responsible for toponymy;

(*b*) To review the major problems that would be encountered in map production if present policies were to remain unchanged;

(*c*) To review the conclusions and recommendations of the 1970 Delaney paper presented to the Ottawa CPCGN annual meeting;

(*d*) To prepare a final paper that would serve as guide for national policy on geographical names, taking into account the bilingual character of the country and special problems due to the predominant use of one language in any one province; and

(*e*) To submit its findings to the next annual meeting of CPCGN at Regina in 1971.

Area of Sub-Committee disagreement (1971)

Eight recommendations of the National Policy Sub-Committee were drafted and submitted at Regina. Of that number the following two (8.7 and 8.8) represent the minority view of the Sub-Committee:

Recommendation 8.7. The specific part of each geographic name should be regarded as a proper name based on current local usage[2] and that translation of descriptive names be discouraged.

Recommendation 8.8. Generic terms in geographical names should be [recorded] in accordance with the predominant text of the map,[3] and that hybrid names resulting be accepted.

[2] Notwithstanding that Quebec and Ontario both officially subscribed to the territorial principle in geographical naming, each acknowledged the political necessity of recognizing decisions recorded in the gazetteer of the other Province (whether or not these were supported by local usage). Ideally, local and official names should be the same. However, until such time as this was possible, both Ontario and Quebec agreed to restrict recognition to gazetteer listings only.

[3] Neither Quebec nor Ontario clearly understood at the time the meaning and implication of the phrase "predominant text of the map".

Area of Sub-Committee Agreement

The following six National Policy Sub-Committee recommendations, tabled at Regina, represent the majority view of the group:

Recommendation 8.1. All maps at scales of 1:2,000,000 and smaller should be published separately in English and French;

Recommendation 8.2. All maps at scales of 1:1,000,000 and larger (1:250,000, 1:125,000, 1:25,000 etc.) should be published in one edition only with surround (marginal) information, legends and other explanatory data in both English and French;

Recommendation 8.3. The specific part of geographical names shown on maps referred to in recommendation 8.2 should be in the form approved by the provincial name authority having jurisdiction;

Recommendation 8.4. The geographical names authorities in all provinces should formally recognize both English and French forms of names that have established usage and both should be included in CPCGN gazetteers;

Recommendation 8.5. On the larger-scale maps referred to in recommendation 8.2, any geographical names that are applied to continuous features forming or crossing provincial boundaries should be given in both French and English forms for the same feature, in whatever manner deemed cartographically expedient;

Recommendation 8.6. To the greatest extent possible, "labels" or "descriptive terms" should be supplanted by symbolization on the larger-scale maps (1:125,000, 1:50,000 etc.) referred to in recommendation 8.2. Accordingly:

(*a*) A comprehensive glossary, explaining such symbols, should be added to the marginal surround of such maps;

(*b*) This glossary should be in English and French;

(*c*) When "labels" cannot be symbolized, the "label" should be written in both English and French.

It should be noted that the 1971 Regina Report emphasized such cartographic factors as map scales, margins, legends, map texts, continuous features forming or crossing provincial boundaries, cartographic problems regarding space, map labels or descriptive terms, symbols and glossaries. In contrast, the 1976 National Policy emphasizes such jurisdictional and linguistic factors as political jurisdiction, sovereignty and the problem of official names as against local usage considerations.

It was this shift, from an emphasis on cartographic considerations and priorities to an emphasis on jurisdiction and language, that finally enabled the Advisory Committee to achieve, in 1976, the consensus necessary for formulation and ratification of the new policy. The draft policy accorded CPCGN approval at Winnipeg in 1976 now represents the federal Government's official position on treatment of the two official languages in recording geographical names for maps, charts and gazetteers produced by Canada.

At the time of its final meeting in August 1976, the

National Policy Advisory Committee consisted of the following eight members:

Director, Map Production Directorate (Canada), T. H. Kihl;
Secretary, Commission de Géographie (Quebec), J. R. Poirier;
Consultant to the Director-General of Surveys and Mapping (Canada), L. J. Harris;
Former Executive Secretary, CPCGN (Canada), G. F. Delaney;
Executive Secretary, CPCGN (Canada), J. A. Rayburn;
Executive Secretary, Ontario Geographic Names Board (Chairman), M. B. Smart;
Director-General, Terminology and Documentation, Secretary of State (Canada), P. le Quellec; and
Terminologist, Secretary of State (Canada), L. Boisvert.

Highlights of National Policy Advisory Committee's work, 1971 to 1976

1971 report to CPCGN

In 1971 the Committee submitted its report, containing the eight recommendations above, to the CPCGN annual meeting in Regina. The CPCGN response (i.e. its instructions to the Sub-committee) was as follows:

(*a*) The Sub-committee was to reconsider its report and recommendations in light of the fact that six of the recommendations were majority and two were minority views;

(*b*) Criticisms were invited from Committee members;

(*c*) The sub-committee was instructed to reconvene in order to implement items (a) and (b);

(*d*) The CPCGN proposed that persons outside the Committee be asked to proof-read the redrafted report prior to its publication.

Other items

These were as follows:

(*a*) L. Verreault, Chief Translator, Surveys and Mapping (Canada), proposed a two-tiered report, in which one part would be geared to needs of the map-maker and one to the needs of the toponymist. In effect, this has been done. Sections 1 and 2 of the New Policy specifically concern the map-maker; Section 3 does not, in so far as it concerns the atlas, encyclopaedia and school map publisher, who is not obligated to use official geographical names;

(*b*) Brigadier L. J. Harris, Consultant to the Director, Surveys and Mapping (Canada), recommended a study of the Chief Translator's suggestion of separating the problem into two parts, one specifically cartographic and the other toponymic. He thought this would provide a politically acceptable report. In light of item (*a*) above, Brigadier Harris has been proved correct;

(*c*) British Columbia endorsed the recommendation that separate cartographic treatment be accorded English and French toponymic traditions. Section 2 of the New Policy provides for this;

(*d*) Newfoundland objected to recommendation 8.4, which supported double naming in what are indisputably unilingual areas of that province. The province, therefore, would not accord recognition to official use of "Saint-Jean" as an alternate name and designation for what is known and recognized locally, nationally and internationally as the city of St. John's, Newfoundland;

(*e*) Brigadier Harris identified three options which he considered open to producers of small-scale (1:250,000 and smaller) maps of the topographical series (NTS) produced by the Government of Canada. These he based on a survey of views held by Members of the Permanent Committee:

(i) The first option was production of two editions (one English and one French);
(ii) The second was production of one edition, showing double names (one English and one French as in "Great Whale River/Poste-de-la-Baleine");
(iii) The third option was to produce a single edition, showing the name, name-specific, name-generic and linguistic form as given in the provincial gazetteers.

Brigadier E. D. Baldock, the former director of the Directorate of Map Production (Canada), argued convincingly for adoption of the third option in February 1960. The idea for the Sub-Committee had originated with the Directorate of Map Production and was contained in Brigadier Baldock's 1960 memorandum calling for investigation into the feasibility of producing a single map to serve the requirements of both official languages. The New Policy, in accordance with Brigadier Baldock's views, endorses the third option.

At a special meeting convened in January 1972 by Surveys and Mapping (Canada) it was pointed out that, for reasons that may have been overlooked in the original Regina report, aeronautical charts could not and should not be included in recommendation 8.1. Accordingly, the Branch requested that the wording of the recommendation be so amended.

At the same meeting Surveys and Mapping (Canada) announced that it favoured a single bilingual map (a single document showing one name per feature or place, either in French or English) and recommended that the mechanics of making such a map be investigated.

The New Policy confirms the soundness of both recommendations.

The linguistic boundary debate

An argument was submitted to the 1972 annual meeting of the CPCGN in Halifax, Nova Scotia, for serious research into the feasibility of adopting a linguistic boundary solution for cartographic problems involving language and decisions concerned with the compilation of cartographic information in Canada for maps, charts and gazetteers produced by Canada.

The argument was carefully considered by CPCGN Executive Secretary G. F. Delaney, but was rejected by

the CPCGN in favour of a political solution, which at the time was considered more realistic in light of current developments in Quebec concerning language and independence generally in all matters cultural, administrative, toponymic and political.

The New Policy, while not guaranteeing that decisions reflect local usage, does guarantee that the decisions do represent official opinion in the jurisdiction concerned.

Elements of the linguistic boundary reconsidered

The Argument put forward by the Sub-Committee chairman was that *de facto* isoplethic linguistic boundaries for use in delimiting geographical areas of spoken language (based on Swiss, Austrian and Belgian experience) would provide the Canadian Government with cartographic guidelines (amenable to revision with every census) that would effectively remove the impasse and misunderstanding that had, until the adoption of the 1976 policy, complicated the official recording and treatment of French and English geographical nomenclature in Canada.

The Sub-Committee chairman pursued the argument that only through a complete change of direction, culminating in the adoption of an isoplethic (as opposed to a political-boundary) formula and rationale (based on the territoriality of official languages as opposed to the then and present choroplethic policy, which recognized only their jurisdictionality) would it be possible to clear away the confusion and the many contraventions of the territorial or local usage principle resulting from long adherence to the double name standard. The central issue was and is choice of language, not names. It was generally agreed that resolution of such an issue should not be a cartographer's responsibility. The chairman also predicted that compilation of a national map showing *de facto* (i.e. isoplethic) linguistic boundaries of areas where census and other local data indicate that one or the other official language predominates, would provide the cartographer and cartographic technician with a workable and expeditious means of determining which language (and generic) to use in situations where he is presented with an English and a French name for the same feature or place. At the present time the cartographer is merely aware of the political or choroplethic boundaries which, in contrast with the true language boundary, only inform one that within a given area, one official language (in the case of Quebec) is the official medium of administration and instruction (of which maps are a part). Delimiting on a map the territorial distribution of a language for purposes of equitably recording geographical names within that area in that language for citizens of a country who normally speak that language would appear to be a logical way of doing things. It is also fundamental to good mapping in that it is the function and responsibility of the map-maker to record and represent all relevant and essential topographic, hydrographic and cultural data pertinent to an area. Such information usually takes the form of roads, lakes, fields and names.

The Sub-Committee chairman pointed out that in some other countries there were as many official languages within the national borders as Canada has provinces and territories. He noted also that these same countries appear to have been successful in bringing their multilingual areas into some semblance of cartographic order through what seems to be a judicious combination of the linguistic-boundary and the territorial principles.

The Chairman argued further that a positive step in the direction of mapping the actual territorial limits and transition zones of Canada's two official languages would be a positive step towards accelerating the processing of names in English/French bilingual areas. In simple terms, this would mean the elimination of much of the time currently spent determining which language to use for which name in which area.

Under the New Policy, which is based on the choroplethic or jurisdictional boundary, the compiler of a topographical map of an area in Quebec need inquire no further than the Quebec gazetteer for determination of language and generic. He will be aware that such information will not always agree with local sources as to the correct language and generic to be used. But in so far as official maps are committed to the dissemination of data that is official, he has little alternative but to record as given. The territorial principle may assert itself at a later date.

Adoption of the New Policy of 1976 reinforces the need for closer co-operation between regional geographical names authorities and the federal Government. The federal mapping and charting agencies require provision of more information than ever before on official language usage at the local level outside Quebec. It is the responsibility of the provincial authorities to furnish that information.

Determination of the language to be used for a geographical name in New Brunswick or Manitoba without the co-operation of a provincial nomenclature authority can be a time-consuming business. Unfortunately, the fact of the matter is that, faced with current automated and computer-assisted technological constraints on time available for map compilation and production, map-makers can no longer spend that sort of time on toponymy. Aerial photography and digital technology have paved the way for the photogrammetrist and the cartographic toponymist, who together now provide the means for accelerating the input of cartographic data for map production.

The latter appeared on the cartographic scene in very recent years (compared to the photogrammetrist). The cartographic toponymist came into being as a technological necessity with the demise of the ground-based survey. With the phasing out of the topographic surveyor as an integral part of the topographical survey process, map-makers lost their link with toponymy. The "on-the-ground" contact with local residents, officials, Amerindians, Inuit, foresters, farmers and the like has disappeared. Maps began to appear with up-to-date topography and out-of-date toponymy. The public response wasn't long in coming.

Photography provides data only on visible phenomena; toponymy must "play it by ear". New and vastly

accelerated mapping and map revision schedules in contemporary map production demand commensurately sophisticated means of providing, maintaining and processing toponymic data fast enough to meet the new technology's demands for accurate, up-to-date information. The old ways of mapping, not to mention mapmaking, are obsolete.

The new policy accelerates provision of name data through further restriction of the cartographic technician's name-collecting responsibilities to consulting the nearest gazetteer or provincial board decision list. New name information unlisted in that form (which can be considerable following major toponymic surveys) must be provided by the board or commission responsible for the jurisdiction in question.

If determination of the language spoken in a given area should not be a cartographer's responsibility, it is most certainly not a cartographic technician's. Yet in the absence of seven decades or longer of a language policy for Canadian maps based on the territorial principle, linguistic decisions affecting geographical names continued—indeed must continue—to be made every day by cartographers. Such decisions are allegedly made on the basis of a map's so-called "text", which, if loosely defined as the predominant language of the description or label information within a map's neat lines (not its margins or surround), must invariably be English—even in the heart of Quebec. Evidence aplenty can be found in any map library.

So long as Quebec remains within the Canadian federation, French will probably continue to be recognized as the other official language in matters of instruction and administration throughout Canada. In this regard it is interesting to note that the Province of Ontario now accords full recognition to French toponymy and French orthography for provincial maps of Ontario. In short, French toponymy now has parity with English toponymy. Unless Quebec does secede, there is little likelihood that a new language policy regarding treatment of French in that province will need to be written. Popular opinion, faced with secession, may no longer even support the idea of linguistic parity or equality with French across what is left of the country, any more than it did in certain provinces following the conscription crisis of 1917, in which case the cartographic establishment will find the present names policy obsolete. Linguistic boundaries, most probably, would be reassessed in terms of other linguistic groups. Priority would go to the territorial principle, to mapping *de facto* rather than *de jure*. An officially unilingual country needs no linguistic boundaries.

Postcript and commentary: the 1977 policy

The following points should be noted regarding the 1977 Policy endorsed by the CPCGN for the treatment of Canada's two official languages on Canadian maps:

(*a*) The Board's Policy is a political solution;

(*b*) It does not insist on local usage as prerequisite;

(*c*) It does ensure that an official Canadian map, chart or gazetteer contains nomenclature that is official—pure and simple;

(*d*) The *Gazetteer of Canada* (including the Quebec edition) is recognized as being the national register of official geographical names in Canada;

(*e*) The cartographer and cartographic technician are no longer required to make final decisions determining language for geographical names on Canadian maps;

(*f*) With final authority and responsibility for determination of official language and approval of official names entirely vested in the provincial or territorial names boards, commissions or committees (where and when such organizations exist and are in place), there is a clear obligation on the part of such authorities to provide and maintain name data for provincial and federal surveys, mapping and charting agencies concerned with the production of topographical maps, hydrographic charts and gazetteers;

(*g*) Equally clear is the role of the CPCGN in coordinating all federal agencies concerned with toponymy (such as the Topographical Survey Directorate, the Canadian Hydrographic Service and the Department of National Defence) and all information on toponymy provided by the provincial (and potential territorial) geographical name organizations already in place;

(*h*) In some parts of Canada the political, rather than the linguistic, boundary is the ultimate determinant as to whether a geographical name will appear cartographically in French or English, whereas in areas outside of Quebec local usage has been and will continue to be the basis for making that decision;

(*i*) The emphasis on local usage (in deciding which official language shall be used for names) places final administrative and executive responsibility for that information on the provincial authority and its official mapping and charting agencies;

(*j*) Brigadier L. J. Harris of Surveys and Mapping (Canada) argued in 1972 that the central problem facing those responsible for treating geographical names and texts on federal maps of Canada in two official languages was to find the necessary ways and means "to fulfill the language requirements of the two founding races in the presentation of names and texts on maps, while recognizing historical factors, to the extent that it is necessary in practice, is required in the interest of the cultures and is economically feasible". Harris recognized two aspects of the problem: treatment of names on a map; and choice of single name where two different names occur, one in each of the official languages;

(*k*) In 1976, Jean R. Poirier of the Commission de Géographie du Québec pointed out with regard to the national policy proposal to publish one edition of the federal Government small-scale (1:2,000,000 and smaller) map series that, responding to the need to expedite the formulation of a new language policy for maps, the Smart Committee raised the question whether it might not be advisable to follow the lead of Ontario and Quebec, both of which subscribed to the one-edition formula and not to the French/English editions approach then in force. It is M. Poirier's view that the only feasible way to have a

single-edition map of Canada would be to have linguistic policies that would "make greater efforts to find parallel solutions" rather than to implement "superimposed bilingualism". M. Poirier explained that the term "parallel geographic name" referred to any unofficial form of a geographical name (as in "Lake St. John" (Quebec), whose official name is "Lac Saint Jean"). If the two forms, ("Lac Saint Jean" and "Lake St. John") were both official, this would be "superimposed bilingualism" (the 1907 Geographical Board position). M. Poirier illustrated his point by making reference to official maps of such non-unilingual states as Belgium and Switzerland, where "parallel solutions" have been employed and "superimposed bilingualism" avoided whenever and wherever possible. A recommendation to this effect was made by the United Nations at its First Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names in Geneva in 1967. The Quebec Board Secretary argued further that, in his view, any possibility of producing a single-edition map of Canada is difficult to imagine if the above recommendation and rationale are not taken into consideration. M. Poirier concluded his observations with the statement that the translation of names into French for French editions of maps, and into English for English editions of maps, was a very poorly recommended toponymic policy and one that ran counter to United Nations recommendations on the standardization of geographical names;

(*l*) Maps and charts of countries and parts of countries made by other countries tend to be exonymic in content, as they are designed for user groups native to the country that compiled and published them in the first place. Such maps usually appear as atlases and school maps, or form parts of text books, encyclopaedias and the tourist or travel literature of one country by another (examples include American-made and -sponsored publications, maps and charts of Europe or the Soviet Union and publications by cartographic organizations in Europe or the USSR of the United States of America. A map or atlas of the Soviet Union made in a French-speaking part of the world and used by governmental agencies and academic institutions in French-speaking countries, for example, would show the name "Golfe de l'Anadyr" for a feature in the Bering Sea; a map made in the United States, United Kingdom, Australia, New Zealand or Canada (outside of Quebec) would show the same feature as "Anadyrski Gulf". Only the Soviet publication would be expected to show the actual name in its locally recognized and officially approved form (i.e. the Cyrillic original of the name, which would be transliterated into English as "Anadyrskij Zaliv". "Zaliv" (gulf) is part of the original and official name. "Gulf", "Golfe de" and "Golf" ("Anadyrgolf" is the German exonym) are the English, French and German generic equivalents respectively;

(*m*) The Chairman of the Advisory Committee made a strong case for a linguistic boundary solution in 1972 as a way around the bilingual impasse then confronting Canadian Government map- and chart-makers. Though his solution was dropped in favour of a political solution, the old problem persisted until ratification of the New Policy of 1976, incorporating the idea of a "one-name-per-feature-per-jurisdiction" formula. In view of contemporary political priorities in Canada regarding language and national unity perhaps the idea of determining a name's "linguistic" form by relating it to the actual official language spoken in the area in question is, in the year 1977, somewhat premature.

Conclusion

In bringing this discussion to a close, it would be useful to consider the principles and procedures of geographical naming adopted by some of the longer-established and more experienced countries in the field. Switzerland is a classic example. Trilingual Switzerland (Switzerland actually has more than three languages, but only three are official at the federal level) managed to cope with carto-linguistic problems, of the sort that long plagued Canadians, generations before Canada existed. Their solution, however, is not a political one.

After arguing on different cultural wavelengths for decades, English and French Canada have now adopted a national policy, based on a jurisdictional rationale, for the treatment of French and English geographical names on Canadian maps. This does not preclude the possibility that, at some future date, an agreement might not be reached that, like the Swiss and Belgian solutions, would be based on territorial rather than political considerations.

It would be a mistake to dismiss the Swiss experience as having little or no relevance in the Canadian context. Switzerland recognizes the territorial or local-usage principle as the first principle in toponymic situations. The problem, therefore, is mainly a question of solving geographical name and naming problems along an official language's geographical or territorial limits and in the transition zones between two main linguistic regions.

When considering a toponymic problem at the level of the smallest administrative unit (communes and *Gemeinden* in Switzerland's French and German-speaking cantons), it is often possible to recognize a distinct territorial separation between areas of French and German speech, especially in a rural setting. A linguistic mixture is more usually the case in cities and recently established industrial centres. Cities and industrial centres or areas are treated differently from rural areas as they are regarded as features *shared* by two or more linguistic jurisdictions in many instances. Bruxelles/Brussels, Ghent/Gand, Bern/Berne, Genève/Genf, Ottawa, Helsinki/Helsingfors are urban regions where double naming of such major features as main streets, squares, parks, canals, stations and harbours is possible and necessary.

Although communes and *Gemeinden* are free to resolve language problems as they see fit, certain principles are generally applied:

First, a choice of name from one or the other language is made at the commune or *Gemeinde* level;

Second, the language adopted for the name of the commune or *Gemeinde* itself in a transition zone is the mother tongue of the majority of its inhabitants, as

indicated in the latest official census. If, however, there is a significantly large language minority in a commune or *Gemeinde*, it is accorded special rights with regard to geographical names on highway signs on the borders of communes and *Gemeinden*, a linguistic minority exceeding 30 per cent being entitled to request that the name in question be written in both languages. We thus have Fribourg/Freiburg appearing on road signs at the approaches to that commune.

It should be noted at this juncture, however, that a name used in such an instance does not necessarily relate to, nor can it be presumed to be, the official name of or designation for a commune or *Gemeinde*. In the Canadian situation it is possible to foresee a similar development. The present official policy of recognizing one name per feature or place per political jurisdiction is unquestionably a step ahead for Canadian map-makers. One need only consider the former dual name policy situation which prevailed in many areas for very many years to appreciate that. The double standard confused everybody and frustrated cartographers, mapping and charting establishments and the general public alike.

We may well see the day when English-speaking areas in what may or may not be an independent Quebec will retain, or at least have restored, their own ancestral and more recent geographical names. That is, of course, if the English-speaking communities themselves survive.

Road signs may very well one day appear on the outskirts of some communities in Quebec with double names (implying, it must be pointed out, as in the Swiss example, no official status for the second name). A highway sign carrying the double name Saint-Andre-Est/Saint Andrews East on the approaches to that community may not be seen for years to come. Such a development would, if realized, create a much-needed sense of balance in what has been for too long either an English-only or French-only situation. The new policy is, at the very least, a significant step in that direction.

PROBLEMS OF STANDARDIZATION IN A MULTILINGUAL NATION

Report presented by the Sudan*

Problems of place-name standardization in the Sudan

The language situation in the Sudan is very complex. There are about 136 languages in the Sudan. Out of this total number 128 are African languages.[1] These languages belong to different families of African languages. Some studies have indicated that all families of African languages are represented in the Sudan except the Khoisan of South Africa.[2] This gives the Sudan a very high degree of linguistic diversity, a matter which is reflected in a multiplicity of phonological features and variations. Out of the number of languages cited above at least 114 languages are native to the Sudan. The other languages have entered the Sudan at different periods, some of them as recently as the 1960s. In fact, the language map of the Sudan is increasingly changing due to political instability and to such natural disasters as drought and famine, which afflict some of the neighbouring countries.

In order to understand the gravity of the problem of standardization of geographical names in a country like the Sudan, we must remember that settlements have emerged in different parts of the country. Such settlements have been given names in the local languages (114 in number) and possibly in some of the invading languages. These geographical names carry within them the diverse phonological features of the Sudanese languages. Accordingly, whoever is writing down these names must be able to distinguish and represent accurately the sounds that are inherent in such names. A matter like this requires a certain degree of linguistic sophistication, and/or familiarity with the language concerned. Thus the first problem (and, indeed, the major problem) facing the writing of geographical names hinges on the acute linguistic diversity.

There are also different problems of policy, which are related to the question of linguistic diversity. Shall we produce maps in Arabic—the national language—or in English, the second principal language in the country and the language of wider international communication; or else shall we produce maps in the vernacular languages? It is clear that the third alternative (producing maps in the vernacular languages) has so far been ruled out. The Sudanese Survey Department has produced maps in both Arabic and English. This, however, produces the basic problem of how to reconcile the phonological systems of English and Arabic with the systems of local languages. It is clear that whether or not we produce maps in the vernacular languages, we cannot continue to ignore accommodating phonological features of vernacular geographical names into Arabic and English—the languages used in Sudanese maps.

In the following lines we cite some of the major problems of representing and writing Nubian place names in Arabic script. Professor Herman Bell, who has studied this problem, writes the following about the census report for 1960. He states that "unfortunately its entries are in Arabic script without the vowel markings. Even had the markings been given, the disadvantages of recording names in the five-vowel system of Nubian by means of the three-vowel system of Arabic script are

---

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Sayyid Hurreiz, University of Khartoum, Sudan, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.94.

[1] Sayyid Hurreiz and Herman Bell, *Directions in Sudanese Linguistics and Folklore* (Khartoum, Khartoum University Press, 1975), pp.159–162.

[2] R. Stevenson, "The significance of the Sudan in linguistic research, past, present and future" in Y. F. Hasan, ed., *The Sudan in Africa* (Khartoum, Khartoum University Press, 1971).

obvious".[3] There are also other problems associated with tones and with consonants that have no equivalent in Arabic.

Problems similar to those discussed above are not unique to Nubian. Different studies have indicated that several Sudanese languages have a five-vowel system (which includes e and o) in comparison with the three-vowel system of classical Arabic. Among these are Dinka,[4] Beja[5] and Fur.[6] These five-vowel languages (Nubian, Dinka, Beja and Fur) are spoken in the northern, southern, eastern and western regions of the Sudan, indicating the spread and gravity of this problem.

If we look into the language map of the Sudan, we find that besides the vernacular languages that dominate in the north, south, east and west (and that are represented by the four languages mentioned above) colloquial Arabic dominates in the central parts. The problem of Sudanese colloquial Arabic in relation to classical Arabic is an extension of the question of the vernacular languages. For instance, if we choose the same linguistic aspect which we have discussed above—the vowel system—we find that the Sudanese vernacular languages have influenced Sudanese Arabic. They have extended their vowel system to Sudanese Arabic, and consequently Sudanese colloquial Arabic has a five-vowel system which is akin to the dominant Sudanese local languages rather than to the three-vowel system of classical Arabic. Accordingly the problem of reconciling and accommodating diverse incongruent systems is still prevalent here.

The following place names are quoted from Topographic Map No. 47–625, which uses the medium of the Arabic language. These names are written incorrectly and can be misleading because the map does not take into account major phonological features (e.g. the vowel system discussed above) of Sudanese vernacular languages and colloquial Arabic.

Name as written in Arabic map	*Name written in correct phonetic transcription*
(1) محمد قول	Muhammad gol
(2) اكوبو	akobu
(3) بور	bor
(4) أم دوم	umm dom
(5) جابت	jabet
(6) دردب	durdeb
(7) قيسان	gesan
(8) ابو دليق	abu dileg

The first four names in this list can be misinterpreted as Muhammad gul, akubu, bur and umm dum respectively. The remaining four names in the list (5 to 8) can also be misinterpreted as jabit, durdib, gisan and abu dilig respectively.

If we turn to English, the other language (besides Arabic) in which Sudanese maps are written, we also find a number of problems. Some of these problems are similar to the one discussed above. However, a number of problems are due to misinterpretation of Arabic and vernacular sounds by personnel whose mother tongue is English. In other words they are due to sounds heard incorrectly, and consequently represented incorrectly. Examples of such phenomena are apparent in the writing of place names such as El Damer, El Fasher, Shendi which are written with (e) rather than (a) and (i). In this way the names cited above are written and read in a way that is significantly different from the way they are actually pronounced.

In summary, the major factors affecting standardization in the Sudan are:

(*a*) The country's acute linguistic diversity, which aggravates the problem of standardization;

(*b*) The divergence between the phonological systems of the local languages and Arabic (the national language) and English (the language of international communication);

(*c*) In the case of maps printed in Arabic, a special problem is created by the practice of adhering rigidly to the writing system of classical Arabic; and finally,

(*d*) In the process of rendering place names into English, a number of different orthographic systems have been used (e.g. missionaries in the southern region have adopted a variety of spellings for transliterating Arabic and vernacular sounds) so that names are rendered incorrectly in English.

Proposals

While the problem of standardization of ways of writing geographical names may be discussed at the regional and international levels, there are various measures which have to be started at the national level, taking into consideration the specificities of different nations. It is nevertheless evident that the individual efforts of various countries need to be co-ordinated regionally and internationally. The following proposals are directed towards the situation in the Sudan. However, some of them may also be pertinent to other nations in the third world.

(*a*) We need to create a national awareness of the problem and try to explicate its various aspects. This short paper is seen as an attempt in this direction;

(*b*) At the professional level, we need to train and develop a cadre of specialists who are competent to write geographical names accurately and on a standardized

[3] Herman Bell, "Place names in the belly of stones", *Linguistic Monograph Series*, No. 5 (Khartoum, Sudan Research Unit 1970) pp. 46–47.

[4] See P. A. Nebel, *Dinka Grammar*, Missioni Africane, 1968.

[5] E. M. Roper, *Tu Bedawie* (London, Steven Austin & Sons, n.d.).

[6] A. C. Beaton, "Fur Grammar", *Linguistic Monograph Series*, No. 1 (Khartoum, Sudan Research Unit, 1968).

basis. Phonetic training is an indispensable tool in this venture;[7] finally

(*c*) In the Sudan the problem of standardization of geographical names should be looked at as part of the broader problem of the lack of a unified orthography. Geographical names constitute only one aspect of the problem. Personal names and names that designate the fauna and flora of the Sudan all suffer from this problem. In fact, in certain cases the complete written traditions of some local languages suffer from this problem. The problem—in this broader context—is reflected not only in maps, but also all other written and printed matter as well, including books, journals, dictionaries, newspapers, signs and so on. It is a national problem that calls for a national solution based on regional and international experience.

[7] Last year the Survey Department organized (in collaboration with the Institute of African and Asian Studies) a seminar for its field team. Training included introduction to the symbols of the International Phonetic Association (IPA) and the writing of geographical names on phonological basis.

MEMORANDUM ON THE SPELLING OF PLACE NAMES IN THE SUDAN

Report presented by the Sudan*

Problems in the spelling of place names in the Sudan

The National Survey Department of the Sudan has recently begun the publication of a new set of detailed maps with the eventual object of covering the whole of the Sudan. This has presented the opportunity for a revision of the spellings of place names in the hope that some of the inadequacies of the traditional spellings could be overcome in time for a system consistently based on more scientific principles to be presented officially in the new maps.

The Sudan has one of the most complicated problems on earth for the spelling of place names. First, there are the well-known problems that arise from the considerable difference between written Arabic and spoken colloquial Arabic. To what extent should a romanized spelling of a place name represent the classical Arabic spelling and to what extent should it represent the actual pronunciation, e.g. should "house" be spelled bait (classical) or bēt (or some similar representation of the colloquial pronunciation)? To what extent should a romanized spelling follow the international system adopted by libraries? Unfortunately, the international system makes extensive use of diacritics, which (1) may be easily confused with geographical features on maps and (2) are likely to be omitted in everyday use.

The problems of romanizing Arabic place names are familiar. However, the greatest complexity facing the Sudan in the area of toponymy comes from the large number of non-Arabic languages within its borders. There are more than 100 non-Arabic languages in the Sudan, with phonologies that diverge very greatly from that of Arabic. The set of conventions adopted for Arabic would not cover a large number of the sounds peculiar, for example, to Dinka or Shilluk. Furthermore, perhaps most of the languages of the Sudan still lack an adequate system of orthography. For most of them there is not even a thorough phonological analysis on which an orthography should be based. This helps to define a clear priority for linguistic work in the Sudan, i.e. the establishment of an adequate orthography for the country's languages. This in turn will give us the system for representing place names accurately.

There are, of course, several different principles that guide us in selecting spellings for place names.

(*a*) One may allow for exceptions to a general rule, when a place name is well established, e.g. "Omdurman" rather than the more "correct" "Umm Durmān".

(*b*) A second principle is to represent the name as accurately as possible according to the way it is usually pronounced. This may mean the selection of one pronunciation as "standard". Very often full and adequate information can only be conveyed by the use of special symbols, e.g. for musical tone or implosive consonants. Clearly there must be some compromise between the phonological reality and the orthographic convention for place names.

A significant step towards a solution would be a gazetteer which presents alternate versions of each name: the conventional or "standard" form (once this is determined); the form of the name which conveys fullest and most adequate phonological data; and any alternative pronunciation or traditional spelling that seems significant enough to be included.

In order to implement such a solution, it was decided to reconsider the basic techniques followed by the Survey Department in collecting place names. With this in mind, short courses in transcription were begun with the cooperation of the staff of the Institute of African and Asian Studies of the University of Khartoum, and a new data card was designed for use in the field. The brief courses in transcription were conducted by Dr. Yūsuf al-Khalīfa Abū Bakr, Dr. Sayyid Hurreiz and Dr. Herman Bell. They concentrated on the following points:

(*a*) The transcription of place names in areas of colloquial Arabic speech by use of an expanded Arabic alphabet:

e.g.  for ng (ڭ)

 for ch (چ)

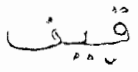
and for e

c for 0

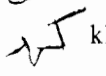
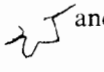
* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.95.

(following the recommendations of Dr. Khalīl Asakir and Dr. Yūsuf al-Khalīfa Abū Bakr).

(*b*) Practice in the transcription of these same place names in a modified version of the international system for the romanization of classical Arabic. Thus:

 will be rendered gēf not qayf.

Underlining of digraphs is also abandoned in favour of a system such as the following:

Classical system	*Modified system*
 kh	kh (underlining dropped)
 kh	k–h (dash introduced to maintain the distinction between  and)

The advantage of the dash in this last example is that it appears much less frequently than the digraphs and would greatly reduce the number of extra symbols needed on the maps, hence, the capital of the country is spelled "Khartūm", not "Khartūm".

There still remains the considerable problem of how best to represent vowel length. Ideally, the conventions of Swahili should apply, e.g. lengthened e would be represented as ee. However, where the conventions of the English language are not offset by some strong local tradition, as in the case of Swahili, most Sudanese seeing a name spelled geef would pronounce it giif rather than ge:f. For the time being, therefore, the choice is in favour of the macron (–) to indicate length (thus, e.g., gē f). This is easy to grasp by Sudanese people, since the macron bears a resemblance to the Arabic symbol madda(~) also used for indicating length. However, the macron will almost certainly be dropped in everyday use, with a consequent loss of information on pronunciation, as in "Khartum" for "Khartoum" (a shift to be noted in the British press). The last word on this has not been said, and one wonders if there may not still be some virtue in the older spelling, "Khartoum".

(*c*) Practice in the transcription of non-Arabic names, both in Roman/phonetic characters and in an expanded Arabic alphabet (using Persian/Urdu characters plus other innovations where necessary). Considerable work in devising new symbols based on Arabic characters has been done over the years by Mr. Yūsuf al-Khalīfa Abū Bakr.

The new data card for field-work reflects the field experience of the Survey Department teams together with the training sessions referred to above. First, as a rule, it was decided to transcribe any name both in Arabic characters and in Roman characters. Very often the inadequacies of one transcription may be corrected by reference to the other. In practice, the Arabic script gives more accurate information on special Arabic features, such as the emphatic consonants. The Roman characters tend to give fuller information on vowels, even though field-workers are trained to try to overcome the customary omission of vowel points when using the Arabic script. There is also room for further remarks, e.g. on the etymology of the place name when available or on the language in terms of which the etymology can be understood. Even though such observations will be full of "folk etymologies" and incorrect interpretations, they will still provide evidence which can be used with caution for many valuable objectives. An etymology may ultimately give a clue to a more accurate spelling than the ones transcribed by the field-worker, especially when a familiar generic term from a non-Arabic language is concerned. For example, an Arabic-speaking field-worker may fail to hear the distinction between (p) and (b) in the Shilluk designation of a hamlet pac, recording it as *bac, but a supervisor familiar with Shilluk can spot the potential error more readily if the suspect *bac is glossed as "hamlet".

A special study of the most frequently recurring generic terms can then be made for each language, which will permit linguists to suggest a full phonological description of the most usual pronunciation of words, such as pac, with information on tone and vowel quality.

Recommendations

In conclusion, a number of recommendations can be made based on the Sudanese experience to date:

(*a*) It would be useful for the Survey Department to have one or more of its staff trained in transcription;

(*b*) Further co-operation between the Institute of African and Asian Studies and the Survey Department is desirable, since the Institute can initiate research on the phonological analysis of certain languages with which the Survey Department is particularly concerned. The Institute can encourage the development of more adequate orthographies, providing, as one of its major functions, a more adequate system for spelling place names;

(*c*) Linguists in Sudanese universities such as that at Khartoum (and, in the future, at Juba) may well consider the utility of research projects related to the requirements of the Survey Department, e.g. the list of generic geographical terms mentioned above; and finally,

(*d*) The advantages of such co-operation can flow both ways. The universities can also find the field-work done by Survey Department personnel a rich source of data for further academic studies in folklore, ethnic history and toponymy.

HISTORY OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES IN INDIA*

By Colonel D. N. Sharma Atri Harnal

The continuity and development of Indian civilization extends back in time more than 5,000 years. North India was the homeland of the Aryans, who spoke Sanskrit. Numerous non-Aryan tribes lived in different parts of the country and spoke diverse dialects. During India's chequered history there has been a continuous intermingling of many races and of their diverse cultures and languages. In ancient times Sanskrit was the language of the educated and the elite; Prakrit, Pali and Apabhransh were the major languages spoken by the masses in the north of Vindyas; and Tamil, Telugu, Kannada and Malayalām were the popular languages in the south.

Sanskrit gave birth to and continues to nourish most of the modern Indian languages, and it has influenced all others. At one time Persian was the court language in a major part of the country. In more recent times English became the official language, and it continues to share that honour with Hindi, written in Devanāgarī alphabet. The constitution of India recognizes 14 languages as official, and more are likely to be added in the future.

Needless to say, the interplay of various cultures and languages has had an unsettling effect on geographical names. For example, "Pātaliputra" in Sanskrit changed to "Pātaliputta" in Pāli and is the "Patna" of today. "Takshashīlā" became "Takkasīlā" in Pāli and is the "Taxila" of today. Many habitations were destroyed and their names went into oblivion; many other place names underwent changes with the change in the languages of new rulers or new people; and many place names were changed by rulers to commemorate their own names or dynasties. Natural calamities, such as floods, earthquakes, cyclones and epidemics also took their toll, as did political upheavals. Many habitations having disappeared or been deserted, new ones with different or corrupt versions of the original names arose on or near their sites, thereby causing confusion. There were no maps on which such changes could be traced, but accidental records of these events appear in literature or survive in folklore.

In ancient India, as in other countries, no attempt was made, moreover, at name standardization. Perhaps there was no need. Due to the difficulties of travel and communications people did not go far afield from their homes and with few exceptions—places of pilgrimage, rivers, mountains and hills of religious importance and trade centres—the names of other places were not of much concern to them. Such names, and the names of places not affected by foreign interference and which escaped the natural calamities, have retained their pristine form even to this day.

The alphabets of the Indian languages being phonetic, spelling names correctly was not much of a problem. But often the same name was given to different features in various parts of the country, thus making their identification ambiguous—a problem the historian, the archaeologist, the geographer and others find well nigh impossible to solve. Consider the names "Ganga", "Sindhu", and "Saraswati", which were given to diverse rivers all over India.

Perhaps this was inevitable. It is doubtful if name standardization can ever be possible without maps, and mapping in the modern sense started in India with the advent of Europeans in the early part of the eighteenth century. As the British established and extended their rule, they carried out surveys of their new possessions to ascertain the extent of cultivated lands and the value of their revenues; for the protection of communications; and for the extension of their new-found empire. Rennell was appointed Surveyor General from the beginning of 1767, and mapping of the country was taken up in earnest. The first surveyors were British who were not familiar with Indian languages; the Indian pronunciation of names being alien to their ears, they anglicized the names and gave many of them a mnemonic form. Thus Siraj-ud-Daulah became "Sir Roger Dowler"; Karachi, "Crotchy"; Allahabad, "Isle of Bats"; Lakhimpur, "Lucky-poor"; Mahesh-ūru, "Mysore"; Sundarbans, "Sundry-Bunds"; Hajipur, "Hodge-poor"; and so on. The confusion confounded when the same name was spelt in many ways according to the idiosyncrasies of individual surveyors. For example, Sind was spelt as "Scinde", "Scind", "Scindh", "Sindh", "Sinde" and "Sind".

The following factors evidently were responsible for this confusion and anarchy in the romanized spelling of Indian geographical names:

(*a*) Mis-hearings and garblings by surveyors not conversant with local languages and dialects;

(*b*) Lack of a uniform and standard system for transcription of Indian phonemes, and transliteration of Indian language alphabets into Roman script; and

(*c*) Inherent shortcomings, inconsistencies and absurdities of English orthography.

To set the matters right, the Government of India decided, in 1868, to compile provincial gazetteers throughout India and appointed Dr. W. W. Hunter to develop a uniform system of transliteration and to secure uniformity of spelling in the preparation of these gazetteers. His system of transliteration was approved by the Government in 1870 and with a few minor modifications it has been in use since then.

However, prior to the Independence of India, English was the only official language of the Government of India and the Hunterian system served the needs of the English-knowing people adequately. The question of publishing maps in Hindi and regional languages never arose. Hindi, in Devanāgarī script, has now taken pride of place as

---

*The original text of this paper, prepared by Colonel D. N. Sharma Atri Harnal, UNGEGN expert for the India Division, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.109. This paper, which was submitted for participants only, is available on request from the Cartography Section, Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, Secretariat of the United Nations.

the official language of the Government of India, and as mentioned above the Constitution of India also recognizes 13 other languages as official, with others likely to be added in the future.

It has become advisable, therefore, to replace the Hunterian system by a more comprehensive system of transliteration, which should also have the quality of reversibility. To assist in this matter, Colonel D. N. Sharma Atri Harnal, who represents Indian Division in the United Nations Group of Experts of Geographical Names, prepared tables "for Transliteration into Roman and Devanāgarī of the Languages of the Indian Group", which were approved by the Group and adopted for use in international cartography by the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London from 10 to 31 May 1972, by resolution 11.[1] These have since been slightly revised and are under the active consideration of the Government of India. It cannot be disputed that in a multilingual country suitable transliteration tables enabling transliteration from one language to the other are the essential first step towards standardization of geographical names.

Standardization of geographical names in India

Steps have been taken to ensure that existing geographical names are not changed except in accordance with the rules laid down by the Government of India and that the names applied to the new or unnamed geographical entities are given in accordance with specified principles and rules.

No attempt has yet been made, however, to standardize the spelling of geographical names in the local and other official languages of India by an act of Government. This will be possible only after the Government has adopted a standard system for transliterating of the official languages of India into Devanāgarī and Roman.

National authority for the standardization of geographical names

In 1953 the Government of India decided that the following principles and procedures should be adopted for determining the spelling of geographical names in India:

"(*a*) Authority to determine the spelling of any name in the script used as the official language of the Centre will vest in the Central Government;

"(*b*) All Ministries of the Central Government and Subordinate Offices will observe the spelling approved by the Central Government;

"(*c*) The Survey of India will be the only authority for the transliteration of names from one script to another according to the system approved by the Central Government. In the event of disagreement between the Survey of India and a State Government, the decision of the Government of India will be final;

"(*d*) Where a State Government uses a script (other than the Devanāgarī script) which differs from that used by the Central Government, or where a local script of the State differs from the script used by the Central Government, the State Government will be the authority for deciding the spelling of geographical names of places or features in the State in local script. Survey of India will be responsible for transliterating these names into Devanāgarī or Roman script in accordance with the approved system of transliteration and in consultation, where necessary, with the State Government and other appropriate authorities".

Giving names to places and natural features hitherto unnamed

State Governments have full authority, where they adopt Hindi in the Devanāgarī script as the official language or even where Hindi is only a local language of the State Government, to give names to places and natural features within their areas hitherto unnamed. Such names are communicated to the Survey of India in the Devanāgarī script for transliteration to the Roman script. Should it be necessary to alter the existing spelling in Devanāgarī script of a name in use by the Survey of India, the State Government asks the Survey of India to adopt the new spelling. If the Survey of India is unable to agree, the State Government may refer the matter to the Central Government for a decision. This procedure applies also to changes in the spelling of names that appear in the Gazetteer of India.

Changes in spelling of existing names

In order to preserve historical continuity and avoid confusion, it has been decided not to change the existing English spelling of some internationally known places and features (e.g. Calcutta, Bombay and Delhi) even though they may have slightly different local pronunciation. The Roman spelling of the geographical names appearing in the Constitution of India are to be retained unless changed by the Government of India.

As a result of historical processes, some names undergo minor changes, which are noticed when these places are revisited for the purpose of revision surveys. Their spelling is then corrected.

In the case of names appearing in the *Imperial Gazetteer/Gazetteer of India*, a minor change or inaccuracy in the spelling of a name that comes to notice during a field survey is made in consultation with the State Government concerned. In the case of a major change the State Government is required to refer the matter to the Central Government.

In some cases, spelling of names may have to be corrected due to incorrect spelling having been initially adopted by mistake, or a place having undergone a change in name. In such cases, the old name is inserted in brackets and is dropped only when it falls into disuse.

Giving a new name to a place already named

The policy of the Government is to discourage chang-

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

ing an accepted name that people have become used to. Names of villages and other inhabited places having a historical connexion are not allowed to be changed as far as possible. A change is not allowed to be made merely on grounds of local patriotism or for linguistic reasons; villages, for example, cannot be renamed after national leaders merely to show respect to them or simply to satisfy local sentiment in the matter of language. Any such changes can be made only with the approval of the Central Government, which generally consults the Surveyor General of India.

Field collection of geographical names and standardization of their spelling

The Survey of India is responsible for the collection of geographical names and rendering their spelling in Devanāgarī and Roman. While the surveyor is carrying out surveys in an area, he enters the names of places and geographical features, in a register, indicating the extent of the latter. He writes the name in any Indian language known to him, adhering faithfully to the local pronunciation, as the main aim is that the map should be able to guide the individual to the place named. No attempt is made to trace the etymology of the name or its historical origin. The spelling of the name picked up by the surveyor is finalized after consulting the local administration who maintain revenue records. The spelling is first transcribed into Devanāgarī (if it is not in that language to begin with) and is then transliterated into Roman. In some States that have not yet adopted Hindi for official use, the names are transcribed into Roman from the regional script. A sample form on which names are collected is shown here in the annex to the present paper.

It will be observed that the spelling of place names has not yet been standardized by the various State Governments, with the result that the surveyor writes the name as he hears it, what he writes being affected by his own predilections and linguistic deficiencies, as he may not know the language of the people of the area in which he is working and he may not be able to render the sounds of an alien language in his own language.

I shall take this opportunity to pose a problem. What is "standardization" of a geographical name? Does standardization constitute simply the collection of names, choosing one of the alternative names where more than one is current and putting them on a map or a gazetteer? In my humble view, this cannot be called standardization, though it may be a useful step towards it. Standardization, if I may say so, should mean not only giving a unique name to a geographical entity but also giving it a unique spelling in the official language or languages of the country. What I have stated is consistent with resolution 4 (National standardization) of the first Conference,[2] but needs to be spelt out in precise terms, as it appears to me that the term "standardization of geographical names" is not well understood.

[2] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.68.I.9), chap. III.

Descriptive parts of names

The descriptive part of a geographical name, such as "river", "mountain", or "bay", is generally given in the same language in which the name is written.

When the descriptive part of a name is a component of the name and the local inhabitants generally couple the descriptive part with the proper name, the latter includes the descriptive word.

The descriptive part is written separately when the name is applied to the natural feature to which the descriptive word applies, and combined into a single word when the name applies to a village or other feature. Thus "Malai" is the Tamil word for "hill"; "Chenni Malai" is then used as the name of the hill, while "Chennimalai" is the name of a village nearby.

Translations of descriptive names in a regional language are not entered in other languages when their meanings are sufficiently clear (either from the use of a symbol or from a study of the neighbouring topography) or when the descriptive regional name is well known (as, for instance, in Tibetan, such names as "La", "Tso", "Dzong" and "Gompa").

Features having more than one name

When a feature such as a river or a mountain extends over a wide distance or area, it may have a variety of local names. In such cases, the more important name is shown boldly and the local name is given in brackets alongside, in the part to which the latter pertains.

For features extending beyond the frontiers of India, our practice is to adopt the Indian name within the Indian territory, and to adopt the name used by the country concerned for the area beyond the frontier. To avoid confusion, and for international reference, it is very desirable that names of such features should be standardized. Although it is difficult to make the inhabitants of an area adopt a new foreign name for such a feature, the standard name could be shown alongside the local accepted name, at least on all official publications.

GAZETTEER OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

In India, geographical names appear on Survey of India maps and in the *Gazetteers of India*. Although gazetteers of well-known places and features have been compiled in the past, no comprehensive gazetteer has as yet been compiled of all known geographical names.

GLOSSARY OF GEOGRAPHICAL TERMS

The compilation of a glossary of internationally accepted geographical terms will be of great benefit, especially for navigational purposes and delimitation of territorial waters. The Indian delegation lends full support to this project.

FOREIGN NAMES

The Survey of India now enters both the conventional name of a foreign country and the name the country has adopted for itself, the latter being printed in parentheses.

Annex

SAMPLE FORM FOR COLLECTION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES (SURVEY OF INDIA)

22 टोपो० 22 Topo.
पुराना 20 मालरेखा Old 20 Trav.

भारतीय सर्वेक्षण विभाग
SURVEY OF INDIA

सं० No. पार्टी PARTY ( ) शीट सं० Sheet No.

प्लेन-टेबल सेक्शन सं० *Plane-Table Section No.*.....जिला *District*.....सब डिविज़न *Sub Division*

नामों की सूची LIST OF NAMES. सर्वेक्षण कर्ता *Surveyed by* सीज़न *Season 19*

प्लेन-टेबल सन्दर्भ संख्या Plane-table Reference Number	वर्ग का सन्दर्भ Reference to Square	नाम Names					विवरण Description	मकानों की संख्या Number of Houses	तहसील, ताल्लुक आदि Tahsil, Tāluk, &c.	अभ्युक्ति REMARKS
		सर्वेक्षक द्वारा लिखित क्षेत्रीय भाषा Vernacular written by the Surveyor	स्थानीय अधिकारी द्वारा लिखित क्षेत्रीय भाषा Vernacular as written by a local official	शिविर अधिकारी द्वारा वर्णविन्यास Spelling by the Camp Officer in		अंग्रेजी में संशोधित वर्णविन्यास Corrected spelling in English				
				अंग्रेजी English	देवनागरी Devanagri					
1	2	3	4	5	5a	6	7	8	9	10

नोट—छटे खाने में लिखे नाम, जिनके वर्णविन्यास इम्पीरियल गज़ेटियर से लिए गये हों, रेखांकित किए जाने चाहिएं। सातवें खाने में लिखा जाना चाहिए कि यह नाम शहर, गांव, मन्दिर, पहाड़ी, नदी, झील आदि किस से सम्बन्धित है। आठवां खाना शहर, गांव, आदि से सम्बन्धित है, यह सूचना उनके सापेक्ष महत्व के निर्धारन के लिए आवश्यक है। दसवें खाने में यह लिखा जाना चाहिए कि शहर, गांव, आदि में क्या बाज़ार, अस्पताल, डाकखाना, तारघर, पुलिस स्टेशन, डाक बंगला आदि हैं।

NOTE—In column 6, names, the spelling of which has been taken from the Imperial Gazetteer, should be underlined. In column 7, it should be stated whether a name refers to a town, village, temple, hill, river, lake, &c. Column 8 only refers to towns, villages, &c., this information is required to determine their relative importance. In column 10, it should be stated whether, in a town, village, &c., there is a market, hospital, P.O., T.O. P.S., D.S., &c.

सर्वेक्षक के इस्ताक्षर *Sig. of Surveyor* तारीख *Date*

स्थानीय अधिकारी के इस्ताक्षर *Sig. of Local Official* तारीख *Date*

कैम्प अधिकारी के इस्ताक्षर *Sig. of Camp Officer* तारीख *Date*

पार्टी के कार्यकारी अधिकारी के इस्ताक्षर *Sig. of O.C. Party* तारीख *Date*

M.P.—P.O.—J.S. 74—28-4-69—50,000

AGENDA ITEM 9 – POINT 9 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR – TEMA 9 DEL PROGRAMA

No papers were submitted.

* * *

Aucune communication n'a été présentée qui traite de ce point de l'ordre du jour.

* * *

No se presentaron los informes.

AGENDA ITEM 10 – POINT 10 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR – TEMA 10 DEL PROGRAMA

GAZETTEER PRODUCTION AND NAMES PROCESSING AT THE FEDERAL LEVEL IN CANADA

Report presented by Canada*

Résumé

Depuis 1972, de nouvelles nomenclatures ont été établies pour les provinces et territoires suivants: Nouveau-Brunswick, île du Prince Edward, Alberta, Ontario et Territoire du Yukon. Un nouveau volume concernant la Nouvelle-Ecosse sera publié vers la fin de 1977 et un autre, portant sur les territoires du Nord-Ouest, en 1978. Depuis 1973, les décisions relatives à chaque province ou territoire sont publiées sous forme de suppléments cumulatifs annuels. Ainsi, pour le volume sur la Colombie britannique, dont la dernière publication remonte à 1966, un supplément cumulatif a paru en 1976 qui comprend toutes les décisions prises au cours des 10 dernières années. La nomenclature du Canada est établie par traitement automatique des textes.

On étudie la possibilité de mettre sur pied un système de restitution automatique de l'information, qui rationaliserait la manipulation des données toponymiques et qui pourrait être particulièrement utile pour le choix des noms sur les cartes.

Resumen

Desde 1972, se han producido nuevos nomenclátores para las siguientes jurisdicciones en el Canadá: Nueva Brunswick, Isla Príncipe Eduardo, Alberta, Ontario y el Territorio del Yukón. A fines de 1977, se publicará un nuevo volumen para Nueva Escocia y otro nuevo para los territorios del noroeste en 1978. Desde 1973, se han publicado las decisiones para cada una de las jurisdicciones en el Canadá en suplementos anuales acumulativos; por ejemplo, para el volumen que abarca Columbia Británica, que fue el último publicado en 1966, existe un suplemento acumulativo de 1976 con todas las decisiones adoptadas a lo largo del período de 10 años. Para realizar el Nomenclátor del Canadá, se utiliza la tecnología de elaboración del texto a base de computadoras.

Actualmente se está realizando una investigación para establecer un sistema automatizado de recuperación de la información que simplificará el manejo de datos toponímicos, y que puede constituir una fuente posible para la selección de nombres por los confeccionadores de mapas.

*

* *

The Gazetteer Production and Toponymic Investigation Section of the Toponymy Division, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, integrates some of the functions shared by that Division with the Secretariat of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names (CPCGN), particularly the close co-operative arrangement of the federal and provincial members of the Committee. Its responsibilities include the review of geographical nomenclature for new and revision mapping by the federal Surveys and Mapping Branch, the processing of name submissions from mapping agencies and the public (including their referral to the appropriate federal or provincial CPCGN member for investigation and ruling), the maintenance of extensive card and map section files on Canadian geographical names, the answering of enquiries on location and spelling information and the compilation of the *Gazetteer of Canada* series.

GAZETTEER OF CANADA

The Surveys and Mapping Branch produces the *Gazetteer of Canada* for the CPCGN. There is a volume for each province and territory with the exception of Québec. These publications, produced under federal imprint, are distributed by two federal Government agencies: the Canada Map Office, which is part of the Surveys and Mapping Branch, and the Department of Supply and Services (Canada), which holds the copyright on all federal Government publications. (Information Canada, a federal agency mentioned as the distributor in the 1972 United Nations Conference Proceedings, was disbanded in 1976).

Since the second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names in 1972, the following volumes of the Gazetteer of Canada series have been published:

New Brunswick	1972
Prince Edward Island	1973
Alberta	1974
Ontario	1974
Yukon Territory	1976

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Mary LaHam, Head of the Gazetteer Production and Toponymic Investigation Section, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Canada, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.12.

A volume for Nova Scotia will go to press before the year's end, and one for the Northwest Territories is scheduled for printing late in 1978.

In 1973 the semi-annual *Gazetteer* supplements were replaced by annual cumulative supplements. Some of these supplements are as large as the smaller volumes of the *Gazetteer*. They are costly to produce, particularly because they are distributed free of charge to purchasers of the original *Gazetteers*. Their size is largely a function of the time lag between editions for any province or territory. This lag, usually of not less than 10 years, is the inevitable result of having only a small staff devoted to gazetteer production, of using procedures (to prepare material for input) that have not changed significantly since the inception of the present gazetteer series (in 1952) and of the volume of material being generated by federal and provincial field studies.

In the process of *Gazetteer* production, every name formerly approved is verified for accurate spelling and application, all ambiguous cases being referred to the appropriate federal or provincial member of the CPCGN for investigation and ruling. Only upon completion of this long and painstaking process is the material ready for a text-processing agency to begin photocomposition for publication.

The introduction of computer-based text-processing in 1974 has streamlined *Gazetteer* production and greatly simplified the cumulative process of producing *Gazetteer* supplements. All material is now keyboarded, edited, sorted, photocomposed and published, with each year's supplement material being merged with that of earlier years in a computer environment.

Automation of toponymic information

The Section is attempting to take advantage of advances in information-handling technology to increase the effectiveness with which it carries out its various functions. Making use of computer-based text-processing facilities was the first step.

Early in 1977 the Toponymy Division contracted with a systems analyst to prepare a feasibility study for the automation of the names data base. His preliminary report suggests a system that should make more efficient the production of gazetteers, the maintenance of files and the response to queries, while offering the additional capability of producing special lists in response to specific needs. It opens up the possibility of automated information exchange between the Toponymy Division (CPCGN Secretariat) and other federal and provincial agencies. A system with interactive capability would also be potentially useful to the map production units of the federal Government, particularly those involved in automated cartography, for the placement of names on maps.

It is estimated that data entry into either an in-house mini-computer system or to a computer service bureau system will require between three and five years. The present CPCGN card files contain approximately 300,000 decisions on names, arranged alphabetically within each province or territory. (This number is expected to increase to 1,000,000 by the end of the century.) When input of these records into a computer system is completed, the machine-readable file will supersede the card files. This will mean a considerable reduction in the amount of manual labour currently required for the creation, maintenance and manipulation of card records. Search time will be reduced, as the system should accommodate several terminals with simultaneous access. There will be no need for part of the file to leave the office, and hence be temporarily inaccessible, as is the case at present when cards are sent to a computer service bureau for keyboarding for *Gazetteer* production. Given the currency of such a data base, *Gazetteer* production will consist of running a computer programme to select, format and produce a phototypesetting file, which will be sent to a phototypesetter and thence to a publisher. Alternatively, in view of the rapidity with which *Gazetteer* material can be prepared with such a system, more frequent, less costly microfiche copies might be a viable means of providing current information, thus eliminating the need for cumulative supplements.

The magnitude of the task of preparing the name records for input precludes full use of a computer file for some years to come. It is anticipated that only one province or territory will be entered at a time, so that we may expect partial use within two years, and perhaps full use in the mid-1980s.

NOTES ON THE CONTENT AND FORM OF GAZETTEERS

Report presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*

The gazetteers published by official agencies of a country serve a double purpose. Being reference publications, they are the most effective means of introducing geographical names, standardized in the language (or languages) of the country concerned, into everyday usage, both domestically and abroad. For this reason, the publication of gazetteers is a pledge of successful work on the standardization of geographical names, at the national, and subsequently at the international, level.

Work on the compilation of gazetteers has considerably broadened in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics in recent years. In the search for the most convenient variant for practical application, several types of gazetteers were elaborated, each designed for a specific circle of consumers.

First of all it is necessary to distinguish between two main kinds of gazetteers: those containing domestic

* The original text of this paper, prepared by A. M. Komkov, Vice Chairman, Permanent Joint Commission on Geographical Names, USSR, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.20.

geographical names and those containing geographical names of other countries. The gazetteers of the first type, presenting the code of domestic geographical names, are approved by the corresponding State bodies and become official documents, to be used not only within this country but also abroad. The gazetteers of the second type, presenting geographical names from other countries, standardized in the language of the given country, may have official status only within the country of publication.

Modern gazetteers differ in their territorial coverage, number of entries, content and form.

Coverage

The national gazetteers published in the USSR cover both the whole territory of the country and, because of the great size of the country, individual political-administrative units: Republics, territories or regions. Gazetteers presenting names of other countries are compiled for the whole world, for groups of countries (united by common character of language or by their geographical position) and for separate countries.

Number of entries

In terms of size there is a wide range of gazetteers, ranging from comparatively small publications incorporating only the names of large and important entities to extremely comprehensive volumes. Gazetteers of the latter kind are usually compiled on the basis of census data (for selection of populated places) and of data derived from a base map (for selection of topographic features).

Content

For any Soviet gazetteer, the compulsory content includes the geographical name (in the normalized Russian form and, in the case of non-Russian names, in the official national form); a designation of the kind of feature the name relates to; and its connexion to a political-administrative unit of the first order. In addition, both national gazetteers and gazetteers for foreign countries may supply some additional information on geographical names, such as: existing unofficial forms of names or their local variants; alteration of names or change in spelling; stress points; more detailed administrative division or geographical co-ordinates of a feature; and certain strictly linguistic information on names as lexical units of a language (gender, case forms etc.).

Form

The publications may be of the traditional kind (with free information statement) or they may be produced by means of modern computer techniques (i.e. in reshaped form). A certain scantiness of the latter in respect of volume and presentation of information are compensated for by rapidness of compilation and by a noticeably decreased number of mistakes.

Sample pages from three Soviet gazetteers, showing a variety of both content and form, are represented in annexes I, II and III.

Annex I is a sample page from the *Dictionary of Geographical Names of the Georgian SSR*. Except for the normalized Russian and Georgian forms of names (in original script) and the designation of the kind of feature (abbreviation after the Russian-rendered name), there is no indication of administrative division. Geographical characteristics are given for topographic features where necessary. Stress points are indicated in the Russian-rendered forms.

Annex II is a sample page from the *Dictionary of Geographical Names of the Byelorussian SSR*. Each entry supplies the following information: the normalized Russian-rendered form of each name, with indication of the stress point; the normalized Byelorussian form of the name (in national spelling), with indication of the stress point; gender or number of the name (abbreviation in brackets), which indicates the grammatical forms the name assumes in a running text; kind of the feature (in abbreviated form) and its administrative division to the level of second-order units; names of topographic features are accompanied by short indication of geographical characteristics; and finally, local forms are given (after the words "**местн. ф.**") if these differ from the normalized one. The figures in brackets indicate order numbers of regions (according to the list attached to the *Dictionary*) where they are registered.

Annex III is a sample page from the *Dictionary of Geographical Names of Arabic Countries*, which supplies the following information for each name: the normalized Russian form; type of feature; country; geographical co-ordinates of the entity; romanized form of the name, with appropriate geographic term and the original (Arabic) lettering. In some cases, where the compilers could not establish the Arabic lettering, it is not indicated.

SAMPLE PAGE FROM *DICTIONARY OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES OF THE GEORGIAN SOVIET SOCIALIST REPUBLIC*

Джавахе́тский (Кочу́тский) хребе́т, Грузинская и Ариянская ССР	ჯავახეთის ქედი
Джавахо́тское наго́рье, Ахалкалакский, Богдановский, Дманисский и др.р-ны	ჯავახეთის მთიანეთი
Джа́вский райо́н, Юго-Осетинская АО	ჯავის რაიონი
Джалау́рта, с.,Сачхерский р-н	ჯალაურთა
Джампа́л, р.,левый приток р.Амткел; Гульрипшский р-н Абх.АССР	ჯამპალი
Джангита́у, г.,на границе с Кабардино-Балкарской АССР	ჯანგითაუ
Джандаргёль, оз.,см.Джанда́ри	
Джанда́ри, оз.(на территории Азербайджанской ССР - Джандаргёль), Грузинская и Азербайджанская ССР	ჯანდარი
Джанда́ри, с.,Гардабанский р-н	ჯანდარი
Джанпал, р.,см.Джампа́л	
Джапари́дзе, с.,Цителцкаройский р-н	ჯაფარიძე
Джахунде́ри, с.,Лентехский р-н	ჯახუნდერი
Джва́ри, пер.,Сачхерский р-н	ჯვარი
Джва́ри, пгт, Цаленджихский р-н	ჯვარი
Джвари́са, с.,Ткибульский горсовет	ჯვარისა
Джга́ли, с.,Целенджихский р-н	ჯგალი
Джге́рда, с.,Очамчирский р-н Абх.АССР	ჯგერდა
Джеджо́ра, р.,левый приток р.Рионы; Джавский Юго-Осет.АО и Онский р-ны	ჯეჯორა
Джиграше́ни, с.,Богдановский р-н	ჯიგრაშენი

Голы́нка – Галы́нка (ж.), д. и ж.-д.ст., Волк. Гр.

Голы́нка – Галы́нка (ж.), д., Гродн. Гр.

Голы́нка – Галы́нка (ж.), д., Клецк. Мн.

Голы́нка – Галы́нка (ж.), д., Осип. Мг.

Голы́нь – Галы́нь (ж., м.), д., Нвгруд. Гр.; местн. ф. Галы́нё (ср.) – Голы́не

Го́льни – Го́льні (мн.), д., Берест. Гр.

Гольцы́ – Гальцы́ (мн.), д., Стол. Бр.; местн. ф. Гі́льца, Гу́льца (мн.) – Го́льцы

Го́льчицы – Го́льчыцы (мн.), д., Слуцк. Мн.; местн. ф. Го́льчычы (мн.) – Го́льчичи

Гольша́нка – Гальша́нка (ж.), р., прав. приток р. Березина, басс. р. Неман; Ошм. Гр., Вол. Мн. и Ивьев. Гр.; местн. ф. в средн. и нижн. течении Альша́нка (ж.) – Ольша́нка

Гольша́ны – Гальша́ны (мн.), д., Ошм. Гр.; местн. ф. Альша́ны (мн.) – Ольша́ны

Го́ля – Го́ля (ж.), ж.-д.ст. в д. Пограничная, Кам. Бр.

ж Го́ля – Го́ля (ж.), д., см. Пограничная, д.

Го́мель – Го́мель (м.), гор. и ж.-д.ст., центр Гм. и Гом.; местн. ф. Го́мля, Го́мяй, Го́мей (Гом., 39, 40, 42, 49, 54), Го́мій (39, 40, 42) – Го́мля, Го́мей, Го́мий (м.)

Го́мель – Го́мель (м.), д., Плцк. Вт.; местн. ф. Го́мля (м.) – Го́мля

Го́мель – Го́мель (м.), оз., басс. р. Туровлянка; северо-западнее д. Гомель, Плцк. Вт.; местн. ф. Го́мля (м.) – Го́мля

Го́мельский райо́н – Го́мельскі раён (м.), на востоке Гм.

Го́мельское Поле́сье – Го́мельскае Палéссе (ср.), низина, восточная часть Белорусского Полесья; юго-восток БССР

Даккак, Судан, 12 56 сш 26 58 вд
Daqqaq, دقّاق
Дакук(Таук), Ирак, 35 08 сш 44 27 вд
Daquq(Tauq), داقوق
Дакуф, АРЕ, 28 24 сш 30 38 вд
Daquf, داقوف
Дала, НДРЙ, см. Эд-Дали, 13 42 сш 44 43 вд
Dala
Далави-Кара, Сирия, 37 08 сш 41 54 вд
Dalawi Kara, دلوى كرة
Дали-Фар, Сирия, 36 34 сш 37 48 вд
Dali Fa'r, دالى فأر
Далла, ист., АРЕ, 27 19 сш 27 20 вд
Dalla, 'A., عين دالّة
Дальбуз, Сирия, 34 44 сш 36 34 вд
Dalbuz, دلبوز
Дальга, АРЕ, 27 39 сш 30 42 вд
Dalga', دلجاء
Далькан, к., Саудовская Аравия, 24 16 сш 45 37 вд
Dalqan, well, دلقان
Далькут, Оман, 16 40 сш 53 12 вд
Dalkut, ضلكوت
Дальма, о., Персидский зал.: ОАЭ,
24 30 сш 52 20 вд
Dalma, Jaz., جزيرة دلما
Дальмадж, оз., Ирак, 32 20 сш 45 28 вд
Dalmaj, H., هور دلمج
Дальфа, г., АРЕ, вис. 418 м, 30 45 сш 34 12 вд
Dalfa, G., جبل ضلفة
Дальхаму, АРЕ, 30 20 сш 30 51 вд
Dalhamu, دلهمو
Дам, Саудовская Аравия, см.Эль-Лидам, 20 29 сш 44 50 вд
Dam
Дама, вади, Саудовская Аравия, 27 10 сш 35 45 вд
Dama, W., وادى دما
Даманхур, АРЕ, адм.центр мухафазн Бухейра,
31 02 сш 30 28 вд
Damanhur, دمنهور

UNITED NATIONS GAZETTEERS
Report presented by Hungary*

Résumé

Le Groupe d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques a créé un Groupe de travail des nomenclatures à sa cinquième session, en 1973. A cette même session, des recommandations ont été adoptées tendant à ce que l'on adapte les nomenclatures du Board on Geographic Names (BGN) des Etats-Unis pour les rendre conformes aux spécifications des Nations Unies.

Bien que nous pensions, comme il est indiqué dans le rapport du Groupe de travail sur sa sixième session, que ces nomenclatures doivent "faciliter l'élaboration d'une série de nomenclatures mondiales en l'absence de nomenclatures de ce genre établies par les autorités nationales intéressées", nous soulignons que nous ne souhaitons pas adapter la nomenclature du BGN portant sur notre pays.

Nous approuvons l'idée de la nomenclature sommaire, également mentionnée dans le rapport du Groupe de travail sur sa sixième session. Il conviendrait de spécifier qu'en l'absence d'une nomenclature quelconque la nomenclature sommaire pourrait être établie grâce à une coopération directe avec les services nationaux s'occupant des noms géographiques.

Resumen

El Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas sobre Nombres Geográficos estableció un Grupo de Trabajo sobre Nomenclátores en su quinto período de sesiones en 1973. También en este período de sesiones, se adoptaron recomendaciones para adaptar los nomenclátores de la Junta de los Estados Unidos sobre Nombres Geográficos a fin de cumplir con las especificaciones de las Naciones Unidas.

Si bien estamos de acuerdo con la declaración que figura en el informe del Grupo de Trabajo sobre su sexto período de sesiones al efecto de que estos nomenclátores son "para ayudar en la preparación de una serie de nomenclátores mundiales en ausencia de nomenclátores así preparados por las autoridades nacionales interesadas", hemos de poner de relieve que no deseamos adaptar el nomenclátor de la Junta de los Estados Unidos sobre Nombres Geográficos que abarca nuestro país.

Convenimos en el concepto del nomenclátor conciso también especificando en el informe sobre el sexto período de sesiones. Es preciso añadir a estas especificaciones que, a falta de cualquier clase de nomenclátores existentes, el nomenclátor conciso podría basarse también en la cooperación directa con la respectiva autoridad del país en materia de nombres.

*

* *

The United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names established a Working Group on Gazetteers at its fifth session in 1973. Also at this session, recommendations were adopted to adapt United States Board on Geographical Names (BGN) gazetteers to comply with United Nations specifications.

While we agree with the statement (in the report of the Working Group on its sixth session) to the effect that these gazetteers are "to help in the preparation of a series of world gazetteers in the absence of such gazetteers prepared by the national authorities concerned", we must emphasize that we do not wish to adapt the BGN gazetteer covering our country.

We agree to the concept of the *Concise Gazetteer*, also specified in the report on the sixth session. It is necessary to add to these specifications that in the absence of any kind of existing gazetteer, the *Concise Gazetteer* could also be based on direct co-operation with the respective country's name authority.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.27.

AUTOMATIC TYPE SELECTION AND TYPESETTING FOR MAPS IN THE DIVISION OF NATIONAL MAPPING
Report presented by Australia*

A system has been developed by the Division of National Mapping that automates the extraction, selection and typesetting of feature names for mapping purposes.

A master names file has been created based on the names contained in the *Australia 1:250,000 Map Series Gazetteer*. Within each feature code every named feature has been assigned an order of importance.

Feature groups and the number of heirarchies established for each are:

Division	*Group*	*Hierarchies*
Cultural	Populated places	11
	Homesteads etc.	3
	Roads	3
Topographic	Relief features	6
	Inland area features	12
	Islands	14
	Headlands	5
Hydrographic	Offshore areal water features	18
	Inland areal water features	14
	Drainage network	8

* The original text of this paper, prepared by the Division of National Mapping, Canberra, Australia, appeared as document E/CONF. 69/L.39.

Computer programmes have been written to:

(*a*) Extract feature names, for specified maps, and allocate type font, point size and case to each;

(*b*) Convert the selected feature names and associated type variables to code readable by the automatic typesetting machine;

(*c*) Provide listings for manual typesetting;

(*d*) Maintain the Master Names File through corrections, deletions and additions; and

(*e*) Provide listings or magnetic tape copies of feature names for specified maps or states on request.

At the map compilation stage the cartographer requests a listing of the feature names according to the hierarchy of importance determined for the map series. For one-off projects, the cartographer nominates the hierarchies to be used. This listing is checked for accuracy and completeness and any corrections and additions listed. The Master Names File is then updated.

The extraction and allocation programme is then run on the updated version, after which stripping film is contacted from the negative film output of the automatic typesetting machine, and the map name overlay prepared in the normal manner.

Anyone interested in further details of the system should write to:

Director of National Mapping
P.O. Box 548
Queanbeyan 2620
Australia

GAZETTEER OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY: INTRODUCTION

Report presented by the Federal Republic of Germany*

Résumé

La nomenclature géographique de la République fédérale d'Allemagne a été élaborée à l'Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie en collaboration avec le Comité permanent pour les noms géographiques et a été coordonnée avec le Ministre fédéral de l'intérieur. La première Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, tenue à Genève en 1967, a fait des recommandations pour l'établissement par les pays membres de nomenclatures nationales. Ces recommandations ont servi de règles pour la préparation de cette nomenclature.

Les noms indiqués dans la nomenclature géographique de la République fédérale d'Allemagne comprennent tous les lieux habités et tous les objets physiques et géographiques figurant sur la carte générale au 1 : 500 000, série mondiale 1404. De plus, on a incorporé toutes les communes qui, faute de place, ne paraissent pas sur la carte.

Tous les noms s'écrivent suivant l'orthographie officielle; la situation géographique et la région administrative et géographique sont indiquées et des indications éventuelles d'ordre qualitatif ou quantitatif sont données qui serviront de critères de généralisation.

La prononciation et l'accentuation ne sont indiquées que dans le cas où elles diffèrent des règles générales de la grammaire allemande. Pour garantir une mise à jour constante de la nomenclature géographique, on se sert du traitement électronique des données.

Resumen

El nomenclátor geográfico de la República Federal de Alemania ha sido elaborado por el Instituto de Geodesia Aplicada (Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie) en colaboración con el Comité Permanente de Nombres Geográficos, y ha sido coordinada con el Ministerio del Interior de la República Federal. La primera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Uniformar los Nombres Geográficos, celebrada en Ginebra en 1967, recomendó que los países miembros prepararan nomenclátores nacionales. Esas recomendaciones han servido de normas para la preparación del nomenclátor.

Los nombres del nomenclátor geográfico de la República Federal de Alemania abarcan todos los lugares habitados y todos los objetos físicos y geográficos que figuran en la carta general en escala 1 : 500.000, de la serie mundial 1404. Además, se han incorporado todos los municipios que, por falta de lugar, no aparecen en la carta.

Todos los nombres se escriben de acuerdo con la ortografía oficial; se indican la situación geográfica y la región administrativa, y se dan ocasionalmente indicaciones de tipo cualitativo o cuantitativo para que sirvan de criterios de generalización.

No se indican la pronunciación y la acentuación salvo cuando difieren de las que tendrían si se aplicasen las reglas generales de gramática alemana. Para garantizar la actualización permanente del nomenclátor geográfico, se utilizan métodos de elaboración electrónica de datos.

*

* *

In 1967, the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names passed the recommendation that the member countries elaborate gazetteers for their territories according to uniform specifications.

After the foundation of the Federal Republic of Germany, the Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie (Institute for Applied Geodesy) had taken over part of the functions of the former Reichsamt für Landesaufnahme (Reich Survey Office) and, as the competent service, undertook, in co-operation with the Permanent Committee on Geographical Names and the Federal Minister of the Interior, to compile such a gazetteer. Assisted by numerous institutions of the Federal

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.42.

Republic and of the *Länder*, the present *Geographisches Namenbuch Bundesrepublik Deutschland* (Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany) has been prepared.[1]

The geographical names used in this book refer in particular to the following groups of topographical features: populated places, mountains, mountainous regions, rivers, lakes, oceans, bays, islands and landscapes.

The selection of names has been based on the *Übersichtskarte* 1:500,000 (1:500,000 General Map) of World Series 1404.

For all names, the following information is given: official spelling; geographical and geodetic co-ordinates; and, for independent populated places or communities, the number of inhabitants and height above mean sea level. Also indicated for all populated places is information on their administrative area or function and such cultural and geographical characteristics as traffic systems and spa function.

Information is also given as to altitudes and dimensions of physical-geographical features, as well as on their affiliation with larger-scale natural units or water systems.

This additional information exceeds the minimum requirement of the United Nations. However, in the present *Gazetteer* we have included data of such encyclopaedic character, since they are indispensable as an important means of generalization in practical mapping.

We have not indicated the pronunciation (international phonetics) of each individual name. But reference is made in the introduction to the pronunciation rules in general and to regional and local particularities.

For populated places, especially, much of this additional information (e.g. number of inhabitants, administrative affiliation and cultural and geographical characteristics) is subject to continuous or occasional modification. The *Gazetteer* thus requires continuous revision.

Such continuous updating is made possible only by electronic data processing. Current modifications can be stored in the data file and retrieved and printed at any time. Moreover, electronic data processing offers the additional advantage that certain individual features or groups of features can be called separately with their respective data as required.

History of the *Gazetteer*

At the First International Congress for Geographers, held in Antwerp in 1871, the problematic nature of the spelling of geographical names in national as well as in international use had already been discussed. At that time, the demand was made that each country should compile for its territory a list of populated places in Roman lettering, which the participants noted was officially approved and should be acknowledged by other countries. This demand was extended in 1909 to all kinds of geographical names by the First Conference on the Preparation of an International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale.

But only in 1962, after the last United Nations Technical Conference on the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale in Bonn, could the different initiatives of certain nations be extended to an international level under the protection of the United Nations. In 1967, the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names in Geneva, followed by the Second Conference in London in 1972, promoted considerably the new development, initiating a fruitful co-operation between the member countries. In Geneva also a United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names has been established, comprising 16 linguistic/geographical divisions, including a Dutch-speaking and a German-speaking group. These latter two hold meetings in the intervals between the United Nations Conferences in order to prepare for the next one.

The first Conference in Geneva in 1967 passed the following recommendation for the presentation of national gazetteers:[2]

"Recommendation E. National Gazetteers

"It is recommended that each names authority produce, and continually revise, appropriate gazetteers of all its standardized geographical names.

"It is further recommended that, in addition to the standardized names, each gazetteer include, as a minimum, such information as is necessary for the proper location and identification of the named features.

"In particular, it is recommended that the following be included:

"(*a*) The kind of feature to which the name applies;

"(*b*) Precise description of the location and the extent, including a point position reference if possible, of each named feature;

"(*c*) Provision for the parts of natural features to be additionally defined by reference to the whole and for the names of extended features to be defined as necessary by reference to their constituent parts;

"(*d*) Such information on administrative or regional areas as is considered necessary and, if possible, reference to a map or chart within which the features lie;

"(*e*) All officially standardized names for a feature, if there are more than one; and provision for cross-references to be made to names previously used for the same feature.

"When national authorities determine it possible, both technically and economically, they may include such information on geographical names as gender, number, definite and indefinite forms, position of stress, tone and pronunciation in the system of the International Phonetic Association and such other

[1] The preliminary edition of the *Gazetteer* appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.42/Add.1 and is available on request from Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie, Frankfurt äm Main, the Federal Republic of Germany.

[2] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. 1, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.68.I.9), chap. III, resolution 4, recommendation E.

linguistic information as may lead to the better understanding and use of names both nationally and internationally."

At the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names in London in 1972 the additional resolution has been passed to include also an alphabetical glossary of the most customary designatory terms used, with a brief explanation of their meanings in English.

In addition, the Conference has recommended to those countries that, for the moment, do not have at their disposal a complete list of all geographical names of their territories, that they publish, in the interim, concise lists of the names of their geographical entities, including administrative division,[3] which could already be incorporated into the *Geographisches Namenbuch der Erde* (*Concise United Nations Gazetteer of the World*), as proposed by the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names at its fifth session.

In the Federal Republic of Germany, the national effort towards the standardization of geographical names began in 1952 with the founding of a Working Committee on *Namengebung und Namenschreibung* (Nomenclature and Spelling of Names) within the scope of the Deutsche Gesellschaft für Kartographie (German Society for Cartography). Following the example of its British counterpart, the Permanent Committee on Geographic Names for British Official Use, this Committee has developed into the Ständiger Ausschuß *für die Rechtschreibung geographischer Namen* (Permanent Committee on the Spelling of Geographical Names). After consultations with the responsible Governmental authorities in the Federal Republic of Germany, Austria and Switzerland, this Committee was established at Bad Godesberg on 16 January 1959. In the presence of members of the three States, the Director of the Institut für Landeskunde (Institute for Applied Geography), Professor Dr. E. Meynen, presided at this meeting. At a later date the name was shortened to Ständiger Ausschuß für geographische Namen, or StAGN (Permanent Committee on Geographical Names).

The most important task of StAGN is to standardize for the German-speaking countries the spelling of geographical names of all parts of the world for official and private use and to publish appropriate lists of geographical names. The first result of this work was the publication in 1966 of the *Duden-Wörterbuch geographischer Namen, Band I: Europa ohne Sowjetunion* (*Duden Dictionary of Geographical Names, volume I: Europe without the Soviet Union*) co-operation with the Bibliographic Institute at Mannheim. At the end of 1973, the secretariat of StAgN moved from the Institut für Landeskunde to the Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie in Frankfurt am Main. There, the work on the *Geographisches Namenbuch Bundesrepublik Deutschland* (*Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany*) has been resumed. The first task has been to test the use of electronic data processing for the production and updating of gazetteers.

[3] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III, resolutions 16 and 35.

Selection and sources used

Selection of geographical features

The present *Gazetteer* comprises the names of all geographical features of the Federal Republic of Germany shown on the official *Übersichtskarte* (general map) at scale 1:500,000, World Series 1404. In addition, the *Gazetteer* contains those names of independent communes which, due to lack of space, do not appear on the map. Thus, the *Gazetteer* also constitutes a complete list of all communes of the Federal Republic of Germany. It is possible to complete the *Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany* in such a way that all of the geographical names shown on the country's official topographic map at scale 1:25,000 can be incorporated at a later date.

Sources used

These were as follows:

(*a*) The sources used for the capture of geographical names were the General Map at scale 1:500,000 (both single sheets and assemblages of sheets) and the *Amtliche Gemeindeverzeichnisse* (official lists of communes) of the *Länder*;

(*b*) The document for the digitizing of geographical and geodetic co-ordinates of the central points of populated places and mountains and of the geographical centres of landscapes, islands and lakes was the General Topographic Map at scale 1:200,000;

(*c*) Sources for the affiliation of geographical-topographical features to the official map series and their sheet numbers were the sheet indexes of the official map series of the Federal Republic of Germany at scales from 1:25,000 to 1:1,000,000;

(*d*) Two sources used for the determination of the administrative affiliation and function of populated places were maps of the *Länder*, showing the boundaries of communes, and lists showing modifications of boundaries of administrative units caused by regional reforms in the *Länder*;

(*e*) The sources for the number of inhabitants of populated places were official lists published by the *Länder*, containing the communes of each *Land* with their extrapolated populations;

(*f*) Several sources were used for the determination of cultural, geographical and other characteristics, serving as most important criteria for generalization:

(i) The official map, at scale 1:750,000, showing the nets of federal *autobahns* (dual highways) and federal highways in the Federal Republic of Germany;

(ii) The handbook of the Bundesanstalt für Flugsicherung (Federal Office for Air Traffic Control), annexed maps;

(iii) The official list of the communes of the Federal Republic of Germany, giving the area and popu-

lation of each according to natural regional units;[4]

(iv) The official list showing the altitude above mean sea level of the centre of each commune;

(v) The official lists of seaports and inland ports in the Federal Republic of Germany;

(vi) The list of spas and health resorts in the Federal Republic of Germany; and

(vii) The official list of hydrographic codes.

(*g*) The different lists of geographical names were presented for final inspection to the competent ministry and State Survey Office of the *Land* concerned, where corrections and supplements have been made. Thus it is guaranteed that all information is of official character.

Arrangement of the *Gazetteer*

Headwords

The geographical names are listed as main entries or as cross-references in alphabetical order in the *Gazetteer*. Both are stressed by boldface type.

The main entries are the present official geographical names, with statistical, cultural and geographical information added for each.

Cross references are given as alternative names (e.g. "**Malchen** see **Melibocus**") and as broken entries (e.g. **Venn, Hohes** see **Hohes Venn**).

Alphabetical arrangement of entries

The alphabetical arrangement is made according to the specifications given by the Fachnormenausschuß des Deutschen Instituts für Normung e. V. (Committee for Technical Standards of the German Institute for Standardization) (FNBü-GA 5007 30-75).

The basic letters of the Roman alphabet are arranged as follows:

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z;

The umlaut letters ä, ö, and ü are alphabetized in the same way as a, o and u;

The diphthongs ae, oe and ue are alphabetized, regardless of their pronunciation, as a + e, o + e and u + e;

The letter ß is alphabetized as ss;

Hyphens and spaces have been disregarded for the purpose of alphabetical arrangement (thus, Groß-Gerau, Groß Ippener, Großrosseln).

Pronunciation

The general rule is that geographical names are pronounced according to the standard (colloquial) pronunciation, with individual letters being given their Roman pronunciation. The pronunciation is indicated after the headword only when it differs from the general rules for reading German or when doubt may arise, e.g. Soest (s*o*st), Duisburg (d*ü*sburg), Troisdorf (tr*o*sdorf), Kues (k*u*s), Cham (*k*am), Charlottenburg (*sch*arlottenburg), Celle (*z*elle), Lüchow (lüch*o*), Sylt (s*ü*lt), Eltville (elt*ville*), Saarlouis (sarl*ui*). As the stress in German pronunciation is generally on the first syllable, stress is indicated only in exceptional cases (e.g. Osnabrück, Bonam*e*s, Salzgitter, Kaiserslaut*e*rn). In these cases an italicized vowel indicates a long vowel; a point under a vowel indicates that the vowel in question is short in pronunciation.

In general, diphthongs are pronounced like umlauts (ae = ä, oe = ö and ue = ü).

Descriptions of features

For each feature, the following information is given:

(*a*) Indication of the kind of feature (e.g. municipality or commune, part of a commune, mountain, group of mountains, river, canal, lake, ocean, bay, island, landscape);

(*b*) Location by means of geographical and geodetic co-ordinates:

(i) For point features such as populated places and mountains, the co-ordinates of the central points are indicated;

(ii) For linear features such as rivers and canals, the co-ordinates of the mouths or those of the line where they definitely leave the territory of the Federal Republic of Germany are indicated;

(iii) For areal features such as lakes, islands and landscapes, the co-ordinates of the approximate geographical central point are indicated;

(*c*) Code numbers indicating statistical or geographical units (for populated places, their relation to the superior administrative unit is indicated; for other geographical features, the geographical and hydrographic code numbers are indicated);

(*d*) Quantitative information provided includes number of inhabitants for communes, altitude above mean sea level for populated places (as far as obtainable), altitudes of mountains and groups of mountains (with their highest elevations) and areas of natural regions in square kilometres;

(*e*) For populated places, qualitative information is provided, as applicable, on important cultural and geographical factors (e.g. traffic system, or function as a spa or health resort);

(*f*) Also indicated are the sheet numbers of the official map series of the Federal Republic of Germany at scales from 1:25,000 to 1:1,000,000.

Grammatical information

Names of physical-geographical features are followed, in brackets, by the grammatical gender (m = male, f = female, n = neuter) (e.g. Feldberg [m], Elbe [f], Hohes Venn [n]). The plural form is indicated by adding the notation [pl].

[4] Usage followed that of the *Handbuch der naturräumlichen Gliederung Deutschlands* (*Handbook of the Structure of Germany by Natural Regions*), vol. 2, *Bundesanstalt für Landeskunde und Raumordnung* (Bad Godesberg, 1953–1962).

General documents for the spelling of geographical names in the Federal Republic of Germany

Legal authority for spelling of geographical names

Often the different spelling of equal or homophonic geographical names raises the question of the legal foundations.

The *Länder* are competent to authorize the official spellings of geographical names. As to independent communes, the official list of communes of the statistical office of the *Land* in question is authoritative. The spellings of all other geographical names are official as they are shown on an official map.

Official sources

The following list indicates the source material used for the capture of geographical names of the *Land* of Lower Saxony only:

(*a*) *Übersichtskarte* 1:500,000 World Series 1404, published by the Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie, Frankfurt a. M.;

(*b*) *Topographische Übersichtskarte* (*General Topographic Map*) 1:200,000, published by the Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie, Frankfurt a. M.;

(*c*) Sheet indexes of the official topographical and general map series of the Federal Republic of Germany and of the Joint Operations Graphic (Ground) 1:250,000 Series 1501;

(*d*) *General Map of Lower Saxony* 1:500,000, Administrative Edition, published by the Wiedersächsisches Landesverwaltungsamt-Landesvermessung (Land Survey Office, Lower Saxony Administration Department), Hanover, 1976;

(*e*) Map at scale 1:200,000 showing the boundaries of communes, published by the Niedersächsisches Landesverwaltungsamt-Landesvermessung, Hanover, 1974;

(*f*) Population of the communes as of 1 January 1977, in *Statistische Berichte* (*Statistical Reports*) published by Niedersächsisches Landesverwaltungsamt-Statistik (Statistics), Hanover, 1977;

(*g*) Map at 1:750,000 showing the net of federal autobahns and federal highways as of 1 January 1977, published by the Bundesminister für Verkehr, Abteilung Straßenbau (Federal Ministry of Transport, Road Construction Department), Bonn, 1977;

(*h*) Map of the federal waterways at scale 1:1,000,000, published by the Bundesminister für Verkehr, Abteilung Wasserstraßen (Department of Waterways), Bonn, 1970;

(*i*) Nautical charts Nos. 98 and 101, *Die Ostsee* (*The Baltic Sea*) and *Die Nordsee* (*The North Sea*), published at scale 1:500,000 by the Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut (German Hydrographic Institute), Hamburg, 1964 and 1970;

(*j*) Map of the federal waterways in the coastal region at scale 1:500,000, published by the Federal Minister of Transport, Bonn, 1964;

(*k*) *Flugnavigationskarte* (*Air Navigation Chart*) at scale 1:1,000,000, in *Luftfahrthandbuch* (*Handbook for Air Navigation*), vol. III, published by the Bundesanstalt für Flugsicherung (Federal Office for Air Traffic Control) and the Amt für Flugsicherung der Bundeswehr (Office for Air Traffic Control of the German Federal Armed Forces), Frankfurt a. M., 1977;

(*l*) *Amtliches Gemeindeverzeichnis der Bundesrepublik Deutschland: Fläche und Wohnbevölkerung der naturräumlichen Einheiten* (*Area and Resident Population of Natural Regional Units*), published by the Federal Statistical Office, Wiesbaden, 1957, pages 60 ff.;

(*m*) List of the code numbers for Lower Saxony, published by the Lower Saxon Ministry for Food, Agriculture and Forestry, Hanover, 1975;

(*n*) *Amtliches Verzeichnis der Mittelpunkuskoordinaten und Höhen über NN für die Gemeinden Niedersachsens* (*Official list of the Co-ordinates of the Central Points and Heights Above Mean Sea Level for the Communes in Lower Saxony*), published by the Niedersächsisches Verwaltungsamt-Landesvermessung, Hanover, 1976; and

(*o*) The list of health resorts and spas in the *Bundeskommentar* (*Federal Commentary*), vol. II, in annex IA of the grant-in-aid rules of annex No. 7 of the grant-in-aid rules in the version of 15 February 1975 (GMBl., page 109, MinBlFin. page 134), 16th edition, Stuttgart, 1976.

Other sources

Other sources of spellings were:

(*a*) The map at scale 1:1,000,000 of the waterways in West and Central Germany and the Benelux countries published by Golben und Landkarten, Frankfurt a. M.; and

(*b*) *Westdeutscher Schiffahrts- und Hafenkalender 76* (*The West German Shipping and Port Calendar*, 1976) published by Binnenschiffahrtsverlag, Duisburg, 1976.

General rules for the German spelling of geographical names

In 1966 the general rules for the German spelling of geographical names were elaborated by StAgN and published in the *Duden*-Wörterbuch geographischer Namen (*Duden Dictionary of Geographical Names*). These rules are quoted below, with minor omissions. Since many examples given in the Dictionary refer to geographical names of foreign countries, these examples have been replaced by names relating to the territory of the Federal Republic of Germany.

"Geographical names are normally not subject to the general spelling rules. Rather, they are spelled in the officially approved or customary form.

"However, in the items mentioned below the German geographical names comply with the general spelling rules, except for individual cases where another officially approved version exists.

"1. Capitalization and spelling with small letters.

"(*a*) Adjectives and participles forming parts of geographical names are capitalized. This applies also to the *-isch* derivatives.

"*Examples*: Altes Land; Großer Arber; Deutsche Bucht; Hessisch Lichtenau.

"(*b*) Word forms with final letters *-er* which are derived from geographical names are capitalized.

"*Examples*: Lüneburger Heide; Allgäuer Alpen; Lübecker Bucht; Starnberger See.

"2. Use of one word, two words or hyphen.

"(*a*) Geographical and other names as determinative element.

"(i) In general, compounds consisting of a single or compound geographical name or a personal name plus a primary word are written as one word.
Examples: Frankenwald; Chiemsee; Albstadt; Wilhelmshaven.

"(ii) The hyphen (-) is often used either to improve intelligibility or to emphasize the name when the geographical name is followed by a compound primary word which forms the determinative element.
Example: Elbe-Seitenkanal.
Where intelligibility is not impaired, writing as one word is preferable.
Example: Weserbergland.

"(iii) Hyphens are used when the determinative element consists of several geographical names.
Example: Dortmund-Ems-Kanal.

"(iv) Hyphens are also used when the determinative element consists of several words (abbreviations included).
Example: Friedrich-Wilhelm-Lübke-Koog.

"(*b*) Derivatives with final letters *-er*.

"(i) Two words are used when the derivatives with final *-er* of geographical names designate the location.
Examples: Oberpfälzer Wald; Starnberger See; Dammer Berge; Wahner Heide.
Exceptions: Böhmerwald; Siegerland.

"(ii) There are geographical names with final *-er* which are not derivatives in the above sense. These names are written as one word in accordance with rule 2(*a*)(i) above.
Examples: Sauerland; Wuppertal.
Where the derivatives with final *-er* of geographical names designate persons, writing as one word is preferred.

"(*c*) Adjectives as determinative elements.

"(i) Spelling as one word is generally used for compounds consisting of non-inflected adjectives such as groß, klein, alt, neu etc. or direction of compass plus a geographical name.
Examples: Oberpfalz; Großalmerode; Neustadt; Ostfildern.
On the other hand, official usage prescribes: Groß-Gerau; Neu-Anspach; Klein Nordende.

"(ii) The hyphen is used with compounds consisting of non-inflected adjectives with final letters *-isch* which are derived from the names of places, countries and nations plus geographical names.
Example: Hessisch-Oldendorf.
On the other hand, official usage prescribes: Bayerisch Eisenstein.

"(*d*) Compounds consisting of geographical names.

"The hyphen is used when a geographical name is composed of two geographical names.

Examples: Schleswig-Holstein; Idar-Oberstein; Villingen-Schwenningen."

NOTES ON THE CONTENT OF THE NATIONAL LISTS OF NAMES

Report presented by the German Democratic Republic*

The national lists of the geographical names of all countries are an important basis for the international standardization of geographical names. In recommendation E of resolution 4 of the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names,[1] the Conference had expressed the view that such lists would be desirable and should be published. The national lists of geographical names available so far differ very much in their character.

The following are some ideas on how to prepare national lists of geographical names as exemplified by the German Democratic Republic on the basis of the above resolution.

A national list of geographical names is intended to contribute to a correct spelling and pronunciation of geographical names in all spheres of the social life of a country. Geographical names cover the names of all natural and man-made objects situated in the territory of the country concerned. They include the names of the territorial administrative units (counties, districts, towns, municipal districts, communities and associations of communities); of settlements (towns, communities, subdistricts, residential areas); of places of production in industry, agriculture, food-stuffs economy and forestry; of railways; of routes for motor traffic, inland and sea navigation and air traffic; and of cultural, educational and health institutions, sport and recreational facilities and the like, provided these occupy a given territory and have been given a name. The number of physical-geographical names is also quite large (e.g. names for landscapes, relief, hydrography and ground vegetation). In this rather broad meaning the concept of geographical names also includes microtoponyms, the so-called "field names" and names of village holdings, which are usually entered on real-estate maps and other large-scale maps.

* The original text of this paper, prepared by H. Zikmund, German Democratic Republic, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.48.

[1] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, Geneva, 4–22 September 1967*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.68.I.9), chap. III.

An important aspect of the treatment of geographical names is to be seen in the process of systematically changing the natural environment, which also has an influence on geographical names. The German Democratic Republic has witnessed revolutionary changes in the field of agriculture. The year 1960 meant the end of a development which led to the full introduction of the co-operative system in agriculture. At present the production of plant and animal products is gradually being changed on the principle of industrialized production, and a systematic transition to industrialized production methods is going on, with the greatest benefit for the whole of society. Studies indicate that property-oriented thinking no longer plays any important role in field names and names of village holdings and that, in connexion with large agricultural areas, new names are being coined on the basis of practical work under production relations that are undergoing steady development. This is why a national book of names should be drawn up in such a way that it will be a guideline not only for the correct use of existing geographical names but also for the correct and purposeful coining of new names.

In the introduction to the actual list of names the treasury of geographical names should be characterized in a brief but concise way before, providing a short background description of the size and history of the country, past and present. The results already obtained in philological research work on this treasury of names should also be mentioned.

After the presentation of the existing regulations concerning the use of the previous geographical names and the coining of new geographical names, the rules for the spelling of geographical names are to be elucidated in detail. Furthermore, information should be included on the number of names listed, the main headings and reference headings, the system of alphabetization, the phonetic transcription, the grammatical characterization of the names, the descriptions of the objects and the abbreviations used.

The number of geographical names to be listed depends on the scale of the map. Given a scale of 1:200,000, the number of names entered should amount to about 25,000 in the case of the German Democratic Republic, i.e. 18,000 settlement names and 7,000 other geographical names. It is recommended, on the basis of resolution 35 of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names,[2] that a concise or interim list of names should first be published. First of all, such a list can be compiled in less time; and second, it will provide valuable experience for the preparation of a complete list of names.

Problems regarding the spelling of geographical names in the German Democratic Republic lie in the fact that those names reflect marked traces of long-standing spelling habits, orthographic peculiarities of former times, which contradict today's orthographic rules and which differ markedly from the spelling of the other words of the current language concerned. The valid German orthography of today, for instance, which was established in the beginning of this century, is by no means fully homogeneous, but the spelling of the geographical names of the German Democratic Republic is even more heterogeneous in terms of orthography. Besides, half of all the geographical names in the German Democratic Republic are of non-German origin, and trace back to Slavic forms that were subject to various changes in the individual German dialects. Typical endings of place names in the German Democratic Republic are *-in*, *-ow*, *-itz*. A national list of names has to face such problems and must ensure that the names, wherever they are used, will be entered, printed, written and pronounced uniformly. The national list of names must indicate how to apply in practice the rules for the spelling of the geographical names of the country concerned. This requirement does not rule out the inclusion (for instance in brackets) of standardized forms of names that are still widely used; in such cases a special point should be made of noting that they are to be avoided for the reasons given.

[2] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, London, 10–31 May 1972*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

GAZETTEERS IN JAPAN
Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

Les principales nomenclatures établies au Japon se répartissent comme suit :

a) Collections établies par des organismes publics : 5 volumes;

b) Collections établies par des organismes non publics : 5 volumes;

c) Autres publications : 2 volumes.

Resumen

Los principales nomenclátores preparados en el Japón son los siguientes:

a) Colecciones preparadas por organismos gubernamentales: 5 libros;

b) Colecciones preparadas por organismos no gubernamentales: 5 libros;

c) Otros: 2 libros.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.56.

*

* *

The main gazetteers prepared for use in Japan are of two types: those prepared by Government agencies and those prepared by non-Governmental agencies.

Collections prepared by Government agencies

(*a*) Geographic Bureau, Ministry of Home Affairs, *Gunku Tyōson Itiran* (*List of Counties, Wards, Towns and Villages*), 1881.

Geographic Bureau, Ministry of Home Affairs, *Timei Sakuin* (*Geographical Name Index*), 1885.

The above are the collections of administrative names of places (down to the village level).

(*b*) Geographical Survey Institute, Ministry of Construction, *Hyōzyun Timei-syū* (*Collection of Standard Geographical Names*), 1971.

This book is a collection of about 5,000 natural place names determined by the Joint Committee on the Standardization of Geographical Names. The names are not written in Roman letters, nor are their locations indicated by latitude and longitude.

(*c*) Hydrographic Department, Maritime Safety Agency, *Nihon Engan Timei-syū* (*Collection of Geographical Names Along Japanese Seacoasts*), 1948.

About 10,000 geographical names used in nautical charts are arranged in alphabetical order. The names are expressed in Roman letters and the locations are indicated by latitude and longitude.

(*d*) Hydrographic Department, Maritime Safety Agency, *Suirosi* (*Sailing Directions*), 1966–1975.

The book gives descriptions on the conditions of the major points written on nautical charts. The index at the back of the book may be used as a gazetteer. The geographical names are written in Roman letters.

(*e*) Ministry of Education, *Timei no Yobikata to Kakikata* (*How to Read and Write Geographical Names*), 1958.

This book provides the guidelines for reading and writing geographical names necessary for elementary and secondary education. It is a collection of the names of principal natural regions in Japan and foreign geographical names.

Collections prepared by non-governmental agencies

These are:

(*a*) Togo Yosida, *Dai-nippon Timei Zisyo* (*Greater Japan Geographical Names Dictionary*), 1900–1909.

This book is a collection of geographical names which had appeared in a wide variety of literature from ancient times. It contains historical annotations.

(*b*) Japan Broadcasting Corporation (NHK), *Nihon Timei Hatuon Ziten* (*Dictionary of Pronunciation of Japanese Geographical Names*), 1959–1962.

This book is a collection of the names of *mati* and *ōaza* (determined by *si*, *mati* and *mura*) and of the names of natural regions (shown by district). The volume on Central Japan has been published but the volumes on the Hokkaidō, Tōhoku and Kyūsyū regions have not yet been completed.

(*c*) Akira Watanabe and others, *Nihon Timei Daiziten* (*Greater Japanese Geographical Gazetteer*), 1968.

(*d*) Akira Watanabe and others, *Sekai Timei Daiziten* (*Greater World Geographical Gazetteer*), 1973–1974.

(*e*) Sansei-dō, *Konsaisu Timei Daiziten* (*Concise Geographical Names Dictionary*) (volume for Japan), 1975.

Other gazetteers

The following ancient books on geographical names are still used:

(*a*) *Hudoki* (*A Topography*)

This book carries the results of a survey conducted in 713 on the origins of geographical names, local products, legends and the like. Those portions of the book that concern the east half of Simane Ken and parts of Ibaraki-Ken, Hyōgo-Ken and Oita-Ken are still preserved.

(*b*) Minamto-no Sitagō, *Wamyō Ruizyu-syō* (*Abridged Collection of Japanese Names*), 931–937.

Being an encyclopaedia, this book contains 128 categories of collection. Descriptions are given of how to read the names of about 4,000 *gō*, corresponding to the smallest administrative unit (50 households) in that period.

AUSTRIAN NATIONAL GAZETTEERS

Report presented by Austria*

The Gazetteer of Austria

In 1975 the Austrian Academy of Sciences published a *Gazetteer of Austria*, which follows to a large extent the recommendations given by the First and Second United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names on this subject:

(1) First United Nations Conference, Report, E/CONF.53/3, III, 4, Recommendation E, and III, 19, Recommendation B;

(2) Second United Nations Conference, Report E/CONF.61/4, III, 35.

This *Gazetteer* is selective in the sense of resolution 25 of the Second United Nations Conference on Geographical Names. It contains all categories of geographical names. Its title page, preface, table of contents, introduction and glossary of geographical appellatives all are in both German and English. The alphabetical part of

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.73.

the *Gazetteer* is printed in German only, but its arrangement is such that the English-speaking reader is able to use it.

Annex I consists of copies of some pages of the *Gazetteer*, which will show its aims, composition and contents.

THE *Ortsverzeichnis* 1971 (GAZETTEER OF INHABITED PLACES, 1971)

Whereas the *Gazetteer of Austria* comprises a selection of all categories of geographical names, the *Ortsverzeichnis 1971* contains the names of inhabited places only, but these to a very high degree of completeness (about 75,000 place names). It is the official publication of the Austrian Central Statistical Office. In 1974–1977 eight volumes were published, comprising a total of altogether 1,214 pages. Each volume covered one province, with the exception that Lower Austria and Vienna were comprised in one volume. A register volume, comprising the place names of the whole country in one alphabetical sequence, will be published later.

Annex II consists of copies of some pages showing the composition of the *Ortsverzeichnis 1971*.

Annex I

SAMPLE PAGES FROM THE *GAZETTEER OF AUSTRIA*

AUSTRIAN ACADEMY OF SCIENCES
PUBLICATIONS OF THE INSTITUTE OF CARTOGRAPHY

STUDIES IN THEORETICAL CARTOGRAPHY, VOLUME 3

GAZETTEER OF AUSTRIA

edited in accordance with the recommendations of the
UNITED NATIONS

by

JOSEF BREU

with the cooperation of the
Department of Cartographic Toponymy
of the Austrian Cartographic Commission
of the Austrian Geographical Society

VIENNA 1975

CONTENTS

PREFACE

When in 1967 the United Nations recommended to its members the compilation of standardized gazetteers and these recommendations were subsequently supported by the Austrian Academy of Sciences, the representatives of cartographic toponymy in Austria regarded it as their task and duty to prepare such a gazetteer.

Since the present study is fundamental to a systematic coverage of Austrian geographical names and since it is furthermore of general importance for cartographic toponymy owing to its theoretical foundation, it has been taken up into the series *Forschungen zur Theoretischen Kartographie* of the Austrian Academy of Sciences.

The work was carried out by individual and corporate members of the Department of Cartographic Toponymy of the Austrian Cartographic Commission of the Austrian Cartographic Society as follows:

1. At the *Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen, Gruppe Landesaufnahme*, Mr. ALOIS GRUBINGER of the *Abteilung Kartographie*, headed by Mr. KARL MÜLLER, drafted the card index for the gazetteer and incorporated any pertinent corrections.

2. The toponymic committees of the *Länder*, i.e., the *Burgenländische Nomenklaturkommission beim Amte der Burgenländischen Landesregierung* under the chairmanship of Dr. AUGUST ERNST, the *Steirische Ortsnamenkommission* under the chairmanship of Professor FRITZ POSCH, the *Tiroler Nomenklaturkommission beim Amt der Tiroler Landesregierung* under the chairmanship of Dr. EDUARD WIDMOSER and the *Nomenklaturkommission im Amte der Vorarlberger Landesregierung* under the chairmanship of Dr. RAIMUND MEYER, reviewed, annotated and supplemented the draft for their respective areas.

3. Dr. OTTO BACK was in charge of the phonetic notation and contributed the chapter on pronunciation in the introduction.

4. At the *Österreichisches Statistisches Zentralamt* Mr. KARL ISAMBERTH verified and brought up to date information on the administrative classification of parts of populated places, populated places and communes.

5. The chief editor had the task to elaborate a basic plan; to determine the stock of names to be included; to decide on the make-up of the gazetteer; to determine the general layout of the entries; to select the proper sources; to check the index cards of the manuscript both as regards the individual entry and the description of the feature concerned and to write the introduction with the exception of Chapter C II.

These operations were partly carried out under the auspices of the *Ortsnamenstelle* of the *Österreichisches Ost- und Südosteuropa-Institut*.

The Gazetteer of Austria is a dictionary of the names of the more important geographical features of the country. It covers rivers, lakes, glaciers, mountains, passes, mountain ranges, populated places, roads, railways, waterways, etc.; in short, all categories of named geographical features with the exception of the lowest stratum (fields, urban traffic areas, etc.).

The following data are given with each name: correct spelling, pronunciation, indication of the respective topographic category, location, geographical co-ordinates, elevation above sea level, name of the administrative unit in which the named feature is situated, variant forms, if any, and grammatical references. Data which would go beyond the individualization and location of a geographical feature such as information on the physical and human geography of a feature have not been taken up. Thus the book is a dictionary of geographical proper names and as such distinct from encyclopaedic gazetteers.

In accordance with the recommendations of the United Nations its main purpose is to provide national and international cartography with authoritative material permitting a correct lettering of maps; moreover, it will be a useful work of reference for a more general public.

Apart from the above-mentioned experts and agencies many other specialists and authorities have co-operated in the preparation of the gazetteer by furnishing valuable information. Thanks are due to them all. The editor's special gratitude must be expressed to Professor Erik Arnberger, head of the Institute of Cartography of the Austrian Academy of Sciences, who has made possible the publication of this work, and to the *Fonds zur Förderung der wissenschaftlichen Forschung* for its participation in the printing-expenses.

Vienna, October 1974 Josef Breu

Amtliche Bezeichnung Official designation	Deutsche Definition Definition in German	Englische Definition Definition in English
Markt*	Ortschaft mit Marktrecht	*Ortschaft* with market right
Marktgemeinde	Gemeinde mit dem Titel Marktgemeinde	commune with the title *Marktgemeinde*
Ortschaft	Gesamtheit von Häusern, die durch eine gemeinsame Konskriptionsnumerierung zusammengefaßt ist	total of houses (populated place) with common "conscription" numbering
Ortschaftsanteil	Ortschaftsanteile sind Teile von Ortschaften, die in verschiedenen Gemeinden (Ortsgemeinden) liegen	*Ortschaftsanteile* are parts of *Ortschaften* situated in different communes
Ortschaftsbestandteil	im Sinne der staatlichen Statistik ein Teil einer Ortschaft, der durch seine abgetrennte Lage und besondere lokale Bedeutung bemerkenswert ist	in terms of official statistics a part of an *Ortschaft* remarkable for its separate location and special local importance
Ortsgemeinde	→ Gemeinde	→ *Gemeinde*
Ortsverwaltungsteil	bei größeren burgenländischen Gemeinden vorkommende Unterteilung des Verwaltungssprengels des Gemeindegebietes zur Erleichterung der Verwaltung	subdivision of the administrative district of the commune for administrative purposes, in larger communes in Burgenland
Politischer Bezirk (Verwaltungsbezirk)	politische Verwaltungseinheit zwischen Land und Gemeinde	administrative unit between *Land* and commune (administrative district)
Rotte	2 und mehr Häuser in getrennter Lage	2 or more non-contiguous houses
Stadt*	Gemeinde mit dem Titel Stadt (nur in Vorarlberg)	commune with the title *Stadt* (town), only in Vorarlberg
Stadtgemeinde	Gemeinde mit dem Titel Stadtgemeinde	commune with the title *Stadtgemeinde* (urban commune)

* Im Namenbuch selbst sind die Bezeichnungen Markt und Stadt gemäß der Handhabung des Ortsverzeichnisses von Österreich vom Jahre 1965 und der Österreichischen Karte 1 : 50 000 zur Kennzeichnung jener Ortschaftsbestandteile verwendet worden, in welchen sich in der Regel der Sitz der entsprechenden Gemeindeverwaltung befindet.

Following the practice of the *Ortsverzeichnis von Österreich* of 1965 and the *Österreichische Karte 1 : 50 000* the designations *Markt* and *Stadt* are used in the gazetteer to indicate those *Ortschaftsbestandteile* in which the communal authorities have their seat.

Gattungswort Appellative	Deutsche Definition Definition in German	Englische Definition Definition in English
der Espan	Viehweide	livestock pasture
die Etz	Weidefläche	pasture land
das Feichtach, Feichta	Fichtenwald	spruce forest
der Ferner	Gletscher	glacier
der Filz	Moor, Sumpf	bog, swamp
der First	Berggrat	mountain crest
die Fluh	jäher Felsabhang	precipitous rocky slope
die Flur	Nutzland außer Wald; Dorfgemarkung	productive land excepting woodland; land and fields belonging to one village
das Forchach, Forchet	Föhrenwald	pine forest
der Fronwald	Wald im Besitz der ehemaligen Grundherrschaft	forest owned by former lord of the manor
die Gallo	Stelle, wo Grundwasser austritt	place where groundwater emerges
die Galtalm, Galtalpe	Alpenweide für das Galtvieh (keine Milch gebenden Rinder)	alpine pasture for non-dairy cattle
die Gando	Schuttfeld, Geröllhalde	talus, scree
der Gang	Flußlauf oder -arm, Wassergraben	river course or branch, gully
das Gebirge, Gebirg, 'Birg	durch Täler gegliederte Gesamtheit von Bergen und Hochflächen; Gruppe von Weinbergen	series of mountains and plateaux broken by valleys; group of vineyards
das Gehau	Waldabteilung der Forstwirtschaft	section of wood in forestry
der Gern, Geren	spitz zulaufende Feldstücke oder Geländeteile	tapered field or land plots
das Gestade	Ufer an größeren Gewässern	bank of a larger body of water
das Gewand, Gewann	Unterabteilung der Feldflur mit einem Streifen für jedes Gehöft	a division of the communal lands of a village with a strip of land for each farm
der Gießbach	rasch fließender Bach	fast-running brook
der Graben	enges Gebirgstal ohne Talsohle; regulierter Bachlauf	narrow mountain valley without valley floor; bed of controlled brook

Leibnitzer Feld ['laɪbnɪtsər 'fɛlt]; *Ebene* am r. Murufer oberhalb der Sulmmündung; *Ld.* Stm.; φ 46°46′—51′, λ 15°30′—35′; *ÖK* 190

Leisach ['laɪzax]; *Df.* im Pustertal, sw. von Lienz; *Ortsch.* u. *Gd.* Leisach, *PB* Lienz, *Ld.* Tirol; φ 46°49′, λ 12°45′, *h* 710; *ÖK* 179

Leiser Berge ['laɪzər 'bɛrgə]; *Berggruppe* im mittleren Weinviertel, n. von Ernstbrunn; *Ld.* NÖ; φ 48°32′—35′, λ 16°20′—30′, *h* 492; *ÖK* 24

Leising ['laɪzɪŋ]; *Df.* in der Obersteiermark, sw. von Kraubath an der Mur; *Ortsch.* Leising, *Gd.* Kraubath an der Mur, *PB* Leoben, *Ld.* Stm.; φ 47°18′, λ 14°56′, *h* 605; *ÖK* 132

Leiten ['laɪtən]; *Ortsch.* im Gailtal, ö. des Kartitscher Sattels; *Gd.* Obertilliach, *PB* Lienz, *Ld.* Tirol; φ 46°43′, λ 12°34′, *h* 1427; *ÖK* 195

Leiterfall ['laɪtərfal]; *Wasserfall* des Leiterbaches [r. Zufluß der Möll], w. von Heiligenblut; *Ld.* Ktn.; φ 47°03′, λ 12°47′; *ÖK* 153

Leitha ['laɪta], *die;* r. *Nebenfluß* der Donau [Kleine Donau], *Quellflüsse* Schwarza u. Pitten, Austritt aus Österreich: ö. von Nickelsdorf, im Nordburgenland; *Staaten (Ld.):* Österr. (NÖ, Bgl.), Ung.; *(Austritt aus Österr.:)* φ 47°57′, λ 17°06′, *h* 130; *ÖK* 59—61, 76, 77, 79, 80, 106

Leithaberg → Leithagebirge

Leithagebirge ['laɪtagəbɪrgə], *örtlich:* Leithaberg ['laɪtabɛrk]; *Mittelgebirge* zwischen der Leitha und dem Neusiedler See; *Ld.* Bgl., NÖ; φ 47°50′—48°00′, λ 16°27′—47′; *ÖK* 77, 78

Leithaprodersdorf [laɪta'pro:dərsdɔrf]; *Df.* im Nordburgenland, an der Leitha sö. von Ebreichsdorf; *Ortsch.* u. *Gd.* Leithaprodersdorf, *PB* Eisenstadt-Umgebung, *Ld.* Bgl.; φ 47°56′, λ 16°29′, *h* 196; *ÖK* 77

Leithastraße ['laɪtaʃtra:sə]; *Bundesstraße* von Wiener Neustadt über Ebenfurth, Unterwaltersdorf, Riesenberg und Götzendorf an der Leitha nach Fischamend Markt; *Ld.* NÖ; φ 47°49′—48°07′, λ 16°15′—37′; *ÖK* 59, 60, 76, 77

Leitzersdorf ['laɪtsərsdɔrf]; *Df.* im s. Weinviertel, nö. von Stockerau; *Ortsch.* u. *Gd.* Leitzersdorf, *PB* Korneuburg, *Ld.* NÖ; φ 48°25′, λ 16°15′, *h* 220; *ÖK* 40

Lembach im Mühlkreis ['lɛmbax ɪm 'my:lkraɪs]; *Markt* im w. Mühlviertel, w. von Neufelden; *Ortsch.* u. *Gd.* Lembach im Mühlkreis [*KG* Lembach], *PB* Rohrbach, *Ld.* OÖ; φ 48°30′, λ 13°54′, *h* 554; *ÖK* 31

Lemsitzbach ['lɛmzɪtsbax]; l. *Zufluß* des Stainzbaches, mündet ö. von Stainz; *Ld.* Stm.; *(Mdg.:)* φ 46°54′, λ 15°16′, *h* 325; *ÖK* 189

Lend [lɛnt]; *Ortsch.* an der Salzach, am Ausgang des Gasteiner Tales; *Gd.* Lend, *PB* Zell am See, *Ld.* Sbg.; φ 47°18′, λ 13°03′, *h* 639; *ÖK* 124

Lend → Graz

Lendorf ['lɛndɔrf, 'lɛmdɔrf]; *Df.* nw. von Klagenfurt; *Ortsch.* Lendorf, *Statutarstadt* Klagenfurt, *Ld.* Ktn.; φ 46°40′, λ 14°17′, *h* 452; *ÖK* 202

Lengau ['lɛŋgau]; *Df.* im s. Innviertel, nw. von Straßwalchen; *Ortsch.* u. *Gd.* Lengau, *PB* Braunau am Inn, *Ld.* OÖ; φ 48°00′, λ 13°13′, *h* 508; *ÖK* 46

Lengenfeld ['lɛŋənfɛlt]; *Hauptort* der gleichnamigen *Marktgd.*, im sö. Waldviertel, w. von Langenlois; *PB* Krems an der Donau, *Ld.* NÖ; φ 48°28′, λ 15°36′, *h* 305; *ÖK* 38

Lenkstein ['lɛŋkʃtaɪn]; *Berg* in der nö. Rieserfernergruppe; *Staaten (Ld.):* Österr. (Tirol), It. [Südtirol]; φ 46°56′, λ 12°10′, *h* 3236; *ÖK* 177

Lenzing ['lɛntsɪŋ]; *Gd.* an der Ager, sw. von Vöcklabruck; *PB* Vöcklabruck, *Ld.* OÖ; φ 47°58′, λ 13°37′, *h* 490; *ÖK* 66

Leoben [le'o:bən]; *Stadt* an der Mur, in der Obersteiermark; *Stadtgd.* u. *PB* Leoben, *Ld.* Stm.; φ 47°23′, λ 15°06′, *h* 540; *ÖK* 133

Leobener Straße [le'o:bənər ˌʃtra:sə]; *Bundesstraße* von Sankt Marein im Mürztal über Kapfenberg und Bruck an der Mur nach Leoben [Göß]; *Ld.* Stm.; φ 47°22′—28′, λ 15°06′—22′; *ÖK* 133, 134

Leobersdorf [le'o:bərsdɔrf]; *Hauptort* der gleichnamigen *Marktgd.*, an der Triesting, am N-Rand des Wiener Beckens, s. von

ORTS-VERZEICHNIS 1971

Bearbeitet auf Grund der Ergebnisse der Volkszählung vom 12. Mai 1971

Herausgegeben vom
Österreichischen Statistischen Zentralamt
Wien 1974–1977

3 Kirchberg am Walde (0)	179/4–703	
Abdecker H	1/0–	5
Froschau R	3/0–	12
Haspelhäuser R	4/0–	14
Kirchberg am Walde 575 m [48°43', 15°5'] [Schloß Kirchberg]	167/4–660	
Tiergartenhäuser ZH	4/0–	12
4 Ullrichs (1) D 552 m	65/1–253	
5 Weißenalbern (4) D 652 m	46/3–215	

Zählsprengelübersicht:

–000 Kirchberg am Walde	179/4–703
–001 Ullrichs	65/1–253
–002 Fromberg	31/1–133
–003 Hollenstein	70/1–262
–004 Weißenalbern	46/3–215

22 Langegg ◇ 119/3–346
309 22

Gerichtsbezirk: Schrems
Fläche: 1.113,92 ha
Postleitzahl: 3872
Österr.Karte: 5
Höhenklasse: V
Katastralgemeinden:
Kiensass 633,94 ha, Langegg 479,98 ha

1 Kiensaß	23/1–	50
Kiensaß R 548 m	23/0–	50
Nicht ständig bewohnbar oder zugelassen: Jh		
2 Langegg	71/2–241	
Langegg D 534 m [48°50', 15°2']	68/2–234	
Winkel R	3/0–	7
3 Neulangegg	25/0–	55
Mexiko R	4/0–	9
Neulangegg D (550 m)	21/0–	46

23 Langschwarza ◇ 108/0–486
309 23

Gerichtsbezirk: Schrems
Fläche: 939,81 ha
Postleitzahl: 3944
Österr.Karte: 6
Höhenklasse: V
Katastralgemeinden:
Kurzschwarza 335,52 ha, Langschwarza 604,29 ha

1 Kurzschwarza D (540 m)	31/0–161	
2 Langschwarza	77/0–325	
Langschwarza D 553 m [48°47', 15°7']	73/0–305	
Neuhöf W	4/0–	20

24 Lauterbach ◇ 54/1–191
309 24

Gerichtsbezirk: Weitra
Fläche: 823,49 ha
Postleitzahl: 3970
Österr.Karte: 17
Höhenklasse: VII
Katastralgemeinde:
Lauterbach 823,49 ha

1 Lauterbach	54/1–191	
Holzmühle Gh	1/0–	7
Lauterbach D 703 m [48°42', 14°47']	33/0–119	
ZH	20/1–	65

25 Litschau St ◇ 741/22–2.449
309 25 (Z)

Gerichtsbezirk: Litschau
Fläche: 4.676,93 ha
Postleitzahl: 3874
Österr.Karten: 5, 6
Höhenklasse: V
Katastralgemeinden:
Gopprechts 519,68 ha, Litschau 1.630,27 ha, Loimanns 544,94 ha, Reichenbach 268,60 ha, Schönau 1.713,44 ha

1 Gopprechts (3)	79/	2–	252
Gopprechts D (510 m)	69/	1–	227
Gopprechtshäuser ZH	8/	0–	21
Thaureshaus Hf	1/	0–	3
Wielingshaus Hf	1/	0–	1
Nicht ständig bewohnbar oder zugelassen: (Jh)	1		
2 Litschau-Seilerndorf (0)	45/	1–	158
Langauhäuser Jh	2/	0–	0
Litschau-Seilerndorf Stt (540 m) [Schloß Seilern]	41/	0–	154
Sandgrubenhäuser R	2/	0–	4
Nicht ständig bewohnbar oder zugelassen: (Jh)	1		
3 Litschau-Stadt (0)	109/	4–	339
Litschau-Stadt Stt 531 m [48°57', 15°3']	104/	4–	328
ZH	5/	0–	11
4 Litschau-Vorstadt (0)	356/	9–	1.191
Hudderin R	5/	0–	16
Kainraths R	5/	0–	20
Litschau-Vorstadt Stt (550 m)	333/	9–	1.114
Schandacherhäuser E	2/	0–	8
Schlägerhäuser Hf	1/	0–	5
ZH	10/	0–	28
5 Loimanns (1)	70/	2–	238
Kibitzhäuser R	11/	0–	24
Loimanns D (590 m)	52/	2–	197
ZH	7/	0–	17
6 Reichenbach (2) D	17/	1–	56
7 Schönau bei Litschau (4)	65/	3–	215
Gallhof W	3/	0–	3
Langau Jh	1/	0–	0
Schönau bei Litschau D (520 m)	53/	3–	198
Schönauhäuser R	5/	0–	7
Windmannhäuser R	3/	0–	7

Zählsprengelübersicht:

–000 Litschau	510/14–1.688
–001 Loimanns	70/ 2– 238
–002 Reichenbach	17/ 1– 56
–003 Gopprechts	79/ 2– 252
–004 Schönau bei Litschau	65/ 3– 215

26 Niederschrems M ◇ 348/6–1.361
309 26 (Z)

Gerichtsbezirk: Schrems
Fläche: 1.488,25 ha
Postleitzahl: 3943
Österr.Karten: 5, 6
Höhenklasse: V
Katastralgemeinden:
Ehrenhöbarten 172,27 ha, Kottinghörmanns 808,96 ha, Niederschrems 507,02 ha

1 Anderlfabrik (0) HGr	7/0–	46
2 Ehrenhöbarten (0) D (540 m)	24/0–104	
(Brombühel)		
3 Kleedorf (0) D (520 m)	70/0–225	
4 Kottinghörmanns (1)	115/2–491	
Bräuhäusl R	13/0–	52
Kottinghörmanns D 538 m	102/2–439	
5 Neuniederschrems (0) D (520 m)	23/2–	73
6 Niederschrems (0) (520 m) [48°47', 15°3']	109/2–422	
(Hammer, Hammermühle, Heu-Mühle)		

Zählsprengelübersicht:

–000 Niederschrems	233/4–870
–001 Kottinghörmanns	115/2–491

27 Pürbach ◇ 81/4–273
309 27

Gerichtsbezirk: Schrems
Fläche: 361,40 ha
Postleitzahl: 3944
Österr.Karten: 5, 6, 19
Höhenklasse: V
Katastralgemeinde:
Pürbach 361,40 ha

1 Pürbach	81/4–273	
Pürbach D 532 m [48°46', 15°5']	79/4–254	
H	1/0–	14
Jh	1/0–	5

28 Reinberg – Litschau ◇ 70/3–237
309 28

Gerichtsbezirk: Litschau

S

ORONYMES ET HYDRONYMES
Rapport présenté par la Roumanie*

Des efforts en vue de la normalisation des noms des éléments physico-géographiques du territoire de la Roumanie (montagnes, sommets, unités naturelles, rivières, lacs, forêts, etc.) ont commencé dès la fin du XIX^e siècle, après la création de la Société roumaine de géographie et à l'occasion de l'élaboration de dictionnaires géographiques des départements.

L'élaboration au cours des années 70–78 de l'*Atlas de la République socialiste de Roumanie* (76 planches avec environ 360 cartes, dont 41 planches ont déjà été publiées dans les premiers trois fascicules), par l'Institut de géographie de Bucarest, sous l'égide de l'Académie roumaine, a rendu nécessaire, dès la phase de préparation de l'ouvrage, la détermination de normes unitaires de rédaction de tous les noms géographiques (oronymes, hydronymes) aussi bien sur le territoire du pays qu'à l'extérieur. A cet effet a été créée, dès 1970, une Commission de nomenclature géographique faisant partie du Collège de rédaction de l'atlas, qui — après avoir consulté des spécialistes en géographie et cartographie, des linguistes, des historiens, des ethnologues — a élaboré en 1972 des *Normes pour la rédaction des noms géographiques*, normes qui ont été confirmées par la Commission de la langue roumaine de l'Académie roumaine et par les autorités cartographiques compétentes. Celles-ci sont devenues des normatifs utilisés dans les ouvrages cartographiques et d'usage scientifique. Toute la nomenclature géographique roumaine utilisée sur les cartes de l'*Atlas géographique national*, comprenant environ 7500 termes, est conforme aux principes établis par les *Normes*.

En application des résolutions des deux premières Conférences des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, la Roumanie présente une nomenclature préliminaire d'oronymes et d'hydronymes normalisés inscrits sur la carte du pays aux échelles de 1:500 000 et 1:750 000, de 600 et 330 termes respectivement.

Afin de retenir les principes établis par la normalisation des dénominations géographiques roumaines, nous mentionnons ci-dessous les principales dispositions:

1. Les noms géographiques s'écrivent avec des majuscules à tous les mots qui les composent (sauf ceux qui servent de liaison), même en ce qui concerne les termes génériques (lac, golfe, promontoire, défilé, île, montagne, etc.) si ceux-ci font partie de la dénomination géographique. Exemples: Satu Mare, Baia de Aramă, Pasul Giuvala, Capul Midia, Lacul Snagov, Delta Dunării, Marea Neagră, Măgura Codlei, La Om, Muntele Mic, Táu fără Fund, Valea Albă, Rîu Mare, Județul Olt.

On recommande en général la renonciation aux abréviations en ce qui concerne l'indication des noms proprement dits, spécialement ceux des localités (Tg. Ocna, Tr. Măgurele). On peut utiliser des abréviations pour certains termes génériques (avec l'indication dans la légende) comme: L. (lac), P. (défilé, col), G. (golfe), I. (île), M. (montagne), Pod. (plateau).

On utilise le trait d'union seulement pour les noms géographiques composés comprenant des substantifs à la forme nominative, qui désignent une unité administrative assimilée à une unité physico-géographique marquée par ses limites. Exemples: Popesti-Leordeni, Caras-Severin, Bucegi-Leaota, Culoarul Bran-Rucăr, Culoarul Timiș-Cerns. Dans tous les autres cas on n'utilise pas de trait d'union.

2. Les toponymes seront indiqués sous leur forme authentique, sans y ajouter des génériques, qui n'appartiennent pas à la dénomination ou qui doublent un générique populaire inclus dans la dénomination, comme étang, marécage, bief, marais, tertre, mamelon, colline, entonnoir. îlot alluvial.

Font exception certaines toponymies dont le qualificatif fait partie de la dénomination. Exemples: Rîu Negru, Rîu Tîrgului, Pîrîu Norilor, Vîrfu lui Pătra, Orașu Nou.

3. Les noms géographiques du genre masculin neutre au singulier, simples et composés, qui s'expriment articulés, seront écrits avec l'article *u*, conformément à la pratique traditionnelle dans la prononciation et la rédaction des noms propres roumains. Exemples: Pietrosu, Omu, Moldoveanu, Godeanu, Sadu, Bragadiru, Prundu, Parîngu Mare, Crișu Repede, Rîu Doamnei, Someșu Mare, Turnu Măgurele, Tîrgu Jiu, Rîmnicu Vîlcea, Șimleu Silvaniei, Sînnicolau Mare.

4. Il a été convenu que, dans la rédaction des noms composés, certaines formes du génitif soient remplacées par le nominatif, si la manière de s'exprimer le permet et là où il existe une certaine accoutumance. Cette indication est générale et se réfère particulièrement aux groupes de montagnes, aux dépressions, aux plateaux, quand ces noms dérivent d'un sommet, d'une cime, d'une localité ou concernent seulement l'unité respective. Quand la dénomination provient d'un cours d'eau ou d'une province, on utilise, en général, le génitif. Exemples: Tibles, M. Harghita, M. Persani, M. Barsolt, Cincas, Bucegi, Cozia, M. Făgăraș, M. Retezat, M. Semenic, Dep. Brașov, Dep. Maramures, Pod. Cîndesti, Pod. Babadag; mais on écrira M. Bistriței, M. Vrancei, M. Cernei, Cîmpia Siretului, Pod. Dobrogei, Cîmpia Benatului, M. Lotrului.

5. Les noms simples de rivières du genre neutre au singulier seront écrits sans articulation, quand ils ont cette forme et quand ils connaissent donc l'opposition non articulé-atriculé (par exemple: Arges, Olt, Mures, Siret, Timiș); ils seront écrits articulés (avec *u*) quand cette opposition n'existe pas (par exemple: Geoagiu, Sadu, Garu).

* Seule, l'introduction du rapport est reproduite dans la présente publication. Le texte original complet du document a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.84 et peut être obtenu, sur demande, à la Direction topographique militaire de la République socialiste de Roumanie.

Dans ce contexte, il faut remarquer que les normes établies pour la rédaction des noms géographiques ont été appliquées aux matériaux cartographiques ainsi qu'aux textes, dans les principaux ouvrages publiés dans notre pays au cours des dernières années, parmi lesquels *l'Atlas géographique national*, la *Géographie de la vallée du Danube roumain*, la collection *Județele Patriei* (les départements du pays) et la collection *Munții Noștri* (nos montagnes), et également dans des cours universitaires de spécialité, des travaux de doctorat, des études et des articles scientifiques, etc.

Les formes normalisées des dénominations géographiques pour le territoire de la Roumanie sont utilisées aussi bien dans les publications en langue roumaine que dans celles en langues de circulation internationale, destinées à l'étranger, y compris les volumes élaborés pour des congrès internationaux de géographie et pour d'autres réunions de spécialité ayant un caractère international.

DICTIONNAIRE SOMMAIRE DES APPELLATIFS UTILISÉS DANS LA TOPONYMIE ROUMAINE

Rapport présenté par la Roumanie*

La toponymie roumaine, riche du point de vue de son contenu et variée du point de vue de sa forme, a représenté et continue de représenter une source inépuisable d'enrichissement du patrimoine de la langue roumaine.

L'emploi des mots roumains traditionnels dans les publications diverses constitue l'une des préoccupations de base de l'Académie de la République socialiste de Roumanie.

Les spécialistes en topographie et en géographie considèrent la toponymie comme un élément terminologique de base, destiné à compléter, avec les autres moyens d'expression d'un travail cartographique (signes conventionnels), l'image du domaine que ceux-ci représentent.

Tous les toponymes roumains, sans exception, ont ou ont eu autrefois des sens précis, bien définis. Ils reflètent la liaison directe entre l'homme et la nature, entre la société et le milieu de vie, ainsi que certaines valeurs morales, de conception populaire, de différents raisonnements, d'hypothèses, de comparaisons les plus suggestives, de faits ayant une résonance historique, d'anciens rapports sociaux, d'aspects ou de considérations économiques, de légendes et de croyances populaires qui reflètent la sagesse du peuple roumain, le caractère sincère et sensible de l'âme populaire.

On a pris comme point de départ pour l'élaboration du travail le recueil et la vérification des noms de lieux conformément à un questionnaire comprenant la dénomination en prononciation orthographique, la catégorie du détail (localités, constructions isolées, formes de terrain, cours d'eau, détails planimétriques, etc.), le sens et la signification de la dénomination, le nom et l'adresse de la personne questionnée, la forme finale de la dénomination et diverses autres observations.

Le travail offre au lecteur, dans plus de 700 articles comprenant environ 1700 exemples, un microrecueil de toponymie du territoire de la Roumanie, et constitue une expérience préliminaire en vue de la rédaction d'un dictionnaire toponymique complet de notre pays.

* Seule, l'introduction du rapport est reproduite dans la présente publication. Le texte original complet du document a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.85 et peut être obtenu, sur demande, à la Direction topographique militaire de la République socialiste de Roumanie.

UNIFIED REFERENCE BOOK OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES FROM THE VALLEY OF THE DANUBE RIVER

Report presented by Bulgaria*

The question of a Unified Reference Book of Geographical Names from the Valley of the Danube River has been discussed for several years. The motion for its compilation was made by the representatives of the People's Republic of Bulgaria at the International Conference of Representatives of the Sixth and Seventh Regional Groups for the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in Prague, Czechoslovakia, in 1971. This motion was in the spirit of resolution 8 entitled "Treatment of names of features beyond a single sovereignty"[1] of the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held at Geneva in 1967, and expresses the incessant endeavour of our country for international co-operation in this sphere.

The discussions and the exchange of opinions between the Danubian countries that took part in the Sixth and Seventh Regional Group Conference show that the idea of compiling the Unified Reference Book was accepted. Our country has carried out investigations embracing both the technical and language problems in connexion with its compilation.

The report on this project at the present Conference is intended mainly to accomplish two things:

First, to demonstrate a model project for the compilation of a reference book of geographical names connected with a navigable river, the course of which passes through the territory of several countries. This experience could also be used in other similar cases;

* The original text of this paper, prepared by B. Cohen, Senior Research Associate Engineer, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.97.

[1] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, Vol. 1, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.68.I.9), chap. III.

Second, to reach an agreement for the implementation of this project on the basis of international co-operation among the Danubian States.

We think that both aims coincide with the spirit and the tasks of the present Conference.

We shall report on a highly specified draft of the proposed Reference Book, as well as on three basic problems in connexion with its compilation: the purpose of the book; its contents; and the method to be used in organizing the work of its compilation.

Purposes of the Unified Reference Book

The Unified Reference Book is intended to reflect and unify the geographical names in a limited strip of the valley of the Danube River. The book will thus be suitable for use as a primary source material and as a basis for unifying the geographical names and for ensuring their correct representation in making different types of maps for the region of the Danube River (e.g. maps for pilots or tourists, general geographical maps and so on).

We must point out that in the last 25 to 30 years a number of changes have taken place in the river zone. New settlements have made their appearance, as have engineering projects and many other industrial plants. The greater number of these have individual names. There are also a great many inhabited places, localities, tributaries and so on that have been renamed. In many cases these developments have not been reflected in the navigation and other maps.

We all know that the Danube River is a lively waterway, with whose help, through the ages, the peoples of Eastern and Central Europe have established economic and cultural contacts. The names of the inhabited places on the Danube River banks have always been more popular among the peoples inhabiting the Danubian countries than in those lying farther away. Nevertheless, there are many defects in the rendering of the geographical names from the valley of the Danube. Suffice it to mention the great number of toponymic synonyms.

The stepped-up relations among the peoples of the Danubian countries call for a more exact rendering of the geographical names in this region. The proposed Reference Book will be able to fulfil this task.

The Unified Reference Book could be used to answer a whole series of characteristic toponymic questions; these include not only linguistic and usage problems but also problems connected with the history of cultural relations between the Danubian countries.

Contents

We suggest that the Unified Reference Book should include the geographical names in the valley of the Danube River and, more particularly, those within two strips situated on each side of the fairway. The first strip extends on both sides of the fairway to a distance of 10 kilometres; the second includes the area situated between the tenth and fifteenth kilometre on both sides of the fairway. In this way, the total area to be included will come up to approximately 85,000 square kilometres.

We call the area within the first strips (i.e. within 10 km of the fairway on either bank) the "first zone"; the area in the second, more distant and narrower strips the "second zone". These two zones, combined with a transverse division along the fairway of the river, beginning from its estuary, will serve for designating the location of the toponyms contained in the Unified Reference Book.

It is desirable that all toponyms be included that are usually included in topographical maps of a scale of 1:25,000.

The structure of the Unified Reference Book, as projected, will be as follows:

(1) Title page, in the languages of the participating countries;

(2) Explanatory text describing the institutes, institutions and persons participating in the work of compiling the reference book;

(3) A preface, giving instructions for the use of the Unified Reference Book, in all languages of the participating countries (German, Hungarian, Slovakian, Serbo-Croatian, Bulgarian, Romanian and Russian);

(4) An alphabetical index of the geographical names in the Latin alphabet;

(5) An alphabetical index of the geographical names in the different languages;

(6) An alphabetical list of toponymic synonyms;

(7) A list of the geographical names organized according to the character of each feature named; and

(8) A location map for the location of the compilation strips and sectors.

The alphabetical index (section 4), which constitutes the main body of the Unified Reference Book, will contain the geographical names in their original form for the languages using the Latin alphabet. As to the names from the territory of Yugoslavia, Bulgaria and the Soviet Union, in which the Cyrillic alphabet is in use, the names will be given in the Latin alphabet, according to the official system for rendering the names in Latin characters, adopted by the respective countries.

Besides the names written in Latin characters, section 4 will also include the following information about each name: indication of the sector and zone; the State in which the toponym is situated (indicating the State in abbreviated form); an indication of the character of the feature named objective; the serial number of the toponym, which will be necessary for finding the corresponding entry in other languages in the alphabetical index by national languages in section 5).

The character of each feature named will be indicated by an appropriate abbreviation, expressing the most typical object to be encountered in the Danube Valley (e.g. towns, villages, ports, islands, rivers, river mouths, forests, localities, ponds, lakes, peaks, elevations, fortresses, monasteries, technical equipment etc.). The exact indication of the character of the objectives is to be the subject of a special Instruction for compiling the Unified Reference Book.

The alphabetical index in each national language will contain the names from the territory where the language is used, given in their national form and transcribed in the respective language. The arrangement of names in the national alphabetical order will be effected in the alphabetical order adopted in the respective language, with indication of the numbers of the toponyms in the basic list.

Section 6, the list of toponymic synonyms (traditional names), should be made up on the basis of generally accepted rules by the participating countries. The main tendency should be towards a gradual curtailing of these names and the adoption of the phonetically transcribed official names in the respective territories.

The lists of names made out according to the character of the features (section 7) will have the names arranged in alphabetical order and differentiated into groups according to the character of the objectives (inhabited places, rivers, islands etc.).

The location map (section 8) for the location of the basic sectors and strips (from which all names in the book will be taken) will be drawn up at a suitable scale and will contain the zones in which the toponyms are situated.

Preliminary calculations have shown that the Unified Reference Book will contain between 20,000 and 30,000 names, duly elaborated according to the above-indicated scheme. It is intended to publish the Unified Reference Book in one volume, containing 250–300 pages, format H-4.

Method of organizing the work

Work on the compilation of the Unified Reference Book can be started at the beginning of 1978 and be finished during the second half of 1979 or the first half of 1980.

The work on the compilation of the Unified Reference Book must be effected with the participation of the national bodies for the standardization of geographical names of the Federal Republic of Germany, the Republic of Austria, the Czechoslovak Socialist Republic, the Hungarian People's Republic, the Socialist Federative Republic of Yugoslavia, the Socialist Republic of Romania, the People's Republic of Bulgaria and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics.

The fundamental questions affecting the principles of the compilation and publishing of the Unified Reference Book—its printing, legal rights etc.—are to be settled at work conferences of the representatives of the participating countries. The basic co-ordinating work, the organization of the compilation and the publication of the Unified Reference Book is to be assumed by the country co-ordinator which we suggest should be the People's Republic of Bulgaria.

It will be necessary to work out a special Instruction in connexion with the reference book. We think that the Instruction should spell out the following:

(*a*) Goals and contents of the Unified Reference Book;
(*b*) Initial materials;
(*c*) Linguistic approach to the establishment of the names;
(*d*) Method of discussing and adopting the names;
(*e*) Technical instructions for filling in the perfo-cards; and
(*f*) Methods and time limits for exchanging the materials with the co-ordinating country.

Let us give some very brief explanations of some of the sections of the Instruction proposed by us.

Section (*a*) should develop in detail the principles embodied in the present paper and explore the possibilities for the widest possible utilization of the Unified Reference Book for practical purposes. In this connexion, we hope that additional studies will lead to the further specification and enrichment of the contents originally mapped out.

Section (*b*), on initial materials, should give concrete recommendations for the finding, evaluation and utilization of the basic source materials (topographical maps, toponymic investigations etc.).

Section (*c*), on the linguistic approach to the establishment of names, is fundamental. This section should resolve, scientifically, the main problems of spelling the names and of their orthography.

Section (*d*) will determine the most suitable forms and the method of work of the International Commission on the publishing of the Unified Reference Book.

It is suggested that the preparatory work on the elaboration of fundamental information and the publishing of the Unified Reference Book should be carried out with the help of perfo-cards with a broader perforation, of size K-5 (207 × 147 mm). The co-ordinating country will make a model of the perfo-cards, diapositives of which will be sent to all participating countries. These diapositives should enable each participating country to print the necessary quantity of perfo-cards. The perfo-cards filled in by every country will be sent to the co-ordinating country for elaboration and preparation of the material for discussion and adoption. The further use of the material (systematized in the perfo-cards) will be in the hands of the co-ordinating country according to the technology that has been adopted.

The present paper has deliberately omitted discussion of a number of details that are contained in the Instruction and that have been discussed at work conferences of the Commission on the Preparation and Publishing of the Reference Book.

In pointing out in brief the main lines of the work on the proposed project, we are profoundly convinced that the practical work along this line will become one more model of fruitful international co-operation, to which our country has always been one of the warmest adherents.

AN INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY OF EXPRESSIONS USED ON STANDARD GEOGRAPHICAL MAPS

Report presented by Czechoslovakia*

Résumé

L'idée d'élaborer un Dictionnaire international des termes géographiques figurant sur des cartes géographiques chorographiques (à caractère commun) est née du besoin de satisfaire l'importance sociale toujours croissante du mode de représentation cartographique dont la cartographie interprète des conditions naturelles et sociales de vie sous forme d'une représentation cartographique relativement complète, au moyen des cartes chorographiques et du souhait de normaliser les moyens d'expression de cette représentation.

La deuxième Conférence des Etats socialistes des septième et huitième groupes linguistico-géographiques régionaux de l'ONU, tenue à Budapest en janvier 1975, a recommandé que le dictionnaire se limite aux termes utilisés sur des cartes géographiques chorographiques et que la matière soit répartie selon les groupes d'éléments contenus dans les cartes.

La proposition a été modifiée en tenant compte des points de vue suivants:

a) La gamme des possibilités d'utilisation, dans le contenu nouvellement conçu, de la carte géographique chorographique;

b) L'utilisation, lors de la normalisation, de notes explicatives ajoutées aux cartes géographiques chorographiques à petite échelle et de légendes des symboles sur les cartes aux échelles moyennes et grandes.

Les articles définis de façon univoque permettront de mettre au point de nouvelles légendes pour les cartes géographiques chorographiques ainsi que pour les cartes aux échelles différentes (plus petites); pour cette raison, le dictionnaire sera complété par une liste des abréviations.

L'ensemble de la matière contenue dans les huit parties thématiques du dictionnaire est conçu de façon à répondre *grosso modo* à la conception nouvelle de la carte chorographique à l'échelle de 1:10 000.

Le nombre des articles s'élève à environ 900. La liste annexée au mémoire permet de se faire une idée sur la conception et la façon dont les articles du dictionnaire sont organisés. Le dictionnaire paraîtra en 1979 en versions tchèque, slovaque, anglaise et russe. L'élaboration des versions française, espagnole et allemande est envisagée pour la prochaine édition.

Resumen

La idea de redactar un diccionario internacional de términos geográficos que aparecen en los mapas geográficos generales surgió a causa de la necesidad de poner en relieve el creciente significado social de la forma cartográfica de la interpretación de condiciones naturales y sociales de la vida, por medio de una imagen relativamente completa, a través de mapas de dicho tipo, así como a causa de la necesidad de normalizar sus medios expresivos.

La Segunda Conferencia de los Países Socialistas de los Séptimo y Octavo Grupos Regionales Lingüístico-Geográficos de las Naciones Unidas, que tuvo lugar en Budapest en enero de 1975, recomendó, en el punto 5, que el contenido del diccionario se limitase a abarcar términos que aparecen en mapas geográficos generales y que su contenido se dividiera conforme a grupos de elementos utilizados en los mapas. La propuesta ha sido revalorizada desde los puntos de vista siguientes:

a) Volumen de la posible utilización en los marcos de un contenido del mapa geográfico general, concebido a base de nuevos criterios;

b) Aprovechamiento para la normalización de notas explicativas en mapas geográficos generales en escalas menores y de claves de símbolos en mapas de escalas medias y grandes.

Voces definidas unívocamente harán posible que se establezcan nuevas claves de símbolos para mapas geográficos generales, así como para los de otras (menores) escalas; es por ello que el diccionario está complementado con una lista (registro) de abreviaturas.

El contenido total de ocho partes temáticas del diccionario queda concebido aproximadamente dentro de los marcos de un mapa geográfico general, según la nueva concepción, en escala 1:10.000.

El número de voces ha sufrido cambios representando casi 900 unidades. Del espécimen que va adjunto es posible hacerse una idea de la concepción y la manera de la elaboración de las voces del diccionario. Este se publicará en 1979 en checo, eslovaco, inglés y ruso. Para una edición posterior se supone que será complementado con textos en francés, español y alemán.

*

* *

The increasing social importance of the cartographic interpretation of natural and social conditions of life has brought about interest in the idea of compiling an international dictionary of geographical expressions occurring on standard geographical maps. This increasing social importance has brought about the need for a comprehensive map image of reality, executed as a series of standard geographical maps with standardized expressions.

This question was dealt with at the First Conference of the countries in the United Nations Seventh and Eighth Regional Linguistic and Geographical Groups on the Standardization of Geographical Names, which took place at Prague in September 1971. In item 6 of the resolution the participants in the Conference adopted a recommendation supporting the idea of compiling such a

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.104.

dictionary and asking that the completed project and compiled list of expressions be sent to them for review. This has been done. Further, the Conference asked the Czechoslovak delegation to inform the participants of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in May 1972, about the projected Dictionary.

The Project of the international dictionary of geographical terms used on general geographical maps[1] was submitted to the Second Conference for discussion within the framework of agenda item 10, devoted to the question of compiling multilingual dictionaries of generic names and general names. The Conference adopted the appropriate recommendation in resolution 16,[2] basically summed up in the request that each dictionary of this kind should contain:

(*a*) A complete alphabetical list of the generic names used, with a concise definition of each;

(*b*) A complete alphabetical list of the generic names with their regional distributions, cross-referenced to the general names to which they are related;

(*c*) A complete list of abbreviations of general names and symbols used in designating them;

(*d*) A complete list of the abbreviations used in the maps on which the list was based.

In addition, the Second Conference of Socialist Countries in the United Nations Seventh and Eighth Linguistic and Geographical Groups, which took place at Budapest in January 1975, recommended under item 5 that the contents of the Dictionary be limited only to expressions occurring in standard geographical maps. It also recommended the division of the contents of the Dictionary according to groups of elements occurring in the maps.

The draft was modified with respect to:

(*a*) The range of its possible use within the newly outlined contents of the standard geographical map;

(*b*) Its use in the standardization of explanatory notes in small-scale standard geographical maps and in symbol keys to medium- and large-scale maps.

Further stimuli emerged in relation to the Dictionary from the conclusions of the Third Conference of the Socialist Countries in the United Nations Seventh and Eighth Regional Groups on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held at Budapest in June 1977.

In order to realize such an exacting task it was necessary to clarify the definition of the standard geographical map. Having examined the problem from various points of view, the Terminology Commission of the Czech Office of Geodesy and Cartography reached the conclusion that a standard geographical map is "a map containing all the important elements of the depicted reality to approximately the same degree of detailedness". This definition deals with the subject of the map and cannot be further modified by such other criteria as scale; it follows from this, in accordance with the concepts of the Russian geographer/cartographers Salishcheff and Garayevskaya, that medium-scale and large-scale maps are also standard geographical maps.

The basic material for the alphabetical lists was collected from the conventional signs of the 1:10,000-scale maps of several countries.

While the individual entries were being worked out, it became evident that

(*a*) The concepts and content embodied in standard geographical maps published to date are based upon social reality—and upon a state of science, technology and economy—that date roughly from the first three decades of the twentieth century;

(*b*) The roots of this concept of cartography reach back to the level of knowledge and role of the map at the end of the nineteenth century; and

(*c*) Maps generally tend to reflect specialized needs as to their subject matter.

In the socialist countries, a number of factors—including changes in the social system, the development of science (including geography) and the resultant development of the economy, social and cultural progress and a considerable increase in the standard of living have given rise to a number of new geographical phenomena, which are not reflected in the standard geographical maps published to date. The importance of these new phenomena has resulted in a substantial decline in the need to depict other phenomena, the occurrence of which on standard geographical maps was expedient under the economic technological and cultural conditions of the past (as remains the case to the present day in the capitalist countries).

These changes have caused the compilers of the proposed contents of the individual thematic sections in the Dictionary to consider which new elements, corresponding to the contemporary conditions, should be included in the standard geographical map. Similarly, the editing had to be all the more exacting under such circumstances, since it was essential to attain "approximately the same degree of detailedness" required by the definition of the standard geographical map, which was adopted as the starting point.

Unambiguously defined entries will make it possible to compile new keys to symbols on standard geographical maps at other (smaller) scales as well; the Dictionary will therefore have appended a list of abbreviations.

The section of the Dictionary devoted to relief is based upon the advanced state of the individual geographical sciences. It also includes the social and scientific explanation as to why a dictionary of the given range is needed. The section on hydrography includes both geographical aspects and those of water preservation, defined in accordance with accepted standards in this field.

The section on biogeography is considerably enlarged in view of the current campaign for the preservation of the environment, on the one hand, and the acceleration of building construction for new factories and residential

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), p. 113.

[2] *Ibid.*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference*, chap. III..

areas, on the other, which have caused areas under vegetation, characteristic of the importance and value of soil for the life of man, to become more conspicuous.

The section on borders and enclosures has remained practically unchanged, having been only partially modified from the traditional concept.

The section on transport will, like all the other sections, be structured hierarchically as long as necessary, so that class names, which can occur on maps only rarely, are also listed.

The concept of the section on inhabited areas corresponds to contemporary social circumstances in the socialist countries.

The sections of the Dictionary on agriculture and industry, including the mining of natural resources, document two phenomena: the gradual overcoming of differences between town and village, especially in the socialist countries (in the section on agriculture); and the impact on the development of the society of who owns the means of production.

The above-mentioned hierarchical arrangement of entries in the individual sections, made complete by class names (the use of which in maps is practically out of the question) makes it possible in cartographical practice to compile the contents of smaller-scale standard geographical maps (or even thematic maps, as the need arises) and to standardize their keys.

The over-all content of the eight sections of the Dictionary is planned approximately to correspond to the 1:10,000 standard geographical map of the new concept.

The entries in the individual sections are complemented by a complete alphabetical index of the whole Dictionary, facilitating the search for the standardized name of any geographical entity or phenomenon, the definition pertaining to which will be found in thematically divided, alphabetically arranged groups.

The number of entries was brought up to around 900. The enclosed extract from the Dictionary (annex) gives an idea of the concept and manner of processing the entries in the Dictionary. The Dictionary will be published in 1979 in Czech, Slovak, English and Russian. In the next edition it is expected that French, Spanish and German versions will be published.

Annex

AN EXAMPLE OF THE PROCESSING OF ENTRIES IN THE INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES AS USED IN STANDARD GEOGRAPHICAL MAPS

atoll	A coral island made up of a circular coral barrier of cliff limestone, rising several metres above the sea level and enclosing an inner lagoon
canyon	A deep river valley with very steep slopes and a relatively narrow bottom, usually completely filled with a river bed
drained land	A piece of land with artificial drainage of underground water with the help of pipes, channels etc.
lake	A natural indentation in the earth's surface filled with water, which is not directly connected with an ocean. We distinguish impermanent lakes, salt lakes, evaporating lakes
nuclear power plant	Solid fuel fired power plant, using energy for the production of electricity obtained by fission of appropriate radioactive elements
permanent snow	Constant snow cover of the earth's surface above the snow line
tunnel	A man-made construction to facilitate the transfer of communications, under the ground, for example through a mountain range, under a river, under sea straits. According to the means of the transferred communication we distinguish road tunnel (surface communication) rail tunnel (rail communication) etc.

GAZETTEERS AND GLOSSARIES OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES PUBLISHED BY MEMBER COUNTRIES OF THE UNITED NATIONS AND BY AGENCIES IN RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNITED NATIONS: BIBLIOGRAPHY, 1946–1976

Report presented by the Federal Republic of Germany*

The bibliography "Gazetteers and Glossaries of Geographical Names" comprises the gazetteers published after the Second World War, i.e. since 1945.

The United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names has defined the term "gazetteer" as

> "a list of toponyms which presents relatively brief information regarding the items listed, and which serves as a guide to the source from which it has been compiled".[1]

For more complete information the present bibliography goes beyond this definition. It includes not only the gazetteers covered by the above definition, but also some place-name lists containing encyclopaedic data, and indexes of atlases and indexes of maps as well. Census publications have been added because census bureaus, as State agencies, are requested to use the official local names. Finally, gazetteers or lists of place names for special purposes (e.g. for mailing, in the computer and banking field and as guides to pronunciation) have also been added in some cases.

The bibliography distinguishes between official national gazetteers and publications issued by individuals and/or non-official publishers, and further distinguishes between gazetteers of the national agency of the country and those of governmental agencies of countries other

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Emil Meynen, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.124.

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), p. 50.

than the one concerned. Except for the classifications given below, the order in which a gazetteer or index appears in the listing does not imply any priority.

For quick reference, six sections have been marked by Roman ciphers as follows:

I Official publications of the country concerned;
II Publications issued by individuals and/or non-official publishers of the country concerned;
III Publications by international organizations and by governmental agencies of countries other than the one concerned;
IV Publications by individuals and non-official publishers of countries other than the one concerned;
V Indexes of atlases and maps of the country concerned;
VI Indexes of atlases and maps published by agencies of countries other than the one concerned.

An appendix contains a list of glossaries of generic terms given in the listed gazetteers and indexes.

Finally, there is an addition of various lists of designations of oceanographic terms and of undersea features that were issued in the course of recent discussions.

The material of the bibliography has been collected over the years 1969 to 1974. The author has attempted to make the bibliography as complete as possible. The author used the gazetteer collection of the Ständiger Ausschuß für geographische Namen (StAgN) of the Federal Republic of Germany, Frankfurt a. M. He also visited the Dag Hammarskjöld Library and Map Collection at United Nations Headquarters and the main libraries and official agencies at London, Moscow, New York, Paris and Washington, D. C. and the Library of the Statistisches Bundesamt, Wiesbaden. Gazetteers and glossaries published after 1974 are included only in so far as they have been sent to the author as chairman of StAgN or as a member of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. Completeness is attempted, but, the work having been carried out by a single person, and embracing such widely dispersed materials, it will be appreciated that total completeness has not been possible.

The author wishes to thank all who have sent him their publications. Messrs. N. O. Abelson, New York, P. G. M. Geelan, London, A. M. Komkov, Moscow, H. A. G. Lewis OBE, London, R. R. Randall, Washington, D.C., and Miss Helen Wallis, London should be mentioned for their support to the author in his research.

The author dedicates the bibliography to the members of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names and especially to the participants in the Third United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, Athens, August–September 1977.

GEONOMENCLATURE, 1976–1977
Report presented by the Statistical Office of the European Communities*

Résumé

La nomenclature des pays pour les statistiques du commerce extérieur de la Communauté économique européenne (CEE) et du commerce entre ses Etats membres fait l'objet de dispositions particulières dans le règlement (CEE) n° 1736/75 du Conseil du 24 juin 1975 (*Journal officiel* n° L.183 du 14 juillet 1975), à savoir dans ses articles 6, 35, 36, 41 et 47. La version de cette nomenclature, valable à partir du 1er janvier 1977, a été publiée en annexe au règlement (CEE) n° 3163/76 de la Commission du 22 décembre 1976 (*Journal officiel* n° L.356 du 28 décembre 1976). Sous la dénomination nouvelle de *Géonomenclature*, GEONOM en abrégé, la présente édition d'usage reproduit cette version et l'accompagne d'un certain nombre d'instruments de travail destinés à faciliter le maniement de la nomenclature même ainsi que l'utilisation des statistiques du commerce extérieur.

Comme dans la nomenclature commune des pays, appliquée avant la publication du règlement précité du Conseil, le classement est organisé par continents et grandes régions et, à l'intérieur de chaque région selon la position géographique de chaque pays ou territoire, la progression se faisant, en principe, de l'ouest vers l'est le long des parallèles successifs depuis le nord vers le sud.

Les rubriques qui constituent la *Géonomenclature*, ni davantage les précisions et commentaires qui les délimitent, n'impliquent pas de prise de position quant au statut politique des pays ou territoires concernés.

Il est de règle que les nomenclatures des marchandises et des pays qui structurent les statistiques du commerce extérieur de la Communauté et de ses Etats membres ne subissent pas de changements en cours d'année. La *Géonomenclature, 1977*, s'appliquera donc telle quelle jusqu'au 31 décembre 1977. Elle ne peut d'ailleurs être modifiée par la Commission que sur l'avis favorable du Comité de la statistique du commerce extérieur, qui est consulté au cours du mois de septembre. Tous souhaits ou observations relatifs à la *Géonomenclature* ou à sa présentation dans cette brochure peuvent être portés par ses utilisateurs, publics ou privés, à la connaissance du Président du Comité de la statistique du commerce extérieur, à l'adresse de l'Office statistique des Communautés européennes, Boîte postale 1907, Luxembourg.

La *Géonomenclature* n'ayant pas été publiée en 1976 — hormis sa version officielle annexée au règlement (CEE) n° 54/76 de la Commission du 14 janvier 1976 (*Journal officiel* n° L.8 du 15 janvier 1976) —, les différences entre 1977 et l'année précédente sont signalées dans la présente

* The original full text of this paper, which appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.98, is available on request from the Statistical Office of the European Communities, whose address is given in the text.

édition, chaque fois qu'il a paru utile de les mettre en évidence en vue de l'interprétation correcte des statistiques du commerce extérieur.

Resumen

La nomenclatura de los países para las estadísticas del comercio exterior de la Comunidad Económica Europea (CEE) y del comercio entre sus Estados miembros es objeto de disposiciones particulares en el reglamento (CEE) No. 1736/75 del Consejo, de 24 de junio de 1975 (*Journal officiel* No. L.183, de 14 de julio de 1975), en sus artículos 6, 35, 36, 41 y 47. La versión de dicha nomenclatura, que está en vigor a partir del 1° de enero de 1977, fue publicada en un anexo de la ordenanza (CEE) No. 3163/76 de la Comisión, de fecha 22 de diciembre de 1976 (*Journal officiel* No. L.356, de 28 de diciembre de 1976). Bajo la nueva denominación de *Geonomenclator*, con la abreviatura GEONOM, la presente edición de uso corriente reproduce esa versión acompañada de cierto número de instrumentos de trabajo destinados a facilitar el manejo de la propia nomenclatura, así como la utilización de las estadísticas del comercio exterior.

Como en la nomenclatura común de los países, aplicada antes de la publicación del citado reglamento del Consejo, la clasificación está organizada por continentes y grandes regiones y, dentro de cada región, según la posición geográfica de cada país o territorio, progresando, en principio, de oeste a este a lo largo de paralelos sucesivos del norte al sur.

Ni los títulos que figuran en la *Geonomenclatura* ni las precisiones u observaciones que los delimitan entrañan la adopción de una posición respecto del estatuto político de los países o territorios de que se trate.

Por lo general, las nomenclaturas de mercaderías y de los países que estructuran sus estadísticas de comercio exterior de la Comunidad y de sus Estados miembros no sufren cambios durante el año. Por lo tanto, la *Geonomenclator, 1977*, se aplicará tal como existe hasta el 31 de diciembre de 1977. Por otra parte, la Comisión no la puede modificar sino con el parecer favorable del Comité de Estadística del Comercio Exterior, al cual se consulta durante el mes de septiembre. Los organismos públicos o privados usuarios de la *Geonomenclatura* podrán poner en conocimiento del Presidente del Comité de Estadística del Comercio Exterior, en la Oficina de Estadística de las Comunidades Europeas, apartado postal 1.907, Luxemburgo, todos sus deseos u observaciones relativos a la *Geonomenclatura* o a su presentación en este folleto.

Como *Geonomenclatura* no se publicó en 1976 —excepto su versión oficial anexa a la ordenanza (CEE) No. 54/76 de la Comisión, del 14 de enero de 1976 (*Journal officiel* No. L.8, de 15 de enero de 1976)—, las diferencias entre 1977 y el año anterior se señalan en la presente edición, cada vez que parezca útil destacarlas con miras a la interpretación correcta de las estadísticas de comercio exterior.

*

* *

The country nomenclature for the external trade statistics of the European Economic Community (EEC) and for statistics of trade between member States is subject to the special provisions laid down in Council Regulation (EEC) No. 1736/75 of 24 June 1975 (*Official Journal* L183 of 14 July 1975), namely those in articles 6, 35, 36, 41 and 47. The version of this nomenclature that is valid as from 1 January 1977 has been published as an annex to Commission Regulation (EEC) No. 3163/76 of 22 December 1976 (*Official Journal* L356 of 28 December). This current edition, published under the new name *Geonomenclature* (abbreviated to *GEONOM*) reproduces this version. Included in it are various documentary aids to assist in the use of the nomenclature itself and in the interpretation of the external trade statistics.

As was the case with the common country nomenclature that was in use before the above Council regulation was published, classification is by continents and major geographical regions and, within each region, by the geographical position of each country or territory, progressing as far as possible west to east along lines of latitude, starting in the north and working south.

Neither the headings that make up this geonomenclature nor the details and observations used with them are to be taken as any expression of opinion on the political status of the countries or territories concerned.

It is EEC practice that the product nomenclature and country nomenclature on which the external trade statistics of the Community and of the Member States are based are not altered during the course of the year. The 1977 geonomenclature will therefore apply in its present form until 31 December 1977. Moreover, it may only be amended by the Commission after the Committee on External Trade Statistics, which is consulted in September each year, has expressed an opinion in favour of the amendments. Any requests or remarks in connexion with *GEONOM* or with the manner of its presentation may be addressed to the chairman of the Committee on External Trade Statistics by any public bodies or private persons who use the nomenclature. The address is:

Statistical Office of the European Communities
PO Box 1907
Luxembourg

Observations on the 1977 edition

Apart from the official version published as an annex to Commission Regulation (EEC) No. 54/76 of 14 January 1976 (*Official Journal* L8 of 15 January 1976) no edition of *Geonomenclature* was produced in 1976. The differences between the 1977 edition and the version of the previous year are pin-pointed in the current edition whenever it appears that it is useful to do so in the interest of a correct interpretation of external trade statistics.

AGENDA ITEM 11 — POINT 11 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR — TEMA 11 DEL PROGRAMA

THE COMPUTERIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES: THE QUEBEC EXPERIMENT
Report presented by Canada*

Résumé

En 1971, la Commission géographique du Québec a demandé à l'Université Laval d'entreprendre une étude sur ordinateur des noms géographiques de la province en vue de fournir un accès immédiat à l'information et de créer une banque de données toponymiques permanente. Une fois cette banque établie en 1973, il a été possible d'examiner les corrélations qui existent entre différents paramètres relatifs aux termes génériques, de déterminer les types de noms selon les régions et de résoudre d'autres problèmes. Le fichier contient actuellement 75 000 noms, qui seront publiés en 1978 dans la deuxième édition du *Répertoire des noms géographiques*. La banque sera continuellement mise à jour et de nouvelles données seront incorporées quand il y a lieu.

Resumen

En 1971 la Comisión Geográfica de Quebec (Quebec Geographical Commission) pidió a la Universidad Laval que realizara un estudio sobre la computadorización de los nombres geográficos de la provincia con objeto de lograr acceso instantáneo a la información y de crear un banco permanente de datos toponímicos. Una vez creado el banco, en 1973, fue posible investigar las correlaciones entre diversos parámetros en relación con nombres genéricos, determinar tipos de nombre de conformidad con la región y resolver otros problemas. El archivo corriente contiene 75.000 nombres que se van a publicar en 1978 en la segunda edición del *Répertoire des noms géographiques*. El banco se actualizará continuamente y se le irán agregando nuevos datos según se requiera.

*

* *

At the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, which was held in London in 1972, various countries underlined the ever-increasing role being played by computers in the field of toponymy. Storage requirements and problems of data accessibility, combined with the need for place-name standardization, prompted the search for a technique providing instant access to information.

In Quebec, a place-name computerization project has been under way since 1971. It is known as Projet Répertoire and consists in the recording and computer processing of official place names in Quebec. Two organizations have been taking part: the Geographical Commission of Quebec, which is responsible for official geographical nomenclature in Quebec, and the Gécet, which is a Laval University research group interested in questions of toponymy and geographical terminology.

The objective of the Project is to create a permanent bank of toponymic data and to establish an integrated system for utilization and updating of these data. Three steps are involved in the project:

(*a*) Establishment of a toponymic file;
(*b*) Computer analysis of data; and
(*c*) Verification and updating of data.

ESTABLISHMENT OF A TOPONYMIC FILE

The years 1971 to 1973 were devoted to the establishment of a place-name file on computer media. The file includes more than 60,000 official place names, which appear in the *Répertoire géographique du Québec*, a 701-page volume published by the Geographical Commission, and in supplements, which have been published in the Quebec Official Gazette.

The computer file is set up in such a way that there are several units of information or "fields" for each toponym. The sample list printout shows the contents (see annex). The first field shows the date of the name's official publication. In the second column, the eight digits give a sequential code, which was determined mechanically and is used to add or correct toponymic information. The other eight digits appearing on the following line are a language code (English, French, Amerindian, Eskimo, other) and a semantic code (historical, dedicatory, descriptive, anthroponymic and other names) for the place name.

The "POSITION" field gives the geographical co-ordinates in degrees and minutes, thus locating the toponym. The following two columns, "NAME" and "ENTITY", give the geographical names, which are arranged in integral alphabetical order of the specific. They consist of two main divisions: administrative entities, that is, those that have been defined by man (counties, cities, towns, villages and so on), and natural

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Mrs. Grenon-Roy, Geographer with the Secretariat of the Quebec Geographical Commission, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.16. The French version of this paper appeared in a special issue of the bulletin *CANOMA* (vol. 3, No. 1), distributed at the Conference.

topographic entities, which comprise the range of features of the geographical landscape (coves, streams, bays, mountains and so on). The toponyms are located according to township, county and area, all of which represent types of cadastral and census divisions. This information appears in the "PLACE" field. The numbers and letters of the last column ("SHEET") refer to map numbers and are explained in greater detail later.

The bank is placed on a medium (a magnetic tape) by means of the APL system. The file is then converted from the initial APL code to the EBCDIC code, which makes it possible to use the French print chain. In addition to capitals, the chain includes accents and lower-case letters, all of which are necessary in writing French and which a conventional computer print chain does not have. This step thus solves the problem of transcribing geographical names with accents.

Computer analysis of data

Between 1973 and 1975 the operation of the bank made it possible to develop solutions to the original methodological problems concerning the computerization of place names and especially to establish correlations between such different parameters as linguistic and semantic classifications in connexion with generics, the distribution of name types according to the various regions and so on. This analysis, in addition to showing the difficulties inherent in the definition and recording of geographical entities, points up the problems associated with place-name standardization (spelling, homonymy and so on).

Data verification and updating

Early in 1975 the Geographical Commission announced its intention to publish a second edition of the *Répertoire des noms géographiques*. This will include the updated and official geographical nomenclature of Quebec. Publication is slated for the spring of 1978.

At the moment the file comprises all the names of the first *Répertoire* and the supplements, that is, all names that have been made official since the time the Commission was first created (1912) up to the end of 1974. It is realized that place names must be reviewed systematically, since over the years changes occur (different spelling and usage, more specific location and so on).

The methodology that has been developed makes it possible for geographical names to be easily found on basic cartographic documents and for the data to be checked and corrected if necessary. The geographical coordinates that already appear opposite each place name in the file make it possible for the computer to determine map numbers. These correspond to the national mapping system (see the "SHEET" field in the sample list printout). Proper programming makes it possible to obtain list printouts of all place names grouped according to the numbers to which they belong. For example, sheet 22 D/09 gives all place names under that number that have been made official. The names are reviewed and corrected if necessary. Through coding, the corrections may be recorded on lists prepared for that purpose. These are then entered in the data file by means of an APL console, which is directly connected to the computer.

In conjunction with the name verification process, the file is updated continually. It currently contains more than 75,000 toponyms, which represent the sum of official geographical nomenclature to date in Quebec.

Mechanized operation of this permanent bank of geographical names has several advantages. In addition to reducing considerably the number of potential errors, it provides quick access to a large volume of information. The flexibility of this system also offers many possibilities for compiling names. Various lists have been selected to date, including one of such generic toponyms as, for example, "river" and "creek", another of inhabited places and a third of names appearing in the first *Répertoire*, arranged according to language and origin.

This technique has also made it possible to conduct research on problems of defining and recording generics. A list of 5,000 names was selected and compiled, the names being arranged in alphabetical order of the generic. The list was used to determine systematically the correspondence or non-correspondence of generics and geographical entities. For example, it was possible to verify the different meanings of the generic term "*coulée*", which in certain areas designates a "ravine", in others a "stream", and which is also sometimes used in the sense of a "small channel".

By verifying terms in their toponymic and geographical contexts, we are able to establish accurate terminology while taking into account the vocabulary currently in use to describe geographical phenomena.

Computer analysis of generics helps to improve the presentation and accuracy of Quebec nomenclature. In the next edition of *Répertoire des noms géographiques du Québec*, the toponym (generic and specific) and the geographical entity will be separated. This method of recording data meets one of the recommendations that emerged from the Second Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names.

By the end of 1977, the name verification, updating and analysis processes will be completed. The permanent bank of toponymic data will thus be used for the new edition of the *Répertoire des noms géographiques*. It will be updated continually and new information (historical data, variants and so on) will be added as required. Partial or complete lists of names may be produced upon request.

Quebec's experiment in the computerization of place names has had very positive results. In addition to solving data recording and storage problems, the Project has made it possible to develop a new, more effective methodology to overcome difficulties in the definition, spelling and selection of toponyms. In short, the Project has solved the problems inherent in the standardization of geographical names.

A PROGRAMME BY THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA FOR THE AUTOMATIC MANAGEMENT OF INFORMATION ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by the United States of America*

Résumé

Le Service géologique des Etats-Unis a mis au point, en coopération avec le Board on Geographic Names (BGN), un programme de traitement automatique de l'information sur les noms géographiques de plusieurs Etats des Etats-Unis d'Amérique. Appelé le Geographic Names Information System (GNIS), ce programme permet d'imprimer des renseignements selon un certain nombre d'éléments d'information comprenant, entre autres, le nom, le "désignant", le lieu, les coordonnées, les variantes de noms, la feuille de carte et la cote d'altitude. Fondé sur la collection normalisée de cartes et contenant des noms conformes aux règles préconisées par le BGN, le GNIS incorpore des noms rencontrés dans les Etats du Massachusetts (12 000) et de l'Alaska (30 000) ainsi qu'environ 1 800 noms concernant Rhode Island. Les travaux portent actuellement sur des noms utilisés au Colorado, au Kansas et au Delaware.

Le système peut fournir sur imprimante des renseignements relatifs aux noms, selon plusieurs présentations —par exemple par ordre alphabétique, par détail topographique, par catégorie de détail, par subdivision administrative et par bassin hydrographique. Plusieurs exemples de sortie d'imprimante illustrent le genre d'informations que le GNIS peut traiter. Actuellement, les usagers peuvent obtenir, pour un prix symbolique, les sorties d'imprimante concernant les Etats étudiés. Le BGN lance un nouveau programme pour que les nomenclatures des Etats fassent partie des publications courantes de bibliothèque.

Resumen

La Dirección de Relevamientos Geológicos de los Estados Unidos, en cooperación con la Junta de Nombres Geográficos de los Estados Unidos, ha organizado un programa de elaboración automática de información sobre nombres geográficos para varios Estados de los Estados Unidos de América. El sistema, conocido como Sistema de Información sobre Nombres Geográficos (*Geographic Names Information System*) puede imprimir información según una serie de elementos de datos, inclusive nombre, denominador, ubicación, coordenadas, variantes de los nombres, hoja de mapa, elevación y otros elementos. El Sistema de Información, que se basa en la serie normalizada de mapas y contiene nombres que se ajustan a las políticas de la junta de Nombres Geográficos de los Estados Unidos, incorpora actualmente nombres de los Estados de Massachusetts (12.000) y Alaska (80.000), y alrededor de 1.800 nombres correspondientes a Rhode Island. Se están realizando trabajos sobre nombres en Colorado, Kansas y Delaware.

El Sistema de Información puede suministrar material impreso de información sobre nombres según varios formatos, por ejemplo, alfabéticamente por accidentes, por categoría de accidentes, por subdivisión administrativa y por cuenca de drenaje. Ejemplos de impresiones ilustran el tipo de información que el Sistema de Información puede elaborar. En la actualided los usuarios pueden obtener, a un costo nominal, material impreso sobre los Estados abarcados. La Junta de Nombres Geográficos está promoviendo otro programa para suministrar nomenclaturas geográficas por Estados, en forma de publicaciones normales de biblioteca.

*

* *

The success of a national programme to standardize geographical names depends a great deal on effective management of name information. Large numbers of interrelated data involving choice of official names, their official written forms and their applications to specific features, places or areas must be collected, processed, stored, retrieved when needed and disseminated to a great variety of users. One method of managing this kind of information is by use of a system developed around automatic data processing. The importance of automatic data processing to national name standardization was recognized at previous United Nations Conferences. It may be useful at this time to give an outline of the computer-based Geographic Names Information System (GNIS) developed by the United States Geological Survey (USGS), in co-operation with the United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN), for the management of domestic geographic names.

The Geographic Names Office in the Topographic Division of the United States Geological Survey, located at the USGS National Center in Reston, Virginia (near Washington, D.C.), is a research, co-ordinating and information centre. It provides a single location in the United States to which may be directed all problems and inquiries concerning domestic geographical names. The Office assists with the mapping and other publication programmes of the USGS, as well as with those of other federal and state agencies, by providing assistance and information on official standard names. It furnishes staff assistance to the BGN Executive Secretary for domestic names activities, manages a data repository, answers public inquiries, compiles name information, publishes books and lists on domestic names and co-ordinates standard name usage between the federal and state Governments.

The Geographic Names Information System is designed to be used by all levels of federal, state and local Governments; by industry; by educational institutions; and by the general public. When completed, the GNIS files will furnish basic and standard information about all

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Donald J. Orth, Jr., United States Geological Survey, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.35.

known geographic names used within the United States. It will

(*a*) Provide an up-to-date index of names found on federal, state and private maps;

(*b*) Assist in establishing uniform name usage throughout the federal Government, in co-operation with state and local Governments and the public;

(*c*) Eliminate duplication and the need for Government agencies, industry and institutions to spend large amounts of money and time to organize similar basic data files for special requirements;

(*d*) Provide for standardization of data elements and their coded representations for use in information interchange within the information-processing community; and

(*e*) Meet federal public information requirements prescribed by law.

GNIS provides information to two kinds of users: those that use the information as formatted for reference purposes, and those that use the file as a subset or information base for a specialized file. The user community for geographic names information is varied and large.

The GNIS lists primary or basic data for various kinds of features identified by a name. These include all known natural features (about 80 per cent of the file) and most major man-related features (about 20 per cent of the file). The man-related features include:

(*a*) Populated and non-populated places;
(*b*) Major and minor civil divisions;
(*c*) Dams and reservoirs;
(*d*) National and State Parks;
(*e*) Military installations;
(*f*) Airports; and
(*g*) Land reservations.

The kinds of man-related features can be further identified as incorporated, rural and seasonal.

The data elements and format associated with each name record include

(*a*) The feature name, including the choice of name, its spelling and its form, as officially recognized by the BGN;

(*b*) A feature class designator, that is, a standard term and code to identify the kind of feature to which the name applies;

(*c*) The date of the BGN's decision, if applicable;

(*d*) Location, including the state and county in which the named feature is located;

(*e*) Geographical co-ordinates indicating the accurate location and extent or limits of the named feature; and

(*f*) Variant names, i.e. other known names for a record-name feature.

While these are the minimum data associated with each record, many records will include additional information.

The collection, maintenance, and retrieval of information are now accomplished through use of an information-processing programme called GIPSY (General Information Processing System), developed by the University of Oklahoma and housed in the Geological Survey's IBM System 370/155 computers. GIPSY can assemble and process large data collections composed of numerical, codified or natural-language information. Variable-length records are accommodated, and data elements can be readily updated or new information added. The system does not establish preconceived relationships between the data collected and stored and it allows users with no programming experience easy access to the file through catalogued routines. Any data element or set of elements can be searched and retrieved individually.

The USGS has developed standard procedures for buiding a computer-based geographic-names file. Initial compilation consists of systematic collection of name data from maps and charts published by USGS and by the National Ocean Survey. These maps and charts, which follow BGN standards for names, offer the most uniform coverage available at scales large enough to permit symbolization and naming of relatively small features. These maps and charts are a valuable time-saving source of name information and, because they show natural and man-made features in accurate location, including their size, shape and extent, it is possible to relate a name visually to the feature it identifies. Reliable quantitative and qualitative information about the named features also can be compiled with a minimum of effort.

Development of the domestic names file is at an early stage and may not be completed for several years. At present all 12,000 names from the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, 30,000 names from the State of Alaska and 1,800 names from the State of Rhode Island have been collected, along with attendant data, and have been put in machine-readable form. The automation of about 50,000 names from the states of Colorado, Kansas and Delaware, along with that of about 50,000 BGN decisions on domestic names, probably will be completed before the end of 1977.

The authority and validity of the file as a National Standard is accomplished

(*a*) By following the decisions and procedures prescribed by the United States Board on Geographic Names for identifying official standard names; and

(*b*) By using organically established names verified as official by the organizations responsible for such features.

Information may be made available to users in three ways:

(*a*) By direct access to the computer file via "outside" terminal;

(*b*) As "open file" products, i.e. magnetic tape, punch cards, computer printout or microfiche; and

(*c*) In published book format, i.e. gazetteers, cumulative lists and topical lists.

Attachments 1 to 7 (see annex) show some of the different formats in which geographical names information can be presented. With the names data for several states now on file, there is a capability to publish state gazetteers containing information according to one or more formats. The United States Board on Geographic Names is looking into ways to promote the publication of state gazetteers on a regular basis. At present, geographical names information can be acquired by users, at nominal cost, on a case-by-case basis.

Annex

SAMPLE PAGES SHOWING VARIOUS FORMATS IN WHICH GNIS GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES INFORMATION CAN BE PRESENTED

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	STATE COUNTY	COORDINATE	ELEVATION	EXTENT OF FEATURE	MAP
Bay Point	point of land	25005	414220N0711235W	10 ft.		120
Bial Point	point of land	25005	413120N0710505W			132
Brayton Point	point of land	25005	414225N0711140W	40 ft.	0.5 mi. long	120
Clarks Point	point of land	25005	413535N0705405W	20 ft.		144
Cornell Point	point of land	25005	413515N0710410W	5 ft.		132
Deepwater Point	point of land	25005	413140N0705845W	4 ft.		144
Doctors Point	point of land	25005	413425N0710425W			132
Fedora Point	point of land	25005	413850N0710755W	10 ft.		120
Hemlock Point	point of land	25005	414705N0705635W	70 ft.		142
Horseneck Point	nt of land	25005	413040N0710520W			132
Huddlestone Point	of land	25005	413435N0710420W			132
Irish Island	land	25005	413235N0710720W	10 ft.	0.1 mi. long	132
Jessies Neck	and	25005	413451N0710436W			132
Long Point		25005	414313N0711145W	15 ft.		120
Misnaum Point		25005	413125N0705725W	10 ft.	1.2 mi. long	144
Moshers Point		25005	413535N0705540W	5 ft.		144
North Point	po.	25	413623N0704954W	5 ft.		156
Nubble, The	point		413025N0710525W		40 ft.	132
Pelegs Point	point o		413532N0710405W	5 ft.		132
Peters Point	point of .		414912N0710654W			130
Pierces Point	point of lan.		414736N0711707W			130
Pines Point	point of land		3055N0710405W	5 ft.		132
Potomska Point	point of land		50N0705825W	10 ft.		144
Ricketsons Point	point of land	25	0705620W	5 ft.		144
Rocky Point	point of land	2800	04920W	4 ft.		156
Round Hill Point	point of land	25005	545W	50 ft.		144
Salters Point	point of land	25005	W	5 ft.		144
Sandy Point	point of land	25005				130
Taber Point	point of land	25005	5W			132
Toms Point	point of land	25005	413 45W	20 ft.		132
Westport Point	point of land	25005	41301 121W	0.0 ft.		132
Westport Point	point of land	25005	413100N 0418W			132
Widows Point	point of land	25005	413600N0710359W	5 ft.		132
Wilbur Point	point of land	25005	413455N0705115W	5 ft.		156
Winslow Point	point of land	25005	414632N0710649W	47 ft.		130
Wood Point	point of land	25005	413105N0710410W	10 ft.		132
Allen Point	point of land	25007	422055N0704148W			167
Bluefish Point	point of land	25007	412103N0703007W	3 ft.		173
Bold Water Point	point of land	25007	412200N0703339W	10 ft.		173
Bran Point	point of land	25007	412421N0703224W	5 ft.		173
Brown Point	point of land	25007	412700N0703725W	20 ft.		166
Butler Neck Point	point of land	25007	412118N0703248W	8 ft.		173
Cedar Neck	point of land	25007	412700N0703536W	30 ft.	0.5 mi. long	166
Chappaquiddick Point	point of land	25007	412315N0703024W			173
Cobbs Point	point of land	25007	412050N0704022W	5 ft.		167
Dividend Point	point of land	25007	412443N0703322W	5 ft.		173
East Chop	point of land	25007	412815N0703410W	42 ft.		173
Flat Point	point of land	25007	412145N0703945W	5 ft.		167
Flat Point	point of land	25007	412757N0703730W	5 ft.		166
Fox Point	point of land	25007	412600N0705057W			145
Gay Head	point of land	25007	412100N0705015W			173
Haystack Point	point of land	25007	412427N0703251W	5 ft.		173

Attachment 1: Massachusetts File; listing according to kind of feature

/...

Attachment 2: Massachusetts File; alphabetical listing according to county

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	STATE COUNTY	COORDINATE	BGN	ELEVATION	SOURCE	MAP
Artichoke River	stream	25009	424915N0705620W			424755N0705715	134
Asbury Grove	ppl	25009	423720N0705305W		63 ft.		135;136
Ash Swamp	swamp	25009	424635N0705810W		65 ft.		134
Attitash, Lake	lake	25009	425100N0705855W		96 ft.		134
Austin Hill	hill	25009	424345N0710517W		292 ft.		123
Averills Island	hummock	25009	423825N0705445W		60 ft.		135
Avery Ledge	ledge	25009	424006N0703515W	1891			168
Ayers Hill	hill	25009	424826N0710331W		339 ft.		122
Ayers Village	ppl	25009	424713N0711010W		187 ft.		111
Babson Ledge	rock	25009	423621N0704003W				159
Babson Point	point of land	25009	423910N0704100W		10 ft.		159
Babson Reservoir	reservoir	25009	423733N0704006W		48 ft.		159
Bachelder Brook	stream	25009	424343N0705431W			424150N0705421	135
Back Beach	beach	25009	422930N0705100W				149
Back Harbor	cove	25009	423935N0703710W				168
Back River	stream	25009;33015	425105N0705925W			425145N0710210	122;134
Back River	stream	25009;33015	425120N0705540W			425425N0705758	133;134
Back River	stream	25009	424920N0705237W			424955N0705335	134
Badgers Rock		25009	424915N0704915W				146
Bagwell Island		25009	424220N0704920W				147
Bailey Pond		25009	425010N0705555W		25 ft.		134
Baileys Hill		25009	422506N0705547W	1971	70 ft.		137
Baker Hill		25009	422648N0710018W		194 ft.		125
Bakers Island		25009	423200N0704712W	1904	50 ft.		148
Bald Hill	h	09	423442N0705045W		160 ft.		148
Bald Hill	hill		423818N0710037W		247 ft.		123
Bald Rocks	rocks		423925N0704140W				159
Baldpate Hill	hill		424228N0710056W		353 ft.		123
Baldpate Pond	lake		424153N0710008W		92 ft.		123;135
Ballarach Cove	cove		425[illegible]50N0704550W	1971			148
Ballardvale	ppl	2	[illegible]0710940W	1970	80 ft.		112;113
Bar Head	promontory	2500	[illegible]704625W		44 ft.		147
Bare Hill	hill	25009	[illegible]715W		170 ft.		135
Bare Meadow Brook	stream	25009	[illegible]55W			424430N0710935	111;112
Barker Hill	hill	25009	[illegible]603W		288 ft.		123
Barn Rocks	rocks	25009	4[illegible]04112W				159
Bartholomew Hill	hill	25009	4240[illegible]705315W		184 ft.		135
Bartholowmew Pond	lake	25009	423030N[illegible]705800W		100 ft.		136
Bartlett Brook	stream	25009;25017;	424207N0711305W			424255N0711657	112;102
Bartlett Rock	rock	25009	424007N0703710W				168
Basin, The	cove	25009	424845N0704910W				146
Bass Point	point of land	25009	422500N0705610W		30 ft.		137
Bass River	stream	25009	423240N0705340W	1942		423504N0705430	136
Bass Rock	rock	25009	422505N0705500W				137
Bass Rock	rock	25009	424152N0704703W				147
Bass Rock	rock	25009	422450N0705530W				137
Bass Rocks	promontory	25009	423655N0703800W		50 ft.		159;168
Bass Rocks	ppl	25009	423651N0703809W		40 ft.		159;168
Batt Hill	hill	25009	425220N0705350W		170 ft.		134
Bay View	ppl	25009	424012N0703955W		60 ft.		159
Bayberry Swamp	swamp	25009	423530N0704718W		55 ft.		148
Bayns Hill	hill	25009	424134N0710232W		330 ft.		123

Attachment 3: Massachusetts File; listing according to drainage basin

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	DWDC CODE	STATE CO.	COORDINATE	ELEV. FEET	SOURCE	FEATURE EXTENT	MAP
Dug Way	channel	02E	25023	420328N0704047W			0.3 mi. long	161
East River	channel	02E	25023	414424N0703916W			0.3 mi. long	164
Fort Point Channel	channel	02E	25025	422120N0710300W			1 mi. long	126
Goose Point Channel	channel	02E	25023	415820N0703945W			1.5 mi. long	162
Great Wood Island River	channel	02E	25023	420307N0703922W			0.8 mi. long	161
Hog Island Channel	channel	02E	25009	423950N0704450W			1 mi. long	168;147
Horseneck Channel	channel	02E	25005	413100N0710355W			1.5 mi. long	132
Little Mystic Channel	channel	02E	25025	422250N0710300W			0.6 mi. long	125
Lords Creek	channel	02E	25009	424345N0705005W			0.5 mi. long	147
Manchester Channel	channel	02E	25009	423330N0704710W			0.8 mi. long	148
Marblehead Channel	channel	02E	25009	423135N0705150W			5 mi. long	148;149
Muskeget Channel	channel	02E	25007	412100N0702400W			6 mi. wide	264
Narrows, The	channel	02E	25023	414935N0705340W			0.1 mi. across	142
Oldtown Harbor	channel	02E	25007	412300N0703030W			1.3 mi. long	173
Pollock Rip Channel	[illegible]el	02E	25001	413330N0695700W				1209
Popponesset Creek		02E	25001	413437N0702700W			0.8 mi. long	175
Reserved Channel		02E	25025	422035N0710120W			1.3 mi. long	126
Stacy Creek		[illegible]2E	25009	424235N0704920W			0.8 mi. long	147
Third Creek			25009	424300N0704900W			0.5 mi. long	147
Thorofare, The	ch[illegible]		[illegible]09	424515N0704924W			0.5 mi. long	146
Western Channel	channe[illegible]			[illegible]22636N0705800W			1.7 mi. long	137
Woods Hole Passage	channel			[illegible]0N0704100W			2 mi. long	165
Rafes Chasm	chasm			[illegible]704205W			0.1 mi. long; 0	159
Black Wills Cliff	cliff	02[illegible]		[illegible]03W	30			137
Breakneck Ledge	cliff	02E	[illegible]		450			127
Grovers Cliff	cliff	02E	250[illegible]					137
High Cliff	cliff	02E	25023	41[illegible]				162
Indian Neck	cliff	02E	25001	41543[illegible]			0.7 mi. long	182
Rose Cliff	cliff	02E	25021	421525N07[illegible]				138
South Bluff	cliff	02E	25007	412854N070443[illegible]	0			157
South Bluff	cliff	02E	25007	412715N0704651W	50			157
Third Cliff	cliff	02E	25023	421045N0704300W	80		0.7 mi. long	160
West Cliff	cliff	02E	25009	422520N0705615W	30			137
Cliffs, The	cliffs	02E	25023	414111N0704330W	27			164
Falmouth Cliffs	cliffs	02E	25001	413719N0703837W	61			165
Gay Head Cliffs	cliffs	02E	25007	412100N0705012W	147			158
Nantucket Cliffs	cliffs	02E	25019	411740N0700700W	50		0.6 mi. long	180
Nashaquitsa Cliffs	cliffs	02E	25007	411912N0704545W	50			158
Wequobsque Cliffs	cliffs	02E	25007	412005N0704415W	80		1.8 mi. long	158
.Barnstable County	county	02E	25001	414000N0701500W				
Allerton Harbor	cove	02E	25023	421810N0705340W				138
Anchorage, The	cove	02E	25001	414015N0703820W				164
Angeline Cove	cove	02E	25005	413245N0710635W			1,300 ft. wide	132
Anns Cove	cove	02E	25001	413512N0702818W			0.2 mi. long	175
Aucoot Cove	cove	02E	25023	414030N0704530W			0.6 mi. across	155
Aunt Lydias Cove	cove	02E	25001	414106N0695700W			0.2 mi. across	185
Back Harbor	cove	02E	25009	423935N0703710W			0.2 mi. wide	168
Ballarach Cove	cove	02E	25009	423350N0704550W			0.1 mi. across	148
Barker Cove	cove	02E	25023	414945N0705355W			0.3 mi. across	142
Bass Cove	cove	02E	25023	414330N0703900W			0.3 mi. across	164
Bass Creek	cove	02E	25023	414330N0703920W			0.2 mi. long	164
Bass Hole	cove	02E	25001	414335N0701420W			0.3 mi. across	179

Attachment 4: Rhode Island File; alphabetical listing

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	STATE COUNTY	ELEV. FT.	BGN	COORDINATE	SOURCE	MAP
Greene	locale	44003	425	1930	414128N0714447W		19
Greene Point	cape	44009		1930	413208N0712507W		14
Greenville	ppl	44007	322	1930	415216N0713309W		26
Greenwich Bay	bay	44003		1930	414028N0712452W		21
Greenwich Cove	bay	44003		1930	413926N0712641W		21
Greenwood	ppl	44003		1930	414230N0712641W		21
Greystone	ppl	44007	139	1930	415159N0712927W		27
Grist Mill Pond	lake	44007	475	1930	415352N0714739W		29
Grove Point	cape	44009		1930	411332N0713359W		1
Grove Point Rock	pillar	44009		1930	411336N0713352W		1
Gull Point	cape	44005		1930	413834N0712001W		22
Gull Rock	pillar	44005		1930	412733N0711801W		9
Gull Rocks	pillar	44005		1930	413010N0711959W		15
Gunners Hill	summit	44009		1930	411153N0713516W		1
Gunning Rock	pillar	44009		1930	412419N0712721W		8
Gut, The	gut	44005		1930	413041N0710744W		16
Gut, The	gut	44005		1930	413707N0711216W		16
Halfmile Hill	summit	44001	122	1930	414216N0711649W		22
Halfway Ledge	ledge	44009		1930	413313N0712428W		14
Halfway Rock	pillar	44005		1930	413351N0711959W		15
Halfway Rock	pillar	44005		1930	412804N0710837W		10
Hall Creek	stream	44009		1930	413619N0712525W	413637N0712543W	14
Hall Point	cape	44009		1930	412124N0713644W		4
Hallville Pond	lake	44007	210	1930	413959N0713420W		13
Hamilton	pl			1930	413254N0712630W		14
Hamiltons Corner	locale		246	1930	413630N0713039W		13
Hamlet	ppl			1930	420003N0713019W		36
Hammitt Hill	summit			1930	414004N0714100W		19
Hammond Hill	summit	44[illegible]		1930	413108N0712730W		14
Hanging Rock	pillar	44009		1930	412930N0711532W		9
Hannah Brook	stream	44007		1972	415107N0714318W	415215N0714327W	25
Hannah Clarkin Pond	lake	44009	47	1930	412340N0713809W		6
Happy Hollow Pond	tank	44007	51	1930	415404N0712310W		32
Harbor Hill	Hill	44009		1972	410948N0713312W		1
Harbor Neck	cape	44009		1930	411138N0713531W		1
Harbor Pond	bay	44009		1930	411037N0713400W		1
Harbour Island	island	44009		1972	412442N0712950W		8
Hardig Brook	stream	44003		1972	414202N0712741W	414118N0713106W	21
Harkney Hill	summit	44003	514	1930	414040N0713859W		19
Harmony	locale	44007	409	1930	415316N0713550W		31
Harris	locale	44003		1930	414328N0713159W		20
Harris Brook	stream	44007		1930	415349N0713044W	415538N0713010W	31
Harris Point	cape	44009		1930	411126N0713427W		1
Harris Pond	tank	44007	311	1930	415449N0713025W		31
Harris Pond	tank	44007 25027	168	1930	420057N0713025W		36
Harrisville	ppl	44007	336	1930	415756N0714030W		30
Haul Rock	pillar	44003		1930	414103N0712658W		21
Haversham	ppl	44009		1930	412050N0714414W		4
Hawkins Brook	stream	44007		1930	415225N0713004W	415215N0713137W	26
Hawkins Pond	lake	44007	269	1930	415139N0713246W		26

/...

Annex (*continued*)

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	STATE COUNTY	COORDINATE	DGN	ELEVATION	SOURCE	MAP
Meetinghouse Swamp	swamp	25023	415453N0705330W		55 ft.		141
Megansett	ppl	25001	413910N0703715W		40 ft.		171;164
Megansett Harbor	bay	25001	413915N0703830W	1938			164;171
Mellen Hill	hill	25027	422517N0715554W		1,210 ft.		73
Mellen Pond	lake	25027	423808N0720152W		1,074 ft.		65
Melrose	ppl	25017	422730N0710400W		133 ft.		125
Melrose Highlands	area	25017	422815N0710343W		150 ft.		125
Melrose Rock	hill	25017	422645N0710444W		210 ft.		125
Menauhant	ppl	25001	413315N0703302W		10 ft.		172
Mendall Hill	hill	25005	414205N0705300W		140 ft.		143
Mendellis Rocks	rocks	25001	414030N0704435W				164
Mendon	ppl	25027	420620N0713310W		330 ft.		94
Menemsha	ppl	25007	412106N0704553W		30 ft.		158
Menemsha Basin	harbor	25007	412110N0704600W				158
Menemsha Beach	beach	25007	412125N0704555W		5 ft.		158
Menemsha Bight	[illegible]ht	25007	412110N0704645W				158
Menemsha Creek	[illegible]	25007	412115N0704610W			412115N0704610W	158
Menemsha Pond	[illegible]	25007	412015N0704630W				158
Meninimisset	[illegible]	25027	422000N0720935W		565 ft.		62
Mercer Square	[illegible]	25023	420755N0705133W		70 ft.		151
Meriams Corner	[illegible]	[illegible]17	422735N0711930W		130 ft.		104
Merino Pond	re-		420300N0715400W		485 ft.		76
Merino Village	area		420300N0715325W		440 ft.		76
Merriam Beach	beach		414000N0703815W		5 ft.		164
Merriam Brook	stream		[illegible]905N0722802W			423852N0722707W	47
Merriam Hill	hill		[illegible]N0711333W		290 ft.		114
Merriam Hill	hill	25[illegible]	[illegible]N0712650W		328 ft.		98
Merrick	locality	25013	[illegible]N0723730W		100 ft.		40;46
Merrick Island	hill	25001	[illegible]0N0700330W		70 ft.		182
Merrill, Cape	point of land	25009	[illegible]20N0704858W				146
Merrimac	ppl	25009	42[illegible]950N0710010W	1892	107 ft.		122
Merrimac Terrace	ppl	25009	422856N0710015W		100 ft.		123
Merrimack River	stream	25009;25017;	424910N0704945W	1916			95;102;111;11
Merrimacport	ppl	25009	424940N0705920W		100 ft.		134
Merritts Hill	hill	25015	422612N0724000W		1,340 ft.		31
Merrymount	area	25021	421545N0705945W		32 ft.		138
Metacomet Lake	lake	25015	421820N0722550W		306 ft.		50
Metcalf	ppl	25017	421100N0712645W		269 ft.		99
Metcalf Creek	stream	25009[illegible]	424330N0705000W			424315N0705036W	147
Methuen	ppl	25009	424334N0711129W		115 ft.		112
Miaconet Pond	lake	25019	411455N0700657W		5 ft.		180
Miaconet Rip	shoal	25019	411400N0700630W				180
Micah Pond	lake	25001	413820N0702245W		12 ft.		175
Micajah Pond	lake	25023	415513N0704154W		107 ft.		162
Midchannel Rock	rock	25009	423125N0704915W				148
Middle Branch Swift River	stream	25011;25027;	422035N0721855W				56;55;54
Middle Branch Westfield River	stream	25015;25013;	421535N0725200W			422720N0725953W	32;26;25
Middle Breakers	rocks	25009	423110N0704550W		10 ft.		148
Middle Brewster Island	island	25025	422018N0705320W	1950			138
Middle Brook	stream	25013	420818N0725555W			420908N0725700W	27
Middle Flats	tidal flats	25007	412420N0703020W				173

Attachment 5: Massachusetts File; alphabetical listing

Attachment 6: Alaska File; alphabetical listing

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	COORDINATE	BGN	ELEVATION	EXTENT OF FEATURE	MAP	I.D. NUMBER
Castle Creek	stream	613820N1440520W			0.8 mi. long	68	00003932
Castle Creek	stream	683520N1523500W			6.5 mi. long	134	00003934
Castle Creek	stream	645200N1640800W			1.6 mi. long	95	00003933
Castle Hill	hill	570257N1352010W		54 ft.		9	00003935
Castle Hill	hill	615000N1653000W		437 ft.		75	00003936
Castle Island	island	602000N1451200W			4.5 mi. long	64	00003938
Castle Island	island	513920N1774040W				17	00003937
Castle Island Slough	stream	602000N1451000W			8 mi. long	64	00003940
Castle Islands	islands	564000N1331000W				6	00003939
Castle Mountain	mountain	615030N1483000W		5,500 ft.	6 mi. long	69	00003943
Castle Mountain	mountain	683400N1523500W		3,409 ft.		134	00003944
Castle Mountain	mountain	565250N1320720W		7,329 ft.		6	00003941
Castle Mountain	mountain	613900N1415900W		8,620 ft.		67	00003942
Castle Peak	mountain	613500N1432700W		11,000 ft.		67	00003945
Castle River	stream	563830N1331530W	1930		12 mi. long	6	00003946
Castle Rock		551700N1593000W			0.6 mi. long	27	00003947
Castle Rock	land	584030N1615615W				39	00003949
Castle Rock		632200N1501620W	1932	5,765 ft.		88	00003948
Castle Rocks		632515N1520430W		1,900 ft.		88	00003950
Castle Rocks Lake		632130N1520800W			1.1 mi. long	88	00003951
Casther Creek	st.	[illegible]N1454545W			1.5 mi. long	86	00003953
Casther Glacier	glaci.	454300W			12 mi. long	86	00003954
Casther Mount	mountain	[illegible]500W		5,535 ft.		69	00003952
Caswell	RR station	[illegible]W				70	00003955
Caswell Creek	stream				12 mi. long	70	00003956
Caswell Lake	lake	b.			1 mi. long	82	00003957
Cat Head	point of land	6016				63	00003963
Cat Island	island	550120N.			2.3 mi. long	3	00003988
Cat Island	island	552800N134				4	00003989
Cat Island	island	644800N15710[illegible]				97	00003990
Cat Lake	lake	621300N1470000W	1959		0.6 mi. long	83	00003991
Cat Passage	water passage	550030N1311600W	1917			3	00003996
Catalina Island	island	553250N1331720W			1,800 ft. long	4	00003958
Cataract Bight	cove	514150N1764920W	1936			17	00003959
Cataract Cove	cove	594230[illegible]1495000W	1930		0.8 mi. wide	49	00003961
Cataract Cove	bight	543845N1644600W	1942		3.5 mi. across	24	00003960
Cataract Glacier	glacier	610230N1482310W			2.7 mi. long	69	00003962
Catnead Bay	estuary	601810N1475030W			1 mi. long	63	00003964
Cathedral Bluffs	bluffs	632330N1434400W			1.2 mi. long	85	00003965
Cathedral Creek	stream	625015N1522245W			5 mi. long	81	00003966
Cathedral Creek	stream	650815N1411120W	1965		18 mi. long	103	00003968
Cathedral Creek	stream	631905N1463250W			2 mi. long	86	00003967
Cathedral Creek	stream	562600N1584700W			9 mi. long	30	00022636
Cathedral Falls Creek	stream	565330N1334400W			7 mi. long	6	00003969
Cathedral Island	island	571200N1530800W	1930		0.3 mi. across	34	00003970
Cathedral Mountain	mountain	671000N1501500W		3,440 ft.		124	00003973
Cathedral Mountain	mountain	633400N1493600W		4,900 ft.		87	00003972
Cathedral Mountain	mountain	615715N1525730W		5,730 ft.		70	00003971
Cathedral Peak	mountain	553630N1614300W		2,963 ft.		28	00003974
Cathedral Peak	peak	583645N1342149W	1965	6,500 ft.		11	00003975
Cathedral Point	point of land	534430N1605145W				23	00003977
Cathedral Point	point of land	515610N1754310W	1936			18	00003976

Attachment 7: Board on Geographic Names Decisions

Annex (*continued*)

NAME	FEATURE CLASS	STATE COUNTY	COORDINATE	ELEVATION	EXTENT OF FEATURE	DATE
Birch Islands	islands	ME 23029	445224N0670906W			1947
Birch Islands	islands (2)	ME 23029	453715N0673800W		0.1 mi. long and 0.4 mi	1954
Black Duck Cove	cove	ME 23029	442845N0673554W			1947
Black Ledges	shoal	ME 23029	443200N0673000W			1947
Boundary Ledges	shoal	ME 23029	443545N0673012W		0.5 mi. in extent	1947
Bray Ledge	shoal	ME 23029	443448N0674512W			1947
Bray Point	point of land	ME 23029	443500N0674520W			1947
Brooks Bluff	point of land	ME 23029	450530N0670648W			1947
Bucks Neck	point of land	ME 23029	443830N0672240W			1947
Bungy Rock	rock	ME 23029	443520N0674454W			1947
Burial Island	island	ME 23029	445259N0665955W			1954
Carrying Place Cove	cove	ME 23029	443110N0674230W		0.8 mi. long	1954
Carrying Place Cove	cove	ME 23029	443242N0674700W			1947
Carrying Place Island	island	ME 23029	443110N0674145W		250 yds. long and 150 y	1954
Chandler Island	island	ME 23029	443133N0674150W			1947
Clement Point	point of land	ME 23029	445524N0670548W			1954
Cothell Meadow Brook	stream	ME 23029	444215N0673620W		2 mi. long	1947
Crotched Meadow	meadow	ME 23029	444230N0671430W			1947
Crow Island	island	ME 23029	442945N0673245W			1947
Crow Neck	peninsula	ME 23029	445130N0670800W		3 mi. long and 1 mi. wi	1947
Cutler Harbor	harbor	ME 23029	443928N0671228W			1947
Daniels Island	island	ME 23029	443202N0674120W			1947
Deep Cove	ove	ME 23029	442936N0673612N			1947
Dennys Bay	of Cobscook	ME 23029	445300N0670900W			1939
Donovan Cove		ME 23029	443140N0673715W			1947
Drisko Island		ME 23029	442845N0674025W		0.8 mi. long	1947
Drisko Ledge		ME 23029	443015N0673343W			1947
Drisko Ledge		ME 23029	443122N0673240W			1947
Drown Boys Ledges	s	23029	442648N0673806W			1947
Dunn Island	isla	3029	443654N0673324W		0.8 mi. long	1947
East Branch	stream		443230N0673800W		5 mi. long	1947
Eastern Knubble	hill		443930N0671150W	164 ft.		1947
Eastern Ladle Ledge	shoal		442901N0674410W			1947
Eastern Ledges	shoal		443155N0673006W			1947
Eastern Marsh Brook	stream	ME	10N0671455W			1939
Eastern Pitch	slope	ME 23	N0674406W			1947
Edgecomb Point	point of land	ME 23029	70440W			1954
Fellows Island	island	ME 23029	200W		0.5 mi. long	1947
Fifth Rock	rock	ME 23029	3025W			1947
Flake Point Bar	bar	ME 23029	4 73342W		500 yds. long	1947
Folkingham Cove	cove	ME 23029	4429 673615W			1947
Garnet Point	point of land	ME 23029	445525N0670640W			1954
Gilman Hill	hill	ME 23029	443824N0673710W	180 ft.		1947
Goose Island	island	ME 23029	445448N0670230W		300 yds. long	1947
Grassy Point	point of land	ME 23029	443730N0671806W			1947
Great Cove	bay	ME 23029	443730N0673045W			1947
Hallowell Island	island	ME 23029	445254N0670945W		0.8 mi. long	1947
Hardscrabble River	estuary	ME 23029	445445N0671205W		2 mi. long	1947
Hopkins Cut	water passage	ME 23029	443145N0673837W			1947
Howard Cove	cove	ME 23029	443700N0672300W			1947
Inner Hardwood Island	island	ME 23029	443014N0673312W			1947
Inner Sand Island	island	ME 23029	442818N0674030W		500 yds. long	1947
Kilton Point	point of land	ME 23029	443850N0673255W			1947
Lamb Cove	cove	ME 23029	450620N0670750W			1947
Leach Point	point of land	ME 23029	445618N0670610W			1954
Little Breaking Ledge	shoal	ME 23029	443044N0673025W			1947
Little Dram Island	island	ME 23029	445312N0670915W			1947

The agent for data-collection monitoring and for maintenance of the GNIS files is the USGS Geographic Names Office, which can keep the file current and guarantee the accuracy and official status of the name data in the file without bias.

Additions to GNIS files will be monitored by the geographic names staff. Changes of file information relating to a name or its application are processed through BGN, as prescribed by law, or by the controlling agencies for other data. Specific information about the Geographic Names Information System can be obtained by writing to:

Director, United States Geological Survey
National Center
Reston, Virginia 22092
United States of America

DATA PROCESSING FOR THE PREPARATION OF THE GAZETTEER OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY

Report presented by the Federal Republic of Germany*

Résumé

A l'Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie à Francfort-sur-le-Main on prépare actuellement le *Namenbuch Bundesrepublik Deutschland* (Nomenclature géographique: République fédérale d'Allemagne) en tant que contribution aux séries de nomenclatures des Nations Unies. On y trouve les noms figurant sur les cartes officielles complétés par des indications sur le type et la fonction, la situation et les dimensions ainsi que le classement des objets en ce qui concerne l'administration et la géographie. L'acquisition des données sur les noms, leur préparation et leur emmagasinage dans un fichier de noms géographiques à l'aide du traitement électronique des données s'effectuent dans le cadre de l'établissement du *Informationssystem für die Erfassung geographischer Namen aus amtlichen Landkarten der Bundesrepublik Deutschland* (système d'information pour l'acquisition de noms géographiques à partir de cartes géographiques officielles de la République fédérale d'Allemagne) qui servira aussi à d'autres fins.

Les procédés et programmes pour l'acquisition, la préparation, l'emmagasinage et l'édition de l'ensemble des noms pour la préparation de la nomenclature géographique décrits par l'auteur ont été élaborés et éprouvés à l'Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie.

Resumen

El Instituto de Geodesia Aplicada (Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie) de Francfort del Main prepara actualmente el nomenclátor geográfico de la República Federal de Alemania (*Namenbuch Bundesrepublik Deutschland*) como contribución a la serie de nomenclátores de las Naciones Unidas. En él se incluyen los nombres que figuran en los mapas oficiales, complementados con indicaciones sobre el tipo, la función, la situación y las dimensiones —y la clasificación—de los objetos desde el punto de vista político-administrativo y geográfico. La recopilación de los datos sobre nombres, su preparación y su acumulación en un fichero de nombres geográficos con ayuda de métodos de elaboración electrónica de datos han sido resultado de la creación de un sistema de información para la adquisición de nombres geográficos a partir de las cartas geográficas oficiales de la República Federal de Alemania (*Informationssystem für die Erfassung geographischer Namen aus amtlichen Landkarten der Bundesrepublik Deutschland*), que servirá también para otras finalidades.

Los procedimientos y los programas para la adquisición, la preparación, el almacenamiento y la edición del conjunto de nombres para la elaboración del nomenclátor geográfico, descritos por el autor, han sido desarrollados y ensayados en el Instituto de Geodesia Aplicada.

*

* *

Introduction: purposes of the Information System for the Capture of Geographical Names from Official Topographic Maps of the Federal Republic of Germany

The names of geographical features are of no interest unless they are explained by information as to the kind and function, dimensions and location of the feature concerned. The *Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany* now being prepared as a contribution to the United Nations Series of Gazetteers is to comprise all names, with explanatory information, in alphabetical order and with official spelling, as shown on the official maps of the Federal Republic of Germany. For the time being, the gazetteer is limited to the approximately 30,000 names shown on the General Map at scale 1:500,000, World Series 1404.

If, later on, the names shown on maps at larger scales are included, the volume of the *Gazetteer* will increase considerably. So we expect that about 180,000 names must be captured from the General Topographic Map at scale 1:200,000.

For the features indicated by names the following descriptive details are given:

(*a*) Kind and function (by feature codes);

(*b*) Location (by map sheet number, co-ordinates and height above mean sea level);

(*c*) Dimensions (by number of inhabitants, area and length); and

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.41.

(*d*) Administrative area (relation) (by statistical key number).

A gazetteer comprising all the names shown on the map series at a certain scale and giving such additional information can be used for a number of different purposes:

(*a*) As a general source of information on geographical features;

(*b*) As a basis for the representation of administrative structures;

(*c*) As a compilation of names, from which to select, by kind and function, location and dimension, those which are to be shown on a map sheet to be prepared; and

(*d*) As a compilation of criteria for the selection of kind and dimension of map lettering and its placement on the map.

However, in order to make such varied uses possible, it is necessary that the data (such as, e.g., the number of inhabitants) be updated continuously and that they can be selected and sorted according to different characteristics. Electronic data processing (EDP) is the best means to solve this task. The Institut für Angewandte Geodäsie (IfAG), which is charged with the preparation of the *Gazetteer*, has considered, from a very early date, the use of EDP. While doing so, we have not restricted ourselves to the preparation of a "gazetteer" only, but proposed to establish an Information System for the Capture of Geographical Names from Official Topographic Maps of the Federal Republic of Germany (hereinafter referred to as the "Information System") in order to serve all the purposes mentioned above.

We have particularly considered the plan to use the information, stored together with the names, for the automatic preparation of the printing plates for map lettering. The result has been that in addition to the co-ordinates of the feature concerned, the co-ordinates of the base line of the name on the map (as a rule, those at the left bottom corner of the first letter) have also been captured.

Without the co-ordinates of the base line, letter type and letter size can already be determined by means of kind, function and dimension of the topographic feature. At the Institute we plan the following procedure which considerably exceeds the scope of the above project:

The names stored are displayed, together with the symbols for the appertaining features and their surrounding, in their correct size on the screen of an interactive graphic system by means of the co-ordinates of the base lines. By displacing the names on the display to the most favourable position, the co-ordinates of the base lines are changed at the same time. In an automatically controlled phototypesetting device, the names are "written" on film, using type of the correct style and size, at the positions determined by the corrected co-ordinates of the base line. After it is developed this film is used to produce the printing plate for map lettering.

Structure of the Information System

The core of the Information System is a data bank system, which permits at any time the input of new data, the modification or erasure of existing data and the selection of a great quantity of data according to certain characteristics. This System is supported by several programmes, which permit the examination of data groups at a given format with regard to specified selection criteria and interrelations; storage of the characteristics and relations found in a suitable way; and classification of the search characteristics (in case of calls to the information system) in such a way that the data bank system can find the data records in question by means of the stored characteristics and relations and make them available in an output data file.

The DATAS data bank system has proved very suitable for the purposes of the Information System. The DATAS system has been described in detail by Wigand Weber in *Ein Datenbanksystem für Geographische Namen.*[1] In the meantime, DATAS has been installed in the TR 440 computer of the Gesellschaft für Mathematik und Datenverarbeitung mbH (Society for Mathematics and Data Processing), Bonn, Bereich Darmstadt. The Information System can also, however, be operated on a smaller computer.

With the TR 440 computer, the following processes are also performed:

(*a*) The data bank input, i.e. the capture of names and additional information on data carriers (magnetic tape, punch cards) and the preparation of the data up to the provision of the data records for the data bank; and

(*b*) The production of the *Gazetteer*, i.e. the sorting of the data records in the alphabetical order of the names, writing of the numerically coded information in clear text. The printed output (planning, programming and computation) is done by the group of operators in the IfAG.

Data bank input

The Information System data bank stores the following data:

(*a*) The name of the feature, followed by (for names other than place names) the grammatical gender (m), (f), (n), (pl);

(*b*) A second name of the feature, or the name of a special superior administrative unit below the *Kreis* (district) level;

(*c*) The co-ordinates of the central point of the feature (Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates, geographical co-ordinates, and UTM co-ordinates);

(*d*) The Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates of the base line, necessary for placing the name on the map;

(*e*) The height of the feature above mean sea level;

(*f*) The dimensions of the feature (number of inhabitants, for towns and communes; lengths of rivers; surface areas of lakes and landscapes etc.);

(*g*) The feature's statistical key number, indicating its political affiliation to superior administrative units as the

[1] "A data bank system for geographical names", *Nachrichten aus dem Karten- und Vermessungswesen*, series I, No. 69.

level of *Land* (federal State), *Regierungsbezirk* or *Kreis* (district), town or commune;

(*h*) The hydrographic code number (for rivers, lakes and canals);

(*i*) Geographical and hydrographic code numbers;

(*j*) Feature codes, taken from the feature catalogue attached to the *Standard-Daten-Format für den Austausch kartographischer Daten* (Standard Data Format for the Exchange of Cartographic Data), which express the type and function of the feature by a four-digit number; and

(*k*) The number(s) of the official map sheet(s) on which the name is shown.

The input of data requires two steps:

(*a*) Capture of the data on data carriers (e.g. magnetic tape or punch card); and

(*b*) Preparation of the captured data in order to supply the complete data records in a Data File of Geographical Names which are transferred over into the data bank system.

Data capture

The most time-consuming factor in establishing the Information System is the data capture, i.e. the transfer of the data compiled from different sources to the data carrier. Therefore we strove from the very beginning to avoid the repeated input of information, to take over the data already captured elsewhere and to allow the least possible number of intersteps (as, e.g., the preparation of separated capture documents). For this reason, we have developed and tested a procedure by means of which the co-ordinates of the central point and the base line of each feature are measured at the digitizer, the names and all additional information being entered on the keyboard of the digitizer, so that all data are stored together on magnetic tape in a single data record.

Data capture at the digitizer

The digitizer used, the Bendix-Aristogrid off-line digitizer, consists of a table with a movable cursor on it, both being coupled to a control unit with operation field and output installations. The co-ordinates of the cursor with reference to a starting point, the table co-ordinates, are continuously stored electronically. In the same way the input data—name, height, key numbers, feature codes and so on—can be stored. After pressing a record key, all stored values and, in addition, a preset header are output on magnetic tape or on punch tapes and lists.

For reasons of intelligibility and accuracy, the table co-ordinates of the central points and base lines of the features on 1:200,000 maps are measured at the digitizer. Therefore, a preparatory working group must mark all named features to be captured, as shown on the 1:500,000 map, on the corresponding map sheets of the General Topographic Map at scale 1:200,000 before they are captured at the digitizer. This group must also assemble the documents showing the additional information.

At the digitizer, data records of the following kind are input one after another and "written" on the magnetic tape:

Header 1111: Label. Input of number and scale of map sheet, number of magnetic tape, names of map sheet and operator;

Header 2222–Header 7777: Sheet corner record. Clockwise measurement of the table co-ordinates of the corners of the inner map margin, starting at the left bottom;

Header 0000: Feature data record. Measurement of the table co-ordinates of the central point and base line of the feature and ensuing input of name, feature code, height, statistical key number and number of inhabitants or code number with indication of length or surface area (erroneous fields or records can be repeated before being output on the tape, by input of an error sign. Umlauts and ß have to be labelled by placing a "+" in front of the basic vowel, small letters at the beginning of a word being labelled by several interspaces in front of the word);

Header 7777: Terminal sheet corner record. Additional sheet corner records are to be inserted after the last feature data record, in case of interruption of the capture of feature data records, and above all in case of vibration of the measuring instrument;

Header 8888: Terminal section record. The data of a new capture section (map sheet) can subsequently be stored on the same magnetic tape, starting again with header 1111;

Header 9999: Terminal tape record. The magnetic tape is also concluded with the capture section, and can be transferred to the computer for editing.

Data capture via punch cards or display terminal

Data capture by digitizer is particularly suitable when a great number of features with central point and base line co-ordinates have to be captured. We plan the input in punch card format for corrections and supplements of features already captured—additional feature codes, new statistical key numbers and officially determined central point co-ordinates in the national system (in the case of newly created communes and for the addition of features that are not yet captured but the co-ordinates of which have been determined elsewhere). The data can be punched in the prescribed format in cards and input into a data file, or in the same format be input into this data file from a display terminal. The different input modes to be applied (modes 1 to 3) are conditioned by the effects of the modifications on other fields within the data record or also on other data records (e.g. modification of map sheet numbers when the feature co-ordinates are modified, or modification of the sorting field when names are changed).

Mode 4 is applied in case of a new capture of features with all additional information.

When the input is made via punch cards or terminal, only Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates, geographical co-ordinates, or UTM co-ordinates must be input as feature co-ordinates, but no table co-ordinates.

Data editing for the input into the data bank of the information system

Editing of the data captured at the digitizer on magnetic tape

At the digitizer, data records with 1536 characters each in the EBCDIC code are written on tape. The data records of a tape are stored on magnetic disc for processing on the TR 440 computer, by translation into the central code ZC1 of the TR 440 and reduction to 359 characters in a data file with random access.

These data are edited for transfer to the data file in a programme system called GEONAM, the run of which can be controlled in interactive mode from the Institute's data remote processing station; the run can be interrupted in case of gross errors, and continued after correction of small errors.

In detail, the following operations are executed:

(*a*) Processing of name strings by insertion of the central code data for umlauts, small letters and ß, recording of the length of strings and position of umlauts, establishing of a sorting field for alphabetizing the data records;

(*b*) Presentation of a test drawing at the plotter of the computation centre. This drawing shows the features and names by means of the measured table co-ordinates of the central points and base lines of the features. By comparison with the original maps, one can find out if features have been forgotten or if names and features do not match;

(*c*) Output of lists of the captured data in order to check the data (names, key numbers, heights, feature codes) input via keyboard;

(*d*) Determination of sheet corner co-ordinates by means of the number of the measured map sheet and computation of the elements of a conformal or affine transformation of the table co-ordinates into the Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates of the national system, using the sheet corners as control points;

(*e*) Transformation of all table co-ordinates of central points and base lines of features into Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates, transformation of Gauß-Krüger co-ordinates into geographical co-ordinates, and transformation of geographical co-ordinates into UTM co-ordinates;

(*f*) Determination, by means of its geographical co-ordinates, of the numbers of map sheets from the 1:25,000 Topographic Map series to the IMW 1:1,000,000 map on which the feature is shown; and

(*g*) Assignment of commune name to parts of populated places by means of the statistical key number.

The data, edited in this way, are included in the data file of geographical names for transfer to the data bank of the Information System.

Errors in data can be corrected as follows:

(*a*) By repeating the capture at the digitizer and the ensuing run of the above programme; or

(*b*) By input via punch cards or terminal according to one of the four input modes.

Editing of data not captured at the digitizer

After the first capture, as well as at a later date, the data stored in the data file of geographical names can be modified or corrected and supplemented. A programme system for the manipulation of feature data of the gazetteer (GNOM), going back to those parts of the programme that are also used for editing the data captured at the digitizer, affects such different operations (depending on the input mode in question) as, for example, the processing of the name string (capitals and small letters, umlauts, sorting field); transformation of the input Gauß-Krüger, geographical or UTM co-ordinates into the two other co-ordinate systems; and determination of map sheet numbers by means of geographical co-ordinates. The feature data captured at the digitizer, as well as those input via punch cards or at the terminal, are available at the end of editing in the data file of geographical names for the transfer to the data bank of the Information System. In this data file, a record number is definitely assigned to each feature, enabling random access to the data record in question.

Data output for the printing of the Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany

For the Information System, the essential data of features—their kind and function and their administrative and geographical areas—have been coded numerically. The data records are numbered and stored in the sequence of their capture. The *Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany* will list the geographical names in alphabetical order, as well as feature codes and administrative or geographical area in clear text. This requires, besides a sorting process, a considerable expenditure in storage capacity and computation work.

The alphabetical sorting of the data records is performed by means of the sorting operator of the computer TR 440. The sorting field, which comprises 32 characters, is established during the processing of the name strings after their capture.

As the information on the length of name strings, positions of umlauts, sorting field and so on is also stored in the geographical names data file during the editing of data, only the output of names is required in order to print the *Gazetteer*. As the data can also be reconstructed from the edited name strings at any time, they are not taken over into the data bank of the Information System, in order to save storage capacity. For the time being, therefore, only the Information System data file is used for the preparation of the *Gazetteer*; the use of the information system is restricted at present to such cartographic applications as, for example, the above-mentioned preparation of map lettering.

The further processing of the sorted data records is done by means of the GEODRUCK programme system, which includes, among others, the following individual operations:

(*a*) Insertion of mnemotechnical abbreviations of feature codes;

(*b*) Classification of the statistical key numbers by *Land* (Federal State), *Regierungsbezirk*, *Kreis* (district), town or commune;

(*c*) Classification of the code for geographical features according to the control number of the structure of natural regions and/or hydrographic codes; and

(*d*) Classification of the hydrographic codes according to the receiving hydrography concerned (Rhine, Main, Nidda, Wetter).

In order to provide the correct spellings for the character sequences corresponding to the key numbers, as well as that for the names themselves, the names also had to be processed by capitals, small letters and umlauts and to be stored in such a way that quick and unequivocal access is possible by means of the key numbers.

At present, the *Gazetteer of the Federal Republic of Germany* is being output on a high-speed printer, equipped for spelling with capitals and small letters, installed in the computation centre of the Gesellschaft für Mathematik und Datenverarbeitung. Before being printed, the text pages must still be reduced.

In the meantime, tests have been performed to bypass the high-speed printer by writing directly on microfilm and then enlarging the images for reproduction. For the future, it is also planned to use an automatically controlled phototypesetting installation.

APPLICATION OF ELECTRONIC DATA PROCESSING (EDP) TO GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by the German Democratic Republic*

In the German Democratic Republic the use of electronic data processing (EDP) to edit, store and process geographical names has been studied for cartographic purposes. The method developed in the German Democratic Republic for the automated processing of map names includes manual collection and storage as well as automated processing of map names as to content and design, and their graphic reproduction (as proper names, common nouns, abbreviations, letter and number characteristics and so on). By means of a digitizer, the map names are collected manually according to their wording, their plan-position co-ordinates and the parameters required for their processing (according to content and design) and for their graphic reproduction. These information items must allow for (among other processes) the retrieval and updating of the map names; their systematization according to various attributes; the selection and determination of the font parameters of map names for automated graphic reproduction; and changes in the position and the graphic design of the map names according to given rules. For this purpose, every map name is stored in its wording with the relevant parameter part as an independent data set of constant length and structure.

The wording of map names is stored in its clear text. On the basis of previous experience, a sufficient storage capacity is provided for this purpose, which is used differently in accordance with the length of names and filled up with stipulated space characters.

The parameter part has a constant length and contains, in alpha-numeric coding, all data required for the processing of map names as to contents and design and for their graphic reproduction. These data include:

(*a*) Placement co-ordinates for defined points of map names (in most cases for the south-western corner of the rectangle circumscribing the map name, sometimes also its total length), either in the co-ordinate system of the map to be prepared or in an arbitrary co-ordinate system. These co-ordinates are supplemented by coded data concerning the position of the map names in relation to the relevant object. Both elements form the basis for determining or more precisely indicating the position of the map name for graphic reproduction;

(*b*) Data concerning the type and qualitative-quantitative properties (size, importance, rank, administrative affiliation etc.) of the objects described by the map names, as the basis for the automated selection of the map names as well as for the determination and assignment of font parameters according to the rules governing characters;

(*c*) Code numbers or indications of measures for the font parameters (type, colour, height and width, spacing, inclination of font etc.) as the basis for the automated graphic reproduction of map names.

These data sets are supplemented by computer-dependent, computer-oriented specifications and instructions (e.g. markings indicating the beginning of the data set or the end of the punch tape).

From these basic data, and by means of the above-mentioned requirements of relevant computing programmes, the control programmes for automated photocomposition are determined on office digital computers. During this process, the map names to be represented are selected, calculated in their placement co-ordinates by conversion to scale and by exact definition (according to the most suitable position in relation to the described object) and fixed as to their font parameters (according to the particulars wanted). In this connexion, further processes may be automated, e.g. the listing of names and objects by a corresponding systematization of the relevant map names.

By running this control programme in the automatic photocomposer, the map-name original is produced, which, after checking and possible completion by the cartographer, meets all the main requirements.

So far, the testing and application of the automated

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Dr. Bauer, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.49.

processing of map names have proved their basic suitability, and shown the following advantages:

(*a*) Applicability to both the new production and the updating of maps;

(*b*) High editing reliability and graphic quality; and

(*c*) Considerably reduced time in comparison with the previous manual processing of map names.

It is advisable to connect the generation of a memory for geographic names with the construction of a memory for map names, so that the necessary investments will pay off more quickly and so that several institutions may use these units.

Mainly, two groups of users are covered: producers of maps, and producers of names registers, indexes and registers of objects. Therefore, the placed as well as the non-placed output of geographic names should be regarded, from the very beginning, as a basic condition of the technology of the automated use of the map name memory.

Similarly, there are special requirements concerning the selection of the geographic names.

The following conditions for the output of geographical names follow from these aspects, especially for the indexing to be discussed here:

(*a*) Punch tapes for controlling photocomposers for non-placed photocomposition;

(*b*) Punch tapes as input media for the users' own sorting programmes;

(*c*) Lists containing the total sets or subsets of the contents of the memory of map names.

The production of registers on the basis of the storage of map names requires the sorting of the selected geographic names, but it is advisable to separate the necessary sorting programmes from the selection and output programmes. For the latter, therefore an output of the selected geographical names should be provided, in the code of the EDP equipment used, that can be used as input of the sorting programmes.

AUTOMATED DATA PROCESSING
Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

L'Institut géographique a préparé une carte porteuse de marques destinée à être utilisée comme entrée dans un calculateur électronique aux fins du traitement automatique des données recueillies, ce qui a beaucoup facilité le traitement des données.

Resumen

El Instituto de Estudios Geográficos ha preparado una ficha perforada para su uso en una calculadora electrónica para la elaboración automática de los datos recopilados, que ha facilitado en gran manera los trabajos de elaboración de datos.

*

* *

The Geographical Survey Institute, Ministry of Construction, prepared a mark card (see Form 1 in annex) for input into an electronic computer, and the geographical names indicated on the 1:25,000-scale topographic maps of the entire area of Sizuoka Ken are recorded on these mark cards.

Because this system was still on an experimental basis and because no concrete method has been finalized for the processing of Kanzi characters, which are indispensable for the indication of Japanese geographical names, the input of Kanzi characters was not taken into consideration. Instead, the readings are inputted in the form of Hiragana characters.

The information recorded on the mark card includes, among other data, the pronunciation of the name of a given place; its kind; the name of *si, mati* or *mura* (with location indicated by latitude and longitude); the number of the area, sectioned by 30-second intervals of latitude and 45-second intervals of longitude (this area is known as a "standard area mesh"); the name of the topographic map; the year of preparation of the topographic map; survey data; and the date of preparation of the card. Of these pieces of information, those which may be inputted into the electronic computer are the pronunciation, kind, name of *si, mati* or *mura*, standard area mesh, year of preparation of the topographic map, survey data and date of preparation of the card.

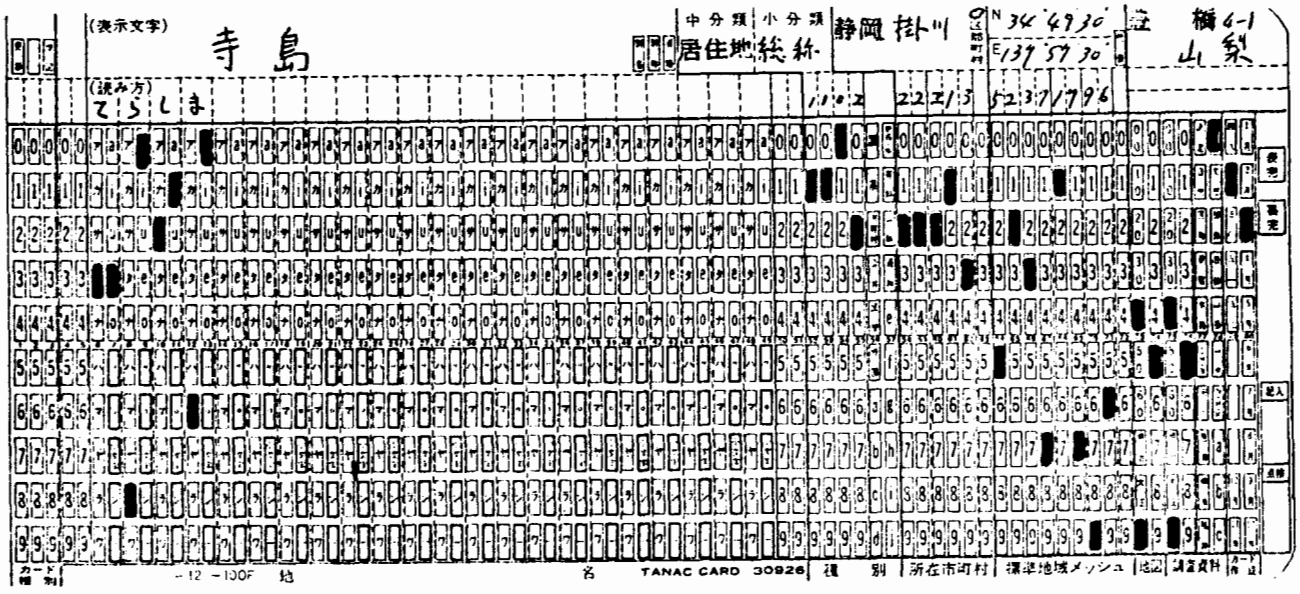
Form 2 (see annex), a slight modification of the Form 1 mark card, is used in recording geographical names by kind.

This work was carried out when a wide variety of information was being converted into data that could be inputted into the computer, and mark cards were prepared at that time for mountains (15,732), lakes (11,584) and islands (5,281).

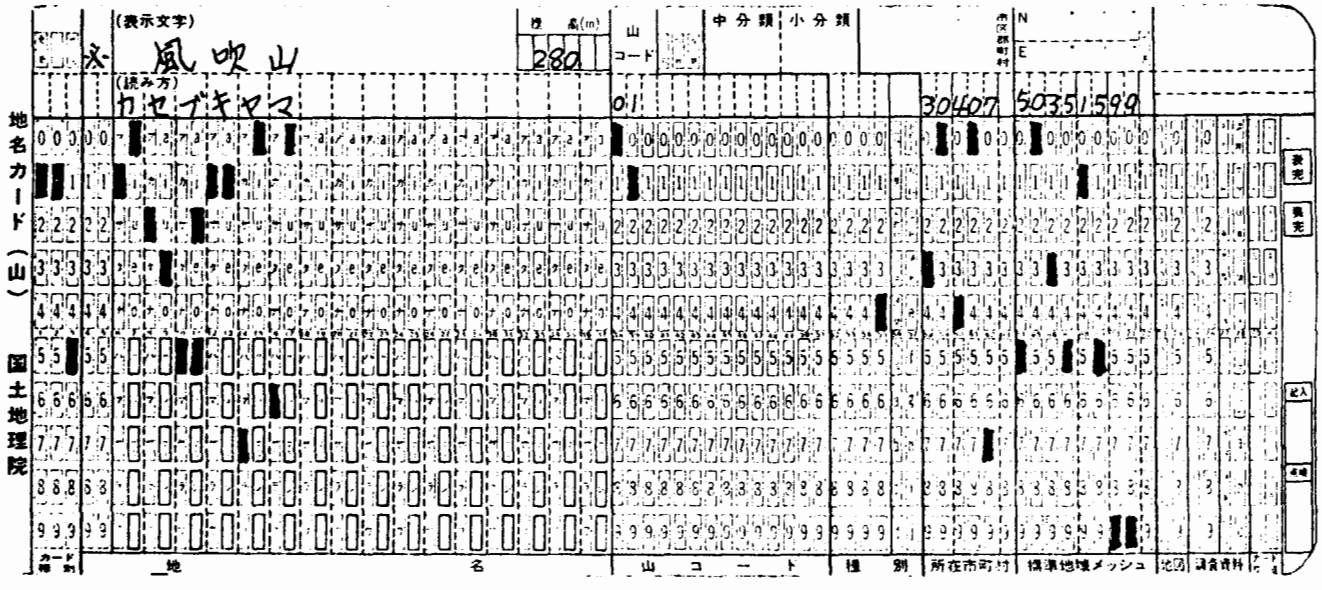
On the basis of the results of this work, an attempt was made to study Kanzi printers, necessary for writing in Kanzi characters as well as codes and symbols. At the same time, a study is under way on the merits and disadvantages of input of standard area meshes, latitudes and longitudes.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.57.

Form 1


(表示文字)
寺島
(読み方)
てらしま
中分類
居住地
小分類
総称
静岡 掛川
N 34 49 30
E 138 57 30
立 橋 6-1
山梨
TANAC CARD 30926
種別
所在市町村
標準地域メッシュ
地図
調査資料

Form 2


地名カード（山）
国土地理院
(表示文字)
風吹山
(読み方)
カゼブキヤマ
標高(m)
280
山コード
01
中分類
小分類
30407
5035 1599
地名
山コード
種別
所在市町村
標準地域メッシュ
地図
調査資料

LE SYSTÈME *LAKHDAR* DE COMPOSITION ARABE STANDARD ET LA NOMENCLATURE ASV-CODAR*

Rapport présenté par le Maroc

A. Le système *Lakhdar* de composition standard

Le système *Lakhdar* est un ensemble de signes destinés à la fabrication de caractères typographiques, de matrices ou de types à l'usage de tous moyens de composition de textes et, en particulier, ceux de l'imprimerie : typographie manuelle, composition mécanique à chaud et à froid.

Reproduisant l'alphabet arabe total (voyelles incluses) sans modification majeure de l'esthétique calligraphique habituelle et par un nombre limité de caractères, le système, qui comprend, outre les lettres et les signes de voyelles, les chiffres et la ponctuation, permet de constituer des polices standards dans les normes mêmes du caractère latin, donc adaptables aux procédés et aux machines conçus sur ces normes.

B. La nomenclature ASV-CODAR

ASV	Arabe standard voyellé. Police ou jeu de caractères arabes permettant la composition de textes voyellés, non voyellés ou partiellement voyellés.
CODAR	Code arabe. Codage binaire de sous-ensembles de caractères formés à partir du système ASV et permettant son introduction dans l'informatique et la transmission de données.
ASV-CODAR	Système composé par l'ensemble ASV et par les codages binaires de ses sous-ensembles définis selon des critères de priorité linguistique (niveaux de concision).

Description

Le système ASV-CODAR est un ensemble de caractères destinés à composer et à transmettre des textes en langue arabe, selon les procédés et les techniques existants dans les domaines de l'imprimerie, de la dactylographie, de l'informatique, de la transmission de données et des télécommunications.

Le nombre total des caractères composant le système (107 signes comprenant les lettres arabes, les voyelles, les chiffres et les signes de ponctuation) ne dépasse pas les normes des jeux de caractères des alphabets internationaux normalisés. Comme ces derniers, le jeu total des caractères est réductible jusqu'à un niveau de concision minimal selon les contraintes imposées par le matériel.

Normes numériques des alphabets internationaux : de 110 à 32 signes;

Normes numériques de l'ASV-CODAR : de 107 à 32 signes.

Une lettre, une forme, un caractère

Les caractères ASV répondent aux normes graphiques internationales imposées par les techniques existantes : alignement sur la ligne d'écriture, normalisation des largeurs et des hauteurs des signes, juxtaposition linéaire stricte. Le respect de ces impératifs graphiques a permis de réaliser l'unicité des formes de lettres et donc de réduire le nombre de caractères de composition de textes arabes aux normes numériques internationales.

Les caractères alphabétiques de l'ASV sont réalisables dans tous les styles de l'écriture arabe traditionnelle (*naskhi, coufigue, roqa*, etc.) et se plient aux contraintes, graphiques de techniques spéciales telles que la visualisation sur écran cathodique.

Alphabet latin et alphabet arabe compatibles

Pour l'informatique et la transmission de données, l'ensemble ASV s'articule en sous-ensembles imbriqués comportant des codages binaires compatibles avec les codages des alphabets internationaux en caractères latins.

---

* Le texte original complet de ce rapport a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.92 et peut être obtenu, sur demande, à l'Institut d'études et de recherches pour l'arabisation, B.P. 430, Rabat, Maroc.

Un autre rapport, présenté également par le Maroc, intitulé "Lexique de cartographie français-arabe", paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.91 et qui n'est pas reproduit dans la présente publication, peut être obtenu, sur demande, à la Direction de la conservation foncière et des travaux topographiques, Ministère de l'agriculture et de la réforme agraire, Rabat, Maroc.

AGENDA ITEM 12—POINT 12 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR—TEMA 12 DEL PROGRAMA

LES ASPECTS PRATIQUES DE LA DÉFINITION DU "NOM GÉOGRAPHIQUE"
Rapport présenté par le Canada*

Summary

A geographical name comprises two elements, one generic, the other specific. An appellative is a geographical name containing a generic element with a specific function. The generic term and the generic feature are usually rendered by the same word. In gazetteers, geographical names and descriptions of geographical entities should appear in separate columns. The first element in the specific term should be used to determine alphabetical order. In this regard, the Québec Geographical Commission follows the recommendations of the United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names. Standardizing the meaning of generic terms within specific linguistic areas is of prime importance. Considerable care should be taken in standardizing generic terms so as to take account of variations in usage resulting from linguistic development and cultural dispersion.

Resumen

Un nombre geográfico contiene elementos tanto genéricos como específicos. Un apelativo es un nombre geográfico que comprende un elemento genérico con una función específica. Por lo común, una misma palabra expresa al término genérico y al ente. En los nomenclátores geográficos los nombres geográficos y la descripción del accidente deberían figurar en distintas columnas. La primera parte del término específico debe determinar el orden alfabético. A este respecto, la Comisión Geográfica de Quebec sigue las recomendaciones de las conferencias de las Naciones Unidas sobre la normalización de nombres geográficos. Es esencial la normalización del significado de la terminología genérica dentro de zonas lingüísticas seleccionadas. La normalización de los términos genéricos debe hacerse con mucho cuidado para respetar los usos divergentes debidos a la evolución lingüística y la dispersión cultural.

*

* *

Traditionnellement, le "nom géographique" (toponyme ou choronyme) est défini comme "un nom propre de lieu". Cette définition est insuffisante pour délimiter, dans la chaîne parlée ou écrite, où commence et où finit le nom géographique. Cette question n'a pas qu'un intérêt théorique puisque d'elle dépendent plusieurs opérations liées à la normalisation des noms géographiques telles que le classement alphabétique des noms, l'usage des particules, le format de présentation des répertoires et l'application des règles de traduction des éléments des noms géographiques.

La définition du nom géographique pose des difficultés logiques au point de vue grammatical. D'abord, on dit que le toponyme est un "nom propre de lieu". Un nom propre est reconnu comme celui qui ne s'applique qu'à un être, qu'à une chose. Or, il existe un grand nombre de *Paris* et autant de *London*. Des linguistes contournent cette difficulté en considérant ces séries comme des homonymes.

En fait, pour désigner un lieu unique, on utilise soit un seul mot qui peut être un nom commun ou un nom propre (*LeCap, Moskva*), soit une expression composée d'un nom commun et d'un nom propre (le *lac d'Annecy*), ou encore d'un nom commun et d'un autre élément grammatical commun qui peut être un nom, un adjectif ou autre (le *Mont-Blanc*).

Autrement, dit, lorsqu'on dit que le toponyme est un nom propre de lieu, on ne traduit pas vraiment la réalité du nom géographique. Par ailleurs, on simplifie à l'excès lorsqu'on dit qu'un nom géographique est composé d'un nom commun et d'un nom propre. Le nom géographique, en principe, est composé d'un élément générique, le plus souvent un nom commun (*lac, rivière...*), et d'un élément spécifique, qui peut être un nom propre mais pas nécessairement (*Laval, Rouge...*). Certains auteurs, dont quelques grands toponymistes de l'école française, considèrent que seul l'élément spécifique constitue le toponyme, alors que, pour d'autres, l'élément générique est synonyme de l' "appellatif"[1] ou l'"entité". Nous considérons que ces confusions peuvent être nocives pour les fins de la normalisation.

D'abord, le nom géographique contient toujours un élément qui joue un rôle "spécifique" de désignation ou d'identification : c'est l'élément spécifique, même s'il est constitué d'un mot qui, dans la langue courante, est un terme générique (exemple : *Iles*, dans le toponyme *lac des*

* Le texte original de ce rapport, préparé par Henri Dorion, professeur de géographie à l'Université Laval, Canada, et directeur du groupe d'étude de choronymie et de terminologie géographique, a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.30.

[1] Voir *Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. 2, *Travaux de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.69.I.8), p. 125.

Iles). Par ailleurs, le toponyme comprend le plus souvent un "élément générique" qui a la fonction de catégoriser le lieu nommé; c'est un nom commun qui peut avoir retenu ou non son sens originel.

L'"entité" (*feature*) est le mot qui définit le genre d'accident géographique ou d'espace. Ce mot ne fait pas partie du toponyme, bien que le terme générique de celui-ci peut être le même mot que l'entité: le *lac Côté* (toponyme où "lac" est le terme générique et "Côté" le terme spécifique) constitue le nom d'un "lac" donné (entité).

Tel n'est pas le cas du *Cap Nord* (générique et spécifique) qui est une île (entité). Il peut donc arriver que le terme générique ne caractérise pas exactement le lieu nommé. La différence entre le terme générique et l'entité peut d'ailleurs tenir, non pas d'une mauvaise description ou identification géographique, mais d'une simple question dialectale. Ainsi, dans *Plée de Saint-Charles*, le terme "plée" n'est pas reconnu comme un terme générique courant, et le répertoire notera comme entité le terme *marais* (voir l'annexe). On comprend dès lors l'importance de la recommandation plus d'une fois formulée à ces conférences d'indiquer clairement les "entités" dans les répertoires de noms géographiques, préférablement dans des colonnes à part.

Cette nécessité est d'autant plus grande qu'il existe des toponymes dépourvus de terme générique: *Athènes* (entité: ville), comme il existe d'ailleurs des noms géographiques formés d'un seul élément, de nature générique mais à fonction spécifique; c'est ce qu'on appelle proprement des "appellatifs": *Le Brûlé* est un toponyme formé d'un simple terme générique; comme il s'agit d'un brûlé en particulier, le mot a une fonction spécifique (en d'autres termes, *Le Brûlé* est un nom propre). Encore là, appellatifs et entités peuvent différer. C'est le cas de l'exemple que l'on vient de donner: *Le Brûlé* est en fait le nom d'un marais (entité). Mais il arrive souvent qu'une île n'ait pas d'autre nom que l'*Ile*, l'*Ilet* ou l'*Ilette*.

Il résulte de ces considérations que, tant pour des raisons logiques que pour des raisons pratiques, le nom géographique (toponyme ou choronyme) est composé autant de l'élément générique, lorsqu'il existe, que de l'élément spécifique, même si celui-ci est grammaticalement un nom générique. Un peu à la manière des noms de personnes, composés de prénom, nom et quelquefois patronyme, les noms géographiques sont le plus souvent des expressions dont aucun des éléments constitutifs ne doit être rejeté.

Il y a des exceptions, cependant, dont seuls les usages particuliers à chaque langue peuvent rendre compte. Par exemple, en langue française, les hydronymes, et tout particulièrement les potamonymes (noms de rivières), s'emploient sans terme générique (*la Seine*, *le Danube*); par ailleurs, si l'élément générique est un substantif précédé d'une particule ou d'un adjectif (*Rivière aux Outardes, Lac Jaune*), on conservera le terme générique dans la forme parlée comme dans la forme écrite, y compris les répertoires.

Des questions de détails s'ajoutent au principe énoncé. Par exemple, l'article qui précède le terme générique doit-il être inclus dans le toponyme? Là-dessus les solutions varient de langue à langue et de pays à pays.

Reliée à ce problème est la question de l'ordonnancement alphabétique. Cela, de la manière suivante: le principe de classification alphabétique veut que l'on ordonne les noms géographiques par le terme spécifique. Il faut dire que pour bien des langues, comme pour l'anglais en général, ce principe n'a pas de large application puisqu 'en général, l'élément spécifique précède l'élément générique. Ce n'est pas le cas du français, par exemple, où pour respecter le principe du classement il faut intervertir les éléments, donc choisir un endroit de coupure entre le générique et le spécifique. En général, on ordonne les noms par le premier élément "signifiant" de la partie spécifique : *Ile de la Commune de Berthier* sera classé alphabétiquement selon l'inversion: *Commune de Berthier, Ile de la* (voir l'annexe). En anglais, on utilise une virgule pour signifier l'inversion : dans les répertoires, *Mitchell Lake* et *Mitchell, Mount* correspondent aux formes courantes: *Mitchell Lake* et *Mount Mitchell.*

Ce ne sont là que quelques exemples pour illustrer des principes très généraux. On pourrait les multiplier, surtout si l'on élaborait dans plus de détails les règles appliquées par les différentes autorités toponymiques quant à l'écriture, au classement, aux techniques d'inversion des éléments toponymiques, à l'emploi des particules, etc.

Nous croyons que le rappel des quelques précisions élémentaires que nous venons de donner relativement à la définition du "nom géographique" et de quelques termes reliés à la toponymie[2] permet d'appliquer plus facilement certaines des recommandations des Conférences sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, notamment quant au format de présentation des répertoires géographiques. Rappelons, en conclusion, certains points en conformité avec ces recommandations.

1. Un nom géographique comprend en principe à la fois un élément générique et un élément spécifique;
2. Il ne faut pas confondre "terme générique" et "appellatif" qui est un nom géographique composé d'un élément générique à qui l'usage a donné une fonction spécifique;
3. Il ne faut pas confondre "terme générique" et "entité", même si, dans un grand nombre de noms géographiques, les deux sont exprimés par un même mot;
4. Dans les répertoires, il faut dégager en colonnes distinctes les noms géographiques et les entités qu'ils désignent;
5. La classification alphabétique des noms géographiques se fait d'après le premier terme "signifiant" de la partie spécifique du nom géographique (au Québec, l'autorité toponymique a entrepris la révision de son répertoire pour répondre au vœu des recommandations des Conférences des Nations Unies à cet égard);

[2] Ces définitions et environ 400 autres ont été consignées dans un ouvrage d'Henri Dorion et Jean Poirier, *Lexique des termes utiles à l'étude des noms de lieux*, Québec, Presses de l'Université Laval, 1974.

6. La normalisation des termes géographiques vers l'unification de sens de ces termes à l'intérieur d'aires linguistiques données devrait toucher essentiellement les mots utilisés comme entités;

7. La normalisation des termes génériques à proprement parler devrait être faite avec beaucoup de prudence pour respecter les usages souvent divergents que l'évolution linguistique et la fragmentation ont engendrés.

Annexe

Nom	*Entité*	*Localisation*	*Position*		*Carte*
Aananiàvik, Pointe	*Pointe*	*Territoire du* Nouveau-Québec	58 35	70 02	24 L/09E
Adolphe, Ruisseau des	*Ruisseau*	*Comté de* Matane, *Canton de* Romieu	48 59	66 39	22 B/15E
Brûlé, Le	*Marais*	*Comté de* Brome, *Canton de* Potton	45 03	72 20	31 H/01W
Commune de Berthier, Ile de la	*Ile*	*Comté de* Berthier	46 04	73 11	31 N/11E
Corris	*Lieu-dit*	*Comté de* Richmond, *Canton de* Cleveland	45 37	72 05	31 H/09E
Côté, Lac	*Lac*	*Comtés de* Gaspé-Ouest *et de* Matane *Cantons de* Courcelette *et de* Faribault	47 35	66 32	22 B/15
Grande Coupe, La	*Escarpement*	*Voir* Muraille, La	48 32	64 14	22 A/09E
Grande Décharge, La	*Ruisseau*	*Voir* Saint-Antoine, Ruisseau	46 02	72 53	31 I/02E
Havre, Ile du	*Ile*	*Voir* Portneuf, Barre de	48 37	69 05	22 C/11E
Le Fer-à-Cheval	*Lieu-dit*	*Comté de* Chicoutimi, *Canton de* Bagot	48 19	70 57	22 D/07W
Loutre, Petite rivière de la	*Rivière*	*Comté de* Saguenay	49 05	62 00	12 F/04E
Martineau, Chutes à	*Chutes*	*Voir* Vieux Moulin, Chutes du	47 02	71 19	21 M/03W
Mercouiller, Crique	*Ruisseau*	*Comté de* Champlain, *Canton de* Radnor	46 42	72 44	31 I/10E
Merville, Lac	*Lac*	*Territoire du* Nouveau-Québec	55 09	74 30	23 P/02W
Milieu, Branche du	*Ruisseau*	*Comté de* Yamaska	45 26	73 10	31 H/06E
Pain de Sucre, Le	*Colline*	*Comté de* Joliette	46 16	73 33	31 I/05E
Roland-Lemire, Ruisseau	*Ruisseau*	*Comté de* Yamaska	46 06	72 42	31 I/02E
Roselets, Les	*Rochers*	*Comté de* Saguenay	49 48	64 20	22 H/16W
Saint-Charles, Plée de	*Marais*	*Comtés de* Lévis *et de* Bellechasse	49 13	63 00	21 L/14
Saint-Joseph-de-la-Rivière-Bleue	*Village*	*Voir* Rivière-Bleue *(Municipalité)*	47 26	69 03	21 N/06
Saint-Laurent-du-Fleuve	*Localité*	*Comté de* Verchères	45 56	73 12	31 H/14
Zénophile-Larose, Ruisseau	*Ruisseau*	*Comté de* Yamaska	45 56	72 30	31 H/15E

JAPANESE GEOGRAPHICAL TERMINOLOGY
Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

Il n'existe pas d'ouvrage complet de terminologie géographique japonaise. L'Institut géographique japonais a donné la définition de quelques termes géographiques indispensables pour l'établissement de la carte des noms géographiques de régions naturelles.

Resumen

No existe una colección completa, en forma de libro, de los términos geográficos japoneses. El Instituto de Estudios Geográficos elaboró definiciones de algunos términos geográficos esenciales al preparar el Mapa de Nombres Geográficos de Regiones Naturales.

No comprehensive collection of Japanese geographical terms is available. However, when the naming of natural regions was undertaken in 1954, definitions were given for individual geographical terms (see the paper entitled "Standardization of geographical names in Japan", under agenda item 8 of the present publication).

The topographical terms associated with the seas are generally based on those defined under the intra-office regulations of the Hydrographic Department. They are in conformity with those defined in the Hydrographic Dictionary published by the International Hydrographic Bureau (IHB). The topographical terms associated with the sea bottom are used on the basis of the definitions for use on GEBCO, fifth edition, adopted by the GEBCO Sub-Committee on Geographical Names and Nomenclature of Ocean Bottom Features.

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.58.

TECHNICAL TERMINOLOGY EMPLOYED IN THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by China*

The following technical terminology employed in the standardization of geographical names was prepared by the China Division of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names:

语言，语文／*language*

人们用语音表达意思、互相交际的工具。“语言”一般包括它的书面形式。但在与“文字”并举时只指口语。

口语／*speech*

口头交际使用的语言，就是说的话。

语言区／*linguistic community*

其中的人使用某一种方言、某一种语言或某一种文字系统，彼此容易相互了解。

口语区／*speech community*

其中的人说某一种方言或某一种语言，彼此容易相互了解。

官方的／*official*

法定机构正式认可的。

官方语言／*official language*

在某一法定区域内具有官方地位的语言。

非官方的／*non-official*

未经法定机构正式认可的。

非官方语言／*non-official language*

在某一法定区域内不具有官方地位的语言。

国语／*national language*

在全国范围内具有官方地位的语言。

---

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.63.

/...

地区语／*state language*

在一个国家的部分地区内具有官方地位的语言，在全国范围内并不具有这种地位。

标准语／*standard language*

符合法定条件或公认条件的语言，包括口语及其书面形式。

方言／*dialect*

方言是语言在地理上的分支，有语音、词汇、语法特点。

文语／*literary language*

在正式场合使用的语言，包括口语及其书面形式。

俗语／*colloquial language*

在非正式场合使用的语言，包括口语及其书面形式。俗语和当地的标准语或文语有相当差别（假如该地区有标准语或文语）。

主体语言／*principal language*

使用多种语言的地区里最通行的语言。

交际语／*vehicular language*

不同语言区的成员之间交际时使用的语言。

混杂语／*pidgin*

本地人和外国人都没有学会对方语言时使用的一种混杂的语言。根据本地话的语法，运用外来语的词汇，并在语音上加以简化，使之接近本地音。这种语言使用范围有限，只作为辅助语使用，并且稳定性不高。

混合语／*creole*

从混杂语来的稳定的语言，是某一地区的唯一语言或主体语言。

多语种注记／*multilingual lettering*

同一幅地图上的各个国家的地名依据各国自己认可的法定拼法来注记。

语音／*sound*

语言的声音，就是人说话的声音。

音位／*phoneme*

一个语言中能够区别意义的最小的语音单位（包括能区别意义的声调、轻重、长短等）。

音值／*allophone*

有的音位有几个读法。同一音位的几个读法之一叫音值。

词素／*morpheme*

语言中最小的有意义的单位叫词素。词素有特定的语音格式和语法功能。在汉语里，通常一个字就是一个词素。

词素变体／*allomorph*

有的词素有几个形式，这些形式语音结构不同。同一词素的几个形式之一叫词素变体。

虚词／*particle*

用来确定别的词素（或其他语言格式）的语法功能的词素。

冠词／*article*

用来标明别的词素（或其他语言格式）是有定还是无定的词素。

标音／*transcription*

1.用一种文字系统（或音标）来记录语言的语音成份。

2.这种记录的结果。

标音法／*transcription key*

一种对照表，列举某语言的语音成份，及其在一种文字系统（或音标）里的写法。

转写／*transliteration*

1.用一种文字系统的书写符号来表示其他文字系统的书写符号，如用罗马字母表示俄文字母。

2.这种处理的结果。

转写法／*transliteration key*

一种对照表，列举某语言书写符号及其如何改变为另一种书写符号。

转换／*conversion*

标音和转写的总称。

翻译／*Translation*

1.把一种语言文字的词句用另一种语言文字表达出来。

2.、这种过程的结果。

书写符号／*graphic symbol*

记录语言用的书写单位（就其个体而言），如个别的汉字与罗马

字母。

文字／*script*（法文本／*ecriture*）

记录语言的书写符号，就其整体而言，如汉字、罗马字母。

文字系统／*writing system, orthography*

（法文本／*systeme ecriture*）

指文字的各种系统，如拼音文字（如罗马字）、音节文字（如梵文和日本文的假名）、词素文字（如汉字）。

字母／*letter*

拼音文字最小的书写单位，特指罗马字母。

字母表／*alphabet*

一套特定的书写符号，可以用来表示一种语言的语音成份。

字母顺序／*alphabetical sequence*

字母表里字母或书写符号的顺序。

变音符号／*diacritical mark*

不自成单位的书写符号，本身不表示音位，附加在一个字母或字之上来表示语音的变化。

元音附点／*vowel point*

阿拉伯文或希伯来文里表示元音的符号。

罗马字化／*romanization*

用罗马字母记录语言的语音成份或转写非罗马字母的文字。

拼法／*spelling*

使用书写符号（多指拼音字母）表示词句的方式。

音节／*syllable*

一个或几个音位组成的语音单位。其中包含一个比较响亮的中心（往往是元音）。在汉语里，一般地说，一个汉字就是一个音节，一个音节写成一个汉字。

音节文字／*syllabary*

一种拼音文字，它的字母表示整个音节。例如梵文和日本文的假名。

二合字母／*digraph*

两个字母按一定的次序排列，用来表示语言中的一个语音成份。

三合字母／*trigraph*

三个字母按一定的次序排列，用来表示语言中的一个语音成份。

四合字母／*tetragraph*

四个字母按一定的次序排列，用来表示语言中的一个语音成份。

字／*character*

罗马字母以外的书写单位。

或体，或体字／*variant character*

一个文字系统里，音义相同而写法不同的字。

简体，简体字／*abbreviated character*

写法比较简单的或体。

文字规范化／*normalization*

1.制定文字写法的规范。

2.依照文字规范写字。

印刷格式／printing form

指印刷文本的尺寸、字体、行款等。

书写格式／format

指书写文本的尺寸、字体、行款等。

上下文／context

地形／topography

一个星体的表面形状或其一部分。

地形要素／topographic feature (24, "topographic entity")

任何星体表面可识别的部分。

地物／geographical feature (23, "geographical entity")

地球表面可识别的部分。

星体地物／extraterrestrial feature

地球以外任何星体表面景物。

人工地物／cultural feature

由人力造成或加以重大改变的地物。

自然地物／*natural feature* (3.0, "*physical feature*")

并非由人力造成或加以重大改变的地物。

海底地物／*undersea feature*

海洋之下的地球表面景物。

月球上地名／*lunar name*

月球表面可以识别的部分的名称。

名称／*name*

说的或写的语言单位，用来指某个事物。

通名／*generic term*

地名中表示该地名所指事物类别的字眼，这类字眼用于各种地名时有相同的意义。如“潮河、白河、子牙河”的“河”，“甘肃省、安徽省”的“省”。

通名部分／*generic element*

地名中由通名构成的部分，如“潮河、白河、子牙河”的“河”，“开封市、邯郸市”的“市”。通名部分也可以包括“修饰语、冠词、虚词”，如“潮白新河”的“新河”（“新”修饰“河”），“中山南路”的“南路”（“南”修饰“路”）。

专名部分／*specific element*

地名中减去通名部分就是专名部分。如“甘肃省、安徽省”的“甘肃、安徽”。

地名／*geographical name* (*place name*; *toponym*)

地物的名称。

别名／*allonym*

用来指同一个地物的几个名称之一。

标准名／*standardized name*

法定机构认可的名称。

又名／*alternate*

适用于同一地物的几个标准名称之一。

非标准名／*variant name*

山岳名称／*oronym*

山地、山脉及山峰等的名称。

水文名称／*hydronym*

水文事物的名称。

居民点名称／*populated place name*

外来地名／*exonym*

某个语言里的某个地名，这个语言在当地并无官方地位，并且这个地名又和当地官方语言所用地名不同。

惯用的／*conventional*

通行习惯认可的。

惯用名称／*conventional name*

某一语言区里广泛使用的一种名称，其写法与当地官方写法不同。

专名学／*onomastics*

研究专名的科学。

地名学／*toponymy*

研究地名的科学。

地名录／*gazetteer*

所列地名有比较简单情况介绍的地名表。

地名索引／*gazetteer index* (39, "*place name index*"; *toponymic index*)

根据地图或正文中出现的地名编纂成的地名表。其所列条目有比较简单的情况介绍，读者凭此可找到该条目在地图里或正文中的出处。

术语／*designation* (92, "*designatory term*")

使用范围有明确规定的词。

定名者／*names authority*

在地名方面有决定权的个人或团体。

图上名称／*map name*

地图上某地物的名称，可能与文献上的名称、当地的名称不同。

图上说明性注记／*map information*

地图上地名以外表示地形特征的文字。

地理词典／*geographical dictionary*

收集地理方面的术语、名称，并加以解释的工具书。

词汇／*glossary*

收集某一范围的词语，并加以解释的工具书。

词典／*lexicon*

收集词语并加以解释的工具书。

字典／*logographic lexicon*

这里的字指汉字一类的词素文字，一般地说，每个字代表一个词素。

A GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMINOLOGY EMPLOYED IN THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by the Working Group on Definitions of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names*

Résumé

Ce glossaire a été établi aux fins des discussions et des exposés où il doit être traité de questions de toponymie. Il n'a pas de valeur normative, mais vise plutôt à fournir des indications dont on puisse s'inspirer pour s'exprimer avec plus de clarté et de précision.

Il est bien connu que le champ sémantique d'un terme peut varier d'une personne à l'autre et d'un groupe à l'autre. De même, la signification de mots de même origine a tendance à varier plus fortement encore d'une langue à l'autre. En outre, le champ sémantique des mots change souvent avec l'usage et avec le temps. Il n'est donc pas possible d'éviter les délimitations arbitraires, mais l'on s'est efforcé de les réduire au minimum.

Pour la plupart des entrées, des équivalences sont fournies en anglais, en français et en espagnol, et chaque terme est défini en français. Lorsque plusieurs synonymes sont mentionnés, ils le sont sans ordre de préférence.

Un index a été également établi pour aider les usagers à retrouver les termes qui les intéressent, sans introduire trop de renvois dans le glossaire proprement dit.

Resumen

Las definiciones de terminología que a continuación se presentan están destinadas al uso y discusión en el campo de la toponimia. Se presentan, no como reglas de uso obligatorio, sino más bien como pautas que pueden servir para hacer más clara y precisa la comunicación.

Es un hecho generalmente reconocido que el alcance semántico de un término dado puede variar de persona a persona y de comunidad a comunidad. También está reconocido que términos afines tienden a variar en mayor grado, por lo que a su significado se refiere, de un idioma a otro. Además, la extensión semántica de los términos cambia a veces con el uso y con el transcurso del tiempo. Aunque bajo tales circunstancias no es posible evitar del todo delineaciones arbitrarias, se ha realizado un serio esfuerzo para reducirlas al mínimo.

Cada definición va encabezada por la palabra española, seguida por sus equivalentes inglés y francés. Las definiciones se dan en español. En aquellos casos en que se indica sinonimia entre dos o más términos, no existe orden preferencial alguno.

Al final se incluye un índice de los términos ingleses y franceses, destinado a facilitar su localización en la lista de palabras y definiciones españolas, sin introducir en ésta excesivo número de referencias.

*

* *

The following definitions of terminology are intended for utilization in discussion and exposition in the field of toponymy. They are set forth not as prescriptive rules of usage but rather as guidelines, which may serve to enhance clarity and precision in communication.

It is generally recognized that the semantic range of any given term may vary from person to person and from community to community. It is further recognized that cognate terms tend to vary in meaning to a still larger degree from language to language. Furthermore, the semantic ranges of terms often change with usage and with the passage of time. Although it is not possible in such circumstances wholly to avoid arbitrary delineations, a sincere effort has been made to reduce these to a minimum.

Equivalent terms are provided for most entries in English, French and Spanish, and the definition of each term is given in English. Where synonymy of two or more terms is indicated, no order of preference is intended.

An index has been included in order to aid users in locating particular terms without introducing an excessive number of cross-references in the main body of the definitions.

* * *

*The original text of this paper appeared as documents E/CONF. 69/L. 1 and Add. 1.

TECHNICAL TERMINOLOGY EMPLOYED IN THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

English	*French*	*Spanish*

1. *abbreviated character*
   See *Character, abbreviated.*

2. *allograph* — *allographe* — *alógrafo*
   One of the particular representations of a grapheme (see *grapheme*).

3. *allomorph* — *allomorphe* — *alómorfo*
   One of two or more differing phonological manifestations of a given morpheme (see *morpheme*).

English	French	Spanish

4. *allonym* — *allonyme* — *alónimo*
One of two or more names employed in reference to a single topographic feature.

5. *allophone* — *allophone* — *alófono*
A phonetic variant of a phoneme.

6. *alphabet* — *alphabet* — *alfabeto*
A specific set of graphic symbols that may be employed in representation of the phonological elements of a language.

7. *alphabet, transcription* — *alphabet de transcription* — *alfabeto de transcripción*
An alphabet that may be employed in the process of transcription (see *transcription*).

8. *alphabet, transliteration* — *alphabet de translittération* — *alfabeto de transliteración*
An alphabet that may be employed in the process of transliteration (see *transliteration*).

9. *alphabetical sequence*
See *sequence, alphabetical.*

10. *alternate name*
See *name, alternate.*

11. *article* — *article* — *artículo*
A morpheme that makes explicit the definite or indefinite nature of another morpheme or morphemes.

12. *authority, names* — *autorité toponymique* — *autoridad de nombres geográficos*
A person or body assigned power of decision in toponymic matters by a legally constituted entity.

13. *character* — *caractère* — *carácter*
A segmental graphic symbol particularly of a script other than Roman script (see *letter*).

14. *character, abbreviated* — *caractère abrégé* — *carácter abreviado*
A variant character that is less complex than another and that resembles it in some particular (see *character, variant*).

15. *character, modified* — *caractère modifié* — *carácter modificado*
See *character, variant* and *character, abbreviated.*

16. *character, variant* — (—) — *carácter optativo*
One of two or more characters employed in a writing system in representation of the same phonological and/or morphological item or items.

17. *colloquial language*
See *language, colloquial.*

18. *community, linguistic* — *communauté linguistique* — *comunidad lingüística*
The totality of those individuals who communicate with relative ease in a single dialect, language or writing system.

19. *community, speech* — (—) — *comunidad de hablantes, o de habla*
The totality of those individuals who communicate orally with relative ease in a single dialect or language.

20. *context* — *contexte* — *contexto*
The body of material within which a particular item appears.

21. *conventional* — *usuel* — *convencional o usual*
That which is sanctioned by current and widespread usage.

22. *conventional name*
See *name, conventional.*

23. *conversion* *conversion* *conversión*
The process of recording in terms of a given writing system the phonological and/or morphological elements of a language, or the graphic symbols of another writing system (see *transcription* and *transliteration*).

24. *creole* *créole* *lengua criolla*
A stable form of speech, derived from a pidgin, which has become the sole or principal language of a linguistic community.

25. *cultural feature*
See *feature, cultural.*

26. *descriptive term*
See *term, descriptive.*

27. *designation* *désignation* *designación*
A term employed in such a manner as to encompass a specific range of feature types.

28. *designatory term*
See *term, designatory.*

29. *diacritical mark*
See *mark, diacritical.*

30. *dialect* *dialecte* *dialecto*
A variety of a language which is distinguished by phonological and/or morphological characteristics that give it a distinctive identity.

31. *dictionary, geographical* *dictionnaire géographique* *diccionario geográfico*
A list of terms and/or names pertaining to the field of geography, which presents relatively extensive and definitive information concerning the items listed.

32. *diglossia* *diglossie* *diglosia*
A relatively stable language situation, in which in addition to the primary dialect of a language, which may include a standard or regional standards, there is a very divergent, highly codified, often grammatically more complex, superposed variety, the vehicle of a large and respected body of written literature, heir of an earlier period or in another speech community, which is learned largely by formal education and may be used for written and formal spoken purposes, but is not used by any sector of the community for ordinary conversation (after C. Ferguson, 1959).

33. *digraph* *digraphe* *dígrafo*
Two letters or characters that are together employed in a particular order in representation of a single phonological and/or morphological element of a language.

34. *diphthong* *diphtongue* *diptongo*
A combination of vocalic elements of which only one is the nucleus of a syllable.

35. *element, generic* *élément générique* *elemento genérico*
That part of a name which consists of a generic term, and which may include modifiers, articles, and/or particles as well (see *term, generic*).

36. *element, specific* *élément spécifique* *elemento específico*
That portion of a name which does not contain a generic element (see *element, generic*).

37. *entity, geographical* *objet géographique* *entidad geográfica*
See *feature, geographical.*

38. *entity, topographic* *objet topographique* *entidad topográfica*
See *feature, topographic.*

39. *exonym* *exonyme* *exónimo*
A geographical name used in a certain language for a geographical entity situated outside the area where that language has official status and differing in its form from the name used in the official language or languages of the area where the geographical entity is situated.

40. *extraterrestrial topographic feature*
See *feature, extraterrestrial topographic.*

41. *feature, cultural* (—) *accidente geográfico artificial*

A topographic feature made or significantly modified by human effort.

42. *feature, extraterrestrial* *accident topographique extra-terrestre* *accidente topográfico extra-terrestre*

On any planet or satellite other than the earth, a portion of the surface that has a recognizable identity.

43. *feature, geographical* *accident géographique* *accidente geográfico*

A portion of the surface of the earth that has a recognizable identity.

44. *feature, hydrographic* *élément hydrographique* *accidente hidrográfico*

A topographic feature that consists of water and/or of recognizable interfaces between a body of water and one or more of its boundaries.

45. *feature, natural* (—) *accidente natural*

A topographic feature not made or significantly modified by human effort.

46. *feature, physical* (—) *accidente físico*
See *feature, natural.*

47. *feature, topographic* *accident topographique* *accidente topográfico*

A portion of the surface of any planet or satellite that has a recognizable identity.

48. *feature, undersea* (—) *accidente submarino*

A portion of that part of the earth which lies directly beneath an ocean or sea, and which has a recognizable identity.

49. *feature name*
See *name, feature.*

50. *form, graphic* *graphie* *grafía*

Written letter(s) or character(s), including any markers and diacritical marks, that represent a linguistic item.

51. *form, printing* *présentation typographique* *presentación tipográfica*

The size, shape and style of the graphic items in a printed document.

52. *format* *présentation générale* *formato*

The size, shape and general arrangement of a written document.

53. *gazetteer* *nomenclature toponymique* (—)

A list of toponyms that presents relatively brief information regarding the items listed.

54. *index gazetteer*
See *gazetteer, index.*

55. *international geographical name standardization*
See *standardization, international geographical name.*

56. *key, romanization* *tableau de romanisation* *clave de romanización*

A table that sets forth the graphic symbols of a non-Roman writing system together with corresponding graphic symbols of one or more Roman writing system(s).

57. *key, transcription* *tableau de transcription* *clave de transcripción*

A table that sets forth descriptions and/or graphic representations of the phonological and/or morphological elements of a language together with corresponding representations in terms of a particular writing system.

58. *key, transliteration* *tableau de translittération* *clave de transliteración*
A table that sets forth the graphic symbols of one writing system together with the corresponding graphic symbols of another writing system or systems.

59. *language* *langue* *lengua o idioma*
A system that provides a means by which the members of a community carry on conscious thought, and in terms of which they communicate orally and/or graphically.

60. *language, colloquial* *langue courante* *lengua coloquial*
A form of the speech and/or writing of a language, which is employed in informal communication in a given area and which, where a standard or literary language exists, significantly differs from it.

61. *language, literary* *langue littéraire* *lengua literaria o lenguaje literario*
A form of the speech and/or writing of a language, which is employed in formal speech and/or writing.

62. *language, non-official* *langue non-officielle* *lengua no oficial dentro de un estado o región*
A language that lacks official status in a particular legally constituted entity.

63. *language, official* *langue officielle* *lengua oficial*
A language that has official status in a particular legally constituted entity.

64. *language, principal* *langue principale* *lengua principal*
In a linguistic community where more than one language is in use, that language which has greatest currency.

65. *language, receiver* (—) (—)
A language in terms of which a geographical name may be adopted or converted from its source language (see *language, source*).

66. *language, source* (—) (—)
A language in terms of which a geographical name is produced, and on the basis of which it may be adopted or converted for use in the context of another language, which is called a receiver language (see *language, receiver*).

67. *language, standard* (—) *lengua común o normal*
That form of the speech and/or writing of a language which is specified as correct by an officially designated or widely recognized authority or, in the absence of such an authority, which is generally recognized as correct in a linguistic community.

68. *language, vehicular* *langue véhiculaire* *lengua vehicular*
A language that serves for communication between members of different linguistic communities.

69. *letter* *lettre* *letra*
A segmental graphic symbol, particularly of Roman script (see *character*).

70. *lettering, multilingual* (—) *rotulación multilingüe*
The writing of geographical names in the individual countries that appear on a map in accordance with their officially recognized spellings.

71. *lexicon* *dictionnaire* *léxico*
A relatively exhaustive compilation of items, generally in alphabetical order, pertinent to a particular sphere of interest, that may present information concerning the items listed.

72. *lexicon, ideographic* *lexique idéographique* *léxico ideográfico*
See *lexicon, logographic.*

73. *lexicon, logographic* *lexique logographique* *léxico logográfico*
A body of graphic symbols, each symbol typically (but not necessarily) representing a morpheme, that may be employed in the writing of a language or languages.

74. *linguistic community*
See *community, linguistic.*

75. *literary language*
See *language, literary.*

76. *logogram* *logogramme* *logograma*
A graphic symbol or combination of graphic symbols that consistently represents a given morphological element or elements in a given language.

77. *logographic lexicon*
See *lexicon, logographic.*

78. *lunar name*
See *name, lunar.*

79. *mark, diacritical* *signe diacritique* *signo diacrítico*
A non-segmental graphic symbol, which does not in itself represent a phoneme, that is employed in conjunction with a letter or character.

80. *marker* (—) *signo auxiliar*
A graphic symbol or combination of graphic symbols (segmental, non-segmental or combined) that represents one or more phonemes of a language and that is employed in conjunction with a letter or character.

81. *modified character*
See *character, modified.*

82. *morpheme* *morphème* *morfema*
A unit in the grammatical structure of a language that has a specific phonological form or range of forms, a particular grammatical function or set of functions and a limited semantic range.

83. *multilingual lettering*
See *lettering, multilingual.*

84. *name* *nom propre* *nombre propio*
An oral or written item that is recognized as designating a particular entity.

85. *name, alternate* (—) *nombre alternativo*
One of two or more standardized names for a single feature.

86. *name, conventional* (—) *nombre propio convencional*
A written form of a name, which is widely and currently used in a given linguistic community and which does not coincide with any local official form of the name.

87. *name, feature* (—) (—)
See *toponym.*

88. *name, geographical* *nom géographique* *nombre propio geográfico*
A name applied to a geographical feature.

89. *name, lunar* *nom lunaire* *nombre propio lunar*
A name applied to a feature on the surface of the moon.

90. *name, place* *nom de lieu* *nombre propio de lugar*
See *toponym.*

91. *name, populated place* *nom de lieu habité* *nombre propio de lugar habitado*
A name applied to an inhabited feature.

92. *name, standardized* *nom normalisé* *nombre propio normalizado*
A name that has the official sanction of a legally constituted entity.

93. *name, variant* *variante* *nombre propio optativo*
A name other than that or those standardized for a feature.

94. *names authority*
See *authority, names.*

95. *non-official* *non officiel* *inoficial*
Lacking explicit sanction by a legally constituted entity.

96. *non-official language*
See *language, non-official.*

97. *normalization* (—) (—)
1. The establishment of a specific set of orthographic criteria or norms.
2. The writing of an item in accordance with such criteria or norms.

98. *official* *officiel* *oficial*
Explicitly sanctioned by a legally constituted entity.

99. *official language*
See *language, official.*

100. *onomastics* *onomastique* *onomástica*
The science that has as its object the study of proper names.

101. *oronym* *oronyme* *orónimo*
A name applied to a feature of elevation.

102. *orthography* *orthographie* *ortografía*
1. *graphic form* (q.v.).
2. *writing system* (q.v.).

103. *particle* *particule* *partícula*
A morpheme that serves to identify and/or to delimit the grammatical function of another morpheme or other linguistic construction.

104. *phoneme* *phonème* *fonema*
1. A functionally irreducible unit in the phonological structure of a language.
2. That limited range of quality, tone, stress, pitch and/or duration of sound which corresponds to the above.

105. *physical feature*
See *feature, physical.*

106. *pidgin* (—) *lengua franca*
A relatively stable form of speech learned as an auxiliary language, whose vocabulary and sphere of employment are narrowly limited and whose phonological and morphological structures tend to be simpler than those of the language of derivation.

107. *place name*
See *name, place.*

108. *place name index*
See *index, place name.*

109. *point, vowel* *point-voyelle* *moción*
A term that designates a vowel marker in an alphabet of Arabic or Hebrew script.

110. *principal language*
See language, principal.

111. *printing form*
See *form, printing.*

112. *receiver language*
See *language, receiver.*

113. *reversibility* (—) *reversibilidad*
A characteristic of a conversion system that permits any written item to be converted from one writing system to another and subsequently reconverted back into the first system, the resulting item being identical in every particular with the original.

English	French	Spanish

114. *romanization* | *romanisation* | *romanización*
1. The process of recording in Roman script either the phonological elements of a language or the graphic symbols of a non-Roman writing system.
2. An item of a language that has undergone this process.

115. *romanization key*
See *key, romanization.*

116. *script* | *écriture* | *escritura*
A set of graphic symbols that may be variously employed in representation of the phonological and/or morphological elements of a language or languages.

117. *script, receiver* | (—) | (—)
A script in terms of which a geographical name may be converted from its source script (see *script, source*).

118. *script, source* | (—) | (—)
A script in terms of which a geographical name is produced, and on the basis of which it may be converted for use in another script, called a receiver script (see *script, receiver*).

119. *sequence, alphabetical* | *suite alphabétique* | *orden alfabético*
1. The order in which the letters or characters of an alphabet are customarily cited.
2. A body of items listed in such order.

120. *sound* | *son* | *sonido*
An oral symbol that, in a given linquistic context, conveys a specific item of information.

121. *source language*
See *language, source.*

122. *source script*
See *script, source.*

123. *specific element*
See *element, specific.*

124. *speech* | *parole* | *habla*
An oral manifestation of language.

125. *speech community*
See *community, speech.*

126. *spelling* | *graphie* | *grafía*
See *form, graphic.*

127. *standardization, geographical name* | (—) | *normalización de un nombre geográfico*
The prescription or the recommendation of a particular graphic form or forms for application to a given feature, as well as the conditions of employment of that form or forms.

128. *standardization, international geographical name* | (—) | *normalización internacional de nombres geográficos*
That activity aiming at a maximum of uniformity in the writing of every geographical name on earth and of topographical names on other bodies of the solar system by means of national standardization and/or international agreement, including the achievement of equivalences between different writing systems.

129. *standardized name*
See *name, standardized.*

130. *standard language*
See *language, standard.*

131. *syllabary* *syllabaire* *silabario*
A specific set of graphic symbols, each symbol typically (but not necessarily) representing a particular syllable, that may be employed in representation of the phonological elements of a language.

132. *symbol, graphic* *symbole graphique* *signo gráfico*
A written mark that, in a given linguistic context, conveys a specific item of information.

133. *system, writing* *système d'écriture* *sistema de escritura*
A structure that employs in representation of the phonological and/or morphological elements of a language both
1. An alphabet, syllabary and/or logographic lexicon; and
2. A systematic manner of application of the alphabet, syllabary and/or logographic lexicon.

134. *term, descriptive* *terme descriptif* *término descriptivo*
A written item that appears on a map, which does not constitute a toponym but which serves to describe a topographic characteristic in the area where it appears.

135. *term, designatory* (—) *término designativo*
See *designation.*

136. *term, generic* *terme générique* *término genérico*
A term, included in a name, that indicates the type of the named entity and that has the same meaning in current local usage (see *element, generic*).

137. *tetragraph* *tétragraphe* *tetrágrafo*
Four letters or characters, which are employed together in a particular order in representation of a single phonological and/or morphological element of a language.

138. *topographic entity*
See *entity, topographic.*

139. *topographic feature*
See *feature, topographic.*

140. *topography* *topographie* *topografía*
The surface configuration of a planet or satellite, or of a portion thereof.

141. *toponym* *toponyme* *topónimo*
A name applied to a topographic feature.

142. *toponymic index*
See *index, toponymic.*

143. *toponymy* *toponymie* *toponimia*
1. The science which has as its object the study of toponyms.
2. A coherent body of toponyms.

144. *transcription* *transcription* *transcripción*
1. The process of recording the phonological and/or morphological elements of a language in terms of a specific writing system.
2. The result of this process.

145. *transcription alphabet*
See *alphabet, transcription.*

146. *transcription key*
See *key, transcription.*

147. *translation* *traduction* *traducción*
1. The process of rendering an expression of one language in terms of a corresponding expression of another language.
2. The result of this process.

148. *transliteration* *translittération* *transliteración*
1. The process of recording the graphic symbols of one writing system in terms of corresponding graphic symbols of a second writing system.
2. The result of this process.

149. *transliteration alphabet*
See *alphabet, transliteration.*

150. *transliteration key*
See *key, transliteration.*

151. *trigraph* *trigraphe* *trígrafo*
Three letters or characters, which are employed together in a particular order in representation of a single phonological and/or morphological element of a language.

152. *undersea feature*
See *feature, undersea.*

153. *variant character*
See *character, variant.*

154. *variant name*
See *name, variant.*

155. *vehicular language*
See *language, vehicular.*

156. *vocabulary* *vocabulaire* *vocabulario*
1. A list of the words of a language (synonym: *lexicon.*)
2. A succinct dictionary giving the principal words of a language or citing a list of specialized terms (see *glossary* and *lexicon*).
3. The repertory of words of a particular individual or document.

157. *vowel point*
See *point, vowel.*

158. *writing system*
See *system, writing.*

Index of French and Spanish technical terms corresponding to English terms listed in the glossary

French or Spanish	*English*
accidente físico	feature, physical
accidente geográfico	feature, geographical
accidente geográfico artificial	feature, cultural
accidente hidrográfico	feature, hydrographic
accidente natural	feature, natural
accidente topográfico	feature, topographic
accidente topográfico extraterrestre	feature, extraterrestrial
accidente submarino	feature, undersea
accident géographique	feature, geographical
accident topographique	feature, topographic
accident topographique extra-terrestre	feature, extraterrestrial
alfabeto	alphabet
alfabeto de transcripción	alphabet, transcription
alfabeto de transliteración	alphabet, transliteration
allographe	allograph
allomorphe	allomorph
allonyme	allonym
alófono	allophone
alógrafo	allograph
alómorfo	allomorph
alónimo	allonym
alphabet de transcription	alphabet, transcription
alphabet de translittération	alphabet, transliteration

French or Spanish	*English*
artículo	article
autoridad de nombres geográficos	authority, names
autorité toponymique	authority, names
carácter	character
carácter abreviado	character, abbreviated
caractère	character
caractère abrégé	character, abbreviated
caractère modifié	character, modified
carácter modificado	character, modified
carácter optativo	character, variant
clave de romanización	key, romanization
clave de transcripción	key, transcription
clave de transliteración	key, transliteration
communauté linguistique	community, linguistic
comunidad de hablantes o de habla	community, speech
comunidad lingüística	community, linguistic
contexte	context
contexto	context
convencional o usual	conventional
conversión	conversion
créole	creole
designación	designation
désignation	designation
dialecte	dialect
dialecto	dialect
diccionario geográfico	dictionary, geographical
dictionnaire	lexicon
dictionnaire géographique	dictionary, geographical
diglosia	diglossia
diglossie	diglossia
dígrafo	digraph
digraphe	digraph
diphtongue	diphthong
diptongo	diphthong
écriture	script
élément générique	element, generic
élément hydrographique	feature, hydrographic
elemento genérico	element, generic
elemento específico	element, specific
élément spécifique	element, specific
entidad geográfica	entity, geographical
entidad topográfica	entity, topographic
escritura	script
exónimo	exonym
exonyme	exonym
fonema	phoneme
formato	format
glosario	glossary
glossaire	glossary
grafema	grapheme
grafía	spelling
graphème	grapheme
graphie	spelling
habla	speech
hidrónimo	hydronym
hydronyme	hydronym
ideograma	ideogram

French or Spanish	*English*
idioma	language
index toponymique	gazetteer, index
índice de nombres geográficos	index, place name
índice o listado de topónimos	gazetteer, index
inoficial	non-official
langue	language
langue courante	language, colloquial
langue littéraire	language, literary
langue non officielle	language, non-official
langue officielle	language, official
langue principale	language, principal
langue véhiculaire	language, vehicular
lengua	language
lengua coloquial	language, colloquial
lengua común o normal	language, standard
lengua criolla	creole
lengua franca	pidgin
lengua literaria o lenguaje literario	language, literary
lengua no oficial dentro de un estado o región	language, non-official
lengua oficial	language, official
lengua principal	language, principal
lengua vehicular	language, vehicular
letra	letter
lettre	letter
léxico	lexicon
léxico ideográfico	lexicon, ideographic
léxico logográfico	lexicon, logographic
lexique idéographique	lexicon, ideographic
lexique logographique	lexicon, logographic
listado de topónimos	gazetteer, index
logograma	logogram
logogramme	logogram
moción	point, vowel
morfema	morpheme
morphème	morpheme
nombre alternativo	name, alternate
nombre propio	name
nombre propio convencional	name, conventional
nombre propio de lugar	name, place
nombre propio de lugar habitado	name, populated place
nombre propio geográfico	name, geographical
nombre propio luna	name, lunar
nombre propio normalizado	name, standardized
nombre propio optativo	name, variant
nom de lieu	name, place
nom de lieu habité	name, populated place
nomenclature toponymique	gazetteer
nom géographique	name, geographical
nom lunaire	name, lunar
nom normalisé	name, standardized
nom propre	name
non officiel	non-official
normalización de un nombre geográfico	standardization, geographical name
normalización internacional de nombres geográficos	standardization, international geographical
objet géographique	entity, geographical
objet topographique	entity, topographic

French or Spanish	*English*
officiel	official
oficial	official
onomástica	onomastics
onomastique	onomastics
orden alfabético	sequence, alphabetical
orónimo	oronym
oronyme	oronym
orthographie	orthography
ortografía	orthography
parole	speech
partícula	particle
particule	particle
phonème	phoneme
point, voyelle	point, vowel
presentación tipográfica	form, printing
présentation générale	format
présentation typographique	form, printing
reversibilidad	reversibility
romanisation	romanization
romanización	romanization
rotulación multilingüe	lettering, multilingual
signe diacritique	mark, diacritical
signo auxiliar	marker
signo diacrítico	mark, diacritical
signo gráfico	symbol, graphic
silabario	syllabary
sistema de escritura	system, writing
son	sound
sonido	sound
suite alphabétique	sequence, alphabetical
syllabaire	syllabary
symbole graphique	symbol, graphic
système d'écriture	system, writing
tableau de romanisation	key, romanization
tableau de transcription	key, transcription
tableau de translittération	key, transliteration
terme descriptif	term, descriptive
terme générique	term, generic
término descriptivo	term, descriptive
término designativo	term, designatory
término genérico	term, generic
tetrágrafo	tetragraph
tétragraphe	tetragraph
topografía	topography
topographie	topography
toponimia	toponymy
topónimo	toponym
toponyme	toponym
toponymie	toponymy
traducción	translation
traduction	translation
transcripción	transcription
transliteración	transliteration
translittération	transliteration
trígrafo	trigraph
trigraphe	trigraph
usual	conventional

French or Spanish	*English*
usuel	conventional
variante	name, variant
vocabulaire	vocabulary
vocabulario	vocabulary

DICTIONARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS USED BY THE UNITED NATIONS ORGANIZATION IN THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by Czechoslovakia

The original text of this paper, which appeared as document E.CONF.69/L.126, contains a translation in Czech and Slovak of the technical terms presented in the preceding document, entitled "A glossary of technical terminology employed in the standardization of geographical names", presented by the Working Group on Definitions of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. Copies of the Czech and Slovak version of the glossary may be obtained on request from the Commission on Terminology of the Czech Board of Geodesy and Cartography or from the Commission on Terminology of the Slovak Board of Geodesy and Cartography.

AGENDA ITEM 13—POINT 13 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR—TEMA 13 DEL PROGRAMA

EXONIMOS
Informe presentado por Guatemala*

Summary

The paper reproduces resolutions 28, 29 and 31 of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names,[1] together with a summary of the deliberations on the topic during the fifth and sixth sessions of the United Nations *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts on Geographical Names in 1973 and 1975.

A number of observations are also made on the term "exonym" and suggestions pertaining to the national and international levels are submitted for consideration by the Third United Nations Conference, with a view to reducing the use of exonyms to the greatest extent possible.

Résumé

Le rapport rappelle les résolutions 28, 29 et 31 adoptées par la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques[2] et les travaux sur la question du Groupe spécial d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques à ses cinquième et sixième sessions en 1973 et 1975.

Le rapport contient aussi un certain nombre de considérations relatives au terme "exonyme" et présente des suggestions au niveau national et international, pour la troisième Conférence des Nations Unies, afin de réduire le plus possible l'emploi des exonymes, qu'il s'agisse de noms consacrés ou de noms traditionnels.

*

* *

Como tema 13 del programa provisional de la Tercera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, conforme fue redactado por el Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos durante su sexto periodo de sesiones (Nueva York, 5 a 26 de marzo de 1975), aparece en relación con los exónimos lo siguiente:

a) Categoría y grado de utilización de los exónimos;
b) Determinación de los principios que han de seguirse en la reducción de los exónimos.

Como resultado de la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos (Londres, 1972), se establecieron los siguientes principios en torno a los exónimos, de acuerdo con las resoluciones 28, 29 y 31, y que a continuación se reproducen:

28. Listas de exónimos (nombres convencionales, nombres tradicionales)

La Conferencia,

Deseando facilitar la normalización internacional de los nombres geográficos,

Reconociendo que ciertos exónimos (nombres convencionales, nombres tradicionales) constituyen elementos vivos y esenciales de los idiomas,

Reconociendo además que ciertos exónimos (nombres convencionales, nombres tradicionales) subsisten en el idioma aunque disminuya la necesidad de su empleo,

Recomienda que las autoridades nacionales en materia de nombres geográficos preparen listas de exónimos comúnmente empleados, que los revisen, con miras a su posible supresión, y publiquen los resultados.

29. Exónimos

A

La Conferencia,

Reconociendo la conveniencia de limitar el empleo de exónimos,

Recomienda que en la normalización internacional de los nombres geográficos se reduzca, en la mayor medida y con la mayor rapidez posibles, el empleo de aquellos exónimos que designen entidades geográficas que corresponden a la soberanía de un solo Estado.

B

La Conferencia,

Advirtiendo que, incluso en el plano nacional, el empleo de exónimos está perdiendo terreno,

Recomienda que en las publicaciones exclusivamente para uso nacional se tenga en cuenta la posibilidad de reducir el empleo de exónimos,

---

* El texto original de este informe, preparado por el Profesor Francis Gall, Guatemala, ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF.69/L.2.

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

[2] *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.2), p. 17.

Recomienda además que, cuando se conserven los exónimos, se indiquen, siempre que sea posible, las formas oficiales locales.

31. Comprensión y aceptación uniformes de los fines y objetivos de la normalización internacional

La Conferencia,

Advirtiendo la conveniencia de lograr que se comprendan y acepten de un modo uniforme los fines y objetivos de la normalización internacional de los nombres geográficos,

1. *Recomienda*, en relación con el examen constante por el Grupo de Expertos del campo de aplicación de la normalización internacional, la siguiente definición general:

> "Por normalización internacional de los nombres geográficos se entiende la actividad encaminada a lograr una forma escrita única de cada nombre geográfico de la Tierra y de los nombres topográficos de otros cuerpos del sistema solar mediante una labor nacional de normalización nacional o un acuerdo internacional, o una y otro, incluyendo el establecimiento de equivalencias entre los distintos sistemas de escritura";

2. *Recomienda asimismo* que, en lo posible, los nombres locales normalizados se utilicen en los mapas y cartas destinados al uso internacional así como en todas las publicaciones internacionales en que los nombres geográficos no aparezcan en el texto propiamente dicho como, por ejemplo, en horarios internacionales o en cuadros de estadísticas internacionales; se podrán utilizar exónimos cuando los nombres geográficos figuren en el texto propiamente dicho de las publicaciones internacionales en un idioma dado, pero en esos casos será conveniente que figuren también entre paréntesis los nombres geográficos locales normalizados.

El Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos adoptó unas definiciones en idioma inglés en el informe de su quinto período de sesiones (Nueva York, 6 a 16 de marzo de 1973), que se presenta en traducción a la fecha no oficial y sujeto a un cambio eventual:

> "*Exónimo*: Nombre propio, o forma escrita suya, usual en una lengua para designar un accidente geográfico situado fuera del área donde aquella lengua tiene carácter oficial, y diferente del nombre propio, o de la forma escrita de éste, usual en la lengua o lenguas oficiales del área donde el accidente geográfico está situado.
>
> "Un *nombre convencional* es un exónimo usado de manera amplia y corriente.
>
> "Un *nombre tradicional* es un exónimo que ha sido establecido hace mucho tiempo y que asimismo está en uso actualmente."

En lo que atañe a la reducción de exónimos—temas 14 y 15 de nuestro sexto período de sesiones—se especificó en el informe respectivo lo siguiente, en traducción no oficial del autor de este documento:

"El Grupo discutió la reducción de exónimos con base en los documentos de trabajo 6, 11, 13, 13/Add. 1 y 27, así como de otras propuestas [*6*: "Exónimos" —J. González y F. Vázquez, España; *11*: "Sobre la normalización de nombres geográficos en la Unión Soviética en 1972–1974"—A. M. Komkov, URSS; *13*: "Sobre la compilación de un listado de topónimos (*gazetteer*) de nombres convencionales rusos para entidades geográficas en países del extranjero" (A. M. Komkov, URSS); *27*: "Reducción de exónimos"—Hungría]. Se examinó ampliamente una propuesta formulada por el Sr. Sharma, para recomendar el empleo de los nombres oficiales de los países de manera preferente a, o conjuntamente con los exónimos de los nombres de los países. Se manifestó que la reducción de los exónimos tendría que iniciarse en alguna parte y que los nombres de los países resultaban los más apropiados. Se señaló el hecho de que en el pasado había sido posible para un país cambiar su nombre y que dicho cambio fuese aceptado a través del mundo. En contra de la propuesta, se expuso el hecho de que los exónimos para un número de nombres antiguos de países eran los que tenían las raíces más profundas en los idiomas, y los más difíciles de eliminar. Se esperaba mucha oposición contra tal recomendación.

"Se estuvo de acuerdo en que los principios enunciados en las resoluciones 28, 29 y 31 de la Conferencia serían reiterados, y en que el Grupo instaría a evitar en lo posible los exónimos para nombres de nuevos países y para nuevos nombres de países."

Se estudió, entre otros aspectos, el de una gradación por incidencia, conforme fue indicado por España, pudiéndose para ello fijar las siguientes cinco categorías:

1. *Total*, cuando el nombre oficial no se utiliza en forma escrita ni oral;
2. *General*, sólo cuando en contados casos se ha utilizado el nombre oficial;
3. *Extendido*, en que el uso es realizado de manera indistinta y más bien según la cultura de quien se expresa;
4. *Escaso*, cuando sólo se encuentra en obras de tipo literario de gusto tradicional;
5. *Obsoleto*, cuando no se encuentra más que en obras antiguas, lo que vendría a ser lo mismo que un nombre histórico en desuso en la actualidad.

Se considera que la voz *exónimo* es un término más apropiado que el de *nombre tradicional* o *nombre convencional*, en lo que respecta a los objetivos de la normalización de nombres geográficos. De consiguiente, además de su definición, podría también indicarse que ese término consiste en un nombre geográfico utilizado en un dado idioma para una entidad geográfica ubicada fuera del área donde dicho idioma goza de reconocimiento oficial. En este caso, podría asimismo solucionarse el problema, si inmediatamente después del topónimo y siempre que se use un exónimo de manera lo más reducida posible, siguiese "o . . .", o bien que el nombre geográfico normalizado apareciera primero, así como que inmediatamente después figurase el exónimo entre paréntesis.

También es menester comprender que, en ámbito nacional, en muchos casos será imposible omitir un exónimo que por tradición forma parte de un dado nombre geográfico. Esto, por supuesto, se aplica más a otros accidentes que a los lugares poblados y, en todo caso, es sumamente deseable tener sólo un nombre que defina a la entidad, lo cual debería ser reconocido tanto por el usuario como por los habitantes locales.

En cuanto a los exónimos que figuren en otros accidentes además de lugares poblados, en muchos casos y en ámbito nacional, se estima necesario que dentro del espíritu de la resolución 28 de Londres, siempre que ello pudiese llevarse a cabo, sería altamente deseable que los nombres convencionales o tradicionales que se utilizan en forma corriente, pudiesen ser evitados en lo posible.

Es de señalarse el hecho y esto constituye un asunto que también debe tomar en consideración la Tercera Conferencia, que como ya se mencionado más arriba en el cuarto párrafo parece que nuestro Grupo de Expertos, no obstante que la resolución 29 B de Londres se refiere al plano nacional, ha tenido en mente de manera principal los nombres de países. Por ello, debería reiterarse una recomendación en forma de resolución, en el sentido de que a nivel nacional también deben tomarse en cuenta los exónimos, para evitarlos en lo posible.

Como resultado de un somero análisis, según corresponde al limitado alcance del presente documento de trabajo, el autor estima que en muchos casos el problema de los exónimos es, ante todo, de aspecto lingüístico, y asimismo que existen muchos otros aspectos a nivel nacional que también deben tomarse bajo consideración tanto en favor como en contra. Empero, una cosa debe ser resuelta conforme ya se indicó, en el sentido de que es menester impartir un mandato a nuestro Grupo de Expertos para que dentro de un término que se le fije estudie no sólo los exónimos de países, como aconteció durante su sexto período de sesiones, sino que también se pronuncie en el sentido requerido. Mejor aún, que la Tercera Conferencia emita una resolución relacionada con los exónimos dentro de un país. Para todo lo anterior, deberá tomarse en consideración lo que el autor ha esbozado en este documento. Se entiende que se estima asimismo necesario recalcar de nuevo que el aspecto internacional de los exónimos debe ser el resultado de lo realizado a nivel nacional.

Se estima, a la vez, que por conducto del respectivo Experto de División en Nombres Geográficos se comunique a la Sección de Cartografía de las Naciones Unidas para su divulgación internacional, que incluirá a todos los expertos de las Naciones Unidas en nombres geográficos, lo que atañe a la segunda recomendación de la resolución 31 de Londres.

En Guatemala, por ejemplo, un accidente hidrográfico que descarga en otro en latitud 13°49′30″ Norte y longitud 90°15′48″ Oeste del meridiano de Greenwich, que se ha designado como "Madre Vieja o Dormido" se normalizó a "Madre Vieja", omitiendo así el nombre convencional o tradicional de "o Dormido". Otro exónimo, "Chinimá o El Cañal" se normalizó a "Chinimá", el que en su desembocadura está en latitud 14°47′15″ y en longitud 91°28′36″. Por ejemplo, en lo que asimismo se relaciona con el lugar poblado conocido antes como "Sepemech o Las Conchas" (latitud 15°45′15″, longitud 89°23′25″) y debido al hecho de que en el idioma kekchí "Sepemech" equivale a "Las Conchas", se aceptó de manera local que fuese designado sólo como "Sepemech", lo que así se realizó. Otro ejemplo entre muchos más: en lo que atañe a la que había sido capital de los indígenas quichés hasta el año de 1524, en la actualidad el sitio arqueológico "Utatlán" y que antaño se había conocido más como "Gumarcaaj", apareciendo así en muchas referencias antiguas, a efecto de mantener un nombre debido a su importancia por múltiples razones, los nombres geográficos se normalizaron a "Utatlán" (como se le disigna en la actualidad) en latitud 15° 01′14″ y longitud 91° 10′11″, pero con la referencia del caso a su antiguo nombre histórico quiché. De consiguiente y de manera especial, en el respectivo cuadrángulo del mapa a escala 1:50.000 el sitio aparece con su nombre antiguo entre paréntesis como "Utatlán (Gumarcaaj)" a 2.020 metros sobre el nivel del mar. Por el otro lado, ríos como "Chixoy o Negro", "Grande o Motagua", etc., retienen parcialmente sus exónimos, debido a que así lo requiere el uso tradicional local, y los habitantes vecinos, o usuarios locales, se manifestaron en contra de omitir en su totalidad los nombres convencionales o tradicionales.

Se entiende que las ideas presentadas en este documento de trabajo deben ser estudiadas de manera cuidadosa y se espera que la presente Tercera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas tome una acción necesaria sobre el particular.

En vía ilustrativa y con respecto a los nombres de países, entre otros, pueden mencionarse los siguientes:

China es el exónimo en español de *Zhongguó*, y *Pekín* de su capital *Beijing*;

Grecia es el exónimo en español de *Hellás*, y *Atenas* de su capital *Athínai*;

Hungría es el exónimo en español de *Magyarország*, cuyo nombre completo es *Magyar Nepköstársaság*;

Japón es el exónimo en español de *Nippon*, conocido también como *Nihon*;

Surinam es el exónimo en español de *Suriname*;

India es el exónimo en español de *Bhārat Ganarājy*';

Austria es el exónimo en español de *Österreich*;

Brasil es el exónimo en español del país cuyo nombre completo es *República Federativa do Brasil*;

Egipto es el exónimo en español de *(al) Misr*;

Finlandia es el exónimo en español de *Suomi*, cuyo nombre completo es *Suomen tasavalta*;

Ceilán es el exónimo en español de *Sri Lanka*;

Suecia es el exónimo en español de *Sverige*, cuyo nombre completo es *Konungariket Sverige*;

Noruega es el exónimo en español de *Norge*, cuyo nombre completo es *Kongeriket Norge*;

Bulgaria es el exónimo en español de *Bálgarija*, cuyo nombre completo es *Narodna Republika Bálgarija*;

Líbano es el exónimo en español de (*el*) *Loubanâne*;

Polonia es el exónimo en español de *Polska*, cuyo nombre completo es *Polska Rzecspospolita Ludowa*;

Saudi Arabia es el exónimo en español de *Arabīyah as Sa'ūdiyah*, cuyo nombre completo es (*al*) *Mamlakah al 'arabīyah as Sa'ūdiyah*;

Paises Bajos es el exónimo en español de *Nederland* cuyo nombre completo es (*het*) *Koninkrijk der Nederlanden.*

LE PROBLÈME DIDACTIQUE DE LA RÉDUCTION DES EXONYMES
Rapport présenté par le Canada*

Summary

The reduction of exonyms is currently looked on as being desirable in theory, but it appears to be impracticable. Few naming organizations oppose exonym reduction. Reluctance is due to a belief that confusion will result and that exonyms will persist. Recent efforts to reduce exonyms indicate that, if the new names are widely broadcast, they are accepted quickly. The important question is determining the means of promoting the original names, especially by encouraging the important publishers to use them on maps and in atlases. Airline schedules reveal a predominance of English exonyms, although some airlines have adopted original forms.

Resumen

La conversión de exónimos se considera actualmente deseable en teoría pero poco realista en la práctica. Son pocas las organizaciones de nombres geográficos que se opongan a la conversión de exónimos. La reticencia a ponerla en práctica se debe a la creencia de que va a causar la confusión sin hacer desaparecer el uso de los exónimos. Los recientes esfuerzos por reducir el empleo de exónimos indica que, si se les da suficiente difusión, los nuevos nombres son rápidamente aceptados. La cuestión más importante es determinar qué medios pueden emplearse para fomentar el uso de los nombres originales, en especial la manera de incitar a las editoriales más importantes a utilizarlos en mapas y atlas. Los horarios de las aerolíneas muestran una predominancia de exónimos ingleses aunque algunas compañías hayan adoptado las formas originales.

*

* *

On peut caractériser le problème de la réduction des exonymes par le dilemme suivant: théoriquement souhaitable mais pratiquement irréalisable pour les raisons suivantes:

a) Les positions des organismes et des Etats sont très variées; certains défendent la position "romantique", pour le maintien intégral des exonymes; d'autres adoptent la position "internationaliste", cherchant à les éliminer;

b) En général, on préconise des solutions à long terme plutôt qu'à court ou moyen terme;

c) On propose des solutions mixtes, en distinguant des types de noms géographiques et des niveaux d'utilisation, types et niveaux selon lesquels le recul de l'exonymie devrait être plus ou moins rapide;

d) Ce faisant, on tend à faire coexister des tendances contradictoires, l'une vers la consécration encore plus forte des exonymes, l'autre vers leur réduction progressive.

Ces constatations sont à la fois réalistes et peu encourageantes. Pour cette raison sans doute, certains pays suggèrent de repousser à plus tard l'étude de ce problème[1]. D'autres font le constat de cette situation paradoxale en précisant où les exonymes demeureront fréquents (langage parlé, contexte, fiction, textes destinés au public, matériel d'enseignement à l'intérieur d'une aire linguistique) et où ils sont susceptibles d'être réduits (langue écrite, cartes et tableaux, textes techniques ou spécialisés, cartes spéciales ou d'usage international)[2]. D'autres enfin proposent des moyens pratiques pour aborder le problème, en l'occurrence en dressant des listes, dans chaque langue, des exonymes effectivement en usage[3].

En fait, sauf quelques exceptions, rares sont les organismes qui sont contre le principe lui-même de la réduction des exonymes. La raison de leurs réticences tient plutôt de la crainte de semer la confusion, en prenant pour acquis que les exonymes ont la vie tellement dure que même l'usage élargi des noms originaux ne fera disparaître pratiquement aucun exonyme.

A vrai dire, l'expérience des tentatives vraiment sérieuses pour réduire les exonymes est beaucoup trop récente (10 ans à peine) pour établir si l'hypothèse de leur vie dure se vérifie vraiment. L'exemple des pays qui ont récemment changé de nom suggérerait plutôt que, lorsque le nouveau nom (souvent un retour à un nom original local) est diffusé et appuyé par un appareil politique et publicitaire adéquat, il s'impose rapidement.

* Le texte original de ce rapport, préparé par Henri Dorion, professeur de géographie à l'Université Laval, Québec, Canada, et directeur du Groupe d'étude de choronymie et de terminologie géographique, a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.13.

[1] Voir "Noms conventionnels", *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. II, *Documents techniques* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente F.74.I.4), p. 211.

[2] Voir "Noms conventionnels, définition, usage", *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. II..., p. 207.

[3] Voir "Définition et emploi des exonymes", *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. II..., p. 211.

La question est donc d'identifier les moyens susceptibles de diffuser puis de consacrer les noms originaux, soit à la place des exonymes, soit, dans l'hypothèse moins optimiste, parallèlement à eux. On a déjà parlé des actions à entreprendre auprès des agences internationales de nouvelles, des organismes diffusant des informations et de la documentation à l'échelon international, des compagnies de transport ferroviaire et aérien[4], des organismes publics ou privés qui font une large utilisation des noms géographiques, et assurément des grandes maisons d'édition, surtout celles qui publient des cartes et des atlas.

C'est sur ce dernier point qu'il convient d'insister, puisque c'est un secteur où les hésitations et les oppositions à la réduction des exonymes se sont manifestées le plus nettement. Le problème didactique de la réduction des exonymes mériterait d'être étudié par des spécialistes en matière d'apprentissage, d'usage et de disponibilité du vocabulaire géographique. Peu d'études ont été faites dans ce domaine, mais de la consultation d'experts en didactique des langues, il ressort que les craintes manifestées à l'égard de l'apprentissage par les étudiants d'âge scolaire de noms de lieux étrangers (pour eux) ne sont pas fondées sur une appréciation objective des faits et des problèmes.

Les didacticiens s'entendent sur le fait que, pour un esprit jeune, il revient exactement au même d'apprendre un nom propre étranger ou assimilé à la langue de celui qui apprend. De plus, les spécialistes conviennent du fait que la "charge" additionnelle que représente l'apprentissage d'une seconde forme pour le même nom de lieu est plus faible si c'est le nom étranger (c'est-à-dire le nom original) qui est appris en premier; en effet, l'exonyme, à cause de son caractère répétitif dans le langage courant, s'imposera plus facilement de lui-même. Enfin, les didacticiens estiment que, si une publicité adéquate diffuse les noms originaux (étrangers) avec constance, l'effet répétitif rendra ces noms aussi "disponibles" que les exonymes pour les parlants de tous âges.

Ces constatations, qu'il faudrait vérifier par des tests, sont de nature à remettre en question les propositions qui visent à conserver les exonymes dans les manuels, atlas et autres documents d'enseignement. D'ailleurs, le matériel didactique, dans tous les pays du monde, se diversifie et se "déspécialise"; on le constate de plus en plus dans l'enseignement, la presse parlée ou écrite, les documents officiels ou publics et le matériel publicitaire (où la réduction des exonymes est plus facilement acceptée). La distinction entre les solutions apportées au niveau de l'enseignement et celles qui touchent les organismes d'information spécialisée, est donc, selon nous, moins valable qu'on pourrait le croire à première vue. On pourrait même penser, une fois la preuve faite des énoncés ci-dessus, qu'une action devrait être entreprise auprès des Ministères de l'éducation des différents Etats pour introduire, au niveau de l'enseignement, les solutions préconisées par les Conférences des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques. Cette action "prolongerait vers l'amont" et rendrait assurément plus efficaces les autres actions entreprises auprès des organismes de normalisation et de diffusion de l'information au niveau international, auprès des compagnies de transport et des agences de presse.

[4] Un relevé des horaires internationaux des compagnies aériennes révèle que ce sont les exonymes anglais qui dominent largement. Cette situation est paradoxale, puisqu'on se trouve à n'avoir ainsi, dans plusieurs cas, ni le nom original ni l'exonyme "national" mais ce qu'on pourrait appeler, dans le cas des compagnies de pays non anglophones, un "exonyme exogène". Le fait que la langue anglaise soit la langue technique de l'aviation ne justifie pas cette situation, puisque les horaires sont destinés au public, essentiellement international. De fait, dans les horaires de compagnies aériennes, les exonymes "nationaux" autres qu'anglais sont rares sauf dans quelques pays hispaniques. Par ailleurs, il convient de signaler que quelques compagnies ont adopté les formes originales: Swissair, Air France, Lot (Pologne) devraient servir d'exemples.

DICTIONARY OF RUSSIAN CONVENTIONAL NAMES FOR GEOGRAPHICAL ENTITIES OF FOREIGN COUNTRIES

Report presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*

A programme of regular work is carried on in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics on the normalization of spelling of foreign geographical names. To achieve this aim, rules for rendering geographical names from different foreign languages into Russian are elaborated and introduced for common use as compulsory ones. Such rules provide for necessary unification and stability of name spelling in official documents, maps and other publications. At the same time the rules set forth and resolve the problem of reproducing the original pronunciation of a foreign name as exactly as possible, taking into account the differences in phonetic, grammar and graphic systems of the donor-language and Russian.

Nevertheless, there is in Russian, as in all other languages, a rather large group of conventional place names, that is, names that are rendered with certain deviations from the rules. The extent of such deviations may range from a single letter change to complete lexical substitution. For example, the capital city of the United States, *Washington*, is spelled **Вашингтон** in Russian, though it sounds like **Уошингтон**; the French *Chatillon* is conventionally spelled **Шатильон** instead of the regular **Шатийон**; we use **Большая Фатра** in lieu of **Велька-Фатра** for the Czech *Vel'ka Fatra*; the Russian for the Austrian *Hohe Tauern* is **Высокий Тауэрн**, not

* The original text of this paper, prepared by A. M. Komkov, Vice-Chairman, Permanent Joint Commission on Geographical Names, the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.22.

Хоэ-Тауэрн; on Russian maps one can find **Огненная Земля** for the Spanish name of *Tierra del Fuego*, Argentina; and many similar examples could be adduced.

Up to now lists of conventional names were published only as part of the instructions developed for the Russian rendering of geographical names for particular countries or for groups of countries united by a common language. A single list of conventional names on a world-wide basis has not been compiled so far, though the practical need for such a list is extremely pressing. The *Dictionary of Russian Conventional Names for Geographical Entities of Foreign Countries*, work on which is now in progress in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, is intended to fill up this gap.

There is no need to explain that the existence of such names impedes the identification of features when using geographic maps, tourist guides, scientific and popular literature, or that such names cause misunderstanding when establishing personal contacts and lead to confusion when studying foreign languages: why do we use the "wrong" names if we could speak the "right" way? It is not a mere coincidence that the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in 1972, paid special attention to conventional names and adopted a recommendation to reduce their number to a minimum.

On the other hand, it is because of their existence in the Russian language for many years, or sometimes even many centuries, that such names are called "conventional". They entered the active Russian vocabulary where they produced derivatives (**Шотландия, шотландцы**; **Париж, парижане**) and even fixed word combinations (**Рим, римское право** and **Римский папа**; **Китай, китайская стена** and **китайская грамота**); they were repeatedly used in the works of Lenin and in classic Russian literature (Tolstoy, Dostoyevsky and others) as well as in translations of foreign classic writers.

The compilation of the *Dictionary* of conventional names is aimed at providing a single systematized collection (if not exhaustive, then optimum) of conventional names of foreign geographic features, which will enable us, on the basis of their investigation, to proceed to reduce their number and to substitute national forms for them.

The analysis of the list compiled permitted, first, clarification of the main (i.e., the most widely represented) linguistic forms of conventional names and identification of those kinds of geographical features that most often have conventional names.

The main types of conventional names may be distinguished according to their linguistic forms (regardless of their origin) as follows:

(*a*) Names that took root in Russian in forms that were obsolete or sometimes just incorrectly rendered: **Гамбург** instead of **Хамбург** (German *Hamburg*), **Париж** instead of **Пари** (French *Paris*), **Рим** instead of **Рома** (Italian *Roma*), **Эдинбург** instead of **Эдинборо** (English *Edinburgh*);

(*b*) Names that are entirely different from their national equivalents: **о. Гаити** (Spanish *Española*), **Касабланка** (Arabic *Ed Dâr el Beidâ'*), **прол. Дарданеллы** (Turkish *Çanakkale Boğazi)*, **Албания** (Albanian *Shqipëri*), **Финляндия** (Finnish *Suomi*), **Египет** (Arabic *Miṣr*);

(*c*) Names formed by adding Russian adjectives derived from the name of a locality: **Вандейская равнина** (French *La Plaine*), **Тосканская Маремма** (Italian *Maremma*), **Северо-Шотландское нагорье** (English *Northern Highlands*);

(*d*) Completely or partially translated names: **Скалистые горы** (English *Rocky Mountains*), **Большое Невольничье озеро** (English *Great Slave Lake*), **Берег Слоновой Кости** (French *Côte d'Ivoire*), **Верхняя Луара** (French *Haute Loire*), **Венский Лес** (German *Wienerwald*), **Западный Азербайджан** (Persian *Āẕarbayjān-e Gharbı*), **Венгерская Народная Республика** (Hungarian *Magyar Népköztársaság*), **Соединенные Штаты Америки** (English *United States of America*);

(*e*) Names with Russian noun endings (**-ия, -а/ -я, -ы/ -и**) attached to original roots: **Исландия** (Islandic *Island*); **Моравия** (Czech *Morava*), **Луара, Сена** (French *Loire, Seine*), **Вандея** (French *Vendée*), **Анды** (Spanish *Andes*, plural), **Альпы** (Italian *Alpi*, French *Alpes*, German *Alpen*, plural), **Гималаи** (Hindi *Himalay*);

(*f*) Names expressed by Russian nouns in the genetive case: **о-ва Кука** (English *Cook Islands*), **прол. Дрейка** (English *Drake Passage*);

(*g*) Names with Russian adjective suffixes and endings (**-ов/ -ово, -ский/ -ская/ -ское**) attached to original roots: **Бассов пролив** (English *Bass Strait*), **Арафурское море** (Indonesian *Laut Arafuru*), **Балеарские острова** (Spanish *Islas Baleares*), **Сулинское гирло** (Romanian *Bratul Sulina*);

(*h*) Linguistically mixed forms: **Северо-фризские острова** (German *Nordfriesische Inseln*), **Гудзонов пролив** (English *Hudson Strait*), **Коринфский залив** (Greek *Kólpos Korinthiakós*).

The analysis of Russian conventional names according to the kinds of features to which they are applied demonstrated that the conventional names include the following:

(*a*) The names of almost all countries of the world whose short forms have the Russian ending (**-ия**) and whose long (official) forms are usually translated due to their big informational load: **Объединенное Королевство Великобритании и Северной Ирландии** (English *United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland*), **Социалистическая Республика Вьетнам** (Vietnamese *Công Hoa Xã Hôi Chù Nghĩa Viêt Nam*), **Испанское государство** (Spanish *Estado Español*);

(*b*) The names of many capital and port cities, large economic, historical and cultural centres: **Париж** (French *Paris*), **Калькутта** (Hindi *Kalikātā*), **Каир** (Arabic *El Qāhirah*), **Марсель** (French *Marseille*), **Турин** (Italian *Torino*);

(*c*) The names of historical and geographical regions as well as administrative units: **Золотой берег** (English *Gold Coast*), **Поморье** (Polish *Pomorze*), **Приморская**

Шаранта (French *Charente Maritime*), **Нижняя Австрия** (German *Niederösterreich*);

(*d*) The names of seas, big gulfs, important straits and channels: **Японское море** (Japanese *Nihon Kai*, Korean *Tonghae*), **Бискайский залив** (Spanish *Golfo de Vizcaya* or *Mar Cantábrico*, French *Golfe de Gascogne*), **Суэцкий канал** (Arabic *Qanāt es Suweis*);

(*e*) The names of individual outstanding physical–geographical features (rivers, mountains, islands, lakes, waterfalls etc.): **Темза** (English *Thames River*), **Эльба** (German *Elbe*), **Сена** (French *Seine*), **Арденны** (French *Ardennes*), **Бразильское плоскогорье** (Portuguese *Planalto Brasileiro*), **Тивериадское озеро** (Hebrew *Yam Kinneret*, Arabic *Buḥairat Ṭabarîyah*);

(*f*) The names of historical and archaeological memorials: **Ангкор** (Khmer *Angko*); **Геркуланум** (Italian *Ercolano*), **Колизей** (Italian *Coloseo*), **Карфаген** (Arabic *Qarṭajannah*);

(*g*) The names of individual large-scale economic enterprises: **Высотная Асуанская плотина** (Arabic *Sadd el 'Āli*).

Some conventional names form larger or smaller "families": the conventional form of the key element entails the Russification of other elements attached to it. For example, the Russian-rendered form of **Альпы** for the Alps gives rise to numerous names of their parts, local forms of which belong to different languages: **Алльгойские Альпы** (German *Allgäuer Alpen*), **Лигурийские Альпы** (Italian *Alpi Liguri*), **Грайские Альпы** (French *Alpes Graies*) and others. The name **Силезия** (Polish *Śląsk*, Czech *Slezsko*, German *Schlesien*) is the core of the "family" comprising **Верхнесилезский бассейн** (Polish *Zagłębie Górnośląskie*), **Нижнесилезские боры** (Polish *Dolnośląskie Bory*) and others. The Russian form **Дунай** entails the translation of differential attributes in the names of its parts: **Малый Дунай** (Hungarian *Kis-Duna*, Czech *Mali Duna*), **Шорокшарский Дунай** (Czech *Šorokšari Duna*) and the like.

It is rather difficult if not impossible to collect all forms of this kind, therefore the derivative names are not included in the *Dictionary* and the key-names are marked with asterisks.

A comparatively complete list of conventional names compiled by us permits us to evaluate properly the significance and the degree of conventionality of each name and to provide recommendations on the possible exclusion of some of them from the category of conventional names.

Unquestionably, there is a stable tradition governing the use of conventional names for countries and their capitals, historical regions, large ocean features (seas, gulfs, straits), the largest orographic features and biogeographic communities as well as for major rivers. As a rule such names are either a combination of a foreign root with Russian suffixes and endings or a complete or partial translation.

But there is another group of conventional names that should be treated in a different way. These are conventional names that are not widely known and for whose employment there exists no stable tradition, although they do occur on maps and in literature. Many of them appeared originally as a result of lack of linguistic knowledge or wrong transcription. In this case we have grounds to reject the tradition and to substitute the correct and modern forms for the wrong, outdated ones. For example, we have managed without notable loss to replace the form **Лос-Анжелос** with the correct **Лос-Анджелес** (*Los Angeles*, United States of America). The name **Балканские горы** disappeared from our maps and was replaced by **Стара-Планина** (Bulgaria); the name **Халл** is already substituting for the conventional **Гулль** (*Hall*, United Kingdom). It seems possible to give up some translated names beginning by refusing to translate differential attributes (such as great little, high low, northern or southern) when they appear in the names of small features: instead of **Большая фани** and **Малая фани** to use **фани-и-Мад** and **фани-и-Вогель** (*Fani i Madh*, *Fani i Vogel*, Albania); instead of **Высокий** and **Низкий Есеник** to use **Груби-Есеник** and **Низки-Есеник** (*Hrubý Jeseník*, *Nízký Jeseník*, Czechoslovakia); and so on.

Rather a numerous group consists of names expressed by nouns in the genitive case or by possessive adjectives: **о-ва Кука** (English *Cook Islands*), **прол. Дрейка** (English *Drake Passage*), **Тасманово море** (English *Tasman Sea*), **Магелланов пролив** (Spanish *Estrecho de Magallanes*). All of these are Russian forms derived from foreign personal names introduced into Russian: **Кук, Тасман, Дрейк, Магеллан** (*Cook*, *Tasman*, *Drake*, *Magallanes*). Names of this kind can hardly be considered as conventional ones, though in future such forms should be avoided.

There is one more category of geographical feature names that can hardly be considered as conventional, even though they vary from language to language. These are the names of features located beyond a national jurisdiction or covering the territory of several countries, e.g. **Атлантический океан, Средиземное море, Черное море, Азия, Америка, Европа, Перуанская впадина, Центральноамериканский желоб** and the like. Such names do not have—cannot have—any national form; each language has its own name forms for them, which represent either phonetic variations (e.g. "Asia", "Europe" etc. in different languages) or grammatical variations (**Атлантический океан**, *Atlantic Ocean*, *Océano Atlántico*, etc.) or lexical variations of the same name **Тихий океан** *Pacific Ocean*, *Stiller-Ozean* etc.).

* * *

The material in the *Dictionary* is presented in five columns. Conventional Russian names appear in the first column, in alphabetical order. If the conventional form coincides with one or more national forms of the name it is explained by a parenthetical indication of the language(s), e.g. **Карпаты (тр. и польск.)**. The second column contains a designation of the kind of feature named, in mnemonic codes. The third column gives the

national name form(s) (one or several), with an indication of the source language. The names from Cyrillic- or Roman-writing countries are reproduced in original script; names from other countries are reproduced in the official script or in most widespread Romanized form. The names of physical features are usually accompanied by corresponding generic terms and the specific part of the name is underlined. Generics for the administrative units are placed after the toponyms, from which they are separated by a comma. The fourth column incorporates the Russian normalized names that should be used in the absence of or instead of the conventional one. The geographical term is not repeated in this case. The fifth column is meant for indication of the territory or water body where the named feature is located.

In the preface to the *Dictionary* we appeal to all readers to inform us of their opinions as to whether it is possible to reject certain names that are now regarded as conventional and, if so, what particular names could be changed.

ESSAI DE CLASSIFICATION DES EXONYMES
Rapport présenté par la France*

Summary

The paper is an attempt at classifying exonyms on the basis of the origin, nature and extent of the differences noted in the report between "exonyms" and "local names". The system of classification is illustrated by many examples relating to countries and features as well as to towns.

Annexed to the paper is a list (confined to European towns) of the exonyms most frequently encountered in French publications.

Resumen

La comunicación se presenta en forma de un intento de clasificación de los exónimos basado en el origen, la naturaleza y la importancia de las diferencias observadas entre "exónimo" y "denominación local". La clasificación se ilustra con numerosos ejemplos relativos tanto a los países o a los detalles topográficos como a las ciudades.

Se anexa a la comunicación una lista de los exónimos que se encuentran con mayor frecuencia en las publicaciones francesas. Está limitada a las ciudades europeas.

*

* *

Le Groupe de travail sur les définitions, constitué au sein du Groupe spécial d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques, a défini ainsi l'exonyme : "Nom propre employé dans une certaine langue pour désigner un objet géographique situé à l'extérieur du territoire dans lequel cette langue a un statut officiel et différent dans sa forme du nom propre utilisé dans la ou les langues officielles du territoire où l'objet géographique est situé." Le Groupe d'experts a constaté que dans le passé les expressions "nom conventionnel", "nom consacré" et "exonyme" ont été utilisées indifféremment par les pays dans la même acception; pour éviter cette confusion, il a recommandé l'usage du terme "exonyme" à l'exclusion de tout autre dans le sens rappelé précédemment. Il a pu ainsi mettre en opposition avec le terme exonyme l'expression "nom traditionnel", qu'il a définie comme un "nom qui, sous sa forme écrite, est d'un usage répandu, courant et durable à l'intérieur d'une communauté linguistique donnée, mais qui diffère de toute dénomination officielle locale".

Le présent rapport se propose de déterminer une classification des exonymes fondée sur l'origine, la nature et l'importance des différences constatées entre "exonyme" et "dénomination locale". La classification est illustrée par de nombreux exemples concernant aussi bien les pays ou les détails topographiques que les villes. Certains noms étrangers tels que le Texas, les Açores et les Andes sont repris par le français avec adjonction d'un article initial ou traduction de l'article local. Dans le cadre de la classification, ils ne sont pas considérés comme des exonymes. De même ne sont pas considérés comme des exonymes les noms géographiques français tels que Panama, Iran, Irak et Pakistan qui ne diffèrent du nom local que par l'absence des signes diacritiques.

Dans le système de classification présenté, il n'existe pas de cloisons étanches entre les différentes catégories et les caractéristiques de ces catégories peuvent se combiner entre elles dans un grand nombre d'autres exonymes possibles. L'intitulé des catégories étant assez souple pour permettre d'y classer des exonymes d'aspects divers, chacun d'entre eux pourra être qualifié par plusieurs attributs : sa structure, sa construction, sa composition, son origine et son mode de formation. Les trois premiers critères seront surtout pertinents pour les exonymes composés. Les deux derniers seront les critères privilégiés des noms propres.

Les délégués participant à la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, tenue à Londres en mai 1972, ont constaté que les exonymes des objets géographiques peu importants tendent à être remplacés par les dénominations officielles locales, mais que les exonymes des objets importants font partie intégrante du système lexical d'une langue et qu'ils ne peuvent donc pas être éliminés sans appauvrir le vocabulaire de cette langue, et qu'enfin leur remplace-

* Le texte original de ce rapport a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.68 et Add.1.

ment par le nom officiel local créerait pour les utilisateurs étrangers des difficultés d'orthographe et de prononciation.

Ils ont néanmoins reconnu que cette prolifération d'exonymes pouvait prêter à confusion dans certaines activités internationales et notamment en matière de communication ou de circulation routière. C'est pourquoi la Conférence a recommandé, par les résolutions 28 et 29[1], que les organismes nationaux chargés des noms géographiques dressent la liste des exonymes couramment employés et examinent la possibilité d'en réduire l'emploi dans les ouvrages destinés à être utilisés dans leur pays.

Suivant la recommandation exprimée par la Conférence, la Commission de toponymie de l'Institut géographique national (IGN) a dressé une liste des exonymes les plus fréquemment rencontrés dans les publications françaises. La Commission l'a limitée aux villes d'Europe et elle a exclu les noms de villes historiques qui ne sont aujourd'hui que des lieux inhabités offrant un intérêt touristique, comme Olympie ou Delphes (voir l'annexe I).

La Commission de toponymie a utilisé pour sa communication le terme "traduction" dans le sens d'une "opération consistant à produire dans une langue, dite d'arrivée, l'équivalent naturel le plus proche d'un message exprimé dans une autre langue, dite de départ, en tenant compte à la fois de la signification du message et de son style".

Les déterminants sont compris comme "les constituants d'un groupe d'éléments linguistiques qui dépendent du nom, tête ou constituant principal de ce groupe. En ce cas, les déterminants sont les articles, les adjectifs, les compléments du nom; ce sont les éléments qui actualisent le nom (déterminé), qui lui donnent ses déterminations".

Pour en revenir à l'observation déjà faite à propos de l'absence de cloisons étanches dans la classification, on peut remarquer que celle-ci fait qu'un certain nombre d'exonymes apparaissent comme des "exonymes combinés", en ce sens que leur structure et leur formation répondent à des critères multiples, qui ont tous servi individuellement à déterminer les différentes catégories de la classification.

Du point de vue de la structure, des exonymes comme Reggio de Calabre et Reggio d'Emilie (Italie) apparaissent comme essentiellement constitués par des noms propres, mais l'un, Reggio, pris isolément, ne peut pas être considéré comme un exonyme, alors que les deux autres, Calabre et Emilie, appartiendraient en tant que toponymes isolés à la catégorie 3-I-4 (voir l'annexe II).

Dans Francfort-sur-le-Main et Fribourg-en-Brisgau, en République fédérale d'Allemagne, on décèle l'existence d'un critère de traduction portant sur les prépositions et articles, d'un critère de déformation ou de corruption portant sur la diphtongue *ei* et d'un critère d'adaptation phonétique portant sur la voyelle *u*; enfin, on peut noter que Main pris isolément n'est pas un exonyme.

Dans Angleterre (Royaume-Uni), on note le critère de traduction portant sur une partie du mot unique Angleterre, alors que, dans le reste du même mot, on se trouve en présence d'un critère de déformation ou de corruption (vieil anglais, Engla lond), ou, éventuellement, d'une évolution différente à partir d'une origine commune (Anglen, région du Slesvig, en République fédérale d'Allemagne).

Enfin, Louisbourg (Ludwigsburg) en République fédérale d'Allemagne, qui se présente comme un nom propre en un seul mot, est originellement constitué par l'association d'un nom commun et d'un prénom; l'exonyme combine la traduction du prénom et l'adaptation phonétique du nom commun aux habitudes orthographiques du français.

Annexe I

LISTE D'EXONYMES[a]

1	EXONYMES COMPOSÉS D'UN OU DE PLUSIEURS NOMS COMMUNS ET DE LEURS DÉTERMINANTS À L'EXCLUSION DE TOUT NOM PROPRE	
	Ces exonymes proviennent de la traduction du nom local. Cette traduction peut être elliptique; dans ce cas, certains éléments du nom local n'ont pas de correspondants en français, la signification du message n'étant pas altérée.	
1.1	*Traduction du nom local*	
1.1.1	*L'exonyme est constitué d'un substantif seul*:	
	L'Equateur	Ecuador
	La Haye (Pays-Bas)	den Haag
1.1.2	*L'exonyme est constitué de substantifs et d'adjectifs*	
1.1.2.1	*Un seul substantif déterminé par un ou plusieurs adjectifs*:	
	La Forêt-Noire (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	der Schwarzwald
	Les Pays-Bas	Nederland
	Montagne Blanche (Tchéoslovaquie)	Bila Hora
	Grande Vallée (Etats-Unis d'Amérique)	Central Valley
	Grand Lac Salé (Etats-Unis d'Amérique)	Great Salt Lake
	Deux-Ponts (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Zweibrücken
1.1.2.2	*Deux substantifs dont l'un est le complément de l'autre*:	
	La Terre de Feu (Chili et Argentine)	Tierra del Fuego
	Iles du Commandeur (URSS)	Komandorskije Ostrova
	Rivière des Esclaves (Canada)	Slave River
	Union des Républiques socialistes soviétiques	Sojuz Sovetskich Socialističeskich Respublik
	Iles de l'Amirauté (Papouasie-Nouvelle-Guinée)	Admiralty Islands
	Iles du Cap-Vert	Ilhas do Cabo Verde
1.2	*Traduction elliptique du nom local*:	
	Le Cap (Afrique du Sud)	Cape Town ou Kaapstadt
2	EXONYMES COMPOSÉS D'AU MOINS UN NOM PROPRE ACCOMPAGNÉ D'UN OU DE PLUSIEURS NOMS COMMUNS ET DE LEURS DÉTERMINANTS	

[1] *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.2), chap. III.

[a] Une liste de villes d'Europe établie par catégories, telles qu'elles sont définies ci-dessous, figure à l'annexe II.

2.1 *Exonymes provenant de la traduction du nom local :*

Andorre-la-Vieille (Principauté d'Andorre)	Andorra la Vella
La Nouvelle-Galles du Sud (Australie)	New South Wales
Les Etats-Unis d'Amérique	The United States of America
La Transbaïkalie (URSS)	Zabajkalje
Archipel de la Nouvelle-Sibérie (URSS)	Novosibirskije Ostrova
Ile de Pâques (Chili)	Isla de Pascua
Saint-Jacques-de-Compostelle (Espagne)	Santiago de Compostela

2.2 *Exonymes se présentant comme la traduction du nom local*

2.2.1 *Eléments en correspondance :*

La Nouvelle-Zélande (du néerlandais Nieuw Zeeland)	New Zealand
Le Nouveau-Mexique (Etats-Unis d'Amérique) (de l'espagnol Nuevo Méjico)	New Mexico
Le Détroit de Magellan (Chili) (du portugais Magalhens)	el Estrecho de Magallanes

2.2.2 *Eléments additionnels :*

Aix-la-Chapelle (Allemagne, République fédérale d') [du latin Aquae Grani]	Aachen

2.3 *Exonymes provenant de la traduction partielle du nom local*

2.3.1 *Noms propres tirés du nom local par emprunt direct*

D'une manière générale, peuvent se ranger dans cette catégorie les toponymes composés constitués d'un terme générique et d'un nom propre de lieu ou de personne pour lequel n'existe aucun usage traditionnel français; tels que :

Iles Marshall (Etats-Unis d'Amérique)	Marshall Islands
Iles Falkland (Royaume-Uni)	Falkland Islands

2.3.2 *Noms propres présentant des altérations :*

Vieux-Brisach (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Alt-Breisach

3 EXONYMES COMPOSÉS EXCLUSIVEMENT D'UN OU DE PLUSIEURS NOMS PROPRES

3.1 *Exonymes provenant de la même dénomination originelle que le nom local*

3.1.1 *Exonymes résultant d'une modification graphique du nom local par adaptation phonétique aux habitudes orthographiques du français*

Peuvent se ranger dans cette catégorie tous les noms français qui ne diffèrent des noms locaux que par l'addition d'un *e* muet en finale, abstraction faite des signes diacritiques, tels que:

L'Islande	Island
La Finlande	Suomi et Finland

Peuvent aussi se ranger dans cette catégorie les exonymes suivants :

Iéna (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Jena
Cassel (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Kassel
Augsbourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Augsburg
Hambourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Hamburg
Clèves (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Kleve
Coblence (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Koblenz
Cobourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Koburg
Duisbourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Duisburg
Oldenbourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Oldenburg
Wurtzbourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Würzburg
Le Pérou	el Perú
L'Irlande	Ireland

3.1.2 *Exonymes résultant d'une modification graphique du nom local par adaptation sémantique aux structures linguistiques du français :*

L'Argentine	la Argentina
La Bolivie	Bolivia
La Colombie	Colombia
Louisbourg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Ludwigsburg

3.1.3 *Exonymes résultant de la déformation ou de la corruption du nom local*

3.1.3.1 *Noms locaux écrits en caractères latins :*

Bucarest (Roumanie)	Bucureşti
Varsovie (Pologne)	Warszawa
Cracovie (Pologne)	Kraków
Hanovre (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	Hannover
Leyde (Pays-Bas)	Leiden
Londres (Royaume-Uni)	London
Spire (République démocratique allemande)	Speyer

3.1.3.2 *Nom local écrit en caractères non latins*

Ces exonymes résultent :

a) Soit d'une transcription phonétique approchée, dont le degré de fidélité et de précision peut être très variable;

b) Soit d'une translittération d'une rigueur incertaine, fondée sur les habitudes orthographiques du français.

Il sera le plus souvent très difficile de connaître l'origine de l'exonyme et le processus qui a conduit à sa forme actuelle. Il faut de plus noter que les systèmes de transcription ou de translittération peuvent rarement être parfaits et universels, et qu'ils varient avec le temps, aussi bien en France que dans le pays où se situe l'objet géographique considéré. Ainsi, une modification relative du système de translittération, par exemple en France et dans le pays où se trouve l'objet géographique considéré, aura pour conséquence de transformer en exonyme ce qui était jusque-là une dénomination propre.

Le Cambodge	Kàmpŭchéa
Kiev (URSS)	Kijev
Moscou (URSS)	Moskva
Nijni-Novgorod (URSS)	Nižnij Novgorod
Sofia (Bulgarie)	Sofija
Arkhangel (URSS)	Archangel'sk
Médine (Arabie Saoudite)	al Madīna

3.1.4 *Exonymes résultant d'une évolution différente de celle dont résulte le nom local*

Florence / Firenze	Italie	(Du latin Florentia)
Rome / Roma	Italie	(Du latin Roma)
Agrigente / Agrigento	Italie	(Du latin Agrigentum)
Athènes / Athinai	Grèce	(Du grec Athênai)
Capoue / Capua	Italie	(Du latin Capua)
Coni / Cuneo	Italie	(Du latin Cuneus)
Gênes / Genova	Italie	(Du latin Genua)
Milan / Milano	Italie	(Du latin Mediolanum)

Cologne / Köln	Allemagne, République fédérale d'	(Du latin Colonia)
Naples / Napoli	Italie	(Du grec Neapolis)
Valence / Valencia	Espagne	(Du latin Valentia)
Brunswick / Braunschweig	Allemagne, République fédérale d'	(De Brunswich, 861; du latin *vicus*)

3.1.5 *Exonymes résultant d'une modification graphique du nom local par adaptation aux règles de l'évolution phonétique du français à partir de la langue mère commune*

3.1.5.1 *Eléments en correspondance :*

Aoste (Italie)	Aosta
Carignan (Italie)	Carignano
Caserte (Italie)	Caserta
Ferrare (Italie)	Ferrara
Cérignole (Italie)	Cerignola
Barcelone (Espagne)	Barcelona
Bragance (Portugal)	Bragança
Ivrée (Italie)	Ivrea

3.1.5.2 *Eléments ajoutés :*

La Marsaille (Italie)	Marsaglia

3.1.5.3 *Eléments omis*:

Cérisoles (Italie)	Ceresole Alba

3.2 *Exonymes provenant d'une dénomination différente de celle dont provient le nom local*

3.2.1 *Exonyme et nom local dérivent d'origines différentes :*

Ratisbonne (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	(De Radaspona)
Regensburg (Allemagne, République fédérale d')	(De Regen)
Allemagne / Deutschland	(Du latin Alamanniae, Alamanni)

3.2.2 *Exonyme provenant d'un emprunt à une tierce langue*

3.2.2.1 *La tierce langue est la langue d'origine :*

Les Bermudes (Royaume-Uni) / Bermuda	(De l'espagnol Bermudas)

3.2.2.2 *La tierce langue n'est pas la langue d'origine :*

Austerlitz (Tchécoslovaquie)	Slavkov
Formose (du portugais Formosa)	T'aiwan
Le Japon (du chinois jê pên kuo)	Nippon
Scutari (de l'italien) (Albanie)	Shkodër
Kharbin (du russe) (Chine)	Pin-Chiang
Arménie (du grec Armenia)	Hayastan

3.3 *Faux exonymes*

Il convient de ranger séparément les noms de lieux qui, aux termes de la définition rappelée au début de cette communication, sont des exonymes mais qui, de fait, sont les dénominations originelles des objets géographiques considérés ou des entités dont ces derniers sont issus. Il paraît possible de les désigner sous le nom de faux exonymes ou pseudo-exonymes.

La Nouvelle-Orléans (Etats-Unis d'Amérique)	New Orleans
La Louisiane (Etats-Unis d'Amérique)	Louisiana
Port-Saïd (Egypte)	Bûr Sa'îd
Sainte-Lucie (Royaume-Uni)	Saint Lucia

* * *

En conclusion, la classification présentée, qui se fonde à la fois sur la structure et sur le mode de formation en français des exonymes, devrait pouvoir constituer une base de travail en vue de recherches plus poussées. Compte tenu cependant des aspects multiples que peuvent prendre les exonymes dans les langues officielles existantes, il est à prévoir que d'autres contributions seront apportées sur ce sujet au cours de la troisième Conférence des Nations Unies pour la normalisation des noms géographiques, enrichissant ainsi nos connaissances de base.

Annexe II

VILLES D'EUROPE

Nom français usuel	*Nom local usuel*	*Pays*	*Langue*	*Catégorie*[a]
AGRIGENTE	AGRIGENTO (latin : Agrigentum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
AIX-LA-CHAPELLE	AACHEN (latin : Aquae Grani)	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	2.2.2.
AMATHONTE	AMATHOUS (grec : Amathous)	Chypre	Grec	3.1.4.
ANCÔNE	ANCONA (latin : Ancona et Ancon)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
ANDORRE-LA-VIEILLE	ANDORRA LA VELLA	Andorre	Espagnol	2.1.
(ANTIOCHE	ANTAKYA	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4.)
ANVERS	ANTWERPEN	Belgique	Flamand	3.1.4.
AQUILÉE	AQUILEIA (latin : Aquileia)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
ARGOSTOLI	ARGOSTOLION	Grèce	Grec	3.1.3.1.
ASSISE	ASSISI (latin : Asisium)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
ATHÈNES	ATHÍNAI (grec : Athênai)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
AUGSBOURG	AUGSBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
AUSTERLITZ	SLAVKOV	Tchécoslovaquie	Tchèque	3.2.2.2.
BAIES	BAIA (latin : Baiae)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
BARCELONE	BARCELONA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.5.
BELGRADE	BEOGRAD	Yougoslavie	Croate	3.1.4.
BÉNÉVENT	BENEVENTO (latin: Beneventum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.

Nom français usuel	*Nom local usuel*	*Pays*	*Langue*	*Catégorie*[a]
BERGAME	BERGAMO (latin : Bergomum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
BOLOGNE	BOLOGNA (latin : Bononia)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
BRAGANCE	BRAGANÇA	Portugal	Portugais	3.1.5.1.
BRANDEBOURG	BRANDENBURG	Rép. dém. allemande	Allemand	3.1.1. 3.1.3.1.
BRÊME	BREMEN	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1. 3.1.3.1.
BROUSSE	BURSA (latin : Prusa)	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4.)
BRUNSWICK	BRAUNSCHWEIG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.4.
BUCAREST	BUCUREŞTI	Roumanie	Roumain	3.1.3.1.
CADIX	CÁDIZ (latin : Gades)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
CALAMATA	KALAMATA ou KALAMAI	Grèce	Grec	3.1.1.
CANÉE (LA)	KHANIA	Grèce	Grec	3.1.5.1.
CANTORBÉRY	CANTERBURY	Royaume-Uni	Anglais	3.1.3.1.
CAPOUE	CAPUA (latin : Capua)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
CARIGNAN	CARIGNANO	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
CARLSRUHE	KARLSRUHE	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
CARRARE	CARRARA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
CARTAGÈNE	CARTAGENA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
CASERTE	CASERTA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
CASSEL	KASSEL	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
CATANE	CATANIA (latin : Catina)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
CÉRIGNOLE	CERIGNOLA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
CÉRISOLES	CERESOLE ALBA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.3.
CLÈVES	KLEVE	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
CLOSTERCAMP	KLOSTERKAMP	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
COBLENCE	KOBLENZ	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
COBOURG	KOBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
COIMBRE	COIMBRA (latin : Conimbriga)	Portugal	Portugais	3.1.4.
COLOGNE	KÖLN (latin : Colonia)	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.4.
CÔME	COMO (latin : Comum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
COMOTINI	KOMITINI	Grèce	Grec	3.1.1.
CONI	CUNEO	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
CONSTANCE	KONSTANZ	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
COPENHAGUE	KØBENHAVN	Danemark	Danois	3.1.3.1.
CORDOUE	CÓRDOBA (latin : Corduba)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
CORINTHE	KORÍNTHOS (grec : Korinthos)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
CRACOVIE	KRAKÓW	Pologne	Polonais	3.1.3.1.
CRÉMONE	CREMONA (latin : Cremona)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
CUXHAVEN	KUXHAVEN	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
DEUX-PONTS	ZWEIBRÜCKEN	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	1.1.2.1.
DRESDE	DRESDEN	Allemande (Rép. dém.)	Allemand	3.1.3.1.
DUISBOURG	DUISBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
EDIMBOURG	EDINBURGH	Royaume-Uni	Anglais	3.1.1.
ÉLATÉE	ELATEIA (grec : Elateia)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
ELSENEUR	HELSINGØR	Danemark	Danois	3.1.3.1.
ÉRÉTRIE	ERETRIA (grec : Eretria)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
FAMAGOUSTE	AMMOKHÔSTOS (latin : Fama Augusta)	Chypre	Grec	3.2.2.1.
FERRARE	FERRARA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
FLESSINGUE	VLISSINGEN	Pays-Bas	Néerlandais	3.1.3.1.
FLORENCE	FIRENZE (latin : Florentia)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
FONTARABIE	FUENTERRABIA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.3.1.
FORNOUE	FORNOVO	Italie	Italien	3.1.3.1.

Nom français usuel	*Nom local usuel*	*Pays*	*Langue*	*Catégorie*[a]
FRANCFORT-SUR-LE-MAIN	FRANKFURT AM MAIN	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	Combiné
FRANCFORT-SUR-L'ODER	FRANKFURT AN DER ODER	Allemande (Rép. dém.)	Allemand	Combiné
FRIBOURG-EN-BRISGAU	FREIBURG IM BREISGAU	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	Combiné
GAÈTE	GAETA (latin : Caieta)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
GALATZI	GALATI	Roumanie	Roumain	3.1.3.1.
GALLIPOLI	GELIBOLU (grec : Kallipolis)	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4.
GÊNES	GENOVA (latin : Genua)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
GÉRONE	GERONA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.5.1.
GRENADE	GRANADA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.3.1.
GRONINGUE	GRONINGEN	Pays-Bas	Néerlandais	3.1.3.1.
HAMBOURG	HAMBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
HANOVRE	HANNOVER	Allemagne (Rép.féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.3.1.
IÉNA	JENA	Allemande (Rép. dém.)	Allemand	3.1.1.
IVRÉE	IVREA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
JULIERS	JÜLICH (latin : Juliacum)	Allemagne (Rep. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.4.
KIEV	KIJEV	URSS	Russe	3.1.3.2.
LA COROGNE	LA CORUNA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.5.1.
LA HAYE	DEN HAAG OU 's-Gravenhage	Pays-Bas	Néerlandais	1.1.1
LANCASTRE	LANCASTER	Royaume-Uni	Anglais	3.1.4.
LEUCTRES	LEVKTRA (grec : Leuktra)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
LEYDE	LEIDEN	Pays-Bas	Néerlandais	3.1.3.1.
LIMBOURG-SUR-LA-LAHN	LIMBURG AN DER LAHN	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	Combiné
LISBONNE	LISBOA	Portugal	Portugais	3.1.3.
LIVOURNE	LIVORNO	Italie	Italien	3.1.3.1.
LONDRES	LONDON	Royaume-Uni	Anglais	3.1.4.
LORETTE	LORETO	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
LOUISBOURG	LUDWIGSBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	Combiné
LUCQUES	LUCCA (latin : Luca)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
MANTOUE	MANTOVA (latin : Mantua)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
MARBOURG	MARBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
MARSAILLE (LA)	MARSAGLIA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.2.
MAYENCE	MAINZ	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.3.1.
MÉGARE	MEGARA (grec : Megara)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
MESSÈNE	MESSINI (grec : Messênê)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
MESSINE	MESSINA (latin : Messana)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
MILAN	MILANO (latin : Mediolanum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
MODÈNE	MODENA (latin : Mutina)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
MOSCOU	MOSKVA	URSS	Russe	3.1.3.2.
MUNICH	MÜNCHEN	Allemagne (Rep. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.3.1.
MURCIE	MURCIA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.5.1.
MYCÈNES	MYKINAI (grec : Mukênai)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
MYTILÈNE	MYTILINI (grec : Mutilênê)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
NAPLES	NAPOLI (grec : Neapolis)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
NAUPACTE	NAVPAKTOS (grec : Naupaktos)	Grece	Grec	3.1.4.
NAUPLIE	NAVPLION (grec : Nauplios)	Grece	Grec	3.1.4.
NICOSIE	LEVKOSIA LEFKOŞE	Chypre	Grec Turc	3.1.3.1.
NOLE	NOLA (latin : Nola)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.

Nom français usuel	*Nom local usuel*	*Pays*	*Langue*	*Catégorie*[a]
NOVARE	NOVARA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
NUREMBERG	NÜRNBERG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.3.1.
OLDENBOURG	OLDENBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
OLYNTHE	OLYNTHOS (grec : Olunthos)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
OSTIE	OSTIA (latin : Ostia)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
OTRANTE	OTRANTO	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
PADOUE	PADOVA	Italie	Italien	3.1.3.1.
PALERME	PALERMO	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
PAMPELUNE	PAMPLONA (latin : Pompelona)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
PARME	PARMA (latin : Parma)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
PATRAS	PATRAI (grec : patrai)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
PAVIE	PAVIA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
(PERGAME	BERGAMA (grec : Pergamon)	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4.)
PÉROUSE	PERUGIA (latin : Perusia)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
PIRÉE (LE)	PIRAIEVS (grec : Peiraieus)	Grèce	Grec	Combiné
PISE	PISA (latin : Pisae)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
PLAISANCE	PIACENZA (latin : Placentia)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
PORT-EMPÉDOCLE	PORTO EMPEDOCLE	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
POTIDÉE	POTIDAIA (grec : Potidaia)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
POUZZOLES	POZZUOLI (latin : Puteoli)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
PRAGUE	PRAHA	Tchécoslovaquie	Tchèque	3.1.3.1.
PRÉNESTE	PALESTRINA (latin : Praeneste)	Italie	Italien	3.2.1.
RAGUSE	RAGUSA (latin : Ragusa)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
RATISBONNE	REGENSBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.2.1.
RAVENNE	RAVENNA (latin : Ravenna)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
REGGIO DE CALABRE	REGGIO DI CALABRIA	Italie	Italien	Combiné
REGGIO D'ÉMILIE	REGGIO NELL'EMILIA	Italie	Italien	Combiné
RHODES	RODOS (grec : Rodos)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
ROME	ROMA (latin : Roma)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
SAGONTE	SAGUNTO (latin : Saguntum)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
SAINT-JACQUES-DE-COMPOSTELLE	SANTIAGO DE COMPOSTELA	Espagne	Espagnol	2.1.
SAINT-MARIN	SAN MARINO	Saint-Marin	Italien	2.1.
SAINT-SÉBASTIEN	SAN SEBASTIÁN	Espagne	Espagnol	2.1.
SALAMANQUE	SALAMANCA (latin : Salmantica)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
SALAMINE	SALAMIS (grec : Salamis)	Chypre	Grec	3.1.4.
SALERNE	SALERNO (latin : Salernum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
SALZBOURG	SALZBURG	Autriche	Allemand	3.1.1.
SALUCES	SALUZZO	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
SARAGOSSE	ZARAGOZA (latin : Caesaraugusta)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
SARREBRUCK	SAARBRÜCK EN	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
SARRELOUIS	SAARLOUIS	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.
SAVONE	SAVONA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
SCUTARI (français et italien)	SHKODAR	Albanie	Albanais	3.2.2.2.
SÉGOVIE	SEGOVIA (latin : Segovia)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
SÉVILLE	SEVILLA	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
SIENNE	SIENA (latin : Sena)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.

Nom français usuel	*Nom local usuel*	*Pays*	*Langue*	*Catégorie*[a]
SILISTRIE	SILISTRA	Bulgarie	Bulgare	3.1.3.1.
(SINOPE	SINOP (grec : Sinopê)	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4.)
(SMYRNE	IZMIR (grec : Smurnê)	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4.)
SOFIA	SOFIJA	Bulgarie	Bulgare	3.1.3.2.
SORRENTE	SORRENTO (latin : Surrentum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
SPARTE	SPARTI (grec : Spartê)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
SPOLÈTE	SPOLETO (latin : Spoletium)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
SPIRE	SPEYER	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.3.1.
SUSE	SUSA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
SYRACUSE	SIRACUSA (latin : Syracusae)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
TARENTE	TARANTO	Italie	Italien	3.1.3.1.
TARQUINIES	TARQUINIA (latin : Tarquinii)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
TARRAGONE	TARRAGONA (latin : Tarraco)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
TERRACINE	TERRACINA (latin : Tarracina)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
THÈBES	THIVAI (grec : Thêbai)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
THESSALONIQUE ou SALONIQUE	THESSALONIKI (grec : Thessalonikê)	Grèce	Grec	3.1.4.
TOLÈDE	TOLEDO (latin : Toletum)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
(TRÉBIZONDE	TRABZON (grec : Trapezous)	Turquie	Turc	3.1.4.)
TRENTE	TRENTO (latin : Tridentum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
TRÊVES	TRIER (latin : Augusta Treverorum)	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.4.
TRÉVISE	TREVISO (latin : Tarvisium)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
TURIN	TORINO (latin : Augusta Taurinorum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
URBIN	URBINO (latin : Urbinum)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
VALENCE	VALENCIA (latin : Valentia)	Espagne	Espagnol	3.1.4.
VALETTE (LA)	VALETTA	Malte	Anglais, Maltais	3.3.
VARSOVIE	WARSZAWA	Pologne	Polonais	3.1.3.1.
VENISE	VENEZIA	Italie	Italien	3.1.3.1.
VERCEIL	VERCELLI (latin : Vercellae)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
VÉRONE	VERONA (latin : Verona)	Italie	Italien	3.1.4.
VICENCE	VICENZA	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
VIENNE	WIEN (latin: Vindobona; Vienna 880)	Autriche	Allemand	3.1.4.
VIEUX-BRISACH	BREISACH ou ALTBREISACH	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	2.3.2.
VINTIMILLE	VENTIMIGLIA	Italie	Italien	3.1.3.1.
VITERBE	VITERBO	Italie	Italien	3.1.5.1.
VOLO	VOLOS	Grèce	Grec	3.1.3.2.
WURTZBOURG	WÜRZBURG	Allemagne (Rép. féd. d')	Allemand	3.1.1.

[a] Pour la définition de chaque catégorie, se reporter à l'annexe I.

CATÉGORIES D'EXONYMES ET LEUR DEGRÉ D'UTILISATION

Rapport présenté par la Roumanie*

En application des résolutions 28 et 29 adoptées par la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, concernant la limitation de l'emploi des exonymes dans chaque langue[1], la Roumanie présente ci-après une liste préliminaire d'exonymes qui pourront être éliminés (voir annexes I et II).

A une époque au cours de laquelle la rédaction des noms géographiques ne constituait pas une préoccupation d'ordre rigoureusement scientifique, en roumain, comme en d'autres langues, des exonymes ont été introduits, dans des conditions et par des voies différentes, dans un passé plus ou moins éloigné ou rapproché. Il est indubitable que jadis les exonymes étaient employés plus fréquemment et en plus grand nombre.

La tendance générale contemporaine, accentuée au cours des dernières décennies, est d'éliminer progressivement les exonymes de la langue roumaine. Le processus historique normal, constaté aussi en d'autres langues, a été évidemment accéléré au cours des dernières années par des actions concertées de normalisation initiées sur le plan international. Un des premiers partisans de l'idée de l'élimination des exonymes de la langue roumaine a été, dès 1921, Stefan Hepites, vice-président de la Société roumaine de géographie.

Après la seconde guerre mondiale, dans le cadre de l'action générale de normalisation des noms géographiques en Roumanie, commencée dès 1958, on a eu pour objectif la réglementation systématique et unitaire des noms traditionnels (exonymes). On a commencé, bien avant que les recommandations sur le plan international soient formulées, l'introduction généralisée, par étapes, de noms officiels, dans toutes les catégories toponymiques, y compris celles ayant acquis des formes traditionnelles entrées dans l'usage linguistique. Cette manière de résoudre le problème a permis, d'une part, de traiter d'une façon uniforme tous les noms géographiques et, d'autre part, d'éliminer les exceptions difficiles représentées par les noms traditionnels. Toutefois, tenant compte de la fréquence de l'utilisation de certains d'entre eux et de leur degré de diffusion dans la langue roumaine, il a été recommandé que ces formes usuelles soient gardées et rédigées entre parenthèses.

De nombreux ouvrages de cartographie et de géographie, publiés en Roumanie au cours des dernières années, ont été rédigés de cette manière: *Petit atlas géographique* (1962, 1967, 1977), *Petit dictionnaire encyclopédique roumain* (1972), *Les pays du monde* (1975, 1977), etc. Dans cet esprit ont été élaborées à l'Institut de géographie (1972), à l'occasion de la réalisation de l'*Atlas géographique national*, *Les normes pour la rédaction des noms géographiques*, qui ont été approuvées aussi par la Commission de la langue roumaine de l'Académie roumaine et par les autorités cartographiques compétentes, ayant ainsi acquis un caractère officiel. L'application de ces principes d'utilisation des exonymes est reflétée dans les premiers fascicules déjà parus de l'*Atlas de la République socialiste de Roumanie*.

Au cours des dernières années, conformément aux recommandations des conférences des Nations Unies et des réunions bilatérales organisées par l'UNESCO ayant pour thème l'amélioration des manuels d'histoire et de géographie, les formes officielles ont été adoptées et insérées dans les manuels et dans les atlas scolaires, en tant que doublet, entre parenthèses.

Par conséquent il faut que les règles orthographiques générales (*Le guide orthographique, orthoépique et de ponctuation*, 1971) qui indiquent que "certains noms propres étrangers qui ont été introduits il y a assez longtemps dans notre culture soient rédigés dans la graphie traditionnelle", mais qui, en même temps, admettent "la rédaction de ces noms avec la graphie d'origine dans les ouvrages de spécialité (indications bibliographiques, cartes, études de langues, etc.)", soient revues, rendues actuelles et complétées afin qu'elles soient en conformité avec la résolution III proposée par la Roumanie et adoptée par le douzième Congrès international de sciences onomastiques tenu à Berne en 1975.

La liste préliminaire d'exonymes roumains comprend deux catégories:

a) Les exonymes auxquels on pourra renoncer soit parce que leurs formes graphiques anciennes ont été abandonnées, soit parce que leurs formes fluctuantes comprennent parfois des erreurs de graphie (ils devront être rendus uniquement dans la forme officielle). Exemples: *Tarigrad/Stambul/Constantinopol* = Istanbul; *Lipsca* = Leipzig; *Saragoza/Zaragosa/Saragosa* = Zaragoza; *Bagdad* = Baghdad; *Drezda/Dresda* = Dresden; *Tokio* = Tokyo; *Hanovra* = Hannover; *Neapole/Neapoli/Napŏle* = Napoli.

b) Les exonymes qui pourraient être conservés, comme doublets des noms officiels, en fonction du caractère de la publication. Exemples: *Londra* = London; *Praga* = Praha; *Chisinău* = Kišinev; *Atena* = Athinai; *Caucaz* = Kavkaz; *Cairo* = El Qâhira; *Peking* = Bei jing; *Florenta* = Firenze; *Marsilia* = Marseille; *Bavaria* = Bayern.

Les mesures invoquées, en dépit du court intervalle d'application, sont de nature à limiter, d'une part, et à fixer, d'autre part, l'emploi des exonymes dans la langue roumaine.

---

* Le texte original de ce rapport a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.83.

[1] *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.1.2), chap. III.

Annexe I

LISTE PRÉLIMINAIRE DES EXONYMES AUXQUELS ON POURRA RENONCER (À FORMES GRAPHIQUES ANCIENNES, PARTIELLEMENT ABANDONNÉES OU À FORMES FLUCTUANTES, PARFOIS AVEC DES ERREURS DE GRAPHIE)

Adrianopol = Edirno
Alexandretta = Iskendurun
Angora = Ankara
Antiochia = Antakya
Apalași = Allegheny
Apenini = Appennini
Assuan = Aswân
Bagdad = Baghdâd
Bahrein = Bahrain
Basora = Basrah
Beirut = Beyrouth
Benares = Varanasi
Bitolia = Bitola
Brema = Bremen
Brusa = Bursa
Cadix = Cádiz
Camerun = Cameroun
Cantabrici (M.) = Cordillera Cantabrica
Capetown = Cape Town
Caraci/Karaci = Karachi
Caracorum/Karakorum = Karakoram
Cașmir = Kashmir
Cefelonia = Kefallinia
Celebes = Sulawesi
Ceveni = Cévennes
Cezarees = Kayseri
Ciad (L.) = Tchad
Colonia = Köln
Constanța = Boden See/Konstanz
Constantinopol = Istanbul
Corfu = Kerkyra
Corita = Korcă
Crăciunului (I.) = Christmas
Damiette = Dumyât
Demavend = Damavend
Dresda/Drezda = Dresden
Ebru = Ebro
Edinburg = Edinburgh
Erzerum = Erzurum
Eubeea = Evvia
Fidji = Fiji
Filadelfia = Philadelphia
Fionia = Fyn
Formosa = Taiwan
Frankfurt (pe Main) = Frankfurt (am Main)
Frankfurt (pe Oder) = Frankfurt (a.d. Oder)
Franț Iosef = Franz-Josef
Fujiyama = Fuji san
Garona = Garonne
Gati = Gats
Geneva (L.) = Léman
Genua = Genova
Grampieni (M.) = Grampian M.
Guadelupa = Guadeloupe
Haidarabad = Hyderabad
Haiphong = H'ai Phòng
Hanoi = Hà Nôi
Hanovra = Hannover
Hawai = Hawaii
Heluan = Helwân
Himalais = Himalaya
Hinducuș = Hindukush
Hiroșima = Hiroshima
Ianina = Ioannina
Iberici (M.) = Sistema Iberico
Iena = Jena
Ind = Indus
Ismailia = Ismâilîya
Ispahan = Esfahan
Java = Jawa
Kazanlîk = Kazanlăk
Kenia = Kenya
Kilimandjaro = Kilimanjaro
Khartum = Khartoum
Kiel (Can.) = Nord-Ostee Kanal
Kuweit = Al Kuwait
Larnaca = Larnaka
Lemberg = Lvov
Leukas = Lefkaș
Lipsca = Leipzig
Liubliana = Ljubljana
Loara = Loire
Lucerna = Luzern
Luxemburg = Luxembourg
Lysa-Gora/Lyso-Góry = Góry Swiętokrzyskie
Medina = Al Madina
Mantua = Mantova
Marele Canion = Grand Canyon
Marna = Marne
Martinica = Martinique
Mauriciu = Mauritius
Meusa = Meuse/Maas
Missuri = Missouri
Mohaci = Moháca
Mosela = Moselle/Mosel
Mozambic (Can.) = Moçambique
Mukden = Shenyang
Neapole/Napole/Neapoli = Napoli
Noua Galie de Sud = New South Wales
Matapan (C.) = Tainaron
Mișkolț = Miskole
Napoli/Neapole/Neapoli = Napole
Nous Siberie (I.) = Novosibirsk
Nous Zemlie = Novaja Zemlja
Noul Orleans = New Orleans
Odesa = Odessa
Odra = Oder
Okinava = Okinawa
Olimp = Olympos
Orcade = Orkney
Orinoc/Orenoc = Orinoco
Orkney de Sud = South Orkney
Pad = Po
Padua = Padova
Parnas = Parnassos
Penini = Penine M.
Phenian = Pyongyang
Pilsen = Plseň
Pind = Pindos
Pnom Penh = Phnom Penh
Pripet = Pripiat
Ragusa = Dubrovnik
Riad/Ryad = Ar Riyâd
Ron = Rhône
Rostov pe Don = Rostov-na-Donu
Ruseiuc = Ruse
Saigon/Ho Și Min = Hô Chi Minh
Sanza = San'ā
Sandwich de Sud = South Sandwich
Șanhai = Shanghai
Saragosa/Saragoza/Zaragosa = Zaragoza
Saraievo = Sarajevo
Sclavilor (L.) = Great Slave Lake
Scutari = Shkodër
Seghedin = Szegad
Sena = Seine
Șetlande (I.) = Shetland
Seul = Seoul
Sfîntul Laurențiu = Saint Lawrence/Saint-Laurent
Sidney = Sydney
Sidon = Saida
Singapur = Singapore
Sinope = Sinop
Siracuza = Siracusa
Skoplje = Skopje
Smirna = Izmir
Sofia = Sofija
Spitzbergen = Svalbard
Stambul = Istanbul
Subotița = Subotica
Suhe Bator = Suhbaatar
Sumatra = Sumatera
Taipeh/Taibeh = Taibei
Tallin = Tallinn
Tanganyka = Tanganyika
Țarigrad = Istanbul
Tehoran = Tehrân
Timoc = Timok
Tokai = Tokaj
Tokio = Tokyo
Trebizorida/Trapezunt = Trabzon
Triest = Trieste
Tunguska Inferioară = Nižnjaja Tunguska
Tunguska Pietroasă = Podkamennaja Tunguska
Ubanghi = Oubangui/Ubangi
Urmia = Rezâiyeh
Ursilor (L.) = Great Bear L.
Valea Morții = Death Valley
Valons = Vlorë
Veliko Tîrnovo = Veliko Tărnovo
Veneția = Venezia
Vezuviu = Vesuvio
Vosgi = Vosges
Zante = Zakynthos
Yangtze = Changjkang

Annexe II

LISTE DES EXONYMES QUI POURRAIENT ÊTRE CONSERVÉS COMME DOUBLETS DES NOMS OFFICIELS

Acelor (C.) = Cape Agulhas
Athos (Muntele) = Aghion Oros Athos
Ararat = Ağri
Alep = Haleb
Alexandria = El Iskandariya
Amazon (Amazoano) = Rio Amazonas
Amiralității (I.) = Admiralty (Is.)
Ammochostos = Famagusta
Anglo-Normande (I.) = Channel Islands
Atena = Athinai
Asore = Açores
Balcani = Stara Planina
Baleare = Balèares
Bălți = Belcy
Basarabeasca = Bessarabka
Bavaria = Bayern
Bazargic = Tolbuhin
Biserica Albă = Bela Crkva
Belgrad = Beograd
Beltul Mare = Store Baelt
Beltul Mis = Lille Baelt
Berna = Bern
Beskizi = Beskidy
Bîe = Byk
Böhmer Wald = Pădurea Boemiei
Borneo = Kalimantan
Bosfor = Istanbul Bogăzi
Budapesta = Budapest
Cahul = Kagul
Cairo = El Qâhira
Călărași = Kalaraš
Calcidică = Chalkidiki, Pen.
Cambrieni (M.) = Cambrian M.
Canare = Canarias
Canton = Guangzhou
Capul Bunei Speranți = Cape of Good Hope
Capului Verde (I.) = Ilhas do Cabo Verde
Carintia = Kärnten
Casablanca = Ed-Dar el-Baida
Cascadelor (M.) = Cascade Range
Caucas = Kavkas
Ceremuș = Čeremoš
Cernăuți = Černovcy
Cetatea Albă = Bel'gorod Dnestrovskii
Chișinău = Kišinev
Chilia = Kilija
Coasta de Azur = Côte d'Azur
Coastelor (M.) = Coast Range
Cogîlnic = Kogylnik
Copenhaga = København
Corint = Korinthos
Corsica = Corse
Cracovia = Kraków
Creta = Kriti
Crimeea = Krym
Croația = Hrvatska
Damasc = Dimashq
Dardanele = Çanabkale Bogazi
Debrețin = Debrecen
Elba = Elbe/Labe

Eufrat = Furât
Everest = Chomolungma
Florența = Firenze
Gange = Ganga
Geneva = Genève
Glodeni = Glodjany
Haga = s'Gravenhage
Havana = La Habana
Hebride = Hébrides
Horn = Cabo de Hornos
Hovîrla = Goverla
Ierusalim = Ierushalayim/El Quds
Irlanda de Nord = North Ireland
Iutlanda = Jütland/Jylland
Ladoga = Ladožskoe
Leova = Leovo
Limasol = Lemesos
Lisabona = Lisboa
Londra = London
Macedonia = Makedonija
Molucelor (M.) = Maluku
Marele Lao Sărat = Great Salt Lake
Marsilia = Marseille
Masivul Central = Massif Central
Mekka (Mecca) = Makkah
Moscova = Moskva
Muntenegru = Crna Gora
Nicosia = Levkosia
Nipru = Dnepr
Nise = Nice
Nistru = Dnestr
Noua Caledonie = Nouvelle-Calédonie
Noua Guinee = New Guinea/Irian
Onega = Onežskoe (oz.)
Oran = Ouahran
Pădurea Neagră = Schwarzwald
Padurea Turingiei = Thüringer Wald
Palatinat = Pfals
Paștelui (I.) = Ila de Pasoua
Patras = Patrai
Peking = Poijing
Pelopones = Peloponnises
Pireu = Piraiefs
Plevna = Pleven
Pols = Pals
Port Said = Bür Saîd
Praga = Praha
Rășcani = Ryškany
Răut = Reut
Rin = Rhein/Rin/Rijn
Rahova = Orjahove
Salenic = Thessaloniki
Sardinia = Sardegna
Saxonis Inferioară = Niedersachsen
Scoția = Scotland
Seeland = Sjaelland
Sfînts Elena = Saint Helena
Silezis = Slask
Sistov = Svištov
Slobozia = Slobodzeja
Slovenia = Slovenija
Societății (Inst.) = Société (Iles de la)
Soroca = Soroki
Stîncoși (M.) = Rockies
Styria = Steiermark
Sudeți = Sudety
Sues = Es: Sumeis
Temisa = Thames
Tanger = Tanja
Țara de Fos = Tierra del Fuege
Țera Galilor = Wales
Tetra = Tstry
Taurus = Teros Dağleri
Teba = Thivai
Terra Nova = Newfoundland
Tibru = Tevere
Tighina = Bendery
Tigru = Dijlash
Tirana = Tiranë
Tripoli (Liban) = Taraboulous
Tripoli (Libia) = Tarabulus al-Gharb
Turtucais = Tutrakan
Ulan Bator = Ulaan Baatar
Ungheni = Ungeny
Varsovia = Warszawa
Viena = Wien
Viloov = Vilkovo
Vîrșet = Vršae
Vistula = Wista
Westfalia = Westfalen

A DIRECTORY OF CZECH TRADITIONAL GEOGRAPHICAL PROPER NAMES

Report presented by Czechoslovakia*

Résumé

La liste des noms géographiques usuels tchèques figure dans un manuel à caractère normatif et obligatoire pour tous les travaux géographiques et pour les publications destinées à fournir des informations terminologiques à la presse, la radio et la télévision. Cette liste a pu être préparée grâce à des travaux de recherche visant à l'examen objectif de l'usage terminologique en Tchécoslovaquie pendant ces 10 dernières années, examen fondé sur une analyse approfondie de la littérature contemporaine, notamment géographique et linguistique et de l'usage actuel dans les publications tchèques.

On peut répartir les noms géographiques tchèques en cinq catégories linguistiques:

a) Les exonymes tchèques et internationaux qui ne s'appuient pas sur la langue originale et dont la forme lui est complètement différente;

b) Les exonymes tchèques dérivés de la forme étrangère originale, mais ayant subi une adaptation substantielle au système phonétique et morphologique tchèque;

c) Les exonymes tchèques, dans lesquels la partie finale du nom étranger original a été adaptée aux tendances de la morphologie tchèque;

d) Les exonymes tchèques, dont c'est l'orthographe en premier lieu qui a été modifiée;

e) Les exonymes tchèques calqués partiellement ou entièrement sur la forme officielle du nom étranger.

La liste est divisée comme suit:

a) Liste alphabétique des noms propres géographiques usuels;

b) Liste alphabétique des noms géographiques officiels renvoyant aux exonymes tchèques;

c) Liste des noms géographiques usuels tchèques, selon les Etats.

La liste alphabétique des noms propres géographiques usuels donne, quand c'est nécessaire, à côté de l'exonyme tchèque, sa prononciation, les données morphologiques, l'adjectif dérivé, le nom officiel et les coordonnées déterminant la position géographique dénommée.

Resumen

La lista de nombres geográficos propios, generalmente admitidos en checo, que constituye un accesorio obligatorio para el uso de la terminología en obras cartográficas y un manual normativo recomendado para ser utilizado en todas las demás obras geográficas, así como en otras publicaciones que sirven de fuente de informaciones terminológicas para la prensa, la radio y la televisión, se basa en una exploración objetiva de la práctica terminológica en la República Socialista Checoslovaca en el último decenio, aproximadamente, tal y como ha sido efectuada mediante notas sacadas de la literatura contemporánea, ante todo la geográfica y lingüística, así como por medio del estudio del uso actual en el publicismo checo.

Desde el punto de vista lingüístico, los nombres geográficos propios checos podemos dividirlos en cinco categorías:

a) Exónimos checos e internacionales sin apoyo en el idioma original y completamente ajenos a las formas originales;

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.99.

b) Exónimos checos basados en la forma original del idioma extranjero, pero en gran medida adaptados a las exigencias de la fonética y la morfología checas;

c) Exónimos checos que adaptan la desinencia del nombre original extranjero conforme a las necesidades morfológicas del idioma checo;

d) Exónimos checos, casos en que se trata sobre todo de su forma ortográfica;

e) Exónimos checos, surgidos por medio de traducción total o parcial del nombre oficial extranjero.

La lista está dividida en tres partes: lista alfabética de nombres geográficos oficiales con referencia a los correspondientes exónimos checos; lista alfabética de nombres geográficos propios checos, generalmente admitidos; lista de nombres geográficos propios checos, generalmente admitidos, en los respectivos países.

La lista alfabética de nombres geográficos propios checos, generalmente admitidos, comprende, además de exónimos checos, o, si es necesario, su pronunciación, datos morfológicos, adjetivo, nombre oficial y determinación de su posición.

*

* *

The *Directory of Czech Traditional Geographical Proper Names* is an obligatory aid to the use of terminology in cartographic publications and a recommended handbook for the standardization of terms in all other geographical books and other publications from which information on geographical names is drawn for use by the press and other media. The *Directory* is based upon research into the use of geographical names in the Czech Socialist Republic over approximately the past ten years. The basis of the research consisted mainly of:

(*a*) The extensive collection of geographical names from primarily contemporary geographical and linguistic papers; and

(*b*) Following the current usage of geographical names in Czech newspaper formulation.

Only graphic exonyms are understood to be Czech traditional geographical names.

While compiling the *Directory*, the authors took into consideration above all the frequency of occurrence, the system of script, extralinguistic circumstances and the formal morphological and word-formative aspects of Czech as a flective language.

The *Directory* was compiled to meet the need for a codification of the exonyms commonly used at present and to prevent the uncontrolled formation of new exonyms. The *Directory* does not include names of countries and regions, names of seas, oceans and parts thereof, the names of sea currents, underwater forms and undersea currents. These names will be included in independent directories now in the process of compilation by the Terminology Commission of the Czech Office of Geodesy and Cartography.

Czech proper geographical names fall into five linguistic categories:

(*a*) Czech and international exonyms that have no foundation in the original language and that completely differ from the original version;

(*b*) Czech exonyms based on the original foreign version, but considerably modified to fit the requirements of Czech phonology and morphology;

(*c*) Czech exonyms that modify the endings of the original foreign name according to the morphological needs of the Czech language;

(*d*) Czech exonyms in which primarily the spelling was modified when they were taken over; and

(*e*) Czech exonyms that originated in a complete or partial translation of an official foreign name.

Czech proper geographical names are most common in reference to the capitals of countries, large cities and places generally well known, large geographical units, countries and larger regions. The most frequent use of these names is in school geography textbooks and maps. On maps it is possible to use Czech exonyms in principle only as part of a pair; thus, for example: Wien (Vídeň). In other contexts the use of the official name is recommended at least at the first occurrence of the name. Czech exonyms are also used in geographical journals, in specialized papers, in fiction and in the media.

The *Directory* is divided into three parts:

(*a*) An alphabetical list of Czech traditional proper geographical names;

(*b*) An alphabetical list of official geographical names with cross-references to the Czech exonyms; and

(*c*) A list of traditional Czech proper geographical names by individual countries.

Apart from the Czech exonym, the alphabetical directory of Czech traditional proper geographical names contains, for each item listed, its pronunciation (if needed), morphological data, the adjectival form, the official name and the co-ordinates.

The *Directory* will be published in 1978.

NOTES ON THE RELATIONSHIP OF OFFICIAL NAMES AND EXONYMS AS A PROBLEM IN THE STANDARDIZATION OF GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Report presented by Czechoslovakia*

Geographical names (toponyms) constitute one of the three basic and integral elements of topographic (geographical) phenomena and their depiction on maps. The formulation and establishment of geographical names and their usage within the cultural sphere of a language constitute two series of difficult problems, which have not as yet been fully resolved and which must be tackled due to increasing social demands.

The first series of problems, those involved in the

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.105.

formulation and establishment of proper geographical names, have reached an advanced stage of solution at both the national and the international levels: It is clear by now that the name of a topographic (geographical) phenomenon should appear first and foremost in the official language of the country (or in its officially adopted transcription into Roman characters, as the case may be), and on the territory determined by official definition as the area in which it is to be used. Only in this way can a geographical name fulfil its basic social function, that of conveying an officially recognized, irrefutable and distortion-free identification of the phenomenon which it designates. The aim of the solution of this series of problems is, in short, to standardize geographical names into forms giving the maximum possible information corresponding to objective reality. This would contribute significantly to the ability of a geographical name to fulfil its social function in any form of usage, but especially in a cartographic publication.

The second series of problems, those involving the proper usage of geographical names, is more complex, since it covers not only the proper use of geographical names in maps (where a stabilized nominative form is predominantly used), but also the usage of geographical names over the whole cultural sphere of a language, and thus raises the question of use and declination of geographical names in accordance with existing linguistic rules.

The situation in this second area is not yet quite clear. Apart from the official forms of geographical names, there exist also a number of traditional geographical names, exonyms, connected with the cultural heritage of the language. There is also a tendency to create new geographical exonyms, especially if it is difficult or impossible, to decline the names correctly in their official forms.

Moreover, problems of the first type (the establishment and selection of official versions of geographical names either in Czech and Slovak or in other languages) is limited, in practice, to the names of larger geographical units (e.g. countries, mountain ranges covering the area of more than one country, large rivers, international waters etc.) as they now exist. In dealing with problems of usage, we find, on the contrary that historical exonyms coexist side by side with exonymic forms of recent origin, involving large and small geographical units alike.

In this connexion the area of the cultural influence of the language is sometimes mentioned as a factor that confers the right to use exonymic forms for the names of topographic phenomena outside the area of the given country. This factor, while it may be related to the question of historic exonyms, is not, however, relevant to the contemporary naming of topographic entities. The existence of an official language for a given territory also determines the area of its cultural influence at the present time.

The need to resolve the question of geographical exonyms has also been felt on an international scale. While the First United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held at Geneva in 1967, did not agree on an appropriate resolution, the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names in London in 1972 adopted two resolutions concerning this question. In resolutions 28 and 29[1] it is recommended that lists be compiled of commonly used geographical exonyms, that the lists be reviewed (for possible deletions) and printed and that exonyms, if they are to be used at all, be limited in their use (especially in cartographic publications) as much as possible and in the shortest possible time.

In resolution 31, entitled "A common understanding of the aims and objects of the international standardization of geographical names",[2] the Conference defined the international standardization of geographical names as an activity "aiming at the maximum possible uniformity in the form of every geographical name on the earth and of topographical names on other bodies of the solar system by means of national standardization and/or international agreement, including the achievement of equivalences between different writing systems".

The resolutions mentioned also suggest how to resolve the question of using geographical names in literature. The possibilities are as follows:

(*a*) A foreign geographical name (even if it consists of more than one word) will become a part of the vocabulary in its official form and will be declined according to the rules of the adopting language;

(*b*) If it is impossible to decline the foreign geographical name, the text will be phrased in such a way that the geographical name would occur only in the nominative case;

(*c*) If it is impossible to decline the foreign geographical name and if there exists a standardized exonym, the standardized exonym will be used and when it occurs for the first time, it will be complemented with the foreign geographical name in its official form in brackets;

(*d*) If it is impossible to decline the foreign geographical name and if there exists a standardized exonym, the standardized exonym will be used and the official form of the foreign geographical name will be included in the index of the publication.

All these alternatives have already been used in books in the Czech and Slovak languages, especially in supplementary texts of geographical publications, and it is possible to say that they have proved satisfactory.

The alternative of using the geographical names in their official form in the nominative is especially recommended for geographical names consisting of more than one word, of which some have the character of a general geographical noun. The principle of not translating or separating out individual parts of compound geographical names was also confirmed in the report of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names where a publication of the Geographical Institute of the Czechoslovak Academy of

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

[2] *Ibid.*

Sciences in Brno entitled *Principles of the Use of Names of Geomorphological Units on the Territory of the Czech Socialist Republic in Texts in Foreign Languages* was quoted as an example of the carrying out of the standardization.[3]

In connexion with the ever-increasing number of proper geographical names now being included, in their official forms, in geographical publications and also being used in other contexts in a given linguistic area, the question of their pronunciation comes to the fore.

There are two basic alternatives:

(*a*) To pronounce geographical names as they are spelled; or

(*b*) To pronounce geographical names according to the pronunciation of the individual languages involved.

Since it is difficult to ensure correct pronunciation of geographical names in schools, this is sometimes used as an argument for using exonyms in maps and atlases designed to meet school requirements.

There is also much evidence for the parallel use of official, standardized geographical names (especially in books for the general public and secondary schools) and geographical exonyms (especially in publications designed for elementary schools).

Indisputably, it is a problem to synchronize in schools the teaching of fundamental information about foreign languages (especially on their alphabet and pronunciation) and the teaching of fundamental geographical information about the world.

The necessity to unify for each language, with the maximum use of its own alphabet, those elements showing how to pronounce foreign geographical names is closely connected with the above-mentioned problem. This is one of the larger problems facing linguists *en route* to the standardization of geographical names.

Not only do cartographers contribute to the solution of this problem by giving data, in their more important publications, about the general concept of how geographical names have been used (usually in the introduction to the publication) but their indexes or geographical names often also include general guidelines on the pronunciation of each language and (often printed in brackets after each name) the correct pronunciations of the individual geographical names.

The dynamic development of the contemporary world, the scientific and technological revolutions in both East and West, necessitate the transformation of school education in such a way that the instruction of the younger generation would correspond to the ever more exacting conditions of living in the world. There is no time, nor is it possible, to burden the cognitive abilities of the younger generation with many antiquated exonyms, the awareness of which only serves to complicate the acquisition of the geographical knowledge required. Since future generations will need more and more geographic information and therefore will have to know the names of a considerably larger number of geographical entities than ever before, it is simply impossible to further complicate school education with geographical names the knowledge of which, except in the narrow circle of natural literature, is of no use at all.

A consistent introduction of official forms of geographical names into schools, i.e. into maps and atlases and textbooks of geography, is one of the serious prerequisites of a true standardization of geographical names. Although difficult, the synchronization of the teaching of geography and foreign languages would bring fruitful results, since it would be possible to use the time allotted to the teaching of geography in a truly economical way.

[3] *Ibid.*, para. 27.

CONTRIBUCION DE UNA RELACION DE EXONIMOS ESPAÑOLES

Informe presentado por España*

En informe del sexto período de sesiones del Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos se presentó a título de ejemplo una lista de exónimos de Francia en lengua española, siguiendo la resolución 28 adoptada por la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos, celebrada en Londres en 1972[1].

El presente informe recoge una relación de exónimos de todo el mundo usados en obras geográficas y mapas publicados en lengua española; no obstante haber consultado numerosos documentos no puede considerarse como exhaustiva, si bien creemos que la mayoría de los importantes se encuentran en ella. La composición se realiza en cinco columnas:

a) Exónimo español;

b) Nombre oficial en su idioma vernáculo; se ha dejado en blanco si no existe o no es único;

c) Accidente geográfico con arreglo a la siguiente clave:

1. Países o continentes
2. Islas
3. Regiones
4. Relieve
5. Hidrografía marítima
6. Hidrografía costera y costas

* El texto original de este informe, preparado por J. M. González, Ingeniero Geógrafo, Dirección General del Instituto Geográfico y Catastral, España, ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF. 69/L.114.

[1] *Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos*, vol. I. *Informe de la Conferencia* (publicación de las Naciones Unidas, No. de venta S. 74.I.2), cap. III.

7. Hidrografía interna
8. Núcleos de población
9. Mínima dimensión (calles, edificios, etc.);

d) Nombres de las naciones a que pertenecen con las siglas internacionales de los automóviles cuando éstas existen, en caso contrario una numeración indica el continente o sin indicación alguna:

A	Austria
AL	Albania
AUS	Australia
B	Bélgica
BG	Bulgaria
BR	Brasil
BUR	Birmania
CDN	Canadá
CH	Suiza
CL	Ceilán
CS	Checoslovaquia
CY	Chipre
D	Alemania
DK	Dinamarca
DZ	Argelia
EIR	Irlanda
ET	Egipto
ETH	Etiopía
F	Francia
GB	Gran Bretaña
GR	Grecia
H	Hungría
HKJ	Jordania
I	Italia
IL	Israel
IND	India
IR	Irán
IRQ	Iraq
IS	Islandia
J	Japón
K	Camboya
L	Luxemburgo
MA	Marruecos
MC	Mónaco
MOC	Mozambique
N	Noruega
NL	Países Bajos
P	Portugal
PI	Filipinas
PL	Polonia
R	Rumania
RC	China
RH	Haití
RI	Indonesia
RL	Líbano
S	Suecia
SF	Finlandia
SOM	Somalia
SU	Unión Soviética
SYR	Siria
T	Tailandia
TN	Túnez
TR	Turquía
TT	Trinidad y Tabago
USA	Estados Unidos
VN	Vietnám
YU	Yugoslavia
ZA	Sudáfrica
(1)	Europa
(2)	Asia
(3)	Africa
(4)	América del Norte
(5)	América Centro y Sur
(6)	Oceanía
(7)	Antártico

e) Grado de empleo actual:

1. Total. El nombre oficial no se emplea nunca en forma escrita ni oral;
2. General. Sólo en contados casos se emplea dicho nombre oficial;
3. Extendido. El uso se hace indistintamente y más bien según la cultura de quien se expresa;
4. Escaso. Sólo se halla en obras de tipo literario de gusto tradicional;
5. Obsoleto. Sólo se encuentra en obras antiguas.

No se han incluído entre los exónimos los nombres que contienen alguna palabra determinativa de otra principal, como por ejemplo Oriental, Occidental, Alta, Baja, etc., pero si se incluyen tales palabras cuando no existe topónimo básico como en Selva Negra y Costa de Marfil.

Los nombres geográficos de la antigüedad que ya no corresponden a lugares actuales no se han tenido en cuenta, ni los mitológicos y poéticos.

Cuando el mismo nombre corresponde a más de un accidente geográfico, en la columna correspondiente se encuentran distintos números según la respectiva clave.

Por último, se incluyen numerosos gentilicios de los países, regiones o ciudades que quedan fuera del mundo de habla hispánica; aunque éstos no se consideran como verdaderos topónimos, también pueden proporcionar información geográfica.

Anexo I

LISTA DE EXONIMOS

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Abisinia	Ityopya	1	ETH	4
Abruzos	Abruzzi	42	I	2
Acadia	Acadie	3	CDN	5
Acarnania	Akarnania	3	GR	2
Acaya	Ajaia	3	GR	2
Adalia	Antalya	8	TR	3
Adelaida	Adelaide	8	AUS	1
Adelia	Adélie	3	(7)	3
Adigio	Adige	7	I	4
Adrianópolis	Edirne	8	TR	2
Adriático		4	(1)	1
Adua	Aduwa	8	ETH	2
Africa		1	(3)	1
Agra	Agara	8	IND	2
Agua, Cabo del	Ras el Ma	6	MA	2
Agujas	Agulhas	6	ZA	2
Albania	Shqiperia	1	AL	1
Alberto	Albert	7	(3)	2
Alcazarquivir	El Qsar el Kebir	8	MA	1
Alcazarseguer	El Qsar es Seghir	8	MA	2
Alejandreta	Iskenderun	8	TR	2
Alejandría	Alessandria	8	I	4
Alejandría	Iskandariya	8	ET	1
Alemania	Deutschland	1	D	1
Alenzón	Alençon	8	F	4
Alepo	Haleb	8	SYR	1

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Aleutianas	Aleutian	2	USA	1
Alfeo	Alfios	7	GR	2
Alguer	Alghero	8	I	3
Alhucemas	Al Hoseima	8	MA	1
Almirantazgo	Admiralty	2	(6)	3
Almirantes	Amirantes	2	(3)	
Alost	Alast	8	B	3
Alpes		4	(1)	1
Alsacia	Alsace	3	F	2
Altemburgo	Altenburg	8	D	3
Aluta	Oltul	7	R	3
Amarillo	Huanghe	7	RC	3
Amarillo	Huanghai	5		3
Amberes	Antwerpen	8	B	1
Amboina	Ambon	3	RI	2
América		1		1
Amigos	Tonga	2	(6)	4
Amindivas	Amindvip	2	IND	2
Amistad	Tonga	2	(6)	4
Anatolia	Anadolu	3	TR	1
Angora	Ankara	8	TR	4
Angulema	Angoulême	8	F	
Antártico		5		1
Antártida		1	(7)	1
Antiatlas	Atlas es Saghir	4	MA	1
Antilíbano	Chargi	4	(2)	1
Antillas		2	(5)	1
Antioquía	Antakya	8	SYR	1
Antitauro	Güneydogu Toroslar	4	TR	1
Apalaches	Appalachian	4	USA	2
Apeninos	Appennino	4	I	1
Apulia	Puglia	3	I	3
Aqueloo	Ajeloos	7	GR	3
Aquisgrán	Aachen	8	D	3
Aquitania	Aquitaine	3	F	2
Aracinto	Arakinzos			
Aracneo	Arajneon	4	GR	2
Ararat		4	SU	1
Arcadia	Arkadia	3	GR	3
Arcila	Asilah	8	MA	1
Archipiélago	Ageon	5		4
Ardenas	Ardennes	34	B	2
Argel	El Djezair	8	DZ	1
Argelia	El Djezair	1	DZ	1
Argólida	Argolis	3	GR	2
Argona	Argonne	3	F	4
Argovia	Aargau	3	CH	2
Armenia	Hayasdan	3	SU	1
Artico		5		1
Asia		1	(2)	1
Asís	Assisi	8	I	2
Asiut	Asyut	8	ET	3
Asuán	Aswan	8	ET	3
Atenas	Azine	8	GR	1
Atica	Attiki	3	GR	2
Atlántico		5		1
Atos	Agion Oros	4	GR	3
Augsburgo	Augsburg	8	D	2
Austria	Osterreich	1	A	1
Auvernia	Auvergne	3	F	3
Aviñón	Avignon	3	F	3
Avis	Aviz	8	P	3
Axdir	Ajdir	8	MA	3
Azores	Açores	2	P	2
Azul, Costa	Côte d'Azur	36	F	1
Azul, Río	Chiangjiang	7	RC	3
Azules, Montes	Blue Mountains	4	AUS	3
Bahamas	Bahama	2	(5)	2
Balcanes		3	(1)	1
Báltico		5	(1)	1
Banato		3	(1)	1

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Bangkok	KrungTep	8	T	1
Bangueolo	Bangweulu	7	(3)	2
Banka	Bangka	2	RI	
Barlovento	Windward	2	(5)	2
Baroda	Vadodara	8	IND	2
Basilea	Basel	38	CH	2
Basora	Basra	8	IRQ	2
Baviera	Bayern	3	D	1
Bayona	Bayonne	8	F	2
Beirut	Beyruth	8	RL	2
Belén	Beit Lam	8	IL	1
Bélgica		1	B	1
Belgrado	Beograd	8	YU	1
Beluchistán	Beluchestan	3	PAK	3
Bella Isla	Belle Île	5	F	5
Benarés	Varanasi	8	IND	3
Bender	Bendery	8	SU	4
Bengala	Bangla	15	(2)	2
Bengalore	Bengaluru	8	IND	2
Bengasi	Benghazi	8	(3)	3
Beocia	Viotia	3	GR	2
Berbería		3	(3)	4
Beresina	Berezina	8	SU	3
Berna	Bern	8	CH	1
Besanzón	Besançon	8	F	4
Besarabia		3	SU	2
Beskides	Bezkydy	4	SC	1
Bielorrusia	Belorosiya	3	SU	3
Billiton	Beletung	2	RI	2
Birmania	Myanma	1	BUR	1
Bizerta	Binzert	8	TN	2
Blanco, Mar		5		1
Blanco, Monte	Mont Blanc	4	F	4
Bohemia	Čechy	3	CS	1
Bolonés	Boulonnais	3	F	5
Bolonia	Bologna	8	I	2
Bolonia	Boulogne	8	F	5
Boloña	Boulogne	8	F	4
Bombay	Mumbai	8	IND	1
Bona	Annaba	8	DZ	2
Borbón	Reunion	2	(3)	5
Borbonesado	Bourbonnais	3	F	3
Bordelesado	Bordelais	3	F	4
Boreslavia	Boteslawiec	8	PL	5
Borgoña	Bourgogne	3	F	2
Borneo	Kalimantan	2	RI	1
Borromeas	Borromee	2	I	3
Bosnia	Bosna	3	YU	1
Botnia		5	(1)	1
Brabante	Brabant	3	B	1
Braganza	Bragança	8	P	2
Bramaputra		7	(2)	1
Brandeburgo	Brandenburg	38	D	2
Brema	Bremen	8	D	4
Bretaña	Bretagne	3	F	2
Bretaña, Gran	Great Britain	12	GB	1
Brianzón	Briançon	8	F	4
Brindis	Brindisi	8	I	4
Brionia	Brioni	2	YU	4
Brisgovia	Breisgau	3	CH	2
Brujas	Brugge	8	B	1
Brunswick	Braunschweig	38	D	2
Bruselas		8	B	1
Bucarest	Bucareşti	8	R	1
Bucovina		3	(1)	1
Buena Esperanza	Goeie Hoop	6	ZA	2
Bugía	Bedjaia	8	DZ	2
Bulgaria	Blgariya	1	BG	1
Bullión	Bouillon	3	B	5
Burdeos	Bordeaux	8	F	2

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Burgo	Bourges	8	F	5
Bután	Drukyul	1	(2)	2
Cabo Bretón, Isla de	Cape Breton Island	3	CDN	2
Cachemira	Kashmir	3	(2)	1
Caimanes	Cayman	3	(5)	3
Cairo	Al Qahira	8	ET	1
Calcídica	Jalkidki	3	GR	2
Calcis	Jalkis	8	GR	2
Calcuta	Kalkata	8	IND	2
Calés	Calais	8	F	5
Calicut	Koylikota	8	IND	1
Calino	Kalimnos	2	GR	4
Calmar	Kalmar	8	S	4
Caller	Cagliari	8	I	5
Camáldula	Camaldoli	8	I	3
Camarones	Cameroun	1	(3)	4
Camboya	Kampuchea	1	K	2
Candía	Kriti	2	GR	4
Canea	Jania	8	GR	2
Canigó	Canigou	4	F	3
Cantón	Guangzhou	8	RC	1
Cantorbery	Canterbury	8	GB	3
Capaz, Puerto	Djebba	8	MA	2
Capitolio	Campidoglio	9	I	2
Capitolio	Capitol	9	USA	1
Carcasona	Carcasonne	8	F	3
Carelia	Karjala	3	(1)	1
Caribe		5	(5)	1
Carintia	Kärnten	3	A	1
Cariñan	Carignano	8	I	3
Carlsbad	Karlovy Vary	8	CS	2
Carlsburgo	Alba Iulia	8	R	5
Carnático		3	IND	3
Cárnicos		4	(1)	1
Carniola	Kralin	3	YU	1
Carolinas	Caroline	2	(6)	1
Cárpatos		4	(1)	1
Carso	Kras	3	YU	2
Cartuja	Chartreuse	3	F	4
Casablanca	Dar al Baida	8	MA	1
Cascadas	Cascade	4	USA	3
Caspio		7		1
Castelrosso	Kastelloridson	2	GR	3
Cátaro	Kotor	8	YU	2
Caucasia		3	SU	3
Cáucaso	Kaukaz	4	SU	1
Cayena	Cayenne	28	(5)	2
Cayo Hueso	Key West	2	(5)	3
Cayos	Cayes	2	RH	3
Cefalonia	Kefallinia	2	GR	2
Cefiso	Kifisos	7	GR	2
Ceilán	Sri Lanka	12	CL	2
Célebes	Sulawesi	2	RI	1
Ceran	Seram	3	RI	2
Cerdaña	Cerdagne	3	F	2
Cerdeña	Sardegna	2	I	1
Cerigo	Kizira	2	GR	2
Cerigoto	Andikizira	2	GR	2
Ceriñola	Cerignola	8	I	3
Cerisoles	Ceresole	8	I	4
Cetiñe	Cetinje	8	YU	3
Cevenas	Cevennes	4	F	5
Cícladas	Kiklades	2	GR	2
Circasia		3	SU	3
Cirenaica	Barga	3	(3)	2
Cirene	Shahhat	8	(3)	3
Cister	Cîteaux	8	F	2
Ciudad del Cabo	Kaapstad	8	ZA	2
Claraval	Clairvaux	8	F	2
Cleves	Kleve	8	D	2
Coblenza	Koblenz	8	D	2

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Coburgo	Koburg	8	D	2
Cocios		4	(1)	1
Cochinchina		3	(2)	2
Colombo	Kolamba	8	CL	1
Colonia	Köln	8	D	2
Comorin	Kumari	6	IND	1
Constantina	Koustantina	8	DZ	2
Constantinopla	Istambul	8	TR	2
Constanza	Bodensee	7	(1)	1
Constanza	Constanta	8	R	2
Constanza	Konstanz	8	D	2
Copenhague	København	8	DK	1
Córcega	Corse	2	F	1
Corea		1	(2)	1
Corfú	Kerkira	2	GR	2
Corinto	Korinzos	8	GR	1
Cornualles	Cornwall	3	GB	2
Coromandel	Koromandal	6	IND	1
Cos	Kos	2	GR	2
Cracovia	Kraków	8	PL	1
Creta	Kriti	2	GR	2
Crimea	Krim	3	SU	1
Croacia	Hrvatska	3	YU	1
Cuenca, Gran	Great Basin	3	USA	3
Cuera	Chur	8	CH	4
Cumania	Kunsag	3	H	4
Curasao	Curaçao	2	(5)	3
Curdistán		3	(2)	2
Curlandia		3	SU	2
Cuyabá	Cuibá	8	BR	3
Champaña	Champagne	3	F	3
Charenta	Charente	3	F	4
Charlottemburgo	Charlottenburg	8	D	4
Checoslovaquia	Československo	1	CS	1
Cherburgo	Cherbourg	8	F	3
Chica, Mar	Sebkhabou Areq	6	MA	2
China	Zhongguo	1	RC	1
Chipre	Kipros	1	CY	1
Dalecarlia	Dalarna	3	S	2
Dalmacia	Dalmacija	3	YU	1
Damasco	Ech Cham	8	SYR	1
Damieta	Dumyat	8	ET	1
Danubio		7	(1)	1
Danzig	Gdańsk	8	PL	3
Dardanelos	Canakkale Boğazi	5	TR	1
Delfinado	Dauphiné	3	F	3
Delhi	Dilli	8	IND	3
Deseada	Desirade	2	(5)	3
Desolación	Kerguelen	2	(7)	4
Diego Alvarez	Gough	2	(3)	4
Diego García	Chagos	2	(2)	4
Dillemburgo	Dillenburg	8	D	4
Dinamarca	Danmark	1	DK	1
Dináricos		4	(1)	1
Dnieper	Dnepr	7	SU	2
Dniester	Dnestr	7	SU	2
Dodecaneso	Dodekanisos	2	GR	1
Dolomitas		4	(1)	1
Donetz	Donets	7	SU	2
Dordoña	Dordogne	7	F	3
Drave		7	(1)	2
Dresde	Dresden	8	D	3
Duisburgo	Duisburg	8	D	3
Dunaburgo	Daugaupils	8	SU	4
Dunas	Düne	2	D	4
Dundea	Dundee	8	GB	4
Durazzo	Durrës	8	AL	2
Edesa	Urfa	8	TR	2
Edimburgo	Edinburgh	8	GB	2
Eduardo	Edward	7	(3)	3
Egadas	Egadi	2	I	3

Anexo 1 (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Egeo	Egeon	5		2
Egipto	Misr	1	ET	1
Elba		7	(1)	1
Elbruz	Elbrus	4	SU	3
Elburz	Alborz	4	IR	2
Elefante	Elefant	2	(7)	3
Elefantina		2	ET	2
Elgersburgo	Elgersburg	8	D	3
Engadina	Engadin	3	CH	3
Engaño	Telandjang	2	RI	4
Eolias	Lipari	2	I	4
Eritrea		3	ET	1
Erzerum	Erzurum	8	TR	3
Escafusa	Schaffhausen	8	CH	5
Escalda		7	(1)	1
Escandinavia		3	(1)	1
Escania	Skäne	3	S	3
Escarpanto	Karpazos	2	GR	3
Esclavonia	Slavonija	3	YU	5
Esclavos, Costa de los	Slave Coast	6	(3)	2
Esclavos, Gran Lago de los	Great Slave Lake	7	CDN	2
Escocia	Scotland	3	GB	1
Escopelos	Skopelos	2	GR	3
Escutari	Skodra	78	AL	2
Escutari	Usküdar	8	TR	2
Eslavonia	Slavonija	3	YU	2
Eslonim	Slonim	8	SU	4
Eslovaquia	Slovensko	3	CS	1
Eslovenia	Slovenija	3	YU	2
Esmalcalda	Schmalkalden	8	D	3
Esmirna	Izmir	8	TR	2
Esmolensco	Smolensk	8	SU	4
Espaleto	Split	8	YU	3
Esparta	Sparti	8	GR	1
Espartel	Sbartel	6	MA	1
Espartivento	Spartivento	6	I	3
Esperlinga	Sperlinga	8	I	4
Espira	Speyer	8	D	2
Espoleto	Spoleto	8	I	3
Esporadas	Sporades	2	GR	3
Esquilache	Squillace	68	I	4
Esquiros	Skiros	2	GR	3
Estados, Isla de los	Staten Island	2	USA	4
Estados Unidos	United States	1	USA	1
Estambul	Istambul	8	TR	3
Estanovoi	Stanovoi	4	SU	4
Estefania	Stefania	7	(3)	2
Estinfalo	Stimfalis	7	GR	3
Estiria	Steiermark	3	A	1
Estocolmo	Stockholm	8	S	1
Estonia	Eesti	3	SU	1
Estrasburgo	Strasbourg	8	F	2
Estrofadas	Stofades	2	GR	2
Estruma		7	(1)	2
Etiopía	Ityopya	1	ETH	1
Eubea	Evvia	2	GR	2
Eufrates		7	(2)	1
Euganeos		4	(1)	1
Eupatoria	Yevpatoriya	8	SU	2
Europa		1	(1)	1
Eurotas	Evrotas	7	GR	2
Falero	Faleron	8	GR	2
Famagusta	Ammojostos	8	CY	1
Farsalia	Farsala	8	GR	3
Fénix	Phoenix	2	(6)	3
Feroe	Faer Øerne	2	DK	3
Fez	Fas	8	MA	1
Filadelfia	Philadelphia	8	USA	1
Filipopolis	Plovdiv	8	BG	2
Finisterre	Finistère	3	F	5
Finlandia	Suomi	1	SF	1

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Fionia	Fyn	2	DK	1
Fiume	Rijeka	8	YU	2
Flandes	Vlaanderen	3	B	1
Flesinga	Vlissingen	8	B	2
Florencia	Firenze	8	I	2
Fócida	Fokis	3	GR	2
Formosa	Taiwan	2	RC	3
Francfort	Frankfurt	8	D	2
Francia	France	1	F	1
Francisco José	Frantsa Iosifa	2	SU	2
Franco Condado	Franche-Comté	3	F	2
Franconia	Franken	3	D	1
Friburgo	Freiburg	8	D	1
Friburgo	Fribourg	8	CH	1
Frisia	Friesland	3	NL	1
Friul	Friuli	3	I	3
Ftiótida	Fziotis	3	GR	3
Galatz	Galati	8	R	3
Gales	Gymru	3	GB	1
Galilea	Hagalil	3	IL	1
Galitzia	Halicz	3	PL	1
Gallípoli	Gelibolu	8	TR	1
Gante	Gent	8	B	1
Garellano	Garigliano	7	I	2
Garona	Garonne	7	F	3
Gascuña	Gascogne	3	F	3
Gaza	Ghazza	8	(2)	3
Gelves	Djerba	2	TN	4
Genovesado		3	I	5
Georgia	Sakartvelo	3	SU	1
Geránicos		4	(1)	1
Gigantes, Montes		4	(1)	2
Ginebra	Genève	8	CH	1
Gironda	Gironde	7	F	3
Glaris	Glarus	3	CH	3
Gocia	Götaland	2	S	5
Golfo, Corriente del		5		1
Gomara	Ghomara	3	MA	2
Gorea	Gorée	8	(3)	3
Gotemburgo	Göteborg	8	S	3
Gotinga	Göttingen	8	D	3
Gotlandia	Götaland	2	S	4
Goyaz	Goiás	38	BR	3
Gozo	Gozzo	2	M	3
Graios		4	(1)	(2)
Grampianos, Montes	Grampian Hills	4	GB	3
Granada	Grenada	1	(5)	2
Granadinas	Grenadines	2	(5)	2
Gratz	Graz	8	A	3
Gravelinas	Gravelines	8	F	4
Grecia	Ellas	1	GR	1
Grisones	Graubünden	3	CH	2
Groenlandia	Grønland	2	(4)	1
Groninga	Groningen	38	NL	3
Guadalupe	Guadeloupe	2	(5)	3
Guardafui	Ras Assir	6	(2)	1
Guayana	Guyana	1	(5)	3
Guayana	Guyane	3	(5)	3
Güeldres	Gelderland	3	NL	2
Guernesey	Guernsey	2	GB	3
Guyena	Guyenne	3	F	3
Habsburgo	Habsburg	8	CH	3
Haifong	Haiphong	8	VN	2
Hamburgo	Hamburg	8	D	2
Hanóver	Hannover	38	D	3
Harlem	Haarlem	8	NL	4
Hawai	Hawaii	2	USA	3
Haya	S'Gravenhage	8	NL	1
Hébridas	Hebrides	2	GB	2
Helicón	Elikon	4	GR	3
Heligoland	Helgoland	2	D	3

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Helsinborg	Hälsinborg	8	S	3
Henao	Hainaut	3	F	5
Hendaya	Hendaye	8	F	2
Heraclión	Iraklion	8	GR	3
Hesse	Hessen	3	D	3
Hidra	Idra	2	GR	2
Himeto	Imittos	4	GR	2
Hofuf	Hufuf	8	(2)	3
Holanda	Holland	3	NL	1
Homs	Hims	8	SYR	1
Hondo	Honshu	2	J	2
Horn	Hoorn	8	NL	3
Hungría	Magyarország	1	H	1
Icaria	Ikaria	2	GR	2
Iguazú	Iguaçú	7	BR	2
Ilirico		2	YU	3
Imbros	Imroz	2	TR	3
Inaco	Inajos	7	GR	2
India	Bharat	1	IND	1
Indico		5		1
Indo		7	(2)	1
Indochina		3	(2)	2
Inglaterra	England	3	GB	1
Ingria		3	(1)	4
Irlanda	Eire	1	EIR	1
Isla de Francia	Île-de-France	3	F	3
Islandia	Island	1	IS	1
Janículo	Giannicolo	9	I	2
Japón	Nippon	1	J	1
Java	Djawa	2	RI	1
Jerusalén	Yerushalayim	8	IL	1
Johannesburgo	Johannesburg	8	ZA	3
Joló	Sulu	2	PI	3
Jónico	Ionion	5		1
Jordán		7	(2)	1
Jordania	Urdun	7	HKJ	1
Juan Mayen	Jan Mayen	2	(1)	3
Julianos		4	(1)	1
Jutlandia	Jylland	3	DK	1
Lacio	Lazio	3	I	1
Laconia	Lakonia	3	GR	2
Lagunas	Ellice	2	(6)	4
Landas	Landes	3	F	3
Laponia	Lapi	3	(1)	2
Laquedivas	Lakshadvip	2	IND	1
Larache	El Araich	8	MA	1
Lataquia	Ladhiqiya	8	SYR	3
Lauenburgo	Lauenburg	3	D	3
Lausana	Lausanne	8	CH	3
Lealtad	Loyalty	2	(6)	3
Lemosín	Limousin	3	F	3
Leningrado	Leningrad	8	SU	2
Leonesado	Lyonnais	3	F	5
Lepontinos		5	(1)	1
Lero	Leros	2	GR	3
Lesbos	Mitilini	2	GR	3
Letonia	Latvija	3	SU	2
Leucas	Lefkas	2	GR	3
Líbano	Lubnan	1	RL	1
Libia	Libiya	1	(3)	1
Liceo	Likeon	4	GR	2
Lieja	Liège	8	B	2
Lila	Lille	8	F	4
Limburgo	Limbourg	3	B	3
Limburgo	Limburg	3	NL	3
Lion	Lyon	8	F	4
Liorna	Livorno	8	I	3
Lituania	Lietuva	3	SU	1
Livonia		3	SU	2
Loanda	Luanda	8	(3)	3
Loira	Loire	7	F	3

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Londres	London	8	GB	2
Lorena	Lorraine	3	F	2
Lorenzo Márquez	Maputo	8	MOC	2
Lotaringia		3	(1)	1
Lovaina	Leuven	8	B	1
Luca	Lucca	8	I	3
Lucayas	Bahama	2	(5)	4
Lucerna	Luzern	8	CH	2
Luis Felipe	Louis Philippe	3	(7)	3
Luisiada	Louisiade	2	(6)	4
Luisiana	Louisiana	3	USA	2
Luisville	Luoisville	8	USA	4
Luneburgo	Lüneburg	8	D	4
Lusacia	Lausitz	3	D	3
Luxemburgo	Luxembourg	18	L	2
Luxor	El Uqsur	8	ET	2
Maestrich	Maastrich	8	NL	3
Macao	Macau	8	(2)	2
Macedonia		3	(1)	3
Maconés	Macônnais	3	F	5
Madera	Madeira	2	P	3
Magdeburgo	Magdeburg	8	D	3
Maguncia	Mainz	8	D	1
Malabar	Malbar	6	IND	2
Malaca	Malaka	3	(2)	1
Malasia	Malaysia	1	(2)	3
Malatia	Aspuzu	8	TR	3
Malaya	Melayu	3	(2)	2
Maldivas		1	(2)	2
Malinas	Mechelen	8	B	2
Maloya	Maloja	8	CH	4
Malvinas	Falkland	2	(5)	2
Manaos	Manaus	8	BR	3
Mancha	Manche	5	F	2
Manchuria		3	RC	3
Mangalore	Mangaluru	8	IND	2
Mantua	Mantova	8	I	3
Maratón	Marazon	8	GR	2
Marburgo	Marburg	8	D	3
Marburgo	Maribor	8	YU	3
Marcas	Marche	3	I	3
Marfil, Costa de	Côte d'Ivoire	1	(2)	1
Maria Galante	Marie Galante	3	(5)	2
Marianas	Mariana	3	(6)	2
Marienbad	Marianské-Lazné	8	CS	1
Maritza		7	(1)	2
Marquesas	Marquises	2	(6)	2
Marruecos	Maghreb	1	MA	1
Marruecos	Marrakech	8	MA	4
Marsella	Marseille	8	F	2
Martín, Río	Martil	7	MA	2
Martinica	Martinique	2	(5)	2
Mascareñas		2	(3)	2
Mascate	Masqat	8	(2)	2
Masovia		3	PL	5
Masuria		3	PL	4
Matapán	Tenaron	6	GR	2
Mauricio	Mauritius	1	(3)	1
Mauritania	Mauritanie	1	(3)	1
Mayena	Mayenne	7	F	5
Mayota	Mayotte	3	(3)	5
Mazagán	El Djadida	8	MA	1
Mazalguivir	Mers el Kebir	8	DZ	2
Meandro	Menderes	7	TR	3
Meca	Makkah	8	(2)	1
Mecklemburgo	Mecklenburg	3	D	3
Mediterráneo		5		1
Melanesia		2	(6)	1
Melburne	Melbourne	8	AUS	4
Meno	Main	7	D	3
Mequínez	Meknes	8	MA	3

Anexo 1 (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Merseburgo	Merseburg	8	D	3
Mesenia	Missinia	3	GR	2
Mesina	Messina	8	I	3
Mesopotamia		3	IRQ	1
Metálicos, Montes		4		2
Micenas	Mikine	8	GR	2
Micronesia		2	(6)	1
Milán	Milano	8	I	2
Milanesado		3	I	2
Milo	Milos	3	GR	3
Misisipí	Mississippi	37	USA	2
Misnia	Meissen	3	D	2
Misuri	Missouri	37	USA	2
Mitilene	Mitilini	2	GR	3
Mogador	Essauira	8	MA	1
Moldavia	Moldova	3	R	1
Molucas	Maluku	3	RI	3
Mompeller	Montpellier	8	F	5
Mongolia	Mongol	1	(2)	1
Montalbán	Montauban	8	F	5
Montecarlo	Monte-Carlo	8	MC	2
Montenegro	Crnagora	3	YU	1
Montpeller	Montpellier	8	F	5
Moravia	Morava	3	CS	1
Morbeya	Rebia	7	MA	4
Morlaquia		3	YU	2
Mosa		7	(1)	2
Moscova	Moskva	7	SU	2
Moscovia		3	SU	3
Moscú	Moskva	8	SU	1
Mosela		7	(1)	2
Mozambique	Moçambique	1	MOC	1
Muerte, Valle de la	Death Valley	4	USA	2
Muerto, Mar		7	(2)	1
Muluya	Moulouya	7	MA	2
Munich	München	8	D	1
Muntenia		3	R	2
Nanquín	Nanjin	8	RC	2
Nápoles	Napoli	8	I	1
Narbona	Narbonne	8	F	3
Narenta	Neretva	7	YU	4
Naumburgo	Naumburg	8	D	3
Nauplia	Nafplion	8	GR	2
Navegantes	Samoa	2	(6)	4
Navidad	Christmas	2	(6)	4
Nazaret	Natsrat	8	IL	1
Neerlandia	Nederland	1	NL	5
Negra, Selva	Schwarzwald	4	D	2
Negro, Mar		5		1
Neoburgo	Neuburg	8	D	3
Neopatria		3	GR	5
Nevoso, Monte		4	YU	3
Nicaria	Ikaria	3	GR	3
Nicea	Iznik	8	TR	3
Nicomedia	Ismid	8	TR	5
Nicosia	Lefkosia	8	CY	2
Niemen	Neman	7	SU	2
Nieper	Dnepr	7	SU	5
Niester	Dnestr	7	SU	5
Nieves	Nevis	2	(5)	4
Nieves Eternas	Ewiger Schneeberg	4	A	4
Nilo		7	(3)	1
Nimega	Nijmegen	8	NL	3
Nivernesado	Nivernais	3	F	3
Niza	Nice	8	F	2
Noirmutier	Noirmoutier	5	F	5
Nóricos		4	(1)	1
Normandas	Channel Island	2	GB	3
Normandía	Normandia	3	F	3
Northumbria	Northumberland	3	GB	5
Noruega	Norge	1	N	1

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Noyonesado	Noyonnais	3	F	5
Nubia		3	(3)	1
Numea	Nouméa	8	(6)	3
Nuremberg	Nürnberg	8	D	1
Occitania	Occitanie	3	F	4
Oceania		1	(6)	1
Odesa	Odessa	8	SU	2
Oldemburgo	Oldenburg	38	D	3
Olimpo	Olimbos	4	GR	1
Oltenia		3	R	2
Oporto	Porto	8	P	2
Orán	Ouahran	8	DZ	1
Oranesado		3	DZ	3
Orcadas	Orkney	2	GB	2
Oremburgo	Orenburg	8	SU	3
Orleanesado	Orléannais	3	F	3
Oro, Costa de	Côte d'Or	3	F	4
Oro, Costa de	Gold Coast	6	(3)	3
Oro, Puerta de	Golden Gate	6	USA	4
Orontes	Assi	7	SYR	1
Osos, Isla de los	Bjornoya	2	(1)	3
Osos, Lago de los	Great Bear Lake	7	CDN	3
Ostende	Oostende	8	B	3
Pacífico		5		1
Padua	Padova	8	I	2
Paduano		3	I	5
Paises Bajos	Nederland	1	NL	3
Palaos	Palau	2	(6)	1
Palatinado	Pfalz	3	D	1
Palestina		3	(2)	1
Pantelaria	Pantelleria	2	I	2
Papuasia	Papua	1	(6)	3
Paragua	Palawan	2	PI	3
Parnaso	Parnassos	4	GR	2
Pasión	Clipperton	2		4
Patrás	Patre	8	GR	2
Pedro I	Peter I	2	(7)	3
Peipus	Peipsi	7	SU	2
Pelada	Pelée	4	(5)	2
Peloponeso	Peloponisos	3	GR	1
Peneo	Pinios	7	GR	2
Peninos		4	(1)	1
Pensilvania	Pennsylvania	3	USA	3
Pentelico	Pendelikon	4	GR	3
Pequín	Beijin	8	RC	2
Perim	Barim	2	(2)	2
Perla, Bahía de la	Pearl Harbour	6	USA	5
Perlas, Río de las	Pearl River	7	USA	4
Perlas, Río de las	Shiziyang	7	RC	3
Perpiñan	Perpignan	8	F	3
Perros	Dogs	2	GB	4
Persia	Iran	1	IR	4
Pescadores	Penghu	2	RC	3
Petersburgo	Leningrad	8	SU	5
Petrogrado	Leningrad	8	SU	5
Piamonte	Piemonte	3	I	2
Picardía	Picardie	3	F	3
Pilato	Pilatus	4	CH	2
Pilsen	Plzeń	8	CS	3
Pimienta, Costa de la	Grain Coast	6	(3)	2
Pindo	Pindos	4	GR	2
Piratas, Costa de los	Oman al Mutasali	36	(2)	3
Pireo	Pireefs	8	GR	1
Pistoya	Pistoia	8	I	3
Plasencia	Piacenza	8	I	3
Plevna	Pleven	8	BG	3
Podolia		3	SU	5
Pola	Pula	8	YU	3
Polesia		3	SU	5
Polinesia		2	(6)	1
Polonia	Polska	1	PL	1

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Pomerania	Pomorze	3	PL	2
Pomeralia		3	PL	2
Pomotú	Touamotou	2	(6)	4
Pompeya	Pompei	8	I	2
Pontinas	Pontine	7	I	2
Posnania	Poznanskie	3	PL	2
Praga	Praha	8	CS	1
Presburgo	Bratislava	8	CS	4
Príncipe Eduardo	Prince Edward	2	CDN	3
Provenza	Provence	3	F	2
Prusia	Preussen	3	D	2
Pulla	Puglia	3	I	3
Quilates	Kilates	6	MA	2
Quio	Jios	3	GR	2
Rabat	Ribat	8	MA	2
Ragusa	Dubrovnik	8	YU	4
Ratisbona	Regensburg	8	D	3
Ravena	Ravenna	8	I	2
Renania	Rheinland	3	D	2
Réticos		4	(1)	1
Rin		7	(1)	4
Rocosas	Rocky Mountains	4	USA	3
Rochela	Rochelle	8	F	3
Ródano	Rhône	7	(1)	2
Rodas	Rodos	2	GR	1
Rodesia	Rhodesia	1		3
Rodolfo	Rudolf	7		3
Ródope	Rodopi	3	GR	2
Ródope		4	(1)	2
Rojo, Mar				
Rojo, Río	Red River	7	USA	4
Rojo, Río		7	(2)	3
Romaña	Romagna	3	I	3
Rosellón	Roussillon	3	F	2
Roseta	Rashid	8	ET	1
Ruán	Rouen	8	F	3
Rumania	România	1	R	1
Rumelia		3	BG	3
Rusia	Rossiya	3	SU	1
Rutenia		3	SU	3
Saboya	Savoie	3	F	2
Sajonia	Sachsen	3	D	1
Salado, Gran Lago	Great Salt Lake	7	USA	3
Salamina	Salamis	3	GR	1
Salé	Sla	8	MA	3
Salomón	Solomon	2	(6)	2
Salónica	Zessaloniki	8	GR	2
Saluces	Saluzzo	8	I	3
Salvajes	Selvagem	2	P	3
Salzburgo	Salzburg	8	A	2
Samogicia		3	SU	4
Samotracia	Samozraki	2	GR	1
San Agustín	Saint Augustine	8	USA	3
San Andrés	Andros	2	(5)	4
San Antonio	Santo Antao	2	(2)	3
San Bartolomé	Saint Barthelemy	2	(5)	4
San Cristobal	Saint Christopher	2	(5)	4
San Deka	Agios Deka	8	GR	5
San Estéfano	Santo Stefano	8	TR	5
San Eustaquio	Sankt Eustatius	2	(5)	3
San Francisco	Sao Francisco	7	BR	3
San Gabriel	Frobisher	5	(4)	5
San Galo	Sankt Gallen	8	CH	5
San Gotardo	Sankt Gotthard	4	CH	2
San Jorge	Saint George	5	(1)	3
San Juan	Saint Jean	8	F	3
San Lorenzo	Saint Lawrence	7	(4)	2
San Luis	Saint Louis	8	(3)	3
San Martín	Saint Martin	2	(5)	3
San Martín	Sint Maarten	2	(5)	3

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
San Mauricio	Saint Maurice	8	CH	4
San Miguel	Sao Miguel	2	P	3
San Pablo	Saint Paul	2		3
San Pedro	Saint Pierre	2	(4)	4
San Petersburgo	Leningrad	8	SU	5
San Quintín	Saint-Quentin	8	F	2
San Rafael	Saint Raphael	8	F	3
San Tadeo	Fedeyev	2	SU	4
San Vicente	Saint Vicent	2	(5)	3
Santa Catalina	Santa Catarina	23	BR	3
Santa Elena	Saint Helena	2	(3)	3
Santa Irene	Zira	2	GR	5
Santa Isabel	Malabo	8	(2)	3
Santa Lucía	Saint Lucia	2	(5)	3
Santa Magdalena	Fatu Hiva	2	(6)	4
Santa María	Saint Mary	2	(3)	3
Santa Maura	Lefkas	3	GR	3
Santas	Saintes	2	(5)	3
Santo Tomás	Saint Thomas	2	(5)	4
Santo Tomé	Sao Thome	2	(3)	3
Santorín	Zira	2	GR	2
Saona	Saône	7	F	3
Sargazos		5		1
Save		7	(1)	2
Schaumburgo	Schaumburg	3	D	3
Schwarzburgo	Schwarzburg	3	D	3
Seeland	Sjælland	2	DK	2
Sena	Seine	7	F	3
Senigallia	Sinigaglia	8	I	4
Servia	Srbija	3	YU	2
Siam	Muang Thai	1	T	4
Siberia	Sibir	3	SU	1
Sidón	Saida	8	RL	2
Sigmaringa	Sigmaringen	8	D	3
Silesia	Slask	3	PL	2
Singapur	Singapura	1	(2)	2
Siria	Souriyah	1	SYR	1
Sirte	Surt	6	(3)	2
Sociedad	Société	2	(6)	3
Socotora	Suqutra	2		2
Soleura	Solothurn	3	CH	3
Soloña	Sologne	3	F	5
Soma	Somme	7	F	5
Somalia	Somaliya	1	SOM	1
Sorlingas	Scilly	2	GB	4
Sotavento	Leeward	2	(5)	2
Suabia	Schwaben	3	D	1
Sudetes		4	(1)	1
Suecia	Sverige	1	S	1
Suiza		1	CH	1
Sumatra	Sumatera	2	RI	2
Surabaya	Surabaja	8	RI	2
Tabago	Tobago	2	TT	4
Tafilete	Tafilalt	3	MA	2
Taigeto	Taigetos	4	GR	3
Támesis	Thames	7	GB	1
Tananarivo	Tananarive	8	RM	2
Tánger	Tandja	8	MA	1
Tarento	Taranto	8	I	2
Tarpeya	Tarpea	9	I	1
Tarso	Tarsus	8	TR	2
Tatra		4	(1)	2
Tauro	Toros	4	TR	1
Tebas	Zive	8	GR	2
Teherán	Tehran	8	IR	2
Tejas	Texas	3	USA	3
Termópilas	Zermopile	4	GR	1
Terranova	Newfoundland	2	CDN	1
Tesalia	Zassalia	3	GR	2
Tetuán	Tittaouen	8	MA	1
Teutoburgo	Teutoburg	4	D	3

Anexo I (*continuación*)

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Tíber	Tevere	7	I	1
Tíbet		3	RC	1
Tigris	Dijla	7	(2)	1
Tilburgo	Tilburg	8	NL	3
Tirana	Tiranë	8	AL	2
Tirol	Tyrol	3	A	3
Tlemecén	Tilimsan	8	DZ	2
Tolón	Toulon	8	F	3
Tolosa	Toulouse	8	F	4
Tonquín		3	(2)	2
Tracia	Zraki	3	GR	2
Transilvania	Ardeal	3	R	1
Trebia	Trebbia	7	I	2
Trebisonda	Trabzon	8	TR	3
Tréveris	Trier	8	D	1
Trincomalí	Tirikunalamalaya	8	C	3
Trinidad	Trinity	27	USA	3
Trípoli	Trabulus	8	(3)	1
Tripolitania	Trabulus	3	(3)	1
Tristán de Acuña	Tristan da Cunha	2	(3)	3
Trivandrum	Tiruvanantapuram	8	IND	3
Tuamotú	Touamatou	2	(6)	2
Tubinga	Tübingen	8	D	3
Túnez	Tounis	18	TN	1
Turcas	Turks	2	(5)	3
Turena	Touraine	3	F	3
Turgovia	Thurgau	3	CH	3
Turín	Torino	8	I	3
Turingia	Thüringen	3	D	3
Turquía	Türkiye	1	TR	1
Turs	Tours	8	F	5
Ucrania	Ukraina	3	SU	2
Unión	Tokelau	2	(6)	4
Unión Soviética	Sovietskiy Soyus	1	SU	1
Urales	Ural	4	SU	1
Utrech	Utrecht	8	NL	3
Uxda	Oudja	8	MA	4
Valaquia		3	R	2
Valés	Valais	3	CH	5
Valeta	Valetta	8	M	3
Valtelina	Valtellina	3	I	2
Vandea	Vendée	3	F	4
Varsovia	Warszawa	8	PL	1
Veimar	Weimar	8	D	4
Venecia	Venezia	8	I	2
Venesino	Venaissin	3	F	5
Verde, Río	Green River	7	USA	4
Verdes, Montañas	Green Mountains	4	USA	4
Versalles	Versailles	8	F	1
Vestfalia	Westfalen	3	D	2
Vesubio	Vesuvio	4	I	2
Veteravia	Wetterau	3	D	3
Viena	Vienne	78	F	5
Viena	Wien	8	A	1
Vienesado	Viennois	3	F	5
Vilna	Vilnius	8	SU	2
Vírgenes	Virgin	2	(5)	2
Viseo	Vizeu	8	P	3
Vístula	Wisla	7	PL	1
Volinia	Volyn	3	SU	2
Volo	Volos	8	GR	3
Vosgos	Vosges	4	F	2
Wartburgo	Wartburg	8	D	3
Wurzburgo	Wurzburg	8	D	3
Xauen	Chechaouen	8	MA	3
Yakarta	Djakarta	8	RI	3
Yanina	Ioannina	8	GR	3
Yebala	Djebala	3	MA	2
Yemen	Yaman	1	(2)	1
Yibuti	Djibouti	8	(3)	3
Yona	Yonne	4	F	5

Exónimo español	*Nombre oficial*	*Accidente geográfico*	*Nación*	*Uso*
Yugoslavia	Yugoslavija	1	YU	1
Zambeze	Zambesi	4	(3)	3
Zante	Dsakinzos	2	GR	3
Zelanda	Zeeland	3	NL	2
Zeluán	Selouan	8	MA	2
Zembla, Nueva	Novaya Zemlya	2	SU	2

Anexo II

LISTA DE GENTILICIOS

Abisinios
Abruzos
Afganos
Africanos
Albaneses
Albigenses
Alejandrinos
Alemanes
Alsacianos
Americanos
Anamitas
Anconitanos
Andorranos
Angoleños
Antuerpienses
Aquitanos
Arabes
Arameos
Arcadios
Aretinos
Argelinos
Argólicos
Arlesianos
Armenios
Artesianos
Ascalonitas
Asiáticos
Atenienses
Australianos
Austríacos
Auverneses
Aviñoneses
Bálticos
Bantúes
Basilienses
Basutos
Bávaros
Bayanos
Bayoneses
Bearneses
Bechuanas
Belgas
Bengalíes
Benineses
Beocios
Berébéres
Bergamascos
Berlineses
Berneses
Berrichones
Betlemitas
Biafreños
Bipontinos
Birmanos
Bohemos
Boloñeses
Bordeleses
Borgoñones
Bosnios
Brabanzones
Bracarenses
Brasileños
Bretones
Británicos
Bruselenses
Búlgaros
Burundeses
Butaneses
Cafres
Cairinos
Calabreses
Californios
Calmucos
Camboyanos
Cameruneses
Canadienses
Candiotas
Cantaurienses
Cariocas
Carolinos
Celandeses
Ceseneses
Cingaleses
Circasianos
Cirenaicos
Comoros
Congoleños
Conimbricenses
Constancienses
Constantinopolitanos
Corintios
Coreanos
Corsos
Cosacos
Cremoneses
Cretenses
Croatas
Crotoniatas
Curazoleños
Curdos
Curlandeses
Chadianos
Checos
Chinos
Chipriotas
Dahomeyanos
Dálmatas
Damascenos
Daneses
Delios
Egipcios
Epirotas
Eritreos
Escandinavos
Escoceses
Eslavos
Eslovacos
Eslovenos
Espartanos
Estadounidenses
Estonios
Etíopes
Etolios
Eubeos
Europeos
Ferrareses
Finlandeses
Fiyianos
Flamencos
Florentinos
Floridanos
Fluminenses
Focenses
Franceses
Frisones
Gaboneses
Gaetanos
Galeses
Galileos
Gambianos
Ganatas
Ganteses
Gascones
Genoveses
Georgianos
Ginebrinos
Gocianos
Gorcienses
Griegos
Grisones
Groenlandeses
Guayaneses
Güeldreses
Guineos
Guyaneses
Haitianos
Hamburgueses
Hanoverianos
Helenos
Hindúes
Holandeses
Hotentotes
Húngaros
Ilirios
Indios
Indochinos
Indonesios
Ingleses
Iraníes
Iraquíes
Irlandeses
Islandeses
Israelíes
Israelitas
Italianos
Jamaicanos
Japoneses

Anexo II (*continuación*)

Javaneses
Jerosolimitanos
Jordanos
Katangueños
Kataries
Keñatas
Koveities
Laconios
Laosianos
Lapones
Lemnios
Lemosines
Lesbios
Letones
Libaneses
Liberianos
Libios
Ligures
Lioneses
Lisboneses
Lituanos
Livonios
Lombardos
Londinenses
Loreneses
Lovanienses
Lugdunenses
Luqueses
Luxemburgueses
Macedonios
Magiares
Maguntinos
Malabares
Malasios
Malavianos
Malayos
Maldivos
Malgaches
Malienses
Malteses
Malucos
Manchúes
Marfileños
Marroquíes
Marselleses
Mauricianos
Mauritanos
Mecanos
Melanesios
Mesineses
Micronesios
Milaneses
Modeneses
Mogoles
Moldavos
Monegascos
Mongoles
Montenegrinos
Moravos
Morlacos
Moros
Moscovitas
Mozambiqueños
Muniqueses
Napolitanos
Narboneses
Nauruanos
Nazarenos
Neerlandeses
Neoyorquinos
Nepaleses
Nigerianos
Nigerinos
Nizardos
Normandos
Noruegos
Nubienses
Occitanos
Omaníes
Oraneses
Paduanos
Palermitanos
Palestinos
Pamúes
Papúes
Paquistaníes
Parisienses
Parmesanos
Pavianos
Peloponenses
Pensilvanos
Pequineses
Persas
Perusinos
Piamonteses
Picardos
Pisanos
Placentinos
Polacos
Polinesios
Pomeranos
Pompeyanos
Portugueses
Provenzales
Prusianos
Pulleses
Quirguises
Raguseos
Raveneses
Reatinos
Remenses
Renanos
Rifeños
Roaneses
Rocheleses
Rodesianos
Rodios
Romanos
Roselloneses
Ruadeses
Rumanos
Rumeliotas
Rusos
Rutenos
Saboyanos
Sajones
Salernitanos
Samios
Samoanos
Samotracios
Samoyedos
Sanmarinenses
Santomenses
Santoñeses
Sardos
Saudíes
Seichellanos
Senegaleses
Serbios
Serifios
Seychellanos
Siameses
Siberianos
Sicilianos
Sidonios
Sierraleoneses
Silesianos
Singapo-
renses
Sinopenses
Siracusanos
Sirios
Somalíes
Soviéticos
Suabos
Suazis
Sudaneses
Suecos
Suazos
Tailandeses
Tangerinos
Tanzanios
Tarentinos
Tártaros
Tasios
Tebanos
Tejanos
Tesalios
Tesaloni-
censes
Tesbitas
Tetuaníes
Tibetanos
Ticinenses
Timbreos
Tirios
Tiroleses
Togoleses
Toloneses
Tolosanos
Toscanos
Tracios
Transilvanos
Tridentinos
Tripolitanos
Tunecinos
Turanios
Turcomanos
Turcos
Turingios
Tusculanos
Ucranios
Ugandeses
Válacos
Valones
Vandeanos
Varsovianos
Vaticanos
Veimareses
Venecianos
Vénetos
Veroneses
Vestfalianos
Vienenses
Vieneses
Vietnamitas
Virginianos
Voltenses
Yemeníes
Yugoslavos
Zaireños
Zambianos
Zulúes

MATERIALS FOR DISCUSSION ON EXONYMS

Report presented by Poland*

The definition of an exonym has already twice been discussed within a forum of international co-operation: at the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, London 1972, and at the fifth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names in 1973.

As a result we now have two definitions.

First, the Second United Nations Conference defines an exonym as:

> "A geographical name used in a certain language for a geographical entity situated outside the area where that language has official status and differing in its form from the name used in the official language or languages of the area where the geographical entity is situated."[1]

On the other hand, according to the definitions adopted by the United Nations Group of Experts:

> "*An exonym* is a written form of a geographical name used in a certain language for a geographical entity situated outside the area where the language has official status and differing in its form from the name used in the official language or languages of the area where the geographical entity is situated.
>
> "*A conventional name* is an exonym which is widely and currently used.
>
> "*A traditional name* is an exonym which is long established as well as being presently in use."

Neither of these definitions, however, accounts for the existence of various types of languages (isolating, agglutinative, inflexional, alternating) among which foreign geographical names are adopted. Inflexional languages especially, among them the Slavonic languages with their particularly rich inflexive (except Bulgarian and Macedonian) and derivational capacities, enforce the formation of a greater number of exonyms than in other language groups.

The point is less obvious in cartographic publications (maps, globes etc.), in which a geographical name is a written sign, which is not necessarily pronounced. In a text, however, whether scientific, popular or literary press or other mass medium, geographical names have to conform to the rules of a native language, i.e. they must undergo declension, serve as a basis for adjective formation and so on.

Let us consider several examples from Polish:

French "Le Havre" takes the form *Hawr* and is declined *Hawru* (genitive), *Hawrze* (locative).

German "Braunschweig" becomes the Polish *Brunszwik*, *Brunszwiku* (genitive), *Brunszwiku* (locative) and *brunszwicki* (adjective).

Dutch "Den Haag", in Polish, becomes *Haga*, *Hagi* (genitive), *Hadze* (locative), *haski* (adjective).

The proper name Liverpool in Polish is not an exonym, since this form is subject to declension: *Liverpoolu* (genitive), but the official name Liverpool Bay has to be changed to an exonym *Zatoka Liverpoolska*.

If one of the elements in a compound name is an exonym, then the second must also become an exonym. Let us consider Zillertaler Alpen; since there exist various names for mountains (*Alpen*, *Alpes*, *Alpi*) an exonym Alpy is justified in Polish. Thus, although the name "Zillertal" is not an exonym, this part of the Alps has been named with an exonym: *Alpy Zillertalskie*.

An additional number of exonyms is set up when geographical names are transcribed from non-Latin alphabets. Even if international principles for the romanization of these alphabets are agreed upon, the official Polish orthography, binding since 1936, has codified certain methods for their representation by means of letters from Polish alphabet; thus it seems impossible to introduce any radical changes in such representation.

Other difficulties are posed by those cases where both languages in question use the Latin alphabet, but they differ in the use of diacritical marks. Omission of diacritical marks or their substitution by letters or sequences of letters leads, from the formal point of view, to the formation of exonyms. However, we are of the opinion that such operations do not form exonyms. Thus the Polish *Calarasi* (instead of the Romanian "Călărasi") or *La Montania* (instead of the Spanish "La Montaña") are not exonyms. Similarly, *Lodz*, which is formed by omission of diacritical marks in the Polish proper name *lódź* is not an exonym.

The two types of exonyms differentiated in 1973 ("conventional names" and "traditional names") are worth being complemented by the third one—"historical names"—for exonyms used in the past and indispensable in historical maps and texts concerning history.

Here we should quote as typical cases the former Polish *Królewiec*, the exonym for the German "Königsberg", presently Kaliningrad in the USSR, or the former Polish *Raguza*, from the Italian "Ragusa", presently Dubrovnik in Yugoslavia.

Historical exonyms should be distinguished from historical names that were not exonyms in other languages, such as *Sredec* or *Serdika*, former names of the present Sofia, Bulgaria.

To sum up the argument, our claim is that the number of exonyms on maps can be reduced, but that in texts they are unavoidable and their reduction must be a long and gradual process. Such duality, however, entails certain inconveniences, e.g. the form of names used in geographical textbooks and in encyclopaedias would differ from those on maps.

---

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.121.

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), p. 49.

AGENDA ITEM 14—POINT 14 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR—TEMA 14 DEL PROGRAMA

PRATIQUES COURANTES DANS LE TRAITEMENT DE LA TOPONYMIE SOUS-MARINE
Rapport présenté par le Canada*

Summary

Canada, which has one of the longest coastlines in the world and has recently decided to extend its sovereignty over fisheries to 200 nautical miles from its shores, constantly needs to improve its knowledge of the adjacent ocean depths and to obtain a precise and accurate picture of the undersea features in those waters. Since 1967, a seven-member Consultative Committee has been giving advice on the appropriateness of the names of undersea features and has developed principles and practical methods for dealing with such names. The Committee maintains close contacts with the international bodies concerned with nomenclature for undersea features, and has contributed extensively to the formulation of definitions, principles and methods for use internationally.

Resumen

El Canadá, país con uno de los litorales más largos del mundo, ha declarado recientemente que extiende su jurisdicción en materia de pesca hasta 200 millas de sus costas, necesita cada vez más urgentemente mejorar su conocimiento de los fondos marinos e identificar con exactitud y precisión los accidentes submarinos. Desde 1967 un comité asesor de siete miembros ha prestado asesoramiento sobre la adecuación de los nombres geográficos de los accidentes submarinos y ha preparado principios y procedimientos prácticos para la utilización de esos nombres. Ese comité también ha mantenido vínculos estrechos con los órganos internacionales interesados en los nombres de los accidentes submarinos y ha contribuido sustancialmente a dar definiciones y formular principios y procedimientos para su empleo internacional.

*

* *

Le Canada possède un littoral qui est un des plus longs au monde. En raison de la récente déclaration qui a porté à 200 milles de nos côtes la juridiction du Canada dans le domaine des pêches, il est de plus en plus nécessaire d'accroître notre connaissance des fonds océaniques moyens, de faire progresser la cartographie bathymétrique des phénomènes sous-marins et d'identifier exactement et précisément les formes morphologiques découvertes.

Depuis 10 ans, le Comité consultatif de la toponymie sous-marine a étudié et recommandé divers noms d'éléments sous-marins et il a favorisé l'établissement d'une terminologie qui pourrait être acceptée dans le monde entier. Le Comité, qui est composé de sept membres et qui représente un large éventail d'intérêts, notamment en ce qui concerne la défense, les pêches, l'océanographie, l'écologie marine, la géologie marine, la bathymétrie, les affaires du nord et la toponymie, a aussi participé à l'élaboration de principes et de règles qui seront appliqués dans les régions qui intéressent le Canada. Ces principes et règles ont été révisés en collaboration avec la Commission de toponymie des Etats-Unis d'Amérique afin que nos deux pays puissent mettre au point et utiliser des approches normalisées. Le texte intégral des principes et des règles proposés est présenté à la troisième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques.

Voici, en résumé, les principes proposés pour l'appellation des éléments sous-marins voisins du Canada.

Les noms donnes par d'autres pays seront acceptés s'ils sont conformes aux principes suivants :

a) Les noms et la terminologie établis seront acceptés;

b) Les doubles emplois de noms doivent être évités;

c) L'orthographe des noms d'origine commune doit être uniforme; les désignations dans plus d'une langue seront acceptées si l'usage en est bien établi; les règles linguistiques concernant l'accentuation et l'orthographe seront acceptées;

d) Les noms de personnes doivent être utilisés rarement; le cas échéant, ces noms doivent rappeler une contribution marquante dans la région, dans l'histoire et l'avancement des sciences de la mer ou de la terre ou dans l'exploration;

e) On préfère d'abord les noms descriptifs et choisis par association d'idées, puis les noms dérivés de navires, d'institutions et de personnages historiques qui ont contribué à la découverte, à la vérification et à l'interprétation de phénomènes océaniques;

f) La terminologie doit refléter l'usage; elle peut être liée aux caractères génétiques ou physiques; il faut que les

* Le texte original de ce rapport préparé par M. Ewing, hydrographe fédéral du Canada, chef du Service hydrographique du Canada, directeur général de la Direction générale des levés marins, sciences océaniques et aquatiques du Ministère de l'environnement et des pêches, et président du Comité consultatif de la toponymie sous-marine, du Comité permanent canadien des noms géographiques, a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.17.

La version anglaise de ce rapport, publiée dans le numéro spécial de la revue *CANOMA*, vol. 3, n° 1, a été distribuée à la Conférence.

nouveaux termes soient approuvés avant leur publication.

En sa qualité de membre de l'Organisation hydrographique internationale, le Service hydrographique canadien est convenu de n'utiliser que les noms qui concordent exactement avec les désignations prescrites par la source la plus autorisée. Ainsi, chaque pays membre fournira une couverture toponymique complète qui sera utilisée par tous les autres bureaux hydrographiques nationaux qui publient des cartes et d'autres documents de navigation ayant trait à la même région. Par ailleurs, les cartes du Canada qui couvrent des régions étrangères indiquent des noms approuvés par les pays souverains dans ces régions. Ces ententes internationales doivent aider à atteindre l'objectif de normalisation des noms géographiques visé par les Nations Unies.

Le Comité d'étude de la carte générale bathymétrique des océans (CGBO) a été réorganisé en 1973 et transformé en un comité conjoint de la Commission océanographique intergouvernementale de l'UNESCO et de l'Organisation hydrographique internationale. L'Hydrographe fédéral du Canada préside le sous-comité de la toponymie et de la nomenclature des éléments des fonds océaniques.

Le Comité consultatif de la toponymie sous-marine est convaincu que les discussions engagées à l'échelon international permettront d'aboutir à une entente sur la normalisation de la toponymie des fonds océaniques et que toutes les parties arriveront à un accord quant à la définition et à l'utilisation de la terminologie, des principes et des règles à adopter à l'égard de la nomenclature et de la terminologie. Notre principale tâche pour l'avenir consistera à communiquer aux spécialistes des sciences de la mer et aux rédacteurs de revues scientifiques les définitions, les principes et les règles qui sont approuvés.

PROBLEMS OF EXTRATERRESTRIAL TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURE NOMENCLATURE
Report presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*

The period between the Second and Third United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names has been characterized by intensive development of space research. Space research apparatus was used for investigation of the moon as well as Mars, Mercury, Venus and other planets of the solar system.

Successful execution of space programmes in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, the United States of America and other countries promoted a wide programme of moon surface mapping at scales 1 : 1,000,000, 1 : 500,000, 1 : 250,000 and larger; of Mars at scales 1 : 5,000,000, 1 : 1,000,000, and 1 : 250,000; and of Mercury at scale 1 : 5,000,000. These developments have created a demand, which keeps growing, for the naming of a considerable number of surface formations of different types and shapes on different celestial bodies. That is why it has become obviously necessary to revise the former views on naming of extraterrestrial topographic features based on the moon investigation with telescopes.

To solve the problem of naming of a much greater number of topographic features of diverse types and forms on the surfaces of different planets and their satellites it became necessary to apply a new toponymic approach.

Having started investigation of this problem, the Working Group on the Names of Extraterrestrial Topographic Features[1] has held five meetings in recent years, timed to coincide with the fourth (1972), fifth (1973) and sixth (1975) sessions of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. Between sessions, the work was conducted by correspondence.

First of all the Working Group communicated with the International Astronomic Union (IAU), the scientific-public organization that deals practically with the naming of extraterrestrial bodies and their surface formations. The first steps in this direction were not reassuring. We applied to the IAU President[2] and Secretary-General with an offer of co-operation, but received a negative-in-essence reply.[3] Afterwards, however, we managed to establish business relations with the IAU.

The IAU fifteenth General Assembly, held in Sidney in 1973, introduced amendments to the structure and procedure of preparation and examination of proposals on nomenclature of planets and their satellites. The Working Group on Planetary System Nomenclature[4] was set up, as were a number of task groups on nomenclature of the moon, Mars, Mercury, Venus and outer planets of the solar system. The Chairmen of the Task Groups became members of the Working Group. The proposals prepared by each of the task groups are discussed at Working Group sessions and after approval by simple majority of votes are handed over to the IAU Executive Committee, which accepts them without consideration. Subsequently, also without consideration, the proposals are approved

* The original text of this paper, prepared by A. M. Komkov (USSR), Chairman of the Working Group on the Names of Extraterrestrial Topographic Features of UNGEGN, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.18.

[1] Initially the following three experts were elected as members of the Working Group: A. M. Komkov, Chairman (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics), M. F. Burrill (United States of America) and H. G. Lewis (United Kingdom). In 1973–1975 they were joined by S. Radó (Hungary), R. Randall (United States of America), D. Sharma (India) and D. Vayacacos (Greece).

[2] Letter to IAU President B. Stressberg and Secretary-General S. Jager, of 14 August 1973.

[3] Reply letter to Mr. Burrill, Chairman of the United Nations Group of Experts, of 21 August 1973.

[4] The IAU Working Group is composed of P. Millman, Chairman (Canada), B. Levin (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics), D. Morrison (United States of America), A. Dollfus (France), C. Mayer (United States of America), T. Owen (United States of America), G. Pettengill (United States of America), B. Smith (United States of America), S. Runcorn (United Kingdom).

by the next IAU General Assembly. The updated structure permits broadening of the scale of activities (to extend naming to all planetary bodies) and an increase in its speed. At the same time it is necessary to mention that under the new structure the preparation and consideration of the proposals is conducted by a comparatively narrow group of specialists and that approval of proposals by the IAU Executive Committee and the IAU General Assembly is of a formal character.

Exchange of information was established between the United Nations and the IAU Working Groups. Mr. P. Millman, Chairman of the IAU Working Group (IAUWG) was invited to participate at the United Nations Working Group (UNWG) meeting held in New York on 14 March 1975. He delivered a report on the activities of the IAUWG and became acquainted with remarks and proposals of the UNWG members. A. Komkov, the UNWG Chairman, took part in the IAUWG session held in July 1976 in Moscow, where he delivered a paper entitled "Concerning the normalization of the nomenclature of extraterrestrial topographic features". On proposal of the IAUWG Chairman the Chairman of UNWG was included in the IAUWG as a consultant.

Thus, favourable conditions have been established, and continue at present, for business and fruitful co-operation between the two Working Groups.

The state of affairs in naming of extraterrestrial topographic features is now as follows: The IAUWG at its first session (1974) approved the previously elaborated "Basic principles for planetary system nomenclature" and compiled at list of Latin terms for different types of features and a list of over 20 possible name categories for use in nomenclature of extraterrestrial topographic features (without, however, indicating what name categories were recommended for certain types of topographic features on different planets). Along with commemorative names (after distinguished deceased men of science and engineering and workers in culture and art), the list incorporated such name categories as animals, birds, minerals, islands, lakes, rivers, mountains, deserts and so on, thus opening the way to a torrent of contradictory and unacceptable proposals.

As a result of subsequent scrutiny and selection of proposals, definite name categories already in use or recommended for different types of surface formations on different celestial bodies were determined at the IAUWG meetings in 1975 and 1976 (see table in annex).

Gradually, the outline of the general system of nomenclature of extraterrestrial topographic features was elaborated. The system stipulates that specified name categories be fixed for each group of topographic features on different celestial bodies. This allows more effective control of the name-assignment procedure, while avoiding duplication of names on different planets as had happened, for example, in 1973 when the fifteenth IAU General Assembly approved about 90 commemorative names for Martian craters, though these names had been already assigned to the lunar craters.

In order to escape possible duplication of names the IAUWG in 1974 passed the recommendation not to assign the names of outstanding workers in art and culture to the lunar craters, but to save this name category for Mercury craters only.

By now, in compliance with the name categories presented in the annex, lists of names of a large number of specific topographic features of the moon, Mars and Mercury are compiled and approved by the IAU. Lists of a certain number of spare names, forming a kind of "bank" of names to be used in case of emergency, are also prepared. Selection of names was made on an international basis. Considerable and complicated work has been carried out, but this does not mean that all the problems of extraterrestrial topographic feature nomenclature are already solved.

Foreseeing further development of space research and a growing demand for extraterrestrial feature names it is necessary to specify and concretize the existing system of naming in order to fix firmly for each group of surface formations on each planet a more definite and sufficiently productive category of names. From the toponymic point of view it seems questionable to use names of research spacecraft or observatories for valleys and precipices on Mercury's surface; these names better suit features of discrete rather than continuous character. We think also that such a category as names of large orographic features of the earth is fit for a wider application. Out of the great number of possible names of this kind, only 14 names have been used up to now, and these only for the lunar features.

We doubt the expediency of employing a large number of Latin terms for designation of different types of extraterrestrial topographic features. The terms now operative in geography and geomorphology for investigation of terrestrial features fully meet the requirements of science and practice. Translation of the terms into Latin by no means increases their scientific significance. The problem of Latin terms was discussed at the last meeting of our Working Group in 1975. It should be noted that almost all members of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names actively participated in this meeting. The majority of experts expressed the opinion that the generic terms designating different types of extraterrestrial topographic features should be selected from among the terrestrial terms and that the terms should be English in English publications, Russian in Russian publications and so on.

As a result of the above-mentioned Working Group meeting we came to the conclusion that at the present stage of the investigation of extraterrestrial topographic feature nomenclature the complicated legal aspects of the subject should not be touched. But questions of this kind remain. And now that the general system of planetary system nomenclature is outlined it is expedient to define on a broad international basis the procedure for introducing, considering and approving of proposals on names for extraterrestrial topographic features as well as that for informing all the world scientific circles concerned. Co-operation between the IAU and the United Nations will facilitate the effective solution of this problem.

Annex

EXTRATERRESTRIAL TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURE NOMENCLATURE: CATEGORIES OF NAMES OF DIFFERENT TYPES OF TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURES BEING USED OR RECOMMENDED FOR APPLICATION

Topographic features \ *Celestial bodies*	*Moon* — *Near side*	*Moon* — *Far side*	*Mars*	*Mercury*	*Venus*
Albedo features	—	—	Names from antique world for marking map sheets at scale 1:5,000,000	—	—
Plains, plateaus, "seas", "bays", "swamps", mountains, valleys, canyons, faults, fissures and other features of non-crater formation	Symbolic names. Names transferred from orographic terrestrial features	Symbolic names. Commemorative names; names transferred from orographic terrestrial features	Names from antique world. Names of terrestrial rivers for valleys and dry riverbeds	Names from antique world for plains and mountains. Names of research spacecraft and observatories for valleys and precipices	Names of goddesses from antique world for vast plains, commemorative names (for specialists in the field of radioelectronics and automation) for other topographic features
Craters — Large	Commemorative names (for outstanding astronomers, mathematicians, physicists, biologists)	Commemorative names (for outstanding figures in science, art and culture)	Commemorative names (for outstanding astronomers, mathematicians, physicists and others) for craters with d > 100 km	Commemorative names (for outstanding writers, poets, composers, painters)	Mythological female names for craters with d > 100 km
Craters — Small	Letter indexes attached to names of nearby craters (Mendler's system); male and female names on large scale maps	Designation system is not elaborated yet	Letter indexes connected with the layout of map sheets at scale 1:5,000,000; names of small towns and villages on maps of 1:1,000,000 and larger		Modern female names

COMMENTS ON THE PROGRAMME OF THE WORKING GROUP ON UNDERSEA AND MARITIME FEATURES

Report presented by Hungary*

Résumé

Les résolutions 22, 23 et 26 de la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques[1] concernaient les problèmes relatifs à la nomenclature océanographique et aux noms des détails sous-marins. Le Groupe de travail chargé des noms des détails sous-marins et marins a choisi actuellement d'examiner la résolution 23. Dans cette résolution, la Conférence recommande que le Groupe d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques "élabore un modèle de texte sur le traitement des noms des détails sous-marins" et "mette au point des formules types pour la présentation des propositions concernant les noms . . . en s'inspirant des formules utilisées par le Board on Geographical Names des Etats-Unis (BGN) et par des organismes similaires dans d'autres pays". A la sixième session du Groupe d'experts, ces tâches ont été formulées de la manière suivante:

a) La détermination de politiques et de principes en vue d'attribuer un nom aux détails sous-marins et marins. (Le texte du BGN intitulé "Principes appliqués en ce qui concerne les noms de détails sous-marins"[2] a été cité comme modèle possible.)

b) La mise au point d'une formule pour les propositions de nouveaux noms. (La formule du BGN a été citée comme modèle.)

Le Groupe d'experts a indiqué dans l'annexe II de son rapport sur sa cinquième session qu'"il faudrait s'efforcer d'éviter les doubles emplois avec les travaux des autres organisations qui s'occupent du même domaine d'activité". C'est pourquoi il est proposé que les recommandations déjà faites par l'Organisation hydrographique internationale (OHI)—dont certaines sont mentionnées dans la circulaire No 28 de 1972 du Bureau hydrographique international—soient examinées en vue de leur adoption éventuelle. Nous estimons qu'il importe que le texte qui sera élaboré grâce aux efforts du Groupe de travail soit publié conjointement par l'Organisation des Nations Unies et l'OHI.

Le texte du BGN manque d'informations détaillées sur les termes génériques, qui ne sont mentionnés qu'au point 5 ("Les termes génériques en anglais sont acceptés . . .; les termes génériques dans d'autres langues sont traduits"). Puisqu'il est proposé que le point 5 soit supprimé et étant donné que son libellé ne convient pas, il faut ajouter certains principes concernant l'utilisation des termes génériques. Le texte suivant est une solution possible: "Les termes génériques devraient figurer dans la langue utilisée par l'autorité nationale de normalisation compétente, sur la base d'une liste de termes génériques accompagnés de définitions établie en commun par l'Organisation des Nations Unies et l'OHI".

En ce qui concerne le deuxième point du programme du Groupe de travail, la formule intitulée "Proposition de nom pour un détail sous-marin" (en ajoutant "ou marin") convient mieux que la formule intitulée "Proposition de nom pour un détail situé dans l'Antarctique". Toutefois, une telle formule ne serait nécessaire que si l'on pouvait créer un service on un bureau au Secrétariat de l'Organisation des Nations Unies afin d'examiner les propositions de noms au niveau international et cela "causerait des heurts ou des doubles emplois avec les travaux qu'effectue actuellement le Comité GEBCO du BHI", comme l'a fait observer G. F. Delaney dans son document d'information. Il se peut que le Comité GEBCO puisse se servir de cette formule.

Resumen

En las resoluciones 22, 23 y 26 de la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos[3] se trató de los problemas relativos a la nomenclatura submarina y los nombres de los accidentes submarinos. El Grupo de Trabajo sobre los accidentes submarinos y marítimos ha decidido tratar en esta ocasión de la resolución 23. En esta resolución, se recomienda que el Grupo de Expertos de las Naciones Unidas en Nombres Geográficos "prepare un modelo o modelos de declaración sobre la forma de tratar los nombres de los accidentes submarinos" y además se recomienda que el Grupo "prepare . . . unos modelos de formulario para proponer nombres . . . inspirados en los que utilizan la Board on Geographical Names de los Estados Unidos y organismos similares de otros países". En el sexto período de sesiones del Grupo de Expertos, las tareas mencionadas fueron formuladas del modo siguiente:

a) El establecimiento de políticas y principios en virtud de los cuales los accidentes submarinos y marítimos puedan recibir una designación. (La declaración de la Board on Geographical Names "Undersea name policies" se identificó como un modelo posible.)

b) El establecimiento de una fórmula por la cual se puedan proponer nuevos nombres. (La fórmula de la Board on Geographical Names fue citada como modelo.)

En el anexo II al informe del Grupo de Expertos sobre su quinto período de sesiones, se declaró que "debe cuidarse de no duplicar la labor de otros organismos dedicados a la misma esfera de actividad". Por consiguiente, se sugiere que las recomendaciones existentes

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.28.

[1] *Deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.2), chap. III.

[2] *Ibid.*, vol. II, *Documents techniques* (publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente: F.74.I.4), p. 228.

[3] *Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos*, vol. I, *Informe de la Conferencia* (publicación de las Naciones Unidas, No. de venta: S. 74.I.2), cap. III.

de la Organización Hidrográfica Internacional (OHI) (algunas de las cuales se mencionan en la carta circular No. 28, 1972, de la Oficina Hidrográfica Internacional) sean revisadas para su inclusión. Consideramos importante que la declaración resultante de los esfuerzos efectuados por el Grupo de Trabajo sea publicada conjuntamente por las Naciones Unidas y la OHI.

La declaración de la Board on Geographical Names carece de información detallada sobre términos genéricos, que se mencionan únicamente en el punto 5 ("*Generics in English . . . will be accepted; those in other languages will be translated.*") Puesto que se sugiere que sea suprimido el punto 5 y a causa de que la redacción es inadaptable, ha de añadirse algún principio sobre la utilización de términos genéricos. Una posible solución es la siguiente: "Los términos genéricos deben darse en el idioma de la respectiva autoridad nacional de normalización sobre la base de una lista conjunta de las Naciones Unidas-OHI de términos genéricos con definiciones".

Con respecto al segundo tema acerca del programa del Grupo de Trabajo, la "*Undersea feature name proposal*" (propuesta de nombres de accidentes submarinos) (con "*and maritime*" (y maritimos) añadido) es más adecuada que la fórmula "*Antarctic name proposal*" (propuesta de nombres antárticos). Sin embargo, solamente es necesaria tal fórmula si se puede crear una dependencia u oficina de personal de las Naciones Unidas para ocuparse de las propuestas de nombres en un nivel internacional, y esto "estaría en conflicto con las tareas que actualmente lleva a cabo el Comité del GEBCO – Mapa Batimétrico General de los Océnos – de la Oficina Hidrográfica Internacional (OHI) o las duplicaría", como señaló G. F. Delaney en su documento de información. Tal vez el Comité del GEBCO pueda hacer uso de esta fórmula.

*

* *

Resolutions 22, 23 and 26 of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names[4] dealt with problems relating to undersea nomenclature and the names of undersea features. The Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features has chosen to deal with resolution 23 at this time. This resolution recommends that the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names "work on a model statement or statements on the treatment of undersea feature names" and further recommends that the Group "develop model forms for proposing names . . . patterned after those used by the United States Board on Geographical Names [BGN] and by similar organizations in other countries". At the sixth session of the Group of Experts the above tasks were formulated as follows:

(*a*) The establishment of policies and principles by which undersea and maritime features could be named (the BGN statement "Undersea name policies"[5] was identified as a possible model); and

(*b*) The development of a form by which new names could be proposed (the BGN form was again cited as a model).

In giving our comments we assume that policies and principles at the present stage are intended for use by national standardization authorities. This means that the points of view of international standardization (such as methods of stabilization, the question of possible uniformity or equivalence, the avoiding of the translation of descriptive terms etc.) are excluded. The international aspect can only be achieved if names coinciding with policies and principles laid down in a United Nations statement are included in a joint United Nations–International Hydrographic Organization (IHO) gazetteer. The procedure for such an activity was examined in detail by G. F. Delaney in information paper No. 6, "Guidelines for name applications",[6] submitted to the Group of Experts at its third session. If the Working Group had any intention of including questions of international standardization now, that information paper should have been taken as a basis for discussion too.

The BGN statement is essentially a document aimed at national standardization in a specific country; some points will therefore have to be left out. We suggest the deletion of points 1, 2, 4 and 5. This means that the remaining items will be "Identification and location" (point 3), "Guidelines for selection of specific terms" (point 6) and "Names to be excepted" (point 7).

The following amendments to point 6 are considered necessary:

(*a*) The reference to BGN should be omitted under point 6 (*a*);

(*b*) The words "and maritime" should be added in paragraph 1 of point 6 (*b*);

(*c*) In point 6 (*f*) ("Names considered inappropriate"), a fifth category should be included: "Names of living persons not associated with the discovery of a feature" (see point 4 of the above-mentioned information paper submitted by G. F. Delaney); and

(*d*) Examples of maritime names should be added where possible, since the policies do not refer only to undersea features.

It was stated in annex II to the report of the Group of Experts on its fifth session that "care should be taken to avoid overlapping the work of other agencies engaged in the same area of activity". It is therefore suggested that the existing recommendations of IHO (some of which are mentioned in circular letter No. 28, 1972, of the International Hydrographic Bureau) should be reviewed for inclusion. We think it is important that the statement

[4] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, London, 10–31 May 1972*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

[5] *Ibid.*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), p. 214.

[6] Copies of the paper may be obtained from the Cartography Section, Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

resulting from the Working Group's efforts should be issued jointly by the United Nations and IHO.

The BGN statement lacks detailed information on generic terms, which are mentioned only under point 5 ("Generics in English . . . will be accepted; those in other languages will be translated."). Since it is suggested that point 5 should be deleted, and because the wording is unsuitable, some principle on the use of generic terms has to be added. The following is a possible solution: "Generic terms should be given in the language of the respective national standardization authority, based on a joint United Nations–IHO list of generic terms with definitions".

With regard to the second item on the programme of the Working Group, the "Undersea feature name proposal" (with "and maritime" added) is more suitable than the "Antarctic name proposal" form. However, such a form is needed only if a United Nations staff unit or bureau can be created to deal with name proposals on an international level, and this "would conflict with or overlap the tasks now carried out by the GEBCO Committee of IHB", as noted by G. F. Delaney in his information paper. Perhaps the GEBCO Committee could make use of this form.

LIST OF SUBMARINE NAMES ON THE WORLD MAP 1:2,500,000

Report presented by Hungary*

Résumé

Une liste comprenant 727 noms de détails sous-marins portés sur la carte du monde au 1:2 500 000 a été établie. Une comparaison est faite avec les détails topographiques sous-marins mentionnés dans la nomenclature du Board of Geographical Names (BGN) des Etats-Unis. La comparaison montre qu'un tiers des noms portés sur la carte du monde ne figurent pas dans la nomenclature du BGN et aussi qu'un tiers des noms figurent sous une forme différente dans cette nomenclature. On cite des exemples de divergence concernant aussi bien les noms que des détails de dimension différente. On souligne la nécessité d'une normalisation internationale.

Resumen

Se da una lista de 727 nombres submarinos del mapa mundial a escala 1:2.500.000. Se hace una comparación con el nomenclátor de la Junta de los Estados Unidos sobre Nombres Geográficos: accidentes submarinos. La comparación demuestra que una tercera parte de los nombres del Mapa Mundial no está incluida, y también que una tercera parte de los nombres aparece en diferente forma en el nomenclátor de la Junta de los Estados Unidos sobre Nombres Geográficos. Se aducen ejemplos de divergencias, tanto de nombres diferentes como de accidentes de diferente extensión. Se hace hincapié en la necesidad de una normalización internacional en la aplicación de esos métodos.

*

* *

The attached list was prepared for the sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names in 1975. The list contains submarine names to be found on the sheets of the World Map 1:2,500,000. This World Map series is the result of the combined cartographic efforts of Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, the German Democratic Republic, Hungary, Poland, Romania and the Soviet Union. In the following, we compare this list in some respects with the BGN *Gazetteer of Undersea Features*, second edition (Washington, D.C., 1971).

Divergences between world map 1:2,500,000 and the BGN *Gazetteer*

Our list contains 727 names, the BGN *Gazetteer* about 2,800. In spite of this difference, a considerable number of the names in our list are missing from the BGN *Gazetteer*; according to a rough estimate, one third of the names of the World Map are not contained in the BGN *Gazetteer*. One reason for this could be that names of deeps have been intentionally omitted.

A few comparisons are given below as examples of the different treatment of names in the two materials:

World Map	*BGN Gazetteer*
Admiral Zenker Seamount	Zenker Seamount
Afanasij Nikitin Seamount	Nikitin Seamount
African-Antarctic Basin	Atlantic-Indian Basin
African Antarctic Ridge	Atlantic-Indian Ridge
Akademii Nauk SSSR Height	AN Rise
Alexander Bank	Alexandra Bank
Alfred Merz Seamount	Merz Seamount
Alicia, Banco	Alice Shoal
Alida Bank	Alida Reef

About one third of the names in our list appear in different form in the BGN *Gazetteer*.

It is to be observed that apart from such differences in name forms, there are also divergences in the position and extent of the features. For example, the North Atlantic Ridge and South Atlantic Ridge of the World Map are joined, in the BGN *Gazetteer*, as the "Mid-Atlantic Ridge".

The divergences shown here clearly indicate the necessity for international standardization of submarine feature names. After suitable principles have been formulated, comparisons of this kind should be made, followed by the minimizing of divergences. As a result, lists of equivalent names could be compiled in the different languages.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.29.

(Generics are added in brackets (a) *if they do not form part of the name and* (b) *for names in languages other than English)*

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Abrolhos Bank	150	18 33 S	38 50 W
Adelaide Bank	136	06 20 S	57 05 E
Admiral Zenker Seamount	192	40 52 S	06 00 W
Adventure Bank	53	37 20 N	12 10 E
Afanasij Nikitin Seamount	137	03 00 S	83 00 E
African-Antarctic Basin	211, 212, 222 223, 224	61 30 S	18 00 E
African Antarctic Ridge	194, 210, 211	53 00 S	20 00 E
Africana Seamount	194	37 10 S	29 10 E
Agulhas Bank	174, 194	35 50 S	21 00 E
Agulhas Basin	193, 194	47 00 S	27 00 E
Agulhas Plateau	194	40 00 S	26 00 E
Akademii Nauk SSSR Height	41	47 35 N	150 00 E
Alacrán, Arrecife [reef]	88	22 26 N	89 38 W
Alargado, Arrecife [reef]	88	15 05 N	82 23 W
Albatross Bank	29	56 40 N	152 35 W
Albatross Bank	88	17 40 N	75 42 W
Albatross Depth	138	11 18 S	90 10 E
Albert Meyer Reef	143	20 50 S	172 20 W
Aleutian Trench	28, 29, 42	51 00 N	171 30 W
Aleutian Trough	28, 42	57 00 N	180 00
Alexa Bank	142	11 35 S	175 10 E
Alexander Bank	119	08 02 N	110 37 E
Alfred Merz Seamount	210	48 35 S	05 30 E
Alicia, Banco [bank]	88	16 05 N	79 22 W
Alida Bank	118	00 59 N	107 50 E
Almirante Saldenha Bank	150	22 20 S	37 35 W
Alm Plateau	42	54 50 N	176 35 E
Alpha Rise	1	85 20 N	94 00 W
Altair Seamount	51	44 36 N	33 50 W
Amazon Canyon	110	04 00 N	48 00 W
American Scout Seamount	50	46 25 N	37 35 W
Amirante Basin	136	08 10 S	55 00 E
Ampère Bank	72	35 05 N	12 48 W
Amundsen Basin	1, 7	87 30 N	99 00 E
Andromache Shoal	136	03 50 S	54 50 E
Angola Basin	133, 152, 153	14 00 S	01 00 W
Angria Bank	97	16 25 N	72 05 E
Antiope Reef	143	18 13 S	168 20 W
Arabian Basin	96, 116	12 00 N	64 00 E
Arabian-Indian Ridge	116, 136	04 00 N	64 00 E
Arakane Reef	100	15 40 N	142 45 E
Argentina Seamount	194	37 35 S	18 10 E
Argentine Basin	190, 191	44 00 S	43 00 W
Argo Deep	162	12 28 S	165 50 E
Arguello Canyon	66	34 20 N	121 10 W
Astoria Canyon	46	46 10 N	124 50 W
Atlantis Seamount	71	34 35 N	30 38 W
Aurora Bank	120	00 45 N	129 32 E
Australian-Antarctic Basin	214, 215, 216, 225, 226	58 00 S	115 00 E
Australian-Antarctic Rise	197, 198, 199, 214, 215, 216	50 00 S	117 00 E
Aves Ridge	89	13 40 N	63 20 W
Azores-Cape Saint Vincent Ridge	51, 52	37 10 N	16 00 W
Azores Plateau	51	39 00 N	29 00 W
Baffin Basin	3, 11	72 00 N	66 00 W
Baffin Greenland Rise	11	66 00 N	58 00 W
Bahama Basin	68	28 05 N	76 25 W
Bajo Blanco [bank]	87	20 52 N	90 47 W
Baleine Bank	159	16 45 S	121 52 E
Bali Trough	138, 139	09 30 S	112 00 E
Baltimore Canyon	48	38 05 N	73 48 W
Banda Trench	140	06 00 S	130 40 E
Banquereau [bank]	49	44 32 N	58 45 W
Banzare Seamounts	213	59 22 S	76 50 E

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Barbados Ridge	89	12 55 N	59 40 W
Bartholomew Deep	149	23 28 S	71 23 W
Barth Seamount	221	62 55 S	41 30 W
Bartlett Deep	88	19 05 N	80 20 W
Bassas de Pedro Bank	97	12 40 N	72 30 E
Bayonnaise Bank	143	12 07 S	179 36 W
Bean Ridge	29	52 30 N	148 20 W
Beata Ridge	88, 89	16 30 N	72 00 W
Belgica Bank	4	78 35 N	13 20 W
Bellingshausen Basin	206, 218, 219, 220	65 20 S	130 00 W
Bellona Gap	202	39 00 S	166 00 E
Benares Shoal	136	05 15 S	71 42 E
Bermuda Rise	69	32 30 N	64 50 W
Bill Baileys Bank	12	60 30 N	10 30 W
Blackwood Shoal	140	09 50 S	159 27 E
Blake Plateau	68	30 00 N	78 30 W
Block Canyon	49	39 45 N	71 20 W
Bogorova Rise	60	42 30 N	136 12 E
Bonaire, Trinchera de [basin]	109	11 30 N	67 30 W
Bonin Trench, see Izu-Oga-sawara [Bonin] Trench			
Bougainville Trench	141	06 55 S	154 30 E
Bounty Trough	202	46 00 S	178 00 E
Bowers Ridge	28, 42	55 00 N	177 30 W
Bowie Seamount	29	53 20 N	135 30 W
Brazilian Basin	131, 151	12 00 S	26 00 W
Broken Ridge	178	31 10 S	96 00 E
Brooks Banks	63	24 10 N	166 55 W
Brougham Shoal	142	09 30 S	165 30 E
Brown Bank	88	21 30 N	74 43 W
Brown Bank	119	10 38 N	117 30 E
Brownes Bank	194	36 20 S	21 15 E
Brown's Bank	49	42 40 N	66 05 W
Brown Seamount	29	54 50 N	138 30 W
Bruce Rise	225	63 30 S	101 00 E
Buchan Deep	35	57 40 N	01 15 W
Buffon Reef	143	20 40 S	170 00 W
Buldir Reef	42	52 10 N	176 30 E
Burdwood Bank	207, 203	54 20 S	59 00 W
Burgeo Bank	49	47 05 N	57 50 W
Bushnell Seamount	84	19 04 N	153 53 W
Cable Bank	75	26 45 N	52 35 E
Cabo Falso, Bancos del [banks]	88	15 32 N	83 10 W
Caicos Bank	88, 89	21 40 N	72 15 W
California Seamount	86	17 45 N	124 00 W
Callou Bank	118	09 20 N	107 34 E
Campbell Trough	103	04 25 N	167 45 W
Campeche, Banco de	87, 88	21 30 N	90 30 W
Canada Basin	2	77 00 N	142 00 W
Canary Basin	70, 71, 90, 91	28 00 N	27 00 W
Canso Bank	49	45 08 N	60 20 W
Cape Basin	173, 193	34 00 N	05 00 E
Cape Johnson Depth	120	10 25 N	126 37 E
Cape Johnson Seamount	83	17 05 N	177 10 W
Cape Rise	193	41 00 S	12 30 E
Cape Verde Basin	90, 91, 110, 111	13 00 N	34 00 W
Cape Verde Plateau	91	18 00 N	22 00 W
Capricorn Seamount	143	18 44 S	172 15 W
Cariaco, Fosa de [basin]	109	10 35 N	65 10 W
Carnatic Shoal	119	10 09 N	117 30 E
Carnegie Ridge	128	01 15 S	85 00 W
Carondelet Reef	123	05 38 S	173 53 W
Castor, Banc du [bank]	155	12 50 S	47 45 E
Cayman Ridge	88	19 45 N	81 13 W
Cayman Trough	88	19 05 N	80 00 W
Cay Sal Bank	88	23 45 N	80 05 W
Cedros Trench	66	27 45 N	115 50 W
Central American Trench	87	15 30 N	98 00 W
Central Basin	5, 14	73 30 N	43 00 E

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Central Indian Basin	137, 157	12 00 S	81 00 E
Central Indian Ridge	176, 177, 197	30 00 S	76 00 E
Central Seamount	5	75 00 N	36 00 E
Centurion Bank	136	07 40 S	70 52 E
Ceryn Seamount	49	36 43 N	67 55 W
Chagos Trench	137	06 50 S	73 40 E
Challenger Plateau	202	40 00 S	170 00 E
Charlie Gap	2	78 40 N	170 40 W
Charlotte Bank	118	07 10 N	107 35 E
Charlotte Bank	142	11 45 S	173 15 E
Chatham Rise	183, 202	43 00 S	180 00
Chaucer Seamount	51	42 57 N	29 05 W
Chinook Trough	43	43 30 N	174 00 W
Chirikof Seamount	29	54 43 N	152 50 W
Chukchi Plain	2	76 35 N	173 20 W
Chukchi Plateau	2	78 00 N	166 00 W
Chukchi Rise	2	76 00 N	167 00 W
Clarion Bank	88	20 48 N	74 00 W
Clarion Fracture Zone	84, 85, 86	17 30 N	131 00 W
Clark Bank	125	08 01 S	139 35 W
Clipperton Fracture Zone	104, 105, 106	08 00 N	128 00 W
Cochinos Banks	88	22 15 N	76 25 W
Cocos Basin	138	08 00 S	95 00 E
Cocos Ridge	108	05 00 N	86 25 W
Colahan Seamount	82	30 55 N	175 55 E
Colombia Basin	88	14 00 N	75 00 W
Colombus Bank	88	22 00 N	75 30 W
Colorado Seamount	70	33 08 N	37 20 W
Columbia Bank	151	20 40 S	31 55 W
Colville-Lau Ridge	143, 163, 182	26 00 S	179 00 W
Combe Bank	143	12 32 S	177 30 W
Commander Basin	42	57 00 N	167 00 E
Concepcion Bank	72	29 55 N	12 45 W
Condor Bank	121	07 30 N	148 07 E
Condor Reef	121	08 06 N	147 45 E
Conway Reef	162	21 45 S	174 37 E
Coral, Bancos de [banks]	88	15 53 N	83 45 W
Cormoran Reef	120	07 47 N	134 30 E
Corona Bank	159	12 25 S	118 39 E
Cortes Bank	66	32 30 N	119 15 W
Cowie Seamount	29	54 10 N	149 30 W
Crest Seamount	66	24 30 N	117 01 W
Crozet Basin	176, 196	38 00 S	64 00 E
Crozet Plateau	195	45 30 S	46 00 E
Cruiser Tablemount	71	32 18 N	27 40 W
Dacia Bank	72	31 08 N	13 40 W
Danas Banke [bank]	11	62 45 N	51 10 W
D'Arguin, Banc [bank]	92	20 10 N	16 45 W
D'Artagnan Sh[oal]	159	13 15 S	120 38 E
Davidson Seamount	66	35 50 N	122 40 W
Davie Seamount	194	36 33 S	23 35 E
Davis Bank	151	20 35 S	34 45 W
Denson Seamount	29	54 10 N	137 30 W
Derickson Seamount	28	52 47 N	161 05 W
Der'ugina Gap	41	53 00 N	146 00 E
Derwent Hunter Mount	181	30 55 S	156 15 E
Diamantina Deep	178	34 58 S	102 35 E
Diamantina Fracture Zone	178, 198, 199	37 50 S	110 00 E
Diamantina Trench	178	35 05 S	102 50 E
Dickins Seamount	29	54 35 N	136 55 W
Dido Bank	99	16 48 N	113 00 E
Discovery Seamount	193	42 00 S	01 10 E
Djems Bank	119	03 55 N	112 20 E
Dogger Bank	35	54 25 N	02 40 E
Dupont Shoal	136	04 12 S	54 25 E
Durgin Seamount	29	55 45 N	141 45 W
Earl Dalhousie Bank	121	08 08 N	144 55 E
East Caroline Basin	121	04 00 N	149 00 E
Eastern Pacific Rise	126, 146, 166, 186, 205	31 00 S	111 00 W

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
East Indian Ridge, see Ninety East Ridge			
East Mariana Basin	101	18 00 N	154 00 E
Eauripik Rise	120	03 30 N	141 45 E
Ebeling Bank	118	00 27 N	107 22 E
Ebrill, Récif [reef]	145	22 40 S	133 33 W
Eickelberg Seamount	29	48 30 N	133 10 W
Elikalpeni Bank	117	11 10 N	73 50 E
Emerald Bank	49	43 10 N	63 15 W
Emperor Seamount Chain	42, 62, 82	41 00 N	170 30 E
Erben Tablemount	65	32 52 N	132 28 W
Ernest Legouvé Reef	164	35 13 S	150 42W
Esmeralda Bank	101	14 57 N	145 12 E
Evans Shoal	140	09 50 S	129 33 E
Fabert Bank	146	24 06 S	158 32 W
Faeroe Bank	12	61 00 N	09 00 W
Faeroe Plateau	34	55 40 N	16 15 W
Fairweather Ground	29	58 30 N	139 00 W
Faraday Seamount Group	34	49 50 N	28 20 W
Faris Seamount	29	54 28 N	147 15 W
Farne Deep	35	55 30 N	00 40 W
Fieberling Seamount	65	32 20 N	127 46 W
Field Bank	143	12 18 S	174 45 W
Filippo Reef	124	05 30 S	151 48 W
Fiskenæs Banke [bank]	11	63 20 N	52 10 W
Flemish Cap [bank]	50	47 00 N	44 50 W
Fletcher Plain	1	87 00 N	164 00 W
Flinders Bank	156	20 37 S	57 08 E
Flinders Shoal	140	09 54 S	129 20 E
Formigas Bank	88	18 30 N	75 45 W
Forrest Reef	142	10 15 S	165 45 E
Fortune Bank	136	07 15 S	56 57 E
Foss Bank	143	14 28 S	176 00 W
Four Ladies Bank	225	67 35 S	77 40 E
Fram Bank	224	67 15 S	70 00 E
Franc Victorija Trench	5	80 00 N	42 00 E
Fredrikshåbs Banke [bank]	11	62 15 N	50 50 W
French Frigate Shoals	83	23 50 N	166 15 W
Friendship Shoal	119	05 58 N	112 34 E
Fyllas Banke [bank]	11	63 55 N	52 40 W
Gagarin Seamount	104	01 20 N	154 10 W
Gakkel' Ridge	1, 6	86 00 N	84 00 E
Galathea Depth	120	10 23 N	126 40 E
Galves Bank	101	13 13 N	144 25 E
Gambia Shoal	63	28 10 N	176 35 W
Gamen Reef	121	07 25 N	144 35 E
Ganges Bank	136	07 20 S	71 05 E
Garnet Bank	170	33 02 S	49 20 W
George Bligh Bank	34	58 50 N	13 50 W
Georges Bank	49	41 30 N	67 00 W
George, Seamount	69	34 24 N	60 40 W
Gettysburg Bank	52	36 40 N	11 30 W
Gayser, Banc du [reef]	155	12 25 S	46 25 E
Giacomini Seamount	29	56 25 N	146 20 W
Gibbs Seamount	89	16 35 N	63 50 W
Gifford Seamount	188	38 10 S	75 50 W
Gilberte Shoal	136	05 05 S	55 37 E
Gilbert Seamount	29	52 50 N	150 00 W
Gleaner Reef	143	22 50 S	173 55 W
Golden Gate Bank	86	23 04 N	110 18 W
Goldfinch Shoal	142	10 15 S	166 55 E
Goodrich Bank	140	10 44 S	130 18 E
Gorda, Banco [bank]	88	15 40 N	82 13 W
Gorda Escarpment	45, 46	40 20 N	126 15 W
Graham Bank	53	37 10 N	13 05 E
Grand Cocal Shoal	142	06 00 S	176 15 E
Grand Newfoundland Banks	50	45 30 N	51 00 W
Grappier Bank	88	18 22 N	76 00 W
Gray Feather Bank	121	08 00 N	148 46 E
Grays Canyon	46	46 10 N	124 52 W
Great Bahama Bank	78, 88	24 10 N	78 30 W

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Great Chagos Bank	136, 137	06 10 S	72 00 E
Great Meteor Tablemount	71	29 50 N	28 22 W
Great Pearl Bank	75, 76	25 20 N	53 30 E
Great Sole Bank	35	49 45 N	10 00 W
Greenland Basin	4, 5	74 30 N	00 00
Greenland Iceland Ridge	12	67 00 N	26 00 W
Greig Bank	139	01 04 S	108 28 E
Grenada Trough	89	13 35 N	62 00 W
Grenouille, Banc de la [bank]	155	15 40 S	44 35 E
Groll Bank	151	14 25 S	32 25 W
Guardian Bank	108	09 25 N	87 30 W
Guatemala Basin	87, 107	11 30 N	96 00 W
Guiana Basin	110	08 30 N	47 00 W
Guide Seamount	46	36 55 N	123 20 W
Guinea Basin	112, 132	00 00	06 00 W
Guinea Ridge	132, 133	04 20 S	03 00 W
Gully, The [canyon]	49	44 00 N	59 00 W
Gunnerus Bank	223	67 00 S	32 20 E
Haeckle Deep	168	34 20 S	73 28 W
Hallie Jackson Bank	142	09 55 S	166 37 E
Hancock Seamount	82	30 25 N	178 10 E
Harans Reef	143	21 32 S	168 55 W
Hazel Holme Bank	162	12 45 S	174 00 E
Heceta Bank	46	44 06 N	124 30 W
Heckford Bank	118	10 20 N	97 13 E
Helene Shoal	121	05 32 N	149 08 E
Helen Reef	120	02 53 N	131 48 E
Helen Seamount	146	14 10 N	114 25 W
Henderson Seamount	66	25 20 N	119 27 W
Hera Bank	143	12 10 S	179 15 W
Herdman Seamount	193	45 24 S	00 30 E
Hermes Bank	136	04 33 S	54 20 E
Hess Tablemount	83	17 50 N	173 15 W
Hikurangi Trench	202	41 00 S	178 00 E
Hitchfield Bank	121	07 44 N	149 40 E
Hoburg Bank	36	56 44 N	18 35 E
Hodgkins Ridge	29	53 20 N	136 30 W
Holothuria Banks	159	13 20 S	125 40 E
Home Seamount	143	12 55 S	175 37 W
Hook Ridge	29	49 48 N	144 00 W
Horizon Tablemount	83	19 20 N	168 50 W
Hotspur Bank	150, 151	17 55 S	35 55 W
Hudson Canyon	48	39 40 N	72 40 W
Hunter Bank	120	10 00 N	138 15 E
Hunter Ridge	162	21 50 S	175 00 E
Hurricane Flats	88	23 30 N	78 28 W
Hydrographer Canyon	49	40 00 N	68 50 W
Hydrographers Valley	1	87 00 N	60 00 E
Ianthe Shoal	121	05 55 N	145 20 E
Iberian Basin	51, 52	41 00 N	15 30 W
Iceland-Faeroe Ridge	12	63 30 N	10 00 W
Ingleses, Bancos [banks]	87	21 48 N	91 55 W
Instituta Okeanologii Height	41	52 05 N	149 30 E
Isakov Seamount	81	33 40 N	151 20 E
Iselin Bank	218	70 43 S	178 10 W
Izu-Ogasawara [Bonin] Trench	80	30 00 N	142 30 E
Japan Trench	60, 61, 80	37 30 N	144 00 E
Jaseur Bank	150, 151	20 25 S	35 50 W
Jasper Seamount	66	30 30 N	122 50 W
Java Trench, see Sunda [Java] Trench			
Jermak Plateau	5	81 00 N	06 00 E
Jimmu Seamount	62	46 00 N	168 55 E
Jingu Seamount	62	38 50 N	171 40 E
Jones Bank	35	49 50 N	08 00 W
Josephine Bank	52	36 50 N	14 00 W
Kanmu Seamount	82	31 05 N	177 45 E
Kapingamarangi Rise	121, 141	00 00	156 30 E
Kapitan Spieß Seamount	210	54 45 S	00 10 E
Karin Seamount	83	18 00 N	168 50 W
Kaševarov Bank	41	55 35 N	146 00 E

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Kejpel Bank	181	25 12 S	159 35 E
Kelso Bank	181	24 15 S	159 25 E
Kelvin Seamount	49	38 50 N	64 00 W
Kerguelen Ridge	196, 213, 225	54 00 S	75 00 E
Kermadec Trench	163, 183	31 00 S	176 50 W
Kermit Roosevelt Seamount	44	39 40 N	145 55 W
Kinmei Seamount	82	34 30 N	171 40 E
Klinte Bank	36	57 28 N	19 40 E
Knipovič Ridge	5	77 00 N	06 00 E
Kodiak Seamount	29	56 47 N	149 20 W
Kosciuszko Bank	142	10 28 S	179 35 E
Kossol Reef	120	07 54 N	134 44 E
Krümmel Trench	148, 149	19 00 S	72 00 W
Kurchatov Seamount	136	05 26 S	68 34 E
Kuril Basin	41, 61	47 20 N	149 00 E
Kuril-Kamchatka Trench	42, 61	47 00 N	155 00 E
Kyūshū-Palau Ridge	80, 100, 120	20 00 N	136 20 E
Kyūshū Trench	80	32 00 N	134 30 E
Labadie Bank	35	50 35 N	08 15 W
Labrador Basin	33	55 30 N	47 00 W
Lady Elgin Bank	121	06 18 N	149 28 E
La Have Bank	49	43 12 N	64 00 W
La Junon Bank	136	05 14 S	57 02 E
Lancester Reef, see Neilson [Lancaster] Reef			
Landsortsdjupet [deep]	36	58 43 N	18 30 E
Lawson Bank	125	08 43 S	140 45 W
Learmonth Bank	29	54 30 N	133 05 W
Le Constant Bank	136	06 15 S	56 20 E
Lena Seamount	212	53 00 S	44 25 E
Lena Trough	4	80 45 N	02 20 W
Leven, Banc du [bank]	155	12 30 S	47 45 E
Lille Hellefiskebanke [bank]	11	64 55 N	53 40 W
Lilly Bank	68	27 20 N	78 45 W
Litke Gap	5	82 45 N	21 00 E
Little Bahama Bank	68	26 40 N	78 00 W
Little Halibut Bank	35	58 20 N	00 40 W
Lomonosov Ridge	1, 7	85 00 N	150 00 E
Long Forties [bank]	35	57 15 N	00 30 W
Lord Howe Rise	161, 181, 182, 202	30 00 S	162 55 E
Los Roques Trench	89	12 30 N	67 35 W
Louisa Bank	142	11 44 S	175 56 E
Lugmes Ridge	139, 140	04 35 S	126 40 E
Lusitania Bank	86	23 35 N	111 42 W
Lynedoch Bank	140	10 02 S	130 48 E
Macaw Bank	123	10 40 S	179 15 W
Macclesfield Bank	99	15 50 N	114 20 E
Macquarie Ridge	217	54 00 S	159 00 E
Madagascar Basin	175, 176	27 00 S	53 00 E
Madagascar Ridge	175	31 00 S	45 00 E
Madingley Rise	136	04 25 S	61 00 E
Magallanes Bank	88	22 00 N	76 08 W
Makarov Basin	1	88 00 N	144 00 W
Makarov Seamount	81	29 30 N	153 30 E
Mallory Seamount	194	36 55 S	22 17 E
Manila Reef	121	06 55 N	149 13 E
Marcus-Necker Seamounts	81, 83, 101, 102	21 00 N	160 00 E
Mariana Trench	101, 120, 121	15 00 N	147 30 E
Maria Theresa Reef	184	37 00 S	151 15 W
Marie Louise Bank	119	11 50 N	116 50 E
Marie Shoal	140	10 53 S	130 08 E
Maro Reef	63	25 25 N	170 35 W
Marsala Seamount	71	33 53 N	34 17 W
Marvin Gap	1	87 40 N	96 00 W
Mascarene Basin	155, 156	16 00 S	55 00 E
Mascarene Ridge	136, 156	12 00 S	61 30 E
Mathematician Seamount Range	86	15 40 N	110 55 W
Matsuye Bank	121	08 01 N	148 01 E
Maud Bank	223	65 00 S	02 20 E

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Maud Seamount	223	65 20 S	02 30 E
Mauritius Fracture Zone	156	21 40 S	57 15 E
McCall Seamount	84	18 45 N	157 05 W
McLaughlin Bank	121	09 10 N	148 10 E
Melanesia Basin	122, 142	00 00	167 00 E
Mellish Seamount	82	34 00 N	178 20 E
Mendelejev Ridge	1	85 20 N	132 00 W
Mendocino Escarpment	44, 45	40 15 N	146 30 W
Mernoo Bank	202	43 15 S	175 15 E
Meteor Seamount	193	47 55 S	09 00 E
Meurthe, Roches de la [reef]	195	46 18 S	50 30 E
Mid-Atlantic Ridge, Southern, see South Atlantic Ridge			
Middle Ground	88	22 50 N	76 20 W
Middle Kara Rise	6	79 00 N	80 00 E
Middle Reef	42	52 00 N	176 00 E
Mid-Ocean Canyon	33, 50	48 30 N	40 50 W
Mid-Pacific Basin	103, 122	07 00 N	179 00 W
Miller Seamount	29	53 30 N	144 20 W
Mill Ridge	201, 216	47 30 S	148 00 E
Milne Edwards Trench	128	10 00 S	79 40 W
Milwaukee Bank	82	32 15 N	172 15 E
Misaine Bank	49	47 17 N	59 10 W
Misteriosa Bank	88	18 50 N	83 50 W
Moçambique Terrace	174	32 30 S	32 00 E
Mogami Bank	121	08 30 N	148 45 E
Mohns Ridge	4, 5, 12	72 30 N	01 00 E
Montague Bank	150	20 22 S	36 40 W
Moonless Seamount Range	65	30 25 N	139 00 W
Morgan Bank	86	23 23 N	111 05 W
Morton Bank	142	11 45 S	176 17 E
Morton Seamount	29	50 20 N	142 40 W
Mouchoir Bank	89	21 00 N	70 40 W
Mozambique Basin	174, 175, 195	33 30 S	38 00 E
Muir Seamount	69	33 35 N	62 30 W
Murray Escarpment	64, 65	31 15 N	145 30 W
Murray Ridge	96	20 00 N	61 00 E
Murray Seamount	29	53 48 N	148 25 W
Nansei [Ryūkyū] Trench	80, 100	25 20 N	128 30 E
Nansen Basin	1, 6	84 40 N	74 00 E
Nansen Basin	4, 5	83 00 N	00 00
Nansen Rise	4, 5	81 20 N	00 00
Nasca Ridge	148	20 00 S	80 30 W
Nashville Seamount	69	34 34 N	57 00 W
Natal Bank	195	46 48 S	38 00 E
Natal Seamount	194	37 23 S	22 12 E
Navidad Bank	89	20 00 N	68 50 W
Nazareth Bank	156	14 30 S	60 45 E
Necker Ridge	83	21 40 N	168 00 W
Nee Reef	88	14 33 N	82 33 W
Neilson [Lancaster] Reef	164	27 01 S	146 02 W
Nelson, Banco [bank]	88	19 55 N	74 15 W
Nero Bank	63	28 00 N	178 00 W
Nero Depth	101	13 00 N	146 10 E
Neva Bank	63	26 00 N	174 00 W
New Britain Trench	141	06 40 S	151 00 E
New Caledonia Basin	162, 182	28 30 S	166 15 E
Newfoundland Basin	50	41 30 N	43 00 W
New Guinea Trench	120, 140	00 10 N	135 40 E
New Hebrides Trench	162	20 35 S	168 35 E
New Zealand Plateau	217	50 45 S	172 00 E
Ninety East Ridge [East Indian Ridge]	117, 118, 137, 157, 177	12 00 S	88 30 E
Nintoku Seamount	62	40 50 N	171 00 E
Nolso Bank	12	62 05 N	04 25 W
Norfolk Canyon	48	37 05 N	74 30 W
Norfolk Ridge	182	30 00 S	168 00 E
North American Basin	69, 70	31 00 N	63 00 W
Northampton Banks	63	25 20 N	172 04 W
North Atlantic Ridge [Northern Atlantic Ridge]	34, 51, 70, 71, 90, 110, 111	26 00 N	45 40 W

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
North Australian Basin	159	14 00 S	116 00 E
Northern Atlantic Ridge, see North Atlantic Ridge			
Northern Holiday Seamount, see Scripps Seamount			
North Fiji Basin	162	17 00 S	173 00 E
North Hawaiian Seamount Range	63, 64	31 30 N	160 00 W
North Luconia Shoals	119	05 40 N	112 30 E
Northwind Ridge	2	76 45 N	156 00 W
Norwegian Basin	12	67 00 N	02 00 W
Novaja Zeml'a, Basin of	5, 6, 14	73 20 N	59 00 E
Nuevo, Banco [bank]	87	20 32 N	91 48 W
Nymphe Bank	35	51 25 N	07 10 W
Ob Bank	4	80 50 N	10 00 W
Obruchev Rise	42	52 00 N	166 00 E
Ob' Seamount	212	52 15 S	41 25 E
Ob' Trench	178	32 50 S	98 30 E
Ojin Seamount	62	38 20 N	170 10 E
Oman Basin	96	20 00 N	60 00 E
Ontong Java Rise	141	05 30 S	160 00 E
Oraitilipu Bank	121	08 08 N	147 15 E
Oriente Deep	88	19 36 N	76 50 W
Ormsby Bank	120	00 40 N	129 58 E
Orne Seamount	146	27 40 S	157 45 W
Outer Bailey Bank	12	60 25 N	12 25 W
Owen Shoal	119	08 09 N	111 58 E
Pactolus Bank	207	56 40 S	74 15 W
Pamplona Searidge	29	59 35 N	142 30 W
Papanin Seamount	62	46 10 N	169 35 E
Parker Seamount	29	52 35 N	151 15 W
Parry Shoal	140	11 13 S	129 46 E
Pasco Bank	143	13 05 S	174 25 W
Pathfinder Reef	100	16 31 N	143 08 E
Pathfinder Seamount	29	50 50 N	143 10 W
Patton Seamount	29	54 25 N	150 20 W
Patton Seamount Group	29	54 20 N	149 00 W
Paul Seamount	83	23 45 N	172 35 W
Pavlovskiy Seamount	42	50 34 N	162 05 E
Pearl and Hermes Reef	63	27 55 N	175 50 W
Pedro Bank	88	17 05 N	78 35 W
Penguin Bank	142	11 26 S	175 30 E
Pennell Bank	228	74 30 S	179 59 E
Pensacola Seamount	84	18 15 N	157 18 W
Pera, Banco [bank]	87	20 45 N	91 48 W
Persej Seamount	5	78 00 N	35 00 E
Peru-Chile Trench	128, 148, 149, 168, 169	19 00 S	72 00 W
Petrel Bank	28, 42	52 10 N	180 00
Philippine Basin	100	17 00 N	130 00 E
Philippine Trench	99, 100, 120	09 15 N	127 00 E
Pioneer Bank	63	26 00 N	173 26 W
Pioneer Escarpment	44, 45	38 20 N	144 30 W
Pioneer Seamount	46	37 26 N	123 23 W
Pitt Bank	136	07 07 S	71 22 E
Plato Seamount	71	33 15 N	28 55 W
Platt Bank	49	43 05 N	69 37 W
Poe Bank	118	10 00 N	96 30 E
Porcupine Seamount	34	53 25 N	13 50 W
Portland Reef	145	23 40 S	134 23 W
Portlock Bank	29	58 22 N	150 15 W
Poydenot Shoal	136	09 48 S	64 22 E
Pratea Seamount	194	36 47 S	18 13 E
Pratt Seamount	29	56 15 N	142 30 W
President Thiers Reef	164	24 39 S	145 51 W
Princesse Alice Bank	51	38 00 N	29 15 W
Puerto Rico Trench	89	19 50 N	65 00 W
Queensland Plateau	161	17 00 S	150 00 E
Quinn Seamount	29	56 15 N	145 15 W
Raita Bank	63	25 30 N	169 15 W
Ramapo Bank	81	27 15 N	145 15 E
Ranger Bank	66	28 30 N	115 50 W

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Reed Bank	119	11 27 N	116 54 E
Rehoboth Seamount	49	38 55 N	59 52 W
Rene Reef	102	16 40 N	179 00 E
Rennell Rise	141	11 10 S	158 20 E
Reykjanes Ridge	12, 34	60 00 N	29 00 W
Rhine Bank	208	55 30 S	53 20 W
Richards Deep	169	25 05 S	71 26 W
Richards Trench	149, 169	24 30 S	71 25 W
Rifleman Bank	119	07 45 N	111 38 E
Rio Grande Plateau	170, 171	30 45 S	35 30 W
Rio Grande Trench	170	30 30 S	39 00 W
Rional Reef	102	17 15 N	177 20 E
Robbie Bank	123	11 00 S	176 50 W
Rochambeau Bank	143	15 07 S	176 38 E
Rockall Bank	34	57 15 N	14 00 W
Rockaway Seamount	70	35 50 N	52 30 W
Rodgers Bank	150	16 50 S	36 55 W
Rodriguez Fracture Zone	156	20 30 S	67 20 E
Romanche Trench	131, 132	00 10 S	18 15 W
Rønne Bank	36	54 52 N	14 25 E
Rosa Bank	66	26 16 N	114 50 W
Rosalind Bank	88	16 26 N	80 33 W
Rosario Bank	88	18 30 N	84 05 W
Rosemary Bank	35	59 10 N	10 15 W
Roseway Bank	49	43 10 N	64 45 W
Rotumah Shoal	143	13 23 S	179 20 W
Royal Caharlotte, Bank	150	16 00 S	38 20 W
Royalist Bank	118	08 11 N	105 11 E
Ryūkyū Trench, see Nansei [Ryūkyū] Trench			
Saba Bank	89	17 30 N	63 30 W
Sable Island	49	43 48 N	60 20 W
Sahul Bank	139	11 15 S	125 20 E
Saint Anna Trench	6	80 00 N	70 00 E
Saint-Pierre Bank	49	46 20 N	56 30 W
Saint Rogatien Bank	63	24 20 N	167 08 W
Sala y Gomez Ridge	167	25 00 S	97 00 W
Salmedina, Bancos [banks]	88	16 08 N	87 00 W
Salmon Bank	63	26 50 N	176 25 W
Sando Bank	12	61 45 N	05 00 W
San Juan Seamount	66	33 05 N	120 55 W
San Pablo Seamount	49	38 55 N	60 30 W
Santa Lucia Seamount	66	35 02 N	121 45 W
Santa Rosa Reef	101	12 50 N	144 25 E
S[ão] Lazaro, Banco de [bank]	155	12 10 S	41 30 E
Sars Seamount	207	59 35 S	69 05 W
Saya de Malha Bank	136	10 40 S	61 10 E
Scawfell Bank	118	07 25 N	107 00 E
Scerbakov Seamount	138	10 50 S	104 45 E
Schmidt Ott Seamount	193	39 00 S	13 45 W
Schoppe Ridge	29	51 10 N	139 30 W
Scotia Ridge	208, 209, 221, 222	54 40 S	35 00 W
Scott Island Bank	218	67 45 S	179 20 W
Scott Seamount	29	50 12 N	142 00 W
Scripps Seamount [Northern Holiday Seamount]	64	29 35 N	147 10 W
Seahorse Shoal	119	05 32 N	112 33 E
Sedov Gap	1	87 00 N	41 00 E
Sedov Valley	1	84 40 N	08 00 E
Seine Bank	72	33 42 N	14 20 W
Serranilla, Banco de [bank]	88	15 55 N	79 53 W
Shackleton Seamount	194	37 00 S	22 47 E
Shah 'Alam [bank]	75	26 25 N	52 30 E
Shatsky Rise	61, 62, 81	36 00 N	161 30 E
Sherard Osborn Shoal	136	04 43 S	54 33 E
Shikoku Basin	80	28 00 N	137 00
Shin Matsuye Bank	121	07 55 N	148 10 E
Shirshov Ridge	42	57 00 N	170 30 E
Sierra Leone Basin	111, 112	04 30 S	16 00 W
Sierra Leone Ridge	111	08 20 N	23 10 W
Silver Bank	89	20 30 N	69 45 W

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Sirius Seamount	28	52 00 N	160 50 W
Sixtymile Bank	66	32 05 N	118 15 W
Skerki Bank	53	37 50 N	10 35 E
Slupska Bank	36	54 57 N	16 35 E
Södra Midsjö Bank	36	55 40 N	17 25 E
Somali Basin	115, 116, 135, 136	00 00	54 00
Sophie Kristensen Seamount	184	41 25 S	148 25 W
Soudan Bank	156	18 35 S	58 40 E
South Atlantic Ridge [Southern Mid-Atlantic Ridge]	132, 152, 172, 192, 210	28 00 S	13 30 W
South Australian Basin	199, 200	38 00 S	125 00 E
South Cape Seamount	84	18 32 N	157 25 W
South-Eastern Pacific Basin [Peruvian Basin]	147, 148	18 00 S	94 00 W
Southeast Newfoundland Ridge	50	40 20 N	47 25 W
Southern Cape Trench	5	76 00 N	17 00 E
Southern Jan Mayen Ridge	12	68 30 N	08 30 W
Southern Mid-Atlantic Ridge, see South Atlantic Ridge			
South Fiji Basin	162, 182	27 00 S	176 00 E
South Georgia Rise	209	51 40 S	32 00 W
South Luconia Shoals	119	05 04 N	112 38 E
South Pacific Rise	204, 205, 218, 227	63 00 S	160 00 W
South Sandwich Trench	209, 222	58 30 S	23 50 W
Speakers Bank	137	04 58 S	72 22 E
Spitsbergen Bank	5	75 30 N	21 00 E
Stiffle Bank	75	26 25 N	53 08 E
Stingray Shoal	100	20 30 N	142 22 E
Stirni Seamount	29	49 08 N	132 18 W
Stocsa Bank	151	12 20 S	32 00 W
Stonewall Bank	46	44 30 N	124 40 W
Store Hellefiskebanke [bank]	11	67 20 N	55 00 W
Strakhov Seamount	102	12 15 N	173 10 E
Strathmore Shoal	142	11 10 S	170 40 E
"S-21" Depth	88	19 35 N	76 51 W
Submariners Basin	7	81 30 N	166 00 E
Suiko Seamount	62	44 45 N	170 25 E
Sulphur Bank	150	16 55 S	37 35 W
Sunda [Java] Trench	118, 138, 139	07 00 S	102 00 E
Supply Reef	101	20 15 N	145 06 E
Surveyor Seamount	29	55 55 N	144 20 W
Swan Shoal	136	03 58 S	54 35 E
Swordfish Seamount	84	18 22 N	158 25 W
Sydero Bank	12	61 30 N	05 20 W
Sylvania Tablemount	102	12 12 N	166 15 E
Sylvia Bank	150	20 05 S	37 30 W
Tahoma Reef	42	51 45 N	175 45 E
Taiwan Fracture Zone	100	16 20 N	130 00 E
Talbot Bank	53	37 30 N	11 40 E
Tanner Bank	66	32 30 N	119 10 W
Tarang Bank	121	08 23 N	145 15 E
Tarang Reef	121	07 45 N	147 36 E
Tasman Basin	201, 202	44 00 S	158 00 E
Taupo Mount	181	33 10 S	156 05 E
Taviuni Bank	143	12 10 S	174 37 W
Tehuantepec Ridge	87	13 30 N	96 30 W
Templer Bank	119	11 05 N	117 25 E
Tenchi Seamount	42	49 00 N	169 10 E
Thunder Knoll Bank	88	16 28 N	81 25 W
Timor Trough	139, 140	09 40 S	126 40 E
Tinro Gap	41	56 30 N	153 00 E
Titov Seamount	123	00 23 S	176 10 W
Tobago Trough	89	12 40 N	60 30 W
Tonga Trench	143, 163	19 30 S	173 40 W
Tongue of the Ocean [deep]	68, 88	24 15 N	77 20 W
Topaze Bank	136	04 34 S	56 24 E
Trident Shoal	119	11 27 N	114 40 E
Troubadour Shoal	140	09 45 S	128 25 E

Names	*Sheet No.*	*Latitude*	*Longitude*
Tucker Seamount	29	49 50 N	133 42 W
Turpie Bank	142	11 25 S	175 45 E
Tuscarora Bank	123	11 48 S	178 15 W
Ulloa Reef	121	07 20 N	144 12 E
Union Seamount	29	49 38 N	132 30 W
Uranie Bank	121	07 02 N	149 15 E
Valdivia Seamount	173	25 35 S	05 50 E
Veatch Canyon	49	39 45 N	69 25 W
Velasco Reef	120	08 20 N	134 37 E
Vema Deep	89	18 40 N	68 22 W
Vema Seamount	173	31 40 S	08 15 E
Vema Trench	136	09 00 S	67 20 E
Venezuelan Basin	89	15 15 N	68 00 W
Vesterisgrunnen [seamount]	4	73 32 N	09 10 W
Victoria Bank	150	20 42 S	37 40 W
Victory Bank	137	05 37 S	72 14 E
"Vima" 1958 [depth]	209	56 28 S	24 22 W
Vit'az' Rise	60	44 10 N	138 10 E
Vityaz Deep	120	11 20 N	142 12 E
Vityaz Deep	143	23 17 S	174 42 W
Vityaz Depth	137	05 45 S	73 46 E
Vityaz Ridge	41, 61	46 40 N	153 10 E
Vityaz Seamount	83	13 30 N	173 25 W
Vityaz Trench	136	05 45 S	68 30 E
Vityaz Trench	142	09 05 S	168 30 E
Volcano Trench	80, 100, 101	23 00 N	145 00 E
Voronin Trench	6	80 00 N	86 00 E
Wachusett Reef	164	32 20 S	151 05 W
Walvis Ridge	153, 173	28 00 S	04 00 E
Wanganella Bank	182	32 30 S	167 30 E
Washington Canyon	48	38 22 N	74 18 W
Waterwitch Bank	143	12 32 S	176 40 W
Welker Seamount	29	55 10 N	140 20 W
West Australian Basin	158	18 00 S	99 00 E
West Caroline Basin	120	03 30 N	137 00 E
West Chile Rise	187, 188	42 00 S	88 00 W
Western Jan Mayen Ridge	12	71 20 N	14 00 W
Western Trench	5	73 30 N	23 00 E
West European Basin	34, 51, 52	45 30 N	16 00 W
West Indian Ridge	176, 195	38 30 S	50 00 E
West Mariana Basin	100	15 00 N	139 00 E
West Melanesia Trench	140, 141	01 20 S	148 00 E
Wight Bank	136	07 28 S	71 30 E
Wilder Seamount	103	08 15 N	173 25 W
Wilmington Canyon	48	38 21 N	73 31 W
Winslow Reef	123	01 36 S	174 57 W
Wüst Seamount	172	33 45 S	03 40 W
Wyandot Seamount	193	37 22 S	15 20 E
Yakutat Seamount	70	35 20 N	48 12 W
Yamato Rise	60	39 30 N	134 40 E
Yap Trench	120	09 00 N	138 10 E
Yermark Rise	4	81 45 N	00 00
Yucatán Basin	88	20 00 N	84 20 W
Yuryaku Seamount	82	33 20 N	171 35 E
Yusun Shoal	119	10 18 N	109 00 E
Zeelandia Bank	101	16 53 N	145 45 E
Zohhoiiyoru Bank	120	09 50 N	139 55 E
Zoroaster Shoal	136	05 00 S	56 43 E
Zubov Seamount	101	15 50 N	160 10 E

REPORT OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA ON PROGRAMMES FOR NAMING EXTRATERRESTRIAL FEATURES*

Résumé

En 1974, le United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) a créé un Comité consultatif des noms des détails extra-terrestres (ACEF) chargé d'approuver les noms des détails extra-terrestres destinés à être utilisés dans les cartes et autres documents officiels des Etats-Unis. A la différence des autres comités consultatifs du BGN, l'ACEF ne choisit pas en toute indépendance les noms qui seront appliqués aux détails; il utilise à cet effet les éléments pertinents qui lui sont fournis par l'Union astronomique internationale (UAI). Des textes décrivant les objectifs généraux, la portée, les principes et les politiques de l'ACEF ont été joints au document.

Tout en se servant de l'UAI pour le choix des noms des détails, l'ACEF exerce d'autres fonctions: par exemple, il joue aux Etats-Unis le rôle de centre d'échange de renseignements concernant les noms des détails extra-terrestres; il répond aux demandes de renseignements présentées par les experts et le public au sujet de ces noms, et il met au point et tient des fichiers où sont classées les données de nomenclature nécessaires à l'exercice de ses fonctions. Son personnel élabore un procédé permettant de consigner les renseignements concernant ces noms sous une forme exploitable par ordinateur; le document contient un exemple de feuille de données relatives aux détails extra-terrestres que le personnel a l'intention d'utiliser.

Le Comité accepte les noms approuvés par l'UAI, et il approuve également les termes génériques anglais correspondant aux termes latins autorisés par l'UAI. Le but est de permettre aux utilisateurs officiels et au public des Etats-Unis d'employer, s'ils le désirent, des termes anglais en association avec les noms. Le Comité compile actuellement une liste de termes et de leur définition en anglais. Comme dans le cas des autres comités consultatifs du BGN, les membres de l'ACEF sont des experts.

Resumen

En 1974, la Junta de Nombres Geográficos de los Estados Unidos creó el Comité Asesor sobre Nombres de Accidentes Topográficos Extraterrestres a fin de que se encargara de aprobar nombres de accidentes topográficos extraterrestres para su aplicación en mapas, cartas y otros documentos oficiales de los Estados Unidos. En contraste con la función de otros comités asesores de la Junta, este Comité Asesor no selecciona nombres independientemente para aplicarlos a accidentes concretos, sino que más bien se basa en elementos adecuados de la Unión Astronómica Internacional para esta actividad. Se adjuntan a este documento descripciones de la finalidad general, el alcance, los principios y la política del Comité Asesor.

Además de la selección de nombres de accidentes, para la que se basa en la Unión Astronómica Internacional, el Comité Asesor también realiza otras funciones, tales como la de servir de centro para el intercambio de información en los Estados Unidos sobre nombres de accidentes extraterrestres, responder a preguntas de expertos y del público en general sobre nombres y establecer y mantener archivos de datos sobre nomenclatura necesarios para sus funciones. El personal del Comité Asesor está preparando actualmente materiales destinados a registrar información sobre nombres en un formato adecuado para su uso en relación con la elaboración automática de datos; en el documento adjunto se presenta una muestra de una hoja de datos sobre nombres extraterrestres que el personal proyecta utilizar.

Aunque el Comité aceptará nombres aprobados por la Unión Astronómica Internacional, aprobará nombres genéricos en inglés además de los términos en latín autorizados por la Unión. Esto tiene por objeto asegurar que los usuarios oficiales y el público en general de los Estados Unidos puedan emplear, si lo desean, términos en inglés asociados con los nombres. El Comité está compilando ahora una lista de términos y definiciones pertinentes en inglés. Al igual que en otros comités asesores de la Junta de Nombres Geográficos, los miembros son expertos en el tema.

*

* *

In 1974 the United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) added to its responsibilities that of standardizing names of extraterrestrial features. This new responsibility will be carried out by the Advisory Committee on Extraterrestrial Feature Names (ACEF). It is one of three BGN advisory committees, and has a membership of persons from various United States agencies who have expert knowledge about national and international programmes to explore and to map surfaces of extraterrestrial bodies.

The standardizing function of ACEF, in contrast to that of other BGN advisory committees, does not include the independent selection of new names for features, for the committee recognizes the role of the International Astronomical Union (IAU) for assigning names. Instead, ACEF was established as a vehicle to expedite the process of IAU action in selecting names, on the one hand, and the acquisition of names information by United States mapping agencies, on the other. In addition, there was a general feeling among BGN authorities that names appearing on American maps of planets should be approved by the duly constituted agency for geographic names in the United States. This opinion was based on the experience that the internal IAU mechanism for selecting names was not fast enough to satisfy requirements for names on maps being produced in response to new space programmes.

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Richard R. Randall, Executive Secretary of the United States Board on Geographic Names, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.33.

As a result of the initial ACEF meetings, which were dedicated to setting forth principles, policies and procedures for processing names and to establishing relationships with IAU, the Committee approved a set of guidelines describing its name, purpose, scope, principles and policy. These guidelines are shown in annex I. With time, the Committee may change certain elements of the guidelines to meet developing conditions.

As a preface to describing the functions of BGN in regard to extraterrestrial names, the IAU mechanism should be defined briefly. In an attempt to normalize naming procedures, IAU developed a system for selecting names for the planets. (It should be stated that IAU and BGN are concerned only with names of features on the surfaces of the planets of the solar system. Stars, comets, asteroids and other celestial phenomena are excluded from their purview.) This system, which is described in detail in the literature elsewhere, sets up categories of names for the individual planets. Within each planet, distinctions are made between major and minor features. As currently established, the naming of features comes under the responsibility of the IAU Working Group on Planetary Systems Nomenclature, chaired by Dr. Peter Millman of Canada. Within the working group are task forces for the Moon, Mars, Venus, Mercury and the "outer planetary system". Each task force has responsibility for creating a bank of names, according to the principles approved by IAU, and for selecting names from the bank for application to a feature as required. The internal process for IAU to approve such names has often taken considerable time, since each name had to be endorsed first by the Working Group on Planetary Systems Nomenclature and later by the IAU Executive Committee. Currently, the procedure is being streamlined. Names selected by the task forces can be applied provisionally, with full approval being virtually guaranteed.

Since ACEF has members representing the United States agencies engaged in planetary programmes, it is in a good position to know first-hand the requirements for names. When it sees a need to name a feature, the Committee can communicate with the appropriate task force to request a name, or it can independently select a name from the IAU bank of names. Under certain circumstances, it is possible for ACEF to choose a non-IAU name, but regardless of the method of selection, IAU approval would be anticipated. In the meantime, such names would be designated as provisional.

In addition to acting as a channel to expedite IAU decisions about names, ACEF has retained certain independent functions. Although IAU calls for the use of only Latin terminology in nomenclature, ACEF approves English-language equivalents as well as Latin. The Committee foresees that most names used on American maps will carry Latin terms, but it believes it should also provide English translations for those cases where map users may require them. The Committee reasoned that few people outside the scientific community (which IAU publicly states it serves) would understand Latin, and that this situation would lead to the use of English (in the United States). A review of literature published by both official and non-official agencies in the United States shows that English terms are commonly employed. Further, English terms for given Latin terms often differ from publication to publication. In order to provide a standard set of English-language terms for users, the Committee agreed to produce a list of Latin-English terminology, with definitions to clarify why certain terms are used (e. g. why *Lacus* can be translated as "lake" even though no body of water is involved).

Another Committee service is to provide information about extraterrestrial nomenclature to official United States agencies and to the general public, a practice followed by other BGN committees. This service anticipates inquiries from various sources for background information about names, for verification of names and so on. Furnishing appropriate information to persons who may wish to name a feature is also anticipated. Although the system established by IAU largely precludes naming by individuals, with time the Committee sees growing public interest in wanting to name features. In such instances the ACEF could take action as appropriate; where name proposals seemed valid, they would be forwarded to IAU for further action.

To carry out its assignments, ACEF is creating procedures to manage names information. Working in cooperation with agencies producing maps of the planets (the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, the United States Geological Survey and the Defense Mapping Agency), ACEF is building a file of names information that is designed for use in conjunction with automatic data processing equipment. Annex II shows a prototype sheet that would carry appropriate data, annex III explains the kinds of data to be entered and annex IV summarizes the IAU rules governing the selection of names for extraterrestrial features. Annex IV might be particularly useful for persons wanting to propose names.

The ACEF is composed of persons from United States agencies who are appointed by the Secretary of the Interior because of their individual expertise in space science or cartography. As of 1 June 1977, the Committee members were:

William E. Brunk, NASA (*Chairman*)
Cyril Barsky, Defense Mapping Agency Topographic Center
Stephen Dwornik, NASA
Farouk El-Baz, Smithsonian Institution
Harold Masursky, USGS

Action by ACEF to sanction names for official American use thus far has included approximately 1,400 names that were approved by IAU and published in various documents. The ACEF research staff, located at the Defense Mapping Agency Topographic Center in Washington, D.C., made necessary revisions to the names to correct typographical errors or other mistakes, such as inconsistent spelling. To ensure accuracy, the staff consulted other sources and the members of ACEF. These names will appear on a new map of the moon at scale 1:5,000,000, which will be called the *Lunar Pictorial Map*. This product shows the two "sides" of the moon, plus

north and south polar projections. An English-language glossary of Latin terms will accompany the map. It is scheduled for release in 1978.

Although ACEF has been developed to meet United States programme requirements, members believe that procedures developed by the Committee can be helpful to other countries active in mapping planetary bodies and to the IAU as well. The United States would be pleased to share its experiences with other nations so that methods of processing extraterrestrial names can be made as uniform as possible and so that the informational needs of users can be served as fully as possible.

Annex I

BGN ADVISORY COMMITTEE ON EXTRATERRESTRIAL FEATURE NAMES: NAME, PURPOSE, SCOPE, PRINCIPLES AND POLICY

The United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN), conjointly with the Secretary of the Interior, created the Advisory Committee on Extraterrestrial Feature Names in December 1974.

1. *Name.* The name of this body is the BGN Advisory Committee on Extraterrestrial Feature Names. It can be referred to as ACEF.
2. *Purpose.* The Committee shall operate as the vehicle to submit names of features on the surfaces of extraterrestrial bodies for approval by BGN.
3. *Scope.* The work of the Committee shall be restricted to nomenclature of surface features that require specific identification on solid bodies of the solar system.
4. *Principles*

   a. Names approved by the International Astronomical Union shall constitute the primary source of nomenclature for BGN purposes.

   b. The Committee shall work closely and exchange information with international, governmental or private groups that have responsibility for or hold an interest in extraterrestrial nomenclature.

   c. A card file of toponymic information shall be created and maintained for each extraterrestrial body.

   d. Information from the card files shall be made available to United States Government agencies and other users on a continuing basis.

   e. Lists of extraterrestrial feature names may be prepared for distribution at intervals specified by the Committee.
5. *Policies*

   a. Names and designations shall be as concise and unambiguous as possible.

   b. Duplication of names on a given extraterrestrial body shall be avoided.

   c. Roman script only shall be used, including all appropriate diacritical marks.

   d. In addition to approving the IAU assigned name, the Committee may approve an English name when there is a Latin generic term.

   e. In addition to the approved IAU name, a name or name element derived from non-Roman script may be romanized by an approved BGN romanization system.

   f. The number of names selected shall be in accord with anticipated requirements.

Annex II

EXTRATERRESTRIAL NAMES DATA SHEET

EX: BODY	H	0	1												
IAU ACCEPTED	H	0	2												
BGN APPROVED	H	0	3												
IAU APPROVED	H	0	4												
DATE APPROVED BY BGN	H	0	5												
DATE APPROVED BY IAU	H	0	6												
DESIGNATION	H	0	7												
DIMENSION	H	0	8	LENGTH	BREADTH	DIAM.	DEPTH/HEIGTH	ACC							
REGION NO.	H	0	9												
REGION NAME	H	1	0												
PROVINCE NO.	H	1	1												
PROVINCE NAME	H	1	2												
COORDINATES	H	1	3	DEG.	MIN.	SEC.	N/S	DEG.	MIN	SEC.	E/W	OR EASTING 360° SYSTEM	DEG.	MIN.	SEC.
NASA PHOTO NO.	H	1	4												
CONTROL NO.	H	1	5												

SEE REFERENCE	H	1	6
PREPARED BY	H	1	7
PROPOSED NAME	H	1	8
NATIONALITY OF PROPOSED NAME	H	1	9
BIOGRAPHY OF PERSON NAMED	H	2	0
SOURCE	H	2	1
ADDRESS	H	2	2
ADDRESS			
NATIONALITY OF SOURCE	H	2	3

REMARKS	H	2	4

Annex III

INFORMATION ABOUT THE BGN EXTRATERRESTRIAL NAMES DATA SHEETS

General

The Advisory Committee on Extraterrestrial Feature Names (ACEF) of the United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) has developed the Extraterrestrial Names Data Sheet (ENDS) for various uses related to the processing of names information. Intended for staff use, it is designed principally for recording official BGN information about extraterrestrial names, and can be employed in systems automatically processing data for reference or publishing purposes.

Definitions

ENDS provides space for 24 categories of information. Each category has a heading preceded by the symbol "H" and a two-digit number designed for reading by an Optical Character Reader. Definitions of the headings are given below. *Note that the name on line 18 is the designated name for the feature described in the ENDS unless another name is entered under line 16.* In all cases the name on line 18 is the first name to be entered on the ENDS by the researchers.

01 EX. BODY. The extraterrestrial body on which the feature named in item 18 is located.
02 IAU ACCEPTED. No name is entered here unless it has been included in an IAU bank of names which may be drawn upon for assignment to a feature.
03 BGN APPROVED. The name in item 18 has been approved by BGN. Such names may be "IAU Accepted" or "IAU Approved"; an English-language form also may be approved and shown on the second line.
04 IAU APPROVED. A name from the IAU bank of names that is approved by IAU for application to a specific feature.
05 DATE APPROVED BY BGN. Date when BGN approved the name shown in line 03. If a second date is shown, it is the date when an English equivalent was approved.
06 DATE APPROVED BY IAU. Date when IAU approved the name shown in line 04.
07 DESIGNATION. Type of feature to which the name is applied (the designation is in English and is approved by BGN).
08 DIMENSION. Indicates size of feature by kilometres (length and breadth or diameter) or metres (height/depth). Dimensions are given when feasible to determine.
09 REGION NO. The region number as approved by the IAU and as appropriate to a particular extraterrestrial body; the feature named in item 18 is located in this area.
10 REGION NAME. Region name as approved by the IAU and as appropriate to a particular extraterrestrial body. Feature named in 18 is located in this region.
11 PROVINCE NO. The IAU-approved province number, as applicable to the particular extraterrestrial body. Feature named in 18 is located in this region.
12 PROVINCE NAME. The IAU-approved province name, as applicable to the particular body. Feature named in 18 is located in this region.
13 CO-ORDINATES. Co-ordinates of feature given for north/south and east/west systems or for the 360° system.
14 NASA PHOTO NO. Number of best NASA photograph for feature identification purposes.
15 CONTROL NO. Number assigned by ACEF for ENDS control purposes (numbering system not yet developed).
16 SEE REFERENCE. If a name is entered here, the reader should refer to the ENDS carrying that name under line 02 or 03. A name is entered under line 16 only if the name listed under line 18 is "incorrect" or is not approved by IAU or BGN, or if another name has been approved by IAU and/or BGN for the feature named under line 18.
17 PREPARED BY. Initials of person entering information on ENDS.
18 PROPOSED NAME. The name that was originally proposed is entered here, regardless of whether it has been accepted by IAU or approved by IAU or BGN. The "proposed name" is the first item entered on the ENDS; it will be retained in this line even if it is an "incorrect" name—i.e., one that has been superseded.
19 NATIONALITY OF PROPOSED NAME. If the name com-

memorates a person, his or her nationality is entered here. A two-letter country code is used from United States Department of Commerce FIPS 10–2, *Countries, Dependencies, and Areas of Special Sovereignty*.

20 BIOGRAPHY OF PERSON NAMED. Brief biographic information on the person commemorated.

21 SOURCE. The person or organization proposing the name in line 18.

22 ADDRESS. Address of line 21, if known.

23 NATIONALITY OF SOURCE. Nationality of proposer (if a person). National coding cited in line 19 is used.

24 REMARKS. Additional data considered valuable to users of the file concerning the proposed name in 18. These may include: charts that show feature named; documentary sources of IAU approval, such as IAU Transaction Numbers; full name of the person for whom feature is named, including his dates of birth and death.

Annex IV

SUMMARY OF CRITERIA FOR NAMING EXTRATERRESTRIAL FEATURES*

	Type of feature		
	Craters		
Extraterrestrial body	*Major*	*Minor*	*Ranges, chains of craters, mountains, valleys, trenches, plains etc.*
Moon	Commemorative names for distinguished astronomers, mathematicians, physicists, biologists etc.	First names, male and female, of one or two syllables	Names borrowed from terrestrial orographic features
Mars	Commemorative names for distinguished scientists, astronomers, mathematicians, physicists etc.	Named for small towns and villages around the world	Names borrowed from terrestrial orographic features throughout the world
Mercury	Commemorative names for composers, poets, authors and artists		Albedo features named for ships of discovery and observatories; other features to be named for birds and large cities.
Venus	Named for feminine mythological figures	Named for feminine first names	Basins and plains to be given names of goddesses of ancient cultures; other features to be named for specialists in radio, electronics and automation

* Names of living persons, political, religious or military figures and modern philophosphers will *not* be used. The above rules have been adopted by the International Astronomical Union.

REPORT OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA ON PROGRAMMES FOR NAMING UNDERSEA FEATURES*

Résumé

Le United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) a poursuivi ses travaux sur les programmes relatifs aux noms des détails sous-marins. Outre ses activités normales qui consistent à examiner les propositions de noms et à approuver les nouveaux noms, ce qui a représenté environ 340 nouveaux noms depuis 1972, il a entrepris, par l'intermédiaire de son Comité consultatif pour les détails sous-marins, un examen complet des principes, des politiques et des méthodes qu'il applique pour attribuer un nom aux détails sous-marins. Deux facteurs principaux l'ont incité à entreprendre cette tâche. En premier lieu, le programme du Groupe de travail des Nations Unies chargé d'étudier les détails sous-marins et marins, qui avait pour but de formuler des principes directeurs acceptables internationalement, a montré qu'un examen de ce genre serait fructueux. Deuxièmement, l'importance croissante de la recherche et de l'exploration sous-marines rendaient particulièrement nécessaire un réexamen des principes directeurs existants, afin de déterminer s'ils convenaient pour les activités actuelles. A la suite de cet examen, qui a été effectué en coopération étroite avec le Comité permanent canadien des noms géographiques, certains termes et définitions ont été changés et un ensemble légèrement modifié de principes, de politiques et de méthodes a été adopté. Le BGN accorde également une attention particulière aux problèmes de définition et de nomenclature des détails qui se trouvent uniquement dans la zone du plateau continental. En dernier lieu, on a mis au point un programme afin de communiquer aux utilisateurs des renseignements sur les noms dès que ceux-ci ont été approuvés par le BGN.

Resumen

La Junta de Nombres Geográficos de los Estados Unidos siguió trabajando en programas relacionados con los nombres de accidentes geográficos submarinos. Además de la labor normal de examinar las propuestas de nombres y aprobar nuevos nombres, que representó alrededor de 340 nuevos nombres desde 1972, la Junta, por conducto de su Comité Asesor sobre Accidentes Geográficos Submarinos, inició un minucioso estudio de sus principios, políticas y procedimientos para la designación de los accidentes geográficos submarinos. Dos

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Richard R. Randall, Executive Secretary of the United States Board on Geographic Names, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.34.

factores principales estimularon a la Junta para realizar esa labor. En primer lugar, el programa del Grupo de Trabajo de las Naciones Unidas sobre Accidentes Submarinos y Marítimos, que procuraba elaborar directrices aceptables para su uso internacional, sugirió que un estudio sería beneficioso. En segundo lugar, el ámbito creciente de la investigación y la exploración submarinas exigía que se reexaminaran las directrices existentes para determinar la medida en que eran adecuadas a las operaciones modernas. Como resultado de este examen, que fue realizado en estrecha cooperación con el Comité Permanente de Nombres Geográficos del Canadá, se modificaron algunos términos y definiciones y se aprobó una declaración, ligeramente revisada, de principios, políticas y procedimientos. La Junta también está prestando especial atención a los problemas de definir y denominar accidentes geográficos que sólo se encuentran en zonas de las plataformas continentales. Finalmente, se ha elaborado un programa para difundir información sobre los nombres entre los usuarios, tan pronto como la Junta haya aprobado tales nombres.

*

* *

Since 1972, the United States has continued to be active in standardizing names of undersea features for official purposes through the Board on Geographic Names (BGN) Advisory Committee on Undersea Features (ACUF).

In keeping with the growth of undersea exploration programmes, much of which growth is related to efforts to locate natural resources, the Committee has dedicated considerable time to processing new names proposed by scientists, technicians and other persons involved with such efforts. Thanks to procedures developed by the Committee, names proposed for newly discovered features are nearly always described on BGN proposal forms in adequate detail. Occasionally, further correspondence with the proponent of a name has been required to obtain additional information. Although names are processed as expeditiously as possible, normally from one to three months are required, inasmuch as separate actions by BGN (meeting as a separate body) and by the Secretary of the Interior are necessary. Proposers who have an urgent need for names, however, are given provisional approval as soon as the Committee accepts a name.

During the period from 1972 to 1977, the Committee reviewed about 400 names, of which 340 were approved as new names, 35 were changed in terms of location or feature designation and the rest were not accepted or were deferred. These actions were accomplished in 36 sessions of ACUF.

To ensure timely distribution of information about new names to users, the Committee is designing an informal publication containing decisions about names, which will be issued after names have been fully approved. In the past, the BGN *Gazetteer of Undersea Features* has been the main vehicle for publicizing new names, but budget restrictions have slowed publication programmes. Eventually, a complete gazetteer of undersea names will be issued, but meantime the planned publication should satisfy requirements for up-to-date information.

In addition to working on names, the Committee recently undertook a review of guidelines governing United States naming activities. This review, which was prompted in part by the requirement to develop standards useful for international programmes (as enunciated by the United Nations Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features), is now complete. The new statement of BGN principles and procedures is cited in full in the report submitted by the Convenor of the Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features. As stated in that report, representatives of the United States and Canada worked on the statement in an attempt to assure maximum adherence to previous statements adopted by those nations.

Another matter occupying the attention of the United States is that of terms and definitions of undersea features. The basic principle followed by BGN is that terms to describe features should be as simple as possible and should be related to form rather than genetic process. At the same time, the definitions also should be simple and descriptive of form. These principles have been followed by BGN for many years; they are fully elaborated in the text of the 1972 BGN *Gazetteer of Undersea Features*. The distinction between form *versus* genesis as the BGN basis for terms and definitions perhaps requires discussion. Surveys of undersea areas that result in the identification of physical features almost always deliver data that indicate location, form and size. When new features are thus "discovered", and when a name proposed, researchers are urged to submit appropriate information on the BGN names proposal form. The form, which also is recommended to the Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features for international use, asks for adequate information to assure proper identification of the features. In very few cases would such surveys also provide information about the genesis of features, and in view of the requirement to attach names to features for publication purposes, to wait for further geologic evidence would be counterproductive. For this reason, ACUF recently reaffirmed its position against including reference to genetic factors as part of feature identification.

The great amount of new bathymetric information available to scientists and cartographers does, however, require that present terms and definitions be reviewed to test their validity. Terms and definitions used by other nations, notably Canada, were studied as part of the review, and in many cases Canadian versions were adopted by ACUF. A few new or modified terms were also added to the existing BGN list; this list is included in the report of the Working Group identified earlier. Changes and additions were made to clarify terms or definitions and to improve their utility.

The United States is involved in yet another kind of review. The increasingly large scale of undersea survey-

ing, particularly on the United States continental shelf, has resulted in a corresponding increase in identification of new kinds of "micro-features". Although many of these features may resemble features found in deeper water, their occurrence in groups and their smaller sizes require that they be viewed as a different category of features. Further, some micro-features appear to be different in nature from those in deep water. The Committee is examining the evidence to determine whether a new set of terms and definitions is required.

With growth foreseeable in the number of terms and definitions, the Committee anticipates that persons either working on studies of features or proposing new names will have some difficulty in differentiating the various kinds of features. Already, ambiguity can arise where current definitions do not permit precise identification of feature types. The Committee is giving consideration to preparing graphic illustrations to provide clear characterizations of all feature types. Such illustrations would include perspective sketches and sets of bathymetric contours. The availability of such pictures would materially assist in the translation of terms and definitions into other languages.

RULES APPLICABLE IN THE GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC TO THE NAMES OF TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURES COMMON TO TWO OR MORE COUNTRIES

Report presented by the German Democratic Republic*

Geographers, cartographers and philologists in the German Democratic Republic have studied the problem of the correct spelling of geographical names of topographical objects common to two and more countries and have set up uniform rules, which safeguard the national interests of the German Democratic Republic as well as those of other nations.

The German Democratic Republic proceeds from the realization that names of topographical objects that cover the territory of two or more countries, or that concern two or more national spheres of influence, need clear regulations. These regulations should not only observe the principles of standardization but should consider just as well that the geographical names will remain within anybody's grasp.

On principle, the spelling of the names of these topographical objects should be based on the particular national forms; this means that the designations of the topographical objects are given in the two or more relevant languages. This applies, for instance, to the names of ocean areas, bays, lakes, rivers, mountain ranges and landscapes, particularly for use in scientific publications and for other, international purposes. However, in order for practical domestic reasons (e.g. because of lack of space on small-scale maps) to avoid any double designations, exceptional rules were established for such cases. These exceptional rules are based on the generally accepted principle that the names of geographical features covering the territory of more than one country and having more than one designation may be rendered in German spelling. The names of oceans and oceanic areas, which are international waters or which concern several national spheres of influence, are likewise rendered in German spelling. The same applies to the spelling of names of the submarine relief forms of international oceans and oceanic areas.

In the interest of achieving uniformity in the spelling of the names of these objects, their names were compiled in lists and published. A strict standard was applied in the selection of the names in order to give priority to the principle of spelling the names in their particular national forms.

Many years of practical work have proved that these regulations meet the requirements of, and have contributed to, the reduction of exonyms. Likewise, they are in line with resolution 25 adopted at the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names.[1]

As regards, for instance, the names of topographical features at the State frontiers between the German Democratic Republic on the one hand and Poland and Czechoslovakia on the other, their standardization was not feasible because the names concerned belong to different languages with differing letters and differing orthographies. Consequently, and in keeping with paragraph 2 of resolution 25 of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, these topographical objects are rendered in their established German form on the territory of the German Democratic Republic and in their established Polish or Czech form on the territories of Poland or of Czechoslovakia. Westoder, for example, is rendered *Odra Zachodnia*; Neisse, *Nysa Łuzicka*; Erzgebirge, *Krusné hory*; and Elbe, *Labe*. This means that both forms of the names are on an equal footing for international use.

The same regulations are applied in the German Democratic Republic for the designation of the topographical objects located at the frontiers of third countries.

Should several countries agree to use but one name for a topographical object which forms part of their several national spheres of influence, the German Democratic Republic is prepared to accept this new, standardized form and to apply it as the only form suited for

* The original text of this paper, prepared by J. R. Pustkowski, German Democratic Republic, appeared as document E/CONF. 69/L.50.

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

international and national use. Thus, Norway and Sweden having agreed on the Danish form of "Skagerrak" (replacing the Norwegian *Skagerak* and the Swedish *Skagerack* used formerly), the form "Skagerrak", which had been and is used in the German Democratic Republic, is no longer an exonym.

Those names of topographical features common to two or more countries which are to be used in the German Democratic Republic are covered by two publications:

(*a*) *Instruktion für die Schreibweise geographischer Namen in kartographischen Erzeugnissen der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik (Instruction for the Spelling of Geographical Names in Cartographic Products of the German Democratic Republic)*, sixth revised edition, Berlin 1977; and

(*b*) *Allgemeine Richtlinie für die Schreibweise sonstiger geographischer Namen in kartographischen Erzeugnissen der Deutschen Demokratischen Republik (General Guidelines for the Spelling of Other Geographical Names in Cartographic Products of the German Democratic Republic)*, first edition, Berlin 1975.

These regulations ensure that no geographical names will be used in the German Democratic Republic that are outdated in their historical and social aspects, and that, in this respect, no revanchist or colonialist ideas will be spread.

ANTARCTIC GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES
Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

Au Japon, l'élaboration des toponymes concernant l'Antarctique s'opère comme suit : la Commission japonaise des toponymes de l'Antarctique, qui relève de l'Institut national de recherche polaire, établit les projets de toponymes concernant la zone d'observation japonaise dans l'Antarctique. Sur la base de ces projets, une réunion générale convoquée par le siège de l'Expédition de recherche japonaise dans l'Antarctique se prononce sur les noms officiels.

Resumen

La asignación de nombres a lugares de la Antártica se efectúa en el Japón como sigue: la Comisión de Topónimos Antárticos del Japón creada en el Instituto Nacional de Investigaciones Polares prepara los proyectos de topónimos dentro de la zona de observación antártica del Japón, sobre la base de los proyectos, los nombres oficiales se determinan en una reunión general convocada por la oficina central de la Expedición Japonesa de Investigación Antártica.

*

* *

The naming of places in the Antarctic is carried out in Japan according to the following principle and procedure. Since 1957, the names of 188 places have been drafted, and the formal names selected on the basis of these drafts.

Procedure

In cases where there is a need to prepare names for new places in the Antarctic—e.g. for the preparation of Antarctic maps or for Antarctic observation and survey—the director of the National Polar Research Institute (NPRI), after seeking counsel from the Antarctic Place-Names Committee of Japan (established within the Institute), prepares drafts of the names. On the basis of these drafts, the formal names are decided at a general convention at the headquarters of the Japanese Antarctic Research Expedition.

Antarctic Place-Names Committee of Japan

Established as part of NPRI, the Antarctic Place-Names Committee of Japan has a membership of not more than 20 persons, including men of learning and experience associated with Antarctic observations or Antarctic geographical names, and staff officials of the administrative agencies related to Antarctic observation (i.e., The Ministries of Education, Construction, Transport and Foreign Affairs).

Subjects for names

With the exception of those features for which names have already been selected by foreign countries and internationally announced or used, topographical features and important points that are situated south of latitude 60° S, and that have been discovered and surveyed by participants in Japan's Antarctic observations, are classified and named according to the following guidelines.

Classification

Class I features include the following:

(*a*) Area of land;
(*b*) Coast;
(*c*) Sea;
(*d*) Upland area;
(*e*) Large mountain range;
(*f*) Large undersea feature—trench, peak, plateau and rise;
(*g*) Ice shelf; and
(*h*) Large glacier.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.59.

Class II features include the following:

(*a*) Peninsula;
(*b*) Mountain range (excluding large mountain range);
(*c*) Large or conspicuous mountain;
(*d*) Glacier (excluding large glacier);
(*e*) Conspicuous cape;
(*f*) Chain of islands;
(*g*) Large gulf or bay;
(*h*) Strait or channel;
(*i*) Anchorage; and
(*j*) Large sunken rock, sandbank or shallow.

Class III features include the following:

(*a*) Small area of land or hill;
(*b*) Nunatak;
(*c*) Cliff;
(*d*) Rock;
(*e*) Small sea-coast feature;
(*f*) Point or cape;
(*g*) Glacier (excluding larger or more conspicuous glacier);
(*h*) Bay;
(*i*) Cove;
(*j*) Berth;
(*k*) Small sunken rock on the sea bed, sandbank or shallow;
(*l*) Camping area and supply storage area (artificial and not necessarily permanent); and
(*m*) Parts of these features.

General principles for assigning geographical names

The following general principles are applied in the assignment of names to Antarctic geographical features:

(*a*) Class I and III features shall not be named after persons.

(*b*) Class II features may be named only after persons of the following categories:

(i) Persons who have rendered extraordinary meritorious service to Japan's Antarctic observation programme, and who are therefore to be commended; or

(ii) Representatives of the Japanese Antarctic Research Expedition and crew members, such as the Chief of the Japanese Antarctic Research Expedition, Chief of the Winter Expedition or Captain of the Observation Ship. When a place is to be named after a person still living, it is necessary to obtain prior approval from the person.

(*c*) Names other than those commemorating persons may be of the following categories:

(i) Names giving a specific description of a given feature;
(ii) Names given to the feature spontaneously on the basis of a topographic feature, impression etc.;
(iii) Name of a ship or aircraft used at the time of a discovery; or
(iv) Other names as deemed appropriate.

(*d*) The following types of names, which international opinion considers inappropriate, shall be avoided:

(i) Names proposed with consideration given to a family relationship or to personal friendship;
(ii) Names of persons who have donated money, equipment or commodities and who are likely to take advantage of the naming in making commercial profits;
(iii) Names of products, sled dogs, pet animals and others;
(iv) Names that are already well known in other parts of the world. The re-use of such a name in the Antarctic is undesirable, even if it is preceded by such an adjective as *Sin* (New), *Minami* (South) or *Syō* (small).

(*e*) The following names shall be avoided:

(i) Names that are almost indistinguishable from already existing names;
(ii) Names that are equivocal; and
(iii) Duplicate names. That is, the practice is discouraged of using the name of one and the same person twice for one and the same kind of feature.

NAMES OF OCEANS AND UNDERSEA FEATURES LYING OUTSIDE TERRITORIAL WATERS

Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

Les noms des mers et océans situés au-delà des eaux territoriales, qui sont adoptés par le Bureau hydrographique international, sont indiqués sur les cartes japonaises.

Quant aux noms des détails sous-marins, ceux qui sont approuvés par l'Association internationale d'océanographie physique (AIOP) sont utilisés sans modifications, et les autres font l'objet d'une décision prise par l'Assemblée des noms géographiques des océans constituée par le Département hydrographique.

Resumen

Los nombres de océanos y mares fuera de las aguas territoriales adoptados por la Oficina Hidrográfica Internacional se indican en los mapas japoneses.

En cuanto a los accidentes submarinos, los aprobados por la Asociación Internacional de Oceanografía Física (IAPO) se usan sin modificaciones, y los demás nombres se deciden en una sesión de la Asamblea sobre Nombres Geográficos de Océanos que convoca el Departamento de Hidrografía.

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.60.

*

* *

Procedures for naming seas and undersea features beyond the territorial waters are as follows.

The names of oceans and seas are indicated in accordance with the principles expressed by the International Hydrographic Bureau in IHO publication SP 23, *Limits of Oceans and Seas* (1953), which was prepared on the basis of international consensus.

As for the names of undersea features, those adopted by the GEBCO Sub-Committee on Geographical Names of Ocean Bottom Features as a result of international co-operative work and approved by IAPO are being used unconditionally. Names of other undersea features are studied by the Assembly on Geographical Names of Oceans as required for nautical and bathymetric charting, and certain names are then adopted as the standardized ones. The Assembly has adopted 46 such names since its second meeting.

The objective of this work is to classify undersea features lying beyond territorial waters into the following nomenclature categories, and either to give them geographical names or to standardize the names of such features:

(*a*) Primary features (major features):
- (i) Ridge;
- (ii) Seamount chain;
- (iii) Rise;
- (iv) Plateau;
- (v) Fracture zone;
- (vi) Trench; and
- (vii) Basin;

(*b*) Secondary features (minor features):
- (i) Seamount;
- (ii) Bank;
- (iii) Knoll;
- (iv) Spur;
- (v) Canyon;
- (vi) Deep;
- (vii) Caldron;
- (viii) Shelf channel;
- (ix) Trough;
- (x) Deep sea channel; and
- (xi) Deep sea fan.

The general principle is that geographical names will be given to primary features (i. e. to features of large scale). In the case of a very extensive feature, the geographical names of the places located at both extremities of the feature will be indicated in the following manner:

(*a*) If the feature extends from a northerly to a southerly direction, the name of the northernmost place will be indicated first;

(*b*) If the feature extends from an easterly to a westerly direction, the name of the westernmost place will be indicated first. It is also desirable to give a ship's or person's name to either the deepest or the shallowest portion of a feature.

Geographical names should preferably be given to secondary features (i.e. to features of medium or small scale). If there is no suitable geographical name to be quoted, a ship's or person's name may be given.

In case of more than one feature of the same category having the same name, the features will be distinguished by numbers. The numbering sequence will be in accordance with the chronological order of discovery or survey. If the name is geographical, the number will be prefixed; if it is a ship's name, the number will be suffixed.

In cases where a traditional name or some priority in naming exists, due regard shall be paid to such a traditional name.

UNDERSEA FEATURE NAMES APPROVED BY THE UNITED STATES BOARD ON GEOGRAPHIC NAMES

Report presented by the United States of America*

This bulletin contains names approved by the United States Board on Geographic Names since publication of the second edition of the *Undersea Features Gazetteer* in 1971, through 19 April 1977.

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*	
Abra Canyon	Canyon	17°31′ N.	120°22′ E
Accomac Canyon	Canyon	37 46 N.	74 02 W
Adélie Valley	Valley	65 30 S.	136 00 E
Agassiz Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	38 15 S.	127 15 W
Agerholm Seamount	Seamount	34 25 N.	135 35 W
Aguja Canyon	Canyon	11 40 N.	74 10 W
Aja Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	56 00 N.	145 00 W
Alaminos Bank	Marine bank	28 01 N.	91 45 W
Alaminos Canyon	Canyon	26 30 N.	94 35 W
Albany Seamount	Seamount	38 35 N.	37 15 W
Albatross Knoll	Knoll	33 00 N.	119 57 W
Albatross Seamount	Seamount	17 38 N.	30 05 W
Alexander Agassiz Guyot	Guyot	17 54 N.	178 33 E
Allison Guyot	Guyot	18 31 N.	179 36 W

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.110.

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*	
Amazon Fan	Fan	5° 00′ N,	47° 30′ W
Amazon Ridge	Ridge	4 30 N,	43 30 W
Amlia Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	50 00 N,	173 00 W
Antialtair Seamount	Seamount	43 37 N,	22 27 W
(co-ordinates formerly approved as: 43°50′ N, 22°00′ W)			
Antoine Bank	Marine bank	27 50 N,	92 18 W
Appelbaum Bank	Marine bank	27 51 N,	94 15 W
Arafura Shelf	Shelf	10 00 S,	137 00 E
Argo Plain	Plain	14 00 S,	117 00 E
Arroyo Seamount	Seamount	6 15 N,	22 40 W
Artimon Bank	Marine bank	45 10 N,	58 00 W
Aurora Reef	Reef	0 43 N,	129 32 E
Austral Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	20 00 S,	130 30 W
Avalon Knoll	Knoll	33 24 N,	118 13 W
Aves Apron	Archipelagic apron	15 00 N,	65 00 W
Ayu Trough	Trough	3 30 N,	132 30 E
Babylon Canyon	Canyon	39 30 N,	71 56 W
Baccaro Bank	Marine bank	43 00 N,	64 48 W
Balleny Basin	Basin	67 00 S,	170 00 E
Balleny Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	62 00 S,	156 00 E
Balleny Trough	Trough	66 00 S,	158 00 E
Barbados Trough	Trough	12 00 N,	59 23 W
Barracuda Plain	Plain	17 00 N,	56 30 W
Barrier Plateau	Plateau	35 40 S,	175 45 E
Bathymetrists Seamounts	Seamounts	7 30 N,	21 30 W
Bauer Basin	Basin	10 00 S,	101 45 W
Beachport Terrace	Terrace	38 00 S,	139 00 E
Beata Escarpment	Escarpment	16 10 N	72 50 W
Beata Plateau	Plateau	14 40 N,	71 00 W
Beata Spur	Spur	14 40 N,	71 40 W
Beaugé, Banc	Marine bank	49 45 N,	60 09 W
Beck Seamount	Seamount	35 35 N,	171 25 E
Belize Fan	Fan	18 00 N,	86 30 W
Bellingshausen Plain	Plain	64 00 S,	90 00 W
Bellona Valley	Valley	40 00 S,	165 45 E
Benham Plateau	Plateau	16 30 N,	124 45 E
Bering Strait Valley	Valley	65 45 N,	168 30 W
Berkner Bank	Marine bank	75 00 S,	48 00 W
Bethune Bank	Reef	19 35 S,	174 15 W
Beveridge Reef	Reef	20 02 S,	167 52 W
Bicentenary Seamount	Seamount	19 24 S,	175 28 W
Blake Knolls	Knolls	32 17 N,	118 15 W
Bonnécamps Canyon	Canyon	43 05 N,	60 25 W
Booshu Spur	Spur	63 34 N,	172 17 W
Bounty Seachannel	Seachannel	24 00 S,	176 30 E
Bouma Bank	Marine bank	28 03 N,	92 27 W
Bradelle Bank	Marine bank	47 25 N,	62 55 W
Britannia Tablemounts	Tablemounts	28 15 S,	155 30 E
Broughton Gap	Gap	42 39 S,	171 44 W
Bryant Bank	Marine bank	28 01 N,	92 28 W
Buccaneer Bank	Marine bank	21 25 N,	80 08 W
Bull Pen, The	Basin	44 15 N,	61 35 W
Burgeo Bank	Marine bank	47 10 N,	57 55 W
Cabo Creus Canyon	Canyon	42 21 N,	3 29 E
Cagayan Canyon	Canyon	18 25 N,	121 36 E
Camagüey Ridge	Ridge	20 00 N,	82 00 W
Campbell Island Shelf	Shelf	52 15 S,	169 30 E
Cap Ferret Canyon	Canyon	44 42 N,	2 30 W
Cape Johnson Trough	Trough	8 45 S,	165 15 E
Carlsbad Canyon	Canyon	33 06 N,	117 24 W
Carter Seamount	Seamount	8 58 N,	21 10 W
Caswell Spur	Spur	44 45 S,	166 40 E
Cavalli Canyons	Canyons	34 47 S,	174 05 E
Ceduna Terrace	Terrace	35 00 S,	132 00 E
Central Basin Trough	Trough	16 45 N,	130 00 E
Central Slope	Slope	27 10 N,	92 50 W
Ceram Trough	Trench	2 25 S,	129 30 E
Chain Knoll	Knoll	28 14 N,	68 26 W
Challenger Plateau	Plateau	40 00 S,	169 30 E
Chaplino Valley	Valley	64 10 N,	171 47 W
Chase Seamount	Seamount	42 04 N,	139 35 W

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*
Chebacco Canyon	Canyon	40° 12′ N, 67° 57′ W
Chirikof Basin	Basin	64 30 N, 169 00 W
Christian Canyon	Canyon	62 00 N, 39 00 W
Christmas Rise	Rise	13 00 S, 103 00 E
(co-ordinates formerly approved as: 12°00′ S, 110°30′ E)		
Chūō-gotō Seachannels	Seachannels	33 15 N, 128 10 E
Cindy Seamount	Seamount	7 40 N, 21 25 W
Clipper Canyon	Canyon	40 00 N, 68 40 W
Cocos Plain	Plain	3 00 S, 93 30 E
Colvocoresses Reef	Reef	4 53 N, 72 37 E
Constantine Seamount	Seamount	20 30 S, 171 20 E
Cook Bank	Marine bank	50 56 N, 128 40 W
Cook Canyon	Canyon	43 17 S, 169 35 E
Cook Seachannel	Seachannel	43 30 S, 166 00 E
Coriolis Trough	Trough	19 30 S, 170 00 E
Correira Guyot	Tablemount	6 29 S, 57 11 E
Cow Pen, The	Basin	44 12 N, 61 25 W
Cramer Seamount	Seamount	24 06 N, 164 13 E
Crespi Knoll	Knoll	33 06 N, 117 52 W
Curaçao Ridge	Ridge	13 00 N, 68 00 W
Cuvier Plain	Plain	22 00 S, 111 00 E
Cuvier Plateau	Plateau	24 00 S, 108 00 E
Dai-go-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 11 N, 128 14 E
Dai-ichi-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 22 N, 128 44 E
Dai-ni-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 00 N, 128 26 E
Dai-roku-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 12 N, 128 08 E
Dai-san-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 00 N, 128 22 E
Dai-shi-gotō Bank	Marine bank	33 08 N, 128 22 E
Daitō Ridge	Ridge	25 30 N, 133 00 E
(name formerly approved as: Daito Ridge)		
Dall Bank	Marine bank	32 52 N, 119 25 W
Dame Marie Ridge	Ridge	18 20 N, 75 30 W
Danas Valley	Valley	62 35 N, 51 05 W
Danells Valley	Valley	60 42 N, 42 15 W
Danielsen Canyon	Canyon	64 00 N, 34 00 W
Dantes Hole	Hole	8 17 N, 104 08 W
Darwin Guyot	Guyot	22 04 N, 171 35 E
Dawson Canyon	Canyon	43 00 N, 61 05 W
Dehlinger Seamount	Seamount	42 00 N, 137 19 W
Dibble Basin	Basin	65 20 S, 133 00 E
Discovery Ridge	Ridge	27 50 N, 68 02 W
Disney Reef	Reef	19 17 S, 174 06 W
Dogbody Canyon	Canyon	40 03 N, 68 47 W
Doldrums Trough	Trough	4 05 N, 27 30 W
Dolphin Spur	Spur	38 15 S, 165 00 E
Dowd Guyot	Tablemount	13 27 N, 119 39 W
East Aves Escarpment	Escarpment	13 00 N, 63 00 W
East Mexico Shelf	Shelf	24 00 N, 97 30 W
East Tasman Plateau	Plateau	43 30 S, 152 00 E
Eastern Bradelle Valley	Valley	47 50 N, 62 30 W
Eastward Knoll	Knoll	28 32 N, 69 09 W
Eauripik Rise	Rise	3 00 N, 142 00 E
Echizen Banks	Marine banks	36 15 N, 135 45 E
Eirik Ridge	Ridge	58 40 N, 44 00 W
Elbow, The	Ridge	27 41 N, 84 09 W
Emerald Basin	Basin	44 00 N, 62 45 W
(co-ordinates formerly approved as: 43°45′ N, 63°00′ W)		
Emery Knoll	Knoll	33 02 N, 118 24 W
Emilia Seamount	Seamount	43 50 N, 131 54 W
Ewing Bank	Marine bank	28 06 N, 91 02 W
Eyre Terrace	Terrace	34 00 S, 127 00 E
Falcon Bank	Reef	19 19 S, 174 07 W
Faroe Bank	Seamount	60 55 N, 8 40 W
(name formerly approved as: Faeroe Bank)		
Faroe-Iceland Ridge	Ridge	64 00 N, 10 00 W
(name formerly approved as: Faeroe-Iceland Ridge)		
Feinga Seamount	Seamount	20 09 S, 175 09 W
Ferris Seamount	Seamount	29 00 S, 102 45 W
Filebottom Canyon	Canyon	40 11 N, 67 59 W
Flanagan Seamount	Seamount	8 22 N, 21 22 W

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*
Fonera Canyon	Canyon	41° 52′ N, 3° 27′ E
Freen Trough	Trough	42 41 N, 20 00 W
Fukue Bank	Marine bank	32 47 N, 128 27 E
Galapagos Rise	Rise	15 00 S, 97 00 W
Gambell Shoal	Shoal	64 00 N, 170 45 W
Gambier Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	57 00 S, 147 30 E
Garrett Ridge	Ridge	32 37 N, 119 32 W
Gascoyne Plain	Plain	16 00 S, 110 00 E
Geisha Guyots	Guyots	31 30 N, 150 00 E
Gentatsu Shoal	Shoal	36 14 N, 135 45 E
Georges Canyon	Canyon	41 16 N, 66 16 W
George V Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	53 30 S, 141 00 E
Gibbs Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	52 45 N, 35 30 W
Gilg Seamount	Seamount	6 52 N, 21 54 W
Gloria Ridge	Ridge	55 50 N, 45 00 W
Godthåb Valley	Valley	63 30 N, 52 30 W
Goose Island Bank	Marine bank	51 38 N, 129 00 W
Gordon Seamount	Seamount	46 50 N, 135 04 W
Gotō Banks	Marine banks	33 10 N, 128 25 E
Green Canyon	Canyon	27 03 N, 90 27 W
Green Knoll	Knoll	27 00 N, 90 18 W
Greenland Trough	Trough	69 00 N, 20 00 W
Grenada Plain	Plain	13 30 N, 62 00 W
Grijalva Ridge	Ridge	5 00 S, 85 00 W
Guacanayabo Trough	Trough	19 45 N, 81 40 W
Guinea Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	9 00 N, 27 00 W
Haast Canyon (name formerly approved as: Haast Valley)	Canyon	44 05 S, 168 00 E
Haldimand Canyon	Canyon	44 00 N, 57 58 W
Hancock Bank	Marine bank	32 34 N, 119 42 W
Hanna Shoal	Shoal	72 00 N, 162 00 W
Hatteras Ridge	Ridge	33 45 N, 72 50 W
Hauraki Canyon	Canyon	35 20 S, 175 35 E
Heaphy Valley	Valley	40 40 S, 171 31 E
Heel Tapper Canyon	Canyon	40 08 N, 68 15 W
Heezen Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	53 00 S, 135 00 W
Heezen Plateau	Plateau	38 23 N, 70 48 W
Helena Seamount	Seamount	29 39 N, 158 56 E
Hendrickson Canyon	Canyon	39 07 N, 72 31 W
Hess Escarpment	Escarpment	15 05 N, 75 50 W
Higashi-gotō Seachannels	Seachannels	33 20 N, 128 40 E
Hispaniola Basin	Basin	20 35 N, 72 15 W
Hjort Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	62 00 S, 163 00 E
Honopu Canyon	Canyon	22 11 N, 159 41 W
Hoopers Canyon	Canyon	46 06 S, 171 00 E
Hsin-i Canyon	Canyon	23 02 N, 121 22 E
Humboldt Plain	Plain	54 00 S, 86 00 W
Iizuka Seamount	Seamount	42 21 N, 131 56 W
Ikitsuki Bank	Marine bank	33 36 N, 129 04 E
Imarssuak Seachannel	Seachannel	57 15 N, 44 00 W
Independence Knolls	Knolls	28 25 N, 69 42 W
Indian Ocean Cordillera (name formerly approved as: Indian Cordillera)	Cordillera	10 00 S, 66 00 E
Investigator Ridge	Ridge	11 30 S, 98 10 E
Iwabuchi Seamount	Seamount	42 04 N, 132 44 W
Iwo Jima Ridge	Ridge	30 00 N, 139 30 E
Jamaican Plain	Plain	15 30 N, 79 00 W
Jan Mayen Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	71 12 N, 8 00 W
Jan Mayen Ridge (name formerly approved as: South Jan Mayen Ridge)	Ridge	69 00 N, 8 00 W
Jones Seamount	Seamount	43 33 N, 132 35 W
Josephine Seamount (co-ordinates formerly approved as: 36°52′ N, 14°20′ W)	Seamount	36 40 N, 14 15 W
Justus Seamount	Seamount	34 24 N, 52 30 W
Julianehåb Valley	Valley	60 20 N, 46 55 W
Kagami Seamount	Seamount	45 29 N, 140 37 W
Kailiu Canyon	Canyon	22 15 N, 159 37 W
Kami Reef	Reef	32 50 N, 128 40 E
Kane Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	23 30 N, 45 00 W

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*
Kane Seamount	Seamount	21° 08′ N, 28° 02′ W
Kangerdlugussuaq Valley	Valley	67 20 N, 31 00 W
Kangermio Canyon	Canyon	64 00 N, 34 30 W
Kapuskasing Canyon	Canyon	43 11 N, 61 17 W
Karitane Canyon	Canyon	45 38 S, 171 10 E
Keathley Canyon	Canyon	26 25 N, 93 27 W
King Island Shoal	Shoal	65 00 N, 168 06 W
King Island Valley	Valley	64 45 N, 168 00 W
Kings Trough	Trough	43 48 N, 22 00 W
Knauss Knoll	Knoll	37 24 N, 70 52 W
Knights Terrace	Terrace	35 02 S, 175 10 E
Kolbeinsey Ridge	Ridge	69 00 N, 17 30 W
Kookoolik Valley	Valley	64 10 N, 169 55 W
Kōrai Reef	Reef	33 07 N, 128 43 E
Kuga Bank	Marine bank	32 55 N, 128 30 E
La Cruz Canyon	Canyon	35 43 N, 121 25 W
La Victoria Knoll	Knoll	32 05 N, 117 50 W
Lacaze-Duthiers Canyon	Canyon	42 28 N, 3 28 E
Lansdowne Bank	Marine bank	20 49 S, 161 24 E
Leonard Canyon	Canyon	37 46 N, 73 51 W
Lindenows Valley	Valley	60 20 N, 42 40 W
Llobregat Canyon	Canyon	41 16 N, 2 11 E
Logan Canyon	Canyon	43 15 N, 59 50 W
Lost River Shoal	Shoal	65 14 N, 167 10 W
Louis Agassiz Guyot	Guyot	17 52 N, 178 12 E
Louisiade Plateau	Plateau	12 30 S, 158 00 E
Loyalty Basin	Basin	17 00 S, 165 00 E
Lyra Basin	Basin	2 30 N, 151 30 E
Lyra Trough	Trough	1 20 S, 152 05 E
Mackenzie Spot	Marine bank	43 58 N, 62 25 W
Macnab Seamount	Seamount	45 11 N, 135 42 W
Maeno Bank	Marine bank	37 13 N, 136 20 E
Magellan Rise	Rise	7 20 N, 177 00 W
Mameyes Canyon	Canyon	18 27 N, 65 43 W
Manus Basin	Basin	3 35 S, 150 00 E
Mariana Basin	Basin	17 30 N, 145 00 E
Marchant Seamount	Seamount	7 15 N, 22 15 W
Marquesas Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	9 15 S, 128 30 W
Marseille Canyon	Canyon	43 00 N, 5 04 E
Matsu Bank	Marine bank	36 20 N, 135 56 E
McGowan Seamount	Seamount	8 24 N, 20 40 W
McKernan Seamount	Seamount	42 20 N, 141 06 W
McKinley Seamount	Seamount	29 30 N, 137 15 W
McManus Seamount	Seamount	42 12 N, 139 08 W
Melmoore Seamount	Seamount	6 06 N, 24 52 W
Menard Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	50 00 S, 120 00 W
Menard Seamount	Seamount	42 12 N, 134 15 W
Mendaña Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	16 00 S, 91 00 W
Mentawai Basin	Basin	4 30 S, 102 00 E
Mentawai Ridge	Ridge	0 30 S, 99 00 E
Mentawai Trough	Trough	2 00 S, 100 00 E
Mergui Terrace	Terrace	9 00 N, 96 45 E
Mertz-Ninnis Valley	Valley	67 25 S, 146 00 E
Mey Canyon	Canyon	39 07 N, 72 26 W
Middle Bank	Marine bank	44 30 N, 60 35 W
Mid-Indian Ocean Ridge	Ridge	30 00 S, 75 00 E
(name formerly approved as: Mid-Indian Ridge)		
Mill Creek Canyon	Canyon	35 58 N, 121 35 W
Milne Seamount	Seamount	43 46 N, 38 37 W
Misaine Bank	Marine bank	45 15 N, 58 40 W
Mississippi-Alabama Shelf	Shelf	29 40 N, 88 10 W
Mississippi Slope	Slope	27 45 N, 89 50 W
Molloy Seamount	Seamount	83 58 N, 105 10 E
Mono Rise	Rise	12 00 N, 80 00 W
Morant Trough	Trough	18 05 N, 75 30 W
Moresby Valley	Valley	10 45 S, 146 45 E
Motagua Fan	Fan	17 30 N, 85 30 W
Murchison Seamount	Seamount	7 54 N, 21 00 W
Mussau Ridge	Ridge	1 15 N, 149 10 E
Nagahira Bank	Marine bank	37 20 N, 136 20 E
Nakano Bank	Marine bank	37 34 N, 136 28 E

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*	
Nakwe Seachannel	Seachannel	37° 00′ N,	149° 30′ E
Nanortalik Bank	Marine bank	60 14 N,	46 20 W
Necker Ridge	Ridge	22 00 N,	167 15 W
Nichols Seamount	Seamount	42 50 N,	133 13 W
Nidever Bank	Marine bank	33 15 N,	119 49 W
Nierenberg Seamount	Seamount	44 19 N,	142 07 W
Nil Canyon	Canyon	36 54 N,	5 58 E
Nishi Reef	Reef	32 50 N,	128 38 E
Nishi-gotō Seachannels	Seachannels	32 45 N,	128 00 E
Nishinotoro Banks	Marine banks	37 25 N,	136 25 E
North Bank	Marine bank	52 00 N,	129 55 W
North Makassar Basin	Basin	1 00 S,	118 30 E
North New Hebrides Trench	Trench	13 00 S,	166 00 E
North Solomon Trough	Trough	7 00 S,	159 30 E
Northeast Cape Shoal	Shoal	63 20 N,	168 30 W
Northwest Slope	Slope	26 45 N,	95 40 W
Northwind Escarpment	Escarpment	76 30 N,	155 00 W
Norton Plain	Plain	63 54 N,	168 00 W
Nova Trough	Trough	2 30 S,	173 00 W
(co-ordinates formerly approved as: 1°20′ S, 168°40′ W)			
Ō Bank	Bank	36 24 N,	136 00 E
Ogasawara Plateau	Plateau	26 00 N,	144 00 E
Oki-Daitō Ridge	Ridge	23 50 N,	133 00 E
(name formerly approved as: Oki-Daito Ridge)			
Okino Bank	Marine bank	37 16 N,	136 18 E
Orphelin, Banc de l'	Marine bank	48 18 N,	63 11 W
Osborn Plateau	Plateau	14 45 S,	87 00 E
Palmer Ridge	Ridge	42 51 N,	20 00 W
Panama Plain	Plain	11 00 N,	79 00 W
Papanui Canyon	Canyon	45 53 S,	171 05 E
Papua Plateau	Plateau	11 00 S,	148 15 E
(name formerly approved as: Papua Terrace)			
Parker Bank	Marine bank	27 58 N,	92 02 W
Patch, The	Marine bank	44 15 N,	62 20 W
Peake Trough	Trough	43 03 N,	20 12 W
Pedro Bank	Marine bank	17 05 N,	78 20 W
Pedro Escarpment	Escarpment	15 45 N,	78 40 W
Pelorus Reef	Reef	22 50 S,	176 28 W
Penrhyn Basin	Basin	7 30 S,	156 15 W
Perth Plain	Plain	28 30 S,	110 00 E
Phleger Bank	Marine bank	27 50 N,	91 54 W
Phoenix Canyon	Canyon	37 50 N,	73 44 W
Pickersgill Seamount	Seamount	46 43 S,	161 44 E
Pilgrim Banks	Marine banks	33 44 N,	119 10 W
Pining Canyon	Canyon	61 40 N,	40 00 W
Piñones Canyon	Canyon	18 28 N,	65 57 W
Porpoise Basin	Basin	66 10 S,	128 30 E
Port Clarence Valley	Valley	65 23 N,	167 30 W
Portlock Bank	Marine bank	58 20 N,	150 30 W
Pothorst Canyon	Canyon	60 00 N,	40 30 W
Prince of Wales Shoal	Shoal	65 54 N,	168 00 W
Pulley Ridge	Ridge	25 52 N,	83 36 W
Queirós Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	22 30 S,	95 00 W
(name formerly approved as: Quirós Fracture Zone)			
Raff Seamounts	Seamounts	44 09 N,	141 48 W
Raitt Seamount	Seamount	42 39 N,	143 03 W
Rancheria Basin	Basin	12 45 N,	73 05 W
Rangiauria Spur	Spur	45 25 S,	175 20 W
Rapano Ridge	Ridge	26 40 N,	159 00 W
Rat Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	49 00 N,	178 00 E
Rebman Seamount	Seamount	7 17 N,	21 24 W
Redondo Knoll	Knoll	33 41 N,	118 34 W
Reedjones Seamount	Seamount	7 34 N,	21 05 W
Rennell Island Ridge	Ridge	12 15 S,	160 00 E
Rennell Trough	Trough	12 00 S,	159 15 E
Researcher Seamount	Seamount	27 56 N,	68 14 W
Resolution Ridge	Ridge	46 10 S,	165 00 E
Revelle Seamount	Seamount	42 21 N,	139 30 W
Rezak Bank	Marine bank	27 58 N,	92 22 W
Richards Seamount	Seamount	42 50 N,	136 27 W

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*
Robbie Ridge	Ridge	10° 15′ S, 175° 00′ W
Rochambeau Bank	Seamount	15 09 S, 176 42 W
Rock Knoll	Knoll	30 19 N, 129 23 E
Roia Canyon	Canyon	43 45 N, 7 39 E
Roo Rise	Rise	12 00 S, 111 00 E
Rose Blanche Bank	Marine bank	47 25 N, 58 50 W
Rowley Shelf	Shelf	20 00 S, 117 00 E
Royal Trough	Trough	16 10 N, 49 00 W
Rune Seamount	Seamount	57 10 N, 45 10 W
Sackett Bank	Marine bank	28 38 N, 89 33 W
Sahul Shelf	Shelf	12 30 S, 125 00 E
Saint Helena Shoal	Shoal	32 25 N, 80 21 W
Saint Lawrence Trough	Trough	63 10 N, 168 23 W
Saint Lawrence Valley	Valley	62 50 N, 168 40 W
Saint Paul Seamount	Seamount	27 36 N, 165 48 E
Saint Vincent Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	55 00 S, 144 00 E
Saglek Bank	Marine bank	59 00 N, 61 40 W
Samoa Basin	Basin	16 00 S, 166 00 W
San Andrés Ridge	Ridge	13 30 N, 81 20 W
San Andrés Trough	Trough	13 10 N, 81 35 W
San Clemente Ridge	Ridge	33 00 N, 118 34 W
San Miguel Gap	Gap	33 54 N, 121 00 W
San Salvador Knoll	Knoll	32 18 N, 117 54 W
Santa Canyon	Canyon	17 29 N, 120 25 E
Santa Cruz-Catalina Ridge	Ridge	33 33 N, 118 45 W
Santa Lucia Bank	Marine bank	43 36 N, 9 29 E
Santo Antão Ridge	Ridge	18 50 N, 26 30 W
Santo Tomás Knoll	Knoll	32 30 N, 118 41 W
Sarera Basin	Basin	2 15 S, 135 30 E
Sarmiento Ridge	Ridge	7 00 S, 84 00 W
Saunders Canyon	Canyon	45 58 S, 171 00 E
Savage Seamount	Seamount	18 28 S, 169 14 W
Sayniq Canyon	Canyon	33 33 N, 35 20 E
Scatarie Bank	Marine bank	45 58 N, 59 15 W
Schaefer Seamount	Seamount	43 00 N, 132 26 W
Scoresby Valley	Valley	70 00 N, 21 30 W
Scotian Shelf	Shelf	44 00 N, 62 00 W
Scott Plateau	Plateau	13 20 S, 120 30 E
Sebaou Canyon	Canyon	37 05 N, 3 43 E
Sedna Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	47 30 N, 145 00 W
Sedna Ridges	Ridges	47 30 N, 143 16 W
Sefsaf Canyon	Canyon	36 49 N, 3 33 E
Sermilik Valley	Valley	64 30 N, 36 30 W
Sevuokuk Spur	Spur	63 46 N, 172 24 W
Shalowitz Seamount	Seamount	46 09 N, 135 12 W
Sharpshooter Canyon	Canyon	40 02 N, 68 35 W
Shediac Valley	Valley	47 20 N, 64 25 W
Shepard Knoll	Knoll	32 05 N, 118 29 W
Shichiriga Bank	Marine bank	33 56 N, 129 30 E
Shih-t'i Pi Canyon	Canyon	23 31 N, 121 30 E
Shin Reef	Reef	32 52 N, 128 40 E
Shor Seamount	Seamount	42 30 N, 133 05 W
Shortland Canyon	Canyon	43 50 N, 58 15 W
Shostakovich Seamount	Seamount	33 16 N, 164 53 W
Sidner Bank	Marine bank	27 55 N, 92 23 W
Sierra Seamount	Seamount	32 38 N, 150 09 E
Sila Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	51 30 N, 150 00 W
Silver Plain	Plain	22 30 N, 69 30 W
Sio Guyot	Guyot	18 18 N, 171 06 E
Skjoldungen Bank	Marine bank	62 35 N, 40 38 W
Skjoldungen Valley	Valley	62 52 N, 40 40 W
Skraelling Canyon	Canyon	62 30 N, 38 30 W
Snodgrass Seamount	Seamount	7 50 N, 20 44 W
Sorensen Seamount	Seamount	7 50 N, 21 50 W
Sorol Trough	Trough	7 05 N, 143 00 E
South Indian Ocean Plain	Plain	59 00 S, 125 00 E
South Makassar Basin	Basin	4 00 S, 118 30 E
South New Hebrides Trench	Trench	22 30 S, 170 00 E
South Tasman Rise	Rise	49 00 S, 148 00 E
Southeast Indian Ocean Ridge	Ridge	50 00 S, 110 00 E
(name formerly approved as: Southeast Indian Rise)		

Name	Designation	Geographic co-ordinates
Southwest Indian Ocean Ridge	Ridge	43 00′ S, 40 00′ E
(name formerly approved as: Southwest Indian Ridge)		
Spilhaus Seamount	Seamount	42 40 N, 141 45 W
Spjaeldebod Canyon	Canyon	63 35 N, 35 40 W
Srivastava Seamount	Seamount	44 31 N, 136 07 W
Stanley Seamount	Seamount	43 08 N, 143 35 W
Stembel Knoll	Knoll	29 07 N, 136 33 W
Stickleback Seamount	Seamount	24 36 N, 177 54 W
Stone Fence, The	Escarpment	44 45 N, 57 25 W
Stravinsky Seamount	Seamount	31 29 N, 164 36 W
Sukkertoppen Bank	Marine bank	65 00 N, 53 35 W
Sukkertoppen Valley	Valley	64 20 N, 53 00 W
Sunda Shelf	Shelf	5 00 N, 107 00 E
Sverdrup Bank	Marine bank	33 08 N, 120 27 W
Swallow Knoll	Knoll	28 00 N, 68 32 W
Swan Trough	Trough	17 40 N, 83 10 W
Sweet Bank	Marine bank	27 51 N, 91 49 W
Taiaroa Canyon	Canyon	45 46 S, 171 10 E
Taieri Canyon	Canyon	46 15 S, 170 47 E
Tasman Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	58 30 S, 151 00 E
Tasman Plateau	Plateau	45 00 S, 147 00 E
(co-ordinates formerly approved as: 48°00′ S, 148°00′ E)		
Tasmantid Seamounts	Seamounts	31 00 S, 156 00 E
(name formerly approved as: Tasman Seamounts)		
Tchaikovsky Seamount	Seamount	29 23 N, 162 05 W
Tema Reef	Reef	11 05 S, 165 35 W
Terry Seamount	Seamount	43 24 N, 139 52 W
Texas-Louisiana Shelf	Shelf	28 30 N, 93 00 W
Tharp Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	54 00 S, 135 00 W
Thomson Trough	Trough	45 00 S, 158 00 E
Three Points Spur	Spur	3 50 N, 2 30 W
Tin City Shoal	Shoal	65 08 N, 167 40 W
Tofua Ridge	Ridge	20 00 S, 175 10 W
Tofua Trough	Trough	19 30 S, 174 47 W
Toms Canyon	Canyon	39 07 N, 72 42 W
Torres Rise	Rise	13 40 S, 165 10 E
Trask Knoll	Knoll	33 37 N, 120 16 W
Tresslar Bank	Marine bank	27 53 N, 92 22 W
Trold Canyon	Canyon	62 40 N, 37 30 W
Tsushima Trough	Trough	34 49 N, 129 17 E
Tuamotu Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	12 30 S, 127 00 W
Tung-chiang Canyon	Canyon	22 24 N, 120 23 E
Udintsev Fracture Zone	Fracture zone	57 00 S, 145 00 W
Ukivok Shoal	Shoal	65 00 N, 168 06 W
Urashima Bank	Marine bank	35 58 N, 135 21 E
Vacquier Seamount	Seamount	42 30 N, 139 59 W
Vanguard Knoll	Knoll	28 10 N, 68 01 W
Venezuelan Plain	Plain	14 00 N, 67 00 W
Verde Canyon	Canyon	43 47 N, 7 54 E
Verrill Canyon	Canyon	42 50 N, 61 15 W
Viking Trough	Trough	65 05 N, 5 25 W
Villa Canyon	Canyon	35 48 N, 121 30 W
Viosca Knoll	Knoll	29 12 N, 88 34 W
Walker Ridge	Ridge	26 15 N, 91 20 W
Wallaby Plateau	Plateau	22 00 S, 104 00 E
Warr Canyon	Canyon	37 55 N, 73 34 W
Watertown Seamount	Seamount	10 32 N, 115 00 W
Webb Seamount	Seamount	7 00 N, 21 33 W
Wentworth Seamount	Seamount	28 54 N, 177 50 W
West Aves Escarpment	Escarpment	15 00 N, 64 00 W
West Caroline Rise	Rise	7 45 N, 140 00 E
West Caroline Trough	Trough	5 00 N, 137 30 E
West Florida Shelf	Shelf	27 00 N, 83 20 W
West Florida Slope	Slope	27 00 N, 84 40 W
West Mariana Ridge	Ridge	18 00 N, 143 00 E
West Thulean Rise	Rise	55 00 N, 46 10 W
Western Bradelle Valley	Valley	48 00 N, 62 50 W
White Island Canyon	Canyon	37 10 S, 177 31 E
White Marsh Seamount	Seamount	53 08 N, 143 29 W
Whitney Seamount	Seamount	8 29 N, 20 15 W

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*	
Williams Seamount	Seamount	43° 57′ N,	38° 43′ W
Witter Bank	Marine bank	17 34 N,	77 56 W
Woodlark Basin	Basin	10 10 S,	153 20 E
Wu-shih Pi Canyon	Canyon	23 13 N,	121 25 E
York Shoal	Shoal	65 12 N,	167 30 W
Yucatan Escarpment	Escarpment	19 40 N,	86 30 W
Yucatan Plain	Plain	20 00 N,	85 00 W

Two names have been removed from the Undersea Features names file:

Name	*Designation*	*Geographic co-ordinates*	
Jason Seamount	Seamount	25° 10′ N,	161° 54′ W

(the BGN-approved name for this feature is now Mendelssohn Seamount, with co-ordinates 25°10′ N, 161°39′ W)

Mississippi Seamount	Seamount	28°42′ N,	162°34′ W

(the BGN-approved name for this feature is now Paganini Seamount, with co-ordinates 28°41′ N, 162°40′ W)

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY

Report presented by the Federal Republic of Germany*

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE GERMAN BAY COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*	*Grid Square*
A	Aa, Die	2608	77	
	Aadebrunn		88	
	Accumer Ee	2210	87, 89	7e
	Accumersieler Balje	2310	87, 90	
	Adriansgörtel		88	
	Afgang		88	
	Altcappeler Tief		2, 138	
	Alte Ems		90	
	Alte Harle (Muschelbalje)	2212	2, 87, 89	
	Alte Hever		106	9d
	Alte Mellum s. Mellum			
	Altenbruch-Reede		139	(10e)
	Altes Boesgatje	2306	90	
	Altes Schmaltief		106	
	Alte Südereider	1717	105	
	Alte Weser		2	8–9e
	Amrum [Insel]	1315, 1316	103	9c
	Amrumbank		103	8–9c
	Amrum-Odde		107	
	Amrumtief	1215, 1316	103, 107	
	Appelland s. Gröde-Appelland			
	Arngastsand	2515	7	
	Außenquage		106	
	Austerngrund		195	1–4c e
B	Bakenloch		2, 138	
	Bakenplate	2212	87, 89	
	Baklegde (Neuharlingersieler Wattfahrwasser)	2212	87, 89	
	Baltrum [Insel]	2210	87, 90	7e
	Baltrumer Balje	2210	87, 89	
	Baltrumer Inselwatt	2210	87, 89	
	Baltrumer Wattfahrwasser	2210	87, 89	
	Bantsbalje	2408	90	6–7e
	Baumloch		139	
	Beensley	1418	61, 106, 107	
	Benners Rey		88	

* The original text of this paper, prepared by the Ständiger Ausschuss für geographische Namen (Permanent Committee on Geographical Names) in collaboration with the Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut (German Hydrographical Institute), appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.125.

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*	*Grid Square*
	Bielshövener Loch		105, 138	
	Bielshövensand	1818	105, 138	10d
	Bielshövensteert		105	
	Blaue Balje	2213	2	
	Blauort	1818	105	
	Blauortsand	1818	105	10d
	Blexer Plate	2417	4	
	Blidselbucht	0916	108	
	Blindes Randzelgat		90	
	Bockhorner Watt	2514	7	
	Bollensiel		2, 7	
	Bordumer Sand	2514	7, 8	
	Borkum [Insel]	2306, 2406	90	6e
	Borkumriff		87, 90	6e
	Borkumriffgrund		87	5–6d–e
	Branderplate	2308	89, 90	
	Brauerplaten	2306	87, 90	
	Breite Legde	2213	2, 89	
	Buchtloch	2017	138	
	Bullenloch	2019	139	
	Burhaver Plate	2416	4	
	Burnloch		138	
	Buschsand [Trischen]	1917	138	10d
	Buschsand-Fahrwasser		105, 138	
	Busetief	2308	87, 89, 90	
	Büsumer Watt	1818	105	
	Butterloch	1418	61, 106, 107	
	Buttersand		103, 108	
	Büttersrej		88	
C	Cancer		83	8–9b
	Carolinensieler Balje	2213	87, 89	
D	Dangaster Außentief s. Steinhauser Tief			
	Danskermannshörn		88	
	Das Hohe Ufer		49, 138	
	Das Neue Brack s. Neues Brack			
	Das Ridd		107	
	Der Hohe Weg (Hoher Weg)	2315	2, 7	9e
	Der Hund s. Hund			
	Der Strand	1318, 1418	103, 107	
	Die Aa	2608	77	
	Die Geise s. Geise			
	Diekmannsloch		138	
	Dieksander Priel		105, 138	
	Dithmarscher Gründe	1718	105	
	Dithmarscher Watt	1719	105	
	Dollart [bei Langeoog]	2211	87, 89	
	Dollart, der, [Emsmündung]	2608/09, 2709	77	7f
	Dorumer Tief		2, 38	
	Dove Fieffaden	1717	105	
	Dove Harle	2213	2, 87, 89	
	Doves Tief		89	
	Dovetief		87, 89	
	D-Steert		105, 138	
	Duhner Loch		49, 138	
	Duhner Watt		49, 138	
	Dukegat		77, 90	
	Düne, die		88	8d
	Dwarsgat		2, 7	
	Dwarsloch	1518	106	
E	Ehstersieler Fahrwasser[a]	1718	(105)	
	Ehstersieler Plate[a]	1718	105	
	Eider			10–11d
	Eidumtief	1116, 1215/16	103, 107	
	Eitzenbalje	2017	138	
	Ems		76, 77, 90	6–7f

[a] Die Schreibweise „Ehstensieler F. u. P." auf Top. Karte 1817 und Deutsche Seekarte 105 widerspricht der amtlichen Ortsnamenschreibweise Ehstersiel (Wohnplatzverz, Schleswig-Holstein 1958).

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	German Sea Chart No.	Grid Square
	Emshörnfahrwasser		90	
	Emshörngat		90	
	Emshörnplate		90	
	Engelsand		106	
	Evermannsgat		90	
	Eversand	2213	87, 89	
	Eversandloch		2	
F	Falsches Tief	1917	105, 138	9–10d
	Fedderwarder Fahrwasser	2316	2	
	Fedderwarder Priel	2316, 2416	4, 7	
	Fiegenplate	1717/18[b]	105	
	Fischerbalje	2306	87, 90	
	Flacksellebrunn		88	
	Flackstrom	1818	105, 138	
	Flinthörn [Südwestende der Insel Langeoog]	2210	87, 89	
	Föhr [Insel]	1216, 1217 1316, 1317	107	9–10c
	Föhrer Ley	1217	107	
	Föhrer Schulter	1217	107	9–10c
	Franziusplate	2417	4	
	Franzosenloch	1718	(105), 61 S	
	Franzosensand	2019	138	
	Fuhle Schlot		103, 106	
G	Gat vom Wrack	2213	2, 87, 89	
	Geise, die	2608/09	77	7f
	Geisesteert	2608	77	
	Geise-Trennwerk [Leitwerk]	2608	77	
	Gelbsand	2017	138	10d–e
	Geldsackplate		87, 90	
	Geniusbank	2414	7, 8	
	Görtel s. Adriansgörtel			
	Greetsieler Außentief (Greetsieler Wattfahrwasser)	2408	90	
	Greetsieler Nacken	2408	90	
	Greetsieler Wattfahrwasser s. Greetsieler Außentief			
	Griend			3f
	Gröde-Appelland [Insel]	1318	107	10c
	Gröninger Plate	2212	87, 89	
	Große Fliegenplate s. Fiegenplate			
	Große Plate	2316	4	
	Großer Knechtsand		2	9e
	Großer Vogelsand		138	9–10d–e
	Große Vollerwiekplate	(1718)	105	
	Großputengat		138	
H	Haak [Westende der Insel Juist]	2307	87, 90	
	Haaksgat	2307	87, 90	
	Habel [Insel]	1318	103, 107	
	Haken		138	
	Hakensand		138	10e
	Hamburger Hallig	1318	107	10c
	Hamburger Loch		88	
	Hamburger Sand	2408	87, 90	
	Harle	2212/2213	87, 89	8e
	Harleriff	2213	87, 89	
	Harlesieler Außentief	2212	87, 89	
	Harlesieler Wattfahrwasser	2212	87, 89	
	Hatzumer Sand	2610	76	
	Helgoland [Insel]	1813	3, 88	8d
	Helgoländer Bucht	1813	50	8–9d–e
	Helgoländer Loch			8d
	Helmsand [Insel]	1919	105	10d
	Helmsander Loch		105	8d
	Helmsandsteert	1919	50, 105	
	Heppenser Fahrwasser		7	
	Hestendragt	1017	103, 108	10c
	Heversteert	1517/18	103, 106	
	Heverstrom	1518/19	106	10d

[b] Hier: Große und kleine Fliegenplate

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*	*Grid Square*
	Hitzsand	1617, 1717	105, 106	
	Hochsichtsand	1717/18	105	
	Hogstean		3, 88	
	Hohbrunn		88	
	Hohe Bank	2212	87, 89	
	Hohe Hörn, die		90	
	Hohenhörnsände (Hohenhörn)	2016	2, 138	
	Hohe Plate	2416	4	
	Hohe Plate	2308	89, 90	
	Hoher Rücken	2213	87, 89	
	Hoher Weg s. Der Hohe Weg			
	Hohes Riff		87, 90	
	Hohes Riff	2309	87, 89	
	Hohe Ufer, das, s. Das Hohe Ufer			
	Hohe Weg, Der	2315	7	9e
	Hohewegrinne		4, 7	
	Hohewegsbalje	2315/16	7	
	Holmer Fähre	1418	106	
	Holtknobs	1315	107	
	Hooge [Insel]	1417	107	10c
	Hoogeloch		107	
	Hooksielplate		7	
	Hopp	2306	90	
	Hornsbalje	2306	90	
	Hörnumloch	1215	103, 107	
	Hörnum-Odde	1215	103, 107	
	Hörnum-Reede		103, 107	
	Hörnumknobs	1215, 1315	103, 107	
	Hörnumtief	1116, 1215/16	103, 107	9c
	Horsbornplate		90	
	Horsbüllsteert	1117	103, 107	
	Hoyerkanal		103, 108	
	Hoyertief	0916	103, 108	
	Hubsand	1316	103, 107	
	Hullbalje	2211	87, 89	
	Hullplate	2213	87, 89	
	Hund, der		77	
	Hundebalje	2016	2, 38	
	Hundebalje	2315	7	
	Hungat	2311	87, 89	
	Hungatplate	2311	87, 89	
	Hunningensände	0916, 1016	103, 108	
	Husumer Au	1520	106	
I	Imsumplate	2416/17	4	
	Innenquage		106	
	Irrtief	0916	108	
	Isern Hinnerk	1717, 1817/18	105	
	Itzendorfplate	2308	87, 89, 90	
J	Jade, die			9e
	Jadebusen	2415, 2514/15	7	
	Jadeplate		2	
	Jadewatt	2515	(7)	
	Janssand	2211/12	87, 89	
	Jantjemoeplate	2308	89, 90	
	Jappensand	2415, 2515	7, 8	
	Japsand		106, 107	9c
	Juist [Insel]	2307/2308	87, 89, 90	6–7e
	Juister Balje (Juister Wattfahrwasser)	2307	87, 90	
	Juister Inselwatt	2307, 2308	87, 90	
	Juister Riff		87, 90	
	Juister Wattfahrwasser s. Juister Balje			
	Jungnamenloch	1315	107	
	Jungnamensand	1316	103, 107	9c
K	Kachelotplate	2306	87, 90	
	Kaiserbalje		2, 7	
	Kalberdans		88	

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	German Sea Chart No.	Grid Square
	Kalfamer [Ostende der Insel Juist]	2308	89, 90	
	Kalfamergat	2308	87, 89, 90	
	Kanalreede		139, 247	
	Karkhof		105, 138	
	Katinger Watt	1718/19	103, 105	
	Kinderbalje		138	
	Kleine Fliegenplate s. Fiegenplate			
	Kleine Knechtsände		2	9e
	Kleine Robbenplate		2	
	Kleiner Vogelsand	2017	138	
	Kleine Vollerwiekplate	(1718)	105	
	Kleinwatt		2, 138	
	Klotzenloch		138, 139	10e
	Knechtsand s. auch Großer K., Kleine Knechtsände			
	Kniepsand	1315	103, 107	9c
	Knockster Muhde	2608	77	
	Knockster Watt	2608	77	
	Knotentief s. Knudedyb			
	Knudshörn	1416	106, 107	
	Kohlhof	1519	106	
	Kolumbusloch	1517	106	
	Königshafen	0916	108	
	Königsplate		87, 90	
	Kopersand	2307/08, 2408	87, 90	7e
	Kopersandpriel	2308	90	
	Korbbakensand	1518	106	
	Krabbenloch		138	
	Kratzsand		138, 139	
	Kronenloch	1819	105	
L	Landbalje	2212	87, 89	
	Landtief	0916	108	
	Landtief	1315	103, 107	
	Langeneß s. Nordmarsch-Langeneß			
	Langeoog [Insel]	2210/2211	87, 89	7–8e
	Langeooger Balje	2210/2211	87, 89	
	Langeooger Inselwatt	2211	87, 89	
	Langeooger Wattfahrwasser	2211	87, 89	
	Langer Jan	2213	87, 89	
	Langes Riff		2, 87, 89	
	Langlütjensand	2316, 2416	4	9–10e
	Legde (Legdedurchfahrt)	2308	89, 90	
	Leghörn		103	
	Ley		2, 87	
	Leybucht	2408	87, 90	7e
	Leysand	2408	90	
	Liinsand	1216	103, 107	
	Linnenplate	1718	105	
	Lister Ley	1016	103, 108	
	Lister Tief	0916	103, 108	9b
	Loreleybank		3, 88	
	Lorenzensplate	1517	106	
	Luechtergrund (Neuer)		138	
	Luechterloch		138	
	Lundenberger Sand	1519	106	
	Lütje Hörn [Insel]	2307	87, 90	6e
M	Maifeldsteert		7, 8	
	Manslagter Nacken	2508	90	
	Marientief	2414	8	
	Marner Plate	1917	138	10d
	Marschnack	1316/17	103, 107	
	Martensplate	2212	2, 87, 89	
	Medemgrund		139	
	Medeminsel s. Medemsand-Insel			
	Medemsand	2118	139	10e
	Medemsand-Insel (Medeminsel)	2119	139	
	Meldorfer Bucht		49	10–11d
	Mellum (Alte Mellum)	2214	2, 7	9e
	Mellumbalje		2	

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*	*Grid Square*
	Mellumplate		2	
	Mellumriffe	2214	2, 7	
	Memmert (Memmertsand) [Insel]	2307	87, 90	6e
	Memmertbalje	2307	87, 90	
	Memmertsand s. Memmert			
	Memmert-Wattfahrwasser		90	
	Mettgrund	1519/20	106	
	Meyers Legde		2	9e
	Midlumersand	2710	76	
	Minsener Balje	2213	2	
	Minsener Legde	2214	2	
	Minsener Oog	2213/14	2	
	Minsener Rinne		2	
	Minsener Sand		2	
	Misselwarder Tief		2, 4	
	Mitteleider	1717	(105)	
	Mittelgrund		105	
	Mittelgrund		138	
	Mittelhever	1517	106	9–10d
	Mittelloch		138	
	Mittellochsknob	1316	103, 107	
	Mittelplate		77	
	Mittelplate	2408	87, 89	
	Mittelplate	1917	138	
	Mittelplate		2	
	Mittelplate	2210	87, 89	
	Mittelplate	2211	87, 89	
	Mittelplate	1818	(105)	
	Mittelplaten	1517/18	106	
	Mittelpriel	2316	4	
	Mittelrinne		2	
	Mittelsand	2308	87, 90	
	Mittelsand	1116	103, 108	
	M-Loch		105	
	Modersloch		106, 107	
	Moorsteert	1419	106, 107	
	Morsumkliff	1116	103, 108	
	Morsum-Odde	1116	103	
	Möwensteert		87, 90	
	Munk		8a	
	Muschelbalje s. Alte Harle			
	Muschelbank	2213, 2214/2314	2, 89	
	Muschelloch		2, 49, 105	
N	Nathurn s. Nordhorn			
	Nathurnbrunn		88	
	Neiderplate	2210, 2310	87, 89	
	Neßmersieler Balje	2210	87, 89	
	Neucappeler Tief		2	
	Neue Plate	1017	103, 108	
	Neuer Luechtergrund		138	
	Neues Brack (Das Neue Brack)	2213	2, 87, 89	8–9e
	Neues Loch		87, 89, 90	7e
	Neue Weser		2	8–9e
	Neufahrwasser	1917	138	
	Neufelder Rinne		139	
	Neufelder Sand		139	
	Neufelder Watt	2019, 2119	139	10e
	Neuharlingersieler Außentief	2212	87, 89	
	Neuharlingersieler Wattfahrwasser s. Baklegde			
	Neumanns Loch	1818	105	
	Nouvortrapptief		103, 106	
	Neuwerk [Insel]	2016/2017	138	9–10e
	Neuwerker Fahrwasser		138	
	Neuwerker Loch	2016	2, 138	
	Neuwerker Watt	2016	2, 138	
	Norddeicher Wattfahrwasser	2308	90	
	Norderaue	1316	103, 107	9–10c

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	German Sea Chart No.	Grid Square
	Norder Außentief (Norder Wattfahrwasser)	2408	90	
	Norderelbe		138	
	Nordergat		138	
	Nordergründe		2, 49	9e
	Nordergründe		87, 89	
	Nordergründe	2019	139	10e
	Norderhever	1418, 1517/18	106	10c–d
	Norderloch		105	
	Norderney [Insel]	2209	87, 89, 90	7e
	Norderneyer Inselwatt	2209	87, 89	
	Norderneyer Seegat		87, 89	
	Norderneyer Wattfahrwasser	1309	87, 89	
	Norderneygrund		89	6–7e
	Norderoog [Insel]	1417	103, 106	10c
	Norderoogsand	1416/17	103, 106	
	Norderpiep	1818	105	9d
	Norderplate	1419	103, 106, 107	
	Norderquage		106	
	Norderrinne		138	
	Nordertill	2016	2, 138	9e
	Norder Watt	2308, 2309	87, 89	
	Norder Wattfahrwasser s. Norder Außentief			
	Nordeversand		2	
	Nordhafenknoll		88	
	Nordhorn (Nathurn)		88	
	Nordland	2307	87, 90	
	Nordmands Dyb (Nordmannstief)		50	8a
	Nordmanns Grund	1316	103, 107	
	Nordmannstief s. Nordmands Dyb			
	Nordmarsch-Langeneß (Langeneß) [Insel]	1317	103	10c
	Nord-Ostsee-Kanal	2120	49	
	Nordpriel	2316	4	
	Nordreede		3, 88	
	Nordschillgrund			2–3b
	Nordstrand	2209	89	
	Nordstrand [Insel]	1418, 1419 1518, 1519	103, 106	10c–d
	Nordstrander Watt	1518/19	103, 106	
	Nordstrandischmoor [Insel]	1518	106, 107	10c
	Nordwestgründe (Nordwestgrund)		87, 89	
O	Oberer Wittsand	2016	2	
	Obereversand		2	
	Ochsensand	1518	106	
	Ohlhövbrunn		88	
	Oldoogplate		2	
	Oldoogrinne		2	
	Ordinger Priel		106	
	Oss	2211	87, 89	
	Ossengoot		105	
	Ostbalje	2209, 2210	87, 89	
	Osterems	2307	87, 90	
	Osteriff		139	
	Osterley	1116/17	103	
	Osterriede	2308, 2309	87, 89	
	Osterriff	2308	87, 89, 90	
	Ostertill		2, 138	
	Osterwehl		107	
	Osteversand		7	
	Ostfriesisches Gatje		77	
	Ostrinne		2	
	Othelloplate	2210	87, 89	
	Otzumer Balje	2211	87, 89	8e
P	Paapsandplate		77	
	Padingbütteler Tief		2	
	Pahlsknoll	1517, 1617	106	
	Pandertief	1016	103, 108	

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*	*Grid Square*
	Peckbrunn		88	
	Pellworm [Insel]	1417, 1418	103, 106	10c–d
	Pellwormer Loch		106	
	Pellwormplate	1418	103, 106, 107	
	Pilsumer Watt	2408, 2508	87, 90	
	Pohnsbucht	1519	106	
	Porrenrünnel	1518	106	
	Purrenstrom	1718/19	103, 105	10d
	Puttschipploch		138	
Q	Quage s. Innen-, Außen- und Norderquage			
R	Randzel	2306	87, 90	6e
	Randzelgat	2306	87, 90	6e
	Rantumbecken	1115	108	
	Rantumlohe	1115, 1215	103, 107	
	Raulingsand		103, 108	
	Repulsegrund		3, 88	
	Ridd, Das, s. Das Ridd			
	Riffgat		90	
	Riffgat	2309	89	
	Risten	0916	103, 108	
	Robbenbrunn		3, 88	
	Robbennordsteert		2	
	Robbenplat	2315	(7)	
	Robbenplate	2016	2, 50	
	Robbenplate	2314	7	
	Robbenplate		4	
	Robbenplate	2316	2, 4	
	Robbenplate		77, 90	
	Robbenplate	2210	87, 89	
	Robbenplate		89, 90	
	Robbenplate	2210, 2211	87, 89	
	Robbenpriel	2308, 2309	87, 89	
	Robbensand	1517	103, 106	
	Robbensände	1017	103, 108	
	Robinsbalje		2	
	Rocheleysand	1318	103, 107	
	Rochelsand	1617	103, 106	
	Rochelsteert	1617	105, 106	10d
	Roggsand	2211	87, 89	
	Roßhaken		(138)	
	Rote-Kliffbank			8–9b
	Roter Grund		2	
	Roter Sand		2	8–9e
	Rummelloch	1417/18, 1517	103, 106, 107	
	Rungholtsand	1418	103, 106, 107	
	Russenloch	1818	105	
	Rüstersieler Watt	2414	7, 8	
	Rute	2211	89	
	Ruteplate	2211	87, 89	8e
	Rütergat		106, 107	9d
	Rysumer Nacken	2608	77	
S	Sahlenburger Loch	2117	138	
	Salzsand	0916	103, 108	9b
	Sander Watt	2514	7	
	Sandhörn	1318	107	
	Sandloch		105	
	Sandshörn	1318, 1417	103, 106, 107	
	Schaafsand	2016	2, 138	
	Schapesand	2307	87, 90	
	Scharhörn [Insel]	2016	2, 138	9e
	Scharhörner Watt		2, 138	
	Scharhörnloch		2, 138	
	Scharhörnriff		2, 138	9e
	Schatzkammer		138	

		1:25.000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*	*Grid Square*
	Scheels Plate		103, 106	
	Schellenlegde	2016/17	138	
	Schell-Legde	1818	105	
	Schillbalje	2212	87, 89	
	Schillhörn	2307	87, 89	
	Schillig-Reede		2	
	Schillplate	2307	87, 90	
	Schlauch		2	
	Schlickloch		138	
	Schluchter		87, 89	
	Schlütt	1318	107	
	Schmaltief		106	9d
	Schmarrener Loch		4	
	Scholl-Loch	1818	105	
	Schuitensand		87, 90	
	Schusterloch		105	
	Schwarze Gründe		2	
	Schweiburger Watt	2515	7	
	Schweinsrücken	1316	103, 107	
	Schweinsrücken	2408	90	
	Schweinsrücken	2514/15	7, 8	
	Seefelder Watt	2515	7	
	Seesand		106	
	Sellebrunn		3, 88	
	Sellebrunnknoll		3, 88	
	Sengwarder Balje	2315	7	
	Skittgatt		88	
	Solthörner Watt	2415	7, 8	
	Sommerkoogsteertloch	1919	105	
	Spaniergat		87, 89, 90	
	Spikaer Barre		2, 138	
	Spiekeroog [Insel]	2212	87, 89	8e
	Spiekerooger Wattfahrwasser	2212	87, 89	
	Spitzsand		139	
	Steenack	1116	103, 107	
	Steilsand	2017	138	
	Steingrund		3, 88	9d
	Steinhauser Tief (Dangaster Außentief)	2514	7	
	Steinloch	1517	106	
	Steinplate	2308	87, 89, 90	
	Steinplate	2210, 2310	87, 89	
	Stickers Gat		138	
	Stollhammer Watt	2415	7, 8	
	Störloch		138, 139	
	Strand, Der	1318, 1418	103, 107	
	Strandplate		2	
	Stüvers Plate	2211	87, 89	
	Süderaue	1416/17	103, 107	9–10c
	Süderhever	1517, 1617	103, 106	9d
	Süderoog [Insel]	1817	103, 106	10d
	Süderoogsand	1517	103, 106	9d
	Süderpiep		105	9d
	Süderpiepgrund		105	
	Süderriff	2211	87, 89	
	Südeversand		2	
	Südfahrwasser		105	
	Südfall [Insel]	1518	103, 106	10d
	Südliche Schlickbank			4–5b
	Südreede		3, 88	
	Südreede		139	
	Südwesthörn		105	
	Suezpriel	2416	4	
	Swinn	2212	87, 89	
	Swinnplate	2212	87, 89	
	Sylt [Insel]	0916, 1015 1016, 1115, 1116, 1215	61, 103	9b–c
	Sylt-Außenriff			7b
T	Tabaksplate		2, 87, 89	

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE GERMAN BAY COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY (*continued*)

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*	*Grid Square*
	Tegeler Plate		2	9e
	Tegeler Rinne		2	
	Telegraphenbalje	2213	2	
	Tertius (Tertiussand)	1818	105	10d
	Tertiussand		105	
	Tettenser Plate	2416/17	4	
	Theeknobs	1215	103, 107	9c
	Theeknobsrinne		103, 107	
	Tetenbüllspieker Loch		106	
	Tönninger Rack		105, 138	
	Trischen [Buschsand]	1917	138	10d
	Trischenflinge		138	
	Tümmlauer Bucht	1617/18	106	
	Tuschgründe		106	
	Tuschsände		106	
U	Unterer Wittsand	2016	2, 138	
	Untereversand		2	
	Uthörn	0916	108	
	Utlandshörner Wattfahrwasser	2408	90	
V	Vareler Tief	2515	7	
	Vareler Watt	2515	7	
	Verlorenhörn		105	
	Vollerwiekplate s. Große V. und Kleine V.			
	Voorentief	2306	87, 90	
	Vortrapptief	1215, 1315	103, 107	9c
	Voslappwatt	2314, 2415	7, 8	
	Vyl		50	8b
W	Waddenser Balje		4	
	Waddenser Plate	2416	4	
	Wagengat	2309	87, 89	
	Wal		88	
	Wangerooge [Insel]	2213	2, 87, 89	8e
	Wangerooger Fahrwasser		87, 2	
	Wangerooger Plate		2	
	Warwerorter Priel		105	
	Watumbucht		77	
	Wattfahrt		2	
	Weiße Bank			4–5c
	Weserfahrt		2, 49	
	Wesselburener Loch	1718, 1818	105	
	Wesselburener Watt	1718/19	105	
	Westerbalje		87, 90	
	Westerbrandung		103, 106, 107	
	Westerems	2306	87, 90	5e
	Westerheversand	1617	103, 106	
	Westerley	1016, 1116/17	103	
	Westerplate	1717	105	
	Westerriede	2308	89, 90	
	Westerriff	2210	87, 89	
	Westerriff	2211	87, 89	
	Westertill		2	
	Westerwehl		107	
	Westplate	2211	87, 89	
	Westrinne		2	
	Wichter Ee	2210	87, 89	
	Wittkliffbrunn		3, 88	
	Wittsandloch	2016	2, 138	
	Wöhrdener Loch		105	
	Wöhrdener Priel		105	
	Wremer Tief	2316	4	
	Würdeleher Sand	2515	7	
	Wurster Arm	2316	2	
	Wurster Watt	2316	2	9–10e
Z	Zehnerloch		138	

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE BALTIC SEA COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY

		1:25.000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*
A	Au-Haken		30, 32, 33
B	Breiter Barg		30, 31, 36, 43
	Breitling		38
	Brodersbyer Noor		41
	Buchhorst [Insel]	2031	37, 38
	Bukenoor	1425	41
	Burger See		30, 31, 36
D	Dassower See	2031	37, 38
E	Eckernförder Bucht		30, 32, 64
	Eitzgrund		30, 36, 43, 64
F	Fehmarn [Insel]	1532	30, 31, 36, 43, 64
	Fehmarnbelt		30, 31, 36, 64
	Fehmarnsund	1532, 1632	30, 31, 36, 43, 64
	Flensburger Förde	1123, 1124	14, 26, 30, 64
	Flüggesand		30, 31, 36, 43, 64
	Frieshaken		26
G	Gabelsflach		30, 32, 43, 64
	Geltinger Bucht	1225/26	26, 30, 64, 100
	Geltinger Noor	1225/26	26, 100
	Gollendorfer Wiek	1532	43
	Große Breite	1424	41
	Große Holzwiek	2031	38
	Großenbroder Steinriff		31, 43
	Grödersbyer Noor	1325	
	Großer Binnensee	1629	43
	Grüner Grund		31
	Gunnebyer Noor	1424	41
H	Haddebyer Noor	1523	41
	Heikendorfer Bucht		32, 34
	Heikendorfer Reede		32, 34
	Helsenberg		41
	Hestholm [Insel]	1423	41
	Hoher Grund		31, 43
	Hölle, Die		38
	Holnishaken		26
	Holtenauer Reede		34
	Hörn, Die	1626	34
	Hohwachter Bucht	1630	30, 36, 43, 64
J	Jürgensschott	1225/26	26, 30, 100
K	Kalkgrund	1225/26	26, 30, 64, 100
	Kieholm [Insel]	1224	41
	Kieler Bucht	1326, 1426, 1527	30, 32, 43, 64
	Kieler Förde	1527	30, 32, 33, 64
	Kieler Hafen		30, 32, 34
	Kleine Breite	1423	26
	Klein Flintholm [Insel]	1325	41
	Kleine Holzwiek	2031	38
	Kleverberg		30, 32, 33
	Kringwerder		38
	Kolberger Heide	1527	30, 32, 43, 64
	Kunkel, Die		38
	Kupfermühlenbucht		26
L	Laboer Sand		32, 33
	Langballigbank		26
	Lemkenhafener Wiek	1532	31
	Lindauer Noor	1424	41
	Lindholm		41
	Lübecker Bucht	1930, 2031	36, 37, 38, 64
M	Madensand		33, 34
	Mecklenburger Bucht		31, 36, 37, 64

GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON THE BALTIC SEA COAST OF THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY (*continued*)

		1:25,000 Topographic Sheet No.	*German Sea Chart No.*
	Meierwiek		26
	Missunder Noor		41
	Mittelgrund		26, 30, 31, 32, 64
	Mövenberg [Insel]	1423	41
N	Neukirchengrund		26, 100
	Neustädter Bucht		35, 36, 37, 64
	Nißhaken		41
	Norderhaken		41
O	Ohrfeld [Ortsname]	1225/26	26
	Ohrfeldhaff [Ortsname]	1225/26	26
	Ohrfeld Haff (?)		26, 100
	Olpenitzer Noor	1325	32, 41
	Osbekgrund		26
	Orther Bucht		30, 31, 36, 43, 64
	Orther Reede	1532	
Ö	Öjet		30, 31, 36, 64
P	Pötenitzer Wiek	2031	37, 38
	Presener Untiefe		31
	Puttgardenriff		30, 31, 36
S	Sagasbank		30, 31, 36, 64
	Schabernak		31, 43
	Scheerhafen	1626	34
	Schidenkind		26
	Schlei	1423, 1424	41
	Schleimünde	1326	
	Schleimünder Seegat		32, 41
	Schleisand		30, 32, 41
	Schlutuper Wiek	3120	38
	Schönhagener Grund		30, 32, 64
	Schwarzer Grund		31, 36, 64
	Schwentine	1627	34
	Schlendorfer Binnensee	1629, 1630	30, 43
	Siechenbucht		38
	Silk	2031	38
	Steinberg		35
	Steinriff		35, 36, 37
	Stexwiger Enge	1423	41
	Stickenhörn		34
	Stoller Grund		30, 32, 33, 64
	Stollergrundrinne (?)		30, 32, 33, 64
	Strander Bucht	1527	30, 32, 33
	Strander Grasberg		32, 33
	Stubberhaken		41
	Süderhaken		41
T	Teerhof Insel (?)		38
	Teerhofinsel (?)	2030	
	Teerhofsinsel (?)		
	Teschower Wiek	2031	38
	Tirpitzhafen	1626	34
	Torotterberg		34
	Trave	2030, 2031	37, 38, 64
	Travearm, Toter		38
V	Vinds Grav		31, 43
W	Wakenitz	2130	38
	Walkyriengrund		35, 36, 37, 64
	Warder [Insel]	1532	43
	Wardereck		43
	Warderhaken		31, 43
	Wesseker oder Dannauer See (?)	1630	30, 36, 43
	Winston Steine		14, 26, 30, 32, 100
	Wormshöfter Noor	1225/26, 1325	32, 41

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON UNDERSEA AND MARITIME FEATURES OF THE UNITED NATIONS GROUP OF EXPERTS ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES*

In the period after the 1975 meeting of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names (UNGEGN), I sent communications to members asking for comments on the Working Group's programme. The objective was to develop statements on naming undersea and maritime features which reflected members' views and which could be presented to the Third United Nations Conference for possible adoption as international standards.

Specific attention was focused on the first two elements of the four-point programme:

(*a*) Establishment of policies and principles by which undersea and maritime features could be named; and

(*b*) Development of a form by which new names could be proposed.

Members will recall that United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) policies and principles and a BGN proposal form were offered as models.

As of 15 May 1977, only a few countries had expressed opinions regarding principles, a fact that could suggest that most of the members of the Working Group were satisfied with the BGN documents. Of those responding (Canada, the Federal Republic of Germany and the USSR), only Canada presented suggestions that seemed to call for any revision of the BGN material. Accordingly, representatives of the United States and Canada worked to prepare a statement that could meet the requirements both nations felt important. As a result, a new statement of principles and procedures was developed, the content of which varies only slightly from the original BGN text. The chief difference is one of format. At the same time, some minor changes were made in the BGN proposal form.

A recommendation submitted by the USSR was later added to the statement of principles and procedures. It recommends that specific elements of names of features not be translated from the form given by the nation providing the accepted name.

The new statement of principles and procedures, called "Proposed Guidelines for the Standardization of Undersea and Maritime Feature Names for International Use", is presented with this letter (see annex I). As Convenor of the Working Group, I recommend that it be supported by the UNGEGN for further recommendation to the United Nations Conference. I also recommend that the proposal form (annex II) be endorsed.

I would like to point out that the sections of the statement concerning principles and procedures make no distinction between undersea and maritime features. My review of existing literature shows that virtually all of the concern of the Working Group has been directed towards undersea features, and with good reason, for there is little requirement to name maritime features. For this reason, practically all of the guidance is oriented towards sea-bottom features, even though working definitions of the two categories of features are provided in the general part of the guidelines.

There is, nevertheless, a requirement of some magnitude for the Working Group to examine the problem of names of "international" maritime features that extend to areas of national sovereignty where they may have different names. Related to this is the problem of features common to two or more sovereign areas that have different names. Material sent to the Convenor by the Federal Republic of Germany made reference to such problems, and I recommend that the Working Group add this concern to its programme.

Finally, although generic terms were not the subject of the Working Group's concern during the past two years (but were part of the general work programme), I have taken the liberty of presenting, in annex III, a list of terms and their definitions recently worked out on a provisional basis by Canada and the United States. While not all of them necessarily represent official Canadian terms, they have been endorsed by the United States. I recommend the UNGEGN approve these terms and definitions and recommend them to the United Nations Conference for international use.

In summary, I submit for your review and endorsement:

(*a*) "Proposed Guidelines for the Standardization of Undersea and Maritime Feature Names for International Use" (annex I);

(*b*) Recommended Undersea or Maritime Feature Name Proposal Form (annex III); and

(*c*) A list of proposed Undersea Feature Terms and Definitions.

In the event that the basic documents cited here are adopted by the Conference, I recommend that members proceed with the fourth point of the original programme, namely, the translation of the documents into appropriate languages. I also recommend that the Committee add to its programme the matter of naming maritime features that include both national and international waters.

Annex I

PROPOSED GUIDELINES FOR THE STANDARDIZATION OF UNDERSEA AND MARITIME FEATURE NAMES FOR INTERNATIONAL USE

General

(*a*) International concern for naming undersea and maritime features is limited to those features entirely or mainly (more than 50 per cent) outside waters under the jurisdiction of sovereign states;

(*b*) "Undersea feature" is a part of the ocean floor or sea-bed that has measurable relief or is delimited by relief. "Maritime feature" is a

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Richard R. Randall, Convenor, Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features of the United States Board on Geographic Names, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.24.

part of the surface of the ocean or sea that has distinguishable characteristics;

(*c*) Names used for many years may be accepted even though they do not conform to normal principles of nomenclature;

(*d*) Names approved by sovereign States in waters beyond national limits (i.e., international waters) should be accepted by other States if the names have been applied in conformance with internationally accepted principles. Names applied by States within their sovereign limits should be recognized by other States;

(*e*) In the event of a conflict, the States most directly involved should resolve the matter. Where two names have been applied to the same feature, the older name should be accepted. Where a single name has been applied to two different features, the feature named first should retain the name;

(*f*) Names not in the writing system of the country applying the names on maps or other documents should be transliterated according to the system adopted by the national authority applying the names;

(*g*) Sovereign States may utilize their preferred versions of exonyms;

(*h*) Only those undersea features that can be delimited by isobaths should be named.

PRINCIPLES FOR NAMING FEATURES

Specific terms

(*a*) Short and simple terms (or names) are preferable;

(*b*) The first choice of a specific term, where feasible, should be one associated with a geographical feature; e.g., Aleutian Ridge, Aleutian Trench, Peru-Chile Trench, Barrow Canyon;

(*c*) Specific terms for other features can be used to commemorate ships or other vehicles, expeditions or scientific institutes involved in the discovery of the feature. Where a ship name is used, it should be that of the discovering ship, or if that has been previously used for a similar feature, it should be the name of the ship verifying the feature, e.g., San Pablo Seamount, Atlantis II Seamounts;

(*d*) Names of living persons are permissible. Use of this type of name, however, should be limited to the following:

(i) Persons associated with the discovery or verification of the feature;

(ii) Persons involved in the interpretation of data leading to the recognition of the unique character of a feature; and

(iii) Persons who have made significant contributions to the knowledge of the oceans;

(*e*) Groups of like features may be named collectively for specific categories (historical persons, mythical figures, stars, constellations, fish, birds, animals, etc.). Examples are as follows:

Musicians' seamounts	Bach Seamount, Brahms Seamount, Schubert Seamount
Electricians' seamounts	Volta Seamount, Ampere Seamount, Galvani Seamount
Ursa Minor Ridge and Trough Province	Suhail Ridge, Kochab Ridge, Polaris Trough;

(*f*) Descriptive names are acceptable, particularly when they refer to distinguishing characteristics (e.g., Hook Ridge, Horseshoe Seamounts);

(*g*) Names of well-known or large features that are applied to other features should have the same spelling.

(*h*) Specific elements of names should not be translated from the language of the nation providing the accepted name.

Generic terms

(*a*) Generic terms should be selected and defined to reflect physical characteristics of features. Various theories of genesis may also be considered in naming or defining features when genetic information is essential to a comprehension of a feature's character;

(*b*) Generic terms should be in the language of the nation applying the name to a product;

(*c*) It should be recognized that as ocean mapping continues, features will be discovered for which existing terminology is not adequate. New terms required to describe these features should conform to the guidelines cited under point (*a*).

PROCEDURES FOR NAMING FEATURES

(*a*) Sovereign States applying names to unnamed features in international waters should adhere to internationally accepted principles and procedures;

(*b*) The attached form (annex II) is recommended as a model for new proposals;

(*c*) Prior to the naming of a feature, identification of its character, extent and position shall have been established sufficiently for identification. Positions should be given in terms of geographic co-ordinates. It it is necessary to refer to a feature before such full identifiability has been established, it is suggested that the reference be by co-ordinates and generic term with the additions of "(PA)"—"Position Approximate"—after the co-ordinates if the position is not adequately established and "(?)" after the generic term if the nature of the feature is in some doubt;

(*d*) New names should be approved by the appropriate national authorities before being published;

(*e*) If a State has reason to change the name of a feature, information justifying the change should be circulated to other concerned States. If there is opposition to a name change, the involved States should communicate with each other to resolve the question;

(*f*) States actively engaged in naming undersea features should regularly publicize their names decisions;

(*g*) States naming features within their sovereign limits should conform to the principles and procedures stated above.

Annex II

UNDERSEA OR MARITIME FEATURE NAME PROPOSAL

Ocean or sea____ _____ Name proposed _____

Location of midpoint: Lat._____ (N) (S), Long._____ (E) (W);

_____ kilometres in _____ direction from _____

Description: Kind of feature_____

Identifying or categorizing characteristics (size, shape, dimensions, least depth, steepness etc.—use additional co-ordinates for extremities of lineal features)_____

_____

_____

Associated features_____

_____

_____

Chart reference:

Shown and named on chart (map) _____

Shown but not named on chart (map) _____

Not shown but within area covered by_____

Annex II (*continued*)

Reason for choice of name:

If for a person, state how associated with the feature to be named _____

_____

_____

Discovery facts: Date _____; by (individuals or ship) _____

_____

By means of (equipment) _____

Navigation used _____

Estimated positional accuracy in nautical miles _____

Description of survey (track spacing, line crossings, grid network etc.) _____

_____

Nature and repository of other survey activities (dredge samples, cores, magnetics, gravity, photographs etc.) _____

_____

Supporting material: Enclose, if possible, a sketch map of the survey area, profiles of the feature etc. Reference to prior publication, if any

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

SUBMITTED BY _____

Date _____

Address _____

CONCURRED IN BY (if applicable) _____

Address _____

_____

_____

_____

Annex III

PROPOSED UNDERSEA FEATURE TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Apron	A gentle slope with a generally smooth surface on the sea floor, particularly found around groups of islands or *seamounts*.
Bank	An elevation of the sea floor located on a *shelf* and over which the depth of water is relatively shallow but sufficient for safe surface navigation.
Basin	A depression more or less equidimensional in form and of variable extent.
Borderland	A region adjacent to a continent, normally occupied by or bordering a *shelf*, that is highly irregular with depths well in excess of those typical of a *shelf*.
Canyon	A relatively narrow, deep depression with steep sides, the bottom of which has a continuous slope.
Continental rise	A gentle slope with a generally smooth surface, rising toward the foot of the *slope*.
Cordillera	An entire mountain system, including all the subordinate *ranges*, interior *plateaus* and *basins*.
Escarpment	An elongated and comparatively steep slope separating flat or gently sloping areas. (Also called a *scarp*.)
Fan	A relatively smooth feature normally sloping away from the lower termination of a *canyon*.
Fracture zone	An extensive linear zone of unusually irregular topography of the sea floor characterized by more than one kind of feature such as large *seamounts*, steep-sided or asymmetrical *ridges*, *troughs* or *escarpments*.
Gap	A narrow break in a *ridge* or *rise*.
Guyot	Alternate term for a *tablemount*.
Hill	An elevation rising generally less than 200 metres (100 fathoms).
Hole	A small depression of the sea floor.
Knoll	An elevation less than 1,000 metres (or 500 fathoms) and of limited extent across the summit.
Levee	An embankment bordering one or both sides of a *canyon*, *valley* or *seachannel*.
Moat	An annular depression that may not be continuous, located at the base of many *seamounts*, islands and other isolated elevations.
Mountains	A well-delineated subdivision of a large and complex positive feature.
Peak	A prominent individual pointed top on a *ridge* or a complex *seamount*.
Plain	A flat, gently sloping or nearly level region.
Plateau	A comparatively flat-topped elevation, of considerable extent across the summit and usually rising more than 200 metres (or 100 fathoms) on at least one side.
Province	A region identifiable by a group of similar physiographic features, whose characteristics are markedly in contrast with surrounding areas.

Range	A series of associated *ridges* or *seamounts*.
Reef	A consolidated rock hazard to navigation with a least depth of 30 metres (or 15 fathoms) or less.
Ridge	A long, narrow elevation with steep sides.
Rise	A long, broad elevation that rises gently and generally smoothly.
Saddle	A low part, resembling in shape a saddle, in a *ridge* or between contiguous *seamounts*.
Scarp	Alternate term for *escarpment*.
Seachannel	A long, narrow, shallow, U-shaped or V-shaped depression of the sea floor, usually occurring on a gently sloping *plain* or *fan*.
Seamount	An elevation rising 1,000 metres (or 500 fathoms) or more and of limited extent across the summit.
Shelf	A zone adjacent to a continent or an island that extends from the low water line to a depth at which there is usually a marked increase of slope to greater depth.
Shoal	A hazard to navigation with a least depth of 30 metres (or 15 fathoms) or less, composed of unconsolidated material.
Sill	The low part of a *gap* or *saddle* separating *basins*.
Slope	The descending slope seaward from the *shelf* edge to the beginning of a *rise* or to the point where there is a general reduction in slope.
Spur	A subordinate elevation, *ridge* or *rise* projecting outward from a larger feature.
Tablemount	A *seamount* having a comparatively smooth flat top. (Also called *Guyot*.)
Terrace	A bench-like feature bordering an undersea feature.
Trench	A long, narrow, deep depression with relatively steep sides.
Trough	A long depression normally of less relief than a *trench*.
Valley	A relatively shallow, wide depression, the bottom of which usually has a continuous gradient. This term is generally not used for features that have canyon-like characteristics for a significant portion of their extent.

COMPARISON OF THE LIMITS AND NAMES OF OCEANS AND SEAS AS RECOMMENDED BY THE INTERNATIONAL HYDROGRAPHIC ORGANIZATION (IHO) AND USED BY THE FEDERAL REPUBLIC OF GERMANY, THE GERMAN DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC AND THE NETHERLANDS

Report presented by the Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division*

International Hydrographic Organization, Monte Carlo *Special Publication No. 23* *Edition 1953*	*Federal Republic of Germany, Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut, Hamburg* *Chart No. 2806* *Edition 1967*	*German Democratic Republic, Seehydrographischer Dienst, Rostock* *Publication No. 8834* *Edition 1969*	*Netherlands, Dienst der hydrografie (KM), Badhuisweg, 's-Gravenhage* – –
Arctic Ocean	Nordpolarmeer	Arktischer Ozean	Noordelijke IJszee
The North-western Passages	Nordwestpassagen	Same	Noordwestelijke Doorvaart
Beaufort Sea	Beaufortsee	Same	Beaufort Zee
Chuckchi Sea	Tschuktschensee	Same, other limits	Tsjoektsjen Zee
—	Beringstraße, without limits	Same	Bering Straat
—	—	pr. de Longa, without limits	—
East Siberian Sea	Ostsibirische See	Ostsibirische See (Vostočno-Sibirskoje more), other limits	Oostsiberische Zee
—	Laptewstr., without limits	pr. Dmitrija Lapteva, without limits	Laptev Straat
Laptev Sea (or Nordenskjöld Sea)	Laptevsee oder Nordenskjöldsee	Laptevsee (More Laptevych), other limits	Laptev Zee; Nordenskjöld Zee
—	Wilkizkistraße, without limits	pr. Vilkickogo, without limits	Wilkitski Straat
Kara Sea	Karasee	Karasee (Karskoje more)	Kara Zee (Karische Zee)
—	Karastr., without limits	pr. Karskije Vorota, without limits	Karische Poort
—	Jugorstr., without limits	—	Joegor Straat (Straat Waigatsj)
North Atlantic Ocean	Nordatlantischer Ozean	Same	(Noord) Atlantische Oceaan
—	Petschorasee, without limits	Pečorskoje more, without limits	Petsjora Baai
White Sea	Weißes Meer	Weißes Meer (Beloje more)	Witte Zee
—	Matotschkinstr., without limits	pr. Matočkin Šar, without limits	Matotsjkin Straat
Barentsz Sea	Barentssee	Same	Barents Zee
—	Olgastraße, without limits	Olgastretet, without limits	Straat Olga
—	Hinlopenstr., without limits	Same	Straat Hinlopen
—	Europäisches Nordmeer	Same	—
Greenland Sea	Grönlandsee	Same	Groenland Zee
—	Dänemarkstraße, without limits	Same	Denemarken Straat
Norwegian Sea	Norwegische See	Same	Noorse Zee
North Sea	Nordsee	Same	Noordzee
—	Nördl. Nordsee	Same	—
—	Mittlere Nordsee	Same	—
—	Westl. Teil	Same	—
—	Östl. Teil	Same	—
—	Deutsche Bucht, without limits	—	Helgolander Bocht (Duitse Bocht)
—	Südl. Nordsee	Same	—
—	Hoofden, without limits	Same	De Hoofden
—	Str. v. Dover, without limits	Same	Straat Dover, Nauw van Calais
English Channel	Der Kanal	Kanal	Het Kanal

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.101.

International Hydrographic Organization, Monte Carlo *Special Publication No. 23* *Edition 1953*	*Federal Republic of Germany, Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut, Hamburg* *Chart No. 2806* *Edition 1967*	*German Democratic Republic, Seehydrographischer Dienst, Rostock* *Publication No. 8834* *Edition 1969*	*Netherlands, Dienst der hydrografie (KM), Badhuisweg, 's-Gravenhage*
Celtic Sea	Keltische See	—	Keltische Zee
Bristol Channel	Bristolkanal	Same	Kanaal van Bristol
Irish Sea	Irische See	Same	Ierse Zee
Inner Seas of the West Coast of Scotland	Schottische See	Same	—
Skagerrak	Skagerrak	Same	Skagerrak
Kattegat	Kattegat	Same, part of the Ostsee	Kattegat
Baltic Sea	Ostsee	Ostsee, otherwise divided in:	Oostzee
Sound and Belts	Belte u. Sund	Beltsee, Arkonasee and Bornholmsee (westl., östl.)	Sond, Grote Belt, Kleine Belt
—	Südliche Ostsee		—
—	Westl. Teil		—
—	Mittl. Teil		—
—	Nördliche Ostsee		—
Gulf of Riga	Rigaischer Meerbusen	Rigaischer Meerbusen (Rižskij zaliv) other limits	Golf van Riga
Gulf of Finland	Finnischer Meerbusen	Same	Finse Golf
—	Ålandsee, without limits	Ålandsee, with limits	—
—	—	Schärenmeer, with limits	—
Gulf of Bothnia	Bottnischer Meerbusen	Same	Bothnische Golf
—	Bottensee	Same	—
—	Bottenwiek	Same	—
Bay of Biscay	Golf von Biskaya	Golf von Biscaya	Golf van Biscaye (Golf van Gascogne)
Strait of Gibraltar	Str. v. Gibraltar	Same	Straat van Gibraltar
Mediterranean Sea, Western Basin	Westl. Mittelmeer	Same	(West) Middellandse Zee
Alboran Sea	Alboranmeer	Same	Alboran Zee
Balearic (Iberian Sea)	Balearenmeer or Iberisches Meer	Same	Balearen Zee (Iberische Zee)
Ligurian Sea	Ligurisches Meer	Same	Ligurische Zee
Tyrrhenian Sea	Thyrrhenisches Meer	Same	Tyrrheense Zee
Mediterranean Sea, Eastern Basin	Östliches Mittelmeer	Same	(Oost) Middellandse Zee
Adriatic Sea	Adriatisches Meer	Same	Adriatische Zee
Ionian Sea	Ionisches Meer	Same	Ionische Zee
—	Libysches Meer	Same	—
—	Levantisches Meer	Same	—
Aegean Sea	Ägäisches Meer	Same	(A)egeische Zee
Sea of Marmara	Marmara Meer	Marmara Meer (Marmara Denizi)	Zee van Marmara
Black Sea	Schwarzes Meer	Same	Zwarte Zee
Sea of Azow	Asowsches Meer	Same	Zee van Asov
—	Kaspisches Meer	Same	Kaspische Zee
Gulf of Guinea	Golf von Guinea	Same	Golf van Guinee (Bocht van Guinee)
—	Irmingersee, without limits	Same	—
Baffin Bay	Baffinbai	Baffinbucht	Baffins Baai
Lincoln Sea	—	Lincolnsee	Lincoln Zee
Davis Strait	Davisstraße	Same	Straat Davis
Hudson Strait	Hudsonstraße	Same	Hudson Straat
—	Foxkanal, without limits	—	Fox Kanaal
Hudson Bay	Hudsonbai	Hudsonbucht (Hudson Bay)	Hudson Baai
Labrador Sea	Labradorsee	Same	Labrador Zee
Gulf of St. Lawrence	St.-Lorenz-Golf	Same	Sint Laurens Baai (Golf van Sint Lawrence)
Bay of Fundy	Fundybai	Fundybucht	Fundy Baai
—	Sargassosee, without limits	Same	Sargasso Zee
—	Bahamasee, without limits	Same	—
—	Floridastr., without limits	Same	Straat Florida
Gulf of Mexico	Golf von Mexiko	Same	Golf van Mexico
—	Yukatameer, without limits	Yucatanmeer, with limits	—
Caribbean Sea	Karibisches Meer	Same	Caraibische Zee
South Atlantic Ocean	Südatlantischer Ozean	Same	(Zuid) Atlantische Oceaan
Rio de La Plata	Rio-de-la-Plata-Bucht	Rio de la Plata	Rio de la Plata
—	Südpolarmeer, without limits	—	Zuidelijke IJszee
	—	Atlantisches Südpolarmeer, with limits	—
—	Drakestraße, without limits	Same	Straat Drake

International Hydrographic Organization, Monte Carlo *Special Publication No. 23* *Edition 1953*	*Federal Republic of Germany, Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut, Hamburg* *Chart No. 2806* *Edition 1967*	*German Democratic Republic, Seehydrographischer Dienst, Rostock* *Publication No. 8834* *Edition 1969*	*Netherlands, Dienst der hydrografie (KM), Badhuisweg, 's-Gravenhage*
—	Scotiameer (Südantillenmeer), without limits	Scotiameer or Südantillenmeer, with limits	—
—	Weddellmeer (Weddellsee), without limits	Weddellsee, with limits	Weddell Zee
—	—	Indisches Südpolarmeer, with limits	—
—	—	Davissee, without limits	Davis Zee
—	—	Pazifisches Südpolarmeer, with limits	—
—	Rossmeer (Ross-See), without limits	Ross-See, with limits	Ross Zee
—	—	Amundsensee, with limits	Amundsen Zee
—	Bellingshausensee, without limits	Same, with limits	Bellingshausen Zee
Indian Ocean	Indischer Ozean	Same	Indische Oceaan
Gulf of Suez	G. v. Sues	G. v. Suez	Golf van Suez
Gulf of Aqaba	G. v. Akaba	Same	Golf van Akaba
Red Sea	Rotes Meer	Same	Rode Zee
Gulf of Aden	Golf v. Aden	Same	Golf van Aden
Mozambique Channel	Mosambikkanal	Str. v. Mocambique	Straat van Mozambique
Gulf of Iran (Persian Gulf)	Persischer Golf	Same	Perzische Golf
Gulf of Oman	G. v. Oman	Same	Golf van Oman
Arabian Sea	Arabisches Meer	Same	Arabische Zee
Laccadive Sea	Lakkadiven Meer	Same	—
—	Palkstr. without limits	Same	—
Bay of Bengal	Bengalisches Meer (Golf von Bengalen)	Bengalisches Meer	Golf van Bengalen
Andaman or Burma Sea	Andamanensee	Andamanisches Meer	Andamanse Zee
Malacca Strait	Malakkastr.	Str. v. Malakka	Straat Malakka
Great Australian Bight	Große Australische Bucht	Same	Grote Australische Golf (Bocht)
North Pacific Ocean	Nördlicher Pazifischer Ozean (Nördl. Stiller Ozean)	Nordpazifischer Ozean	Noordelijke Stille (Grote) Oceaan
Gulf of California	Golf von Kalifornien	Same	Golf van Californië
The Coastal Waters of Southeast Alaska and British Columbia	—	Küstengewässer von Südostalaska und Westkanada, with limits	—
Gulf of Alaska	Golf von Alaska	Same	Golf van Alaska
Bering Sea	Beringmeer	Same	Bering Zee
Sea of Okhotsk	Ochotskisches Meer	Same	Zee van Ochotsk
Japan Sea	Japanisches Meer	Same	Japanse Zee
Inland Sea	Japanische Inlandsee	Innere Japanische See	Japanse Binnenzee
Yellow Sea	Gelbes Meer	Same	Gele Zee
Eastern China Sea	Ostchinesisches Meer	Same	Oostchinese Zee
Philippine Sea	Philippinenmeer	Same	Philippijnen Zee
South China Sea	Südchinesisches Meer	Same	Zuidchinese Zee
Singapore Strait	Singapurstr.	Straße von Singapore	Straat Singapore
Sulu Sea	Sulusee	Same	Soeloe Zee (Mindoro Zee)
Celebes Sea	Sulawesisee (Celebessee)	Sulawesisee	Celebes Zee
South Pacific Ocean	Südlicher Pazifischer Ozean (Südl. Stiller Ozean)	Südpazifischer Ozean	Zuidelijke Stille (Grote) Oceaan
Java Sea	Javasee	Djawasee (Laut Djawa)	Java Zee
Bali Sea	Balisee	Balisee (Laut Bali)	Bali Zee
Makassar Strait	Makassarstraße	Makassarstraße (Selat Makassar)	Straat Makassar
Flores Sea	Floressee	Floressee (Laut Flores)	Flores Zee
Savu Sea	Sawusee	Sawussee (Laut Sawu)	Sawoe Zee
Gulf of Boni	G. v. Bone	G. v. Bone (Teluk Bone)	Golf van Bone (Boni)
Banda Sea	Bandasee	Bandasee (Laut Banda)	Banda Zee
Molukka Sea	Malukusee (Molukkensee)	Malukusee (Laut Maluku)	Molukse Zee
Gulf of Tomini	G. v. Tomini	G. v. Tomini (Teluk Tomini)	Golf van Tomini (Gorontalo)
Halmahera Sea	Halmaherasee	Halmaherasee (Laut Halmahera)	Zee van Halmahera
Ceram Sea	Seramsee (Ceramsee)	Seramsee (Laut Seram)	Ceram Zee
Timor Sea	Timorsee	Same	Timor Zee
Arafura Sea	Arafurasee	Same	Arafoera Zee (Alfoeren Zee)
—	Golf v. Carpentaria, without limits	Same, with limits	Golf van Carpentaria
—	Torresstr., without limits	Same	Torres Straat
Bismarck Sea	Bismarcksee	Same	Bismarck Zee (Bocht van goeden hoopen)
Solomon Sea	Salomonensee	Same	Solomon Zee

International Hydrographic Organization, Monte Carlo	*Federal Republic of Germany, Deutsches Hydrographisches Institut, Hamburg*	*German Democratic Republic, Seehydrographischer Dienst, Rostock*	*Netherlands, Dienst der hydrografie (KM), Badhuisweg, 's-Gravenhage*
Special Publication No. 23 Edition 1953	*Chart No. 2806 Edition 1967*	*Publication No. 8834 Edition 1969*	
Coral Sea	Korallensee	Same	Karaalzee
—	—	Fidschisee, with limits	—
Tasman Sea	Tasmansee	Same	Tasman Zee
Bass Strait	Bass-Str.	Same	Bass Straat
—	Magellanstr., without limits	Magalhaesstr., without limits	Straat Magellaan

UNDERSEA FEATURE TERMINOLOGY RECOMMENDED FOR USE IN GEBCO, FIFTH EDITION

Report presented by the International Hydrographic Organization (IHO)*

The Joint IHO/IOC Guiding Committee on the General Bathymetric Chart of the Oceans (GEBCO) in 1974 appointed a Sub-Committee on Geographical Names and Nomenclature of Ocean Bottom Features. The purpose of this Sub-Committee is to advise on the names and nomenclature to be used on the GEBCO 1:10,000 chart series.

This Sub-Committee has made an exhaustive study of the many lists of definitions of undersea feature terms presently found in or historically used by National Boards of Geographic Names, international and intergovernmental organizations, and the marine geoscience and hydrographic literature, including widely recognized glossaries of geological terms.

The list that follows comprises terms that are defined as closely as possible to correspond to their usage in the cited references, taken from the literature of ocean science, hydrography and exploration. In developing the definitions, it was recognized that modern investigations at sea have the advantage of using very advanced instrumentation and technology that enables a more precise description of certain features than was previously possible. There has also been an attempt to limit the usage of precise physical dimensions in the definition of features. In preference, words that indicate relative sizes such as extensive, large, limited and small have been used. In addition, the definitions are based almost exclusively on a geomorphological description of the features themselves rather than making use of their navigational connotation.

The Sub-Committee recognizes that as ocean mapping continues, features will be discovered that are not adequately defined in this list and that therefore new terms will have to be added. In the same sense, the Sub-Committee is aware that many named features, such as "cap", "deep" and "swell", have widely accepted historical usage. However, the Sub-Committee has not attempted to define them because the description of these particular features is included among the present definitions.

Le Comité directeur mixte OHI/COI de la Carte générale bathymétrique des océans (GEBCO) a constitué en 1974 un Sous-Comité des noms géographiques et de la nomenclature des formes du relief océanique. Le rôle de ce Sous-Comité est de donner des conseils en ce qui concerne les noms et la nomenclature à utiliser sur la série des cartes au 1:10,000 de la GEBCO.

Le Sous-Comité a effectué une étude exhaustive des nombreuses listes de définitions des termes de la morphologie sous-marine actuellement en usage ou qui ont été utilisés dans le passé par les comités nationaux des noms géographiques, par les organisations internationales et intergouvernementales, dans les ouvrages de géoscience marine et d'hydrographie et dans les glossaires de termes géologiques, largement reconnus.

La liste ci-après comprend des termes qui ont été définis pour correspondre aussi près que possible à leur usage dans les références citées provenant d'ouvrages de science océanique, d'hydrographie et d'exploration. En développant ces définitions, il est apparu que les recherches modernes à la mer ont la possibilité d'utiliser des équipements et des techniques très avancés qui permettent maintenant d'obtenir, pour certaines formes du relief, une description beaucoup plus précise qu'autrefois. On a aussi essayé de limiter l'usage de dimensions physiques précises dans la définition des formes. On a utilisé de préférence des qualificatifs qui indiquent des dimensions relatives, tels que étendu, grand, limité, faible. En outre, les définitions sont basées presque exclusivement sur une description géomorphologique des formes elles-mêmes plutôt que sur leur signification du point de vue de la navigation.

Le Sous-Comité reconnaît que la cartographie océanique est en évolution, qu'on découvrira des formes qui ne sont pas définies d'une façon appropriée dans la présente liste et que, par conséquent, de nouveaux termes devront y être ajoutés. Dans le même ordre d'idées, le Sous-Comité est convaincu que de nombreuses formes telles que *cap*, *deep* et *swell* ont un usage historique largement reconnu. Toutefois, le Sous-Comité ne les a pas définies parce que la description de ces formes particulières est déjà incluse parmi les diverses définitions.

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.100.

Contained in the list of definitions, and marked by an asterisk, are a number of synonymous and descriptive terms commonly used in literature. The terms in italics are defined and suggested for depiction on maps. The Sub-Committee has also noted that many of the terms will appear on maps or charts prefixed by appropriate geographic names.

Attention is drawn to the fact that the examples given do not necessarily appear in the biographic references quoted.

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Abyssal plain

A flat, gently sloping or nearly level region at abyssal depths

e.g.: Biscay Abyssal Plain
Ref.: Heezen, Bruce C., and A. S. Laughton (1963). "Abyssal plains", in M. N. Hill, ed., *The Sea*, vol. 3, pp. 312–364

Apron
* Archipelagic Apron

A gentle slope with a generally smooth surface of the sea floor, particularly found around groups of islands and seamounts

e.g.: Marquesas Archipelagic Apron
Ref.: Menard, H. W. (1956). "Archipelagic aprons", *Bull. Amer. Assoc. Petroleum Geol.*, vol. 40, pp. 2195–2210

Bank

An area of positive relief, over which the depth of water is relatively shallow but normally sufficient for safe surface navigation

e.g.: Georges Bank
Ref.: See *shoal*

Basin

A depression more or less equidimensional in plan and of variable extent

e.g.: Brazil Basin
Ref.: Maury, M. F. (1854). *Bathymetrical Map of the North Atlantic Basin*, with contour lines drawn in at 1,000, 2,000, 3,000 and 4,000 fathoms

This term (in French) appears in the first edition of GEBCO

Canyon
* Submarine Canyon

A relatively narrow, deep depression with steep sides, the bottom of which has a continuous slope

e.g.: Hudson Canyon

La liste de ces définitions contient, marqué d'un astérisque, un certain nombre de termes synonymes et descriptifs d'un usage courant dans les bibliographies. Les termes en italiques sont définis et suggérés pour être utilisés sur les cartes géographiques. Le Sous-Comité a également pris note que ces termes figureront sur les cartes géographiques et marines accompagnés des noms géographiques appropriés.

Il y a lieu d'attirer l'attention sur le fait que les exemples donnés ne figurent pas nécessairement dans les références bibliographiques indiquées.

TERMES ET DEFINITIONS

Plaine
Plaine abyssale

Région de grande profondeur où le fond est sensiblement plat, horizontal ou peu incliné

Glacis
* Glacis péri-insulaire

Déclivité de faible pente généralement unie, que l'on trouve particulièrement autour de groupements d'îles et de monts sous-marins

Banc

Elévation d'une certaine étendue audessus de laquelle la profondeur d'eau est relativement faible, mais ne présente pas de danger pour la navigation courante de surface

Bassin

Dépression de forme générale plus ou moins arrondie et d'étendue variable

Canyon
* Canyon sous-marin

Dépression relativement étroite, profonde et à flancs escarpés, dont le thalweg présente une pente continue

Ref.: Shepard, Francis P., and Robert F. Dill (1966). *Submarine Canyons and other Sea Valleys.* Rand-McNally, Chicago, 381 pp.

Channel
* Deep Sea Channel

A river valley-like, elongated depression in an ocean basin, commonly found in fans or cones

e.g.: Maury Channel
Ref.: Hurley, R. J. (1960), "The geomorphology of abyssal plains in the northeast Pacific Ocean", *Scripps Inst. Ocean. Ref.* 60–7, 105 pp. (unpublished manuscript)

Chenal
* Chenal sous-marin

Dépression allongée dans un bassin océanique, morphologiquement semblable à une vallée terrestre, souvent trouvée sur les cônes

Continental borderland
* Borderland

A region adjacent to a continent, normally occupied by or bordering a shelf, that is highly irregular with depths well in excess of those typical of a shelf

e.g.: Coastal region off California
Ref.: Shepard, F. P., and K. O. Emery (1941). "Submarine topography off the California coast: canyons and tectonic Interpretations", *Geol. Soc. America Spec. Paper* 31, 171 pp.

Bordure continentale

Région adjacente à un continent, constituant ou bordant d'ordinaire une plate-forme continentale, mais offrant un aspect très irrégulier et des profondeurs bien supérieures à celles d'une plate-forme typique

Continental margin

The zone, generally consisting of the shelf, slope and rise, separating the continent from the deep sea bottom

Marge continentale
Précontinent

Zone séparant le continent émergé des grands fonds océaniques, constituée généralement de la plate-forme continentale, de la pente et du glacis

Continental rise

A gentle slope rising from the oceanic depths towards the foot of the continental slope

Ref.: Heezen, Tharp and Ewing (1959). "The floors of the oceans: 1, The North Atlantic", *Geol. Soc. Amer. Spec. Paper* 65, 113 pp.

Glacis continental
Glacis précontinental

Déclivité de faible pente s'élevant des profondeurs océaniques jusqu'au pied de la pente continentale

Continental shelf
Shelf
* Island shelf
* Insular shelf

A zone adjacent to a continent (or around an island) and extending from the low water line to a depth at which there is usually a marked increase of slope towards oceanic depths

e.g.: Scotian Shelf
Ref.: Murray, Sir John, and J. Hjort (1912). *The Depths of the Ocean.* MacMillan, London. Murray uses the term earlier than this, however. See Murray, Sir John (1899). "Present condition of the floor of the ocean; evolution of the continental and oceanic areas", *Rept. of Brit. Assoc. Advancement of Sci.*, 1899, pp. 789–802

Plate-forme continentale
Plate-forme
* Plateau continental
* Plate-forme insulaire

Zone adjacente à un continent (ou entourant une île) et s'étendant du niveau des basses mers jusqu'à la profondeur à laquelle on note habituellement une nette augmentation de la pente vers les grands fonds

Continental slope
* Slope
* Island slope

The slope seaward from the shelf edge to the beginning of a continental rise or to the point where there is a general reduction in slope

Ref: Same as for *continental shelf.*

Pente continentale
* Pente
* Pente insulaire

Déclivité limitée par le rebord de la plate-forme et le sommet du glacis continental, ou la ligne marquant une diminution générale de la pente vers les grands fonds

Abyssal hills

A tract of small elevations on the sea floor

Ref.: Menard, H. W. (1964), *op. cit.*

Collines
* Collines sous-marines

Groupe d'élévations de faible hauteur

Escarpment
* Scarp

An elongated and comparatively steep slope separating flat or gently sloping areas

e.g.: Mendocino Escarpment
Ref.: Menard, Henry W., and Robert S. Dietz (1952). "Mendocino submarine escarpment", *Journ. Geol.*, vol. 60, pp. 266–278

Talus
Escarpement
* Talus sous-marin

Déclivité de forme allongée et relativement abrupte séparant des zones horizontales ou à faible pente

Fan
Cone
* Deep sea fan
* Deep sea cone
* Submarine fan
* Submarine cone

A relatively smooth feature normally sloping away from the lower termination of a canyon or canyon system

e.g.: Ganges Cone, Delgada Fan
Ref.: Ericson, D. B., Maurice Ewing and Bruce C. Heezen (1951). "Deep sea sands and submarine Canyons", *Bull. Geol. Soc. Amer.*, vol. 62, pp. 961–966

Cône
* Cône sous-marin

Elément de forme générale conique, à faible pente, situé généralement au voisinage du débouché inférieur d'un canyon

Fracture zone

An extensive linear zone of irregular topography of the sea floor, characterized by steep-sided or asymmetrical ridges, troughs or escarpments

e.g.: Murray Fracture Zone
Ref.: Menard, H. W. (1964). *Marine Geology of the Pacific.* McGraw-Hill, New York, 271 pp.

Zone de fractures
* Ligne de fractures

Zone linéaire étendue, de morphologie irrégulière, caractérisée par des dorsales, des dépressions ou des talus escarpés ou dissymétriques

Gap
* Abyssal gap

A narrow break in a ridge or rise or separating two abyssal plains

e.g.: Theta Gap
Ref.: Heezen, Tharp and Ewing (1959), *op. cit.*

Passage
* Goulet
* Passe

Brèche étroite dans une dorsale ou un massif, ou séparant deux plaines abyssales

Tablemount
* Guyot or tablemount

A seamount having a comparatively smooth, flat top

Ref.: Hess, H. H. (1946). "Drowned ancient islands of the Pacific Basin", *Amer. Journ. Sci.*, vol. 244, pp. 772–791

Guyot

Mont sous-marin à sommet relativement uni et horizontal

Knoll

A relatively small, isolated elevation of rounded shape

e.g.: Cantabria Knoll
Ref.: Menard, H. W. (1964). *Marine Geology of the Pacific*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 271 pp.

Dôme

Elévation isolée de dimensions relativement faibles et de forme arrondie

Levee

An embankment bordering a canyon, valley or channel

e.g.: Congo Canyon
Ref.: Buffington, Edwin C. (1952). "Submarine 'natural levees' ", *Journ. Geol.*, vol. 60, pp. 473–479

Levée

Talus bordant une vallée, un canyon ou un chenal

Median valley
* Rift
* Rift valley

The axial depression of the mid-oceanic ridge system

Ref.: Heezen, Tharp and Ewing (1959), "The floors of the oceans: 1, The North Atlantic", *Geol. Soc. Amer. Spec. Paper* 65, 113 pp.

Vallée axiale

Dépression occupant la partie axiale d'une dorsale océanique

Moat
* Sea Moat

An annular depression that may not be continuous, located at the base of many seamounts, islands and other isolated elevations

Ref.: Vening Meinesz, F. A. (1948). *Gravity Expeditions at Sea*, vol. 4, Netherlands Geodetic Commission, Delft.

Fossé
Douve

Dépression annulaire, continue ou non, située au pied d'une île, d'un mont sous-marin ou d'une élévation isolée d'un autre type

Peak

A prominent elevation, either pointed or of very limited extent across the summit

e.g.: Confederation Peak

Pic
* *Piton*
* Piton sous-marin
* Pic sous-marin

Elévation de dimensions importantes, à sommet pointu ou de très faible extension

Pingo

A more or less conical mound of fine unconsolidated material, characteristically containing an ice core

Ref.: Shearer, J. M., R. F. MacNab, B. R. Pelletier and T. B. Smith (1971). "Submarine pingos in the Beaufort Sea", *Science*, vol. 174, pp. 816–818.

Pingo

Tertre de forme plus ou moins conique formé de matériaux fins non consolidés et contenant un noyau de glace

Pinnacle

Any high tower or spire-shaped pillar of rock or coral, alone or cresting a summit

Plateau

A flat or nearly flat area of considerable extent, which is relatively shallow, dropping off abruptly on one or more sides

e.g.: Blake Plateau
Ref.: Agassiz, Alexander (1888). "Three cruises of the *Blake*", *Bull. Museum Comp. Zool.*, Harvard University, vols. 14 and 15. (Note, however, that what is now called the "Blake Plateau" was called the "Pourtales Plateau" by Agassiz.)

Province

A region identifiable by a group of similar physiographic features whose characteristics are markedly in contrast with surrounding areas

Ref.: Heezen, Ewing and Tharp (1959), *op. cit.*

Reef

Rocks lying at or near the sea surface

Ref.: Darwin, Charles (1842). *The Structure and Distribution of Coral Reefs*. Smith, Elder and Company, London.

Ridge
(The word "ridge" has several meanings)

(*a*) A long, narrow elevation with steep sides

e.g.: The Wyville Thompson Ridge (Robert, 1975)
Ref.: The term appears on the bathymetrical maps by Sir John Murray which accompany the *Challenger* Report. *Summary of Results, Part I*, published in 1895

(*b*) A long, narrow elevation, often separating ocean basins

e.g.: Walfish Ridge
Ref.: Schott, G. (1941). *Geography of the Atlantic Ocean.*

(*c*) The major oceanic mountain systems of global extent

Rise

(*a*) A broad elevation that rises gently and generally smoothly from the sea floor.

e.g.: Argentine Rise
Ref.: Maury (*op. cit.*) mapped the "Dolphin Rise", which later was found by the *Challenger* expedition to be the Mid-Atlantic Ridge.

Aiguille

Rocher ou bloc de corail effilé, en forme de colonne ou de pointe, isolé ou surmontant un sommet

Plateau

Zone relativement plate et horizontale de grande extension, relativement peu profonde et limitée par une pente abrupte, sur un ou plusieurs côtés

Province
Région
* Province physiographique

Région possédant un ensemble de caractères physiographiques semblables en contraste marqué avec ceux des zones avoisinantes

Récif

Roches affleurant ou situées à très faible profondeur

Dorsale

a) Elévation longue et étroite, à flancs escarpés

b) Elévation longue et étroite séparant souvent deux bassins océaniques

c) Système montagneux complet s'étendant à tout un océan

Massif

Vaste élévation offrant des pentes faibles et des formes généralement unies.

(*b*) A synonym for ridge, definition (*c*)

e.g.: East Pacific Rise
Ref.: Menard, H. W. (1960). "East Pacific Rise", *Science*, vol. 132, pp. 1737–1746

Saddle

A low part, resembling a saddle in shape, in a ridge or between contiguous seamounts

e.g.: Hawke Saddle (Labrador Shelf)

Col

Partie basse en forme de selle entre deux hauteurs d'une dorsale ou entre deux monts sous-marins

Seamount

A large, isolated elevation, characteristically of conical form

Ref.: Murray, H. W. (1941). "Submarine mountains in the Gulf of Alaska", *Bull. Geol. Soc. Amer.*, vol. 52, pp. 333–362.
Sir John Murray (*op. cit.*) makes reference to "numerous volcanic cones" on the sea floor

Mont
* Mont sous-marin

Elévation isolée de grandes dimensions, de forme générale conique

Seamount chain

Several seamounts in a line

e.g.: Kelvin Seamounts, Emperor Seamounts
Ref.: Northrop, John, and Robert A. Frosch (1954). "Seamounts in the North American Basin", *Deep Sea Research*, vol. 1, pp. 252–257.
Dietz, R. S. (1954). "Marine geology of the northwestern Pacific: Description of the Japanese bathymetric chart 6901", *Bull. Geol. Soc. Amer.*, vol. 65, pp. 1199–1224

Chaîne de monts
Chaînon de monts

Série de monts sous-marins alignés

Shelf edge or *Shelf break*

A narrow zone at the outer margin of a shelf, along which there is a marked increase of slope

Ref.: Murray and Hjort, *op. cit.*

Rebord
* Rebord de la plate-forme

Ligne le long de laquelle se marque une nette augmentation de la pente à la limite extérieure d'une plate-forme

Shoal

An offshore hazard to surface navigation composed of unconsolidated material

e.g.: Georges Shoal
Ref.: ". . . that but this blow might be the be-all and the end-all here,
But here, upon this bank and shoal of time,
We'd jump the life to come."
Shakespeare, W. (1608).
Macbeth, I, vii, 4–7.

Basse
Haut-fond

Accident du fond constitué de matériau non consolidé représentant un danger pour la navigation de surface

Sill

The saddle of any submarine morphological feature that separates one basin from another

Seuil

Partie la plus basse d'une élévation de type quelconque séparant deux bassins océaniques

Terrace or *Bench*
* Deep sea terrace

A relatively flat horizontal or gently inclined surface, sometimes long and narrow, which is bounded by a steeper ascending slope on one side and by a steeper descending slope on the opposite side

e.g.: Meriadzek Terrace
Ref.: Day, Alan A. (1959). "The continental margin between Brittany and Ireland", *Deep Sea Research*, vol. 5, pp. 249–265

Terrasse

Zone relativement plate et horizontale ou faiblement inclinée, de forme quelquefois longue et étroite, bordée de chaque côté par des déclivités plus marquées, respectivement oscendante et descendante

Trench

A long, narrow, characteristically very deep and asymmetrical depression of the sea floor, with relatively steep sides

e.g.: Marianas Trench, Tonga Trench
Ref.: Fisher, R. L., and R. Revelle (1955). "Trenches of the Pacific", *Scientific American*, vol. 193, pp. 36–41.
Fisher, R. L. and H. H. Hess (1963). "Trenches", in M. N. Hill, ed., *The Sea*, vol. 3, pp. 411–436

Fosse

Dépression longue, étroite, très profonde, dissymétrique, à flancs relativement escarpés

Trough

A long depression of the sea floor, characteristically steep-sided and normally shallower than a trench

e.g.: Rockall Trough

Dépression
Cuvette

Dépression de forme allongée, à flancs escarpés, généralement moins profonde qu'une fosse

Valley
* Submarine valley

A relatively shallow, wide depression, the bottom of which usually has a continuous gradient. This term is generally not used for features that have canyon-like characteristics for a significant portion of their extent

e.g.: Natal Valley
Ref.: Shepard, Francis P., and Robert F. Dill (1966). *Submarine Canyons and other Sea Valleys*. Rand-McNally, Chicago, 381 pp.

Vallée

Dépression relativement large et peu profonde, dont le thalweg présente habituellement une pente continue. Ce terme n'est généralement pas utilisé pour des éléments ayant les caractéristiques d'un canyon sur une longueur importante de leur parcours

AGENDA ITEM 15 – POINT 15 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR – TEMA 15 DEL PROGRAMA

SISTEMAS DE ESCRITURA EN IDIOMAS AGRAFOS EN GUATEMALA

Informe presentado por Guatemala*

Summary

When the Spaniards first set foot in Guatemala in the year 1524, they came across a number of Indian languages, of which many are no longer in existence.

On the other hand, a great number of Spanish words have been incorporated, voluntarily or otherwise, into the 20 major languages now being spoken by Indians in Guatemala. It has been no easy task to standardize the spelling of some of these languages, especially since they have never been written down and since they show certain singular phonetic characteristics that have evolved as a result of the forces of social and historical change.

In order to be able to grasp more fully the linguistic riches of the languages concerned, and in order to be able to use the aboriginal names in published maps, strenuous attempts to find the correct answer to the problem were made at the request of the author, who participated in all the meetings held over a period of nearly a year with the linguists and technicians of the Instituto Indigenista Nacional, the Instituto Lingüistico de Verano and other organizations operating in the country.

It proved possible to invent some 20 official alphabets. Nevertheless, the work done so far must be considered purely experimental in nature, several consecutive models of graphic representation of our heterogeneous idiomatic system having been tried out.

It must also be stressed that the solutions arrived at are not to be considered definitive. In other words, they are valid only up to the date of adoption, thus leaving the way open for the introduction of changes and amendments in the future. It must also be stated that the object of the exercise is to standardize spelling and to provide teaching material for rural areas in the form of orthographic symbols that will make it possible to learn to read and write in the various native languages as they are spoken at present and, at the same time, to facilitate their subsequent adoption in the official language of the country, which is Spanish. What this means is that the linguistics involved are applied exclusively to a specific task, without any pretence at providing symbols to express subtleties of enunciation that are of greater concern to the strictly scientific investigation of these unwritten languages.

With the exception of Carib, all the vernacular languages are of Mayan origin. In other words, 48 graphic symbols are used in all, even if none of the respective languages uses all those included in the general list, the majority of which represent similar sounds. In each of the alphabets the orthographic symbols that have been used are indicated, as are the sounds that are exclusive to each language, without, however, attempting to define all the phonetic and dialectical variants.

For a number of reasons, such as printing technicalities (as will be seen in the appendix to the Geographic Dictionary of Guatemala) certain variants of the Spanish sounds a, e, i, on, n and x, which are typed with a diaeresis, will be printed in italics.

The present document is an abstract and not the complete text of the relevant working paper, which has been submitted in Spanish only and should be consulted in that language. The following must be borne in mind.

It must again be stressed with the exception of Arawak or Central American Carib, the minority languages have their common origin in Mayan and are unwritten. This means that they could be validly defined as being used by any number of people and as differing from recognized national and/or ethnic "languages".

In addition, and precisely because these are unwritten languages, certain problems arise regarding geographical material. It was difficult on many occasions to know how geographical names should be written within the areas they represent, or what orthography should be used.

The problem becomes more complex when taking various practical and cultural considerations into account. Certain conventional signs have been difficult to reproduce. Moreover, certain minority groups have sometimes been very jealous of their identities, resisting any attempt to apply a more universal notation to the geographic names within their area. The utility of published material for the linguistic majority, as well as for foreigners, should also be considered.

It will be helpful to note the three main methods used by linguists to transcribe speech:

(*a*) First there is the purely phonetic transcription, in which all sounds, or as many as possible, are annotated. Relative tone, relative accent, respiration, closure and so forth, are included;

(*b*) In the second method, which is known as phonemic transcription, the sounds of speech known as allophones (as well as allotones and characteristics of accent) are not shown graphically but are combined in global unities known as phonemes. This would appear at first glance to be considerably superior to the phonetic transcription

* El texto original de este informe, preparado por el Profesor Francis Gall, Guatemala, ha sido publicado como documento E/CONF.69/L.8.

and, in fact, it is so in many aspects. Two or more sounds, which function as one, are combined into one single symbol; the incontrastably characteristic features of tone and accent are omitted and separation of the words is observed;

(*c*) The third method has a greater pragmatic value, as it is used for the publication of literature in a given language. This is designated as practical orthography. In the development of this system, certain factors such as symbols used in the national language, publication facility, teaching facility and so forth, are taken into consideration.

It is evident that a solution is near at hand. However, one or two problems remain to be solved. First, it may be difficult, impossible or very expensive to obtain linotype settings for special and/or modified symbols. It has also to be borne in mind that, even if a practical orthography of a minority language can adjust itself, up to a certain limit, to the alphabet pertaining to the national language, it is essential for all the phonemes of the minority language to be represented, in order to show its phonemic contrasts. This results in characters that have no significance for those who speak the national language.

Therefore, even if the practical orthographies lend themselves extremely well to the publication of literature in the minority languages, it is obvious that, taking into consideration that persons who speak other languages will be using the geographical material that will be published, it will be necessary to make one additional adjustment.

The final step will produce what could be termed a "standardized" or "official" alphabet—one, in other words, that has official sanction and is limited in all its forms to the national official language.

It is contended that the use of such standardized alphabets is the proper method for publishing geographical material where minority languages still prevail. Among other reasons, the following can be adduced:

(*a*) There is no need for special linotype settings, or for typewriters with special signs and/or symbols;

(*b*) Even if the geographical names do not appear exactly as the natives pronounce them, the latter will nevertheless understand the references to place names within their region; thus

(*c*) The geographical documents employing standardized alphabets will be more useful for those using the national official language.

In many instances, this practice would merely legalize a *de facto* situation and therefore would not represent any change. Rather, it would be in accordance with resolution 16 of the first United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, which refers to the annotation of geographic names in unwritten languages.[1]

On the other hand, certain adverse effects are to be expected from the use of standardized alphabets. The following can be anticipated:

(*a*) When contrasting characteristics of minority languages disappear, ambiguities are to be expected. This is a natural result of standardization. However, despite the apparent difficulties, the ambiguities tend to diminish when the elements are seen in context;

(*b*) The standardized alphabet will not conform to the practical orthography used in the literature of the minority languages, and some negative reactions from its users can be expected; these reactions can be minimized by explaining to those using minority languages that the alphabet applies only to geographical names, not to the language itself, and that its use is required in view of international demands and/or requirements;

(*c*) Certain non-linguistic adjustments should always be carried out;

(*d*) The geographical names with standardized alphabets appearing in maps, dictionaries and so on will not, by their very nature, carry information as to how they should appear in phonemic or practical orthographies. The standardization procedure is irreversible. This will put certain obstacles in the way of a scientist interested in geographical names for linguistic or etymological purposes. However, a partial solution to this problem may be the publication of explanatory material, as has been done already in Guatemala; this is considered to be a useful tool in the hands of the scientist who may work in areas where minority languages are spoken. Not only will it enable him to write the language using either practical orthography or a standardized alphabet, but it will also provide him with a valuable key for the correct pronunciation of its phonemes.

On the basis of the above-mentioned facts, the author has been working actively with the Instituto Indigenista Nacional and the Instituto Lingüístico de Verano in the preparation of alphabets that will comprise the phonemic, phonetic and standardized versions. The work is considered very arduous but, with the good will shown, satisfactory progress has been achieved, bearing in mind above all else that the standardized or official alphabets will be incorporated into published geographical documents.

Résumé

Lorsque les Espagnols débarquèrent au Guatemala en 1524, ils y découvrirent un certain nombre de langues indiennes, dont beaucoup ont aujourd'hui disparu.

Par ailleurs, un grand nombre de mots espagnols ont été incorporés, volontairement ou non, dans les 20 principales langues parlées actuellement par les Indiens au Guatemala. Il n'a pas été facile de normaliser l'orthographe de certaines de ces langues, principalement parce qu'elles n'avaient jamais été écrites et qu'elles présentent des caractéristiques phonétiques particulières qui se sont développées sous l'effet des forces de l'évolution sociale et historique.

Afin de mieux pouvoir saisir la richesse linguistique des langues en question et afin de pouvoir utiliser les noms

[1] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.68.I.9), chap. III.

indigènes dans les cartes publiées, des efforts considérables en vue de trouver la réponse correcte à ce problème ont été entrepris à la demande de l'auteur, qui a participé à toutes les réunions qui ont eu lieu pendant une année avec les linguistes et les techniciens de l'Instituto Indigenista Nacional, de l'Instituto Lingüístico de Verano et divers organismes exerçant des activités dans le pays.

Il a finalement été possible d'inventer une vingtaine d'alphabets officiels. Cependant, les travaux accomplis jusqu'à présent doivent être considérés comme étant de nature purement expérimentale, car on a utilisé successivement plusieurs modèles de représentation graphique de notre système idiomatique hétérogène.

Il convient également de souligner que les solutions trouvées ne doivent pas être considérées comme définitives. En d'autres termes, elles ne sont valables que jusqu'au moment de leur adoption, ce qui laisse la voie ouverte à des modifications et des corrections ultérieures. De plus, cette opération a pour objet de normaliser l'orthographe et d'élaborer des instruments d'enseignement pour les zones rurales, sous la forme de symboles orthographiques, qui permettront d'apprendre à lire et à écrire dans les différentes langues indigènes telles qu'elles sont parlées actuellement et en même temps de faciliter leur adoption ultérieure dans la langue officielle du pays, c'est-à-dire l'espagnol. Cela signifie donc que la linguistique utilisée est appliquée uniquement dans un but spécifique, sans que l'on cherche à élaborer des symboles pour exprimer des subtilités d'expression qui intéressent davantage l'étude strictement scientifique de ces langues non écrites.

A l'exception du caraïbe, toutes les langues vernaculaires sont d'origine maya. On dispose au total de 48 symboles graphiques, mais aucune des différentes langues ne les utilise tous, la plupart de ces symboles représentant des sons voisins. Dans chacun des alphabets, on indique les symboles orthographiques utilisés ainsi que les sons qui sont particuliers à chaque langue, sans toutefois essayer de définir toutes les variantes phonétiques et dialectales.

Pour diverses raisons, dont les problèmes techniques d'impression, comme il est indiqué dans l'appendice du Dictionnaire géographique du Guatemala, certaines variantes des sons espagnols a, e, i, on, n, et x, qui sont dactylographiées avec un tréma, seront imprimées en italique.

Le présent rapport est un résumé, et non le texte complet, du document de travail sur la question, qui a été présenté en espagnol uniquement et devra être consulté dans cette langue. Quelques points méritent cependant d'être notés ici.

Il convient de souligner à nouveau que, à l'exception de l'arawak ou caraïbe d'Amérique centrale, les langues des minorités ont pour origine commune le maya et ne sont pas écrites. Cela signifie qu'on pourrait les définir correctement comme des langues utilisées par une certaine population et différentes des langues reconnues comme nationales ou ethniques.

En outre, et précisément parce que ces langues ne sont pas écrites, des problèmes se posent en ce qui concerne les données géographiques. Dans de nombreux cas, il a été difficile de déterminer comment les noms géographiques devaient être écrits dans les régions qu'ils désignent ou quelle orthographe devait être utilisée.

Le problème se complique lorsque l'on tient compte de différentes considérations pratiques et culturelles. Certains signes conventionnels ont été difficiles à reproduire. En outre, des groupes minoritaires se sont parfois montrés très jaloux de leur identité, refusant toute tentative d'utiliser une notation plus universelle des noms géographiques de leur région. Il faut également tenir compte de l'utilité des données publiées pour la majorité linguistique ainsi que pour les étrangers.

Trois méthodes principales sont utilisées par les linguistes pour transcrire les langues parlées:

a) Il y a d'abord la transcription purement phonémique, où tous les sons, du moins le plus grand nombre possible, sont transcrits. L'intonation, l'accent tonique, la respiration, le degré de fermeture, etc., sont également indiqués;

b) Dans la deuxième méthode, appelée transcription phonétique, les sons appelés allophones (ainsi que les variantes toniques et les caractéristiques de l'accentuation) ne sont pas représentés graphiquement, mais combinés dans des unités globales appelées phonèmes. A première vue, cette méthode semblerait nettement supérieure à la transcription phonétique, et en fait, elle l'est sous de nombreux aspects. Deux ou plusieurs sons qui sont prononcés ensemble sont représentés par un seul symbole; les caractéristiques peu marquées d'intonation et d'accent sont omises et la séparation des mots est respectée;

c) La troisième méthode a une plus grande utilité pratique puisqu'elle est utilisée pour la publication des textes dans une langue donnée. C'est ce qu'on appelle l'orthographe pratique. En mettant au point un tel système, on tient compte de certains facteurs, tels que les symboles utilisés dans la langue nationale, les moyens de publication et d'enseignement, etc.

Il est évident qu'une solution est en vue. Toutefois, il reste quelques problèmes à résoudre. En premier lieu, il peut être difficile, impossible ou très coûteux d'obtenir des caractères de linotype pour des symboles particuliers ou modifiés. Il faut également tenir compte du fait que, même si l'orthographe pratique d'une langue minoritaire peut s'adapter, jusqu'à un certain point, à l'alphabet utilisé par la langue nationale, il est essentiel que tous les phonèmes de la langue minoritaire soient représentés afin de reproduire les contrastes phonémiques. Cela nécessite des caractères qui n'ont aucune signification pour ceux qui parlent la langue nationale.

Par conséquent, même si les orthographes pratiques se prêtent extrêmement bien à la publication de textes dans les langues minoritaires, il est évident que, si l'on tient compte du fait que des personnes qui parlent d'autres langues utiliseront les données géographiques publiées, il faudra procéder à une adaptation supplémentaire.

Cette dernière phase entraînera l'utilisation d'un alphabet que l'on pourrait appeler "normalisé" ou "of-

ficiel", c'est-à-dire un alphabet reconnu officiellement, dont toutes les formes sont limitées à la langue nationale officielle.

On affirme que l'utilisation de ces alphabets normalisés est la méthode qui convient le mieux pour la publication des documents géographiques lorsque des langues minoritaires sont encore prédominantes. On peut notamment invoquer les raisons suivantes:

a) Il n'est pas nécessaire de disposer de caractères de linotype spéciaux ni d'avoir des machines à écrire avec des signes ou des symboles particuliers;

b) Même si les noms géographiques ne sont pas reproduits exactement tels que les indigènes les prononcent, ceux-ci comprendront néanmoins de quels toponymes de leur région il s'agit;

c) Les documents géographiques dans lesquels ces alphabets normalisés sont employés auront une utilité plus grande pour ceux qui utilisent la langue nationale officielle.

Dans de nombreux cas, cette pratique ne ferait que légaliser une situation de fait, et ne constituerait donc pas un changement. D'ailleurs, son application serait conforme à la résolution 16 de la première Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques, qui concerne la transcription des noms géographiques empruntés à des langues non écrites[2].

Par ailleurs, l'utilisation des alphabets normalisés présente certains inconvénients. On peut prévoir les suivants:

a) Lorsque certains contrastes sont ôtés aux langues minoritaires, des ambiguïtés peuvent se produire. Il s'agit d'une conséquence naturelle de la normalisation, mais, en dépit des difficultés apparentes, les ambiguïtés tendent à diminuer lorsque les éléments sont placés dans leur contexte;

b) L'alphabet normalisé ne sera pas conforme à l'orthographe pratique utilisée dans les textes en langues minoritaires, et des usagers auront probablement des réactions négatives. Ces réactions peuvent être atténuées en expliquant à ceux qui utilisent les langues minoritaires que l'alphabet normalisé ne s'applique qu'aux noms géographiques et non à la langue elle-même et que son utilisation est nécessaire pour les besoins internationaux;

c) Il faut toujours procéder à certains ajustements non linguistiques;

d) Les noms géographiques en alphabet normalisé indiqués sur les cartes, dictionnaires, etc. ne donneront, de par leur nature même, aucune information quant à la manière dont ils seraient transcrits en orthographe phonémique ou pratique. La procédure de normalisation est irréversible. Cela posera certains problèmes au scientifique qui s'intéresse aux noms géographiques à des fins linguistiques ou étymologiques. Toutefois, on peut lever partiellement cette difficulté en publiant des notes explicatives, comme on l'a déjà fait au Guatemala; cela constitue un instrument utile pour le chercheur qui travaille dans des régions où l'on parle des langues minoritaires. Cela lui permettra non seulement d'écrire la langue en utilisant soit une orthographe pratique, soit un alphabet normalisé, mais aussi de disposer d'un outil précieux pour la prononciation correcte des phonèmes de cette langue.

En se fondant sur les faits susmentionnés, l'auteur a collaboré activement avec l'Instituto Indigenista Nacional et l'Instituto Lingüístico de Verano pour élaborer des alphabets qui comportent des versions phénomique, phonétique et normalisée. Cette tâche est très ardue mais, grâce à la bonne volonté des intéressés, des progrès satisfaisants ont été réalisés en tenant compte, avant toute chose, du fait que les alphabets normalisés ou officiels seraient utilisés dans les documents géographiques publiés.

*

* *

A raíz de haber llegado los españoles a Guatemala en el año de 1524, encontraron regular número de idiomas indígenas, muchos de los cuales ya no existen.

Por el otro lado, a los veinte principales idiomas indígenas actuales en el país, en el transcurso de los siglos se ha incorporado, adaptándolas de manera voluntaria o no, gran número de palabras de origen español.

La normalización ortográfica de unos veinte idiomas principales que en la actualidad son los que se hablan en Guatemala no ha sido empresa fácil, máxime si se considera que dichas lenguas son ágrafas y, a la vez, contienen singulares características fonéticas dentro del proceso de los cambios resultantes de la dinámica social e histórica.

Debe hacerse hincapié en el hecho de que con el objeto de penetrar mejor en la riqueza lingüística y que los nombres de origen aborigen se puedan utilizar en los mapas que se publican, a solicitud del autor, quien siempre estuvo presente y tomó parte en las sesiones de trabajo durante casi todo un año con los lingüistas y técnicos del Instituto Indigenista Nacional, Instituto Lingüístico de Verano y otras instituciones que funcionan en el país, se trató de encontrar una solución justa al problema.

Es por ello que si bien se logró elaborar una veintena de alfabetos oficializados, por su propia índole el trabajo en realidad debe considerarse en forma absolutamente experimental, habiéndose ensayado diversos y sucesivos modelos de representación gráfica de nuestro heterogéneo conjunto idiomático.

Es menester recalcar que las soluciones a que se llegaron no tienen carácter definitivo. Es decir, que son válidas a la fecha de su adopción, con lo cual se ha dejado la posibilidad de introducir en el porvenir posibles cambios y correcciones. También es menester indicar que, por su propia índole, se trata de lingüística para fines de normalización y a la vez proveer a la docencia practicada en el ámbito rural, de símbolos ortográficos que permitan

[2] *Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques*, vol. I, *Rapport de la Conférence* (Publication des Nations Unies, numéro de vente F.68.I.9), chap. III.

el aprendizaje en las diversas lenguas maternas como hoy se hablan, de la lectura y escritura que posteriormente facilite su adopción al español. Ello significa que en sí se trata exclusivamente de lingüística aplicada a una labor específica, sin pretender simbolizar sutilezas de enunciación que interesan más a la investigación rigurosamente científica de los citados idiomas ágrafos.

Es menester mencionar de manera especial lo siguiente:

Con excepción del caribe, todos los idiomas vernáculos son de origen maya. En otras palabras, los signos gráficos empleados, son en total de 48 básicos, aunque ninguno de los idiomas utiliza todos los que están incluidos en la lista general, y representan sonidos similares en la mayoría de los idiomas. En cada uno de los alfabetos se indica cuáles son los signos ortográficos utilizados, así como se explica cuáles son los sonidos exclusivos de cada idioma, pero sin tratar de definir todas las variantes fonéticas y dialectales.

También, por varias razones prácticas, entre ellas de impresión, como por ejemplo sucederá en forma de apéndice con el *Diccionario Gèográfico de Guatemala*, ciertas variantes de los sonidos españoles a, e, i, o, n, x, se escriben con diéresis en máquina de escribir y en linotipo podrán aparecer con bastardilla.

Los signos gráficos

Lista general de los signos gráficos

a, ä, *a*, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', cy, cy', e, ë, *e*, h, i, ï, *i*, j, k, k', l, m, n, ñ, o, ö, *o*, p, p', r, s, t, t', tx, tx', tz, tz', u, ü, *u*, w, x, ẍ, y, ' (saltillo), ´ (tilde).

Explicación general de los signos gráficos

Vocales

a, e, i, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español en palabras como palo, pero, pila, poco, puro. Se usan agrupaciones del mismo símbolo como: aa, ee, ii, oo, uu, en algunos idiomas, para representar la prolongación fonémica de la vocal. En otros idiomas, estas mismas agrupaciones pueden representar dos sílabas como en la palabra "coordinador" del español o "queetz'enic" (juegan) en algunas variantes dialectales del quiché.

a, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, (subrayadas) representan formas prolongadas de los correspondientes sonidos en español, como "cu*i*nk (hombre) del kekchí; "m*i*x" (algodón) del pocomchí.

ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, representan sonidos intermedios o cortos.

ä, representa un sonido pronunciado en la parte central de la cavidad bucal, con la lengua a media altura, como en *but* (pero) del inglés; "xäk" (terrón, talpetate) del cakchiquel y aguacateco.

ë, representa un sonido pronunciado en la parte anterior de la cavidad bucal, con la lengua a media altura y relajada, como en las palabras: "tenso" del español y "ëc'" (pollo) del cakchiquel.

ï, representa un sonido pronunciado en la parte anterior de la cavidad bucal, con la lengua alta y relajada. Se produce disponiendo los órganos vocales para pronunciar la "e" española y se emite "i", como en *it* (lo, la, le) del inglés; y "sïch'" (grito) del aguacateco.

ö, representa un sonido pronunciado en la parte posterior de la cavidad bucal con la lengua baja. Se pronuncia con los labios redondeados, disponiendo los órganos vocales para pronunciar la "a" española y emitiendo "o", como en *thought* (pensado, pensamiento) del inglés; "öm" (araña) del cakchiquel.

ü, representa un sonido pronunciado en la parte posterior de la cavidad bucal con la lengua alta y relajada. Se pronuncia con los labios redondeados, disponiendo los órganos vocales para pronunciar la "o" español y emitiendo "u", como en *foot* (pie) del inglés; "ük" (falda) del cakchiquel. En los idiomas maya mopán e itzá la "ü" representa un sonido distinto que se pronuncia con la lengua alta y relajada en la parte central de la cavidad bucal y con los labios no redondeados, como en "chüc" (rojo) del maya mopán; "cüy" (pescado) del maya itzá.

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, r (sólo en posición medial de la palabra), s, t, y, representan sonidos pronunciados con los órganos vocales en las mismas posiciones que para la pronunciación de palabras españolas como caja, queso, chicho, jota, lado, mano, nada, palo, pero, saco, todo, yerno.

Oclusivas y africadas (no glotalizadas)

Las oclusivas c/qu, cy, k, p, t, y las africadas ch, tx, tz, por lo general son espiradas al final de la sílaba y especialmente en posición final de la oración o antes de una pausa. En algunos idiomas, estos mismos sonidos pueden ser levemente espirados en posición inicial de la sílaba.

cy, representa en las lenguas mam y aguacateco un sonido oclusivo paladial pronunciado más hacia afuera que en el caso de la c/qu. Por ejemplo, en las palabras "ẍicy" (conejo) del mam y "xicy" (joven) del aguacateco.

qui, q'ui, antes de una vocal puede representar un sonido oclusivo paladial, similar al de "cy", como en "quiej" (caballo) del cakchiquel; "q'uiäk" (pulga) del quiché.

k, representa un sonido oclusivo velar posterior pronunciado más hacia adentro en la cavidad bucal que la "c/qu". Ejemplo: "sak" (blanco) del kekchí, cakchiquel, quiché y mam.

tx, representa un sonido africado paladial y retroflejo que se produce disponiendo los órganos vocales como para pronunciar "r" y emitiendo el sonido de la "ch". Ejemplo: "txam" (nariz) del jacalteco y kanjobal.

tz, representa un sonido africado alveolar que es igual al sonido de la "ts", pronunciado como una sola consonante, como en "utz" (bueno) del quiché.

Oclusivas y africadas glotalizadas

b, c'/q'u, ch', cy', k', p', t', tx', tz', representan sonidos pronunciados con los órganos vocales en las mismas

posiciones como b, c/qu, ch, cy, k, p, t, tx, tz, pero, cerrando las cuerdas vocales durante la emisión del sonido. En la mayoría de los idiomas mayances, al expeler el aire de la garganta con las cuerdas vocales cerradas, se produce un sonido implosivo para "b" y "k'", y un sonido explosivo para las demás consonantes.

Las oclusivas glotalizadas b, c'/q'u, cy' k', p', t', ' (saltillo) y las africadas glotalizadas ch', tx', tz', al final de la sílaba, generalmente modifican la vocal que le sigue con un efecto de pronunciación producido por una ligera tensión de las cuerdas vocales (laringealización). Al principio de la sílaba, este mismo efecto de pronunciación es menos audible.

b, en posición inicial de la sílaba, casi siempre indica un sonido implosivo y sonoro, o como el de una "p'" sorda. Las cuerdas vocales están casi cerradas cuando comienza el sonido, o un poco antes (preglotalización). En posición final de la sílaba puede indicar un sonido sordo explosivo o implosivo, como de "p'", o pronunciada como "p'", pero con retardo en abrir los labios.

t', se encuentra en todos los idiomas mayances que figuran en esta introducción, pero con poca frecuencia, con excepción del tzutujil donde es sustituido por la "d".

El ' (saltillo) representa un sonido oclusivo glotal sordo. Se produce por medio de un cerrar y abrir de las cuerdas vocales (semejante al cerrar y abrir de los labios en la pronunciación de la "p" del español). Se le encuentra en todos los idiomas mayances. Ocurre en posición inicial de cada palabra que no principie con otra consonante, por lo cual no se escribe en esa posición, con excepción del idioma chuj donde, en algunas palabras, aparece este sonido y se hace necesaria su escritura, en oposición a otras, donde su sonido desaparece totalmente. Al final de la palabra se pronuncia en cualquiera de las siguientes maneras: *a*) con una suave espiración; *b*) agregándole una vocal corta de la misma calidad que tiene la que le precede, o una vocal neutra; y *c*) con un abrir retardado de las cuerdas vocales.

Otras consonantes

h, representa un sonido espirante parecido a la "j" española, pero pronunciada con leve fricción en la laringe, como en *hat* (sombrero) en inglés; "bahil" (esposo) en pocomchí.

ñ, representa un sonido nasal y velar que se obtiene colocando los órganos vocales para pronunciar cęqu, pero emitiendo el sonido de la "n" española, como en *sing* (cantar) en inglés; "pan" en español, "ñolob" (huevo) en chuj.

r, en posición inicial de la palabra, puede representar un sonido fricativo, retroflejo, sordo o levemente sonoro; o bien un sonido vibrante similar al de la "r" española. En posición final de la sílaba, puede representar un sonido levemente fricativo y sordo o el sonido vibrante de la "r" del español.

w, representa el sonido de la "w" inglesa o parecida al de "hu" o "gü" del español, como en la pronunciación guatemalteca de huipil o güipil, güisquil. En posición final de la sílaba, el sonido a veces se prolonga. Ejemplos: "tew" (aire) en achí de Cubulco; "winak" (gente) en varios de los otros idiomas.

En Patzún, Chimaltenango y en los pueblos ixiles del Quiché, han cambiado la pronunciación de la "w" por la de la fricativa "v" o la "f" española.

x, representa dos sonidos: el primero, igual a la "sh" inglesa o a la "ch" francesa, usado en todos los idiomas mayances. Es fricativo, paladial, sordo y no retroflejo, como en la pronunciación guatemalteca de xeca, xara y nixtamal; en "xax" (delgado) del quiché y "xic" (oreja) del kekchí. El segundo es también fricativo, paladial y sordo, pero sí es retroflejo. Para producirlo, se disponen los órganos vocales como para pronunciar la "r" y se emite el sonido de "sh" inglesa. Ejemplo: "xak" (piedra) en mam; xaj (hoja) en jacalteco.

ẍ, representa un sonido fricativo paladial y sordo, no retroflejo, igual al primer sonido descrito de la "x". Ejemplo: "i'ẍ" (elote) del mam; "aẍuẍ" (ajo) del kanjobal. En los idiomas que tienen los dos sonidos (x- ẍ) como el mam, jacalteco, kanjobal, ixil y aguacateco, se representa el primero (el no retroflejo), con "ẍ" y el segundo (el retroflejo), que ocurre con más frecuencia, con "x", como se indica en los alfabetos correspondientes a esos idiomas.

y, en posición inicial de la sílaba, generalmente representa un sonido similar al que tiene en español. En posición final de la sílaba, el sonido se prolonga un poco más. Ejemplo: "yol" (palabra) en mam; "c'oy" (mono) en uspanteco.

(tilde) por lo general representa una sílaba pronunciada con más intensidad o sonoridad y con tono más alto que el de las otras sílabas. A veces también puede representar una pequeña prolongación de la vocal.

Problemas que atañen al material geográfico

Es menester recalcar el hecho sabido de que, por ser ágrafos, los idiomas minoritarios—que con excepción del arawac o araguaco (caribe centroamericano) tienen como tronco común las lenguas mayances—podría ser válida la definición de que se utilizan por cualquier número de gente y son distintos a los reconocidos como idiomas nacionales o étnicos.

Además, precisamente por el hecho de ser ágrafos, presentan ciertos problemas en lo que atañe a material geográfico, ya que ha sido en bastantes ocasiones difícil saber cómo deben escribirse los nombres geográficos dentro de las áreas que representan, o sea la ortografía a emplearse.

El problema se ha vuelto más complicado, al tomar varias consideraciones prácticas y culturales. Ciertos signos convencionales han sido difíciles de reproducir. También resulta que ciertos grupos minoritarios han sido a veces muy celosos de su identidad, resistiendo cualquier atentado al ajuste a una anotación más universal de los nombres geográficos de sus áreas. Asimismo debe ser considerada la utilidad de materiales publicados para la mayoría lingüística, así como para los extranjeros.

Sería provechoso reconocer los tres métodos mayores de transcripción de sonidos del habla, usados por los lingüistas.

Primero está la *transcripción puramente fonética*, en la que todos los sonidos, cuántos sean posibles, son anotados. Estos incluirían sonidos tales como tono relativo, acento relativo, respiración, juntura, etc.

El segundo método se conoce como *transcripción fonémica*, o sea que los sonidos del habla que se llaman *alófonos* (así como los *alótonos* y las características de acento que no se contrastan), no se demuestran gráficamente, pero sí se combinan en unidades globales conocidas como *fonemas*. Esto aparecería a primera vista ser considerablemente superior a la transcripción fonética y, efectivamente, en muchos aspectos lo es. Dos o más sonidos que funcionan como uno se combinan en un solo símbolo; los característicos rasgos incontrastables de tono y acento son suprimidos y se observa separación de las palabras.

El tercer método tiene un valor pragmático más grande, en cuanto se usa para la publicación de literatura en un dado idioma. Esto es lo que se designa como *ortografía práctica*. En el desarrollo del sistema, se toman en consideración factores tales como símbolos usados en el idioma nacional, facilidad de publicación, facilidad de enseñanza, etc.

Es evidente que una solución está cercana. Sin embargo, uno o dos problemas aún están pendientes de solucionar. Primero, puede ser difícil, de costo elevado, o casi imposible, obtener fuentes de linotipo para símbolos especiales o modificados. Asimismo, aunque una ortografía práctica de un idioma minoritario pueda ajustarse hasta cierto límite al alfabeto del idioma nacional, es obligatorio que todos los fonemas del minoritario estén representados para mostrar sus constrastes fonémicos. Esto resulta en caracteres que, para quienes hablan el idioma nacional, no tienen significado alguno.

De consiguiente, aunque las ortografías prácticas se prestan de manera excelente para la publicación de literatura en idiomas minoritarios, es obvio que, tomando en consideración que personas que hablan otros idiomas estarán usando material geográfico a publicarse, es necesario realizar un ajuste adicional.

Este paso final producirá lo que se puede llamar un *alfabeto normalizado*, o sea uno que está limitado en todas formas al idioma nacional oficial.

Se sostiene la opinión de que el uso de tales *alfabetos normalizados* es lo indicado para la publicación de material geográfico en donde prevalecen idiomas minoritarios, por algunas razones, entre las cuales se puede aducir:

a) No se requieren fuentes especiales de linotipo ni máquinas de escribir con signos especiales;

b) Aunque los nombres geográficos no aparecerán exactamente como los nativos del lugar los pronuncian, ellos—sin embargo—entenderían la referencia a los lugares dentro de su región;

c) Los documentos geográficos serán, así, de mayor utilidad para quien utilice el idioma nacional oficial;

d) En muchos casos, seguir una práctica tal, formalizaría una *de facto* y no representaría cambio alguno. Más bien, estaría de acuerdo con la resolución 16 de la Primera Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas celebrada en Ginebra en septiembre de 1967, que se refiere al registro de nombres geográficos de los idiomas ágrafos o sin escritura.

Por el otro lado, es de esperar algunos efectos adversos por usar *alfabetos normalizados*, pudiéndose prever:

a) Cuando desaparecen característicos rasgos contrastables de los idiomas minoritarios, podrían esperarse ambigüedades. Esto es una consecuencia natural de la normalización; pero a pesar de sus aparentes dificultades, las ambigüedades se disminuyen cuando los elementos se encuentran en contexto;

b) El *alfabeto normalizado* no estaría conforme con la ortografía práctica usada en la literatura de idiomas minoritarios y puede esperarse una cierta cantidad de reacciones negativas de parte de quienes los hablan. Tales reacciones pueden ser reducidas, al explicar a quienes hablan idiomas minoritarios, *que se trata sólo de los nombres geográficos y no del idioma entero*, y que representa una medida necesaria ante las exigencias internacionales;

c) Siempre tendrán que realizarse ciertos ajustes no lingüísticos;

d) Los nombres geográficos mostrados en mapas, diccionarios, etc., con *alfabetos normalizados*, por su propia índole no llevarán información de cómo deben aparecer en ortografías fonémicas o prácticas. El proceso de normalización es irreversible. Esto pondría ciertos obstáculos en el camino del científico que se interesa en nombres geográficos para propósitos lingüísticos o etimológicos. Sin embargo, una solución parcial a este problema sería la publicación de material explicativo, como ya lo ha hecho Guatemala, lo que resultará en un instrumento muy útil en las manos del científico que trabaje en áreas donde se hablan idiomas minoritarios. No solamente le servirá para escribir el idioma (ya sea con ortografía práctica, o con *alfabeto normalizado*), sino que también le proveerá con una clave valiosa para la pronunciación correcta de sus fonemas.

Con base en lo anterior, el suscrito está trabajando activamente con el Instituto Indigenista Nacional y el Instituto Lingüístico de Verano en unos alfabetos que contendrán el fonémico, fonético y el normalizado, con ejemplos apropiados. La tarea en sí es bastante ardua, pero con la mejor buena voluntad de todos se está haciendo progreso satisfactorio *teniendo siempre en mente que, ante todo, lo normalizado u oficial será para uso en documentos geográficos que se publiquen.*

Puede señalarse, entre las dificultades que se han encontrado, el uso del saltillo (') en los idiomas mayances, que como es sabido, representa un sonido oclusivo glotal que se emite al sacar el aire de la garganta, cuando se han cerrado y abierto las cuerdas vocales previamente. Todavía no se ha unificado criterio, pero sí puedo indicar que se usa el saltillo (') en vez de un número "7" introducido indebidamente en vez del saltillo por Terrence Kaufman en una publicación del Proyecto

Lingüístico Francisco Marroquín de Antigua Guatemala, o bien de un signo de interrogación sin el punto al final del mismo, como lo emplean algunos lingüistas, por motivos ya enunciados previamente. Asimismo, está el uso de vocales dobles, así como la diferenciación en español de la representación de sonidos por las letras "c" y "k", para mencionar algunos de los problemas que se están confrontando.

Regional

Además de lo que tenga que informar el Presidente de nuestro Grupo de Expertos, doctor Meredith F. Burrill, el suscrito desea mencionar brevemente lo que sigue.

El Salvador

El instituto Geográfico Nacional, conforme a datos obtenidos, está trabajando en la impresión de los tomos II y III de su *Diccionario Geográfico de El Salvador*. El tomo I fue entregado a la Secretaría de la Segunda Conferencia en Londres en mayo de 1972. Los nombres geográficos serán los oficiales conforme a lo dispuesto por su Autoridad Nacional de Nombres Geográficos.

Costa Rica

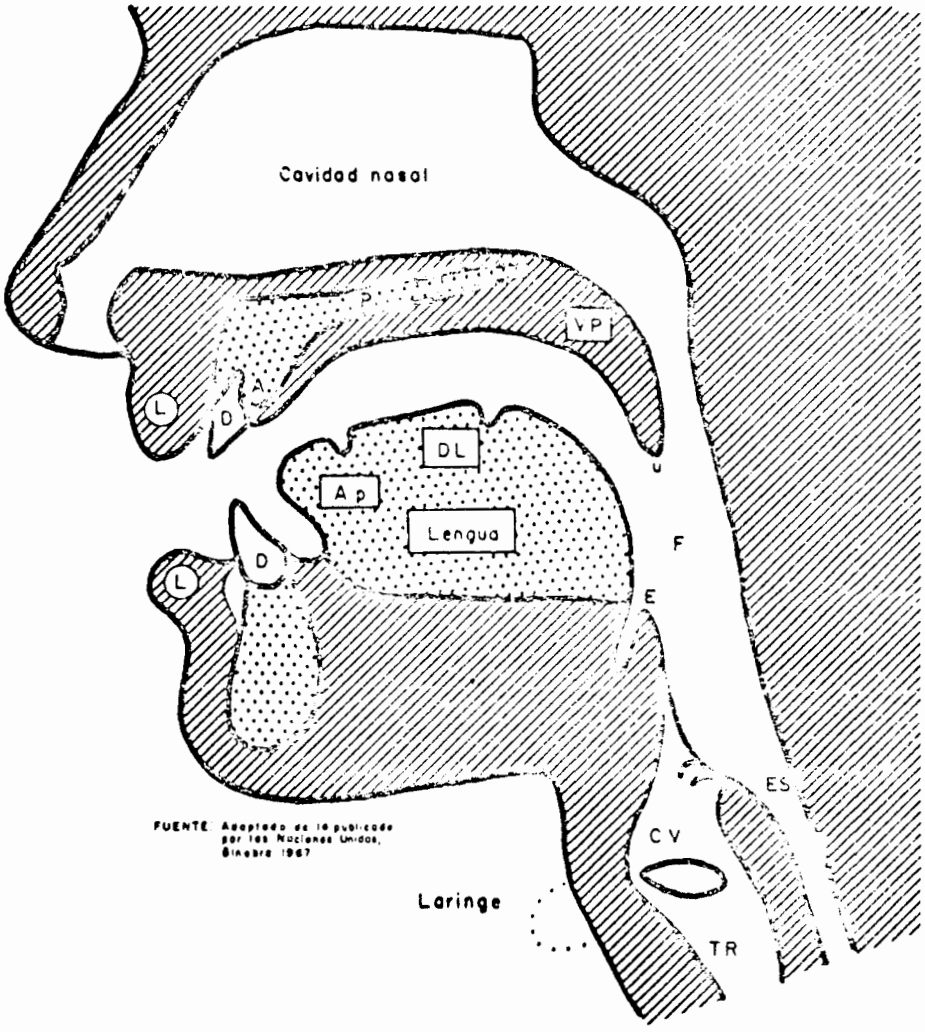
En Londres se hizo entrega del primer volumen sobre litonimia (nombres geográficos de lugares costeros o litorales) e insunimia (topónimos de las islas e islotes) de Costa Rica.

Alfabetos oficializados

Alfabetos mayances

1. Achí (de Cubulco)
2. Achí (de Rabinal y San Miguel Chicaj)
3. Aguacateco
4. Cakchiquel
5. Chortí
6. Chuj
7. Itzá
8. Ixil
9. Jacalteco
10. Kanjobal
11. Kekchí
12. Mam
13. Maya mopán
14. Pocomam oriental
15. Pocomchí
16. Quiché (de Quezaltenango y Totonicapán)
17. Quiché (de Sacapulas)
18. Tzutujil
19. Uspanteco

Diagrama de fonación



FUENTE: Adaptado de la publicada por las Naciones Unidas, Ginebra 1967

Abreviatura	*Organo de fonación*	*Adjetivo*
A	alvéolo de los dientes	alveolar
Ap	ápice de la lengua	apical/cimero
CV	cuerdas vocales	glotal
D	dientes	dental
DL	dorso de la lengua	dorsal
E	epiglotis	epiglotal
ES	esófago	esofágico
F	faringe	faríngeo
L	labios	labial
P	paladar	paladial
TR	tráquea	traqueal
U	úvula	uvular
VP	velo del paladar	velar y/o postvelar

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO ACHÍ
Cubulco, Baja Verapaz

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	ac'	= pollo	cha'ab	= noche	quin ta	= yo oigo
b	bari	= adiós	abaj	= piedra	cabij	= pasado mañana
c	car	= pez	wacatic	= pasear	binic	= andar
c'	c'ac'	= nuevo	ac'al	= niño	quic'	= sangre
ch	chac	= trabajo	ichaj	= hierba	c'uch	= zopilote
ch'	ch'ach	= grano	quinch'ayo	= yo pego	soch'	= búho
e	echa'	= fruta	jomet	= corteza	be	= camino
i	ic'	= chile	quic'	= sangre	qui	= dulce
j	ja	= casa	tojo	= pagar	oj	= aguacate
k	ka	= nuestro	akan	= a pie	ak	= cerdo
l	le	= aquel	ali	= niña	ral	= pequeño
m	mier	= desde hoy	ximo	= amarrar	chom	= bonito
n	nim	= grande	winak	= gente	yin	= yo
o	oxib	= tres	lok	= por acá	ch'o	= ratón
p	palaj	= cara	apoj	= virgen	sip	= garrapata
qu	qui	= dulce	ique	= ellos		
r	ral	= pequeño	iq'um	= abajo	iwir	= ayer
s	sak	= blanco	urox	= tercera	us	= mosca pequeña
			c'iasc'atic	= despierto	ch'at	= cama
t	tel	= hoyo	watit	= mi abuela	t'ot'	= sapillo
t'	t'isbal	= costura	quin t'iso	= lo cuezo	utz	= bueno
tz	tzij	= palabra	a tzam	= tu nariz	sotz'	= murciélago
tz'	tz'i	= perro	atz'am	= sal	quin tu'u	= yo tomo
u	utuquel	= él solo	c'um	= ayote	tew	= aire
w	wi	= pelo	anawic	= parece	c'ax	= dolor
x	xac	= hoja	ca xeto	= usted corta	c'oy	= mono
y	yet	= usted	beyom	= rico	quina'	= frijol
'	'ek	= negro	to'o	= ayudar		

Alfabeto arawac (araguaco)

Caribe centroamericano

ALFABETO ACHÍ

Cubulco, Baja Verapaz 1955; revisado 1974. Helen Nueunswander y Mary Shaw

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 28 signos gráficos, de los cuales 23 son consonantes y 5 son vocales:

a, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, r, s, t, t', tz, tz', u, w, x, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', k, t', tz', tz, w, x, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, e, i, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español y no admiten sonidos intermedios como sucede con otros idiomas mayances.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas por lo que no se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

b, c'/q'u, ch', k, t', tz', w, x, '(saltillo) representan

sonidos iguales a los descritos en la introducción a los alfabetos mayances.

Las oclusivas c/qu, k, p, t, y las africadas ch, tz, se pronuncian seguidas por una espiración suave, la cual, es más marcada cuando estos sonidos ocurren en la posición final de la frase.

l, representa el sonido "dl" cuando ocurre en posición final de la sílaba.

w, en posición antes de la "i" o de la "e", representa un sonido fricativo, sonoro y labial y, en otras posiciones, el sonido de "w" descrito en la introducción.

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO ACHÍ
Rabinal, San Miguel Chicaj, Baja Verapaz

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	ak	= marrano	chaj	= pino	ja	= casa
aa	aab	= hamaca	chaaj	= ceniza		
b	bix	= canción	sa'ube	= ¿por qué?	jab	= lluvia
c	caab	= panela	cancojo	= yo creo	ic	= chile
c'	c'ul	= ropa	ac'a	= niñfito	ic'	= mes, luna
ch	chom	= bonito	achi	= hombre	yoch	= escalera
ch'	ch'o	= rata	koch'okic	= arrugas	ch'ich'	= metal
e	ewa'	= éste	che'	= árbol	be	= camino
ee			queechacunic	= ellos trabajan		
i	imul	= conejo	nim	= grande	tzi	= nixtamal
ii	iis	= camote	piim	= grueso		
j	jo'	= ¡ vamos !	uje'	= cola	ti'oj	= gordo
k	kok	= mal olor	rakana'	= río	ixok	= mujer
k'	k'ij	= sol	jik'obal	= fruta	ak'	= fuego
l	lic	= muy	xtoloc	= lagarto	rilal	= usted
m	mam	= anciano	ch'umil	= estrella	uca'm	= segundo
n	na'be	= primero	winak	= gente	xan	= adobe
o	oj	= nosotros	cok	= tortuga	ch'o	= rata
oo	ooj	= aguacate				
p	pop	= petate	upa	= estómago	sip	= garrapata
qu	quinak'	= frijol	baquilo	= ternero		
q'u	q'uix	= espina	coq'uil	= despacio		
r	rakana'	= río	wara	= aquí	car	= pescado
s	si'	= leña	c'asak	= nuevo	us	= mosca
t	tan	= luego	c'atan	= caliente	tit	= anciana
t'	t'oc	= sordo	ja't'ix	= estornudo	t'ot'	= caracol
tz	tzima	= guacal	itzel	= diablo	cumatz	= culebra
tz'	tz'in	= yuca	jutz'it	= un poco	sutz'	= nubes
u	utz	= bueno	chun	= cal	ruchu	= su madre
uu			quinuumic	= tengo hambre		
w	we'	= mis dientes	uwa'al	= caldo	c'axtew	= tiempo frío
x	xax	= delgado	oxib	= tres	pix	= tomate
y	ya'	= agua	sanyeb	= arena	c'oyc'oy	= tecolote
			c'a'am	= pita	qui'	= dulce

ALFABETO ACHÍ

Rabinal, San Miguel Chicaj, Baja Verapaz 1963; revisado 1974

John Brawand, Alice Knight de Brawand e Ilah Fleming

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 34 signos gráficos, de los cuales 24 son consonantes y 10 son vocales:

a, aa, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, ee, i, ii, j, k, k', l, m, n, o, oo, p, r, s, t, t', tz, u, uu, w, x, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', k, k', t', tz, tz', w, x, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

u, representa un sonido igual al del español.

a, e, i, o, representan sonidos que, algunas veces son iguales a los del español y, en otras, varían como sonidos intermedios propios de este idioma.

aa, ee, ii, oo, uu, representan sonidos prolongados propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que no se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

c'/q'u, ch', k, t', tz, tz', w, x, y, ' (saltillo), aa, ee, ii, oo,

uu, representan sonidos iguales a los descritos en la introducción a los alfabetos.

b, representa el sonido de la "b" descrito en la introducción; pero al final de la oración, cuando hay retardo en abrir los labios, puede tener el sonido similar al de una "p'", seguida por una "m" sorda.

j, representa un sonido pronunciado con fricción más marcada al final de la oración y, en cambio, en posición final de la sílaba, o antes de "a" y "o", en posición inicial, se pronuncia con menos fricción. Antes de otras vocales y en posición inicial de la sílaba, se pronuncia aún con menos fricción.

k', representa un sonido pronunciado más hacia adentro con la faringe contraída.

l, r, representan sonidos sordos y fricativos en posición final de la sílaba. En otras posiciones, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

n, representa el sonido de ñ cuando precede a c/qu, c'/q'u, k, k'. En otras posiciones el sonido es similar al del español.

e, representa el sonido de "ë", descrito en la introducción, cuando ocurre en una sílaba que termina en una consonante. En otras posiciones representa el sonido de "e" del español.

i, por lo general, representa el sonido de la "i" española cuando ocurre en una sílaba que termina en consonante o en una sílaba acentuada. En cambio, representa el sonido de "i" descrito en la introducción cuando ocurre en sílaba no acentuada o que no termina en consonante.

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO AGUACATECO
Aguacatán, Huehuetenango

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	at	= hay	xak	= hoja	ja	= ya
ä			xäk	= talpetate		
b	ba'n	= bueno	chi'bäj	= carne	cab	= panela
c	cotz	= regalo	c'o'cal	= sabor	soc	= nido
c'	c'a'	= piedra de moler	ac'äj	= nuevo	sac'	= langosta
ch	chuj	= horno	nachol	= mago	boch	= puerco
ch'	ch'ich'	= metal	kach'iw	= nuestra esperanza	tuch'	= compañero
cy	cya'j	= cielo	quicyuj	= cacao	xicy	= joven
cy'	cy'äj	= haragán	nicy'al	= en medio	ẍicy	= ala
e	elë'n	= saliendo	beluj	= nueve	xe	= adentro
ë	ël	= salir	mëm	= gordo		
i	itzäj	= verduras	sich'	= cigarro	wi	= encima de
ï			sïch	= grito		
j	jalü'	= hoy	sajäch	= juego	joj	= cuervo
k	kol	= pavo	wükan	= mi pie	= säk	= blanco
k'	k'a'	= puente	ek'üm	= cargador	k'ak'	= fuego
l	lab	= espanto	baläj	= bonito, bueno, etc.	tal	= hijo
m	matzol	= barbero	umul	= conejo	alk'om	= ladrón
n	num	= se desmaya	wünäk	= gente	ïn	= yo
o	oj	= aguacate	ch'oc	= arado	—	
ö	—		ch'öc	= sanate	—	
p	pe'm	= corral	ca'pen	= pasado mañana	slup	= mariposa
qu	quïmnäk	= muerto	cuquen	= a saber	—	
q'u	q'uïxc'üj	= sufrimiento	xiq'uin	= vuela	—	
r	rmeril	= posibilidad	terü'	= usted	or	= apúrate
s	sas	= liviana	tzïsïs	= ciprés	üs	= mosca
t	tuc'	= cuerno	mitü'	= gato	tüt	= capa
t'	t'imbïl	= comida	at'uy	= su olla	cot'	= flojo
tx	tx'ach	= cama	atx'i'	= tu perro	jötx'	= bebida, ceremonial
tz	tzu'	= tecomate	cätzäm	= venga	wütz	= cara
tz'	tz'ë'	= quemar	atz'üm	= sal	wötz'	= tostado
u	ujül	= siempre	buch	= tarde	tu	= con
ü			büch	= flores		
w	wäj	= tortilla	awil	= tu pecado	xaw	= luna
x	xal	= olla	bixin	= bailar	xax	= delgado
ẍ	ẍë'n	= ¿cómo?	bi'ẍin	= envejecer	ẍëẍ	= colorado
y	yol	= palabra	biyol	= matador	poy	= espantajo
			ta'al	= jugo	wo'	= sapo

ALFABETO AGUACATECO

Aguacatán, Huehuetenango,
1956; revisado 1974

Harry McArthur y Lucille Taylor de McArthur

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 39 signos gráficos, de los cuales 29 son consonantes y 10 vocales:

a, ä, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', cy, cy', e, ë, i, ï, j, k, k', l, m, n, o, ö, p, r, s, t, t', tx, tx', tz, tz', u, ü, w, x, ẍ, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', cy, cy', k, k', t', tx, tx', tz, tz', w, x, ẍ, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idoma.

Vocales

a, e, i, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Acento

En la palabra que contiene cualquiera de las cinco vocales se acentúa la que no lleva diéresis, ejemplo: "jalü" (hoy), acento en la primera sílaba. Si no hay vocal sin diéresis en la palabra, ésta es aguda; ejemplo: "wünäk" (gente). De conformidad con estas dos reglas resulta innecesario representar el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma.

c'/q'u, ch', cy, cy', k, k', t', tx, tx', tz, tz', w, x, ẍ, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos iguales a los descritos en la introducción a los alfabetos.

b, representa el sonido de la "b" mayance descrita en la introducción al final de la oración, al haber retardo en abrir los labios, puede tener el sonido similar al de una "p" seguida por una "m" sorda.

cy, ocurre en todas las posiciones, pero al final de la sílaba sólo se encuentra después de "e", "i".

l, r, representan sonidos sordos y fricativos cuando ocurren en posición inicial de la sílaba precediendo a una consonante, así como ocurren en posición final de la sílaba después de una consonante. En posición final de la oración pueden representar sonidos sonoros o sordos. En otras posiciones representan sonidos iguales a los del español.

n, representa el sonido de "ñ" cuando precede a c/qu, c'/q'u, k, k'. En otras posiciones el sonido es igual al del español.

r, se encuentra con poca frecuencia en palabras propias del idioma.

x, representa el sonido retroflejo descrito en la introducción.

ẍ, representa el sonido no retroflejo descrito en la introducción.

ä, ë, ï, ü, representan los sonidos descritos en la introducción.

ö representa un sonido similar al de la "o" del español, pero más corto.

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO CAKCHIQUEL
Chimaltenango

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	ak'	= lengua	mama'	= abuelo	roma	= porque
b	bak	= hueso	ch'abëk	= lodo	sïb	= humo
c	ca'	= piedra de moler	xcoya'	= tomate	ic	= chile
c'	c'a'	= cuerno	ac'ual	= niño	ïc'	= luna, mes
ch	choy	= lago	jachoj	= repartir	chaquëch	= canasto
ch'	ch'oy	= ratón	jach'onel	= tapiscador	ch'ich'	= metal
e	eyaj	= diente	vey	= mi diente	je	= sí pues
ë	ëc'	= gallina	vëy	= tortilla	xbë	= se fue
f	—				ulef	= tierra
i	is	= papa	nitic	= se siembra	ri	= él, la, los, las
ï	ïs	= vello	natïc	= tú lo siembras	vacamï	= hoy
j	jay	= casa	bojo'y	= olla	vuj	= papel
k	kak	= nuestro cerdo	xkak'ij	= buenas tardes	puëk	= dinero
k'	k'ij	= sol, día	ruk'a'	= su mano	k'ak'	= fuego
l	lok'onel	= comprador	palëj	= cara	alal	= peso
m	masat	= venado	pamaj	= estómago	pim	= grueso
n	nïm	= grande	xenen	= zancudo	jun	= uno
o	oj	= aguacate	nic'ot	= se excava	c'ö	= hay
ö	öm	= araña	nac'ot	= tú lo excavas	xic'o	= pasó
p	pop	= petate	pipïy	= pavo (hembra)	sip	= garrapata
qu	quiej	= caballo	xiquïn	= oreja	—	
q'u	q'uïx	= espina	xq'uis	= se terminó	—	
r	rox	= tercero	yërüchöp	= él los agarra	k'or	= atol
s	si'	= leña	xasa'	= tú lo asaste	bis	= tristeza
t	tuj	= temascal	xtën	= muchacha	ch'at	= cama
t'	t'eyet'ic	= tartamudo	xt'ison	= cosió	rot'	= tuerto
tz	tziëk	= tela	nitzac	= se cuece	ütz	= bueno
tz'	tz'ïl	= sucio	atz'an	= sal	sutz'	= nube
u	uk	= falda	nichup	= se apaga	pu	= pero
ü	üs	= mosca pequeña	nichüp	= ustedes lo apagan		
v	vinëk	= persona	ivir	= ayer	—	
x	xax	= delgado	xaxë	= solo	rëx	= verde
y	yabil	= enfermedad	ayin	= lagarto	ïy	= nieto, a (de mujer)
'	—		ti'ij	= carne	ya'	= agua

Alfabeto cakchiquel

Chimaltenango
1971; revisado 1974

Martha King, Ilah Fleming y Marcial Maxía Cutzal

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 34 signos gráficos, de los cuales 25 son consonantes y 9 son vocales:

a, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, ë, f, i, ï, j, k, k', l, m, n, o, ö, p, r, s, t, t', tz, tz', u, ü, v, x, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', f, k, k', r, t', tz, tz' v, x, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, e, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

i, representa un sonido que a veces es igual al del español, pero en otras varía con un sonido propio de este idioma.

ë, ï, ö, ü, representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que no se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

k, r, tz, x, ' (saltillo), ï, ö, ü, representan sonidos descritos en la introducción de los alfabetos.

b, c'/q'u, ch', k', t', tz', antes de una consonante sonora, pueden representar sonidos glotalizados seguidos por una vocal corta, sonora, y de calidad neutra. En otras posiciones representan los sonidos descritos en la introducción.

c/qu, k, p, t, en posición final de la sílaba representan sonidos oclusivos seguidos por fricativos sordos, pronunciados en posiciones de articulación igual a la de las oclusivas respectivas.

c/qu, k, en posición inicial de la sílaba, especialmente antes de a, i, pueden representar sonidos oclusivos simples u oclusivos seguidos por una espiración suave.

f, v, representan alófonos de un solo fonema que corresponde a la "w" en otros idiomas mayances.

f, representa un sonido fricativo, sordo y labial, que ocurre solamente en posición final de la sílaba.

v, ocurre solamente en posición inicial de la sílaba. Antes de i, ï, e, ë, representa un sonido fricativo, sonoro, y labial. Antes de las otras vocales representa un sonido con menos fricción.

k', representa un sonido implosivo glotalizado, pronunciado más hacia adentro que la posición postvelar descrito en la introducción. Entre las vocales "o" y "u", especialmente en medio de un grupo de sílabas no acentuadas, el sonido se produce aún más hacia adentro con la faringe contraída.

l, en posición final de la sílaba representa un sonido fricativo y sordo. En otras posiciones representa uno igual al del español.

n, representa el sonido de "ñ" antes de c/qu, c'/q'u, j, k, k'. Para la mayoría de los hablantes cakchiqueles de Chimaltenango, la "n"—en otras posiciones—representa el sonido de la del español. Hay algunos para quienes la "n" como prefijo del verbo y que indica "aspecto incompleto" (tiempo presente), representa el sonido de una "n" corta del español seguida por una "d", cuando precede al morfema que indica "él", "ella". Parte de la literatura publicada antes de 1974 ha empleado la "d" para representar los sonidos de "nd" o "n" de este prefijo del verbo.

y, en posición final de la sílaba representa un sonido fricativo y sordo. Para la mayoría de los hablantes de Chimaltenango, en otras posiciones representa un sonido similar a la "y" del español, pero hay algunos para quienes la "y" como prefijo del verbo y que indica "aspecto incompleto" (tiempo presente), antes de cualquiera de los morfemas que indican "yo", "tú", "nosotros", "ustedes", "ellos", puede representar el sonido de la "ñ" del español, o de una "g"; pero antes del morfema que indica "nosotros", también puede representar el sonido de la "j" del español. Parte de la literatura publicada antes de 1974 ha empleado la "g" para representar los sonidos de y, ñ, g, j, de este prefijo del verbo.

a, e, i, o, u, pueden representar, a veces, sonidos un poco más prolongados que los de ë, ï, ö, ü.

i, ë, cuando preceden a una "j" en posición final de la sílaba, representan, respectivamente, sonidos de la "i" del español, o de la "e" descrito más adelante; pero, fonéticamente, antes de la "j" aparece el sonido de una "ä" corta. En otras posiciones la "i" representa la del español.

ë, en una sílaba acentuada puede representar, en Patzún el sonido descrito en la introducción, o de "ä" pronunciado más hacia la parte anterior de la cavidad bucal que la descrita en la introducción. En otras posiciones representa el sonido de la "ë" descrito en la introducción.

Alfabeto chortí

Jocotán, Chiquimula
1963; revisado 1974

John L. McNichols, Joyce de McNichols, Ilah Fleming, John Lubeck y Diana Thompson de Lubeck

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 28 signos gráficos, de los cuales 23 son consonantes y 5 vocales:

a, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, g, i, j, l, m, n, o, p, r, s, t, t', tz, tz', u, w, x, y,' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, g, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', t, tz, tz', w, x,' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

a, e, i, representan sonidos que, a veces, son iguales a los del español, pero en otros casos varían como sonidos intermedios propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que sólo en algunas palabras graves se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

c'/q'u, ch', t', tz, tz', x, representan sonidos similares a los descritos en la introducción.

b, en posición inicial de la palabra, puede representar el sonido sordo o sonoro descrito en la introducción. Entre vocales el sonido es sonoro y, en posición final de la palabra, es sordo.

g, representa un sonido similar al del español. Ocurre únicamente en el morfema chortí "gojr/gor" (redondo).

j, representa un sonido con más fricción que la del español cuando se encuentra en posición inicial de una sílaba acentuada, o en posición final de una oración. En otras posiciones hay menos fricción que en el español. Cuando ocurre antes o después de la "o" y la "u", se pronuncia con los labios redondeados. Antes de una consonante sonora puede ser seguida por una vocal corta sonora de calidad neutra.

m, n, representan sonidos sordos en posición final de la sílaba cuando siguen a una "j". La vocal seguida de jm, jn, 'm, 'n, puede tener una calidad nasalizada. En otras posiciones, la "m" representa el sonido de la del español.

n, representa el sonido de "ñ" antes de c/qu, c'/q'u, ' (saltillo) y, para algunos hablantes, también antes de ch, ch', n, t, t' y antes de una pausa. Puede representar el sonido de "ñ"o de "ñg" antes de la "r", y la "w". En otras posiciones representa el sonido de la "n" del español.

p, representa el sonido de una "b" española cuando se encuentra entre consonantes sonoras, pero en posición

Ejemplos del uso de las letras del alfabeto chortí
Jocotán, Chiquimula

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	am	= araña	chacchac	= rojo	niba	= mi cuerpo
b	bi'r	= senda	jabar	= abierto	ja'xob	= ellos
c	cu'm	= huevo	incani	= aprende	sacsac	= blanco
c'	c'u'm	= masa	inc'ani	= quiero		
ch	chan	= culebra	chuchu'	= pequeño	ch'ich	= sangre
ch'	ch'an	= bejuco	uch'en	= ¡beba!		
e	era	= este	te'	= árbol	che	= él dijo
			pei'x	= ya es tortilla		
g	gororoj	= redondo	ingojr	= una cosa redonda		
i	ichoqui	= tus botas	winic	= hombre	atujri	= precio alto
j	jaja'r	= lluvia	c'ajc	= fuego	xaj	= sábana
l	lucum	= lombriz	lewlew	= flexible		
m	muac	= enfermedad	xemen	= hígado	chinam	= pueblo
n	no'n	= nosotros	tuno'r	= todo	tun	= piedra
o	oc	= pie	ojob	= tos	imbeto	= debo
p	pa'	= tortilla	achampri	= él fuma	pojp	= petate
qu	quiricna	= tronó	upoqui	= lava (trastos)		
q'u	q'uewer	= cuero	unq'ui	= yo lloro		
r	rum	= tierra	warnic	= por favor	chor	= terreno cultivado
s	sojo	= basura	sisar	= frío	pispis	= desnudo
t	tocar	= nube	nojta'	= grande	ne't	= usted
t'	t'ix	= espina	ut'ej	= el diente	t'ot'	= órgano sexual
tz	tzutz	= pelo	witzir	= cuesta	sutz	= murciélago
tz'	tz'i'	= perro	atz'acpa	= se compone		
u	un	= aguacate	tui'x	= ya es madre	inwajc'u	= doy
w	wa'r	= está de pie	chiwiw	= escarabajo	ch'ejw	= cajete (de loza)
x	xucur	= río	ixin	= él se fué	rax	= piedra de afilar
y	yujy	= flor de ayote	awayan	= duerme	injayjay	= débil
'			ma'n	= mozo	ja'	= agua

inicial de la sílaba puede ser pronunciada como la "p" del español o como la misma letra, seguida de una suave espiración. En posición final de la sílaba se pronuncia como en el último caso mencionado.

r, w, y, en posición final de la sílaba y después de "j", representan sonidos sordos y fricativos. En otras posiciones "r", "y", representan sonidos similares a los del español, y la "w" el sonido descrito en la introducción.

El ' (saltillo) en el margen final de la sílaba produce, en la vocal que le sigue, un efecto de pronunciación producido por una ligera tensión de las cuerdas vocales (laringealización) prolongando generalmente su duración, excepto cuando se trata de una sílaba acentuada. En otras posiciones representa el sonido descrito en la introducción.

e, i, representan los sonidos de "ë", "ï" descritos en la introducción, cuando aparecen en una sílaba que termina en consonante. En otras posiciones representa sonidos similares a los del español.

a, puede representar el sonido de la "ä", descrito en la introducción, o de la "a" española, cuando ocurre en una sílaba que termina en "c", o en una sílaba acentuada que termina en una "m", o en una "n". En otras posiciones representa el sonido de la del español.

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO CHUJ
San Sebastián Coatán, Huehuetenango

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	atut	= su milpa	lajan	= igual	ala	= dígalo
b	be	= camino	abi	= oiga	nab	= lluvia
c	caw	= muy	t'oco	= cavar	coc	= nuestros pies
c'	c'ac'	= fuego	q'uic'an	= mañana	c'oc'	= chilacayote
ch	chan	= culebra	'acha	= allá	'ich	= chile
ch'	ch'at	= cama	jech'ul	= cicatriz	wach'	= bueno
e	ex	= ustedes	nen	= vidrio	be	= camino
i	in	= yo	winac	= hombre	toni	= verdad
j	jun	= uno	lajan	= igual	'uj	= luna
l	lem	= venga	nulej	= hermana de ella	tusbil	= pared
m	mam	= padre	chami	= morir	lem	= venga
n	nun	= madre	yanab	= su hermana	'abn	= pues
ñ	ñolob	= huevo	sañab	= caite	'añ	= alcohol
o	oñ	= nosotros	noc'	= animal	boño	= ensuciarse
p	puch	= mucho	tupi	= coser	ep	= tu fuerza
qu	quixcab	= terremoto				
q'u	q'uich'an	= mañana	uq'uej	= beber	—	
r	remel	= medicina	tzerec	= pájaro carpintero		
s	sati	= perdido	cusi	= triste	'is	= papa (s)
t	tat	= grueso	'ati	= ir	stut	= su frijol
t'	t'iw	= águila	wet'oc	= conmigo	yet'	= con
tz'	tz'i	= perro	'atz'am	= sal	pitz'	= exprimir
tz	tzatz	= duro	totzabi	= oye	itz	= cerro
u	'uñ	= papel	jun	= uno	t'uñu	= colgar
w	wal	= muy	niwan	= muchos	ow	= bravo
x	xalu	= cántaro	'ixim	= maíz	'ix	= mujer
y	yel	= verdad	tzoyol	= güisquil	chay	= pescado
'	'al	= pesado	lu'um	= tierra	ta'	= allí

ALFABETO CHUJ

San Sebastián Coatán, Huehuetenango
1961; revisado 1974

Kenneth L. Williams y Bárbara Thayer de Williams

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 28 signos gráficos, de los cuales 23 son consonantes y 5 son vocales:

a, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch' e, i, j, l, m, n, ñ, o, p, r, s, t, t', tz, tz', u, w, x, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m. n, p, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', ñ, t', tz, w, x, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, i, o, u, representan los mismos sonidos del español y no admiten sonidos intermedios, como sucede con otros idiomas mayances.

e, representa un sonido que, a veces, es igual al del español y, en otras, es uno intermedio, propio de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que no se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

b, c'/q'u, ch', ñ, t', tz, tz', x, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos iguales a los descritos en la introducción.

j, entre vocales, representa un sonido más suave que el del español.

l, representa el sonido de "dl" en posición final de la sílaba, cuando va precedida por i, o, u. En otras posiciones representa el sonido de "l", del español.

w, antes de "i", "e", puede representar un sonido fricativo, sonoro y labial. En otras posiciones representa el sonido descrito en la introducción.

e, puede representar el sonido de la "ë" descrito en la introducción, o de la "e" española cuando ocurre en una sílaba que termina en consonante. En otras posiciones representa el sonido "e" del español.

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO ITZA
San José, Petén

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	ac'	= lengua	c'a'	= piedra de moler		
aa			c'aac'	= fuego		
b	bac	= hueso	chibal	= morder	c'ab	= mano
c	coj	= diente	chocoj	= caliente		
c'	c'aac'	= fuego	ac'ü'	= noche	uc'	= piojo
ch	chawac	= largo	pichi	= guayaba	nojoch	= grande
ch'	ch'om	= zopilote			ch'iich'	= pájaro
e	ec'	= estrella	che'	= árbol	que	= venado
ee			p'eel	= sufijo clasificador que indica objeto inanimado		
i	ich	= ojo	wolis	= redondo	qui	= maguey
ii			siis	= frío		
j	je'	= huevo	ojel	= saber	bej	= camino
l	lu'um	= tierra	a'la	= éste (pronombre)	muyal	= nubes
m	ma`	= partícula negativa	tamen	= hígado	yalam	= abajo
n	nej	= cola de animal	mo'noc	= pequeño	ta'an	= ceniza
o	oc	= pie	pol	= cabeza	a'lo	= aquel
oo			cooc	= sordo		
p	piix	= rodilla	popocsic	= volar	chup	= mujer
p'	p'ixi	= despertar	c'ap'eel	= dos (casas)		
qu	quimsaj	= matar	xiquin	= oreja		
q'u	q'uin	= sol	büq'uel	= cuerpo		
s	sus	= arena	pucsical	= corazón	ya'ax	= verde
t	tech	= tú	ixtuch'	= sonajas	büt	= granizo
t'			sot'ot'	= pulmones	ot'	= piel
tz	tzimin	= caballo			witz	= cerro
tz'	tz'otz	= pelo			butz'	= humo
u			tul	= olla	c'uxu	= achiote
uu			cuul	= sufijo clasificador de un objeto ovalado		
ü			cüy	= pescado		
w	winic	= hombre	uwi	= ¿lo oíste?		
x	ximbal	= andar			box	= negro
y	yaab	= muchos	muyal	= nubes	cüy	= pescado
'			to'on	= nosotros	ja'	= agua

ALFABETO ITZÁ

San José, Petén — Matthew Ulrich y Otto Schuman
1961, 1962; revisado 1974

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 33 signos gráficos, de los cuales 22 son consonantes y 11 son vocales.

a, aa, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, ee, i, ii, j, l, m, n, o, oo, p, p', s, t, t', tz, tz', u, uu, ü, w, x, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', p', t', tz, tz', w, x, y, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, e, i, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

aa, ee, ii, oo, uu, ü, representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que no se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

b, c'/q'u, ch', p', t', tz, tz', w, x, ' (saltillo), ü, representan sonidos descritos en la introducción.

aa, ee, ii, oo, uu, representan vocales prolongadas con sonidos iguales a los descritos en la introducción.

EJEMPLO DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO IXIL
Nebaj, Quiché

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	ab	= hamaca	pach	= ranchito	ca	= quedarse
			baal	= padre	iyaa	= semilla
b	bey	= camino	cabal	= casa	cab	= dulce
c	caj	= sangre	ican	= tío	coc	= tortuga
c'	c'olob	= huevo	uc'al	= olla grande	uc'	= piojo
ch	che'	= masa	echbu	= comer	ich	= chile
ch'	ch'ach	= cama	toch'on	= aspereza	ich'	= luna, mes
e	ec'	= pie de gallo	cu'en	= siéntese	che	= venado
	ee	= diente			jee	= cola
i	is	= papa	k'iaj	= adivinar	paaxi	= rajar
	ii	= nieto, nieta			k'ii	= sol, día
j	jal	= mazorca	ijvil	= cuerda, larga	jaj	= abrir
k	kul	= cuello	ixkel	= esposa		
k'	k'ab	= mano	ak'il	= raíz	k'ok'	= chilacayote
l	le	= tortilla	ilcan	= cuidar	el	= salir
m	mac	= cosechar	camal	= tal vez	cam	= morir
n	nim	= grande	intxa'	= niño, niña	ilon	= apariencia
o	oj	= pie	bobal	= sombrero	jo	= cuervo
			noonajle	= lleno	ch'oo	= pequeño
p	pe'	= sitio	apnaben	= dejar recomendado	pop	= petate
qu	qui't	= margarita	xiquin	= oreja	—	
q'u	q'uec'la naj	= egoísta	siq'ui'm	= grito	—	
r	rip	= murciélago	oraẍ	= adiós	ner	= gordura
s	sib	= humo	camsa	= matar	corte's	= chirimía
t	tan	= porque	tenta	= galera	su't	= pañuelo
t'	t'anquin	= alto	rit'il	= rotura	rat'	= cortar, romper
tx	txo	= animal	imotxtel	= último	ac'atx	= gallina
tx'	tx'oj	= deuda	pitx'oj	= tapiscar maíz	ibotx'	= nervios
tz	tze'	= árbol	otzotz	= hogar	sotz	= acabar
tz'	tz'um	= cuero	atz'am	= sal	kotz'	= barranco
u	uma'l	= uno	cu'c	= ardilla	tu	= en, a
	uuya	= él vino				
v	vitz	= montaña	vujvu	= séptimo	acha'v	= contento
x	xol	= bordar	paxsa	= predicar	ch'i'x	= espinas
ẍ	ẍir	= grillo	tiẍen	= saludar	cha'laẍ	= saludo
y	yol	= palabra	cayampa'l	= relámpago	tzuy	= ratón
	—		ïo'y	= chula	a'	= agua

ALFABETO IXIL

Nebaj, Quiché
1955; revisado 1974

Raymond Elliott y Helen Belcher de Elliott

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 32 signos gráficos, de los cuales 27 son consonantes y 5 son vocales:

a, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, i, j, k, k', l, m, n, o, p, r, s, t, t', tx, tx', tz, tz', u, w, x, ẍ, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', k, k', t', tx, tx', tz, tz', v, x, ẍ, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

e, i, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

a, o, representan sonidos que a veces son similares a los del español, pero en otras varían con sonidos intermedios propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que no se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

c'/q'u, ch', k, k', t', tx, tx', tz, tz', x, ẍ ' (saltillo) representan sonidos iguales a los descritos en la introducción a los alfabetos.

b, representa el sonido de la "b" descrito en la introducción; al final de la oración cuando hay retardo en abrir los labios, puede tener el sonido similar al de una "p' ", seguido por una "m" sorda.

j, representa un sonido pronunciado con menos fricción que la del español, y aún con menos fricción cuando ocurre en posición final de la oración.

k, nunca se encuentra en posición final de la sílaba en el ixil de Nebaj o de Cotzal, pero sí en el de Chajul.

l, y, representan sonidos sordos en posición final de la oración. En otras posiciones representan sonidos iguales a los del español.

r, ocurre con poca frecuencia en palabras propias de este idioma.

v, en posición final de la oración representa un sonido sordo y en otras uno fricativo bilabial y sonoro. Corresponde a la "w" en los signos gráficos de otros idiomas mayances.

x, representa el sonido retroflejo descrito en la introducción.

ẍ, representa el sonido no retroflejo descrito en la introducción.

a, representa el sonido de "ä", cuando ocurre en una sílaba que termine en c/qu, c'/q'u, k'. En otras posiciones representa el sonido de la "a" española.

o, representa el sonido de "ö", cuando ocurre en una sílaba que termina en "k'." En otras posiciones representa el sonido de la "o" española.

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO JACALTECO
Jacaltenango y Concepción Huista, Huehuetenango

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	al	= pesado	k'ak'	= fuego (concepción)	hala	= imperativo de decir
b	baj	= hueso	chubil	= cuánto (vale)	cañeb	= cuatro
c	caw	= duro	hecal	= mañana	cuc	= ardilla
qu	quistal	= feo	txiquin	= oreja		
c'	c'uh	= rayo	tzoc'o	= imperativo de cortar	chic'	= sangre
q'u	q'uewiloj	= una manera de romper con la mano	miq'uin	= tipo de caracol	—	
ch	cheh	= caballo	machoj	= negativo	pech	= pato
ch'	ch'im	= paja	c'anch'an	= pobrecito	lach'	= acaro
e	ewi	= ayer	oxeb	= tres	cole	= güipil (Jacaltenango)
f	—		ca'fi	= anteayer (Jacaltenango)		
h	hum	= papel	nahat	= lejos	hih	= roble
i	ib	= armadillo	chiyo	= pollo (ave)	ẍi	= dice (Jacaltenango)
j	jawal	= nuestra milpa	hujeb	= siete	saj	= blanco
k'	k'alem	= basura	hak'ab	= tu mano	tenok'	= algodón
l	luc	= clase de machete	holan	= hoyo	cañal	= baile regional
m	mul	= delito	camom	= muerto	pom	= copal
n	nam	= mariposa	tinab	= tambor	k'an	= amarillo
ñ	ñub	= humo	coñob	= pueblo	ön	= aguacate
o	ocañ	= pase adelante	comam	= nuestro padre	lo	= imperativo de comer
p	pim	= grueso	copop	= nuestro petate	chap	= cangrejo
r	riñron	= rectamente	witwirin	= cigarra	hur	= baile autóctono (Jacaltenango
					hir	= baile autóctono (Concepción Huista)
s	si'	= leña	isah	= perezoso	hos	= huevo
t	tat	= espeso	petan	= redondo	xitc'ut	= cuarzo
t'	t'iw	= águila	chit'ujwi	= saltará (Concepción)	lut'	= cicatriz (Concepción Huista)
tx	txam	= nariz	cotxan	= torcido	bitx	= tamal
tx'	tx'umel	= estrella	potx'o	= imperativo de matar	watx'	= derecha
tz	tzoyol	= güisquil	matzet	= nada	witz	= cerro
u	uc'	= piojo	tunuc	= chompipe	su	= imperativo de soplar (Jacaltenango)
tz'	tz'il	= sucio	atz'am	= sal	sotz'	= murciélago
w	wes	= ladino	cawañ	= dos (personas)	chew	= frío
x	xaj	= hoja	ixnam	= anciana	mex	= mono
ẍ	ẍalu	= jarro	wuẍtaj	= mi hermano (hombre hablando)	aẍuẍ	= ajo
y	yax	= verde	hayeh	= cuantos	cay	= pescado
'			hinmi'am	= mi mamá	ha'	= agua

ALFABETO JACALTECO

Jacaltenango, 1974
Concepción Huista, Huehuetenango
1961, revisado 1974

Jerónimo Camposeco Rojas, Dennis Stratmeyer y Jean B. de Stratmeyer

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 34 signos gráficos para el de Jacaltenango y 33 para el de Concepción Huista; 29 consonantes en el primero y 28 en el segundo y 5 vocales en ambos.

a, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, f, h, i, j, k', l, m, n, ñ, o, p, r, s, t, t', tx, tx', tz, tz', u, w, x, ẍ, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, f, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', h, k', ñ, t', tx, tx', tz, tz', w, x, ẍ, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, e, i, o, u, en Jacaltenango representan sonidos similares a los del español. En Concepción Huista, la "o" representa un sonido similar al del español; a, e, i, u, representan sonidos que a veces son similares a los del español, pero en otras varían con sonidos intermedios propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que sólo llevan tilde las que no lo son.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

b, c'/q'u, ch', h, k', ñ, t', tx, tx', tz, tz', w, ' (saltillo), representan sonidos descritos ya en la introducción.

f, sólo ocurre en el idioma de Jacaltenango y únicamente en la palabra "ca'fi" (anteayer). La "f" y la "w", representan sonidos alófonos de un solo fonema: la "w"

x, representa el sonido retroflejo descrito en la introducción.

ẍ, representa el sonido no retroflejo descrito en la introducción.

En Concepción Huista ocurren ciertas variaciones tales como: "w", antes de "i", y a veces antes de "a", "e", representa un sonido pronunciado con friccion.

l, r, w, y, representan sonidos sordos en posición final de la oración. En posición final de la sílaba, la "l" puede representar cualquiera de los tres sonidos: 1) "dl"; 2) "l", levemente golpeada; y 3) "l", del español. En otras posiciones l, r, w, y, representan los sonidos descritos en la introducción.

a, puede representar el sonido de "ä", o de "a", cuando precede a una sílaba acentuada.

e, representa su propio sonido cuando va antes de h, w, y, o cuando ocurre al final de palabra. En otras posiciones representa el sonido de "ë" descrito en la introducción.

i, u, representan los sonidos de "ï", "ü", cuando van antes de j, k', ñ, tx, tx'. En otras posiciones representan los sonidos de "i", "u".

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO KANJOBAL
San Miguel Acatán, Huehuetenango

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	an	= licor	pat	= ranchito	na	= casa
	aan	= elote	paat	= tortilla		
b	be	= camino	babel	= primero	nab	= lluvia
c	caj	= calor	tzocwi	= rajar	ac	= tortuga
c'	c'aj	= pulga	ac'atx	= pavo	ac'	= nuevo
ch	che	= caballo	icham	= anciano	pech	= pato
ch'	ch'en	= piedra	ach'e	= joven	pech'	= cucaracha
e	ec'al	= muchos	sec'	= trastes	ake	= lengua
	ee	= diente	yeen	= maicillo	—	
i	ita	= verduras	pichi'	= atole	chi	= gavilán
	—		—		chuc'lii	= beber
j	jos	= huevo	lujum	= gusano	baj	= hueso
k	kanab	= nuestra hermana	akbalil	= noche	nok	= animal
k'	k'ok'	= chilacayote	jak'ab	= tu mano	uk'	= piojo
l	laan	= mismo	tzolol	= mariposa	xol	= en
m	muc'	= humo	txame	= nariz	ch'im	= zacate
n	nen	= vidrio	noonja	= lleno	son	= marimba
o	on	= aguacate	som	= espuma	c'o	= máscara
	—		poom	= incienso	—	
p	pim	= grueso	c'uplei	= cortar	pop	= petate
qu	queneya	= banano	txiquine	= oreja	—	
q'u	q'uix	= espina	ẍq'ueytoj	= fue perdido	—	
r	—		nertoj	= halar		
s	si'	= leña	asun	= nube	is	= papa
t	te'	= madera, árbol	satcan	= cielo	tat	= espeso
t'	t'eyxin	= entonces	lit'bal	= tirador	bit'	= canción
tx	txa	= oración	txutxe	= madre	xotx	= caracol
tx'	tx'ow	= rata	jatx'i'	= tu perro	tx'otx'	= tierra
tz	tzu	= calabaza	matzati'	= piña	tzotz	= sonajero
tz'	tz'u	= gota (de agua)	atz'am	= sal	sotz'	= murciélago
u	us	= mosca pequeña	jun	= uno	c'u	= sol
	—		juun	= papel	—	
w	watx'	= bueno	awas	= tabú	xaaw	= luna
x	xi	= olla	jaxa	= ya es tiempo	ix	= mujer
ẍ	ẍi	= dice	wuẍtaj	= mi hermano	aẍuẍ	= ajo
y	ya'	= dolor	soyol	= chayote	chicay	= madre
'	—		wa'ne	= hacer	ja'	= agua

Alfabeto kanjobal

San Miguel Acatán, Huehuetenango
1972; revisado 1974

Arvid Westfall-Nancy, Lorensen de Westfall e Ilah Fleming

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 32 signos gráficos, de los cuales 27 son consonantes y 5 son vocales:

a, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, i, j, k, k', l, m, n, o, p, r, s, t, t', tx, tx', tz, tz', u, w, x, ẍ, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', k, k', t', tx, tx', tz, tz', w, x, ẍ, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, i, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

e, representa un sonido que a veces es igual al del español y en otras varía con un sonido intermedio propio.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas por lo que no se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

b, c'/q'u, ch', k', t', tx, tx', tz, tz', ' (saltillo) representan sonidos iguales a los descritos en la introducción.

k, se usa con poca frecuencia. En posición inicial de la palabra, representa un sonido igual al descrito en la introducción. Entre vocales o en posición final de la sílaba indica un sonido oclusivo pronunciado más hacia adentro con la faringe contraída. En posición inicial de la palabra, puede variar con "k' ". En otras posiciones puede sustituirse por la "k' " o el ' (saltillo).

l, en posición final de la sílaba, puede representar el sonido similar al del español, o un sonido ligeramente golpeado. En otras posiciones, el sonido es similar al del español.

n, antes de k, k', representa el sonido de "ñ" descrito en la introducción.

w, cuando precede a las vocales "i", "e", puede representar un sonido fricativo, sonoro y labial. En otras posiciones indica el sonido descrito en la introducción.

x, representa un sonido retroflejo, y la "ẍ" el sonido no retroflejo tal como se describe en la introducción.

e, cuando ocurre en una sílaba que termina en consonante (menos la "y"), representa el sonido de "ë" descrito en la introducción. En otras posiciones representa el de la "e" del español.

Ejemplos del uso de las letras del alfabeto kekchí
Cobán, Alta Verapaz

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	aran	= allí	jaloc	= cambiar	la	= chichicaste
ä	äk	= cerdo	yäl	= cierto	mä	= partícula negativa
b	ba	= taltuza	xmolbal	= recogerlo	ab	= hamaca
c	car	= pescado	jucub	= canoa	tzoloc	= aprender
c'	c'äm	= pita, bejuco	uc'al	= ella	uc'	= piojo
ch	chäbil	= bueno	ichaj	= hierba, zacate	ac'ach	= pavo
ch'	ch'am	= agrio	ca'ch'in	= pequeño	nach'	= cerca
cu	cua	= tortilla	acuïmk	= siembra	—	
e	elajic	= difícil	tel	= brazo	be	= camino
ë	ëlc	= salir	xbën	= primero	lë	= de ustedes
h	hab	= lluvia	cähib	= cuatro	—	
i	ixk	= mujer	sib	= humo	isi	= sácalo
ï	ïk	= carga	sïp	= hinchado	—	
j	jun	= uno	na'ajej	= lugar	yaj	= enfermo
k	käcua'	= señor	rakal	= grupo, división	bak	= hueso
k'	k'ek	= negro	lok'oc	= comprar	xuk'	= bastón
l	lucum	= lombriz	retalil	= señal	lol	= piloy
m	mol	= huevo	tumin	= dinero	nim	= grande
n	na'leb	= idea	c'anjelac	= trabajar	ban	= medicina
o	oxlaju	= trece	ch'op	= piña	ch'o	= ratón
ö	öb	= cinco	k'öt	= curva	xcö	= se fue
p	punit	= sombrero	pöpol	= alcaldía	sip	= garrapata
qu	quim	= ven	pë quem	= frente	—	
q'u	q'uil	= comal	iq'ue	= maguey	—	
r	ra	= dolor	taraj	= quiere	bar	= donde
s	sak	= blanco	sumsu	= casado	c'as	= deuda
t	tento	= necesario	atïnc	= bañarse	läat	= tú
t'	t'anoc	= caer, tumbar	set'oc	= cortar	but'	= creciente, llénelo
tz	tzoloc	= aprender	tzoltzo	= en fila	latz	= pégalo
tz'	tz'üm	= cuero	atz'am	= sal	batz'	= mono
u	ula'	= visitante	chun	= cal	mukmu	= escondido
ü	ül	= barranco	tzül	= cerro	—	
x	xic	= oreja	choxa	= cielo	rax	= verde
y	yaloc	= probar	mayej	= ofrenda	junmay	= veinte
'	—		po'ot	= huipil	sa'	= adentro

Alfabeto kekchí

Cobán, Alta Verapaz
1955; revisado 1974

Ruth Carlson, Guillermo Sedat S. y Francis Eachus.

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 34 signos gráficos, de los cuales 24 son consonantes y 10 vocales:

a, ä, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, ë, h, i, ï, j, k, k', l, m, n, o, ö, p, r, s, t, t', tz, tz', u, ü, x, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', h, k, k', t', tz, tz', x, y, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, e, i, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que no se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos del kekchí

b, c'/q'u, ch', h, k, k', t', tz, tz', x, ' (saltillo) representan los sonidos descritos en la introducción.

j, representa un sonido un poco más intenso y pronunciado más hacia adentro que el que tiene en el español.

l, r, u (esta última precedida por una vocal), representan sonidos que, a veces en posición final de la sílaba, resultan ensordecidos. En otras posiciones, "l", "r", representan sonidos similares a los del español.

y, en posición inicial de la sílaba representa un sonido paladial y sonoro, precedido por el de la "t" en el habla de Cobán. Para algunos hablantes de San Pedro Carchá, es el sonido de la "c" el que precede a la "y". En posición final de la sílaba, la "y" representa un sonido similar al del español; tiene un sonido similar a la del español en todas las posiciones.

cu, cuando precede a una vocal, puede representar un sonido igual al de cu, gü, w, en posición inicial de la sílaba. La "cu", corresponde a la "w" en los otros idiomas mayances.

Las vocales ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, representan sonidos prolongados de a, e, i, o, u del español. Se subrayan las vocales prolongadas para evitar la repetición más de dos veces de este símbolo como en "täälinak" (él correrá).

Ejemplos del uso de las letras del alfabeto mam
Ixtahuacán, Huehuetenango

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	ac'al	= milpa	cyaj	= cuatro	ja	= casa
ä	äc'l	= estar mojado	cyäj	= quedarse	—	
b	bak	= hueso	abaj	= piedra	cab	= panela
c	cu'c	= ardilla	pacal	= mariposa	xläc	= sordo
c'	c'um	= ayote	ac'aj	= nuevo	xawc'	= pichacha
ch	chi'	= dulce	sichil	= avispa	ich	= chile
ch'	ch'ï'x	= espina	sich'il	= fumar	ïch'	= ratón
cy	cyäk	= calor	xcyakil	= celar	xïcy	= conejo
cy'	cy'äk	= pulga	xcy'äkbaj	= uña	nicy'	= idea
e	ecy'	= gallina	chej	= bestia	be	= camino
ë	ël	= vez	nëjl	= adelante va	junkë	= uno de nosotros
i	is	= papa	sip	= garrapata	tchi	= miedo
ï	ïtz'j	= nacer	sïb	= humo	—	
j	jbal	= lluvia	txajan	= seco	c'oj	= máscara
k	käk	= seis	bakon	= arrancar	säk	= blanco
k'	k'äk	= negro	bak'on	= embarrar	k'ak'	= fuego
l	lok'	= adobe	k'olbel	= saludar	jul	= hoyo
m	muj	= nube	chemay	= tejer	pim	= grueso
n	näkchaj	= lejos	chenk'	= frijol	txun	= cal
o	oj	= aguacate	choc	= azadón	ko	= ¡vamos!
ö	öc	= contestación afirmativa	ch'öc	= sanate	—	
p	pöj	= pus	scöper	= soplador	pop	= petate
qu	quiẍ	= pescaso	—		—	
q'u	q'uïxbil	= herida	ẍq'uïcl	= cucaracha	—	
r	räx	= crudo, verde	—		tz'ar	= cuxin (clase de árbol)
s	snïcy	= hormiga	masat	= venado	jös	= huevo
t	toy'	= agujero	wï'tan	= ciprés	ch'ït	= pájaro
t'	t'iw	= águila	kít'itin	= resbaloso	slit'	= delgado
tx	txubaj	= madre	öjtxa	= antiguamente	butx	= nixtamal
tx'	tx'ötx	= tierra	kotx'a	= derrumbe	bötx'	= nervio
tz	txäj	= pino	bitzil	= cantar	tzätz	= espeso
tz'	tx'ü'm	= piel cuero	atz'an	= sal	batz'	= mono
u	us	= mosca pequeña	ch'ukal	= destruir	cu	= adiós
ü	üc'	= piojo	ch'ükl	= exacto	—	
w	wabaj	= tortilla	awal	= siembra	che'w	= frío
x	xjaw	= luna, mes	ch'xäk	= piedrín	cox	= cojo
ẍ	ẍaja'w	= tacuazin	yuẍbaj	= padrinos	ï'ẍ	= elote
y	yol	= palabra	byol	= matar	liy	= María
'	—		nchi'jxa	= hasta mañana	a'	= agua

ALFABETO MAM

Ixtahuacán, Huehuetenango
1949; revisado 1974

Edward Symulka y Patricio Ortiz Maldonado

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 39 signos gráficos, de los cuales 29 son consonantes y 10 son vocales:

a, ä, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', cy, cy', e, ë, i, ï, j, k, k', l, m, n, o, ö, p, r, s, t, t', tx, tx', tz, tz', u, ü, x, ẍ, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch, cy, cy', k, k', t', tx, tx', tz, tz', w, x, ẍ, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, e, i, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son graves por lo que se escribe el acento solamente en las que no lo son.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

b, c'/q'u, ch', cy, cy', k, k', t', tx, tx', tz, tz', x, ẍ ' (saltillo) representan sonidos iguales a los descritos en la introducción a los alfabetos.

l, w, y, representan sonidos sordos en posición final de la sílaba y también cuando ocurre después de una consonante sorda o al final de la oración.

r, ocurre con poca frecuencia en palabras propias del idioma.

t, como caso excepcional, antes de "x", es seguida de un guión para indicar que representa por sí misma un fonema, distinguiéndola así del fonema "tx", como en "t-xol" (en medio de), "txo'l", (tortear).

x, representa el sonido retroflejo descrito en la introducción.

ẍ, representa el sonido no retroflejo descrito en la introducción.

Las vocales a, e, i, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español, cuya duración puede ser la misma o un poco prolongada.

Las vocales ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, representan sonidos de menos duración que las anteriores, a veces con su misma calidad de sonido y, en otras, con sonidos iguales a los de ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, descritos en la introducción.

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO MAYA MOPÁN
San Luis, Petén

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posicion intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	ac'	= bejuco, lengua	pac'	= sembrar	püta	= guayaba
aa	aac'	= tortuga	paac'tic	= esperar		
b	bac	= hueso	abül	= jocote	jub	= pierna
c	cax	= gallina	chücüj	= caliente	winic	= hombre
c'	c'ooj	= máscara	ac'ü'	= noche	c'aac'	= fuego
ch	chich	= duro	ichac	= uña	naach	= lejos
ch'	ch'ich'	= arena	ch'uch'uy	= colgarse	ch'iich'	= pájaro
d	—		adü	= ¡diga!	—	
e	eq'uen	= cerdo	pec'	= perro	aléebe	= ahora
ee	ee'che'	= escalera	peec	= mover, hacer ruido	chayquee	= chichicaste
i	ic	= chile	sis	= helecho	p'iisi	= estar medio
i	iit'i	= reventar	siis	= frío	—	
j	ja'	= agua, lluvia	jo'jo'	= garza real	bej	= camino
l	lu'um	= tierra	quelem	= gordo	bu'ul	= frijol
m	mo'	= guacamaya roja	pemech	= almeja	pim	= grueso
n	naj	= casa	sinic	= hormiga	q'uin	= sol, día
o	on	= aguacate	pom	= incienso	chiwo	= tarántula
oo	oom	= espuma, hervir	poop	= petate	—	
p	pax	= marimba	pempem	= mariposa	tup	= arete
p'	p'ac	= tomate	loop'ol	= encorvándose	tup'	= inyección
qu	quimen	= muerto	pipitqui	= resbaloso	—	
q'u	q'uic'	= sangre	q'uinq'uiin	= tibia (temperatura)	—	
r	reex	= pájaro hormiguero	morot'	= especie de banano enano	—	
s	si'	= leña	müsüm	= camarón	us	= mosca pequeña
t	top	= flor	jeetel	= rajar	baat	= hacha
t'	t'up'	= dedo meñique	wüt'üj	= tamarindo	t'ot'	= caracol
tz	tzimin	= caballo	jützic	= dividiendo	tzo'otz	= pelo, pluma
tz'	tz'i	= pequeño	jütz'ic	= pegar, golpear	sotz'	= murciélago
u	uc'	= piojo	put	= pacaya	cu	= así
uu	uustic	= soplar	chuuc	= carbón		
ü	üc'aan	= hamaca	chüc	= rojo		
üü	—		tücüüntic	= siguiendo (San Antonio, Toledo; Belice)		
w	waj	= tortilla	chawac	= largo	xow	= gorgojo
x	xiquin	= oreja	ixi'im	= maíz	box	= negro
y	yaab	= mucho	ayin	= lagarto	toy	= araña
'	—		ta'an	= ceniza	che'	= árbol

Alfabeto maya mopán

San Luis, Petén
1961; revisado 1974

Matthew Ulrich y Rosemary Dixon de Ulrich

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 35 signos gráficos, de los cuales 24 son consonantes y 11 vocales.

a, aa, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', d, e, ee, i, ii, j, l, m, n, o, oo, p, p', r, s, t, t', tz, tz', u, uu, ü, w, x, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, d, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', p', t', tz, tz', w, x, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

e, i, representan sonidos que, a veces, son iguales a los del español, pero en otras, varían como sonidos intermedios propios de este idioma.

aa, ee, ii, oo, uu, ü, representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

üü, es una vocal prolongada adicional que se usa en los pueblos maya mopán de Belice, pero no en San Luis (Petén); por esa razón no se incluye en la lista anterior.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que se representa con signo ortográfico únicamente en las que no lo son.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

c'/q'u, ch', p', t', tz, tz', x, ' (saltillo), ü, representan sonidos iguales a los descritos en la introducción.

b, representa el sonido de la "b" española en posición inicial de la palabra. Entre dos vocales y en posición final de la sílaba, representa el sonido de la "b" mayance descrita en la introducción.

d, ocurre con poca frecuencia y sólo en posición intermedia de la palabra. Corresponde a la "'n" en otros idiomas mayances.

r, ocurre con poca frecuencia en palabras propias del idioma.

w, antes de "e", puede representar un sonido fricativo, sonoro y labial. En otras posiciones representa el sonido descrito en la introducción.

e, puede representar el sonido de "e", o de la "ë", descritos en la introducción.

i, puede representar el sonido de "i", o de la "ï", descritos en la introducción.

aa, ee, ii, oo, uu, representan vocales prolongadas iguales a las descritas en la introducción.

Ejemplos del uso de las letras del alfabeto pocomam oriental
San Luis Jilotepeque, Jalapa

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	ak'	= lengua	c'ah	= amargo	niew'a	= pobre
aa	aak'	= culebra	c'aah	= pleito	—	
c	cak'	= guayaba	chicop	= animal	pac	= anona
c'	c'ak	= pulga	ac'ach	= gallina	ac'	= nuevo
ch	chaj	= pino	cochic	= duro	c'uch	= zopilote
ch'	ch'ac	= carne	tich'iic	= siéntese	ch'ihch'	= metal
e	elq'uiniel	= ladrón	nehes	= pelo	e	= sí
h	ha'	= agua	ahk	= cerdo	poh	= luna, mes
i	ixim	= maíz	chimin	= bordón	nakeli	= salimos
ii	iic	= chile	chimiin	= estrella	hurq'uii	= derribar
j	jal	= mazorca	ijij	= caña	poj	= pus
k	koj	= nosotros	ikal	= mañana	sak	= blanco
k'	k'aak'	= fuego	ak'a'm	= noche	k'ohk'	= chilacayote
l	loch	= caracol	tehli	= hoyo	imul	= conejo
m	mix	= algodón	camnak	= muerto	nim	= grande
n	nak'ach	= ojo	sinic	= hormiga	chuun	= cal
o	ohch'	= elote	coc	= tortuga	—	
p	pat	= casa	chahpaat	= ciempiés (gusano)	pohp	= petate
p'	p'ac'	= úlcera en la boca	chap'ah	= asar	xiip'ip'	= un tipo de flor
qu	quiej	= venado	xiquin	= oreja	—	
q'u	q'uiix	= espina	uq'uej	= beber	—	
r	rax	= verde	reere'	= aquél	car	= pescado
s	siip	= garrapata	mies'al	= escoba	mis	= gato
t	tiew	= viento	quita'm	= tronco	tinamit	= pueblo
t'	t'usuuj	= prensado	eht'eli	= conocer	xiit'it'	= un tipo de flor
tz'	tz'i'	= perro	atz'am	= sal	suatz'	= murciélago
u	uc'	= piojo	ac'un	= patojo	ku	= negativo
uu	uuc'al	= vaso, taza	wac'uun	= mi hijo	—	
w	winak	= persona	ch'uwa'	= lodo	iew	= ayer
w'	w'ak	= hueso	aw'ix	= milpa	qui'i'm	= dos
x	xija'm	= caites	ixok	= mujer	k'uux	= moho
y	yihc	= terremoto	tiyan	= tigre	mahy	= tabaco
'	—		wi'ic	= tortilla	sii'	= leña

San Luis Jilotepeque, Jalapa
1964; revisado 1974

Raymond Zinn y Gail Lindell de Zinn

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 33 signos gráficos, de los cuales 25 son consonantes y 8 son vocales:

a, aa, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, h, i, ii, j, k, k', l, m, n, o, p, p', r, s, t, t', tz', u, uu, w, w', x, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

c'/q'u, ch', h, k, k', p', t', tz', w, w', x, ' (saltillo), representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, e, representan sonidos similares a los del e pañol.

i, o, u, representan sonidos que, a veces, son sir ilares a los del español pero, en otras, varían con sonidos intermedios propios de este idioma.

aa, ii, uu, representan sonidos prolongados propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que no se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

c'/q'u, ch', h, k, k', p', t', tz',' (saltillo), representan sonidos iguales a los descritos en la introducción.

n, representa el sonido de "ñ" antes de c/qu, c'/q'u, k, k'.

m, n, representan sonidos sordos en posición final de la sílaba y después de "h". En otras posiciones, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

p', en posición final de la sílaba, puede pronunciarse con retardo en abrir los labios. Al final de la oración, cuando existe este retardo, puede representar un sonido similar al de una "p'" seguida por una "m" sorda. En otras posiciones el sonido es igual al descrito en la introducción.

l, r, w, y, representan sonidos ensordecidos en posición final de la oración. En otras posiciones "l", "y", representan sonidos similares a los del español; "r" representa el sonido descrito en la introducción.

w, en posición inicial de la sílaba, cuando no está precedida por "u", representa el sonido de una "g" corta, fricativa y sonora, al cual sigue el sonido de la "w" descrito en la introducción. En otras posiciones representa el sonido descrito en la introducción.

w', 'm, son alófonos del mismo fonema que corresponde a "b" en otros idiomas mayances. El primero ocurre únicamente en posición inicial de la sílaba y representa el sonido de "w" descrito en la introducción, pero precedido por el sonido preglotalizado del ' (saltillo). El segundo ocurre únicamente al final de la sílaba y representa el sonido de "m" precedido o interrumpido por el sonido del ' (saltillo). La vocal que le sigue se modifica con un efecto de pronunciación producido por una ligera tensión de las cuerdas vocales (laringealización).

i, representa el sonido de la "i" española cuando aparece en una sílaba no acentuada que no termina en "k", "k'", y cuando está en una sílaba acentuada que termina en c'/q'u, ch', k', p', t', tz'. En otras posiciones, representa el sonido de "ï" descrito en la introducción.

o, antes o después de "k", "k'", puede representar el sonido de "ö" descrito en la introducción, o el de la "o" española. En otras posiciones, representa este último sonido.

u, representa el sonido de la "u" española cuando ocurre en una sílaba no acentuada, y el sonido de "ü" descrito en la introducción cuando aparece en una sílaba acentuada.

aa, ii, uu, representan vocales prolongadas iguales a las descritas en la introducción.

Existen dos diptongos: ie, ua, que corresponden a las vocales prolongadas, ee, oo, en algunos otros idiomas mayances. Ejemplos: "w' ie", camino; "uaj", aguacate; "ieh", diente; "suatz'", murciélago. Aparte de las vocales prolongadas y estos dos diptongos, no hay otros grupos de vocales.

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO POCOMCHÍ
San Cristóbal Verapaz, Alta Verapaz

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	ahl	= pesado	chaj	= ocote	ch'uma	= güisquil
ä	äk'	= lengua	chäj	= ceniza	rä	= amargo
b	boj	= licor	abix	= milpa	k'ab	= mano
c	cak'	= guayaba	tocom	= extraño	coc	= tortuga
c'	c'ak	= nigua, pulga	ac'al	= tierra	ac'	= nuevo
ch	chi'	= boca	chu'nchel	= todo	c'uch	= zopilote
ch'	ch'äk	= carne	ehch'anel	= dueño	ch'ihch'	= metal
e	ew	= ayer	k'ek	= negro	re	= él, ella
ë	ë	= diente	pët	= primero	—	
h	ha'	= agua	bahil	= esposo	bih	= nombre
i	ixïm	= maíz	isis	= ciprés	chi	= a
ï	ïs	= camote	mïx	= algodón	—	
j	jab	= lluvia	lajeb	= diez	abaj	= piedra
k	kes	= nido	ch'okoj	= murciélago	bäk	= hueso
k'	k'ïj	= sol, día	lok'ol	= comadrona	k'äk'	= fuego
l	las	= gallo	teleb	= hombro	tulul	= banano
m	mäm	= anciano	camanic	= trabajar	nim	= grande
n	najt	= lejos	sinic	= hormiga	chün	= cal
o	ok	= pie	miloj	= huevo	cho	= locación
ö	öj	= aguacate	milöj	= viga	ch'ö	= rata
p	po't	= güipil	tz'aplic	= cerrado	pohb	= petate
p'	p'ojoj	= coser	ch'ap'us	= doblar	—	
qu	quim	= morir	chiriquen	= abajo	—	
q'u	q'uix	= espino	ehq'uen	= esposa	—	
r	rab	= tamal	wiric	= dormir	car	= pescado
s	sak	= blanco	mesbal	= escoba	awäs	= papera
t	tap	= cangrejo	atop	= bueno	pat	= casa
t'	t'aksanic	= diluir, mojar	eht'al	= saber	t'öt'	= caracol
tz	tzublic	= junto	atza'n	= nariz	lotz	= tipo de trébol
tz'	tz'ï'	= perro	katz'um	= ombligo	bätz'	= mono
u	uc'	= piojo	suk	= sabroso	su	= tecomate
ü	ü	= un tipo de planta	sük	= nido	—	
w	winak	= hombre	ch'uwa'	= lodo	cow	= duro
x	xak	= hoja	ixok	= mujer	rex	= verde
y	yijal	= la mitad	ayu'	= aquí	c'oy	= mico
'	—		ho'ob	= cinco	tz'a'	= caliente

ALFABETO POCOMCHÍ

San Cristóbal Verapaz, Alta Verapaz
1960; revisado 1974

Marvin K. Mayers, Marilyn P. de Mayers, Ted Engel y Gloria de Engel

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 35 signos gráficos, de los cuales 25 son consonantes y 10 son vocales:

a, ä, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, ë, h, i,ï, j, k, k', l, m, n, o, ö, p, r, s, t, t', tz, tz', u, ü, w, x, y, ' (saltillo).

Para escribir este idioma, como se habla en San Cristóbal Verapaz, se agrega el signo gráfico adicional: p'.

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', h, k, k', p', t', t', tz, tz', w, x, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

e, representa un sonido similar al del español.

a, i, o, u, representan sonidos que, a veces, son similares a los del español y en otros casos, varían con sonidos intermedios propios de este idioma.

ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que no se representa con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

c'/q'u, ch', h, k, k', p', t', tz, tz', w, x, ' (saltillo), representan los sonidos descritos en la introducción.

En Tamahú, la "b" representa un sonido oclusivo y labial. En posición inicial de la sílaba es sonoro y preglotalizado. En posición final de la sílaba puede ser sonoro o sordo, preglotalizado o glotalizado y, cuando hay retardo en abrir los labios, al final de la oración, puede tener el sonido similar al de una "p' " seguida por una "m", sorda o sonora.

En San Cristóbal Verapaz, la "b", al final de la oración, representa un sonido oclusivo preglotalizado labial sonoro o sordo, con un retardo en abrir los labios que tiene

el sonido similar al de una "p' " o "b", seguida por una "m", sorda o sonora. En otras posiciones, representa un sonido fricativo labial y sonoro.

El sonido glotalizado de la "p' ", se encuentra exclusivamente en el pocomchí de San Cristóbal Verapaz.

j, representa un sonido pronunciado más hacia adentro que la del español.

l, r, representan en Tamahú sonidos sordos cuando ocurren en posición final de la frase. En otras posiciones, representan sonidos sonoros similares a los del español.

En San Cristóbal Verapaz, la "l", representa un sonido similar a la "l" española.

En San Cristóbal Verapaz, la "r", al final de una frase indica un sonido levemente fricativo, retroflejo y sordo. Al final de la oración, representa un sonido sordo y puede ser vibrante o fricativo y retroflejo. En otras posiciones, representa el sonido vibrante y sonoro del español.

i, puede representar el sonido de "ï", o de "i", antes de c, c', j, k, k', l, n. En otras posiciones, representa el sonido de la "i" española.

a, o, u, pueden representar los sonidos de ä, ö, ü, o a, o, u, antes de c, c', j, k, k'. En otras posiciones, representan los sonidos de a, o, u, del español.

ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, representan vocales prolongadas iguales a las descritas en la introducción.

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO QUICHÉ
Cantel, Olintepeque, Quezaltenango, San Cristóbal Totonicapán, Totonicapán

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	ajsic	= por arriba	cawaj	= tú quieres	ala	= muchacho
ä	äj	= elote	chäj	= ocote	c'ä	= hasta
b	buk	= vapor	cabir	= hace dos años	jäb	= lluvia
c	co	= duro	cäwacat	= pasea	cuc	= ardilla
c'	c'uch	= zopilote	ac'al	= niño	c'oc'	= buen olor
ch	chun	= cal	jachin	= ¿quién?	c'uch	= zopilote
ch'	ch'o	= rata, ratón	cach'obo	= ¿lo entiendes?	jach	= cosecha de maíz
e	elak'om	= ladrón	mes	= basura	be	= camino
i	ichic'	= sueño	iwir	= ayer	achi	= hombre
j	jolom	= cabeza	ojob	= tos	oj	= aguacate
k	kajok	= hacia abajo	sakaric	= buenos días	sak	= blanco
k'	k'am	= escalera, puente	ak'ab	= noche	k'ak'	= fuego
l	latz'	= aprotado	c'olom	= guardado	tz'il	= sucio
m	me's	= gato	imul	= conejo	am	= araña
n	no's	= chompipe, pavo	k'onk'otem	= gordura	tz'iquin	= pájaro
o	ojer	= antiguamente	chom	= gordo	co	= duro
p	patän	= mecapal, servicio	joropa'	= cuanto	chicop	= animalito
qu	qui	= maguey	oquem	= entrada	—	
q'u	q'ui	= muchos	niq'uiaj	= una parte de	—	
r	räx	= verde, azul	are'	= él	iwir	= ayer
s	si'	= leña	musib	= ladinos	c'as	= deuda, fiado
t	tu'j	= temascal	watit	= mi abuelo	ch'at	= cama
t'	t'ac	= barro	t'uyut'oj	= sentado	t'ot'	= caracol
tz	tzij	= palabra	itzel	= diablo	cutz	= nudo de árbol
tz'	tz'i'	= perro	ajtz'ak	= albañil	sutz'	= nube
u	ulew	= tierra	chuxcut	= al lado de	cusubu	= él le engaña
w	waral	= aquí	tewchibal	= bendición	tew	= frío
x	xan	= adobe	rajwaxic	= es necesario	muxux	= ombligo
y	yac	= gato de monte	cät'uyic	= se sienta	c'oy	= mono
'	—		wa'im	= comida	qui'	= dulce

ALFABETO QUICHÉ

Cantel, Olintepeque, Quezaltenango, San Cristóbal, Totonicapán, Totonicapán
1963; revisado 1974

David G. Fox, Carol Jager de Fox y Felipe S. Saquic Calel

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 30 signos gráficos, de los cuales 24 son consonantes y 6 son vocales:

a, ä, b, c/q, c'/q'u, ch, ch', e, i, j, k, k', l, m, n, o, p, r, s, t, t', tz, tz', u, w, x, y, ' (saltillo)

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan los sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch' k, k', t', tz, tz', w, x,' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, e, i, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

ä, representa un sonido propio de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas. En las palabras que van acompañadas de enclíticos o proclíticos, el acento recae en el último de éstos para formar el grupo tónico. En consecuencia, no es necesario usar el signo ortográfico. Ejemplos: "quinelic" (salgo); "quinel ch na bic" (salgo pues, por cierto).

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

c'/q'u, ch', k, t', tz, tz', x, ' (saltillo), ä, representan sonidos mayances, iguales a los descritos en la introducción a los alfabetos.

b, en posición inicial o medial de la palabra representa una "b" implosiva sonora o una "p'" sorda. En posición final de la palabra el sonido es sordo con marcado retardo en abrir los labios.

k', entre vocales, es sonora o sorda. En otras posiciones es similar a la descrita en la introducción.

n, representa el sonido de "ñ" antes de c/qu, c'/q'u, k, k'.

l, r, w, y, en posición final de la palabra representan sonidos sordos y fricativos. En posición inicial y medial de la palabra la, l, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

w, representa un sonido sonoro y labial que puede ser fricativo o no.

Las vocales, a, ä, e, i, o, u, se vuelven más prolongadas cuando ocurren en sílabas acentuadas, pero cuando aparecen en la penúltima sílaba se acortan y, en algunos casos, se neutralizan hasta desaparecer totalmente en la audición.

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO QUICHÉ
Sacapulas, Quiché

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	ac'	= gallina	chaj	= ceniza	xa	= solamente
aa	aac'	= bebida hecha de maíz para la semana Santa.	chaaj	= pino	wanixtaa	= despedida
b	bak	= hueso	quimbec	= voy	junab	= año
c	caw	= duro, ruidoso	quincwanec	= puedo	mac	= pecado
c'	c'o'x	= estómago	ac'al	= niño	ic'	= luna, mes
ch	chuj	= mal olor	achin	= hombre		
ch'	ch'at	= cama	quirch'ijañ	= aguanta	nuch'	= pequeño
e	elak'om	= ladrón	be'	= nombre	ne	= dudoso
ee	—		bee'	= oveja	—	
i	ic	= chile	ixim	= maíz		
ii	—		q'uiix	= vergüenza	—	
j	jab	= lluvia	rajal	= precio	ixba'j	= olla para agua
k	kol	= cuello	chokañ	= dueño	wak	= mi cerdo
k'	k'ak	= negro	tzk'at	= cabal	wak'	= mi lengua
l	latz'	= angosto	alit	= muchacha	imul	= conejo
m	maj	= no hay	timal	= despacio	am	= araña
n	nañ	= obligatorio	winak	= gente	wokan	= mi pie
n	—		caxlañway	= pan dulce	chokän	= dueño
o	otz	= bueno	chom	= gordo	—	
oo	—		boot	= algodón	—	
p	pix	= tomate	rapapec	= volar	pop	= petate
qu	quic'	= sangre	ritquel	= solo	—	
q'u	q'uix	= espina	riq'uin	= con él	—	
r	rax	= verde, azul	elara'	= él	car	= pescado
s	sak	= blanco	moosañ	= ladino	mes	= basura
t	tic'a'n	= siembra	c'atan	= caliente	ch'at	= cama
t'	t'ur	= gotita	quit'uruwec	= gotea	—	
tz	tzutz	= agudo	itzel	= diablo	sutz	= nubes
tz'	tz'e'	= perro	atz'am	= sal	sotz'	= murciélago
u	ulew	= tierra	wuj	= papel	—	
uu	—		c'uux	= tipo de árbol	—	
w	way	= comida, tortilla	awa'n	= siembra de maíz	tew	= frío
x	xan	= adobe	ixak	= mujer	xax	= delgado
y	ya'	= agua	bayom	= rico	bey	= camino
'	—		jo'ob	= cinco	jarpa'	= ¿cuánto?

ALFABETO QUICHÉ

Sacapulas, Quiché — Pat Hile y Ralph McCluggage
1972; revisado 1974

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 35 signos gráficos de los cuales 25 son consonantes y 10 son vocales:

a, aa, b, c/qu, c'/qu, ch, ch', e, ee, i, ii, j, k, k', l, m, n, ñ, o, oo, p, r, s, t, t', tz, tz', u, uu, w, x, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', d, k, k', tz, tz', w, x, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, e, i, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

aa, ee, ii, oo, uu, representan sonidos prolongados propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que no se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

b, c'/q'u, ch', k, k', ñ, t', tz, tz', x, ' (saltillo), representan los sonidos descritos en la introducción a los alfabetos.

l, r, w, y, en posición final de la sílaba representan sonidos sordos y fricativos. En posición inicial de la sílaba, representan sonidos similares a los del español, o, en el caso de la "w", como el sonido descrito en la introducción.

ñ, ocurre exclusivamente en posición final de la sílaba.

aa, ee, ii, oo, uu, representan vocales prolongadas, iguales a las descritas en la introducción.

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO TZUTUJIL
San Pedro La Laguna, Sololá

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	aj	= caña	chaj	= ceniza	c'ac'a	= nuevo
ä	äj	= elote	chäj	= pino	—	
b	bak	= hueso	nabey	= primero	jäb	= lluvia
c	cöj	= león	rucäb	= segundo	ic	= chile
c'	c'oj	= máscara	ac'ala	= niños	ic'	= luna
ch	choy	= diarrea	xawachc'aj	= *tú lo soñaste*	c'ü'ch	= zopilote
ch'	ch'oy	= ratón	ach'ü'c	= tu codo	xoch'	= lechuza
d	diso'm	= costura	adü'y	= tu olla	dod	= caracol
e	eyaj	= dentadura	xinq'uex	= canjeado	je	= sí
ë	ëc'	= gallina	xinq'uëx	= yo lo canjeé	—	
i	is	= camote	q'uix	= espina	achi	= hombre
ï	ïs	= pelo	q'uïx	= vergüenza	—	
j	jay	= casa	lajuj	= diez	k'ij	= día, sol
k	kochoch	= nuestra casa	akül	= tu cuello	ajk	= cerdo
k'	k'ak'	= fuego	ak'ä	= tu mano	ik'	= viento
l	lok'laj	= grande	ulew	= tierra	camsanel	= asesino
m	masat	= venado	tinamït	= pueblo	ixim	= maiz
n	nïm	= grande	xanän	= zancudo	xtän	= muchacha
o	oj	= aguacatal	k'or	= masa	catocto	= pase adelante
ö	—		k'ör	= perezoso	—	
p	pak'owsan	= hervido	xpëk	= rana	pojp	= petate
qu	quiej	= caballo	xquïn	= tecolote	—	
q'u	q'uël	= perico	ruq'uin	= con él	—	
r	räx	= verde	catwari	= duérmete	ojer	= antigua
s	säk	= blanco	nojsan	= lleno	bis	= tristeza
t	tem	= mecapal	sokta	= herida	ch'ajt	= cama
tz	tzij	= palabra	atzä'm	= tu nariz	cumätz	= culebra
tz'	tz'ï'	= perro	atz'am	= sal	sotz'	= murciélago
u	umul	= conejo	c'utun	= pedido	—	
ü	üc'	= piojo	c'utün	= enseñado	—	
w	winäk	= gente	wawe'	= aquí	utiw	= coyote
x	xäk	= tierra negra	ixïx	= vosotros	bix	= canción
y	yä	= agua	c'ayin	= vendido	bey	= camino
'	—	—	xe'ok'i	= lloraron	si'	= leña

Alfabeto tzutujil

San Pedro La Laguna, Sololá
1966; revisado 1974

James Butler y Judy Garland de Butler

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 34 signos gráficos, de los cuales 24 son consonantes y 10 son vocales:

a, ä, b, c/qu, c'/q'u, ch, ch', d, e, ë, i, ï, j, k, k', l, m, n, o, ö, p, r, s, t, tz, tz', u, ü, w, x, y, ' (saltillo).

Consonantes

c/qu, ch, j, l, m, n, q, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, c'/q'u, ch', d, k, k', tz, tz', w, x, ' (saltillo) representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

a, e, i, o, u, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, representan sonidos propios de este idioma.

Acento

La mayoría de las palabras son agudas, por lo que no se representa el acento con signo ortográfico.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

b, c'/q'u, ch', k, k', tz, tz', x, ' (saltillo), ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, representan sonidos descritos en la introducción a los alfabetos.

d, representa un sonido dental implosivo y sonoro cuando ocurre en posición inicial de la sílaba y, en posición final, un sonido sordo. Corresponde a "t' " en otros idiomas mayances.

j, tiene un sonido con más fricción en una sílaba acentuada que en una no acentuada. Antes de una consonante, al final de la sílaba, representa un sonido con muy poca fricción, que en el caso de algunos hablantes, está desapareciendo en esa posición. En posición final de la sílaba se pronuncia más hacia adentro y en posición inicial más hacia afuera.

k', puede representar un sonido implosivo sonoro o sordo en posición inicial de la palabra. En otras posiciones el sonido es igual al descrito en la introducción.

n, representa el sonido de "ñ" antes de c/qu, c'/q'u, k, k', w. En otras posiciones representa un sonido igual a la "n" del español. La "n" que indica el aspecto incompleto (tiempo presente), puede representar los sonidos de n, ñ, ñg, o ñ, en los siguientes casos: por lo general, en San Pedro La Laguna, los hablantes más jóvenes usan el sonido de "n", mientras que los de mayor edad pronuncian todas sus variantes, o, sea, como el sonido de "n", cuando precede al morfema que indica "él", "ella"; como el sonido de "ñ", cuando precede al morfema que indica "yo" o al que indica "ellos"; y como el sonido de "ñ", o "ñg", cuando precede a los morfemas que indican "tú", "nosostros", o "vosotros". En otros pueblos tzutujiles varía la manera de representar estos últimos morfemas. Por ejemplo, en Santiago Atitlán no se encuentra el sonido de "ñ".

l, r, w, y, representan sonidos fricativos y sordos en posición final de la sílaba.

l, y, en otras posiciones representan sonidos similares a los del español.

r, en posición inicial de la palabra, puede representar un sonido sonoro o sordo. Cuando es sonoro puede ser vibrante como la "r" española, o fricativo retroflejo. Cuando se encuentra en posición inicial en la sílaba, pero, en medio de la palabra, es sonoro.

w, antes de la "e" y la "i", representa un sonido fricativo sonoro y labial. En posición final de la sílaba, el sonido es levemente fricativo, sordo y labial. En otras posiciones representa uno igual al descrito en la introducción.

e, i, o, representan sonidos pronunciados con la lengua en posición un poco más baja que en el español.

Ejemplos del uso de las letras del alfabeto caribe centroamericano
Livingston, Izabal

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
a	aban	= uno	adádagara	= temblar	biáma	= dos
b	ban	= calcetín	dübü	= piedra	—	
c	cata	= ¿qué cosa?	acútaü	= espuma	—	
ch	chülüti	= él llegó	núguchu	= mi mamá	—	
d	duna	= agua	adaũnja	= tocar	—	
e	edéweja	= regalar	weyu	= sol, día	le	= éste
f	fáluma	= coco, cocotero	áfiuragua	= arañar	—	
g	gañé	= huevo	lagütü	= abuela de él	—	
gu	guibeti	= es mucho	éguei	= hombro	—	
i	iraü	= jugo, caldo	arígini	= ver	ídiburi	= pelo de cabeza
j	jaü	= hormiga	unjun	= paloma	—	
l	liguía	= él	fulánsu	= tabla	—	
m	müna	= casa	dimáasu	= domingo	—	
n	nefu	= nueve	abínaja	= bailar	dan	= tiempo
ñ	ñurú ba	= siéntate	añája	= están aquí	—	
o	oúnli	= perro	járougati	= hace calor	to	= ésta

EJEMPLOS DEL USO DE LAS LETRAS DEL ALFABETO CARIBE CENTROAMERICANO
Livingston, Izabal (continued)

Alfabeto	*Posición inicial*		*Posición intermedia*		*Posición final*	
p	pántatu	= ella es orgullosa	pápasi	= papas	—	
qu	queinsi	= quince	aquimuleja	= satisfacerse (de comida)	—	
r	rin	= arroz	iri	= nombre	—	
s	sisira	= maraca	mesu	= gato	—	
t	tati	= hermano mayor de ella	jati	= luna, mes	—	
u	ugúdi	= pie	mutu	= persona	újubu	= mano
ü	ügüraü	= hamaca	aműrü	= tú (en el habla del hombre)	iráü	= hijo, hija
w	watu	= leña, fuego	ágwiraü	= lágrimas	—	
y	yeiyawa	= piña	juya	= lluvia	—	
'						

ALFABETO CARIBE CENTROAMERICANO

Livingston, Izabal — Ilah Fleming
1961; revisado 1974

Para escribir este idioma se emplean 26 signos gráficos, de los cuales 19 son consonantes, 6 vocales y la tilde.

a, b, c/qu, ch, d, e, f, g/gu, i, j, l, m, n, ñ, o, p, r, s, t, u, ü, w, y, ´ (tilde).

Consonantes

b, c/qu, d, f, g/gu, j, l, p, r, s, t, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

ch, m, n, ñ, w, representan sonidos que a veces son iguales a los del español y, en otros, varían con sonidos propios de este idioma.

Vocales

e, o, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

a, i, u, representan sonidos que, a veces, son iguales al del español y, en otras, varían con sonidos propios de este idioma.

ü, representa un sonido propio de este idioma.

Acento

Cuando las palabras son monosílabas o disílabas graves, no se emplea el signo ortográfico ´ (tilde). Se emplea con palabras de dos sílabas que no sean graves y en las de más de dos sílabas.

Explicación de los signos que representan sonidos exclusivos de este idioma

f, l, s, y, representan sonidos similares a los del español.

b, d, g/gu, son oclusivas en todas las posiciones y representan sonidos sonoros similares a los del español, como en baño, domingo, gota, guerra. En sílabas no acentuadas, hay una tendencia a disminuir su sonoridad.

c/qu, p, t, representan oclusivas sordas. En posición inicial de una sílaba acentuada, pueden ser espiradas. En otras posiciones representan sonidos similares a los del español.

ch, puede representar el sonido de la del español; pero en posición inicial de una sílaba acentuada también puede ser espirada. En una sílaba no acentuada puede representar el sonido de "sh", del inglés, que es el primer sonido descrito para la "x", en la introducción, como en "núguchu" (mi madre).

j, generalmente, representa el sonido de la "h" inglesa descrito en la introducción; pero en posición inicial de la palabra, o en sílabas acentuadas, puede representar un sonido con más fricción, similar a la "j" del español. En medio de vocales nasalizadas representa el sonido de "h", pero también nasalizada, como en "unjun" (paloma).

m, n, en posición inicial de la sílaba representan sonidos similares a los del español. En posición final de la sílaba representan el sonido de nasalización de la vocal, o vocales, que le preceden. Antes de una consonante, también pueden representar un sonido con menos nasalización de la vocal, pero seguido por un sonido corto de m, n, ñ velar, descrita en la introducción, dependiendo de la consonante que le sigue, como en "agámbuni" (escuchar), "ugúndani" (gozarse), "afúngüruni" (tirar, disparar).

ñ, puede representar el sonido de una "y", nasalizada, similar pero no igual, a la "ñ" del español, como en "ñurú ba" (siéntate), "añája" (ellos están aquí). También se escribe una "ñ" entre vocales nasalizadas, cuando la primera vocal es "i", y cualquiera de las vocales es acentuada. En esta posición, la "ñ" representa nasalización de las mismas, como en "iñu" (alto), "siñáti" (es imposible).

r, representa un sonido vibrante como en "pero" del español. Los hablantes de Guatemala u Honduras la pronuncian, a veces, como la "rr" española; los de Belice, como la "r" inglesa.

w, en posición inicial de la sílaba y antes de "i", representa un sonido fricativo, sonoro y labial; antes de a, o, u, ü, representa el sonido no fricativo de la "w" inglesa descrito en la introducción; antes de la "e", puede representar el sonido fricativo o no fricativo, como en "wíeti" (está sucio), "watu" (fuego), "weyu" (sol). Cuando hay un grupo de tres vocales nasalizadas, donde la segunda es una "u", y además, cuando una de las primeras dos es acentuada, se escribe "nw" entre la segunda y tercera vocales. En esta posición, "nw" repre-

senta nasalización de las tres vocales con el sonido de una "w" corta entre las últimas dos, como en "loúnwe" (él muere).

a, representa el sonido de la "a" del español cuando no precede a las vocales altas, i, u, ü, como en "adádagara" (temblar), "tuágu" (sobre ella). Cuando está acentuada y precede a una "i", representa un sonido pronunciado en la parte más anterior de la cavidad bucal que la "a" del español, como en "lai" (ajo), "ai" (sí). Antes de "ü", representa el sonido de la "ä" descrito en la introducción, similar a la vocal de *but* (pero), del inglés, como en "aűdubu" (pueblo), "íraü" (jugo). Para algunos hablantes, cuando la "a" está acentuada y antes de "ü", puede representar el sonido de la "a" del español, o de la "ä".

Los hablantes de Guatemala pronuncian el fonema "a", antes de "i", "u", generalmente con sonidos similares pero no iguales a "e", "o", respectivamente, del español. Con el propósito de que la escritura se parezca más a la del español, para la ortografía práctica, en Guatemala, cuando la "a", que precede a las vocales "i", "u", no está acentuada, se sustituye por "e", "o", como en "naríjibei" (le voy a ver), "narijiboun" (la voy a ver).

Los hablantes de Honduras y de Belice pueden pronunciar el fonema "a" antes de "i" de cualquiera de las tres formas siguientes: 1) con el sonido de la "a", del español; 2) con el sonido de la "a", pronunciada en la parte más anterior de la cavidad bucal descrita anteriormente; 3) con el sonido de una "e", similar, pero no igual, al del español. Antes de la "u", se puede pronunciar este fonema con sonidos similares al de la "a", o al de la "o", del español.

e, antes de "i", representa un sonido similar al de la "e", del español; pero después de be, gu, m, qu, cuando representa el fomena "a", puede tener el sonido de una "ä" corta, descrita anteriormente, seguido por el sonido de "e", como en "beíbei" (uva del mar), "aríguei" (oreja). En otras posiciones representa el sonido de la "ë" descrita en la introducción, similar al sonido de "e" en "entender" del español, o en *bet* (apostar) del inglés, como en "edéweja" (regalar), "éguei" (hombro).

i, después de una "a", representa los sonidos de la "ï" o de la "ë" similar a los descritos en la introducción. El sonido de "ï" es similar al pronunciado en *it* (lo, la), del inglés. El sonido de "ë" en este caso es similar, pero más alto que la "ë" descrita anteriormente, como en "gáñigücha" (estaca de yuca). En otras posiciones, la "i" representa el sonido de la "i" del español, como en "arijini" (ver), "liguia" (él).

o, antes de "u", representa un sonido similar al de la "o", del español; pero después de b, g, j, puede tener un sonido de "ä", corta, descrita anteriormente, seguido por el sonido de "o", como en "oúnli" (perro), "joújadina" (comí), "narijiboun" (la voy a ver). Entre los hablantes de Honduras y de Belice, también puede representar el sonido de la "a", del español. La "o", antes de "u", es un alófono del fonema "a", del Caribe. En otras posiciones, la "o", representa un sonido más bajo que el de la "o", del español, similar, pero no igual, al de la "ö", descrito en la introducción. Se encuentra este sonido en un solo morfema caribe, "to" (ésta), y en palabras recién adoptadas del español, como en "ora" (hora).

u, antes de la "r", puede representar el sonido de "ü" descrito en la introducción, similar a como se pronuncia en *book* (libro) del inglés, como en "atúriaja" (estudiar), "abúremei" (dueño). En posición final de la palabra o antes o después de "a"; "o", o en las combinaciones "mug" y "nug", puede representar el sonido de la "u", del español o de la "o", similar al del español, pero más alto, como en "nitu" (mi hermana menor del hombre), "luágu" (sobre él), "járougati" (hace calor), "arúmuga" (dormir). Después de una consonante y antes de una vocal, la "u", no acentuada puede representar el sonido de una "w" o de una "u", como en "añáradagua" (ahogar), "buíti" (es bonito). En la ortografía práctica se escribe "u", en esta posición, con excepción de "gwe", "gwi", donde se emplea "w", como en "ágwiraü" (lágrimas), "gwe le" (ahora). En otras posiciones la "u", representa el sonido de la del español, como en "ugúdi" (pie), "túja bu" (su mano, de ella).

ü, después de ac, c, g, j, representa un sonido producido en la parte central de la cavidad bucal, con la lengua alta y relajada, y con los labios no redondeados, como en "jaü" (hormiga), "sagü" (costal). En otras posiciones representa un sonido producido de la misma manera, pero con la lengua no relajada, como en "achulűrüni" (llegar), "űguraü" (hamaca).

Todas las vocales de la ortografía práctica pueden tener calidad nasal y se escriben con una "m", o "n", al final de la sílaba para indicar la nasalización. Cuando la primera vocal de un grupo nasalizado es "i", y una del grupo es acentuada, se escribe una "ñ," entre la "i", y la vocal que le sigue. Véase la descripción de m, n, ñ, y los ejemplos dados allí.

Cuando a, e, o, preceden a las vocales i, u, ü, se pronuncian las dos vocales como un monosílabo, si la primera vocal no está acentuada, como en "noúfuri" (mi tía), "weíriti" (es grande), "járougati" (hace calor); pero si la primera vocal está acentuada, se pronuncia como un disílabo, como en "au" (yo hombre), "náuri" (mi machete).

Cuando i, u, ü, preceden a otra vocal, especialmente si la primera vocal está acentuada, fonéticamente puede tener el sonido de una "y", o "w" (fricativo o no fricativo), cortas en medio de ambas vocales, como en "ua" (no), "ui" (carne) "üi" (boa), "iéni" (mentira).

El acento ortográfico o prosódico representa un aumento de la intensidad, un tono más alto, y una prolongación de la sílaba sobre la cual recae.

Generalidades

Al final de una oración, se puede disminuir la intensidad de los últimos fonemas, por lo que no es posible distinguirlos si no se presta suficiente atención.

El caribe se habla en forma cadenciosa, con énfasis en las sílabas acentuadas. Las sílabas no acentuadas pueden fonéticamente prolongarse o volverse inaudibles, en relación con el ritmo adoptado.

Observación

Los hombres y las mujeres caribes de Centroamérica tienen variantes en su forma de hablar, pero sólo en ciertos aspectos del idioma, puesto que la de los primeros se deriva de la familia lingüística de los caribes de América del Sur, y la de las mujeres de la familia arawac de esta misma parte del continente.

El resultado es que los niños tienen que aprender primero la forma de hablar usada por la madre, y, en edad más avanzada, la del padre. La diferencia entre ambas formas se encuentra principalmente en los pronombres y en el género asignado a expresiones que se refieren al tiempo y a estados anímicos:

	Forma masculina	*Forma femenina*
yo	áu	nugúya
tú	aműrü	bugúya
ahora	gwe to	gwe le
cuando (de tiempo)	dan to	dan le
¡qué grande es mi corazón! (sorpresa)	wéiritu nanígui	wéiriti nanígui

Anteriormente estas diferencias eran más marcadas, pero han ido desapareciendo con el tiempo.

A NEW INUIT ORTHOGRAPHY FOR GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES
Report presented by Canada*

Résumé

Avant 1967, les noms d'origine inuit (esquimau) étaient orthographiés un peu au hasard. Au cours des 10 dernières années, une orthographe normalisée a été utilisée pour transcrire ces noms. En 1974, les Inuit se sont déclarés insatisfaits de cette orthographe et, avec l'aide du Ministre des affaires indiennes et du développement du Nord, ont étudié les questions posées par l'orthographe. La Commission inuit a recommandé une seule orthographe normalisée, mais avec une double forme de translittération en caractères syllabiques et romains. Celle-ci a été ratifiée par la Fraternité nationale inuit. A l'avenir, les noms nouveaux d'origine inuit devraient correspondre de plus près à leur prononciation.

Resumen

Antes de 1967, la ortografía de nombres de origen inuit (esquimal) se hacía un tanto al azar. Durante los últimos diez años, se ha utilizado una ortografía normalizada para transcribir esos nombres. Los inuit manifestaron su disconformidad con la ortografía en 1974 y, con la asistencia del Ministro de Asuntos Indios y Desarrollo Septentrional, investigaron los requisitos ortográficos para su idioma. La Comisión Inuit ha recomendado una sola ortografía normalizada, pero con una forma dual de expresión en caracteres silábicos y romanos, y que ha sido ratificada por la Hermandad Nacional Inuit. En lo futuro, los nuevos nombres de origen inuit deben reflejar con mayor fidelidad su pronunciación.

*

* *

Prior to 1967 the spelling of geographical names of Inuit origin was done in a rather haphazard fashion. At its annual meeting that year the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names agreed to use a new standard orthography devised by linguists in the Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development for all new names of Inuit origin. It was also agreed that established names should not be changed although they may not reflect the recommended orthographic forms.

The standard Inuit orthography appeared reasonably satisfactory for use in both English and French texts and for use in gazetteers and on maps. However, the Inuit themselves expressed reservations about the suitability of the orthography for all its language dialects. In 1974 the Inuit Tapirisat (National Inuit Brotherhood), which had been established three years earlier to serve the needs of the Inuit across Canada, asked the federal Government to establish a language commission to investigate the status and various aspects of the Inuit language.

The Minister of Indian Affairs and Northern Development was sympathetic to the proposal and made available the requested funds to the Brotherhood. He also seconded from his department a federal co-ordinator. The Brotherhood appointed the six Inuit commissioners, the Inuit director and the three-man advisory committee made up of authorities on the Inuit language. The commissioners visited the 50 or so communities in the north to record the views of the Inuit people. Tape recorders were used to make a record of the comments and, as well, to convey the difference among dialects to the various communities. The Commission also worked with the CBC Northern Service, the community councils and others interested in the language of the Inuit.

On completion of the Commission's fact-finding tour the following conclusions were drawn:

(*a*) There is no doubt that the Inuit language can survive. For the majority of the Inuit, no matter what age they are, it is still the preferred tongue. There is general alarm, however, at the threats to it from the powerful southern culture that is moving into the north, and fears that the Inuit language might be supplanted. But the optimistic view is that it can survive if certain actions are taken. It is evident that language, like gold, is merely a

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Mr. Stevenson, federal co-ordinator on the Inuit Language Commission (who also represents the Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development on the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names), appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.11.

tool but that languages and culture are inseparable. Common speech is one of the strongest human bonds and it is therefore a common language which above all unites the Inuit;

(*b*) It was recognized that a common system of writing was desirable. For one thing, the actual number of Inuit in Canada is small and without a common system they would be cut off, not only from each other but from their fellow Inuit across the Arctic from Siberia to Greenland. It was feared that the language might tend to disappear unless the Inuit themselves showed real interest and took definite steps to preserve it. They might then produce material in their own language and make contributions to literature, communications and culture that would survive the pressures from the south;

(*c*) At one time the Inuit had no written language of their own. After various attempts, influenced mainly by missionaries, the language was put into writing. Unfortunately, the Inuit ended up using several different writing systems, depending on the region. The Commission had originally planned to develop a single writing system, but resistance was met from many Inuit who could read only either in Roman or in syllabics.

Based on these conclusions the Commission made the following recommendation:

A single standardized Inuit orthography should be developed, but with a dual form of expression, in both syllabics and Roman characters.

In accordance with the recommendation, a dual Inuit language system was developed by the Orthography Committee and ratified by the Commission. In practice the resulting form of writing includes a slightly modified version of the syllabic system used in Baffin, Keewatin and Arctic Quebec regions and a standardized Roman orthography currently used in the Western Arctic and Labrador. A number of symbols considered redundant have been eliminated and one new symbol thought necessary to accurately represent a distinctive sound in certain regional dialects has been included. The dual orthographies have been arranged so as to reconcile the syllabic and Roman systems by achieving a high degree of transferability between the two, meaning that each syllabic symbol has its invariable equivalent in a cluster of Roman characters.

The implementation process of the dual systems as one of the Commission's recommendations supported by the federal territorial Governments is now with the Inuit Cultural Institute, an arm of Inuit Tapirisat of Canada at Eskimo Point, N.W.T. This is considered the appropriate organization to oversee any ongoing work of the Commission and the recommendations. Here, not only will steps be taken to safeguard the Inuit language, but necessary material will be developed to be used in the teaching of language courses to both children and adults. Steps will also be taken to use more fully such various media as radio and television.

This development of dual orthographies should facilitate the writing and spelling of Inuit toponyms and eliminate much of the confusion and distortion of the Inuit names.

The annex to this paper shows a selection of geographical names in their established forms (where applicable) and in their three Inuit forms (i.e. in the older Roman orthography, in syllabics and in the new Roman orthography).

Annex

A NEW INUIT ORTHOGRAPHY FOR GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

The following geographical names are selected to illustrate the new orthography in both syllabics and Roman orthography. It is not proposed at this time that any of the established geographical names will be officially changed to the new orthography. It will, however, be used for new name proposals or for other communications among the Inuit.

Established name, with Inuit name in former orthography	*Syllabics*	*New Roman orthography*
Eskimo Point (Arvia)	ᐅᕓ ᕝᐅ	Arvia
Whale Cove (Tikirakjuak)	ᑎᑭᕋᕐ ᔪᐊᖅ	Tikirajuaq
Chesterfield Inlet (Iglooligajuk)	ᐃᒡ ᓗᓕᒑᕐ ᔪᒃ	Igluligaarjuk
Baker Lake (Kamanituak)	ᖃᒪᓂᑦ ᑐᐊᖅ	Qamanittuaq
Coral Harbour (Salik)	ᓴᓪ ᓕᖅ	Salliq
Frobisher Bay (Ekaluit)	ᐃᖃᓗᐃᑦ	Iqaluit
Gjoa Haven (Ursuktuk)	ᐅᕐᓱᖅᑑᖅ	Ursuqtuuq
Cape Dorset (Kingaet)	ᑭᙵᐃᑦ	Kinngait
Pangnirtung	ᐸᖕ ᓂᖅᑑᖅ	Pangniqtuuq
Repulse Bay (Naujat)	ᓇᐅᔮᑦ ᐊᐃᐱᓕᒃ	Naujaat
Belcher Islands (Sanikiluak)	ᓴᓂᑭ ᓗᐊᖅ	Sanikiluaq
Tuktoyaktuk	ᑐᒃ ᑑᔮᖅᑐᖅ	Tuktuujaaqtuq
Inuvik	ᐃᓅᕐ ᕕᒃ	Inuuvik
Igloolik	ᐃᒡ ᓗᓕᒃ	Iglulik
Povungnituk	ᐳᕕᕐ ᓂᑐᖅ	Puvirngniqtuuq
Inoudjouac	ᐃᓄᒃ ᔪᐊᖅ	Inukjuaq
Fort Chimo (Kutjoak)	ᑰᑦ ᔪᐊᖅ	Kuutjuaq
Great Whale River (Kutjoarapik)	ᑰᑦ ᔪᐊᕌᐱᒃ	Kuutjuaraapik

THE TREATMENT OF TOPONYMS IN MANITOBA FROM LANGUAGES WITHOUT AN ALPHABET

Report presented by Canada*

Résumé

Aucune des langues amérindiennes du Canada n'a une orthographe normalisée, ce qui fait qu'il est difficile de bien orthographier les toponymes empruntés à ces langues. Compte tenu des enseignements que les toponymistes ont tirés de leurs travaux dans l'Ontario et au Québec, des avis de spécialistes ayant travaillé sur le terrain, et d'interprètes et de linguistes autochtones, on a mis au point des directives et des normes pour orthographier près de 3 000 nouveaux noms de lieux du Manitoba d'origine cree, ojibway, sioux et chipewyan. Ces directives permettront aux utilisateurs de cartes qui connaissent l'alphabet latin de prononcer les noms amérindiens de facon à être compris des autochtones.

Les toponymes établis ne seront pas modifiés à moins que la population locale ne le souhaite. Si un lieu est désigné par des noms empruntés à plus d'une langue, on ne retiendra qu'un seul nom, le plus connu.

On compte que ces directives seront mises en pratique dans d'autres parties du Canada.

Resumen

Ninguno de los lenguajes amerindios del Canadá tiene una ortografía normalizada, lo que hace difícil el empleo de una ortografía adecuada para los topónimos derivados de esos idiomas. Basándose en la experiencia de expertos en toponimia de Ontario y Quebec y en el asesoramiento de personal sobre el terreno y de intérpretes y lingüistas nativos, se han preparado directrices y normas que son adecuadas para fijar la ortografía de casi 3.000 nuevos nombres derivados de las lenguas cree, ojibway, sioux y chepewyan en Manitoba. Las directrices permitirán que los usuarios de cartas familiarizados con el alfabeto romano puedan pronunciar los nombres amerindios de manera reconocible por los propios nativos.

Los topónimos ya establecidos no se cambiarán a menos que los residentes locales lo prefieran. Si localmente se utilizan los nombres de más de un idioma se registrará para cada accidente geográfico uno solo, dándose preferencia al que sea relativamente mejor conocido.

Se espera que las directrices tengan aplicaciones prácticas en otras partes del Canadá.

*

* *

Canada has a multiplicity of Amerindian languages and dialects, none of which has a satisfactory standardized orthography. This presents a problem to the members of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, who, in pursuing a policy of assigning first consideration to names with established public use, must provide spellings in the Roman alphabet for the geographical names used by the Amerindian peoples. The toponyms devised for these names must be transcribed into a form mutually acceptable to the Amerindian peoples, to map users unfamiliar with their languages and to cartographers. This paper will examine some of the approaches to the problem used in Canada at the present time.

Current practice in Canada

Ontario

In 1973, the Province of Ontario conducted a toponymy study at Moose Factory, on the west side of James Bay. A means of romanizing native names was developed based on recommendations of a qualified linguist, specifying vowels and consonants that should or should not be used when reproducing Cree names. The Ontario study established guidelines based on the creation of phonemes in order to reproduce as closely as possible the native names, and these guidelines have been very useful in the preparation of those in use for Manitoba.

At present, the province consults linguists when any new Amerindian names are reported, and both a linguist and a native person occupy seats on the Ontario Geographic Names Board.

Quebec

The Province of Quebec is currently engaged in a field programme on the east side of James Bay. In this study, the people being dealt with are Cree speakers, and the toponyms obtained are being spelled on the basis of phonetics.

One element of this field project is much different from those in use in Manitoba and Ontario: The native toponyms being approved are in a form suitable for French-speaking persons. This results in word formations that utilize different letters or groups of letters than would be used in English to provide the same sound. For example, the letters "ch" are used for the English sound "sh"; "qu" for the English "kw"; "ou" for "w", "oo", or "u".

The Department of Indian and Northern Affairs

This arm of the federal Government has jurisdiction in the North-west Territories, in Yukon Territory, in national parks and on all Indian reserves. The Department is represented by a member of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, who assumes responsibility for all geographical names occurring in these areas.

The policy adopted by the Department of Indian and Northern Affairs has two parts. For Inuit names, a

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Michael Munro, head of field research for the Toponymy Division, Surveys and Mapping Branch, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.14.

standard orthography from which spellings can be provided for all new names has been in use since 1965, and is currently being revised. However, in the case of names of Amerindian origin for which there exists no written orthography, the Department accepts the spellings provided by the regional offices.

The Department translates into English or French approximately 30 to 35 per cent of the new submissions of Amerindian origin. This is done either because a name is unwieldy due to its length, or because it is much too difficult for map users to pronounce.

The approach in Manitoba

Toponymy Study, 1975–1978

A federal-provincial toponymy study (involving the Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Canada, and the Department of Renewable Resources and Transportation Services, Manitoba), was initiated in the province in 1975 and completion is expected in 1978. This study consists of interviewing local people and conducting archival research at all populated places in the province, including the most remote. It is expected that by the end of the study the existing stock of approved toponyms will be doubled, from 7,500 names to approximately 15,000. Of these new names, it is expected that 50 per cent will be of Amerindian origin. A method had to be determined to devise phonemes in the Roman alphabet suitable for word construction, while maintaining the integrity of the native names.

Amerindian names

The importance of collecting, retaining and applying native names should not be underestimated. Although constituting only 4 per cent of the province's population, the native people inhabit approximately two-thirds of the land area of Manitoba. With the new inroads resource companies are making into remote areas, and the associated large-scale mapping programmes being undertaken, the need to safeguard the toponyms of the indigenous people becomes more and more acute. These new mapping programmes have necessitated great numbers of accompanying identifiers in the form of toponyms. In the past, it has been Government practice to assign names honouring war casualties, bush pilots and pioneers, while private industry has provided names which are even more alien to the area.

Soon after the current study began, the large numbers of native names in the Sioux (Assiniboine), Cree, Chipewyan and Ojibway (Saulteaux) languages made it apparent that a comprehensive and consistent approach to the transcription of native names into forms recognizable in the Roman alphabet was needed. Acceptable forms were determined by assessing the recommendations of the field men, native interpreters and linguists and by comparison with words in native-language dictionaries.

Phonemes provided by field men

The spellings provided by the field researchers for the various toponyms of native origin are useful for reference, but much less reliable than those provided by the native interpreters. Judging from attempts made by field men to reproduce in the Roman alphabet the sounds of native toponyms, it has become evident that the use of local interpreters is necessary if the nuances and inflections of the various languages are to be accurately recorded.

Phonemes provided by native interpreters

It is fortunate for the toponymy study that interpreters are now available who have been schooled in English and are familiar with the Roman alphabet and its phonetics. The performance of these people during interviews is impressive. They are painstaking and meticulous, sounding each name out slowly, then checking and rechecking the sounds; they record in the Roman alphabet, by themselves and with the help of others.

The spellings provided by the native interpreters reflect the sounds in the names and respect the differences that characterize each individual dialect. This is an especially important consideration in areas where one language has been heavily affected by another, to the extent that actual words of one language have been incorporated in the other. An example of this occurs at Island Lake, where the language spoken "is a mixture of Saulteaux and Cree; some words being Saulteaux others being Cree; compound words being in many cases hybrids of the two".[1] Such areas as this, where the language is unique unto itself, place severe limitations on the usefulness of dictionaries and other sources, thus increasing the degree of reliance that must be placed on the phonetic spellings supplied by the local interpreters.

Linguists

There are no linguists working directly on the accumulation of this information in the field-work. However, linguists have pointed out problems that will be encountered with the various language groups and have recommended certain guidelines that should be followed for the Algonquian languages, Cree and Ojibway. A report on the Athapaskan language group, including the Chipewyan language, is in progress.

Dictionaries of Indian languages

It has been found that the dictionaries available for the Indian languages in Manitoba are quite inadequate for the study's needs. A problem with them is that they generally reflect only one dialect of a language and are therefore not necessarily useful for all peoples speaking the same basic language. "Unlike some European languages, which designate one dialect as the 'standard', or socially most acceptable, way of speaking, Cree is equally 'proper' when spoken in each and all of its regional variations".[2] This statement, while referring specifically to only one of the languages being dealt with, is applicable to them all.

---

[1] H. Christopher Wolfart, "Boundary maintenance in Algonquian", *Amerindian Anthropologist*, vol. 75, No. 5 (1973).

[2] H. Christopher Wolfart and Janet F. Carroll, *Meet the Cree* (University of Alberta Press, 1973), p. 5.

In addition, the dictionaries available for these languages are usually quite old and do not necessarily reflect either the modern language or the changes that have taken place over the last one hundred years or more. Languages (like toponyms) are dynamic, and since these are not written languages, and thus lack type of uniformity that speakers of European languages expect, the changes are much more dramatic. Not only do the modern Indians not know the meaning of many older toponyms, but they may not be able to understand the language variations that occur from one band to another.

Established names of Amerindian origin

Toponyms of Amerindian origin that have appeared in print for extended periods of time are left unaltered unless it is the wish of the local people to have them changed. While the spellings of these names may not coincide with the guidelines used to establish accurate spellings, and the names may not be recognizable in the language of today, it is important to remember that with the dynamics of unwritten languages, changes occurring in the oral languages may render many old and traditional meanings obscure. Nonetheless, these names have persisted and are in local use even if the origin and meaning have been lost.

In addition, many established names may have originally been improperly recorded, but because they have existed on maps and in documents for so long the corruptions have become the accepted forms and have been adopted by the local people.

Double naming

The problem of double names was encountered in localities with substantial English and native populations, where each language group might use a different name for the same feature. An example is Clearwater Lake, which is known by the local Indians as Atikameg Lake (meaning "white-fish"). An option open in cases like this is to use a double form such as Clearwater (Atikameg) Lake, but this method becomes unwieldy and impractical. As a result it has been decided that the least commonly used name be placed on record only, while the other be approved for mapping and documentary purposes.

Verification of the proposed forms

The Amerindian names that are proposed for approval are recorded and submitted on maps to the native band councils for their comments before final approval is made. While the response that can be expected has not yet been determined, it is hoped that there will be a high degree of co-operation.

Amerindian place names: guidelines and examples

Some guidelines are provided herewith for the transcription of Amerindian toponyms:

(*a*) The letters "p" and "t" are to be used rather than "b" and "d";

(*b*) For Cree names, the letter "k" is to be used rather than the letter "g". However, this does not hold true for Saulteaux, where "g" is used;

(*c*) The letters "ch" should be used rather than the letter "j";

(*d*) The letter "s" should be used rather than the letter "z";

(*e*) The letters "sh" should be used rather than the letters "zh";

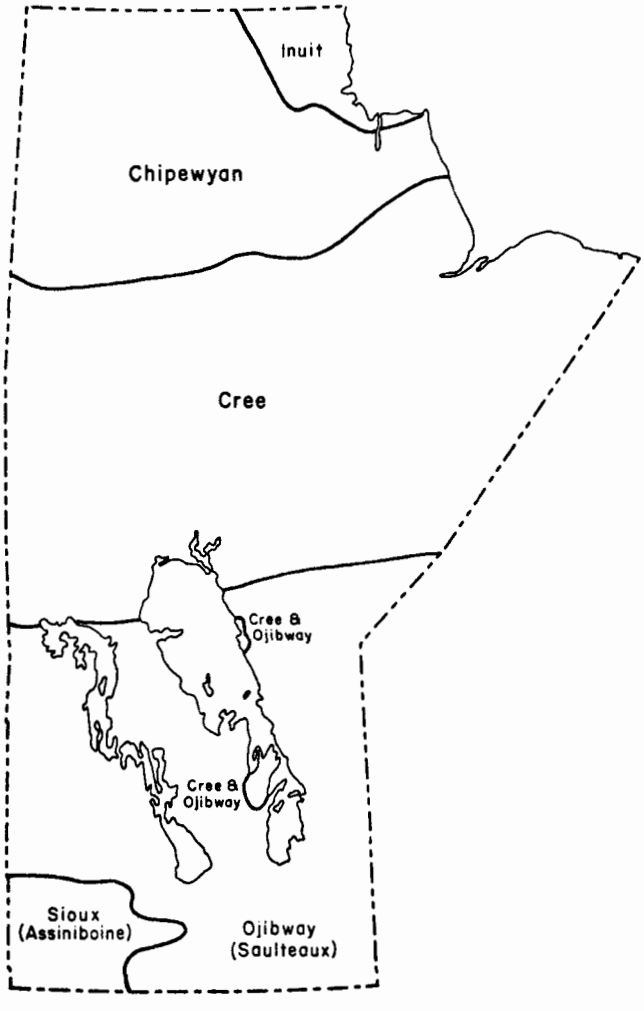
(*f*) The letters "ay" should be used rather than the letter "ā" where it has a long sound (as in the word "day");

(*g*) The letter "a" should be used for such sounds as in the words "father" and "cat";

(*h*) The letters "ee" should be used rather than the letter "ē" where it has a long sound as in the word "be", except for the final letter in a name where it might be mistakenly assumed that emphasis be placed on the final syllable;

(*i*) The letter "o" should be used for such sounds as in the words "rope" or "cook";

DISTRIBUTION OF AMERINDIAN LANGUAGE GROUPS IN MANITOBA



(*j*) The letter "e" should be used for such sounds as in the word "pet";

(*k*) The letter "i" should be used for such sounds as in the word "mint" and as a word ending to represent the sound of a long "ē" as in the word "ski". It should also be used to represent an "ē" when followed by a vowel, as in the word "axiom";

(*l*) The letters "kw" should be used rather than "qu"; and

(*m*) All marks (i.e. diacritics, accents, wedges, raised dots, hyphens etc.) should be avoided.

The following are a few examples of recommended geographical names:

Kokookuhoo Lake ("Nightowl lake");
Kasheesheepeekak Lake ("Lake where the duck was lost");
Kakenosaykak Lake ("Lake with many fish");
Kasaseepakaneekeesink Creek ("Where the water sometimes flows over the muskeg before flowing under it");
Kitchi Lake ("Big lake");
Wawakuskwayank Creek ("Winding marsh creek");
Gachekwaywaygegong Rapids ("Where the rapids make a drumming sound");
Atik Bay ("Caribou bay"); and
Nasatagun Creek ("Creek from the lake that is used for travelling back and forth").

Conclusion

The Manitoba Toponymy Study was started in order to gather, in a systematic way, the toponyms in use for the geographical features throughout the province. As a result, an estimated 3,000 new names of Amerindian origin will be made available for topographical maps. Since no acceptable Roman orthographies were available at the outset of the Project, it was necessary to devise guidelines and standards for the creation of phonemes to be used in forming these names. The guidelines established permit map users familiar with the Roman alphabet to pronounce the Amerindian names in a way that will make them recognizable to local native people.

It is expected that these guidelines will have practical application in other provinces and territories as toponymic studies are undertaken there.

THE SITUATION IN THE PROJECT TO ELABORATE A SINGLE ROMANIZATION SYSTEM FOR THE CYRILLIC ALPHABET FOR INTERNATIONAL USE

Report presented by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics*

Developments in international relations have created an evident and urgent demand for a single romanization system of the Cyrillic alphabet. In recent years it has become especially clear that the sectors of such a system application go beyond the framework of geographical names and cover other fields (personal names, documents, bibliographical information etc.). No doubt, such a system may be recognized as an international one if it is sanctioned by the country whose geographical names are converted.

The problem of the elaboration of a single romanization system for the Cyrillic alphabet, which serves several languages (languages not only of the USSR but also of other countries) turned out to be a more complicated one than it could be expected. The elaboration of such a system has been conducted by different national and international organizations for several decades. At present this work is conducted in the USSR by GOSSTANDART (All-Union Research Institute of Technical Information, Classification and Codification), the USSR Academy of Sciences and a number of other agencies; the main international organizations working in this field are the United Nations, ISO and the Council for Mutual Economic Assistance (COMECON). In order to make the system a truly universal one it is necessary to coordinate the actions of all these organizations.

The most essential point to be decided in the elaboration of a romanization system for the Cyrillic alphabet is what kind of system it should be: a system of monographs with diacritics or a system of digraphs. Practice proved the progressiveness and perspectiveness of the system of monographs with diacritics because it is neutral to Roman-writing languages and more economical.

The present state of affairs in the romanization of the Russian alphabet is as follows:

(*a*) There is a Soviet State Standard (GOST) that is based on digraph system but that permits the application of other systems for conversion of geographical names. The validity of the GOST system expires shortly, and it will be revised;

* The original text of this paper, prepared by A. M. Komkov, Vice-Chairman, Permanent Joint Commission on Geographical Names, Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.21.

(*b*) Beginning in 1967, Soviet cartography has used the system elaborated by the USSR Academy of Sciences in 1951–1956, which is mainly based on the use of monographs with diacritics;

(*c*) The ISO system, which is known in several variants, is at present under revision. The elaborators of the latest variant, ISO/DIS-9, again renounced the use of digraphs even as alternative variants (which was admissible according to document ISO R9-68) and in most cases came back to monographs;

(*d*) In 1976 such a project was drafted by the COMECON countries. The COMECON project, which is to be approved in 1977, is also based on monograph system, though it accepts the use of digraphs for computer processing. Its main principles are close to those of the ISO system and at present the work is under way for bringing these systems closer to one another in order to elaborate a single romanization system for all Cyrillic alphabets that will meet the requirements of COMECON and ISO. The main task here is to get approval of the projects by the Cyrillic-writing countries: Bulgaria, the USSR, Yugoslavia and Mongolia, because certain items of the Project are contradictory to the national traditions of those countries.

Thus, transition from the romanization system currently in use in cartography to a new one is closely connected with the elaboration of a single romanization system for Cyrillic script. At present such a system is under intensive elaboration.

The main romanization systems of the Russian alphabet are presented in table form in the annex to the present paper.

Annex

THE MAIN ROMANIZATION SYSTEMS OF THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET

Russian alphabet	*GOST 16876-71*	*USSR Academy of Sciences 1951-1956*	*ISO DIS-9 1975*	*COMECON 1976*
а	a	a	a	a
б	b	b	b	b
в	v	v	v	v
г	g	g	g	g
д	d	d	d	d
е	e	e/je[a]	e	e
ё	e/ë	'o/o/jo[a]	ë	ë
ж	zh	ž	ž	ž
з	z	z	z	z
и	i	i/ji[a]	i	i
й	j/jj[b]	j	ǰ	j
к	k	k	k	k
л	l	l	l	l
м	m	m	m	m
н	n	n	n	n
о	o	o	o	o
п	p	p	p	p
р	r	r	r	r
с	s	s	s	s
т	t	t	t	t
у	u	u	u	u
ф	f	f	f	f
х	kh	ch	h	h
ц	c	c	c	c
ч	ch	č	č	č
ш	sh	š	š	š
щ	shch/q[b]	šč	šč	ṡ
ъ	"	—	ă	ă
ы	y	y	y	y
ь	'	'/-[a]	'	'
э	e/eh[b]	e	ě	è
ю	ju	'u/ju[a]	ju	ü
я	ja	'a/ja[a]	ja	ä

[a] Position variants.
[b] Variants acceptable for computer processing.

ROMANIZATION

Paper presented by the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland*

Too often in the discussion of international standardization of the spelling of geographical names there is found to be a tacit assumption that the Roman (Latin) alphabet is a single writing system into which names from other alphabets or scripts can be readily converted, and that the result will be a rendering of names satisfactory to all whose language makes use of the Roman alphabet.

In fact the Roman alphabet has been adopted as an alphabet for the writing of languages for which it was never intended and it is often, therefore, ill-suited to the phonetic character of the language. In spite of a common script the names of one language present written forms alien to another language, often evoking extreme difficulty in pronunciation; on occasion the written forms of names may prove unpronounceable to non-native speakers. Fortunately, the languages that present the greatest difficulty to most of the rest of Roman-alphabet users are few in number. Nevertheless, the divergencies in the phonetic character of the letters of the Roman alphabet, as between English, Polish, French, Czech, Spanish, Portuguese, Dutch, German, Scandinavian etc., are too great to be covered by an adaptation of the Roman alphabet except with the addition of so great a number of accents, diacritical signs, modified letters and special characters as to defeat the object of general intelligibility originally intended. To attempt to promote standardization by such means would compound the confusion it was intended to alleviate.

Some concession is therefore necessary on the part of the Roman-alphabet area as a whole if any form of standardization is to be achieved. Since the alphabet cannot be adapted to suit all languages it follows that

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.23.

some languages must be excluded in selecting the Roman-alphabet form most suited to the purpose of standardization.

International standardization in the writing of geographical names, like all other forms of standardization, must consist of the twofold process of devising standards and then applying them. Unless recommendations on the standardization of geographical names are implemented, standardization cannot be said to have taken place and the efforts to promote a system are invalidated. Whether domestic or foreign, the degree of standardization of geographic names depends, not on whether experts have agreed standardization measures, but on whether the measures proposed have been found to be acceptable to the broad mass of users in the Roman-alphabet countries in which standardized spellings are destined to replace those in current use.

In the light of these reflections there is really no practical alternative but to base standardization on the broad principle of the phonetic structure of one Roman-alphabet language, adding suitable digraphs, diacritical marks or modified letters to make up deficiencies in the phonetic range. Should this prove infeasible, standardization may be achieved by limiting the language used for standardization purposes to the three languages—English, French and Spanish—that serve as the working languages of the United Nations and also together account for the overwhelming bulk of the world population using the Roman alphabet. The benefit to the United Nations and its affiliated agencies will be immediately apparent.

To limit the standardization of the spelling of geographical names to the three languages English, French and Spanish would not mean that discussion of the problem needs to be restricted to the native speakers of those languages. Indeed, the widest possible co-operation between experts from all linguistic areas who can contribute from their geographical or linguistic knowledge to standardization of the spelling of geographical names is not just desirable but absolutely essential, since the resultant spelling is intended for the whole Roman-alphabet area and not just that part represented by those three languages.

As has already been stated, standardization cannot be said to have been achieved until the standardization proposed has been adopted and applied by a given country to the broad mass of geographical names at its disposal. Here the accuracy of the names and the positive identification of their location are vital factors. If the name is in doubt, if its location is uncertain, then the function of the name is greatly restricted. To urge its acceptance as a substitute for an existing name simply adds to the number of uncertainties and ambiguities.

Finally, the Conference is urged to keep in mind throughout its deliberations the danger of advocating measures that invalidate what is now in existence without providing a satisfactory alternative. In the absolute, the aim of standardization must be to remove or, should that not prove possible, to reduce the number of alternative ways of spelling geographical names. At the same time, care must be taken to ensure that a new era of confusion does not result from attempts at standardization. If the present large stock of names existing in English, French and Spanish were superseded by so-called standardized names, fewer in number, less precise in identity of location and less acceptable, or unacceptable, in spelling, then the interests of the whole world and the United Nations and its affiliated agencies will have been poorly served.

The Conference is therefore asked to devote its attention to consideration of the following:

(*a*) For international standardization of the spelling of geographical names in non-Roman alphabet areas the phonetic conventions of English, French or Spanish will be used as the basis for converting the names into Roman-alphabet form;

(*b*) In the event of a single system of romanization not proving acceptable for international use, separate systems will be devised based on two or on all three of these languages.

ROMANIZATION IN JAPAN
Report presented by Japan*

Résumé

La pratique consistant à romaniser le japonais remonte aux dernières années du XVI[e] siècle.

Diverses méthodes avaient été élaborées à cette fin, dont deux — le système *Nihonsiki* (adopté en vertu d'une directive de la Présidence du Conseil) et le système *Syûsei Hebonsiki* (système Hepburn modifié) — ont été principalement utilisées depuis le début de l'ère Syôwa.

Tenant compte des appels pressants en faveur de la normalisation, le gouvernement a effectué pendant plusieurs années des recherches et des enquêtes qui ont abouti à la publication en 1937 d'une directive de la Présidence du Conseil concernant une méthode unique de transcription du japonais en caractères romains — le système connu aujourd'hui sous le nom de *Kunreisiki*.

Depuis la seconde guerre mondiale, le système *Syûsei Hebonsiki* a été fréquemment utilisé, ce qui a introduit la confusion dans la romanisation. C'est pour répondre à la nécessité croissante de normaliser la situation que le gouvernement a publié en 1954, sur la base des résultats de cinq années de travaux, une circulaire et une directive de la Présidence du Conseil.

La circulaire et la directive se fondent sur l'idée que le système *Kunreisiki* est actuellement le meilleur qui soit, et il est possible que les systèmes de romanisation utilisés

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.61.

actuellement soient finalement unifiés dans le cadre du système *Kunreisiki*.

Resumen

Se dice que la romanización del japonés se inició en los últimos años del siglo XVI.

Se emplearon diversos métodos para la romanización y dos de ellos —el *Nihon Siki* (sistema adoptado en virtud de una orden del Gobierno) y el *Syûsei Hebon Siki* (sistema Hepburn modificado)— han sido los más utilizados desde el comienzo de la era Syêwa.

En respuesta a las muchas peticiones de normalización, el Gobierno llevó a cabo durante muchos años una serie de investigaciones que dieron lugar a la publicación en 1937 de una Disposición Oficial del Gobierno relativa a un método uniforme para escribir en caracteres romanos. Este es el sistema que en la actualidad se conoce con nombre de *Kunrei Siki*.

Desde la segunda guerra mundial, cada vez fue más frecuente el uso del *Syûsei Hebon Siki*, lo cual creó cierta confusión en materia de romanización. Por ello, atendiendo la necesidad cada vez mayor de normalización, el Gobierno dictó un Decreto Oficial en 1954 sobre la base de los resultados de la labor desarrollada durante cinco años.

Dicho Decreto se basa en el principio de que el *Kunrei Siki* es el mejor sistema de que se dispone, y parecería que existe la posibilidad de que los sistemas de romanización existentes acaben unificándose en este sistema concreto.

*

* *

Present situation

As reported at the Second Conference, there are two systems for writing geographical names in Roman letters in Japan: Kunrei Siki (the system adopted under a Cabinet ordinance) and Syūsei Hebon Siki (a modified Hepburn system). Kunrei Siki is used for topographical maps, nautical charts and Antarctic maps, whereas Syūsei Hebon Siki is in use for aeronautical charts and geological maps.

Circumstances leading to the establishment of Kunrei Siki

It is said that the practice of writing Japanese in Roman letters originated in the last years of the sixteenth century. From the beginning of the Meizi Era, the campaign calling for more use of Roman letters was gradually spreading. In or around the twentieth year of the Meizi Era, a number of associations were organized to push forward a romanization campaign in Japan.

Significant in this campaign were the support given for Syūsei Hebon Siki, invented and later modified by James C. Hepburn, an American, and the support given for Nihon Siki, advocated by Aikitu Tanakadate. In addition to these two systems, a number of other systems were also advocated.

Syūsei Hebon Siki is based on English pronunciations, whereas Nihon Siki is a simplified writing method attuned to the system of Japanese pronunciation.

The supporters of both systems asserted their views and strove for the propagation of the system they supported, with the result that the romanization campaign became all the more intense.

Government and company officials as well as individuals opted for one or the other of the two systems, and consequently many inconveniences resulted, both internationally and at home. In response to strong calls for the standardization of the romanizing of Japanese, the Government established in 1930 a Provisional Council for the Survey of Romanization to carry out surveys and researches with this end in view.

During the seven years following 1930, this Council held 14 general meetings and its Committee of Chief Investigators met three times for theoretical studies and deliberations.

The Council came up with a draft plan for the writing of Japanese in Roman letters which was a partial modification of the conventional Nihon Siki. On the basis of this plan, the Government, in 1937, promulgated a Cabinet Ordinance on a standard method of writing in Roman letters. This is the writing method now known as Kunrei Siki.

Situation after the Second World War

After the issuance of the 1937 Cabinet Ordinance, Government agencies and commercial concerns started using the Kunrei Siki writing method, and there appeared signs of a gradual spread of this system (it was used for secondary education, the 1:1,000,000-scale International Map of the World, nautical charts and signboards of railway stations etc.). However, there remained organizations and individuals who supported the use of Nihon Siki and Syūsei Hebon Siki. Hence, the parallel use of the three systems.

After the Second World War, teaching of the English language increased, and with this change the Syūsei Hebon Siki system won increased popularity for some time. However, when the Ministry of Education started to provide guidance on the teaching of writing in Roman letters in compulsory education, the matter of which system to choose of the three was left to the option of each school. Consequently all three systems have been in use in education.

The Investigative Council

In view of the situation described above, there arose strong calls for the standardization among the Government agencies as well as throughout society in general. To find a solution, the Ministry of Education again established an investigative council. The Council held deliberations from 1948 through 1952, meeting for a total of

54 conferences. On the basis of the results of these meetings, the Ministry of Education exchanged views with other Ministries and Government agencies. In 1954, the Government issued a Cabinet Notification and Ordinance, the substance of which was introduced at the Second Conference.

The 1954 Cabinet Notification and Ordinance

The Notification and Ordinance contains two tables: table No. 1 (Kunreisiki) and table No. 2 (modified Hepburnian and other systems). The revision of the original Kunrei Siki introduced by this Notification and Ordinance took into consideration the substantial changes that had occurred in the use made of this romanizing system since it was first made public in 1937, including Japan's expanding international relations as well as the country's changed educational needs. Clearly, unless this system were so adjusted as to be able to meet the needs of the time, giving it flexibility, rather than hastily attempting to bring about an immediate unification of systems, it would be impossible for it to be generally used in society.

When the Notification and Ordinance was issued in 1954, it was not expected that this step would bring about an immediate standardization of romanizing systems. However, in the light of the history of romanization in Japan, as reviewed above, the Kunrei Siki is considered to be the best system now available for the romanizing of Japanese, in the sense that it is phonetically suited to the Japanese tongue and easier for the Japanese public; it is in fact possible that the existing romanizing systems may ultimately be unified in this particular system.

Differences between Kunrei Siki and Syūsei Hebon Siki

As noted above, the Kunrei Siki is a system suited to the Japanese tongue, whereas the Syūsei Hebon Siki is based on English pronunciation. The former is highly systematic and simplified, while the latter is not so systematic. The annexed table gives the two systems of romanizing Japanese.

Annex

THE TWO MAJOR SYSTEMS IN USE FOR ROMANIZATION OF JAPANESE

A: Katakana
B: Hiragana
C: Kunrei-siki
D: Syûsei-Hebon-siki (modified Hepburnian)

別　表

	base character									nigori				han-nigori
A	ア	カ	サ	タ	ナ	ハ	マ	ヤ	ラ	ワ	ガ	ザ	ダ	バ	パ
B	あ	か	さ	た	な	は	ま	や	ら	わ	が	ざ	だ	ば	ぱ
C	a	ka	sa	ta	na	ha	ma	ya	ra	wa	ga	za	da	ba	pa
D															
A	イ	キ	シ	チ	ニ	ヒ	ミ		リ		ギ	ジ	ヂ	ビ	ピ
B	い	き	し	ち	に	ひ	み		り		ぎ	じ	ぢ	び	ぴ
C	i	ki	si	ti	ni	hi	mi		ri		gi	zi	zi	bi	pi
D			shi	chi								ji	ji		
A	ウ	ク	ス	ツ	ヌ	フ	ム	ユ	ル		グ	ズ	ヅ	ブ	プ
B	う	く	す	つ	ぬ	ふ	む	ゆ	る		ぐ	ず	づ	ぶ	ぷ
C	u	ku	su	tu	nu	hu	mu	yu	ru		gu	zu	zu	bu	pu
D				thu		fu									
A	エ	ケ	セ	テ	ネ	ヘ	メ		レ		ゲ	ゼ	デ	ベ	ペ
B	え	け	せ	て	ね	へ	め		れ		げ	ぜ	で	べ	ぺ
C	e	ke	se	te	ne	he	me		re		ge	ze	de	be	pe
D															
A	オ	コ	ソ	ト	ノ	ホ	モ	ヨ	ロ		ゴ	ゾ	ド	ボ	ポ
B	お	こ	そ	と	の	ほ	も	よ	ろ		ご	ぞ	ど	ぼ	ぽ
C	o	ko	so	to	no	ho	mo	yo	ro		go	zo	do	bo	po
D															
A		キャ	シャ	チャ	ニャ	ヒャ	ミャ		リャ		ギャ	ジャ	ヂャ	ビャ	ピャ
B		きゃ	しゃ	ちゃ	にゃ	ひゃ	みゃ		りゃ		ぎゃ	じゃ	ぢゃ	びゃ	ぴゃ
C		kya	sya	tya	nya	hya	mya		rya		gya	zya	zya	bya	pya
D			sha	cha								ja	ja		

A	キュ	シュ	チュ	ニュ	ヒュ	ミュ	リュ	ギュ	ジュ	ヂュ	ビュ	ピュ
B	きゅ	しゅ	ちゅ	にゅ	ひゅ	みゅ	りゅ	ぎゅ	じゅ	ぢゅ	びゅ	ぴゅ
C	kyu	syu	tyu	nyu	hyu	myu	ryu	gyu	zyu	zyu	byu	pyu
D		shu	chu						ju	ju		
A	キョ	ショ	チョ	ニョ	ヒョ	ミョ	リョ	ギョ	ジョ	ヂョ	ビョ	ピョ
B	きょ	しょ	ちょ	にょ	ひょ	みょ	りょ	ぎょ	じょ	ぢょ	びょ	ぴょ
C	kyo	syo	tyo	nyo	hyo	myo	ryo	gyo	zyo	zyo	byo	pyo
D		sho	cho						jo	jo		
A	ン											
B	ん											
C	n											
D												

THE NATIONAL LANGUAGES OF THE COUNTRIES OF THE WORLD, THEIR SCRIPTS AND THE UNITED NATIONS RECOMMENDATIONS FOR THEIR ROMANIZATION

Report presented by Austria*

Country[1]	*National language(s)*[2]	*Script(s)*	*United Nations recommendation of transcription*[3]
Afghanistan	Pashto/Dari	Arabic/Arabic	
Albania	Albanian	Roman	
Algeria	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Angola	Portuguese	Roman	
Argentina	Spanish	Roman	
Australia	English	Roman	
Austria	German	Roman	
Bahamas	English	Roman	
Bahrain	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Bangladesh	Bāṅglā	Bāṅglā	72/11
Barbados	English	Roman	
Belgium	Dutch/French	Roman/Roman	
Benin	French	Roman	
Bhutan	Dzongkha	Tibetan	
Bolivia	Spanish	Roman	
Botswana	SeTswana	Roman	
Brazil	Portuguese	Roman	
Bulgaria	Bulgarian	Cyrillic	72/5
Burma	Burmese	Burmese	
Burundi	KiRundi/French	Roman/Roman	
Canada	English/French	Roman/Roman	
Cape Verde	Portuguese	Roman	
Central African Empire	Sango/French	Roman/Roman	
Chad	French	Roman	

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Joseph Breu, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.72.

[1] The list follows strictly United Nations Terminology Bulletin No. 285/Rev. 2 and Corr. 1.

[2] As defined in *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.iv), p. 49.

[3] 67 = United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, Geneva 1967; 72 = Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, London 1972. The number after the year designates the resolution in which the recommendation is stated. (An annotation in this column does not necessarily imply that the United Nations recommendation has been adopted by the country concerned.)

Country[1]	*National language(s)*[2]	*Script(s)*	*United Nations recommendation of transcription*[3]
Chile	Spanish	Roman	
China	Chinese	Chinese	67/15
Colombia	Spanish	Roman	
Comoros	French	Roman	
Congo	French	Roman	
Costa Rica	Spanish	Roman	
Cuba	Spanish	Roman	
Cyprus	Greek/Turkish	Greek/Roman	
Czechoslovakia	Czech/Slovak	Roman/Roman	
Honduras	Spanish	Roman	
Hungary	Hungarian	Roman	
Iceland	Icelandic	Roman	
India	Hindi/English	Devanāgarī/Roman	72/11
Indonesia	Indonesian	Roman	
Iran	Persian	Arabic	67/13
Iraq	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Ireland	Irish/English	Roman/Roman	
Israel	Hebrew	Hebrew	72/9
Italy	Italian	Roman	
Ivory Coast	French	Roman	
Jamaica	English	Roman	
Japan	Japanese	Japanese	
Jordan	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Kenya	KiSwahili	Roman	
Kuwait	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Lao People's Democratic Republic	Lao	Lao	
Lebanon	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Lesotho	SeSotho/English	Roman/Roman	
Liberia	English	Roman	
Libyan Arab Jamahiriya	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Liechtenstein	German	Roman	
Luxembourg	French	Roman	
Madagascar	Malagasy/French	Roman/Roman	
Malawi	English	Roman	
Malaysia	Malay	Roman and Arabic	
Maldives	Maldivian	Maldivian	
Mali	French	Roman	
Malta	Maltese/English	Roman/Roman	
Mauritania	Arabic/French	Arabic/Roman	67/12, 72/8
Mauritius	English	Roman	
Mexico	Spanish	Roman	
Monaco	French	Roman	
Mongolia	Mongolian	Cyrillic	
Morocco	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Mozambique	Portuguese	Roman	
Nauru	English/Nauru	Roman/Roman	
Nepal	Nepali	Devanāgarī	72/11
Netherlands	Dutch	Roman	
New Zealand	English	Roman	
Nicaragua	Spanish	Roman	
Niger	French	Roman	
Nigeria	English	Roman	
Norway	Norwegian	Roman	
Oman	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Pakistan	Urdu/English	Arabic/Roman	72/11

Country[1]	*National language(s)*[2]	*Script(s)*	*United Nations recommendation of transcription*[3]
Panama	Spanish	Roman	
Papua New Guinea	English	Roman	
Paraguay	Spanish	Roman	
Peru	Spanish/Quechua	Roman/Roman	
Philippines	Tagalog	Roman	
Poland	Polish	Roman	
Portugal	Portuguese	Roman	
Qatar	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Republic of Korea	Korean	Korean	
Romania	Romanian	Roman	
Rwanda	French/KinyaRwanda	Roman/Roman	
Samoa	Samoan/English	Roman/Roman	
San Marino	Italian	Roman	
Sao Tome and Principe	Portuguese	Roman	
Saudi Arabia	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Senegal	French/Wolof	Roman/Roman	
Seychelles	English	Roman	
Sierra Leone	English	Roman	
Singapore	Malaya/English/Chinese/ Tamil	Roman/Roman/Chinese/ Tamil	
Socialist Republic of Viet Nam	Vietnamese	Roman	
Somalia	Somali	Roman	
South Africa	Afrikaans/English	Roman/Roman	
Spain	Spanish	Roman	
Sri Lanka	Sinhala	Singhalese	
Sudan	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Suriname	Dutch	Roman	
Swaziland	IsiSwazi	Roman	
Sweden	Swedish	Roman	
Switzerland	German/French/Italian	Roman/Roman/Roman	
Syrian Arab Republic	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Thailand	Thai	Thai	67/14
Togo	French	Roman	
Tonga	Tongan/English	Roman/Roman	
Trinidad and Tobago	English	Roman	
Tunisia	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Turkey	Turkish	Roman	
Uganda	English/KiSwahili	Roman/Roman	
Union of Soviet Socialist Republics	Russian	Cyrillic	
United Arab Emirates	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Democratic Kampuchea	Khmer	Khmer	72/10
Democratic People's Republic of Korea	Korean	Korean	
Democratic Yemen	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Denmark	Danish	Roman	
Dominican Republic	Spanish	Roman	
Ecuador	Spanish	Roman	
Egypt	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
El Salvador	Spanish	Roman	
Equatorial Guinea	Spanish	Roman	
Ethiopia	Amharic	Ethiopic	67/17, 72/7
Fiji	English/Fijian	Roman/Roman	
Finland	Finnish/Swedish	Roman/Roman	
France	French	Roman	
Gabon	French	Roman	

Country[1]	*National language(s)*[2]	*Script(s)*	*United Nations recommendation of transcription*[3]
Gambia	English	Roman	
German Democratic Republic	German	Roman	
Germany, Federal Republic of	German	Roman	
Ghana	English	Roman	
Greece	Greek	Greek	
Grenada	English	Roman	
Guatemala	Spanish	Roman	
Guinea	French	Roman	
Guinea-Bissau	Portuguese	Roman	
Guyana	English	Roman	
Haiti	French	Roman	
Holy See	Latin/Italian	Roman/Roman	
United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland	English	Roman	
United Republic of Cameroon	French/English	Roman/Roman	
United Republic of Tanzania	KiSwahili	Roman	
United States of America	English	Roman	
Upper Volta	French	Roman	
Uruguay	Spanish	Roman	
Venezuela	Spanish	Roman	
Yemen	Arabic	Arabic	67/12, 72/8
Yugoslavia	Serbo-Croatian/ Slovenian/ Macedonian	Cyrillic and Roman/ Roman/Cyrillic	72/6
Zaire	French	Roman	
Zambia	English	Roman	

CONVERSION OF NAMES FROM ONE WRITING SYSTEM INTO ANOTHER

Report presented by Austria*

Résumé

Du point de vue linguistique, on peut évaluer de la façon suivante le système de romanisation de l'alphabet russe mis au point par l'Académie des sciences de l'URSS entre 1951 et 1956.

Ce système fournit une représentation très fidèle de la structure phonétique du russe. Cependant, comme il ne permet pas la translitération dans le sens inverse, son utilité cartographique est mince. Deux excellents systèmes de translitération sont déjà utilisés en Union soviétique: la norme d'Etat No 16876–71 (d'application générale) et la recommandation 9 (1968) de l'Organisation internationale de normalisation (pour les contributions de l'URSS aux ouvrages de référence bibliographiques internationaux); on voit donc mal l'utilité de préconiser, aux seules fins de la cartographie internationale, un troisième système de translitération de qualité inférieure.

Resumen

La evaluación lingüística del sistema de transliteración al alfabeto romano del alfabeto ruso, elaborado por la Academia de Ciencias de la URSS entre 1951 y 1956, arroja los siguientes resultados:

El sistema proporciona un cuadro muy adecuado para la estructura fonológica del ruso. Pero, dado que no permite su reconversión, el sistema no es muy adecuado para los fines cartográficos. Ya se usan en la Unión Soviética dos sistemas excelentes de transliteración: la Norma estatal No. 16876–71 (para fines generales) y la Recomendación 9 (1968) de la Organización Internacional de Normalización (relativa a las contribuciones de la URSS a los trabajos bibliográficos internacionales de referencia); por ello, no parece ofrecer ventajas el recomendar la utilización en la cartografía internacional de un tercer sistema de transliteración de calidad inferior.

*

* *

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.74.

The comments that follow constitute a discussion and critique of the publication *The Right of Nations to Transliterate Russian Names with their own Roman Alphabets,*[1] prepared by the Institute of Linguistics of the Academy of Science of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics between 1951 and 1956.

We begin by noting that if a conversion system is to serve optimally the purposes of cartography—and of documentation in general—it must fulfil two conditions.

First, the system should allow for the conversion of original sequences (words or names spelled in the source language and source script) into corresponding target sequences (words or names spelled in the target script) without the requirement of any additional information as to unpredictable features of pronunciation. A worker in the field of cartography or documentation cannot be expected to know the pronunciation of every Russian place name; he is only supposed to be able to identify Russian characters and to follow unambiguous instructions of a conversion key.

Second, the system should provide for the reconversion of romanized (target) sequences into the corresponding original (source script) sequences on the basis of general orthographic rules of the source language. It should not be necessary for workers in cartography and documentation to be familiar with any special rules concerning unpredictable or "exceptional" cases that may govern the spelling of a given place name.

Whereas the Soviet romanization system stated in **ГОСТ** 16876–71 (issued between 1971 and 1973) and the international system ISO/R-9 (1968), also recognised by Soviet authorities for use in international bibliographies (see ГОСТ 16876–71, § 2) do comply fully with the above-described conditions of bi-uniqueness (i.e., of one-to-one convertibility in both directions), the romanization system worked out by the USSR Academy of Sciences (1951–1956) and used in the *World Atlas* (**Атлас мира**), Moscow 1967) fails to meet those requirements. The following features and items of the USSR Academy of Sciences' conversion table seem unsatisfactory in some respects:

One instance of ambiguity occurs in the conversion table itself, where it constitutes a possible instance of ambiguity in the conversion from Russian to roman script: The romanization table of the USSR Academy of Sciences states that the Russian letter *e* is to be represented with the Roman *e* (*je*); the Russian letter *ë* equals the Roman *'o* (*o, jo*).

This provision, when understood in its literal sense, means that a given Russian name containing the letter *e* for /'o/ (e.g. **Орел, Пугачево, Елкиноё**) is to be spelled in transcription with the Roman *e* (je) when the name is spelled with Russian (undotted) *e* in the source text or map (examples: **Орел, Пугачево** and **Елкино** are rendered as "Orel", "Pugačevo" and "Jelkino", respectively). On the other hand, the name is to be spelled with the Roman *'o* (*o, jo*) when the same name happens to be spelled with the Russian dotted *ë* in the source text or map (**Орёл, Пугачёво Ёлкино** thus becoming "Or'ol", "Pugačovo" and "Jolkino", respectively).

As is well known, the use of the Roman letter *ë* (instead of *e*) for /'o/ is optional, and a given word or name containing /'o/ may be found spelled with *e* or *ë* indifferently. Hence it follows that the above rule, if applied literally, would lead to a situation where one and the same Russian place name may yield two different romanized spellings (with different alphabetical ordering), depending on such fortuitous factors as the choice of type in the original printed source text. Such a situation would be inconsistent with the basic principles of documentation work.

It is, however, not impossible that the rule cited above from the USSR Academy of Sciences conversion table is to be understood in a different way. In other words, it is possible that the Russian letter *e*, when standing for the phoneme 'e/, is to be romanized as *e* (*je*) (e.g. **Енисей** becomes "Jenisej") but that when it represents /'o/, and therefore may be interchanged freely with the Russian letter *ë*, it is to be rendered in Roman script by *'o* (*o, jo*) (**Орел, Пугачево** and **Елкино** being rendered as "Or'ol", "Pugačovo" and "Jolkino").

Although such an interpretation of the conversion rule in question cannot be based on the literal wording of the conversion table, there are reasons to suppose that this might have been intended by the author(s) of the system. Under such an assumption it would be extremely difficult for a user to apply the system in practical work correctly whenever a Russian place name containing the letter *e* is to be romanized. There is no reliable way to tell whether Russian *e* in certain positions is pronounced /'e/ or /'o/—sometimes not even for the native speakers of Russian unless they happen to be familiar with the place name in question. Should **Борщев** be romanized as "Borščev" or "Borščov"? **Золочев** as "Zoločev" or "Zoločov"? (See also Bondaruk, G. P., and A. M. Komkov, **Нерешенные вопросы русского правописания,** Moskva, Nauka, 1974, p. 50.) A worker in cartography (and in documentation in general) would not be safe in giving the correct romanization for Russian *e* unless he were supplied with an additional list of all Russian place names in which the letter *e* corresponds to /'o/, which is obviously impracticable.

There are also instances of ambiguity in reconversion from the Roman to the Russian script. The Roman *e*, for example, can also result from the conversion from either the Russian *e* or the Russian **э**, both after consonant letter. (Although the latter case occurs rather seldom in names belonging to the Russian language area, it will be frequent in names from such other languages as, for example, Moldavian). Thus, for example, "Beringovo more" may be converted to **Берингово море**, or "Berovskie bugry" to **Бэровские бугры**

Another example. Since **ъ** and **ь** are likewise omitted before vowel letters, a Roman script cluster "consonant

[1] **Правила международной транслитерации русских имен собственных латинскими буквами Институт языкознания АН СССР, 1951-1956.**

letter + *j* + vowel letter (*a*, *e*, *o*, *u*)" can yield in reconversion either "consonant letter + ь + vowel letter (я, е, ё, ю)" or "consonant letter + ь + vowel letter (я, е, ё, ю)". (It is to be admitted, however, that the first of these, ъ, will not occur frequently in place names).

In the case (at least) of Йошкар Ола (romanized "Joškar Ola"), the cluster *jo* proves ambiguous in reconversion since it stands elsewhere for Russian *e* (pronounced /'o/). It is difficult to see why and how a distinction should be made between the romanized spellings of Russian place names according to whether they occur within or outside the sphere of cartography and geography. In fact, a distinction in the treatment of cartographic/geographical publications and other documentation material is impracticable, since cartography may be regarded as a typical and central field of documentation.

Recommendations

There would be undoubtedly much to say in favour of the conversion system of the USSR Academy of Sciences: It provides, in some respects, a highly appropriate picture of the phonological structure of Russian. However, its failure to secure biuniqueness in relation to Russian orthography suggests that it be discarded as a candidate for a transliteration system in the fields of documentation, including cartography.

Instead, it is recommended that a system be adopted for the romanization of Russian geographical names that:

(*a*) Ensures unambiguous conversion in both directions; and

(*b*) Is already in common use in other fields of documentation.

Two such systems are available:

(*a*) The romanization system stated in ГОСТ 16876–71; this system has the advantage of being presented by an official standard of the country of the donor-language (i.e., the Soviet Union); and

(*b*) The international romanization system ISO/R–9 (1968), which has in its favour the status of a recommendation of the International Organization for Standardization and which is used, furthermore, in contributions from the Soviet Union to international bibliographic works of reference (see the above-mentioned standard ГОСТ. 16876–71, § 2).

SCHEME FOR A CHINESE PHONETIC ALPHABET
Report presented by China*

Résumé

Le "Système d'alphabet phonétique chinois" est le système de romanisation adopté officiellement par la Chine. Le présent document englobe l'alphabet, les consonnes, les voyelles, les diphtongues, les terminaisons en *n* ou en *ng* (ainsi que les tons correspondants), les signes de tonalité et le signe de division.

Resumen

El "Plan de un alfabeto fonético chino" es el plan oficial de China respecto de un alfabeto romano. El presente documento comprende el alfabeto, las consonantes, las vocales, los diptongos, las terminaciones en "n" o "ng" (incluidas las notas respectivas), las marcas tonales y los signos de división.

*

* *

Romanization table for a Chinese phonetic alphabet

The Alphabet

Letters	Aa	Bb	Cc	Dd	Ee	Ff	Gg	Hh	Ii	Jj
Wade system	a	pe	ts'e	te	ê	ef	ke	ha	i	chieh

Letters	Kk	Ll	Mm	Nn	Oo	Pp	Qq	Rr	Ss	Tt
Wade system	k'e	el	em	ne	o	p'e	ch'iu	ar	es	t'e

Letters	Uu	Vv	Ww	Xx	Yy	Zz
Wade system	u	ve	wa	hsi	ya	tse

V is used only to produce foreign and national minority words and local dialects. The written form of the letters follows the customary written form of Latin letters.

Consonants

Consonants	Illustrative Chinese Characters	Wade System	Approximate English Equivalents
b	波	p	b as in "be"
p	坡	p'	p as in "par," strongly aspirated
m	摸	m	m as in "man"
f	佛	f	f as in "food"
d	得	t	d as in "do"
t	特	t'	t as in "ten," strongly aspirated
n	讷	n	n as in "nine"
l	勒	l	l as in "land"
g	哥	k	g as in "go"
k	科	k'	k as in "kind," strongly aspirated

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.106.

Consonants	Illustrative Chinese Characters	Wade System	Approximate English Equivalents
h	喝	h	h as in "her," strongly gutturalized
j	基	ch (i)	j as in "jeep"
q	欺	ch' (i)	ch as in "cheek"
x	希	hs (i)	sh as in "she"
zh	知	ch	j as in "jump"
ch	蚩	ch'	ch as in "church," strongly aspirated
sh	詩	sh	sh as in "shore"
r	日	j	r pronounced but not rolled, tending towards the z in "azure"
z	資	ts, tz	ds as in "deeds"
c	雌	ts'	ts as in "tsar," strongly aspirated
s	思	s, ss, sz	s as in "sister"

In annotating the Chinese characters, the letters zh, ch and sh may be simplified as ẑ, ĉ and ŝ.

Vowels

Vowels	Illustrative Chinese Characters	Wade System	Approximate English Equivalents
a	阿	a	a as in "father"
o	喔	o	aw as in "law"
e	鵝	ê	er as in "her," the r being silent
i	衣	i	ea as in "eat"
u	烏	u	oo as in "too"
ü	迂	ü	as German "ü"

Each vowel may be followed by other vowels or consonants to form the following diphthongs or finals:

Diphthongs

Diphthongs	Illustrative Chinese Characters	Wade System	Approximate English Equivalents
ia	呀	ia	yah
ua	蛙	ua	wah
uo	窩	uo	wa as in "water"
ie	耶	ieh	ye as in "yes"
üe	約	yüeh	no English equivalent
ai	愛	ai	as pronoun "I"
uai	歪	uai	wi as in "wife"
ei	欸	ei	ay as in "way"
uei	威	ui, wei	as "way"
ao	熬	ao	ow as in "how"
iao	腰	iao	yow as in "yowl"
ou	歐	ou	ow as in "low"
iou	憂	iu	yee oo

Finals ending in "n" or "ng"

Finals	Illustrative Chinese Characters	Wade System	Approximate English Equivalents
an	安	an	ahn
ian	烟	ien	ien as in "lenient"
uan	弯	uan	oo ahn
üan	冤	yüan	no English equivalent
en	恩	ên	as "earn"
in	因	in	een as in "keen"
uen	溫	wên	wen as in "wonder"
ün	暈	yün	no English equivalent
ang	昂	ang	ahng
iang	央	iang	i ahng
uang	汪	uang	oo ahng
eng	the final as in "哼"	êng	no English equivalent
ing	英	ing	ing as in "sing"
ueng	翁	wêng	no English equivalent
ong	the final as in "蘇"	ung	oo ng
iong	雍	yung	y oong

Note 1. Seven categories of syllables as represented by the characters 知, 蚩, 詩, 日, 資, 雌 and 思 take i as their vowel. They are spelt as zhi, chi, shi, ri, zi, ci and si respectively.

Note 2. The sound êrh is spelt er. As a final, it is represented by r. Thus: ertong (兒童 children), huar (花兒 flower).

Note 3. When used alone, the vowel e is spelt as ê.

Note 4. Y is used as a semi-vowel in syllables beginning with i when not preceded by consonants. Thus: yi (衣), ya (呀), ye (耶), yao (腰), you (憂), yan (烟), yin (因), yang (央), ying (英), yong (雍).

W is used as a semi-vowel in syllables beginning with u when not preceded by consonants. Thus: wu (烏), wa (蛙), wo (窩), wai (歪), wei (威), wan (彎), wen (溫), wang (汪), weng (翁).

Y is used as a semi-vowel in syllables beginning with ü when not preceded by consonants. In this case the two dots above u are omitted. Thus: yu (迂), yue (約), yuan (冤), yun (暈).

In syllables beginning with the consonants j, q and x, the two dots above u are also omitted. Thus: ju (居), qu (区) and xu (虛). But in syllables beginning with the consonants n or l the two dots must be retained. Thus: nü (女), lü (呂).

Note 5. When preceded by consonants, iou, uei and uen are spelt as iu, ui and un. Thus: niu (牛), gui (旧), lun (論).

Note 6. In annotating the Chinese characters, the letters ng can be simplified as ŋ.

Tone Marks

To indicate tones, the following marks are used:

First tone	Second tone	Third tone	Fourth tone
—	/	∨	\
mā	má	mǎ	mà
媽 (mama)	麻 (hemp)	馬 (horse)	罵 (to scold)

The tone marks are put above the main vowels of syllables. When a syllable is neutral, no tone mark is called for. Thus: hău ma (好嗎 Is it good?)

The dividing sign

When a syllable preceded by a, o or e immediately follows another syllable and the two are liable to run into one another and cause confusion, the dividing sign "'" is used.

Example: pi'ao (皮袄 fur coat); without the sign it is piao (飘 to float).

RESOLUTION OF THE NATIONAL PEOPLE'S CONGRESS ON THE SCHEME FOR A CHINESE PHONETIC ALPHABET

Adopted by the First National People's Congress at its fifth session on 11 February 1958

Having discussed the Motion on the Draft Scheme for a Chinese Phonetic Alphabet submitted by Chou En-lai, Premier of the State Council, and the Report on the Current Work of Reforming the Written Language and the Draft Scheme for a Chinese Phonetic Alphabet delivered by Wu Yu-chang, Director of the Committee for Reforming the Chinese Written Language, the First National People's Congress, at its fifth session, resolves: 1. that the Scheme for a Chinese Phonetic Alphabet be approved; 2. that it agrees in principle with the Report on the Current Work of Reforming the Written Language and the Draft Scheme for a Chinese Phonetic Alphabet delivered by Wu Yu-chang. Congress is of opinion that the simplification of the Chinese characters be continued; that the common speech be actively popularized; that the Scheme for a Chinese Phonetic Alphabet, as an aid in learning the Chinese characters and popularizing the common speech be taught first of all in normal, secondary and primary schools to gain experience, while gradually applying it in publications and other fields, and, from the experience and results in these fields, efforts be made to attain its further improvement.

TRANSLITERATION OF LANGUAGES OF THE INDIAN GROUP INTO ROMAN AND DEVANĀGARĪ

Paper presented by the Working Group on a Single Romanization System*

This paper is a corrigendum to the original report presented by the Working Group on a Single Romanization System, which appeared in the *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. II, *Technical Papers*.[1]

P. 117, title page and contents
Correct Bāngalā to Bānglā

P. 119, introductory paragraph 5 (b) (1)
Lines 1 and 3: correct "diagraphs" and "diagraph" to "digraphs" and "digraph" respectively. Add at the end of second sentence: "Trigraphs are also to be treated similarly"

P. 125
Col. 2, against ऌ of col. 1:
Add another dot under ḷ to make it ḷ̣

Col. 3, against ॠ of col. 1:
Delete second sentence and substitute: "Nearest rendering is like '**r**' sound in myrrh"

Col. 5:
Insert "or" between इ and ई

P. 126
Col. 3, against ऑ;
Insert "**ă**" between the words "shorter" and "sound"

Against ऍ :
Insert "**e**" between the words "shorter" and "sound"

Against ओ̆ :
Insert "**o**" between the words "shorter" and "sound"

P. 127
Top table.
Delete last "**s**" of "consonants"

Delete ऱ and all entries against it

P. 128
Heading:
Add after consonants "WITH INHERENT अ "

Col. 1:
Delete the word "Mutes"

Col. 9, against group of त :
Delete dot from under "**d**"

Note.
Add after digraph "or any two parts of a trigraph," also correct spelling

P. 131
Col. 3:
Against ॾ delete "**gha**" and substitute "**ġa**"

Add zabar (◌̆) to all the Urdū letters to indicate inherent अ in equivalent Devanāgarī letters

Foot-note, line 1.
Insert "of ذ, ز, ض, ظ " after the word "transliteration" and correct "the" occurring after "all" to "these" in the second line

P. 133
Note (b).
Correct "Pariṣhida" to "Pariṣhad"

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Col. D. N. Sharma Atri Harnal, UNGEGN expert, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.116.

[1] United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4, pp. 117–161.

P. 134

Enter the following foot-note under the existing one:

"To avoid confusion ẽ (ऍ) will be transliterated into Gujarātī as ઍ and o (ऑ) as ઑ"

Pp. 136–137

Col. 2:

Correct spelling:

"Khakkhā" to "Khakhkhā"

"Ghagghā" to "Ghaghghā"

"Jhajjhā" to "Jhajhjhā"

"Ṭhaṭṭha" to "Ṭhaṭhṭha"

"Ḍhaḍḍha" to "Ḍhaḍhḍha"

"Thatthā" to "Thaththā"

"Dhaddhā" to Dhadhdhā"

"Phapphā" to "Phaphphā"

"Bhabbhā" to "Bhabhbhā"

Make "ṅ" of ṅaṅṅā capital and add, "aṅgāṅgā" after this word

Make "ñ" of ñaññā capital and add, "añjāñjā" after this word

Make "ṇ" of ṇāṇṇa capital

P. 137

Col. 2:

Correct spelling:

"vavvā" to "vāvā"

"k̤hak̤k̤ha" to "k̤hak̤hk̤ha"

P. 137

Col. 4:

Delete "or wa" and correct "**gha**" to "**g̤a**"

Col. 5:

Enter the following remark against ਸ਼:

"ष to be transliterated as ਸ਼"

Bottom table, col. 1:

After Lāvāṁ add "or Lāṁ"

After Dulāvāṁ add "or Dulāṁ"

P. 138

Enter the following notes:

Notes:

1. There is no way of writing halanta (mute) consonants in Panjābī, except those followed by ਹ, ਰ and ਵ with which these letters join as under:

ਸ੍ਹ, ਨ੍ਰ, ਸ੍ਵ respectively

sign of ਹ being ੍ਹ added to the foot of the preceding letter

ਰ being ੍ਰ		-do-
ਵ being ੍ਵ		-do-

and those which are doubled by adhaka (ੱ).

in order to transliterate other mutes the hal (੍) sign of Devanāgarī may be used

i.e. ਕ੍ = क्

2. Phonemes of other languages like Telugu for which there are no equivalents in Panjābī may be transliterated with diacritics in the same way as for Devanāgarī

P. 139

Correct "Bāngalā" to "Bānglā" wherever it occurs

Col. 3:

Against Anuswāra delete "**ṅ**, **ñ**, **ṇ**, **n** or"

Add against Visarga in Cols. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 & 6 respectively:

Hal, ্, —, —, ক্ K, Exception ৎ = ত্

P. 140

Add foot-note:

Phonemes of other languages like Telugu for which there are no equivalents in Bānglā may be transliterated with diacritics in the same way as for Devanāgarī

P. 141

Col. 3:

Against Anuswāra delete "**ṅ**, **ñ**, **ṇ**, **n** or"

Col. 5:

Enter "কং kaṁ" against Anuswāra

Enter "কঃ kaḥ" against Visarga

Enter at the bottom in Cols. 1, 2, 3 & 5 respectively:

Chandravindu ঁ m̐ কঁ kam̐

Under Chandravindu add in Cols 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 & 6 respectively:

Hal, ্, —, —, ক্ K

"Remarks", col. 6:

Against ু Enter the following note:

with রু, শু, হু, গু it combines differently

Against ূ with রূ it combines differently

P. 142

Col. 8:

Delete remarks against শ and ষ and bar from under ষ

Enter foot-note:

Phonemes of other languages like Telugu for which there are no equivalents in Asamiyā may be transliterated with diacritics in the same way as for Devanāgarī

P. 143

Col. 3:

Against Anuswāra delete "**ṅ**, **ñ**, **ṇ** and **n**" and the note "(modern practice)" from col. 4

P. 145

Col. 5:

Correct "Guṙi" to "Guḍi"

Correct "Guṙidīrghamu" to "Guḍidīrghamu"

Correct "Suṙi" to "Suḍi" and "Suṙidīrghamu" to "Suḍidīrghamu"

Correct "shortened" to "short" in two places

Col. 7:

From remark against ಱ delete ಱ ŕa

Against ೞ enter the remark "obsolete"

Last entry:

Add under the last entry in cols. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7 respectively:

above a consonant, Hal, —, —, ऽ K, This sign is added after deletion of Talakaṭṭu

P. 146

Delete letter ౘ and entries "च़ cha" and "dental" against it

Delete letter ౙ and entries "ज़ ja" and "dental" against it

Delete the letter ఱ, ऱ ŕa and the remark "slightly whirring sound"

Remarks: against ఙ:

Delete the sentence "Never used as an initial letter"

P. 147

Add under the last entry in cols. 1 to 6 respectively

"Joined to top of Talakaṭṭu, Hal, —, —, Ardhatalakaṭṭu, ँ K"

P. 150

Cols. 5, 6 and 7:

Against ര substitute ऱ and **ṟa** for ऱ and **ŕa**

Against ഴ substitute ऴ and **ḻa** for ऴ and **ẓha**

Against ൾ substitute ळ् and **ḷ** for ळ् and **l**

Against ർ substitute ऱ् and **ṟ** for र् and **ŕ**

Against ൽ substitute ल् and **l** for ल् and **l̂**

Against ൻ substitute न् and **n** for न् and **n̂**

Against ൺ substitute ण् and **ṇ** for ण् and **ṇ̂**

Against റ്റ delete ट̂ and ṭ̂ and substitute ट़ and ṭ

Col. 8:

Delete remarks against the letters റ and ഴ

Delete the existing remark against ൾ and enter the following:

Against ൾ Halanta form of letter ള

Against ർ Halanta form of letter ര

Against ൽ Halanta form of letter ല

Against ൻ Halanta form of letter ന

Against ൺ Halanta form of letter ണ

P. 153

Make the following entries in Cols. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 respectively

–, Hal, —, —, ക് K

Add the following foot-note:

"ऋ (ṛ) may be transliterated as ṟ̣"

P. 154

Cols. 5, 6 and 7:

Against ற substitute ऱ and **ṟa** for ऱ̂ and **ŕa** and delete remark from col. 8 against the letter

Against ன add a bar under न and **n** of **na** to make ऩ and **ṉa**

Against ழ substitute ऴ and **ḻa** for ऴ and **ẓha**

Against ற்ற substitute ट़ and **ṟṟa** for ट़ and **ṭra**

Against ன்ற substitute न्ऱ and **ṉṟa** for न्ड्र and **nḍra**

Col. 8:

Against ற்ற enter the following remark: It is a conjunct letter combining ற் with ற

Against ன்ற enter the following remark: It is a conjunct letter combining ன் with ற

Foot-note, line 4:

Correct first diacritic from _ to ‿

Bottom line:

Correct diacritic under ക and L to ക̣ and Ḻ

P. 155

Para 4:

Show ⸝ over ت ط س ث ص ح ﮦ ض ز ڈ ڑ ی ء ے to indicate inherent अ of equivalent Devanāgarī letters

Para 5:

Add para 6:

Zabar (⸝) or fat-haḥ has been shown over Urdū alphabets to indicate the transliteration of अ inherent in Devanāgarī alphabets

Pp. 156 to 158

Show ⸝ over all Urdū consonants except Alif

P. 158

Notes:

(ii) Correct spelling of ghunnaḥ to gunnaḥ

(iii) (a) show ⸝ over ڴ.

P. 160

Col. 2:

Delete the existing sign "ˇ" and substitute "ˆ"

Col. 3:

Correct Jazm "ˇ" to "ˆ" in مُشَجَّر

RULES FOR SPELLING CHINESE PLACE NAMES WITH THE CHINESE PHONETIC ALPHABET

Report presented by China*

Résumé

La graphie des noms de lieux chinois en alphabet phonétique chinois se conforme, dans le cas des noms de lieu Han, à leur prononciation en langue commune (putonghua) et, dans le cas des noms de lieux de minorités nationales, aux "Règles de translitération des noms de lieux de minorités nationales au moyen de l'alphabet phonétique chinois".

La graphie des noms de lieux Han sépare les noms propres et les noms communs. Toutefois, dans la graphie des noms de villes et de villages, toutes les syllabes se suivent sans interruption. Par exemple:

Heilongjiang Sheng, Tong Xian, Taiwan Haiia, Tai shan, Daqinghe

Mais l'on écrira:

Zhoukoudian, Jiuxian, Wangcun, Xifengzhen, Dahushan, Daqinghe

Dans la graphie des noms de lieu Han, l'adjectif déterminant fait partie du nom propre ou du nom commun, selon le cas. Par exemple:

*Xi*liao He, *Xin*yi He, Chaobai *Xin*he

De même, dans la graphie des noms de lieux de minorités nationales, les noms propres et les noms communs sont généralement écrits séparément.

Dans la graphie des noms de lieux de minorités nationales, les noms communs et les adjectifs déterminants sont généralement écrits conformément à la pratique de la translitération en caractère Han, c'est-à-dire, en translitérant la signification, en reproduisant le son ou en rendant à la fois le son et la signification. Lorsque la signification est traduite en caractères Han, ceux-ci sont translitérés; lorsque le son est reproduit, on translitère le nom tel qu'il est prononcé dans la langue de la minorité considérée.

La première lettre d'un nom de lieu et celle de ses éléments séparés sont en majuscules.

Dans des cas particuliers, il est possible de s'écarter des règles ci-dessus.

Resumen

En la escritura de nombres geográficos chinos con el alfabeto fonético chino, represéntense los nombres geográficos Han de acuerdo con su pronunciación en el habla común (putonghua), y los nombres geográficos originarios de minorías nacionales con arreglo a la publicación "Normas para la transliteración de nombres geográficos originarios de minorías nacionales con el alfabeto fonético chino".

En la escritura de nombres geográficos Han, escríbanse por separado los nombres propios y los nombres comunes. Pero cuando se trate de nombres de ciudades y pueblos, escríbanse todas las sílabas seguidas, sin separación. Así, por ejemplo:

Heilongjiang Sheng, Tong Xian, Taiwan Haixia, Tai Shan, Fuhai Linchang

En cambio: Zhoukoudian, Jiuxian, Wangcun, Xifengzhen, Dahushan, Daqinghe.

En la escritura de nombres geogràficos Han, trátense los adjetivos modificadores como parte de los nombres propios o los nombres comunes, según el caso. Así:

*Xi*liao He, *Xin*yi He, Chaobai *Xin*he

En la escritura de nombres geográficos originarios de minorías nacionales, también han de escribirse separadamente los nombres propios y los nombres comunes, por regla general.

Al escribir nombres geográficos originarios de minorías nacionales, y como norma general, trátense los nombres comunes y los adjetivos modificadores como se hace habitualmente en la transliteración con caracteres Han, es decir, traduciendo el significado, o reproduciendo el sonido, o dando a la vez el sonido y el significado. Cuando se traduzca el significado a caracteres Han, represéntense los caracteres Han; cuando se reproduzca el sonido, translitérese la pronunciación en la lengua minoritaria de que se trate.

Escríbase con mayúscula inicial todo nombre geográfico o, en su caso, cada una de las partos separadas que lo forman.

En casos especiales, se permiten determinadas irregularidades.

*

* *

In spelling Chinese place names with the Chinese phonetic alphabet, spell Han place names according to their pronunciation in the common speech (putonghua), and spell minority nationality place names in accordance with the publication "Rules for the Transliteration of Minority Nationality Place Names with the Chinese Phonetic Alphabet".

In spelling Han place names, write proper names and common names separately. But in spelling the names of towns and villages, write all the syllables consecutively, without making such separation. Thus:

Heilongjiang Sheng, Tong Xian, Taiwan Haixia, Tai Shan, Fuhai Linchang

But:

Zhoukoudian, Jiuxian, Wangcun, Xifengzhen, Dahushan, Daqinghe

In spelling Han place names, treat modifying adjectives as part of the proper names or of common names, as the case may be. Thus:

*Xi*liao He, *Xin*yi He, Chaobai *Xin*he

* The original text of this paper, prepared by the Committee for Reforming the Chinese Written Language, State Bureau of Surveying and Cartography of the People's Republic of China, September 1976, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.118.

In spelling minority nationality place names, proper names and common names are generally written separately, too.

In spelling minority nationality place names, treat common names and modifying adjectives generally as is habitually done in Han character transliteration, i.e. by transliterating the meaning, rendering the sound or giving both the sound and the meaning. Where the meaning is translated into Han characters, spell the Han characters; where the sound is rendered, transliterate the pronunciation into the minority language concerned.

Capitalize the first letter of a place name and that of each of its separate parts.

Irregularity is allowed in special cases.

RULES FOR THE TRANSLITERATION OF MINORITY NATIONALITY PLACE NAMES WITH THE CHINESE PHONETIC ALPHABET

Report presented by China*

Résumé

Le présent rapport comporte deux parties : la première porte sur les principes généraux et la deuxième consiste en notes sur la translitération de noms de lieux, dans les langues ouïghoure, mongole et tibétaine. La première partie traite des principaux buts de la translitération, c'est-à-dire l'élaboration de règles techniques générales régissant la transposition des noms de lieux des minorités nationales à l'aide de l'alphabet phonétique chinois. Dans la deuxième partie, on trouvera un exposé concret et technique de l'application de ces règles pour la translitération de ces trois langues.

Resumen

El presente informe consta de dos partes: la primera comprende principios generales, y la segunda está constituida por notas sobre la transliteración de nombres topográficos en las lenguas uighur, mongola y tibetana. La primera enfoca los principales objetivos de la transliteración, es decir, la elaboración de reglas técnicas generales que rijan la presentación de los nombres propios de lugar, de las nacionalidades minoritarias con el alfabeto fonético chino. La segunda demuestra la aplicación técnica concreta de estas reglas en la preparación de transliteraciones para las tres lenguas.

*

* *

General principles[1]

Rule 1

The main purposes of these rules are:

(*a*) To serve as a guide in spelling minority nationality place names with the Chinese phonetic alphabet;

(*b*) To help recording the pronunciation of minority nationality place names in making investigations for surveying and map-making;

(*c*) To provide the chief basis for determining the pronunciation and choosing the right Han characters in transliterating minority nationality place names into Han characters; and

(*d*) To facilitate the compiling and indexing of Chinese place names in an alphabetical order.

Rule 2

Under these rules, the 26 letters of the Chinese phonetic alphabet (two of which have variants with diacritical marks) and the syllable-dividing apostrophe are used. To ensure accurate transliteration and sound-recording, syllabication should be free from the pattern of the Han common speech. The apostrophe can be used to separate syllables where its absence may cause confusion, and diacritical marks can be used on certain letters for recording special sounds.

If a minority nationality language has adopted the Roman script, its own written form should be the basis for transliteration. For those of its letters whose pronunciation and usage are identical or similar to their counterparts in the Chinese phonetic alphabet, just copy them. For the other letters, a scheme of transliteration should be worked out. If a minority nationality language uses a non-Roman script, use the corresponding letters of the Chinese phonetic alphabet to convey its pronunciation. If a minority nationality has no written language, spell its place names according to the prevalent oral pronunciation.

Rule 3

Special place names are dealt with in the following ways:

(*a*) Where a traditional Han name consists partly of sound transliteration and partly of meaning translation, the first part should be spelt from the original pronunciation, and the second part should be spelt from the Han characters;

(*b*) Where a traditional Han name is an abbreviated translation, a new transliteration of the original place name in full may be made, or the pronunciation of the traditional Han name may just be spelled out, depending on the specific circumstances;

(*c*) If a Han name derived from a minority nationality language later took on a Han form and has been in

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.119.

[1] Revised in June 1976 by the State Bureau of Surveying and Cartography and the Committee for Reforming the Chinese Written Language.

common use, it may just be spelt from the Han characters, followed, where necessary, by a transliteration of the original (in brackets);

(*d*) Other special cases are to be dealt with on the merit of each case.

Specific schemes for transliteration

Specific schemes have been worked out for transliterating the place names in the following three minority nationality languages:

Notes on the Uighur language

(*a*) Transliteration of Uighur place names is based on their spelling according to the publication "Scheme for a New Uighur Script";

(*b*) Where two forms of the same letter, with and without a diacritical mark, are listed together for transliterating with the Chinese phonetic alphabet, the form with the diacritical mark is used for recording the pronunciation of place names, while the form without the diacritical mark is for general use.

Notes on the Mongolian language

(*a*) Transliteration of Mongolian place names is made from their proper pronunciation based on their written form and the common colloquial name;

(*b*) The long and short Mongolian vowels are not distinguished in the spellings for general use, but in recording the pronunciation of place names the long vowel is represented by duplication;

(*c*) Where two forms of the same letter, with and without a diacritical mark, are listed together for transliterating with the Chinese phonetic alphabet, the form with the diacritical mark is used for recording the pronunciation of place names, while the form without the diacritical mark is for general use.

Notes on the Tibetan language

A letter marked * is read as aspirated when it is not accompanied by a prefixed letter or a superadded consonant. Otherwise it is read as non-aspirated.

(*a*) Transliteration of Tibetan place names is made from their pronunciation in the Tibetan broadcasts by the Central People's Broadcasting Station;

(*b*) A number of homonyms exist in the Tibetan language; they are not all listed here;

(*c*) The letters ཨ and ཡ are treated as without initials when transliterated with the Chinese Phonetic Alphabet;

(*d*) When the prefixed letters ད and ར or the superadded consonant ྭ give the preceding syllable an additional nasal final or make the vowel in it nasalized, it is spelt in accordance with the actual pronunciation. The nasalized vowels "a", "o" and "u" are represented by the finals "an", "on" and "un" in the "Scheme for a Chinese phonetic alphabet;

(*e*) Where two forms of the same letter, with and without a diacritical mark, are listed together for transliterating with the Chinese phonetic alphabet, the form with the diacritical mark is used for recording the pronunciation of place names, while the form without the diacritical mark is for general use.

POINT DE VUE DU MAROC SUR LA ROMANISATION
Rapport présenté par le Maroc*

Dans le cadre de sa politique d'arabisation, le Maroc s'est penché avec persévérance sur les problèmes de translitération, particulièrement de l'arabe au latin.

Profitant des services du Bureau permanent d'arabisation qui siège à Rabat (organe de la Ligue arabe), le Maroc a réalisé dans ce domaine des travaux de portée internationale[1].

L'absence du Maroc à la Conférence sur la romanisation tenue à Beyrouth en 1971 ne l'a pas empêché d'adopter en grande partie le système suggéré lors de cette Conférence. Toutefois il a jugé utile, pour des raisons d'ordre pratique, d'apporter une légère modification au système proposé (voir l'annexe I).

Ces amendements consistent tout simplement à pourvoir d'une apostrophe deux lettres qui n'en avaient pas et à transférer celle-ci du bas vers le haut de cinq autres lettres. Ceci découle d'un grand souci de simplification qui permet de répondre aux impératifs d'ordre technique: typographie, photo-composition, machines à écrire, matrices de machines à composer, ainsi que de ceux relevant du domaine de l'informatique (terminal ordinateur, télex, etc.).

Le Maroc souhaite vivement que ces amendements fassent l'objet d'une résolution à l'issue de la présente Conférence, afin que le système de Beyrouth amendé soit rectifié conformément aux propositions marocaines.

Normalisation des noms géographiques

Par rapport aux caractères latins, on peut classer les caractères arabes en deux catégories.

a) Des caractères arabes présentant des similitudes de prononciation vis-à-vis du latin: M = م ; L = ل ; B = ب

b) Des caractères arabes présentant des différences de prononciation nuancées ou complètes: J = ج ; KH = خ

---

* Le texte original de ce rapport a paru sous la cote E/CONF.69/L.123.

[1] Le système Lakhdar-Chazal, de correspondance arabe standard, est décrit dans deux autres rapports présentés également par le Maroc et reproduits dans la présente publication (voir p. 177 à 182 et p. 516 à 517).

La translitération de ces caractères peut se faire de deux façons :

a) En utilisant des digrammes tels que KH, SH, DH;

b) En utilisant des signes existant dans l'imprimerie tels que ' ".

Nous avons tenu compte dans notre proposition des confusions que peut engendrer l'utilisation systématique des digrammes, de même que nous avons tenu compte des possibilités techniques de l'imprimerie (trait au dessus ou en dessous du caractère, point en dessous du caractère . . .).

Les lettres emphatiques

L'alphabet arabe compte beaucoup de lettres emphatiques. L'emphase a toujours été représentée par des points en dessous des caractères, ce qui entraîne des difficultés d'ordre technique en imprimerie. Il serait plus commode de mettre le point à côté de la lettre, mais le point présente des confusions; c'est pourquoi nous proposons de mettre une apostrophe pour marquer l'emphatisation.

ص = S' — ط = T' — ض = D' — ح = H'

Les lettres dentales, chuitantes ou sonores

Comme pour les lettres emphatiques, ces lettres sont représentées en alphabet latin par des caractères avec des traits en dessous. Le trait comme le point est très difficile à réaliser en imprimerie. Il ne peut pas non plus être mis à côté du caractère, car il risque d'être confondu avec le trait d'union.

Nous proposons pour la translitération de ces lettres l'utilisation de digrammes:

KH = خ
DH = ذ
SH = ش
GH = غ
TH = ث

Les "semi-consonnes"

L'alphabet arabe compte deux "semi-consonnes" qui sont le و (W bilabial) et le ي (J palatal). Nous proposons d'adopter les translitérations suivantes: W = و ; Y = ي

Les voyelles

ـَ *fatha*	sera notée *a*
ـِ *Kesra*	sera notée *i*
ـُ *damma*	sera notée *ou/o* suivant qu'elle est arrondie fermée ou arrondie demi-fermée
ـْ *Soukoun*	indique la fin d'une syllabe, la lettre arabe qui le supporte doit se rattacher à la consonne précédente en une seule émission de voix et par l'intermédiaire de la voyelle bréve qui accompagne toujours cette dernière.

Les signes orthographiques auxilliaires

ـّ *Chedda*	indique un redoublement de la lettre qui la supporte
ـٔ *Hamzat Wasl*	se trouve sur le *Alif* et indique que cet *Alif* ne doit pas être prononcé, non noté
ـٓ *Madda*	se trouve sur le *Alif* et indique que cet *Alif* doit être prononcé comme un *A* long.

Autres caractères arabes

لا	*Lam Alif*: façon d'écrire le *lam* suivi du *Alif*.
ـة ة	*Ta marbouta*: sera noté *h* quand il est en finale et *t* quand c'est un état construit.
ال	article défini: sera noté *AL*. Il est non noté quand il est devant les lettres arabes dites "solaires", dans quel cas ces lettres sont alors dédoublées.

Annexe I

AMENDEMENTS AU SYSTÈME DE BEYROUTH

Caractères arabes	*Système de Beyrouth amendé*	*Proposition du Maroc*	*Système de Beyrouth Système amendé*
ع		ع	Ammane—'Ammane
ء		'	Omane— 'Omane
		و	Ras alma— Ra's alma'
ح	ḥ	h'	
ص	ṣ	s'	
ض	ḍ	d'	
ط	ṭ	t'	
ظ	ẓ	z'	

Annexe II

RÈGLES DE TRANSLITTÉRATION DE L'ARABE AU LATIN

مثال و ملاحظات Exemple et observations		ما يقابله Equivalent		الحرف Lettre
Asfi	اسفي	A	a	ا ـا
boufrah'	بوفراح	B	b	بـ ـبـ ـب
telwat	تلوات	T	t	تـ ـتـ ـت
thlatha'	ثلاثاء	TH	th	ثـ ـثـ ـث
Jrádah	جرادة	J	j	جـ ـجـ ـج
H'ammamat	حمامات	H'	h'	حـ ـحـ ـح
Khmisat	خميسات	KH	kh	خـ ـخـ ـخ
Damnat	دمنات	D	d	د ـد
Adharwah	الذروة	DH	dh	ذ ـذ
Arribat'	الرباط	R	r	ر ـر
Zayou	زايو	Z	z	ز ـز
Sabtah	سبتة	S	s	س ـسـ ـس
Shafshawen	شفشاون	SH	sh	شـ ـشـ ـش
S'afro	صفرو	S'	s'	صـ ـصـ ـص
Addar Albayda'	الدار البيضاء	D'	d'	ضـ ـضـ ـض
Tet'wan	تطوان	T'	t'	طـ ـطـ ـط
Hyaz'na	حيا ظنة	Z'	z'	ظـ ـظـ ـظ
'Abdah	عبدة	'	'	عـ ـعـ ـع
Ghafsay	غفساي	GH	gh	غـ ـغـ ـغ
Fas	فاس	F	f	فـ ـفـ ـفا
Qasbah	قصبة	Q	q	قـ ـقـ ـق
Kthamah	كثامة	K	k	كـ ـكـ ـك
Louta	لوطا	L	l	لـ ـلـ ـل
Midar	ميدار	M	m	مـ ـمـ ـم
Ntiwa	نتيوة	N	n	نـ ـنـ ـن
Harhourah	هرهورة	H	h	هـ ـهـ ـه
Walmas	ولماس	W	w	و ـو
Ra's alma'	رأس الماء	'	'	ء
T'arfayah	طرفاية	Y	y	يـ ـيـ ـي

STATEMENT BY THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA AND THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND NORTHERN IRELAND CONCERNING THE ROMANIZATION OF CHINESE*

It is a matter of great regret that the positive approach taken by the United States and the United Kingdom aiming at a unanimous resolution on Pinyin should have been rejected by so many delegates with so little consideration of its benefits.

It was conceded by China that those countries with long-established and deeply entrenched commitment to Wade-Giles (be it in maps and gazetteers or in more general reference works) would face a difficult period of transition. It was admitted by China that the Chinese themselves are in a state of transition: the delegate from China referred to the continuing use of Wade-Giles in China which it was hoped would be phased out in the near future. (These uses were not specified but it is evident for everyone to see that the names of Chinese post and telegraph offices given in international listings published by the UPU in 1968 and the ITU in 1976 still use non-Pinyin spellings).

But a more serious problem arising during the transition period concerns the use of Pinyin material as a source for names. The following are offered as examples of the sort of problem that will face the linguistically objective cartographer:

(*a*) Pinyin sources are only two in number: the 1:6,000,000 map of 1974 bearing 3,750 names and the 1977 atlas with plates at various scales carrying some 21,000 names. But many Han-character maps and atlases of China at scales of down to 1:2,000,000 are available of recent date, and all ancillary geographical material is published in Han characters only. This means that many thousands of names are available in Han characters only. One might suppose that this could be overcome by the simple process of applying the Pinyin system as a transcription system. *But*

(*b*) Nearly half the land area of China involves the three principal minority languages: Uighur, Tibetan and Mongol. The rules for the transliteration/"pinyinization" of names from these languages have been translated in part in the preceding report entitled "Rules for the transliteration of minority nationality place names with the Chinese phonetic alphabet" (the green booklet distributed with the atlas is the original). It must be emphasized that these rules are inapplicable without the original Tibetan-, Uighur- and Mongol-script forms of the names. Since no current sources in these languages are available to cartographers outside China, it follows that it is *impossible* to work out Pinyin spellings of any place names in northern and western China that do not occur on the two small-scale Pinyin maps referred to above. This extraordinary limitation may not be of concern to publishers of small-scale maps but it is an insuperable obstacle in other cases (for example, the International Map of the World on the Millionth Scale published under the aegis of the United Nations). It will naturally take some years for China to prepare Pinyin maps and gazetteers at this scale.

It is self-evident that in the face of the inadequate number of Pinyin names currently available, and considering also the insoluble problem of minority names, the United States and the United Kingdom cannot accept Pinyin for exclusive use at this stage, since their own gazetteers of China (freely available in the western world) contain tens of thousands of names in northern and western China which, for the reasons given above, cannot be converted to Pinyin. It would be an extraordinary concept for geographers to accept: that these tens of thousands of places may no longer be referred to—for that would be the practical consequence if the resolution proposed in Committee IV were adopted.

There is a further aspect of this difficult problem, which is of direct concern to the members of the Conference in their capacity as spokesmen for standardization of geographical names. As early as the middle 1960s some European maps of China (notably the Hungarian-Swedish co-production constantly held up to us as an example at the London Conference and referred to again here in Athens) had introduced Pinyin. Such publications spelled Pinyin names in a bewildering variety of forms: with tonal diacritics; without tonal diacritics; solid as one word; spelled out in syllables, and variously capitalized and non-capitalized. In northern and western China these maps transcribed the Han-character forms of minority names into Pinyin. By 1975, with the presentation of the 1:6,000,000 Pinyin map by the Chinese experts to the sixth session of the Group of Experts, it became clear that such minority language names had their own specific forms, derived not from Han characters but from local scripts. Some Pinyin maps produced in the West were revised to agree with the new Pinyin spellings. Unhappily, no caution was printed on the 1:6,000,000 map that the system used for minority names was only provisional. The 1977 atlas just distributed spells its Tibetan and Mongol names in accordance with the revised rules of 1976. Something on the order of 50 per cent of the Tibetan and Mongol names are spelled differently in the 1977 atlas as compared with the 1974 map. The practical consequence of this hasty and critically uncontrolled adoption of Pinyin is that there already exist three different Pinyin spellings for some hundreds of names. These examples are from Tibet:

Jiangzi, Gyaze, Gyangzê;
Changdu, Qabdo, Qamdo;
Ritu, Ruto, Rutog; and
Qushui, Quxur, Qüxü.

These examples make a poor advertisement for a group of standardization experts, whose job might reasonably be supposed to be to recommend systems that will work efficiently.

It was fortunate for the experts that precipitate action on a resolution to adopt Pinyin failed to gain support at

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.129.

the London Conference. It is equally important that precipitate action be avoided in the new circumstances as they confront the present Conference in Athens.

The problems of the "period of transition" are not to be dismissed as lightly as they were in the debate in Committee IV. They are crucial to the matter of a workable nomenclature for China in the coming years. It is evident from what has been said above that existing Wade-Giles spellings must inevitably play some part in this transitional nomenclature. (To claim that Wade-Giles cannot be singled out as a "necessary aid" in the transitional period, since other European languages would then have to be similarly treated, fails to recognize that no other language community offered its aid in this respect, for no maps and gazetteers in other languages exist that are comparable to those in Wade-Giles.)

All the problems discussed above, and no doubt many others that have not yet been foreseen, can be solved and will be solved. The United States and the United Kingdom would like to think that they can be solved by moving ahead together unanimously. That was the spirit of the revised resolution agreed by the Chairman and the Chinese delegation. We earnestly hope that it may be reconsidered for unanimous adoption.

But even if it should unhappily prove to be the case that the United States and the United Kingdom are unable to support an unqualified resolution for the adoption of Pinyin to the exclusion of the auxiliary use of Wade-Giles, they will of course continue to examine the problems of transition in detail and undertake to keep the United Nations Group of Experts fully informed of their findings, in the hope that a wholly workable solution may eventually be found and approved with no dissenting voice.

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON A SINGLE ROMANIZATION SYSTEM FOR EACH NON-ROMAN WRITING SYSTEM: ACTIVITIES FROM 1 JUNE 1972 TO 16 AUGUST 1977*

Activities of the Working Group

Between the Second (1972) and the Third (1977) United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names, the Working Group held six meetings: two meetings during the fifth session (1973) of the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts on Geographical Names, three meetings during the sixth session and one meeting during the seventh session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. Besides these personal meetings, other work was carried out via circulars. The Convenor was Mr. Breu, Austria.

The official reports of these activities are contained in the following papers:

(*a*) Fifth session of the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts, working paper No. 26;

(*b*) Fifth session of the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts, working paper No. 28;

(*c*) Report of the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts, fifth session (ESA/RT/C/GN/3), 16 March 1973;

(*d*) Report of the United Nations Group of Experts, sixth session (ESA/RT/C/GN/4), 17 June 1975.

The distribution of work amongst the members of the Working Group was as follows:

Mr. Ayoubi	Arabic (together with Mr. Nédélec in the Maghreb area);
Mr. Breu	Amharic, Greek;
Mr. Dahlstedt	Somali;
Mr. Földi and Mr. Radó	Bulgarian, Mongolian (together with Mr. Nédélec) and Korean in North Korea;
Mr. Geelan	Burmese, Maldivian (both together with Mr. Sharma);
Mr. Kattan	Arabic;
Mr. Komkov	Non-Roman alphabets of the USSR;
Mr. Lapesa	Hebrew;
Mr. Nédélec	Arabic in the Maghreb area (together with Mr. Ayoubi), Mongolian (together with Mr. Földi and Mr. Radó), Cyrillic alphabets of Yugoslavia;
Mr. Page	Japanese, Khmer, Korean in South Korea, Laotian, Persian, Thai;
Mr. Qiao Feng	Chinese;
Mr. Sharma	Writing systems of the Indian Division (Maldivian together with Mr. Geelan), further Pashtu and Burmese (the latter together with Mr. Geelan).

Results of investigations

The results of the investigations of the Working Group are given below in the alphabetical order of the non-Roman alphabets:

Amharic

The validity of resolution 7[1] of the Second United Nations Conference seems still to correspond to the situation in Ethiopia; as no reply has been received from the Convenor's two letters to the Ethiopian Government, it can be presumed that no change has occurred.

Arabic

The Arabic Division endeavours to gain general recognition by all Arabic-speaking countries of the amended Beirut 1971 System for the Romanization of Arabic Writing.[2] A Comparative Romanization Table for seven romanization systems of Arabic as elaborated by Mr. Page in 1974 shows that the divergencies between the main systems in practical use are still important.

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.77.

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

[2] *Ibid.*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), p. 170.

According to Mr. Nédélec's statements there exists in the Maghreb area (and in Mauritania) a firmly established system, divergent from the amended Beirut system.

Algeria

The National Institute of Cartography at the Ministry of National Defence of Algeria approved, in 1972, the application for official cartography of the *Principes de translittération de l'arabe on caractères latins* edited by the *Institut géographique national français* (Paris, April 1967).

Mauritania

The *Institut géographique national français* (IGNF), Paris, adopted in 1969 for all cartographic work which it undertakes in Mauritania under the current aid and co-operation programme a simplified version of the IGNF system of April 1967. In consequence, the romanized name forms in the official maps of Mauritania edited since 1969 will be rendered in accordance with this simplified IGNF system.

Morocco

The Ministry of Agriculture of Morocco introduced in 1971 and 1972 an official romanization system for Arabic script, which in essence constitutes a modification of the above-mentioned IGNF system of April 1967. It is officially used by the Topographic Service of the country.

Tunisia

The Directorate of Topography and Cartography of Tunisia published, in April 1972, an official romanization of Arabic script, which greatly differs from the official romanization of the other Maghreb countries, especially in that it makes ample use of haceks and cedillas. It was agreed by the Group of Experts that, if it should be impossible to agree on a single system, the amended Beirut 1971 system be modified to accommodate a limited number of essential variants as set forth in addendum A to annex IV of the report of the Working Group on its fifth session (ESA/RT/C/GN/3, p. 27). The Working Group recommended that the Arab League arrange a regional meeting of the Arab countries for the purpose of solving the romanization problem.

Bulgarian

Resolution 5 of the Second United Nations Conference[1] is still valid, but there exists uncertainty regarding the status of an alternative group of characters. There is no unanimity within the Working Group whether this alternative group of characters was in a subsidiary status or in an equal one. Therefore a rephrasing of resolution 5 by the Third United Nations Conference seems to be advisable.

Burmese

The practical situation in the country is widely unknown. Burma did not reply to a United Nations inquiry on the status of world mapping in 1976. According to Mr. Geelan the only evidence that in any way reveals Burmese practice in the spelling of geographical names is found in *Nomenclature des bureaux télégraphiques, Union internationale des télécommunications*, 4th edition, Geneva 1976. Spellings are in consonance with the 1907 version of the *Tables for the Transliteration of Burmese into English* published in Rangoon in 1908 by the Office of the Superintendent, Government Printing, Burma. Mr. Sharma stated that Burma was now publishing maps only in Burmese script and that the authorities were not contemplating a romanization system for the near future. The transliteration tables of 1907 would have no official status in Burmese mapping.

Chinese

Mr. Qiao-Feng described in great detail the development and establishment of the Pinyin romanization system in his country. He stated that Pinyin was taught in elementary schools, employed in maps and charts, and used in post and telegraph offices. Names at railroad stations in China appeared both in Chinese and in Roman (Pinyin) writing. The United Nations Group of Experts has charged the Working Group with the working out of a draft resolution on the subject of the romanization of Chinese.

The Working Group presents the following draft:

"*The Conference*,

"*Noting* that China has officially adopted and used for many years a system for romanizing Chinese geographical names from Chinese script,

"*Noting also* that this system is in consonance with scientific linguistic principles relating to transference between writing systems,

"*Noting further* that a substantial body of Chinese geographical names exists in terms of this romanization system,

"*Recommends* that the system set forth by the Government of China in the publication entitled, in English translation, *Revised Draft of the Plan of Phonetic Script of the Chinese Language* (October 1957) and generally known as the Pinyin system be adopted as the international system for the romanization from Chinese script of Chinese geographical names."

Mr. Qiao-Feng asserted that China will increase in the near future the amount of names material in terms of the Pinyin system in order to facilitate the practical application of this system. Mr. Geelan stated that at present 3,750 names are available in Pinyin. Whereas the Wade-Giles System was applicable to Chinese characters irrespective of the ethnic origin of the names involved, the Pinyin system, by contrast, was applicable to names of minority languages, Mr. Geelan asserted, only in so far as such names are accessible in their original form.

Greek

The Working Group considered the draft romanization system for the Greek alphabet prepared by Greek and Cypriot authorities as set forth in addendum B to

annex IV of the report of the fifth session of the Group of Experts (ESA/RT/C/GN.3, pp. 28–31) to be acceptable as an international system. At the sixth session of the Group of Experts the Group noticed a number of changes to this system set forth in working paper No. 13 of that session. These alterations had been agreed upon by both Greek and Cypriot authorities. Afterwards the Convenor learned by letters from the Greek expert that a final acceptance of the above-mentioned romanization system by the competent Greek and Cypriot authorities has not yet taken place.

Hebrew

Resolution 9[1] of the Second United Nations Conference is still valid. The situation in Israel has not changed.

Indian Division, alphabets of the

Resolution 11[1] of the Second United Nations Conference is still valid. Mr. Sharma stated that the Government of India was likely to adopt for official use in the near future the tables presented by him. Mr. Sharma has contacted authorities in Sri Lanka on the romanization problem of Sinhala, but had received no reply. Nothing is known of the position of the authorities of Bangladesh, Bhutan and Nepal concerning the romanizations of the alphabets of the respective national languages. Also doubtful is the situation in the Maldives. Mr. Geelan states that there was no evidence that there has ever been a locally produced map in either English or the Maldivian alphabet. The problem of the romanization of Urdu in Pakistan will be solved together with that of Pashtu; for detailed information see under "Pashtu".

Japanese

No change was stated since the Second United Nations Conference.[3] The two principal systems (Modified Hepburn and Kunrei) continue to be used by public and private entities in Japan and abroad, also for the rendering of geographical names. Mr. Page thinks that there appears to be no prospect of change.

Khmer

No change has been noted since the adoption of resolution 10[1] of the Second United Nations Conference.

Korean

The South Korean Ministry of Education system has been introduced extensively in that country in road and railroad signs and in a few small-scale tourist maps, and has been suggested to the United States Board on Geographical Names (BGN) for adoption. As of the present time, the BGN continues to adhere to the McCune-Reishauer system. No information was available of the situation in North Korea.

Laotian

No change had occurred since the Second United Nations Conference.[3]

Mongolian

Mr. Radó has undertaken the task of corresponding with the Mongolian Academy of Sciences in this matter. No results of his endeavours are known.

Pashtu

As a member of the Group of Experts, Mr. Ganji stated that an approaching conference, which was to include representatives from Iran, Afghanistan and Pakistan, would make a final decision in the matter of Pashtu, as well as of Urdu (in Pakistan). Nothing is yet known as to whether such a conference has taken place. According to Mr. Sharma, Afghanistan in the meantime had introduced a romanization system in a map of the country, which, according to Mr. Ganji's statement, can have provisional character only.

Persian

The recommendation contained in resolution 13[4] of the first United Nations Conference is still valid. An approaching conference of representatives from Iran, Afghanistan and Pakistan, which will deal with Pashtu and Urdu, will, of necessity, consider Persian as well, but no change is contemplated. See also comments under "Pashtu".

Somali

Since Somalia has adopted the Roman alphabet in 1973, Somali is no longer the concern of the Working Group. No maps have been seen in the new Somali alphabet, but a study of the Government newspaper *Xiddigta Oktoobar* by Mr. Geelan shows continuing inconsistency in the spelling of geographical names, typical for a period of transition.

Thai

No changes have taken place since 1967, and the recommendation contained in resolution 14[4] of the first United Nations Conference is still valid.

USSR, non-Roman alphabets of the

In the period covered by this report of the non-Roman alphabets of the USSR only the Russian alphabet has been discussed. In working paper No. 12, submitted to the sixth session of the Group of Experts in 1975, Mr. Komkov described two systems of romanization of the

[3] *Second United Nations Conference . . .*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference*, p. 6.

[4] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.68.I.7), chap. III.

Russian alphabet now in official use in his country: first, the State standard GOST 16876–71, approved in 1973, for more general purposes, and second, the romanization system worked out by the USSR Academy of Sciences in 1951–1956. This second system (Academy of Sciences System) is largely used in cartography (World Atlas, Moscow 1967; World Map 1:2,500,000 etc.), and the expert from the USSR recommends it for international use in the romanization of geographical names.

Two essential points were made in the discussion on this system. The first was the linguistic evaluation. Here Mr. Lewis felt that there were disadvantages in the treatment of the Russian letter ë. A detailed linguistic evaluation has been distributed by the Convenor to the members of the Working Group; it will be submitted to the Conference as a working paper.

The second point concerns the "donor principle". The majority of the members of the Working Group declared themselves in favour of this principle, but the Convenor stated that that would not relieve the Working Group of its duty to analyse systems presented by individual countries and make proposals for improvement to the countries concerned before approval of a given system by a United Nations Conference. In the case of the Academy of Science System, the above-mentioned linguistic evaluation (enclosure to Circular No. 17 of the Convenor of the Group) contains both an analysis and suggestions for alternative solutions.

Yugoslavia, the Cyrillic alphabets of

The situation is stable and unchanged. See resolution 6[1] in the report of the Second United Nations Conference.

AGENDA ITEM 16 – POINT 16 DE L'ORDRE DU JOUR – TEMA 16 DEL PROGRAMA

REPORT OF THE *AD HOC* GROUP OF EXPERTS ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON ITS FOURTH SESSION, 9 MAY AND 1 JUNE 1972

In pursuance of Economic and Social Council resolution 1314 (XLIV), the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts on Geographical Names was invited by the Secretary-General to convene its fourth session at Church House, London, on 9 May 1972, prior to the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names and to meet again on 1 June 1972 to review the results of the Conference.

The session was attended by 27 experts from 20 countries, representing all of the 14 geographical/linguistic divisions of the world (see annex).

Chris N. Christopher, Acting Chief of the Cartography Section, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, United Nations Secretariat, served as Secretary for the Group.

The session was opened by Meredith F. Burrill, Chairman of the Group of Experts.

The Group agreed to follow the same rules of procedure as at the previous sessions.

The Group adopted the following agenda:

1. Reports of the working groups
2. Organization of the Second Conference
3. Election of officers
4. Proposal on gazetteers
5. Programme for the Group of Experts
6. Fifth session of the Group of Experts

Reports of the working groups

At its meeting of 9 May the Group considered the reports of the four working groups, which were to be presented before the Conference.

The chairmen of the working groups reported on the work accomplished since the third session and placed before the Group of Experts the draft reports to the Conference. In order to expedite the meeting the working groups had already adopted their reports, thus permitting the Conference very quickly to acknowledge adoption of these draft reports.

Organization of the Conference

Mr. Christopher was asked to summarize briefly the tentative schedule of the Conference. A. M. Komkov emphasized that the Chairman of the Group should report on the activities of the Group of Experts following the national and divisional reports; the Chairman agreed to do this. It was also agreed that the Group would meet informally during the last week of the Conference to consider agenda items 3, 4, 5 and 6, which would be discussed further at the meeting on 1 June.

The Executive Secretary of the Conference said that in order to help the Conference in its preparation of committee reports, draft resolutions and the like, an editorial committee would be appointed, consisting primarily of members of the Group of Experts as well as other interested participants in the Conference. It was also agreed that Mr. Christopher, as Executive Secretary of the Conference, in consultation with the Executive Committee of the Conference and the Chairman of the Group of Experts, would make the necessary appointments to the editorial committee if volunteers were lacking.

With regard to the election of officers for the Conference, in order to allow for a wide geographical distribution it was agreed that the 15 officers of the five technical committees would be elected with due regard to divisional representation. It was also agreed that it would be beneficial to have one technical committee having officers representing Spanish-language areas.

Election of officers

The fourth session was resumed on 1 June and Mr. Sharma proposed that the present officers of the Group should continue in office until the next Conference. This proposal was seconded by Francis Gall and unanimously adopted by the Group.

Proposal on gazetteers

The Chairman, on the basis of the results of the Conference, quickly pointed out that a romanization system is adequate if it is accepted by both the donor and the user. He noted that many countries were not in any position to romanize all the names and that, furthermore, even if single systems were adopted and used this would not guarantee uniformity of names. He said that an obvious answer would be to retain files of standard names readily available and kept up to date by supplements and revisions. The gazetteers published by the United States Board on Geographical Names (BGN) covered the entire world, contained some four million names and to date had been found to satisfy most requirements not associated with large-scale mapping. These gazetteers pro-

vide the best possible names available to the greatest number of people, effectively and economically. He suggested to the Group of Experts that they consider that the BGN gazetteers be converted into United Nations gazetteers or gazetteers of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names, maintained co-operatively by BGN and the countries covered. The gazetteers would be monitored by a group appointed by the Group of Experts to permit conformity to agreed standards. He asked that this matter be considered carefully and discussed during the fifth session. V. Breu and A. M. Komkov both agreed that this proposal might be a useful solution and could lead to an enormous achievement, provided all the countries concerned would approve of these gazetteers. They could then be placed under the auspices of the United Nations. The Chairman said that the major cost concerning these gazetteers would already have been written off and that only the cost of revision would have to be met. The Group agreed that this item should be added to the agenda for the next session.

Programme for the group of experts

On the basis of the Conference results it was suggested that the Group should review and be prepared to discuss and consider at its next session its aims, functions and *modus operandi*.

Mr. Loxton reported that agreement was reached amongst the African participants in the Group of Experts to divide the fourteenth division, Africa south of the Sahara, into an eastern and western part. Mr. Coker of Nigeria was designated the expert of the western part. The exact titles for the new divisions, which would become the new fourteenth and fifteenth divisions, would be submitted at the next session.

It was decided that the four existing working groups should continue their work under their present chairmen. These working groups would be expected to report to the fifth session of the Group.

The Working Group on Definitions was expanded to include Mr. Hakulinen (Finland), Mr. Nédélec (France), Mr. Gall (Guatemala), Mr. Földi (Hungary), Mr. Lapesa Melgar (Spain), Mr. Vazquez-Maure (Spain) and Mr. Dahlstedt (Sweden). This working group would continue the work on revising and adding to the report submitted to the Second Conference.

The Working Group on a Single Romanization System would continue its work on non-Roman writing systems, which the Conference was unable to adopt, and will continue to review the experiences and results of the application of the romanization systems already adopted. Mr. Földi and Mr. Dahlstedt joined this working group. Mr. Ormeling volunteered to prepare a report on the financial consequences of diacritical marks contained in the various romanization systems. It was also suggested that the divisions should consider the acceptability of certain romanization systems in their countries and report on this matter at the next meeting of the Group of Experts.

The Working Group on Extraterrestrial Topographic Features was asked to continue its work and to give special attention to resolution 21 of the Conference, "standardization of names of extraterrestrial topographic features".[1] Mr. Radó, Mr. Sharma and Mr. Vazquez-Maure joined this working group.

The Working Group on Names of Undersea Features was renamed the "Working Group on Names of Undersea and Maritime Features". This working group was asked to pay special attention to resolution 22, "Standardization of maritime nomenclature",[1] resolution 23, "Names of Antarctic and undersea features",[1] and resolution 26, "Standardization of names of undersea features beyond a single sovereignty".[1] The Chairman agreed to prepare a model for name proposal, in accordance with resolution 23, similar to that published in the BGN *Gazetteer of Undersea Features*.

The Group was informed by Mr. Ormeling that in accordance with resolution 18, "Technical training of personnel",[1] the draft programme for the training course that was expected to be held at Enschede, the Netherlands, during the late summer of 1974, would be presented for discussion at the next session.

The Group asked Mr. Page to prepare a paper on the term "minority language" and to distribute this paper to the Group members prior to its next session in order to allow time for serious consideration and discussion.

Mr. Lewis, on the basis of resolution 11, "Transliteration into Roman and Devanâgarî of the languages of the Indian Group",[1] said that the Directorate of the Military Survey of the United Kingdom was prepared to make available 6,000 copies of the romanization guide by Mr. Sharma in order to have it distributed as an annex to volume II of the official records of the Conference. Mr. Lewis also suggested that the system used for the Indian group of languages should be used in the next edition of the BGN *Romanization Guide*.

It was decided that the divisions should carefully study the applicability of resolution 29, "Exonyms",[1] and report their conclusions at the fifth session.

In order to implement resolution 33, "International co-operation in the standardization of geographical names",[1] the Chairman was asked to contact the Universal Postal Union, the International Telecommunication Union and the International Union of Tourist Organizations on the matter of international names standardization. With regard to the naming of features lying outside a single sovereignty, the Group agreed that each division should undertake the preparation of reports in accordance with resolution 24, "Standardization of names beyond a single sovereignty", resolution 25, "Names of features beyond a single sovereignty", and resolution 34, "International standardization of names beyond a single sovereignty",[1] and submit these to the Cartography Section, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, United Nations Secretariat,

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

before 1 January 1973. The United Nations Secretariat should be in contact with other United Nations bodies in respect of resolutions 21 and 24.

Mr. Meynen was asked to continue his work on the bibliography and was commended on all the work he had done to date.

The Chairman also requested of members whose delegations were obliged to report on the Conference to their respective Governments, that they send copies of these reports to all the divisions and to the Cartography Section. Mr. Breu suggested that the same be done with the working papers of the four working groups. Mr. Komkov urged that the United Nations ask all States Members to send whatever information is available on names standardization to the Cartography Section with a view to distributing this information to the Group of Experts.

Fifth session of the Group of Experts

The Group agreed to hold its fifth session in 1973 and its sixth session not before 1975. The majority of the experts preferred that the fifth session be held at the end of August or the beginning of September, but as an alternative they agreed that if the United Nations did not have meeting and interpretation facilities available at that time, then March 1973 would have to suffice.

Annex

LIST OF PARTICIPANTS

United States of America and Canada

M. F. Burrill (United States of America; *Division Chairman*)
M. B. Smart (Canada)
C. Page (United States of America)

Latin America

F. Gall (Guatemala)

United Kingdom group

H. A. G. Lewis (United Kingdom; *Division Chairman*)
P. J. M. Geelan (United Kingdom)

Dutch-speaking and German-speaking group

E. Meynen (Federal Republic of Germany; *Division Chairman*)
J. Breu (Austria)
D. Blok (Netherlands)
F. J. Ormeling (Netherlands)

Norden

P. Hovda (Norway)

Romance languages area, other than Latin America

F. Nédélec (France; *Division Chairman*)
J. Corderas Descárroga (Spain)
R. Lapesa Melgar (Spain)

Europe, East Central and South-East

S. Radó (Hungary; *Division Chairman*)
E. Földi (Hungary)

Union of Soviet Socialist Republics

A. M. Komkov (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics)

Arabic

M. Z. Al-Ayubi (Lebanon)

Asia, South-West, other than Arabic

K. Vadiie (Iran)

Indian group

Col. D. N. Sharma Atri Harnal (India)

Asia, South-East

B. Khamasundara (Thailand; *Division Chairman*)
C. Chhiet (Khmer Republic)

Asia, East

R. Nagaoka (Japan)
S. Maruyama (Japan)

Africa South of the Sahara

R. Oluwole Coker (Nigeria)
J. Loxton (Kenya)
W. J. Absaloms (Kenya)

REPORT OF THE *AD HOC* GROUP OF EXPERTS ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON ITS FIFTH SESSION, 5–16 MARCH 1973*

Terms of reference

The *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts on Geographical Names (GEGN) was invited by the Secretary-General, in pursuance of Economic and Social Council resolution 1314 (XLIV), to convene at United Nations Headquarters from 5 to 16 March 1973.

Attendance

The session was attended by 32 experts from 20 countries, representing 12 of the 14 geographical/linguistic divisions of the world (see annex I). The Acting Chief of the Cartography Section, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, United Nations Secretariat, served as the Secretary for the Group.

Opening of the session

The session was opened by the Chairman of the Group of Experts.

The Group agreed to follow the same rules of procedure as at the previous sessions.

The Group adopted the following agenda:

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.70.

1. Opening of the session
2. Progress reports by the Chairman and the divisions
3. Reports by the working groups
4. Review of aims, functions and *modus operandi*
5. Proposal for the United Nations gazetteer
6. Names of features beyond a single sovereignty
7. Training courses
8. Diacritical marks and exonyms
9. Co-operation with other international organizations
10. Plan of action before the sixth session
11. Report of the fifth session

Officers of the session

The officers of the session were: Meredith F. Burrill (*Chairman*), A. M. Komkov (*Vice-Chairman*) and D. Blok (*Rapporteur*).

PROGRESS REPORTS BY THE CHAIRMAN AND THE DIVISIONS

The Chairman reported that he had presented a paper on the achievements of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in May 1972, during the twenty-second International Geographical Congress, held in Montreal in August 1972. He also sent a copy of this paper to the Secretary-General of the International Committee of Onomastic Science to be published in the quarterly entitled *Onoma*. The Chairman, reporting for the United States of America-Canada Division, mentioned that Canada and the United States of America approached the categorization of undersea features in different ways; whereas the United States of America based its categories on the size and shape of the feature, Canada proceeded from the genesis of the feature. The question was discussed during a meeting in Halifax, where the differences were clarified. The Chairman further drew attention to some new publications on names published in his Division. The report by Mr. Gall on the activities of the Latin America Division was published as working paper No. 4.[1] Mr. Gall presented to the United Nations Map Collection the National Atlas of Guatemala and on his request Mr. Velásquez was asked to report on progress made in Cuba. Mr. Nédélec, reporting for the Romance Languages Division, stated that so far only France and Spain were active in the Division and in anticipation of the Second Conference in London in 1972 he informed Italy of the Division's progress through the Istituto Geografico Militar in Florence, but had not received any answer to date. It was decided that a combined effort by the United Nations Secretariat and the International Cartographic Association would be made in order to obtain active co-operation from Italy in the work of the Division. The report made by Mr. Radó on the East Central and South East Europe Division was submitted as working paper No. 11.* Mr. Breu reported on the activities within the Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division. Work had continued on the *Non-European Countries* volume of the *Duden Wörterbuch geographischer Namen*, to be published by the *Ständiger Ausschusz für geographische Namen*, the subdivisional geographical names authority for the German-speaking countries. A Toponymic Committee for Upper Austria is now being constituted and a *Gazetteer of Austria* has been finished in manuscript form by the *Abteilung für kartographische Namenkunde* in Vienna, the Austrian body for co-ordinating names policy. Mr. Breu reported further that it might be expected that the German Democratic Republic would become a member of the Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division in the future. The report by Mr. Hovda on behalf of the Norden Division was distributed as working paper No. 3.* Mr. Lewis, reporting for the United Kingdom Division, said that work on Welsh and Gaelic names was continuing. A report by Mr. Lambert of Australia on work being done in New Guinea would be made available in the near future. The report by Mr. Komkov on work done in the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics Division was published as working paper No. 7.* Mr. Komkov stated that in 1972 a small national anniversary atlas with gazetteer names had been published. Messrs. Kattan (Saudi Arabia) and Bulugma (Libyan Arab Republic) of the Arabic Division reported that their countries adhered to the romanization system for Arabic adopted during the Beirut Conference in 1971 and amended during the 1972 London Conference. Mr. Vadiie, reporting on behalf of the Asia South-west Division, commented on working paper No. 14.* Mr. Banlang, reporting for the Asia South-east Division, said that documentation from the London Conference had been distributed to all of the countries in his Division, together with a request to comment on a proposed divisional meeting, but that to date he had received no replies. Mr. Coker (Nigeria) of the Africa, South of the Sahara Division stated that by agreement he and Mr. Absaloms (Kenya) had divided this Division into two: Africa East and Africa West.[2] Mr. Absaloms stressed the difficulties met by the former Africa South of the Sahara Division and asked for assistance in building up an organization that might form the backbone of both Africa East and Africa West. The Chairman stated that he would contact the Ford Foundation for funds for this purpose.

The Group of Experts on Geographical Names took note of the tangible progress reflected in the reports of the divisions and expressed the wish that in the future the divisional aspects of the work would be emphasized in the reports.

[1] An asterisk (*) accompanying the mention of a document indicates that copies of that document are available on request from the Cartography Section, Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

[2] A workable membership of the two geographical linguistic divisions would appear to be: *Africa East*: Botswana, Burundi, Ethiopia, Kenya, Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Rwanda, Somalia, Swaziland, United Republic of Tanzania, Uganda, Zaire and Zambia; *Africa West*: United Republic of Cameroon, Central African Republic, Chad, Congo, Dahomey, Equatorial Guinea, Gabon, Gambia, Ghana, Guinea, Ivory Coast, Liberia, Mali, Niger, Nigeria, Senegal, Sierra Leone, Togo and Upper Volta.

Reports by the working-groups

The Working Groups on Definitions, on Undersea and Maritime Features, on Extraterrestrial Topographic Features, and on a Single Romanization System for each Non-Roman Writing System reported on their work since the London Conference in May 1972 and the fifth session of the Group of Experts (see annexes II to V, respectively). Two new working groups were set up to deal with training courses and with international gazetteers. These two working groups also reported to the Group of Experts (see annexes VI and VII). All the reports were accepted; tribute was paid to the report of Mr. Delaney, the Convener of the Working Group on Maritime and Undersea Features, for its excellent presentation and hope was expressed that it might serve as a model for the other working group reports in the future.

Bibliography of gazetteers, 1945–1972

Mr. Meynen reported that since the London Conference the work had proceeded along the lines described in his report to that Conference. He mentioned specifically the help he had received from Mr. Abelson, Mr. Geelan and Mr. Lewis. Since five volumes of references have been compiled, he believed it was time to bring the work to conclusion and to prepare it for publication. The Group of Experts paid tribute to the tremendous work Mr. Meynen had accomplished and thanked him for his effort.

Review of aims, functions and modus operandi

It was felt that it was time to see if any modifications were required in the aims, functions and *modus operandi* of the Group of Experts. The list of major linguistic/geographical divisions was enlarged because of the division of the fourteenth division into two new divisions, Africa West and Africa East. The question of establishing a Greek linguistic/geographical division was discussed, but decision was deferred pending communication of intention by Cyprus and Greece.

It was agreed that the term "division" would be applied to the name of each division, the term group being removed. The names of the divisions should be altered accordingly. It was underlined that the experts should realize that they represent their divisions and not their countries. In this connexion, methods were discussed to increase the work within the divisions between meetings of the Group of Experts. It was the general opinion that regional conferences, especially cartographic conferences, might be of the greatest value in this respect. Also the prospect of a United Nations information circular could be of great help. Problems of correspondence and addressing were discussed and some suggestions were made for better means of communication.

The following amendments to the aims, functions and *modus operandi* adopted by the *Ad Hoc* Working Group of Experts on Geographical Names on its second session in 1970,[3] were made on the proposal of the East-Central and South-East Europe Division:

"In order to carry out its work and to achieve the results required, on both the national and the international level, as specified in the resolutions adopted at United Nations Conferences, the linguistic/geographical divisions will be as listed below:

" 1. United States of America-Canada Division
" 2. Latin America Division
" 3. United Kingdom Division
" 4. Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division
" 5. Norden Division
" 6. Romance Languages Division (other than Latin America)
" 7. East-Central and South-East Europe Division
" 8. Union of Soviet Socialist Republics Division
" 9. Arabic Division
"10. Asia South-west Division (other than Arabic)
"11. Indian Division
"12. Asia South-east Division.
"13. Asia East Division
"14. Africa East Division
"15. Africa West Division

"The Group of Experts would welcome participation by countries that have not yet participated in Conferences or Group of Experts sessions to take part, especially when their language or script is to be taken under consideration.

"Working groups of specialists may be formed under the chairmanship of one of the national experts, to study particular problems, between meetings of the Group of Experts."

Proposal for the United Nations gazetteer

The idea put forward by the expert of the United States of America-Canada Division during the fourth session to convert the United States BGN Gazetteers, under certain conditions, into United Nations gazetteers was welcomed, but also gave rise to many questions. A working group was formed to study and report on the matter (see annex VI) at the sixth session.

Names of features beyond a single sovereignty

Mr. Komkov pointed to resolution 24[4] of the London Conference and asked if the Chairman and the Secretary of the Group had yet consulted officially or unofficially with the legal division of the United Nations. He stated that he himself had consulted lawyers and that the result was to be found in working paper No. 8. A convention as mentioned in resolution 24 seemed more and more necessary as name-giving continued on the Moon, in the

[3] See *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), pp. 239–244.

[4] *Ibid.*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

Antarctic and in undersea regions. The Chairman said that he had undertaken to see whether or not the resolution was acceptable to his Government and had heard at the beginning of this year that, in principle, it was. The Secretary pointed out that it was necessary to have legislative authority from the Economic and Social Council before undertaking any formal queries on the matter. He expected that consultations on this matter could be initiated following the spring 1973 session of the Economic and Social Council.

Mr. Breu drew the attention of the Group to resolution 25[4] of the London Conference and to its implementation by the Austrian-German and Swiss-Austrian committees, which had standardized single names for mountains and water features on the borders of those countries.

Training courses

Mr. Ormeling, commenting on working paper No. 24, said that this working paper contained the document presented by the Dutch experts to their Government. The Dutch Government considered this a good opportunity to start a training programme and was willing to contribute financially to the plan proposed by the Dutch experts. However, the Government was of the opinion that this training course must not be an isolated affair. The Dutch Government stipulated as a condition for its assistance, that there must be follow-up training courses, i.e., that there must be a programme of a series of training courses, of which this one might constitute the beginning. Mr. Ormeling proposed the establishment of a working group with the specific task of studying the details of the programme of this first course and of examining the possibilities of a follow-up (see annex V).

Many experts paid tribute to this initiative. It was agreed that this was the appropriate time to do something in this field, and that all countries, not only the developing ones, could profit from this training. A serious lack of specialists in the field of geographical nomenclature existed. It was suggested that a more detailed programme ought to be worked out and that specifications must be prepared regarding the choice of lecturers, as well as the qualifications of the students. Two new items for the programme were proposed: (*a*) automatic data processing and (*b*) the names to be used on different kinds of maps. It was considered desirable that the lectures on field-collection be illustrated by means of films and sound-tracks. The minimum requirements to be met by the students must be made known at an early stage. Some additions were also proposed to the list of countries to be invited (attached to working paper No. 24). It was felt necessary that subsequently a course in the French language would also be organized.

As to an eventual follow-up it was made clear that courses will be planned in various regions, e.g., a training course for the Arabic area and one for Latin America. These courses might profit much from the experience that would be acquired during the Dutch pilot course. Mr. Delaney stated that he would strongly recommend that the next course be held in Canada; he would not commit his country.

A working group was established to study the programme, to provide guidelines for nations sending students and to consider prospective future developments. The working group met and reported to the session (see annex V). After some discussion, during which it became clear that the first course would necessarily be an experimental one, the report was adopted.

Diacritical marks and exonyms

Before the next session of the Group, a paper on the financial consequences of the use of diacritical marks will be presented by Mr. Ormeling. Mr. Komkov, commenting on working paper No. 10,* emphasized the need for these marks in the rendering of place names in most languages. It was the general feeling that the position of the Group was the same as that adopted in Geneva.

The problem of exonyms was considered on the basis of working papers Nos. 9 and 21.* It was acknowledged that the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, the United States of America, Hungary, Thailand and Norway had produced lists of exonyms as recommended in resolution 28[4] of the London Conference. Other countries were also preparing such lists. Difficulties in the treatment of exonyms in various contexts were discussed, as was the relationship between exonyms and names converted from one writing system into another. Measures that could be taken to diminish the use of exonyms were proposed, such as inducing map publishers to increase the use of local names.

The following definitions were adopted:

"*An exonym* is a written form of a geographical name used in a certain language for a geographical entity situated outside the area where the language has official status and differing in its form from the name used in the official language or languages of the area where the geographical entity is situated.

"*A conventional name* is an exonym which is widely and currently used.

"*A traditional name* is an exonym which is long established as well as being presently in use."

Co-operation with other international organizations

In pursuance of resolutions 31 and 33 of the London Conference,[4] the Group considered the subject of co-operation with those international organizations, both scientific and intergovernmental, which deal with place names and publish reference works. It was felt that this co-operation was essential to the application of name standardization. In particular, the Universal Postal Union, the International Telecommunication Union, the International Cartographic Association, the International Civil Aviation Organization, the International Union of Tourist Organizations and the International Geographical Union, which all in one way or another use and disseminate names, were thought to be of the utmost

importance. It was agreed that a letter would be sent to each of these organizations to inform them of the task the United Nations referred to the Group, to inform them of the Group's plans and to ask for their co-operation.

It was acknowledged that contacts with scientific organizations such as the International Astronomical Union and the International Committee of Onomastic Sciences might be improved. It was the general feeling that ultimate responsibility for the methods employed in name giving ought to lie with United Nations bodies because of their international standing. All organizations that are occupied in name-giving should be aware of this.

Plan of action before the sixth session

The working groups are to prepare specific papers for the next session, either by correspondence or by separate working group meetings when these are possible.

Divisional meetings were envisaged in various areas; the work within the divisions will be stimulated by the experts.

As to the preparation of the sixth session, it was deemed desirable that more preparatory work be done by intensive correspondence so that time might be employed more economically during the session.

The sixth session was tentatively scheduled for March 1975 and the seventh session for the end of May or the beginning of June 1976. The latter session might be principally devoted to the preparation of the Third Conference.

It was agreed that the setting up of a complete list of country names in the five official languages of the United Nations and in the official languages of the particular countries belonged to the competence of the Group. A working group was established to prepare such a list, to be presented to the sixth session. The Convener of the working group was Mr. Nédélec; other members were Messrs. [illegible] Lewis, Page, Radó and Vadiie. The working group would prepare its list by direct correspondence with the experts from all the divisions. It would make use of existing documentation, in particular the terminology bulletin of the United Nations giving the list of Member States and the *Statistical Yearbook*, and would keep in close correspondence and co-operation with the Terminology Section of the United Nations Secretariat.

Annex I

LIST OF PARTICIPANTS

United States of America–Canada Division

M. F. Burrill (United States of America; *Division Chairman*), 5503 Grove Street, Chevy Chase, Maryland 20015

G. F. Delaney (Canada), Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, 615 Booth Street, Ottawa KIA OE 4, Ontario

M. R. Brown (United States of America), Defense Mapping Agency att: PRR-2, Building 56, U.S. Naval Observatory, Washington D.C. 20305

Carl R. Pass (United States of America), Geographic Names Division, Topographic Center, Defense Mapping Agency, 6500 Brooks Lane, Washington D.C. 20315

R. R. Randall (United States of America), Defense Mapping Agency, Building 56, U.S. Naval Observatory, Washington D.C. 20305

Latin America Division

F. Gall (Guatemala; *Division Chairman*), 13 Avenida "A" 14–23, Colonia Loma Linda, Ciudad de Guatemala

Y. R. Velázquez García (Cuba), Director Tecnico de Cartografía, Instituto Cubano de Geodesia y Cartografía, Loma y 39, Nuevo Vedado, Havana

United Kingdom Division

H. A. G. Lewis (United Kingdom; *Division Chairman*), Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, c/o Royal Geographical Society, Kensington Gore, London S.W.

P. J. M. Geelan (United Kingdom), Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, c/o Royal Geographical Society, Kensington Gore, London S.W.

Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division

F. J. Ormeling (Netherlands; *Division Chairman*), Head of the Cartography Department, International Institute for Aerial Survey and Earth Science, 144 Boulevard 1945, Enschede

D. P. Blok (Netherlands), Director, Institute for Dialectology, Folklore and Onomastics of the Royal Dutch Academy of Science and Letters, Keizersgratch 569–571, Amsterdam

J. Breu (Austria), Head, Geographical Department, Austrian Institute for Eastern and Southeastern Europe, Josefsplatz 6, A-1010 Vienna I

E. Meynen (Germany, Federal Republic of), Langenbergweg 82, 53 Bonn-Bad Godesberg

Norden Division

Per Hovda (Norway), Chief, Place-Names Archives, University of Oslo, Blindern, Oslo 3

Romance Languages Division (other than Latin America)

F. Nédélec (France), Ingénieur-en-Chef Géographe, Institut géographique national, 136 bis rue de Grenelle, 75007, Paris

East-Central and South-East Europe Division

S. Radó (Hungary; *Division Chairman*), Director, Department of Cartography, National Office of Lands and Mapping, V. Kossuth Lajos Tér 11, 1860 Budapest

E. Kofos (Greece), Special Adviser, Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Athens

D. Vayacacos (Greece), Académie d'Athènes, Anagnostopoulou 14, Athens 136

Union of Soviet Socialist Republics Division

A. M. Komkov (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics), Vice-Chairman of the Permanent Joint Committee on Geographical Names, Cartographic Scientific Information Centre, Novoshchukinskaya 11, 123098 Moscow D-98

Arabic Division

F. A. Kattan (Saudi Arabia; *Division Chairman*), Aerial Survey Department, Ministry of Petroleum and Mineral Resources, P.O. Box 247, Riyadh

M. Al-Fayez (Saudi Arabia), Central Department of Statistics, Ministry of Finance, Riyadh

A. N. Al-Wohaibi (Saudi Arabia), The University of Riyadh, Riyadh

S. Bawazeer (Saudi Arabia), c/o Saudi Arabian Educational Mission, 880 Third Avenue (17th Floor), New York, New York 10022

H. Bulugma (Libyan Arab Republic), Libyan University, Benghazi

R. B. Seid (Libyan Arab Republic), Ministry of Education, Tripoli

Asia South-West Division (other than Arabic)

Y. M. Nawabi (Iran; *Division Chairman*), Department of Linguistics, Faculty of Arts and Literature, University of Tehran, Tehran

K. Vadiie (Iran), Department of Geography, Faculty of Letters and Human Science, University of Tehran, Tehran

H. Eren (Turkey), Dil ve Tarih-Cografya, Facültesi, Ankara

Asia South-East Division

Col. B. Khamasundara (Thailand; *Division Chairman*), The Royal Thai Survey Department, Bangkok 2

Lt. Col. B. Thipphayathat (Thailand), The Royal Thai Survey Department, Bangkok 2

Africa East Division

W. J. Absaloms (Kenya), Secretary, Standing Committee on Geographical Names, Survey of Kenya, P.O. Box 30046, Nairobi

Africa West Division

R. O. Coker (Nigeria), Federal Survey Department, Lagos

Annex II

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON DEFINITIONS

Three meetings of the Working Group on Definitions took place during the fifth meeting of the GEGN. The Convener was Mr. C. Page (United States of America), the Rapporteur was Mr. Velázquez (Cuba) and the following members of the Working Group were present: Mr. Breu (Austria), Mr. Nédélec (France), Mr. Lewis (United Kingdom), Mr. Gall (Guatemala), Mr. Hovda (Norway) and Mr. Meynen (Federal Republic of Germany); absent were Mr. Dahlstedt (Sweden), Mr. Radó (Hungary), Mr. Lapesa (Spain), Mr. Hakulineh (Finland), Mr. Sharma (India), and Mr. Földi (Hungary).

The Working Group decided to complete its work prior to the convening of the Sixth Meeting of the GEGN, so that a final report of its work might be presented to that meeting.

The following resulted from discussion of the work assigned to the Working Group by the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names in London, May 1972, and of definitions of terms distributed throughout the Working Group since that time by Messrs. Page, Nédélec and Gall:

(*a*) Definitions for the following terms were decided:

(i) alphabet, transcription
An alphabet which may be employed in the process of *transcription*, q.v.

(ii) alphabet, transliteration
An alphabet which may be employed in the process of *transliteration*, q.v.

(iii) grapheme
A graphic symbol or combination of graphic symbols, cited within the context of a particular language, which represents a particular phonological and/or morphological item or items with consistency.

(iv) key, romanization
A table which sets forth the graphic symbols of a non-Roman writing system together with corresponding graphic symbols of one or more Roman writing system(s).

(v) reversibility
A characteristic of a conversion system which results in the convertibility of any written item from one writing system to another, and reconversion into the first system, the result being identical in every particular with the original item.

(vi) vocabulary
a. A list of the words of a language (synonym: *lexicon*);
b. A succinct dictionary giving the principal words of a language or citing a list of specialized terms (see *glossary* or *lexicon*);
c. The repertory of words of a particular individual for all his communication.

(vii) Standardization, geographical name
The prescription or the recommendation of a particular graphic form or forms for application to a given feature, as well as the conditions of employment of that form or forms.

(viii) International standardization of geographical [illegible] (see resolution 33[a] adopted at the London Conf[illegible]

(*b*) Definitions for the following terms [illegible] it was decided that these would be considered [illegible] so that definitions might be presented to the sixth [illegible] of the GEGN:

(i) diglossia
(ii) feature, hydrographic
(iii) form, graphic
(iv) term, descriptive

(*c*) It was decided to omit the follo[illegible]

(i) syllable
(ii) nucleus, vocalic
(iii) vowel
(iv) consonant
(v) cluster, consonant
(vi) diphthong
(vii) a number of technical linguistic terms
(viii) language, national
(ix) language, state
(x) language, vernacular
(xi) toponymy, cartographic

(*d*) The terms "*exonym*", "*conventional name*" and "*traditional name*" were discussed in full session of the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts on Geographical Names, and recommended definitions will appear in another working paper of the fifth meeting of the Working Group.

For the continuity of the work, the Convener (Mr. Page) will draw together all definitions of terms presently pending, will make comments or suggestions with regard to each, and will distribute the resulting document to all members of the Working Group; comment and suggestions will be solicited from all members of the Working Group, using this document as a basis.

A paper on definitions by Mr. Lapesa [illegible] by members of the Working Group during the course of [illegible] ing, as well as working papers Nos. 17 and 29 of the fifth [illegible] ted by Mr. Gall (Guatemala), will be included.

Annex [illegible]

REPORT OF THE WORKING G[illegible] MARITIME Fe[illegible]

Terms of reference

This Working Group was established by the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts on Geographical Names during its second session, March 1970. The Working Group was directed to "create guidelines for name applications, the definition of descriptive terminology, methods of recording and stabilizing undersea nomenclature and the determination of the agency or agencies best suited to centralize and disseminate such information" (see document ESA/RT.C/GN/1, 29 April 1970). These terms were expanded by the London Conference to include consideration of maritime features.

Preamble

In the discussions of this Working Group,[b] the work done at earlier

[a] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I . . . , chap. III.

[b] Members of the Working Group present at the meeting were as follows: Mr. Delaney (Canada); Mr. Komkov (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics); Mr. Burrill (United States of Ameri[illegible] (United Kingdom); Mr. Ormeling (Netherlands). M[illegible] (Germany, Federal Republic of) and Mr. Hovda (Nor[illegible] representing India, was absent.

sessions of the Group of Experts was reviewed and the outcome of this work as expressed in resolutions of the London Conference was examined.

It was considered that resolutions 22, 23 and 26B[c] were particularly significant for guidance of the Group in future activities. Attention was directed to the following paraphrases of the pertinent resolutions:

Working paper No. 23[d] of the fifth session, prepared by the Group co-ordinator, suggested as starting points for consideration:

(*a*) An examination of the IHO publication *Limits of Oceans and Seas*;

(*b*) An examination of the Principles and the Reporting Form used in publication No. 111, the BGN *Gazetteer of Undersea Feature Names*; and

(*c*) An examination of the list of generic terms and their definitions issued by the International Hydrographic Organization.

Discussion

There was general agreement that the resolutions indicated in working paper No. 23 constituted those with which the working group should now be concerned. Mr. Burrill advanced the view that no attempt should be made, at least at this stage, to incorporate regulations regarding the treatment of undersea feature names in an international convention. Rather, he felt that agreement on names proposed should be worked out by obtaining a consensus among those nations concerned with such names by the interchange of information of intent.

It was also agreed that the extension of the Working Group's terms of reference to "maritime features", as indicated in resolutions 22 and 23[c] of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names should not be interpreted as embracing terrestrial feature names.

In consideration of the publication *Limits of Oceans and Seas* and its accompanying maps, it was agreed that the terms "delimitation" and "limits", and the use of the first term in resolution 22, should not be interpreted in a legal sense in the work of the Group, but only in relation to delimitation for the purpose of envisaging the extent of areas to which names might apply for general reference purposes. It was also observed that care should be taken to avoid overlapping the work of other agencies engaged in the same areas of activity, but rather that every effort should be made to inform national and international hydrographic organizations of what the United Nations concerns in this field are. Attention was drawn to IHO Circular Letter No. 28 of July 1972, in which conformity to the principles advanced by the United Nations Committee on the Standardization of Geographical Names is urged on its members, and copies of the letter were provided to the Group of Experts.

It was evident from the discussion that the consideration of the revision of *Limits of Oceans and Seas* may be needed in terms of other possible uses by oceanographers and others, and the Working Group needs to examine the publication in these terms. Similarly, the exploration of the details of model forms and of undersea naming principles call for much close examination by the various countries having interests in this area, and that can only be done by subsequent exchange of views and the evaluation of accumulated opinions.

Conclusions

The Working Group concluded:

(*a*) That correspondence should be entered into with concerned countries respecting the suitability of *The Limits of Oceans and Seas*, as stated in the IHO publication, from the standpoint of less specific purposes than designed by the IHO;

(*b*) That countries should be invited to comment on the Principles and Proposal Form used in the BGN gazetteer of undersea feature names and Antarctic feature names (see appendices I, II and III) with a view to constructing principles and forms acceptable for United Nations purposes in this context;

(*c*) That such organizations as the International Hydrographic Bureau, as well as the oceanographic scientific community generally, should be fully informed of the activities of this Working Group; and

(*d*) That the Group Co-ordinator should initiate this correspondence with the object of enabling firm proposals to be presented to the sixth session of the GEGN respecting naming principles, name proposal forms and generic term definitions.

[c] See *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names* . . . vol. I . . ., chap. III.

[d] Copies of the working paper are available, upon request, from the Cartography Section, Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

APPENDIX I

BGN PRINCIPLES ON NAMING UNDERSEA GEOGRAPHICAL FEATURES

Undersea name policies

BGN policies applied in the official standardization of the approved names in this gazetteer are as follows:

1. The Board will consider appropriate name proposals by United States nationals for undersea features in international waters.
2. The Board will consider name proposals for features under United States territorial waters on the same basis as other domestic names.
3. Prior to the naming of a feature, identification of its character, extent and position shall have been established sufficiently for identification. Positions shall be given in terms of geographic coordinates. If it is necessary to refer to a feature before such full identifiability has been established, it is suggested that the reference be by coordinates and generic term with the addition of (PA) after the coordinates if the position is not adequately established and (?) after the generic if the nature of the feature is in some doubt.
4. Undersea names in the immediate vicinity of the coast of another country will be treated as names in that country.
5. The Board will ordinarily approve names of undersea features beyond limits of the United States that are bestowed, or approved, by other countries or nationals of other countries unless there is some conflict or other question. Generics in English, if appropriate to the feature, will be accepted; those in other languages will be translated.
6. Guidelines for selection of specific terms:
   - A. It is long-established BGN policy to favor short and simple names as the most efficient, other things being equal.
   - B. Specific terms in the names of major undersea features should, wherever feasible, indicate the general location of the area in which they lie, e.g., Mariana Trench, Ninetyest Ridge.
     - (1) In some cases, this can be accomplished simply by using the same specific term in the names of adjoining features, e.g., Aleutian Ridge, Aleutian Basin, Aleutian Trench, Mariana Ridge, and Mariana Trench, Bellona Plateau, Bellona Reefs, Bellona Shoal.
     - (2) In some cases, the specific term may indicate direction from a large well-known associated feature, e.g., South Honshu Ridge, West Caroline Basin.
     - (3) In cases where extent of a long linear feature needs to be identified and the extremities can be identified by named geographic features, the names of those features may be hyphenated as the specific terms, e.g., Azores-Gibraltar Ridge, Peru-Chile Trench.
     - (4) Canyons, since they usually extend close to the shore, are normally given as specific terms the names of rivers, points or other readily identifiable named land features, e.g., Barrow Canyon, Scripps Canyon and Ascension Canyon.
   - C. Specific names for other features can be derived from ships or other vehicles utilized in the discovery of the feature, from expedition names, individuals associated with the discovery, organizations and institutions sponsoring the expedition or from individuals who have specifically been involved in the recognition of the uniqueness of the feature through the interpretation of the data.
     - (1) Names of ships may be applied to features such as seamounts, knolls, canyons, tablemounts, etc. The ship name to be used should be that of the discovering ship, or if

that has been previously used for a similar feature, it should be the name of the ship verifying the feature, e.g., San Pablo Seamount, Atlantis II Seamounts.

(2) Specific names of vehicles utilized in the discovery of a feature may be used, as in the Kiwi Seamount from the geomagnetic survey plane "KIWI" under Project MAGNET which discovered its existence through a magnetic anomaly.

(3) Expedition names may be used, e.g., Northern Holiday Seamount.

(4) Names of individuals associated with the discovery of a feature may be used, including any of the following:
   a. The captain of the ship.
   b. Expedition leaders, or survey party chiefs.
   c. Individuals in charge at the time of discovery and recognition of the feature.

(5) Individuals involved in the interpretation of data leading to the recognition of the unique character of a feature, e.g., bathymetrists, oceanographers, geologists, hydrographers.

(6) Persons who have made important contributions to knowledge of the oceans, including the interpretation of oceanic data, or the preparation of charts of the oceans such as historical hydrographers, oceanographers, and scientists, e.g., Maury Channel, Ewing Seamount.

(7) Organizations and institutions involved in the study of the seas, such as Scripps Canyon.

(8) Names of persons prominent in the past history of the nation.

D. It is permissible to name groups of features after specific categories of historical personages, mythical figures, stars and constellations, fish, birds, animals, etc. Such groups could be as follows:

Musicians Seamounts: Bach Seamount, Brahms Seamount, Schubert Seamount

Electricians Seamounts: Volta Seamount, Ampere Seamount, Galvani Seamount

Ursa Minor Ridge and Trough Province, Kochab Ridge, Polaris Trough, Suhail Ridge

E. Descriptive names will be acceptable if not duplicated, particu-

APPENDIX II

BGN undersea name proposal form

BOARD ON GEOGRAPHIC NAMES

UNDERSEA FEATURE NAME PROPOSAL

TEAR OUT ALONG THIS LINE

Ocean or Sea _____ **Name proposed** _____

Lat. _____ **(N) (S), Long.** _____ **(E) (W);** _____ **nautical miles in** _____ **direction from** _____

Description: Kind of feature: _____

Identifying or categorizing characteristics (size, shape, dimensions, least depth, steepness, etc.): _____

_____

_____

_____

Associated features: _____

_____

_____

Chart reference:

Shown and named on chart (map) _____

Shown but not named on chart (map) _____

Not shown but within area covered by _____

Reason for choice of name:

If for a person, state how associated with the feature to be named _____

_____

_____

Discovery facts: Date _____; by (individuals or ship) _____

_____

By means of (equipment): _____

Navigation used: _____

Estimated positional accuracy in nautical miles: _____

Description of survey (track spacing, line crossings, grid network, etc.): _____

_____

larly when they refer to distinguishing characteristics, e.g., Hook Ridge, Horseshoe Seamounts.

F. Names considered inappropriate include:
   (1) Names applied to similar features elsewhere.
   (2) Full names or unwieldy titles of individuals, institutions or organizations.
   (3) Names of commercial products or their manufacturers.
   (4) Names of individuals proposed because of relationship or friendship with the proponent.

7. Existing names that have been applied for many years may be accepted even though they do not coincide with the above policy.

Name proposal form

Undersea name proposal forms are provided in this publication to facilitate submittal and expedite approval and promulgation of names. Anyone may propose a name for an unnamed undersea feature that has been adequately identified as to type and geographic location.

Use a separate form for each name proposed, copying the form if necessary, and filling in all the blanks that are pertinent. Give coordinates of latitude and longitude ordinarily taken at the approximate center of the feature and read fine enough to identify the feature, ordinarily the nearest degree for basins, or the nearest minute for smaller features such as canyons.

For "kind of feature," use the appropriate term from the list of designations and definitions in the current edition of the BGN Gazetteer of Undersea Features. This term will ordinarily be used also as the generic term in the name. If the feature is of a kind not covered by these terms or definitions, explain in a supplementary note.

Although "reference to prior publication" is provided for, it is hoped that authors will refer not-yet-acted-upon names to the Board before publication, and every effort will be made to act on them in time to accommodate publication schedules.

Reporting of errors

It is requested that all who use this gazetteer aid in its correction for future editions by reporting errors to the Board on Geographic Names, Department of the Interior, Washington, D. C. 20240. A statement of the source of the correct information will be helpful.

APPENDIX III

BGN Antarctic name proposal form

Use other side where necessary

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR
BOARD ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

No. 183 195

ANTARCTIC NAME PROPOSAL

NAME PROPOSED: _____

DESCRIPTION: Kind of feature _____ Lat. _____ S, Long _____ E. W.

_____ nautical miles distant from _____

_____ in a _____ direction

Map reference (air chart, H.O. chart, map title etc.) _____

Identifying characteristics (size, shape, length, width, height etc.) _____

Photo reference (vertical, oblique, other) _____

Materials submitted _____

SUPPORTING DATA: Reason for choice _____

Date discovered, seen, recorded, mapped etc. _____

By whom _____

Personal information (of honoree) _____

Expedition _____

Supporting data submitted (surveys, charts, photos, other) _____

to be returned ☐

not to be returned ☐

SUBMITTED BY: Name _____

Address _____

Rank or official duties _____ Date _____

DO NOT WRITE IN SPACE BELOW

CODE _____ DATE RECEIVED _____

CASE SECTION _____ PROMULGATION _____

Annex IV

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON EXTRATERRESTRIAL TOPOGRAPHIC FEATURES

GROUP TERMS OF REFERENCE

The competence of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names to consider the field of extraterrestrial names was determined at its second session in 1970. The Working Group[a] established consequent upon this determination was charged with the examination of such toponyms, without qualification as to scope or methods.

RELEVANT RESOLUTIONS — LONDON CONFERENCE

Resolutions 21, 24 and 34[b] of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names are specifically relevant to this Working Group.

The Chairman summarized action since the London Conference. The contemporary state of mapping of the moon and the current mapping programmes for both the moon and Mars emphasized the need to devise systems of reference for extraterrestrial features acceptable to all nations. These mapping programmes include the 1:250,000 lunar mapping programme now being undertaken in the United States and the mapping of Mars from Mariner photography.

A circular letter had been sent by the Chairman to the individual members of his group, including Colonel Sharma, Mr. Radó and Mr. Lapesa, who had requested to be associated with the work of the Group during the later stages of the London Conference. The letter reported on correspondence that had taken place between the Chairman (A. M. Komkov) and A. Dollfus, President of both the Inter-Union Commission for Lunar Studies and Commission 17, "The Moon", of the International Astronomical Union (IAU) and with D. Menzel, Chairman of the IAU Working Group on Lunar Nomenclature.

Mr. Burrill reported that at a meeting in Washington on 23 January 1973, attended by Mr. Menzel and representatives of the United States Department of State, NASA, the United States National Committee of the IAU, the Smithsonian Institution, the National Academy of Sciences and the Board on Geographic Names, it was made clear that only 20 to 30 names are required for moon maps soon to be produced for NASA, that these can be drawn from an existing bank of names and that the matter of formal contact between NASA and Mr. Menzel's subcommittee remained to be discussed at a meeting in Houston, Texas, in March 1973.

DISCUSSION

The naming of extraterrestrial features is a complex matter and one that properly falls within the orbit of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. Nomenclature of extraterrestrial features must be acceptable to all nations and this fact, together with the need to determine how best to render names in a standardized form in each of the various languages of the world, places the matter firmly within the province of the United Nations Group of Experts of Geographical Names. The drawing up of such systems of nomenclature was not appropriate to astronomers alone. Naming of features on the "near side" and the "far side" of the moon had traditionally been commemorative. Because the number of names allocated by astronomers were relatively few in number, a subsidiary system had been employed for the "near side", which entailed the addition of alphabetic (Latin and Greek) suffixes and, for certain features, numerical suffixes, to identify minor features located near named topographical features. This system was well established and widely used by astronomers both professional and amateur. There was a reluctance on the part of many of them to abandon the system. However, the topographic detail now shown on large-scale maps prepared from photographs taken by space vehicles was far in excess of what could be seen by telescopes from Earth. For such detailed maps the alpha-numeric suffix was of limited use, in many cases confusing, and not to be recommended.

Commemorative names had already been applied to major features on the "far side" of the moon, but so far no letter or number suffixes had been employed. It appeared most desirable to avoid using the latter method for designating features of secondary importance on that side of the moon except possibly where they are located within the perimeter of a major feature.

Direct exploration of the moon by manned and unmanned lunar missions has produced a truly immense amount of surface information. As a part of the Apollo programme new names had been allocated to many small features. Although those names were intended solely for the purpose of operational reference during the missions, they inevitably tend to gain currency, just as Antarctic names have become established by continued usage.

In a properly conceived system of extraterrestrial nomenclature, the appropriateness of names from the toponymic point of view would receive special attention.

There is the further question of the legal standing of names allocated to extraterrestrial surface features by non-governmental bodies. It was agreed that the status of the Group of Experts as a United Nations body and the standing of the experts as representatives of their own linguistic/geographical divisions made the Group of Experts the body best constituted to deal with this question.

The large-scale cartographic work now being undertaken and the increasing currency of Martian and lunar names emphasized the urgency of devising adequate systems of nomenclature and uniform methods of rendering names in various linguistic systems, compatible with the aims of international standardization of the names of terrestrial features. There is clearly a need to co-ordinate all naming activity and to achieve uniformity in the processes employed.

CONCLUSIONS

The Working Group will consider the extent to which names should be allocated, and on what basis. In this connexion, NASA and other agencies engaged in extraterrestrial mapping will be invited to furnish details of their programmes, both current and projected, with a view to assessing the magnitude of the task in the near future and in the longer term.

Guidelines will be drawn up by the Group of Experts and various methods of naming will be studied. No system of naming will be rejected out of hand. Commemorative naming, using the names of learned men of all nationalities, will be considered. Bearing in mind the limited number of such commemorative names available, the Group of Experts will examine the feasibility of using terrestrial geographical names, geographical and other terms and ordinary words selected from the languages of the entire world. In this task the assistance of the United Nations Organization and its member nations is requested.

The Group of Experts will confer with astronomers and others on the extent to which retention of alpha-numeric suffixes is desirable, but the extension of this method of designating features of the "far side" of the moon and on Mars will be discouraged.

Systems for identifying small features will be investigated and tested, including methods based on the use of co-ordinates.

The Working Group is charged with examining how best to achieve legal international status for names allocated to extraterrestrial features.

The Working Group, in accordance with resolution 21 of the London Conference, will continue its activity in drawing up a plan for international agreement on the standardization of the names of extraterrestrial topographical features in co-operation with the ICSU, the IAU and other international organizations.

In this connexion, the Chairman of the Group of Experts, M. Burrill, together with the co-ordinator of the Working Group on Extraterrestrial Topographical Features, A. M. Komkov, will maintain contact with those organizations and will prepare a status report for the next General Assembly of the IAU.

Members of the Working Group will inform each other of contacts with international organizations.

The Working Group will obtain and exchange information on extraterrestrial mapping programmes.

---

[a] Members of the Working Group are: A. M. Komkov (*Chairman*), H. A. G. Lewis (*Rapporteur*) and M. F. Burrill; S. Radó did not take part in the discussion; Colonel Sharma and Mr. Lapesa did not attend.

[b] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I . . ., chap. III.

Annex V

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON A SINGLE ROMANIZATION SYSTEM FOR EACH NON-ROMAN WRITING SYSTEM

Mr. Breu, convenor of the Working Group, gave an account of activities since the London Conference and at this present session (working papers 26 and 28).

With regard to the amended Beirut system for the transliteration of Arabic recommended under resolution 9[a] of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, the Working Group agreed on a finalized text of the table to be annexed to the resolution in the printed report of the London Conference.

The Working Group noted the terms of resolution 8[a] of the London Conference concerning the conditions of adoption of the amended Beirut system for the transliteration of Arabic, and noted also the appearance of four different systems for the transliteration of Arabic in Algeria, Mauritania, Morocco and Tunisia. While recognizing the ultimate desirability of having a single transliteration system applicable in all the countries of the Arab world, the Working Group recognized also the special character of the countries of the Maghreb and Mauritania. It recommended therefore that the system agreed to under resolution 8[a] of the London Conference be modified to accommodate a limited number of essential variants (see appendix I), if it should be impossible to agree on a single system. It recommended further that the Arab League arrange a regional meeting of the Arab countries for this purpose, preferably in the Maghreb, and also that representatives of the official cartographic agencies concerned be present at this meeting.

The Working Group considered the draft romanization system (appendix II) for the Greek alphabet, prepared, in collaboration with Cyprus, by a special commission within the Greek Ministry of Culture. The Working Group found the draft system acceptable as an international system for the transliteration of Greek.

APPENDIX I

Recommended variants for use in transliteration from Arabic

	Amended Beirut system letter	*Proposed*	
		Variant A	*Variant B*
Consonant	8	j	dj, j
	15	s	s (ss)
	16	sh	ch
	17	s '	ç
	20	z '	d, z ' '
	24(b)	—	g (gu)
Vowel	3	u	ou
	6	ū	oû
	4, 5, 6 (long vowels)	- (macron)	^(circumflex)

Note For particular purposes, or in order to take account of local pronunciation, diacritics may be omitted and digraphs may be reduced to the first principal letter

[a] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I . . ., chap. III.

APPENDIX II

Romanization system for Greek alphabet

A α = a	Αρτα	Árta
αι = ai	Αθῆναι	Athínai
αυ = av / au a/	Μαυροβούνι	Mavrovoúni
Β β = v / b b/	Βόλος	Vólos
Γ γ = g	Γαράζον	Garázon
γγ = ng	Αγγελόκαστρον	Angelókastron
γκ = g(initially)	Γκοριτσά	Goritsá
γκ = nk(medially)	Λαγκάδα	Lankáda
γχ = nkh	Αγχίαλος	Ankhíalos
Δ δ = d	Δάφνη-Δένδρα	Dáfni-Déndra

E ε = e	Ἐρέτρια	Erétria
ει = i	Γύθειον	Gýthion
ευ = ev eu [c]	Λευκάς	Levkás
Z ζ = z	Ζεμενόν	Zemenón
H η = i [d]	Ἡράκλειον	Iráklion
ηυ = iv		
Θ θ = th	Θεσπιαί	Thespiaí
I ι = i	Ἰρία	Iría
K κ = k see also γκ	Καλαμάκι	Kalamáki
Λ λ = l	Λίμνη	Límni
M μ = m	Μαραθών	Marathón
μπ = b(initially)	Μπέχρος	Békhros
= mp(medially)	Τέμπη	Témpi
N ν = n	Νεστάνη	Nestáni
ντ = d (initially)	Ντία	Día
= nt(medially)	Παντάνασσα	Pantánassa
ντζ = ntz	Βιντζέτζος	Vintzétzos
Ξ ξ = x	Ξάνθη	Xánthi

Ο ο = o	Ὄθος	Óthos
οι = oi	Οἴτη	Oíti
ου = ou	Βούναγρον	Voúnagron
Π π = p see also μπ	Παῦλος	Pávlos
Ρ ρ = r	Μερόπη	Merópi
Σ σ = s	Ἄσσος	Ássos
Τ τ = t τζ = tz see also ντ	Τίρυνς	Tíryns
Υ υ = y see also αυ, ευ, ηυ, ου	Υλίκη-Μύλος	Yliki-Mýlos
Φ φ = f ph e/	Φιλοθέη	Filothéi
Χ χ = kh see also γχ	Χαραυγή	Kharavgí
Ψ ψ = ps	Ψαρά	Psará
Ω ω = o	Ὡρωπός	Oropós

a/ In names of strongly established historical forms, the digraph αυ will be written as au in lieu of av.

b/ In names of strongly established historical forms, the letter β will be written as b in lieu of v.

c/ In names of strongly established historical forms, the digraph ευ will be written as eu in lieu of ev.

d/ In a small number of names of strongly established historical forms (to be decided by a special committee), the letter η will be written as e in lieu of i.

e/ In names of strongly established forms, the letter φ will be written as ph in lieu of f.

NOTES TO APPENDIX II

The spiritus lenis and spiritus asper are omitted. In a small number of names of strongly established forms, the spiritus asper will be romanized as *h*.

The three Greek accents will be uniformly represented by the acute accent, except in monosyllabic words and words accented on the last syllable. In accented digraphs, the acute accent will be shown over the second vowel.

The diaeresis will be shown with (¨) in names where two consecutive vowels appear as a diphthong.

Double consonantal letters in Greek will be doubled also in romanization.

Iota subscriptum and iota adscriptum are ignored in romanization.

Annex VI

DRAFT REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON TRAINING COURSES IN TOPONYMY

TERMS OF REFERENCE

The Working Group[a] was organized to investigate the possibility of organizing a training course in toponymy on the basis of resolution 18 adopted by the London Conference[b] and of working paper No. 24[c] submitted by Mr. Blok and Mr. Ormeling to the fifth session of the Group of Experts.

RECOMMENDATION

The Working Group strongly recommended the organization of a pilot training course in toponymy of four weeks' duration in spring 1975, in accordance with the guidelines laid down in working paper No. 24.

The Working Group authorized Messrs. Blok and Ormeling to act as a task force and to carry out the preparation of the first course in toponymy. The task force was invited to keep the members of the Working Group regularly informed, by correspondence, on the progress being made.

GENERAL OUTLINE OF PROGRAMME OF WORK

The training course, which should be conducted in English, should be concentrated on national standardization, particularly on the field collection of names and on the office treatment of names. It should cover the following subjects:

(*a*) Toponymy terminology;
(*b*) Functions of geographical names;
(*c*) Report of United Nations activities on standardization of geographical names;
(*d*) Field collection of names;
(i) General problems, and
(ii) Specific problems encountered in the various language areas;
(*e*) Office treatment of names:
(i) General problems;
(ii) Specific problems encountered in the various language areas;
(iii) Automatic data processing;
(*f*) New names, changing of names, commemorative names and repetition of names;

[a] Members of the Working Group: F. J. Ormeling, Netherlands (*Convenor*); W. J. Absaloms, Kenya (*Rapporteur*); D. P. Blok, Netherlands; G. F. Delaney, Canada; Per Hovda, Norway; F. A. Kattan, Saudi Arabia; H. A. G. Lewis, United Kingdom; E. Meynen, Federal Republic of Germany; and K. Vadiie, Iran.

[b] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I . . ., chap. III.

[c] A copy of this document is available on request from the Cartography Section, Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

(*g*) Treatment of names in multilingual areas;
(*h*) Generics and glossaries;
(*i*) National gazetteers, designation of names; and
(*j*) Names on maps.

The Working Group recommended the organization of practical exercises towards the end of the course, under the guidance of lecturers, to evaluate the quality of names on maps against available documents and to evaluate information collected by tape recorders.

LECTURERS

The Working Group recommended extension of invitations to the various experts of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names according to their experience and capabilities to act as the lecturers of the course.

REQUIREMENTS FOR PARTICIPANTS OF THE COURSE

Though in general students with higher educational standards should be preferred, the Working Group proposed that the minimum requirements of the participants of the course should be the equivalent of secondary school education, with some linguistic and field experience of geographical names.

The Working Group strongly recommended that guarantees should be sought for an adequate command of the English language of the students. The command of English should cover not only general English usage but also the technical field of toponymy. To ensure that the selected students will be familiar with the technical terminology in toponymy, the Working Group recommended advance circulation of introductory literature (including definitions of toponymical terms) to the students selected.

CERTIFICATE OF ATTENDANCE

The Working Group recommended that some assessment will be made of the students' performance and that a special certificate of attendance may be issued signed by the Directors of the course (the United Nations Director and the host country Director).

FOLLOW-UP WORK

The Working Group noted the desirability that follow-up courses should be hosted by other countries or linguistic/geographical divisions.

It welcomed the intentions of Mr. Delaney to investigate the possibility of a second course in toponymy in Canada. This second course may be in both French and English, if possible.

It has further noted the similar intentions of Mr. Hovda (to propose to the Norden Governments that they host another, follow-up course) and of Mr. Vadiie (to investigate similar possibilities in Iran).

Finally, the Working Group particularly welcomed the intentions of Mr. Kattan (Saudi Arabia) and of Mr. Gall (Guatemala) to investigate the possibility of courses in toponymy in their respective linguistic/geographical divisions. Mr. Kattan also proposed to prepare a film on the practice of field collection of geographical names in Saudi Arabia.

Annex VII

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON GAZETTEERS

The Working Group on Gazetteers[a] was established by the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names at its fifth session, held in New York, 5–16 March 1973.

TASKS

Tasks to be undertaken are:

(*a*) To establish the requirements for United Nations gazetteers and to define the categories;

(*b*) To consider the possibilities of adapting the United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) Gazetteers as United Nations Gazetteers of the World as set out in the fourth session of the Group of Experts in London on 1 June 1972; and

(*c*) To work out through correspondence the specifications for the different types of gazetteers, reflecting applicability of United Nations recommendations in this field.

DISCUSSIONS

It was agreed that there should be three categories of gazetteers, namely:

(*a*) National gazetteers, as specified in resolution 4 of the United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held at Geneva in 1967;[b]

(*b*) A series of United Nations Gazetteers of the World;

(*c*) A concise United Nations Gazetteer of the World in one or two volumes.

It was unanimously accepted that the concise United Nations Gazetteer of the World would be a desirable project and might be based on the national interim lists as recommended during the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in London in 1972. Further consideration of this matter was deferred and it was agreed to concentrate on the second category of gazetteers. Detailed discussions took place on type (b) above, during which the subject of map scales was introduced. It was decided that no single map scale or series would suit the requirements of all individual countries. Prevailing, but not unanimous, opinion was that maps at scales of 1:1,000,000 or larger would alone serve as a basis for the compilation of the series. For many countries maps at much larger scales would be required.

Mr. Breu presented for consideration working paper no. 34,* defining the three types of gazetteers, which was discussed together with working paper No. 6,* previously presented by Mr. Komkov. The categories and titles set in working paper No. 34 were accepted by the Working Group.

The Working Group agreed on the following basic principles: that primary responsibility for gazetteers rests with the nation whose territory is covered: that gazetteers based on the BGN gazetteers will be produced with the consent of the country covered and maintenance will be carried out jointly by the country covered and the BGN; that in special circumstances the preparation of certain volumes of the United Nations Gazetteer of the World may have to be deferred until a solution acceptable to the parties concerned can be found.

A small study group was then instructed to work out specific recommendations on how to adapt the BGN gazetteers to comply with the specifications of one of the categories of United Nations Gazetteers of the World as laid down in working paper No. 34. Basic documents for this study group were to be working papers Nos. 6, 20 and 34.*

The Working Group accepted the following detailed recommendations worked out by the study group:

(*a*) Title pages should be along the following lines:

Emblem of the United Nations
United Nations Gazetteer of the World
Provisional Series
Volume: KENYA
Official Standard Names

approved by the Standing Committee on Geographical Names of Kenya. Published by the Board on Geographic Names. Distributed only by the Defense Mapping Agency, Washington, D.C. 20305
May 1973

Adopted by BGN for official use in the United States. (The exact wording and location of this phrase are to be resolved by BGN and the country covered. A statement should also be added indicating that "this volume supersedes the BGN Gazetteer of Kenya 1964".);

(*b*) An outline map of the country covered will be included, if feasible;

[a] This is a working group of the whole.

[b] See *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.68.I.9), chap. III.

* An asterisk accompanying the mention of a document indicates that copies of that document are available on request from the Cartography Section, Department of Economic Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

(*c*) In addition to the main body of information, the foreword should contain: information on the genesis of the publication and its status as a United Nations Gazetteer; reference to the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names; composition of the BGN; statement on the official language(s) of the country covered;

(*d*) A suitable disclaimer note will be worked out by the publishers and the United Nations.

The Working Group agreed that the first three BGN gazetteers to be provided for study should be those for Kenya, for Undersea Features and for one Latin American country.

The United States would welcome the temporary attachment of names experts to the BGN to work on problems connected with the production of gazetteers.

Annex VIII
LIST OF DOCUMENTS

Working paper

No. 1	Provisional agenda
No. 2	Letter from A. M. Komkov, Vice-Chairman of the Group of Experts
No. 3	Report on the standardization of geographical names in Norway since the London Conference
No. 4	Report by the expert for Latin America of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names (Prof. Francis Gall)
No. 5	A projected United Nations gazetteer series, by M. F. Burrill
No. 6	On the most acceptable form and content of the gazetteers published under the auspices of the United Nations, by A. M. Komkov (item 4)
No. 7	On the work on the national standardization of geographical names carried out within the period after the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, held in May 1972, by A. M. Komkov (item 2)
No. 8	Problems of the standardization of the names beyond a single sovereignty (item 5)
No. 9	On the Russian conventional names of geographical entities of foreign countries, by A. M. Komkov (item 5)
No. 10	On the usage of diacritical marks in geographical names romanization, by A. M. Komkov (item 8)
No. 11	Progress report of the East Central and South-East Europe Division (item 2)
No. 12	Acceptability of romanizations—comment on paper L 106, Romanization of geographic names for international use, by the USA (item 8)
No. 13	Greek draft—Romanization system of the Greek alphabet (item 8)
No. 14	The minutes of Iran–Afghanistan's regional meetings on transliteration of geographical names, Teheran, Iran, 10–17/2/1973
No. 15	Arabic glossary written in the Unified Arabic System
No. 16	The translation of generics in geographical names, by M. B. Smart (Canada) and E. Kalinin (USSR)
No. 17	Glosario de terminologia técnica usada en la normalización de nombres geográficos
No. 18 (Rev. 1)	Draft report of the Working Group on Names of Extraterrestrial Topographical Features
No. 19	Problems of nomination of extraterrestrial topographic features
No. 20	List of gazetteers (Defense Mapping Agency Topographic Center)
No. 21	Exonym as an international term (C. R. Page)
No. 22	Standardization in the treatment of generic elements in toponyms
No. 23	Proposed areas of discussion (Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Feature Names)
No. 24	Pilot training course in toponymy (D. Ormeling)
No. 25	Comparative table
No. 26	Working Group on a Single Romanization System for each non-Roman Writing System, minutes of first meeting, 6 March 1973
No. 27	The category "minority language" (C. Page)
No. 28	Working Group on a Single Romanization System for each non-Roman Writing System, minutes of second meeting, 8 March 1973
No. 29	Spanish language renditions of selected definitions of technical terminology submitted by the Working Group on Definitions (Messrs. Nédélec, Page and Gall)
No. 30	Working Group on Gazetteers
No. 31	Thai exonyms (Colonel B. Khamasundara)
No. 32	*Sobre transliteración de nombres propios extranjeros*
No. 33	Report of the Working Group on Definitions of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names (C. Page)
No. 34	United Nations Gazetteers (Mr. Breu, Austria)
No. 35	Antarctic name proposal (No. 183)
No. 36	Report of the Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features, fifth session, Group of Experts, 1973
No. 37 (Rev. 1)	Report of the Working Group on a Single Romanization System for each non-Roman Writing System
No. 38	Report of the Chairman of the Group of Experts
No. 39	Automatic Data Processing (Canada)
No. 40	Draft report of the fifth session
No. 41	Draft report of the Working Group on Training Courses
No. 42	Draft report of the Working Group on Gazetteers

REPORT OF THE UNITED NATIONS GROUP OF EXPERTS ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON ITS SIXTH SESSION, 5–26 MARCH 1975*

TERMS OF REFERENCE

The United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names was invited by the Secretary-General, in pursuance of Economic and Social Council resolution 1314 (XLIV) and the decision of its 1854th meeting in May 1973, to convene at United Nations Headquarters from 5 to 26 March 1975.

ATTENDANCE

The session was attended by 39 experts from 25 countries, representing 15 of the 16 geographical/linguistic divisions of the world (see annex I). The Chief of the Cartography Section, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, United Nations Secretariat, served as the Secretary for the Group.

OPENING OF THE SESSION

The session was opened on behalf of the Secretary-

*The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.71.

General by the Assistant Director of the Transport and Cartography Branch of the Centre for Natural Resources, Energy and Transport, Department of Economic and Social Affairs. The Chairman of the Group of Experts thanked the United Nations for the services placed at its disposal.

The Group agreed to follow the same rules of procedure as in the previous sessions; it was agreed that the meetings of the working groups should be held in the plenum of the Group of Experts.

The Group adopted the following agenda:

1. Opening of the session
2. Adoption of the agenda
3. Review of divisional composition
4. Report by the Chairman on over-all activities of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names
5. Report by the Secretary
   (*a*) The 1973 Decision of the Economic and Social Council
   (*b*) Publication of the list of gazetteers and glossaries
6. Reports by the divisions (divisional meetings, consultations, concerted actions and divisional problems)
7. Reduction of exonyms (reports of progress and problems)
8. Review of aims, functions and *modus operandi*
9. Reports of activity by the working groups since the fifth session
   (*a*) Definitions
   (*b*) Undersea and maritime features
   (*c*) Extraterrestrial topographic features
   (*d*) Single romanization systems
   (*e*) Training courses
   (*f*) International gazetteers
   (*g*) List of country names in local official languages and in the official languages of the United Nations
10. Working group discussions and further recommendations
11. Provisional agenda for the Third United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names
12. Provisional agenda for the seventh session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names
13. Plans of action before the Third Conference
14. Adoption of the report

Officers of the session

The officers of the session were: Meredith F. Burrill (*Chairman*), A. M. Komkov (*Vice-Chairman*), D. P. Blok (*Rapporteur*) and C. N. Christopher (*Secretary*).

Review of divisional composition

It was agreed that a sixteenth division, consisting of China, should be established, that the Asia, East Division should be renamed Asia, East Division (other than China) and that the Romance Languages Division (other than Latin America) should be renamed Romano-Hellenic Division, comprising, besides the romance language countries other than Latin America, Greece and Cyprus. The expert from the German Democratic Republic joined the Group as a member of the Dutch-German Division. The expert from Greece and the expert from the German Democratic Republic expressed their wish to attend, as observers, the meetings of the East-Central and South-East Europe Division.

Reports

The report of the Chairman on over-all activities of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names and on his activities as Chairman of the Group was contained in working paper No. 55.*[1]

The Secretary for the Group reported that the Economic and Social Council at its 1854th meeting on 4 May 1973 had decided to take note of the report of the Secretary-General on the second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names (E/5249) and the recommendations contained therein and endorsed the recommendation that the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts on Geographical Names should henceforth be called the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. The Council had also accepted the invitation of the Government of Greece to hold the third Conference at Athens, from 17 August to 7 September 1977.

The report by Mr. Gall on the activities of the Latin America Division was contained in working paper No 36.* Mr. Gall presented to the United Nations Cartography Section a number of publications on geographical materials regarding the Americas. The report by Mr. Velázquez on the activities in Cuba was contained in working paper No. 53.* Mr. Lewis, reporting on the activities of the United Kingdom Division, said that, because of the great distance between the member States, no divisional meeting had taken place. In each country the work continued along the lines previously set. He pointed to the specific difficulties arising from minority languages such as Gaelic. The United Kingdom had been giving assistance to some developing countries in standardizing names and in mapping. Mr. Lewis stated that the aid the United Kingdom offered was for map production and the recipient countries had to procure the exact names to be used on the maps.

Mr. Meynen reported on the activities of the Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division; the report was contained in working papers Nos. 9 and 41.* The report prepared by Mr. Hovda on the activities of the Norden Division was contained in working paper No. 5.* Mr. Nédélec, speaking for the Romance Languages Division,

[1] An asterisk (*) accompanying the mention of a document indicates that copies of the document may be obtained on request from the Cartography Section, Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

reported that the activity and co-operation in that Division was increasing; cartographical publications and information were exchanged by France, Monaco, Portugal, Romania, Spain and Switzerland. It had not been possible as yet to obtain the co-operation of Italy.

The report by Mr. Radó on the East-Central and South-East Europe Division was contained in working paper No. 20.* Messrs. Al-Robaishy, H. Bulugma and Al-Ayoubi reported on the Arabic Division in working papers Nos. 16, 50 and 51,* Mr. Ganji reported on the Asia South-West Division in working paper No. 42,* and Mr. Kok reported on the Asia South-East Division in working paper No. 7.* In reporting for the Africa West Division (working paper No. 38*), Mr. Coker stated that it had been recommended at the Organization of African Unity (OAU) Inter-African Symposium on Manpower Requirements and Development of Cartographic Services in Africa (Cairo, 22–26 July 1974) that geographical names committees should be established in African countries where they did not already exist and that African regional meetings on geographical names should be organized. Mr. Yang Leiguang reported on the China Division in working paper No. 43* and Mr. Setatos reported on Greece in working paper No. 39.* Mr. Setatos added that the official Greek romanization key was being simplified. The report prepared by Mr. Komkov on the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics Division was contained in working paper No. 11.* Mr. Komkov stated that a Commission for Extraterrestrial Names had been created in the USSR. As to the work of the USSR Permanent Joint Commission, Mr. Komkov pointed out that its decisions were in accordance with what the local people wanted. Sometimes that necessitated much discussion and persuasion, he said. Once a decision was made, it was mandatory for all official and scientific institutions. Those decisions were also made mandatory by the Republics and Autonomous Territories.

Reports were also presented by Mr. Absaloms of the Africa East Division (working paper No. 46*) and by Messrs. Randall and Rayburn of the United States of America-Canada Division (working papers Nos. 48 and 49*). Mr. Ormeling, speaking for the International Cartographic Association, presented the United Nations Cartography Section with a copy of the International Cartographic Association Bibliography compiled by Mr. E. Meynen.[2] The Secretary mentioned the discussions held during the Seventh United Nations Regional Cartographic Conference for Asia and the Far East[3] and the resolutions adopted by the Conference on the work of the Group of Experts and the importance of the standardization of geographical names.

[2] International Cartographic Association, E. Meynen, *Bibliography 1956–1972* (Enschede, the Netherlands, Institute for Aerial Survey and Earth Sciences (ITC), 1972), presented at the Sixth International Conference on Cartography, Ottawa, Canada, 16–25 August 1972.

[3] *Seventh United Nations Regional Cartographic Conference for Asia and the Far East*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.7).

Reduction of exonyms

The Group discussed the reduction of exonyms on the basis of working papers Nos. 6, 11, 13, 13/Add. 1 and 27 and other proposals.* A proposal by Mr. Sharma to recommend the use of the official names of the countries in preference to or together with the exonyms for country names was discussed at length. In favour of the proposal, it was stated that the reduction of exonyms had to start somewhere and that the country names were the most appropriate. It was pointed out that in the past it had been possible for a country to change its name and have the change accepted all over the world. Against the proposal, it was advanced that the exonyms for a number of ancient country names were the deepest rooted in the languages and the most difficult to eliminate; much opposition against such a recommendation was to be expected.

It was agreed that the principles enunciated in resolutions 28, 29 and 31 of the London Conference[4] would be reiterated and that the Group would urge the avoidance as far as possible of exonyms for names of new countries and for new names of countries.

Review of aims, functions and modus operandi

The Group accepted a new grouping and numbering of the regulations laid down in the report of the second session and modified in that of the fifth session as worked out by the expert for Latin America, Mr. Gall. It was agreed that the new setting would be annexed to the report of the sixth session (see annex II). Paragraph 3 would be split up into 3*a* and 3*b*; the list of divisions would be arranged in alphabetical order according to the names in English. Paragraph 10 would be rephrased to read: "The Group will meet in accordance with precedents set forth by the Economic and Social Council."

Reports of the working groups

The Working Groups on Definitions, Undersea and Maritime Features, Extraterrestrial Topographic Features, Single Romanization Systems, Training Courses, Gazetteers and the List of Country Names made their reports (annexes III to IX, respectively; see annex X for list of documents).

Provisional agenda for the Third United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names

The following provisional agenda was drawn up for the Third United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names:

1. Opening of the Conference
2. Adoption of the rules of procedure
3. Election of officers

[4] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

4. Report on credentials
5. Adoption of the agenda
6. Organization of work
7. Reports by divisions and Governments on the situation in their regions and countries and on the progress made in the standardization of geographical names since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names
8. National standardization
   (*a*) Field collection of names
   (*b*) Office treatment of names
   (*c*) Treatment of names in multilingual areas
   (*d*) Administrative structure of national names authorities
9. Training courses
   (*a*) Consideration of courses already held
   (*b*) Programmes of future courses
   (*c*) Prospective developments
10. Gazetteers
   (*a*) National gazetteers
   (*b*) United Nations series of gazetteers
   (*c*) Concise world gazetteer
   (*d*) Other publications
11. Automated data processing (ADP)
   (*a*) Coding and abbreviation
   (*b*) Writing
12. Terminology
13. Exonyms
   (*a*) Categories and degree of use of exonyms
   (*b*) Determination of principles to be followed in the reduction of exonyms
14. Policies, procedures and co-operative arrangements for naming of features beyond a single sovereignty
   (*a*) Features common to two or more nations
   (*b*) Maritime features
   (*c*) Undersea features
   (*d*) Extraterrestrial features
15. Writing systems
   (*a*) Conversion of names from one writing system into another
      (i) Romanization
      (ii) Conversion into non-Roman writing systems
   (*b*) Writing of names from unwritten languages
16. International co-operation
   (*a*) United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names
   (*b*) Exchange of information
      (i) Reliability statement
      (ii) Aids to pronunciation of names nationally standardized in non-phonetic writing
      (iii) Scope and development of procedures in exchange of information
   (*c*) Divisional and interdivisional meetings and programmes
   (*d*) Technical assistance
   (*e*) Co-operation with international organizations
   (*f*) Co-operation with public information media
17. Report of the Conference

Discussion on the provisional agenda

The Group agreed that the Conference should use the reports on the fifth session (the preceding document in the present publication) and the sixth session (the present report) of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names and the annexed reports by its working groups as basic documents in discussing items 10, 12, 14 and 15 of the provisional agenda. The Group further recognized that it would be particularly useful that any modification in the practices of field collection or office treatment of names should be brought to the attention of the Conference.

The Group considered that lists of geographical names not standardized or not in accordance with agreed specifications might also be useful preliminary vehicles for information and ought to be discussed by the Conference (item 10 (*d*)).

The Group thought that, although resolutions 28, 29 and 31 of the Second Conference[4] remain the basic documents on dealing with exonyms, further consideration was necessary as to the nature of exonyms and as to reduction in their use.

It was emphasized that the sources of information and the procedures followed in compiling material in which geographical names are made available should be made explicit by the publishing authority (item 16 (*b*) (i)).

The Group agreed to recommend the formation of five technical committees at the Conference; the first should deal with agenda items 8, 9 and 12, the second with items 10 and 11, the third with items 13 and 14, the fourth with item 15 and the fifth with item 16. The forming of an editorial committee was also envisaged.

Provisional agenda for the seventh session of the Group of Experts

The Group drew up the provisional agenda for the seventh session as follows:

16 August 1977:

1. Reports of working groups
2. Organization of the Third Conference

8 September 1977 (resumed seventh session):

3. Election of officers
4. Review of Conference recommendations
5. Programme for the Group of Experts
6. Eighth session of the Group of Experts
7. Other business

Plan of action before the Third Conference

In implementing resolutions 33 and 38 of the Second Conference,[4] the Chairman of the Group of Experts would get in touch with interested international organizations in order to promote co-operation in the field of

international names standardization. The Group agreed that the Chairman would write to the Universal Postal Union (UPU) asking for information on the work to be done in establishing a new list of post offices and urging close co-operation. An attempt would be made to establish some personal contact with that organization.

The Convenors of the Working Groups outlined the action that would be taken by themselves and the members of the Groups. Mr. Komkov emphasized the need to establish close co-operation with the Working Group on Planetary System Nomenclature of the International Astronomical Union (IAU) and to report on it to the Third Conference. Mr. Randall pointed to the plan of action laid down in annex IV. Mr. Breu would ask for information on all open questions, especially those regarding the conversion of Russian Cyrillic, Chinese and Greek scripts. Mr. Lewis would deal with the Board on Geographic Names (BGN) on the question of the provisional United Nations Gazetteers and would ask for relevant information from the experts as to the number of names to be included in the Concise Gazetteer of the World and the production of national gazetteers. Mr. Nédélec would continue, by correspondence, to improve and complete the provisional list of country names and to procure the correct forms of those names in all the official languages of the United Nations. Mr. Ormeling would, in the first place, devote the attention of his working group to the organization of the pilot training course and, further, plans to make an inventory of the needs for assistance in the field of national names standardization.

Diacritical marks

The Group recognized the great value of the information contained in working papers Nos. 10 and 52* and recommended a further study of the subject by the Third Conference. A report on the financial implications of using diacritical marks might be expected before the Conference.

Pilot training course in toponymy

The Group of Experts took note with appreciation of the progress made in the preparation of the pilot training course in toponymy, as recommended in resolution 18 adopted by the London Conference[4] and of the offer of the Government of the Netherlands to finance travel and accommodation of the students. Programme, time-table, participating divisions and students and the co-operation of international lecturers were discussed and, in principle, agreed upon. The pilot training course would be held from 26 April to 22 May 1976 in Enschede, the Netherlands. The Group recommended that the United Nations should co-sponsor the pilot training course and finance the travel and accommodation of international lecturers.

Annex I

LIST OF PARTICIPANTS

Africa East Division

W. J. Absaloms (Kenya), Secretary, Standing Committee on Geographical Names, Survey of Kenya, P.O. Box 30046, Nairobi

Africa West Division

R. Oluwole Coker (Nigeria), Federal Survey Department, Lagos

Arabic Division

M. El-Ayoubi (Lebanon; *Division Chairman*), Inspecteur à la Direction des Affaires Géographiques, Président de la Commission de Toponymie, Beirut

H. Bulugma (Libyan Arab Republic), Benghazi University

R. B. Seid (Libyan Arab Republic), Ministry of Education, Tripoli

S. Abdo (Saudi Arabia), Department of Geography, University of Riyadh

M. Al-Fayez (Saudi Arabia), Central Department of Statistics, Ministry of Finance, Riyadh

S. Al-Robaishy (Saudi Arabia), Director-General Aerial Survey Department, Ministry of Petroleum and Mineral Resources, P.O. Box 247, Riyadh

S. Bawazeer (Saudi Arabia), c/o Saudi Arabian Educational Mission, 880 Third Avenue (17th floor), New York, N.Y. 10022

Asia East Division (other than China)

(No representatives)

Asia South-East Division

S. T. Kok (Malaysia; *Division Chairman*), Director General of Survey, Director of National Mapping, Malaysia, Survey Headquarters, Jalan Gurney, Kuala Lumpur

B. Khamasundara (Thailand), Royal Thai Survey Department, Bangkok

B. Narmwang (Thailand), Royal Thai Survey Department, Bangkok

Asia South-West Division (other than Arabic)

M. H. Ganji (Iran; *Division Chairman*), Department of Geography, University of Tehran, Tehran

Y. M. Nawabi (Iran), Department of Linguistics, Faculty of Arts and Literature, Pahlavi University, Shiraz

H. Daneshvar (Iran), National Geographic Organization, Tehran

China Division

Yang Leiguang (China; *Division Chairman*), State Bureau of Surveying and Cartography, Beijing

Qiao Feng (China), State Bureau of Surveying and Cartography, Beijing

Bao Hao (China), State Bureau of Surveying and Cartography, Beijing

Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division

E. Meynen (Germany, Federal Republic of; *Division Chairman*), Chairman of the Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, Langenbergweg 82, D-53 Bonn-Bad Godesberg

F. J. Ormeling (Netherlands), Head of the Cartography Department, International Institute for Aerial Survey and Earth Science, 144 Boulevard 1945, Enschede

D. P. Blok (Netherlands), Director, Institute for Dialectology, Folklore and Onomastics of the Royal Dutch Academy of Science and Letters, Keizersgracht 569–571, Amsterdam-C

J. Breu (Austria), Österreichisches Ost- und Südosteuropa Institut, Josefsplatz 6, A-1190 Vienna

E. Haack (German Democratic Republic), Ministerium des Innern, Verwaltung Vermessungs- und Kartenwesen, Mauerstr. 29–32, DDR 108 Berlin

East-Central and South-East Europe Division

S. Radó (Hungary), Director, Department of Cartography, National Office of Lands and Mapping, V. Kossuth Lajos Tér 11, 1860 Budapest

India Division

D. N. Sharma Atri Harnal (India), Director, Southern Circle, Survey of India, 22 Richmond Road, Bangalore

Latin America Division

Francis Gall (Guatemala; *Division Chairman*), 13 Avenida "A" 14–23, Colonia Loma Linda, Z. 11, Ciudad de Guatemala

I. Velázquez García (Cuba), Director Técnico de Cartografía, Instituto Cubano de Geodesia y Cartografía, Loma y 39, Nuevo Vedado, Havana

Norden Division

P. Hovda (Norway), Chief, Place-Names Archives, University of Oslo, Blindern, Oslo 3

Romano-Hellenic Division

F. Nédélec (France; *Division Chairman*), Ingénieur-en-Chef Géographe, Institut Géographique National, 136 bis rue de Grenelle, 75 Paris (7ème)

J. A. González (Spain), Instituto Geográfico y Cadastral, General Ibañez 3, Madrid 3

M. Setatos (Greece), University of Thessaloniki

Mr. Stoforopoulos (Greece), Counsellor of Embassy, Permanent Mission of Greece to the United Nations, 69 East 79th Street, New York, N.Y. 10021

D. Vayacacos (Greece), Académie d'Athènes, Anagnostopoulou 14, Athens 136

Union of Soviet Socialist Republics Division

A. M. Komkov (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics), Vice-Chairman of the Permanent Joint Committee on Geographical Names, Cartographic Scientific Information Centre, Novoshchukinskaya 11, 123098 Moscow D-98

United Kingdom Division

H. A. G. Lewis (United Kingdom; *Division Chairman*), Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, c/o Royal Geographical Society, Kensington Gore, London S.W. 7. A.R.

P. J. Geelan (United Kingdom), Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, c/o Royal Geographical Society, Kensington Gore, London S.W. 7. A.R.

United States of America and Canada Division

M. F. Burrill (United States of America; *Division Chairman*), 5503 Grove Street, Chevy Chase, Maryland 20015

A. Rayburn (Canada), Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, 580 Booth Street, Ottawa KIA OE 4

Carl R. Page (United States of America), Geographic Names Division, Topographic Center, Defense Mapping Agency, 6500 Brooks Lane, Washington, D.C. 20315

R. R. Randall (United States of America), United States Board on Geographical Names, Building 56, U.S. Naval Observatory, Washington, D.C. 20305

Annex II

REVIEW OF AIMS, FUNCTIONS AND *MODUS OPERANDI*

1. By Economic and Social Council resolution 1314 (XLIV) of 31 May 1968 and by later resolutions, the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names was charged with providing for continuous co-ordination and liaison among countries to further the standardization of geographical names and to encourage the formation and the work of linguistic/geographical divisions.

2. In order to carry out its work and achieve the results required, on both the national and the international levels, as specified in the resolutions adopted at United Nations conferences, the linguistic/geographical divisions listed below were formed:

Africa East Division
Africa West Division
Arabic Division
Asia East Division (other than China)
Asia South-East Division
Asia South-West Division (other than Arabic)
China Division
Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division
East-Central and South-East Europe Division
India Division
Latin America Division
Norden Division
Romano-Hellenic Division
Union of Soviet Socialist Republics Division
United Kingdom Division
United States of America-Canada Division

3. Membership of divisions will be decided as follows:

(*a*) A country not already a member of a division will decide for itself to which division it wishes to belong;

(*b*) A country may also participate in the activities of divisions other than its own, provided the total number of countries and the nature of their participation are not such as to change the linguistic/geographical character of the division.

4. The Group of Experts is composed of one representative from each division. Countries within each division will select, by methods of their own choosing, an expert to represent the division at meetings of the Group of Experts and to speak, when required to do so, on behalf of the division as a whole at United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names. As an interim measure, the officers of the present Group of Experts will continue to function until replaced by election.

5. The appointed expert will be responsible for ensuring that the work of the Group of Experts and its potential for technical assistance are brought to the attention of the individual nations within his division and for reporting to the United Nations any special problems within his division.

6. Governments may appoint national experts to attend meetings of the Group of Experts on the understanding that the said national experts will have the right of voice and that their attendance will be co-ordinated with the expert who represents the division in question and who will vote on behalf of the division. The Group of Experts would welcome participation by countries that have not yet participated in conferences or Group of Experts sessions, especially when their language or script is to be taken under consideration.

7. The Group of Experts will elect the following officers: a Chairman, a Vice-Chairman and a Rapporteur.

8. The elections mentioned in paragraph 7 will be held at the termination of the respective United Nations Conferences on the Standardization of Geographical Names. The officers will serve until their successors are elected at the next Conference. The Cartography Section of the United Nations Department of Economic and Social Affairs will provide the secretariat for the Group.

9. In the absence of the Chairman, the Vice-Chairman will assume the office of Chairman. In the absence of the Vice-Chairman or the Rapporteur, the Chairman will appoint persons to complete the unexpired portion of their terms of office.

10. The Group of Experts will meet in accordance with the precedents set by the Economic and Social Council.

11. Persons with special knowledge of particular aspects of the standardization of geographical names may be invited to place before the Group of Experts their specialized knowledge.

12. During the meetings of the Group of Experts, special working groups may be appointed to deal with particular issues. Upon completion of the appointed task, the working group will be automatically disbanded unless especially directed to remain in being.

13. Working groups of specialists may be formed under the chairmanship of one of the national experts referred to in paragraph 6 to study particular problems between meetings of the Group of Experts. Such groups will only be formed with the approval of the Group of Experts before submission to the United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names for final acceptance.

14. The working languages of the United Nations selected for the conduct of business during the meetings of the Group of Experts will depend upon the nature of the representation and the facilities available at the time.

15. The Group of Experts will maintain communication among themselves and will render a report of their main activities semi-annually to the Cartography Section, Department of Technical Co-Operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat, and to the members and officers of the Group.

16. Apart from communication through formal channels, experts representing divisions and also national representatives will be notified by informal means of the transactions, programmes and requirements of the Group of Experts.

17. The Group of Experts will encourage countries to supply information to other nations within or outside their respective divisions and also to the Cartography Section, Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

Annex III

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON DEFINITIONS OF THE UNITED NATIONS GROUP OF EXPERTS ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES

Two meetings of the Working Group on Definitions took place during the sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. The Convenor was Mr. Page (United States of America), the Rapporteur was Mr. Velázquez (Cuba), and the following members of the Working Group were present: Mr. Breu (Austria), Mr Nédélec (France), Mr. Lewis (United Kingdom), Mr. Gall (Guatemala), Mr. Hovda (Norway), Mr. Meynen (Federal Republic of Germany), Mr. Radó (Hungary), Mr. Sharma (India) and Mr. González (Spain, in representation of Mr. Lapesa). Absent were Mr. Dahlstedt (Sweden), Mr. Hakulinen (Finland) and Mr. Földi (Hungary). Various other members of the Group of Experts in attendance at its sixth session were also present and took part in the discussions.

The Working Group decided to complete the English and Spanish versions of the *Glossary of Technical Terminology for Employment in the Standardization of Geographical Names* for immediate presentation to the United Nations, which would reproduce the two documents for distribution at the Third United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, at Athens, Greece, in 1977.

The French and Russian language versions of the *Glossary* might be prepared and distributed within the Working Group for subsequent presentation to the United Nations prior to the Third United Nations Conference and a Chinese language version would be prepared for presentation to that Conference.

Mr. González presented a list of corrections to Spanish language expressions which appear in the English version of the *Glossary*. Those would be incorporated in the English version, which was to be distributed at the Third United Nations Conference.

The definitions of terms which were decided at the fifth session of the Group of Experts and were set forth in working paper No. 33* of that session and again in working paper No. 44* of the sixth session, would also be incorporated in the final English version.

The following definitions of terms were adopted in the course of the two meetings of the Working Group on Definitions during the sixth session of the Group of Experts, also for inclusion in the final English version of the *Glossary*:

(*a*) diglossia

A relatively stable language situation in which, in addition to the primary dialect of a language which may include a standard or regional standards, there is a very divergent, highly codified, often grammatically more complex, superposed variety, the vehicle of a large and respected body of written literature, heir of an earlier period or in another speech community, which is learned largely by formal education and may be used for written and formal spoken purposes, but is not used by any sector of the community for ordinary conversation (after C. Ferguson);[a]

(*b*) feature, hydrographic

A topographic feature that consists of water and /or of recognizable interfaces between a body of water and one or more of its boundaries;

(*c*) form, graphic

Written letter(s) or character(s), including any markers and diacritical marks, which represent a linguistic item;

(*d*) term, descriptive

A written item, which appears on a map and which does not constitute a toponym, but which serves to describe a topographic characteristic in the area where it appears.

Mr. Komkov (USSR) proposed inclusion of the following terms in the *Glossary*: allography, diphthong, ideogram, receiver language and source language. The following terms and definitions were agreed upon:

(*a*) allograph

One of the particular representations of a grapheme (see *grapheme*);

(*b*) diphthong

A combination of vocalic elements of which only one is the nucleus of a syllable;

(*c*) ideogram

(See *logogram*);

(*d*) logogram

A graphic symbol or combination of graphic symbols which consistently represents a given morphological element or elements in a given language;

(*e*) language, receiver

A language in terms of which a geographical name may be adopted or converted from its source language (see *language, source*);

(*f*) language, source

A language in terms of which a geographical name is produced, and on the basis of which it may be adopted or converted for use in the context of another language, a receiver language (see *language, receiver*);

(*g*) script, receiver

A script in terms of which a geographical name may be converted from its source script (see *script, source*);

(*h*) script, source

A script in terms of which a geographical name is produced, and on the basis of which it may be converted for use in another script, a receiver script (see *script, receiver*).

The definitions would be incorporated in the English version, and Spanish definitions would be sought from Spanish language experts within the Working Group on Definitions for inclusion in the Spanish version of the *Glossary*.

It was decided that any and all further suggestions and recommendations would have to appear in a second edition of the *Glossary* at some future time.

At Mr. Breu's suggestion, the Greek expert, Mr. Setatos, agreed to prepare a modern Greek version of the *Glossary*, in spite of difficulties inherent in the fact that a very large proportion of the entries have classical Greek meanings.

The German version of the *Glossary*, distributed by Mr. Breu to the Working Group and presented to the sixth session in working paper No. 44, * would be distributed at the Third United Nations Conference at Athens in 1977.

Mr. Radó distributed copies of a combined list of the English, French and Spanish terms with their definitions, as a basis for giving the equivalents in the Czech and Slovak languages.

At Mr. Sharma's suggestion it was agreed that, for purposes of elucidation, a separate document might be prepared for distribution, in conjunction with the *Glossary*, which document was to consist of examples in illustration of various of the technical terms that appeared in

* An asterisk accompanying the mention of a document indicates that copies of the document may be obtained from the Cartography Section of the Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

[a] R. J. O'Brien, *Selected Papers on Linguistics, 1961–1965*, Georgetown University Roundtable (Washington, D.C., Georgetown University Press, 1968).

the *Glossary*. The Working Group would take under consideration all such examples as might be set before it.

All further work carried out by the Working Group preparatory to the Third United Nations Conference would be communicated to its members, to the Chairman of the Group of Experts and to the United Nations Secretariat.

Annex IV

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON UNDERSEA AND MARITIME FEATURES

Mr. Randall was appointed the Convenor, by the Chairman of the Group of Experts, to fill the vacancy left by Mr. Delaney. Other members of the Working Group were Mr. Al-Robaishy (Saudi Arabia), Rapporteur; Mr. Burrill (United States of America); Mr. Hovda (Norway); Mr. Komkov (USSR); Mr. Lewis (United Kingdom); Mr. Meynen (Federal Republic of Germany); Mr. Radó (Hungary); and Mr. Sharma (India).

The Convenor stated that the agenda of the meeting would consist of the conclusions of the Working Group as cited in annex II of the report of the fifth session of the Group of Experts. He also said that in addition to the report, two papers circulated by Hungary (working paper No. 23)* and by the Federal Republic of Germany (working paper No. 35)* would serve as meeting documents.

In response to a question posed by the Convenor regarding correspondence among members since the last meeting, the Group initiated discussions that covered several points. The important items are summarized below.

(*a*) Mr. Komkov expressed the view that there was a need to reach agreement concerning terms and definitions of undersea features, concerning the standardization of names of oceans and seas and their component parts and concerning the standardization of the names of undersea features themselves;

(*b*) Several members spoke of the experience of standardizing bodies within their own countries or within their divisions. Mr. Radó circulated a gazetteer of undersea features produced by Czechoslovakia and a list of some 800 undersea feature names issued by Hungary.* Mr. Hovda spoke of his work involving large-scale undersea features and suggested that any terms adopted by the Group of Experts should provide for such detail. Mr. Randall stated that the United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) was dealing with an ever-increasing number of undersea features, which was leading to a need to redefine naming policies;

(*c*) Mr. Meynen drew attention to the unfulfilled requirement, as stated in resolution 22 of the London Conference, which called for action on the part of the Group of Experts to improve "current nomenclatural practices and procedures".[a] He further pointed out the list of undersea feature terms described and evaluated in the Canadian report on the London Conference. In his view, the Group of Experts should initiate a programme to establish a uniform list of terms in English, which each nation could translate for its own use;

(*d*) Mr. Gall pointed out that the statement contained in the report of the fifth session of the Group of Experts (see p. 414 above), which referred to "maritime features", remained a valid item for the attention of the Working Group.

It was the Group's decision that work on four elements should be initiated so that proposals on those items could be presented to the Conference at Athens. Those elements were:

(*a*) Establishment of policies and principles by which undersea and maritime features could be named (the statement of the BGN "Undersea name policies" printed in the report of the fifth session of the Group of Experts (see pp. 414–416 above) was identified as a possible model);

(*b*) Development of a form by which new names could be proposed (the BGN form, also appearing in the report of the fifth session of the Group of Experts, was cited as a model);

(*c*) Preparation of a list of generic terms for undersea features in English (lists of terms prepared by BGN, the Permanent Committee on Geographical Names (PCGN) and the Canadian PCGN were to form the basic documents); and

(*d*) Preparation of a list containing equivalents to the terms of the basic documents in various other languages.

It was futher agreed that the Working Group should complete its basic work no later than August of 1976 to permit time for further processing in anticipation of the Athens Conference. Several members of the Group agreed to assist in circulating and evaluating information relating to the work of the body.

By unanimous action of the Working Group, Mr. Randall was elected Convenor.

Annex V

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON EXTRATERRESTRIAL FEATURES

Terms of reference

The competence of the Group of Experts to participate in the field of extraterrestrial names was established at its second session in 1970. The Working Group was charged with the examination of such toponyms without qualification as to scope or method. Members of the Working Group present at the 14 March 1975 meetings were: Mr. A. M. Komkov (Convenor), Mr. H. A. G. Lewis (Rapporteur), Mr. M. F. Burrill, Mr. S. Radó and Mr. D. N. Sharma. New members joining the Group were Mr. R. R. Randall, Mr. Vayacacos and Mr. B. Hovda. Mr. P. Millman, Chairman of the International Astronomical Union (IAU) Working Group on Planetary System Nomenclature, attended the meetings. Most of the members of the Group of Experts participated.

Background documents

Background documents for the meetings were the report of the London Conference;[a] the report of the Group of Experts, fifth session (ESA/RT/C/GN/3, annex III); working papers Nos. 14 and 21* of the sixth session of the Group of Experts.

Summary of the proceedings

Large-scale mapping of the kind now in existence or in the course of preparation for the moon would be extended to other planets. As many as 30 planets and their satellites might require names for topographic features.

Mapping of the moon at scale 1:250,000 would result in 2,304 map sheets, of which well over 2,000 still required names for sheet titles.

Mariner photography of Mercury had revealed several thousand craters for which names were required.

The IAU had yet to achieve full co-ordination among the various scientific disciplines but intended its nomenclature to be based on simple, clear and unambiguous names.

The IAU had prepared a draft scheme of nomenclature which involved the use of different categories of names for each planet. Apart from the names of famous people in the world of science, the categories selected utilized the names of artists, musicians, sculptors, writers and poets; the names of animals; birds; cities; first names of men and women; minerals; mountains, rivers and villages. A variety of other categories that might provide names for several hundred features was also to be considered.

The IAU believed that duplication of names should be avoided.

---

* An asterisk accompanying the mention of a document indicates that copies of the document may be obtained from the Cartography Section of the Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

[a] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I . . . , chap. III.

* An asterisk accompanying the mention of a document indicates that copies of the document may be obtained from the Cartography Section of the Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

[a] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I . . ., para. 68.

Close co-operation between the Group of Experts and the IAU Working Group on Planetary System Nomenclature was welcomed and approved.

Since names would need to be transposed from one writing system to another, the work of the Group of Experts must be taken into account if conformity with practice on earth and standardization were to be achieved.

Considerable discussion centred on the use of Latin, but no final decision was reached. The number of Latin generic terms had increased with the mapping of the moon in greater topographic detail. Whether that practice should be continued or curtailed had yet to be resolved. While Latin could be regarded as a neutral language, there were disadvantages in bringing Latin terms into everyday usage, particularly in textbooks for use in schools and in popular literature. The formation of Latin plurals was an additional problem.

Opinion was unanimous that Latin should be confined to the nominative singular and plural. The genitive of the specific element of feature names should not be used.

Every care should be taken to achieve the best names possible for extraterrestrial features since, once allocated, the names would tend to become permanent.

Consideration should be given to a nomenclature based on a co-ordinate system. Already, reasonably reliable co-ordinate systems existed for Mars and Mercury. When radar photography of Venus was available, a satisfactory system of co-ordinates might become available for that planet also.

It was suggested that names selected from the English language should be of a form easily convertible into other writing systems.

A meeting of the IAU Working Group on Planetary System Nomenclature was to be held at Moscow in July 1975. The findings of various IAU task groups, each charged with producing name proposals for the solar system, would then be considered.

Members of the Working Group of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names were requested to send to the Convenor, Mr. Komkov, their suggestions for a general system of planetary nomenclature and their particular suggestions for individual planets and satellites, for consideration at the Moscow meeting.

In view of the proximity of the Moscow meeting, copies of letters to the Convenor should be sent to individual members of the Working Group.

A standard proposal form was required to allow names to be put forward for consideration in the over-all nomenclature when a general system had been worked out.

In order to avoid legal problems and resolve other aspects of planetary nomenclature, toponymists, astronomers and other scientists must work together.

The Working Group regarded as a primary task co-operation with the IAU Working Group on Planetary System Nomenclature in the working out, along the general lines laid down by IAU, of a system of nomenclature that would define the kind of names to be applied to each particular type of feature on each planet.

Annex VI

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON A SINGLE ROMANIZATION SYSTEM FOR EACH NON-ROMAN WRITING SYSTEM

Three meetings of the Working Group took place during the sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. The Convenor was Mr. Breu (Austria), the Rapporteur was Mr. Page (United States of America), and the following members of the Working Group were present: Mr. Ayoubi (Lebanon), Mr. Geelan (United Kingdom), Mr. Komkov (USSR), Mr. González (Spain, in representation of Mr. Lapesa), Mr. Nédélec (France), Mr. Radó (Hungary) and Mr. Sharma (India). Absent were: Mr. Dahlstedt (Sweden), Mr. Földi (Hungary) and Mr. Kattan (Saudi Arabia).

The Convenor cited the following pertinent documents:

(*a*) The report of the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, London, 1972;[a]

(*b*) The report of the United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, Geneva, 1967;[b]

(*c*) The report of the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts on Geographical Names on its fifth session, New York, 1973;

(*d*) The following working papers of the United Nations Group of Experts on Georaphical Names at its sixth session: working papers Nos. 12, 16, 24, 25, 26, 28, 32, 39 and 43.[c]

The list of alphabets and scripts for which each member of the Working Group had been responsible was as follows:

Mr. Ayoubi	Arabic (together with Mr. Nédélec in the Maghreb area)
Mr. Breu	Amharic, Greek
Mr. Dahlstedt	Somali
Mr. Földi/Mr. Radó	Bulgarian, Chinese, Mongolian (together with Mr. Nédélec), Korean in North Korea
Mr. Geelan	Burmese, Maldivian (both together with Mr. Sharma)
Mr. Kattan	Arabic
Mr. Komkov	Non-Roman alphabets of the USSR
Mr. Lapesa	Hebrew
Mr. Nédélec	Arabic in the Maghreb area (together with Mr. Ayoubi), Mongolian (together with Mr. Földi/Mr. Radó), Cyrillic alphabet of Yugoslavia
Mr. Page	Japanese, Khmer, Korean in South Korea, Laotian, Persian, Thai
Mr. Sharma	Writing systems of the Indian Division, Pashtu, Burmese, and Maldivian (the last two together with Mr. Geelan)

The following resulted from the Working Group's review of the status of the non-Roman script writing systems of the world, which were considered in alphabetical order.

Amharic

Inasmuch as no reply had been received from the Convenor's letter to Ethiopian authorities, it was presumed that no change had occurred.

Arabic

The Arabic Division announced that a meeting similar to that which took place at Beirut in 1971 was being sought under the auspices of the Arab League, and that the Arab countries were giving consideration to adoption of the Modified Beirut 1971 System for the Romanization of Arabic Writing.

Mr. Nédélec asked that the official romanization systems of Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia and Mauritania, placed before the Working Group by him in 1972, be adopted.

Mr. Page presented a Comparative Table for seven romanization systems for Arabic.

Bulgarian

In the discussion Mr. Radó indicated that his statement about the use of the alternative group of characters in the romanization of Bulgarian in telecommunications referred to use within and by Bulgaria.

After discussion concerning the status of the alternative group of characters, the Convenor summed up by stating that the resolution appeared to be subject to differing interpretations, one being that the

[a] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2).

[b] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.68.I.9).

[c] Copies of the documents may be obtained, upon request, from the Cartography Section of the Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

alternative group was in a subsidiary status, the other that it had equal status. He stated further that the resolution remained unchanged for the present, as no proposal for alteration had been made.

BURMESE

Mr. Geelan reported that very little recent information had become available concerning Burmese place names but that, by and large, older Survey of India spelling was still valid, to judge by the names used by the UPU and ITU.

Mr. Sharma stated that Burmese officials considered almost all the romanized names appearing now on Burmese maps incorrect, that the Government of Burma was publishing maps only in Burmese script and that they were not contemplating a romanization system for Burmese in the near future.

CHINESE

The Convenor opened discussion with reference to working papers Nos. 26 and 43, and to two items presented to the sixth session by China, a map lettered in terms of the Chinese phonetic alphabet (also known as Hanyu Pinyin or HP) and an accompanying gazetteer.

Mr. Qiao Feng described the development and establishment of the romanization system, described the "usual system" in relation to it, and cited numerous aspects of the two systems in detail. He stated that HP, which was being taught in elementary schools, was employed in maps and appeared in dictionaries for Chinese-French and Chinese-German and in a Chinese-English dictionary in preparation. He further stated that HP was used in post and telegraph and in weather offices in China, that it had been submitted to the International Telecommunication Union and that it was in use on charts for shipping use. Names at railroad stations in China appeared in both traditional Chinese characters and in HP. The system was used in other fields and it was expected that its use would continue to expand.

The expert for China, Mr. Qiao Feng, was asked, at the suggestion of Mr. Radó, to become a member of the Working Group and to take responsibility for the romanization of Chinese. Mr. Qiao Feng accepted.

An extensive period of discussion was summed up by the Convenor, who offered the suggestion that the China expert might prepare, as a necessary aid during a transitional period, comprehensive lists of names containing, side by side, conventional Roman script forms of names together with the appropriate HP spellings.

The Convenor presented a motion: "The Working Group shall work on and prepare a resolution for presentation to the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names at its seventh session at Athens in 1977." The motion was adopted unanimously by the Group of Experts.

GREEK

Mr. Breu described the Greek romanization system set forth in working paper No. 13 of the fifth session of the Group of Experts and asked the expert from Greece for a report.

Mr. Setatos cited a meeting that had included representatives of both Greece and Cyprus, and described in detail a number of changes to the system, set forth in working paper No. 13, which had been agreed to at that meeting.

Mr. Nédélec noted that an incongruity had been introduced into the new system by the transliteration of "kappa" by "K" and of "Khi" by "ch".

Mr. Geelan stressed not only the need for acceptance of a romanization system by both Greek and Cypriot authorities, but the need for its implementation by those authorities.

HEBREW

Mr. Breu stated that no new information was to be noted in regard to the romanization of Hebrew in toponymy.

ALPHABETS OF THE INDIAN DIVISION

Mr. Sharma stated that the Government of India was likely to introduce in the near future the tables he himself had presented to the London Conference[d] and that this had resulted to a large degree from the work carried out by the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names. Some minor modifications to the tables were inevitable. He had great need for more copies of the tables, he said, and Mr. Christopher replied that they would appear in volume II of the report of the London Conference. Mr. Sharma had contacted authorities in Sri Lanka concerning the romanization of Sinhala, but had received no reply.

JAPANESE

The two principal romanization systems in use for Japanese were cited, and it was noted that no change had occurred since the London Conference.

KHMER

It was noted that no change had occurred since the London Conference.

KOREAN

It was noted that three romanization systems were in use in North and South Korea, and the situation was both fluid and uncertain. Mr. Radó and Mr. Page would collaborate in monitoring the situation for the Working Group.

LAOTIAN

It was noted that no change had occurred since the London Conference.

MALDIVIAN

It was noted that no change had occurred since the London Conference.

MONGOLIAN

Mr. Radó stated that there was nothing new to report concerning Mongolian, but that he had regular correspondence with the Mongolian Academy of Sciences and thus was able to monitor the situation.

PASHTU

Mr. Sharma stated that Afghanistan had introduced a comprehensive romanization system in a map that might be procured for the information of the Working Group.

At the suggestion of Mr. Sharma, Mr. Ganji became a member of the Working Group and stated that an approaching conference, to include representatives from Iran, Afghanistan and Pakistan, would make a final decision in the matter of Pashtu as well as of Urdu. The romanization of Persian would necessarily come under consideration, but no change was contemplated.

SOMALI

Mr. Geelan reported that a new Roman script writing system had come into use in Somali books, newspapers and other documents, but that the spelling of geographical names in terms of that system was frequently uncertain.

Information on the new writing system would be distributed by Mr. Radó and Mr. Komkov.

THAI

It was noted that no change had occurred since the London Conference.

[d] Document E/CONF.61/5 may be obtained, upon request, from the Cartography Section of the Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

Russian

Working paper No. 12 of the sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names and United Nations document E/CONF.61/L.75, of the London Conference, on the romanization systems for Russian place names, both presented by the USSR, were considered. Mr. Komkov described the history and status of romanization systems for Russian Cyrillic writing, both in the USSR and elsewhere in the world. He described the use of English language forms in names used in English context, French forms used in French context and others. He described the two systems set forth in working paper No. 12, saying that the first shared characteristics with the BGN/PCGN system and that the second shared characteristics with the writing systems of Czech, Bulgarian and other Slavic languages. He drew attention to atlases published in Roman script countries that employ the system of the USSR Academy of Sciences in toponymy and stated that the USSR had decided, once and for all, that all cartography and related documents were to employ that system.

The Convenor asked for comments, especially regarding the proposal set forth in working paper No. 12, paragraph 2, which states:

> "The time has come to recommend the Romanization system applied on the Soviet maps as an international one so as to [render] uniform the lettering of place-names of our country in all the cartographic works published abroad."

The discussion dealt with two aspects of standardization:

(*a*) Linguistic evaluation of the Academy of Sciences romanization. Here Mr. Lewis felt that there were disadvantages in the treatment of the Russian letter ë; and

(*b*) The donor principle. The Convenor asked the members of the Working Group who were present to address the question. After a lengthy discussion of that matter of principle, which comprised many points (such as usage on the basis of resolutions adopted by United Nations conferences, names material available, existing romanization practices, etc.), the majority of the members of the Working Group declared themselves in favour of the donor principle. The opponents stated that they saw in the unavailability of an ample body of names a grave obstacle to acceptance of that principle, whereas the supporters took the view that the acceptability of a romanization system should be independent of the names material available.

Mr. Geelan suggested, as a counter-proposal to the proposal contained in working paper No. 12, postponement of a decision in, and further consideration of the matter.

Serbian

Mr. Breu described the matter of romanization in Yugoslavia as stable and unchanged.

The Convenor summed up by stating:

(*a*) That the majority of the members of the Working Group was in favour of the donor principle;

(*b*) That that would not relieve the Working Group of its duty to analyse systems presented by individual countries and make proposals for improvements to the countries concerned before approval by a United Nations conference; and

(*c*) That inasmuch as the Third United Nations Conference at Athens was the body which must pass on resolutions in the matter rather than the United Nations Group of Experts, it seemed best to refer drafting recommendations for further consideration by the Working Group. He invited all the members of the Group of Experts to contribute to reaching a solution in the time intervening before the Third Conference.

Annex VII

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON TRAINING COURSES ON TOPONYMY

The Chairman of the Working Group, Mr. Ormeling, reviewed the progress that had been made since 1971 when the course had first been proposed. He presented working paper No. 8,[a] which outlined the current stage of progress. The working paper was the outcome of two years' negotiations between the Dutch delegation, on behalf of the Working Group, and the Government of the Netherlands.

The membership of the Working Group was reviewed and Messrs. Coker, Gall and Kok became members at their request while Messrs. Rayourn and Ganji replaced Messrs. Delaney and Vadiie respectively.

The discussions of the Working Group covered the following points: the time and duration of the course, the programme of the course, the participating countries, the selection of students, the international lecturers and the follow-up courses.

Time and duration of the course

The Government of the Netherlands had suggested that the course be held in the autumn of 1975, but later accepted Mr. Ormeling's suggestion that it should be held between 26 April and 22 May 1976, as the amount of work necessary to organize the course would require more time. The group also recognized the need for more time and approved Mr. Ormeling's suggestion.

Programme of the training course

The general outline of the programme of work as presented in the report of the fifth session (ESA/RT/C/GN/3, annex V, para. 4) was reviewed. It was agreed that the field collection and office treatment of names should form the main part of the course, and the Chairman intimated that the organizers intended to allot to the two items one half of the total course time.

After some discussion it was agreed that the whole programme should have three parts only, so as to bring out the importance of field collection and office treatment of names. The programme would then consist of the following:

Part I (one week)

(i) General introduction—global view of distribution of languages and scripts;
(ii) Toponymy terminology;
(iii) Functions of geographical names—philosophical view;
(iv) United Nations activities on standardization of geographical names;
(v) General problems of national names authority;
(vi) Writing systems—conversion and non-written languages.

Part II (two weeks)

(i) Field collection of names—general problems and specific problems as encountered in the Africa East, Africa West, Asia South-East, Asia South-West, Arabic, Latin America, USSR and United States of America-Canada divisions;
(ii) Office treatment of names—general problems, specific examples and automatic data processing.

Part III (one week)

(i) Exonyms;
(ii) Generics and glossaries;
(iii) National gazetteers.

The outline of the programme was then accepted. The group further recommended that the detailed programme should be prepared to include:

(i) Exercises in practical field collection;
(ii) Seminars and discussions amongst the students under the guidance of the lecturers;
(iii) Exhibitions of gazetteers, various maps and literature;
(iv) Excursions to libraries and cartographic institutions;
(v) Lectures (which should be held preferably in the mornings) and seminars, discussions, practical work and excursions (in the afternoons); and
(vi) Critical appraisal of the course, to be made by both the students and the lecturers.

A certificate of attendance signed by the United Nations and the host country directors would be issued at the end of the course.

[a] Copies of the document may be obtained, on request, from the Cartography Section of the Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

THE PARTICIPATING COUNTRIES

The Chairman referred to the decision of the Government of the Netherlands in November 1974 to finance travel and accommodation costs of 25–30 students from developing countries that fit into their development aid programmes, such as Bangladesh, Kenya, Malawi, Sri Lanka, the United Republic of Tanzania, Zambia and possibly the Lao People's Republic. He further stated that the travel and accommodation costs of the international lecturers would have to be met by other bodies, preferably the United Nations.

After some discussion, during which Messrs. Coker and Kok appealed for participation by members of their divisions that had not been listed by the Government of the Netherlands, the Working Group agreed that the course should be thrown open to all English-speaking countries.

The Government of the Netherlands, after consultation, accepted the opinion of the Working Group and advised that invitations would be sent to all English-speaking countries of the Africa East, Africa West, Asia South-East and India Divisions. The invitations would be sent out in two phases: first, a general circular to all the countries to establish their interest, and second, an invitation to register and select students for the course. The Government of the Netherlands would then offer fellowships to those countries that fit into their development aid programme.

SELECTION OF STUDENTS

The Group agreed that the students should be of university entrance level and have linguistic and field experience in the subject of geographical names. Several experts indicated that they would send senior officers, who would be able to train and supervise junior officers in the countries after having completed the course.

THE INTERNATIONAL LECTURERS

The Working Group recommended that a lecturer be invited from each division, including the new China Division. Preference should be given, however, to members of the Group of Experts.

The lecturers should be able to communicate fluently in English and be equipped with maps, visual aids and audio-visual aids to support their lectures. The success of the course would depend on free communication between the lecturers and students. The selected lecturers should submit a summary, of not less than 800 words, of their lectures to the organizers in the Netherlands by 31 January 1976 for distribution to fellow lecturers and to students.

The Group recommended that the United Nations co-sponsor the Pilot Training Course, including allocation of funds.

FOLLOW-UP COURSES

Mr. Rayburn of the Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names endorsed the proposed course to be hosted by Canada in both English and French, on the understanding that further courses were to follow. Although the financial implications had not been considered, he confirmed that it was a commitment that a follow-up course would be held in Canada, in about 1978.

Mr. Ganji stated that, after the experience gained during the pilot course, he saw no reason why simultaneous courses could not be held in various divisions. He proposed to organize one in his division.

It was noted that Mr. Gall had also held courses on a smaller scale within his Latin America Division.

Mr. Kok noted that a divisional course might be held in the Asia South-East Division if some of the senior officers of the division attended the pilot course; he thanked the Government of the Netherlands for their offer to host the pilot course.

The Chairman expressed the hope that the initiative might lead, in the future, to the establishment of a permanent toponymic training centre somewhere in the developing world.

Annex VIII

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON GAZETTEERS

The Working Group, with open membership and Mr. Lewis as Convenor, was established by the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts on Geographical Names at its fifth session, held in New York, from 5 to 16 March 1973, with tasks as outlined in annex VI of the report of the fifth session (see pp. 421–422 above).

Three meetings were held. The whole Group of Experts participated. Reference documents were: working papers Nos. 19, 29 and 34;* resolutions 17, 23, 24, 25, 26 and 35 of the London Conference,[a] all of which bear directly on one or another of the three types of gazetteers under discussion:

(*a*) National gazetteers;

(*b*) Provisional United Nations gazetteers of the world; and

(*c*) A *Concise United Nations gazetteer of the world* in one or two volumes.

Mr. Breu gave a detailed account of the abridged gazetteer of Austria mentioned in working paper No. 19.* The gazetteer, containing about 5,800 names, had been prepared since the previous meeting of the Group of Experts. Discussion of format and content of national gazetteers confirmed the specifications set out in resolution 4 of the Geneva Conference.[b] Further discussion centred around the addition of a phonetic representation of place names in gazetteers, both from the point of view of the national and the non-national user and also in connexion with the conversion into other writing systems of names given in gazetteers.

It was confirmed once more that the United States Board on Geographic Names (BGN) gazetteers, if and when revised and published jointly with and by the country covered in the gazetteer, could constitute a provisional United Nations gazetteer after national approval by that country had been granted, on the lines agreed by the Group of Experts in 1973 (see ESA/RT/C/GN/3, annex VI, paras. 8–10). Kenya and the United States Board on Geographical Names were continuing to work jointly on the production of a new Gazetteer of Kenya. No further progress had been made on the proposal for joint gazetteers of undersea features. Guatemala had been selected as the Latin American country for which a gazetteer would be produced jointly with the United States Board on Geographical Names. As stated in previous meetings of the Working Group, the provisional series of gazetteers based on the BGN gazetteers was to help in the preparation of a series of world gazetteers in the absence of such gazetteers prepared by the national authorities concerned.

Working paper No. 29/Rev. 1, submitted by Mr. Radó, was noted as reflecting the views of the East Central, South-East Europe and Soviet Union Divisions. The third paragraph of the working paper was generally accepted as the basis of the format of the title page for national gazetteers.

The *Concise Gazetteer* would be compiled according to the specifications of the national gazetteers as defined at London. It was agreed that the *Concise Gazetteer* should be based on existing national or co-operative provisional gazetteers or on interim lists of geographical names compiled in accordance with resolution 35 of the London Conference.[a] Two principles of selection were discussed: first, to base the work on map material at a uniform scale, and second, to apply a more complex method, taking account of the relative importance of different areas of the countries concerned. The second basis of selection was preferred by a majority. It was foreseen that the project would require an editor and an editorial staff, one of whose tasks would be to determine, in general terms, the size of each country's contribution.

---

* An asterisk accompanying the mention of a document indicates that copies of the document are available, on request, from the Cartography Section of the Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

[a] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I . . ., chap. III.

[b] *United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I . . ., chap. III.

Annex IX

REPORT OF THE WORKING GROUP ON THE LIST OF COUNTRY NAMES

The Working Group was established at the fifth session of the *Ad Hoc* Group of Experts on Geographical Names, held in New York from 5 to 16 March 1973. The Convenor of the Working Group was Mr. Nédélec (France), the Rapporteur was Mr. Breu (Austria), and the following members of the working group were present: Mr. Coker (Nigeria), Mr. Lewis (United Kingdom), Mr. Page (United States of America) and Mr. Radó (Hungary). Mr. Vadiie (Iran), also a member of the Group, was absent.

Since the fifth session of the Group of Experts, the Working Group had worked only by correspondence and its tasks had been divided among its members on the basis of geographical or linguistic consideration.

The activity of the Working Group called for the collection of complete and accurate data. This was greatly affected by two types of exchange of correspondence:

(*a*) The exchange of correspondence between the members of the Working Group and the experts representing the divisions; and

(*b*) The exchange of correspondence between the experts representing the divisions and the national experts.

Owing to the various tasks of the experts, that correspondence had worked more or less well in the interval between the previous session of the Group of Experts and the current one. As a result, working paper No. 42,* which constituted a first list of the country names, was neither complete nor up to date.

The attention of the experts was drawn to the important contributions made by Mr. Breu (Austria) and Mr. Gall (Guatemala): to the former as both a member of the Working Group and an expert representing a division; to the latter as an expert of a division. The contribution of Mr. Breu was presented in working paper No. 17.*

Mr. Coker indicated that there had been slow progress in obtaining the necessary data, as only a very small number of African countries had replied to his circular letter.

Working paper No. 42 did not include information given by Messrs. Page and Radó, which, unfortunately, had reached the Convenor too late. The contribution of Mr. Radó was contained in working paper No. 40.* The data given by Messrs. Page and Radó would be incorporated by the Convenor of the Working Group after the current session. All other data given directly to the Convenor of the Working Group during the current session would also be processed in the same way. That included, *inter alia*, data from Messrs. Ayoubi (Lebanon), Gall (Guatemala), González (Spain), Banlung (Thailand), Sharma (India) and Velázquez (Cuba). The remarks made by Mr. Ayoubi and Mr. Sharma appeared respectively in working papers No. 50,* No. 45* and No. 45/Add.1.* At that point the permanent task of the activities of the Working Group was recognized by the Group of Experts as the continuous updating of the list of country names, which had been shown to be necessary.

The experts of the China Division and of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics Division would provide the Convenor of the Working Group with the names in Chinese characters and in Cyrillic characters, as used at the United Nations, for all the countries of the world. They would also provide corresponding transliterated or transcribed versions of names in Latin characters in accordance with the adopted systems currently in use in China and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics.

It was generally agreed that for all countries not using Latin characters, the local names contained in the list would be those resulting from the application of a transcription or transliteration system recommended by a resolution of a United Nations conference on geographical names or, if not available, from a system officially adopted and used in the country concerned.

It was also agreed that, in addition to the short traditional form, abbreviations officially and commonly used should also be placed on the list of the countries of the world.

In order to define better the tasks of the Working Group, it was decided that, in countries where several languages are used, the Group would limit its research to only those languages which could be considered as official at the national level.

In addition to the experts listed at the beginning of the report, the Working Group will include, in the future, Messrs. Gall (Guatemala), González (Spain), Komkov (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics) and Qiao Feng (China).

* An asterisk accompanying the mention of a document indicates that copies of the document are available, upon request, from the Cartography Section of the Department of Technical Co-operation for Development, United Nations Secretariat.

Annex X

LIST OF PARTICIPANTS

Africa East Division

W. J. Absaloms (Kenya), Secretary, Standing Committee on Geographical Names, Survey of Kenya, P.O. Box 30046, Nairobi

Africa West Division

R. Oluwole Coker (Nigeria), Federal Survey Department, Lagos

Arabic Division

M. El-Ayoubi (Lebanon; *Division Chairman*), Inspecteur à la Direction des affaires géographiques, Président de la Commission de toponymie, Beirut

H. Bulugma (Libyan Arab Republic), Benghazi University

R. B. Seid (Libyan Arab Republic), Ministry of Education, Tripoli

S. Abdo (Saudi Arabia), Department of Geography, University of Riyadh

M. Al-Fayez (Saudi Arabia), Central Department of Statistics, Ministry of Finance, Riyadh

S. Al-Robaishy (Saudi Arabia), Director-General Aerial Survey Department, Ministry of Petroleum and Mineral Resources, P.O. Box 247, Riyadh

S. Bawazeer (Saudi Arabia), c/o Saudi Arabian Educational Mission, 880 Third Avenue (17th floor), New York, N.Y. 10022

Asia, East Division other than China

(No representatives)

Asia South-East Division

S. T. Kok (Malaysia; *Division Chairman*), Director General of Survey, Director of National Mapping, Malaysia, Survey Headquarters, Jalan Gurney, Kuala Lumpur

B. Khamasundara (Thailand), Royal Thai Survey Department, Bangkok

B. Narmwang (Thailand), Royal Thai Survey Department, Bangkok

Asia South-West Division other than Arabic

M. H. Ganji (Iran; *Division Chairman*), Department of Geography, University of Teheran, Teheran

Y. M. Nawabi (Iran), Department of Linguistics, Faculty of Arts and Literature, Pahlavi University, Shiraz

H. Daneshvar (Iran), National Geographic Organization, Teheran

China Division

Yang Leiguang (China; *Division Chairman*), State Bureau of Surveying and Cartography, Beijing

Qiao Feng (China), State Bureau of Surveying and Cartography, Beijing

Bao Hao (China), State Bureau of Surveying and Cartography, Beijing

Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division

E. Meynen (Germany, Federal Republic of; *Division Chairman*), Chairman of the Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, Langenbergweg 82, D-53 Bonn-Bad Godesberg

F. J. Ormeling (Netherlands), Head of the Cartography, International Institute for Aerial Survey and Earth Science, 144 Boulevard 1945, Enschede

D. P. Blok (Netherlands), Director, Institute for Dialectology, Folklore and Onomastics of the Royal Dutch Academy of Science and Letters, Keizersgracht 569–571, Amsterdam-C

J. Breu (Austria), Österreichisches Ost- und Südosteuropa Institut, Josefsplatz 6, A-1190 Vienna

E. Haack (German Democratic Republic), Ministerium des Innern, Verwaltung Vermessungs- und Kartenwesen, Mauerstr. 29–32, DDR 108 Berlin

East Central and South-East Europe Division

S. Radó (Hungary), Director, Department of Cartography, National Office of Lands and Mapping, V. Kossuth Lajos Tér 11, 1860 Budapest

India Division

D. N. Sharma Atri Harnal (India), Director, Southern Circle, Survey of India, 22 Richmond Road, Bangalore

Latin America Division

Francis Gall (Guatemala; *Division Chairman*), 13 Avenida "A" 14–23, Colonia Loma Linda, Z.11, Ciudad de Guatemala

I. Velázquez García (Cuba), Director Técnico de Cartografía, Instituto Cubano de Geodesia y Cartografía, Loma y 39, Nuevo Vedado, Habana

Norden Division

P. Hovda (Norway), Chief, Place-Names Archives, University of Oslo, Blindern, Oslo 3

Romano-Hellenic Division

F. Nédélec (France; *Division Chairman*), Ingénieur-en-Chef Géographe, Institut géographique national, 136 bis rue de Grenelle, 75007, Paris

J. A. González (Spain), Instituto Geográfico y Cadastral, General Ibañez 3, Madrid 3

M. Setatos (Greece), University of Thessaloniki

M. Stoforopoulos (Greece), Counsellor of Embassy, Permanent Mission of Greece to the United Nations, 69 East 79th Street, New York, N.Y. 10021

D. Vayacacos (Greece), Académie d'Athènes, Anagnostopoulou 14, Athens 136

Union of Soviet Socialist Republics Division

A. M. Komkov (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics), Vice-Chairman of the Permanent Joint Committee on Geographical Names, Cartographic Scientific Information Centre, Novoshchukinskaya 11, 123098 Moscow D-98

United Kingdom Division

H. A. G. Lewis (United Kingdom; *Division Chairman*), Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, c/o Royal Geographical Society, Kensington Gore, London S.W.7. A.R.

P. J. Geelan (United Kingdom), Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, c/o Royal Geographical Society, Kensington Gore, London S.W.7. A.R.

United States of America and Canada Division

M. F. Burrill (United States of America; *Division Chairman*), 5503 Grove Street, Chevy Chase, Maryland 20015

A. Rayburn (Canada), Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, 580 Booth Street, Ottawa KIA OE 4

Carl R. Page (United States of America), Geographic Names Division, Topographic Center, Defense Mapping Agency, 6500 Brooks Lane, Washington, D.C. 20315

R. R. Randall (United States of America), United States Board on Geographical Names, Building 56, U.S. Naval Observatory, Washington, D.C. 20305

Annex XI

LIST OF DOCUMENTS

Working paper

No. 1 (and Rev. 1)	Provisional agenda
No. 2	Bibliography of gazetteers and glossaries of geographical names: World, countries and territories 1945–1973, compiled by Emil Meynen
No. 3	Aims, functions and *modus operandi* of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names (F. Gall, Guatemala)
No. 4	Bibliography of documents on geographical names presented to various United Nations Conferences (Secretariat)
No. 5	Report on the standardization of geographical names in Norway since the meeting in 1973 (Norway)
No. 6	Exónimos (J. González and F. Vázquez, Spain)
No. 7	Report of the Asia South-East Division (S. T. Kok, Malaysia)
No. 8	Training courses in toponymy (D. P. Blok and F. J. Ormeling, Netherlands)
No. 9	Progress report on the standardization of geographical names in the Netherlands (Netherlands)
No. 10	Some consequences of an integral use of diacritical signs in the spelling of geographical names (delegation of the Netherlands)
No. 11	On the standardization of geographical names in the Soviet Union in 1972–1974 (A. M. Komkov, USSR)
No. 12	On the romanization system for place-names of the USSR (A. M. Komkov, USSR)
No. 13	On the compilation of the *Gazetteer of Russian Conventional Names for Geographical Entities in Foreign Countries* (A. M. Komkov, USSR)
No. 14	Informative report (A. M. Komkov, USSR)
No. 15	Names of the USSR Republics in their local spellings and in their United Nations official forms (A. M. Komkov, USSR)
No. 16	Rapport sur la normalisation des noms géographiques: Rapport d'activité (delegation of Lebanon)
No. 17	List of country names (J. Breu, Austria)
No. 18	Withdrawn
No. 19	*Gazetteer of Austria* (J. Breu, Austria)
No. 20	Report on the East-Central and South-East Europe-Soviet Union Divisional meeting (Hungary)
No. 21	Extraterrestrial topographic features (Hungary)
No. 22	Definitions of terms used in geographical names standardization (Hungary)
No. 23	Undersea and maritime features (Hungary)
No. 24	Romanization of Korean geographical names in the People's Democratic Republic of Korea (Hungary)
No. 25	Comparative table of Korean romanization systems (Hungary)
No. 26	Romanization of Chinese geographical names (Hungary)
No. 27	Reduction of exonyms (Hungary)
No. 28	Romanization of Bulgarian, Russian and Mongolian geographical names (Hungary)
No. 29 (and Rev. 1)	International gazetteers (Hungary)
No. 30	List of country names (Hungary)
No. 31	Seventh session of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names (Hungary)

No. 32	Report by the Imperial Government of Iran on transliteration of geographical names (Iran)
No. 33	On the names of maritime features and undersea features (Federal Republic of Germany)
No. 34	*United Nations Gazetteer of the World*, under the auspices of the United Nations; Volume: Federal Republic of Germany (Federal Republic of Germany)
No. 35	Relaciones de paises (J. Corderas D., Spain)
No. 36	Report by the expert for Latin America (Francis Gall, Guatemala)
No. 37	Glossaire de la terminologie employée dans la normalisation des noms géographiques (F. Nédélec, France)
No. 38	Report of the Africa West Division (R. O. Coker, Nigeria)
No. 39	Report for the sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names (Experts from Greece)
No. 40	List of country names, by the Working Group on the List of Countries (Hungary)
No. 41	Report of the Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division (E. Spiess, Switzerland)
No. 42	Groupe de travail pour la liste des pays du monde (F. Nédélec, France)
No. 43	Speech by Yang Leiguang, Head of the Group of Geographical Names Experts, State Bureau of Surveying and Cartography of the People's Republic of China, at the sixth session of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names
No. 44	Report of the Working Group on Definitions of the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names
No. 45 (and Add. 1)	List of country names (D. N. Sharma, India)
No. 46	Report of the Africa East Division (W. J. Absaloms, Kenya)
No. 47	List of submarine names (S. Radó, Hungary)
No. 48	Report of activities since the fifth session (United States of America-Canada Division)
No. 49	Report by Canada (United States of America-Canada Division)
No. 50	Liste des pays du monde (M. Ayoubi, Lebanon)
No. 51	Tableau des aménagements acceptables pour la translitération de l'Arabe (M. Ayoubi, Lebanon, and F. Nédélec, France)
No. 52	The use of diacritics in an automated typesetting process at the United States Library of Congress (R. Randall, USA)
No. 53	Informe de actividades (Y. Velázquez García, Cuba)
No. 54	Statement by the Chairman of the Group of Experts on Geographical Names introducing programme suggestions related to the Third Conference agenda (M. Burrill, United States of America)
No. 55 (and Corr. 1)	Report of the Chairman: Activities related to overall work and interests of the Group of Experts, 1973–1975 (M. Burrill, United States of America)
No. 56	Report on standardization of geographical names (Arabic Division)
No. 57	Summary record of the Working Group on Extraterrestrial Features

Information paper

No. 1	Provisional list of participants
No. 2	German translation of the English document E/CONF.61/L.1/Rev.2, June 1972, entitled "A glossary of technical terminology for employment in the standardization of geographical names"
No. 3	Press release EC/2597 and Corr. 1
No. 4	Provisional list of documents
No. 5	Comments on the United States BGN gazetteers (United States of America)
No. 6	Ibn Blihid as a contributor to the study of geographical names of Saudi Arabia (A. S. Abdo, Saudi Arabia)

REPORT OF THE UNITED NATIONS GROUP OF EXPERTS ON GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES ON ITS SEVENTH SESSION, 16 AUGUST AND 8 SEPTEMBER 1977

In pursuance of Economic and Social Council resolution 1314 (XLIV), the United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names was invited by the Secretary-General to convene its seventh session at the Athens Chandris Hotel, Athens, on 16 August 1977, prior to the Third United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names, and to meet again on 8 September 1977 to review the results of the Conference.

The session was attended by 39 experts from 30 countries, representing all of the 17 geographical/linguistic divisions of the world (see annex).

Chris N. Christopher, Chief of the Cartography Section, Department of Economic and Social Affairs, United Nations Secretariat, served as Secretary for the Group.

The session was opened by Meredith F. Burrill, Chairman of the Group of Experts.

The Group agreed to follow the same rules of procedure as at the previous sessions.

The Group adopted the following agenda:

1. Reports of the working groups
2. Organization of the Third Conference
3. Election of officers
4. Review of Conference recommendations
5. Programme for the Group of Experts
6. Eighth session of the Group of Experts
7. Other business

Reports of the working groups

In its meeting of 16 August the Group considered the reports of the seven working groups, which were to be presented before the Conference.

The reports of the working groups as annexed to the report of the sixth session of the Group of Experts were adopted as the basis for discussion during the Third Conference. It was agreed that the reports would be presented to the Conference by the convenors of the working groups or, in their absence, by the rapporteurs.

Col. D. N. Sharma Atri Harnal agreed to present the report of the Working Group on Definitions and J. R. Ramondou agreed to present that of the Working Group on Country Names.

Organization of the Third Conference

It was announced that L. Mavridis would be nominated president of the Conference. It was also proposed to establish an editorial committee, the chairman of which would also be appointed an officer of the Conference.

It was agreed to form five committees, as was done during the First and Second Conferences. The items for discussion had been assigned to the committees by the sixth session of the Group. All delegates to the Third Conference would be invited to participate in the work of each committee.

For the nomination of the officers of the Third Conference, the technical committees and the editorial committee, a nominating committee was established, consisting of Col. Sharma (*Chairman*) and Messrs. Burrill, P. Foo, E. Meynen and Christopher.

Election of officers

The seventh session was reconvened on 8 September. It was agreed to elect a new slate of officers, and the following were chosen: Josef Breu (*Chairman*), W. J. Absaloms (*Vice-Chairman*) and A. Rayburn (*Rapporteur*). A proposal to elect a second Vice-Chairman was withdrawn after discussion revealed that there would be no real need for such an officer.

Mr. Burrill commended D. P. Blok for his work since 1967 in performing the duties of Rapporteur of the Group of Experts and of the Second and Third Conferences. Mr. Breu, having taken over the chair, praised Mr. Burrill and Mr. A. M. Komkov, who had served as Chairman and Vice-Chairman since 1967, for their achievements in furthering the objectives of the United Nations in the area of standardization of geographical names.

Review of Conference recommendations

The Chairman pointed out that the progress of the Conference was shown especially by its recommendations. Whereas some of these signified final results (as for example many of the recommendations on romanization), many others assigned specific tasks to the Group of Experts as a whole or to its working groups.

Programme for the Group of Experts

The Chairman suggested the following programme. Each working group would carry on its work, with special regard to the results of the Conference. The convenor of each working group would direct its work by means of circulars distributed to all members of the working group; the contributions of each working group member would also be distributed by that member to all other members, via circular letters. The Chairman himself would send circulars to all members of the Group of Experts and ask them to submit to him copies of their correspondence with the convenors of the working groups. He thought that only by this means could that progress be achieved which was necessary to make the eighth meeting a success.

Working groups

The Chairman enumerated the resolutions of the Conference, and those that covered special topics he referred to the working groups concerned. It was emphasized that the tasks given to the working groups should be expressed explicitly, with specific goals in mind, and that the groups should be disbanded upon completion of the assigned tasks.

Working Group on Definitions

It was agreed that the work of the Working Group on Definitions remained incomplete. It was also noted that the Division of Languages of the United Nations in New York and the Terminology Commission in Geneva were very interested in the definitions prepared by the Working Group. Since there was a need to prepare a revised version of the Spanish-language section of the definitions it was agreed that J. M. Gonzalez Aboin would act as the co-ordinator of a sub-group to carry out this task.

Working Group on Undersea and Maritime Features

Mr. R. R. Randall observed that there was a need to continue the work of this Group in co-operation with the International Hydrographic Organization. Greece informed Mr. Randall that it wished to appoint a person to serve on the Working Group.

Working Group on Extraterrestrial Topographical Features

Mr. Komkov stated that considerable work remained to be done in consultation with the International Astronomical Union. The new membership of the Group was to include Mr. Komkov, H. A. G. Lewis, Col. Sharma Atri Harnal, S. Radó, Mr. Randall and D. Vayacacos.

Working Group on a Single Romanization System for Each Non-Roman Writing System

E. Földi was appointed to succeed Mr. Breu as the convenor. New assignments as well as reappointments were made for the following alphabets and scripts: A. Tazi, Arabic in the Maghreb area; P. G. M. Geelan, Amharic, Hebrew, Khmer, Korean (in the Republic of Korea), Laotian, Persian and Thai; D. Vayacacos, Greek; Qiao Feng, Chinese; Col. Sharma Atri Harnal, Bhutanese; and T. Kanakubo and P. G. M. Geelan, Japanese. Since Somalia had adopted a Roman alphabet work was no longer required on Somali. It was pointed out that many countries had failed to respond to requests for information on progress in romanizing their alphabets and scripts.

Working Group on Training Courses

It was reported that Mr. Ormeling was still pursuing the possibility of holding a training course in the Netherlands. Note was made of the various other proposals for training suggested during the Third Conference. The following were nominated to serve with Mr. Ormeling: Mr. Foo, J. L. Sawyerr and Mr. Rayburn.

Working Group on Gazetteers

Mr. Lewis agreed to continue as the convenor of this Group and Mr. Sawyerr offered to assist with the work of the Group. It was felt that automatic data processing should be treated outside the framework of the Group.

Working Group on Automated Data Processing

It was agreed to establish a separate Working Group on Automated Data Processing, with R. Böhme as the convenor. The other members were Mr. Foo, Mr. Gonzalez Aboín, Mr. Kanakubo, Mr. Komkov, Mr. Lewis, C. M. Mubita, D. J. Orth, Mr. Randall, Mr. Rayburn and I. Valazquez Garcia. It was emphasized that the tasks and objectives of the Working Group must be clearly defined.

Working Group on the List of Country Names

Mr. Ramondou accepted the duties of convenor for this Working Group. He pointed out that considerable work remained to be done as regarded the Russian and Chinese names. F. Gall noted that a list of country names in Spanish had been submitted to Mr. Ramondou.

Eighth session of the Group of Experts

The eighth session of the Group of Experts was scheduled to be held in New York from 5 to 16 March 1979. A provisional agenda would be prepared in the spring of 1978 and would be submitted to the Governments of the States Members of the United Nations along with invitations to designate experts to attend the session.

Other business

It was noted that responsibility for the study of the reduction of exonyms rested with the Group of Experts as a committee of the whole.

R. O. Coker observed that some resolutions had not been acted upon, such as resolution 34 of the Second Conference, "International standardization of names beyond a single sovereignty",[1] and that action must be taken to reduce areas of friction.

The Chairman said that he would examine the resolutions of the Third Conference and request the convenors to proceed with the tasks of their working groups. He also proposed the compilation of a questionnaire for submission to countries to assess their problems and solutions in the handling of languages.

Mr. Burrill proposed that, when countries or divisions achieved results in the standardizing of names or in resolving problems relating to nomenclature, they communicate such information to Mr. Christopher.

It was reported that meetings of the Africa East, India and Romano-Hellenic divisions had been held during the previous two weeks, and that the Africa East and Africa West divisions had held a joint meeting. It was noted that the First Latin American Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names was scheduled to be held in Suriname during November 1978. It was further noted that the Fifth Central American Meeting on the Standardization of Geographical Names was scheduled in El Salvador for the second part of 1978 and that the Second South American Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names was planned for the first part of 1979.

In implementation of resolution 26 of the Third Conference, which called for the establishment of a new division to be called "Africa Central", Mr. M. Bizenga (Congo) was elected Division Chairman of this new division, upon the recommendation of Mr. Absaloms and R. O. Coker.

Annex

LIST OF PARTICIPANTS

Africa Central Division

M. Bizenga (Congo), Directeur de l'Institut géographique national, B.P. 125, Brazzaville

Africa East Division

W. J. Absaloms (Kenya; *Division Chairman*), Assistant Director, Survey of Kenya, P.O. Box 30046, Nairobi

C. M. Mubita (Zambia), Surveyor General, P.O. Box RW 397, Lusaka

Africa West Division

R. Oluwole Coker (Nigeria; *Division Chairman*), Director of Federal Surveys and Chairman, National Committee on the Standardization of Maps and Geographical Names, Federal Survey Department, Lagos

J. L. Sawyerr (Liberia), Director, Liberian Cartographic Service

Arabic Division

A. Al-Wohaibi (Saudi Arabia; *Division Chairman*), Riyadh University, POB 3002

A. Tazi (Morocco), Directeur, Institut universitaire de la recherche scientifique

Asia, East Division (other than China)

T. Kanakubo (Japan), Head, Planning Section, Map Management Department, Geographical Survey Institute, Ministry of Construction, 24-13 Higashiyama 3 chome, Meguro-ku, Tokyo

Asia, South East Division

Major Gen. B. Khamasundara (Thailand; *Division Chairman*), Royal Thai Survey Department, Ministry of Defense, Bangkok

P. Foo (Malaysia), Director-General of Survey, Director of National Mapping, Survey Department Headquarters, Jalan Gurney, Kuala Lumpur

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. I, *Report of the Conference* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.2), chap. III.

Col. B. Thipphayathat (Thailand), Assistant Chief, Geography Division, Royal Thai Survey Department, Ministry of Defense, Bangkok

Asia South-West Division (other than Arabic)

M. H. Ganji (Iran; *Division Chairman*), 10 Koocheh Shahrdar, Teheran 16

J. M. Nawabi (Iran), Asia Institute, Pahpari University, Shiraz

China Division

Yang Leiguang (China; *Division Chairman*), Director of the Research Institute of Surveying and Cartography

Ba Hao (China), Technician of the Research Institute of Surveying and Cartography

Dutch-speaking and German-speaking Division

E. Meynen (Germany, Federal Republic of; *Division Chairman*), Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, Langenbergweg 82, 5300 Bonn

D. P. Blok (Netherlands), Institute for Dialectology, Folklore and Onomastics of the Royal Dutch Academy of Science and Letters, Keizersgracht 569–571, Amsterdam-C

J. Breu (Austria), Geographical Department, Austria Institute for Eastern and South-eastern Europe, Josefsplatz 6, A-1010 Vienna 1

E. Haack (German Democratic Republic), Administration for Land Survey and Cartography, Ministry of the Interior, Mauerstr. 29–32, DDR-1086 Berlin

East Central and South-East Europe Division

S. Radó (Hungary; *Division Chairman*), National Office of Lands and Mapping, 1860 Budapest V

E. Földi (Hungary), Földmérési Intézet, POB 546, 1373 Budapest

India Division

Col. D. N. Sharma Atri Harnal (India; *Division Chairman*), Director, Southern Circle, Survey of India, Bangalore

A. Ghayur (Pakistan), Second Secretary, Pakistan Embassy, Athens, Greece

Latin America Division

F. Gall (Guatemala; *Division Chairman*), 13 Avenida "A" No. 14–23, Colonia Loma Linda, Zona 11, Ciudad de Guatemala

I. Valazquez Garcia (Cuba), 8 Sept. only, Chief, Department of Cartography, Cuban Institute of Geodesy and Cartography, 20 No. 4115, Miramar, Playa, Habana

J. B. C. Wekker (Suriname), 16 Aug. only, President, Cartographic Committee, Phlox Str. 2, Paramaribo

Norden Division

P. Hovda (Norway), Chief, Place Names Archives, State Counsellor on Geographical Names

Romano-Hellenic Division

J. Ramondou (France; *Division Chairman*), Institut géographique national, 2, avenue Pasteur, 94160 St. Mandé

J. M. Gonzalez Aboín (Spain), Instituto Geografico y Catastral, General Ibanez de Ibero 3, Madrid 3

J. Cruz (Spain), S. Francisco de Sales 23, Madrid

E. Kofos (Greece), Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Athens

D. Vayacacos (Greece), General Director, Greek Language Historical Dictionary, Academy of Athens

Union of Soviet Socialist Republics Division

A. M. Komkov (USSR), Vice-Chairman of the Permanent Joint Committee on Geographical Names, Cartographic Scientific Information Centre, 11, ul. Novoshchukinskaya, D-98 Moscow

United Kingdom Division

H. A. G. Lewis (United Kingdom; *Division Chairman*), Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, 1 Kensington Gore, London SW7 2 AR

P. G. M. Geelan (United Kingdom), Permanent Committee on Geographical Names

United States of America and Canada Division

M. F. Burrill (United States of America; *Division Chairman*), Consultant, Office of the Geographer, Department of State

D. J. Orth (United States of America), Executive Secretary, United States Board on Geographic Names, Defense Mapping Agency

R. R. Randall (United States of America), Executive Secretary, United States Board on Geographic Names, Defense Mapping Agency

A. Rayburn (Canada), Executive Secretary, Canadian Permanent Committee on Geographical Names, 580 Booth Street, Ottawa

WORK OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA IN THE COMMITTEE ON GEOGRAPHICAL TERMINOLOGY OF THE PAN-AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY

Report presented by the United States of America*

Résumé

Les Etats-Unis continuent de coopérer avec l'Institut panaméricain de géographie et d'histoire (PAIGH), organisation créée pendant la deuxième décennie du XX^e siècle pour exécuter des travaux de géographie, d'histoire, de cartographie et de géodésie concernant les 22 pays de l'hémisphère occidental qui en sont membres. En 1973, M. Richard R. Randall, secrétaire exécutif du Board on Geographic Names (BGN) des Etats-Unis, a été nommé Président de la Commission de terminologie géographique du PAIGH, laquelle était auparavant un groupe de travail. Sous sa direction, la Commission a entrepris plusieurs programmes, dont les principaux visent à publier un répertoire des institutions de l'hémisphère qui s'occupent de terminologie, et à faire paraître un glossaire des termes employés par les pays membres du PAIGH. Le répertoire est maintenant prêt à être distribué, et les Etats membres soumettent des termes et des définitions. L'objectif principal du glossaire, qui est fondé sur un document publié par le BGN il y a plusieurs années sous le titre "Generic terms used in geographic names in the Americas south of the United States" (Termes génériques utilisés dans les noms géographiques des nomenclatures de la Commission des noms géographiques pour les pays d'Amérique situés au sud des Etats-Unis), est de présenter en un seul volume un état récapitulatif des principaux termes géographiques, ainsi

* The original text of this paper, prepared by Richard R. Randall, Executive Secretary of the United States Board on Geographic Names, appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.36.

que les variations locales des significations dans les pays intéressés.

Resumen

Los Estados Unidos de América continúan cooperando con el Instituto Panamericano de Geografía e Historia, organización establecida en el segundo decenio de este siglo para trabajar en programas de geografía, historia, cartografía y geodesia relacionados con las 22 naciones del hemisfero occidental que integran ese órgano. En 1973, Richard R. Randall, Secretario Ejecutivo de la Junta de Nombres Geográficos de los Estados Unidos, fue designado Presidente del Comité de Terminología Geográfica del Instituto Panamericano de Geografía e Historia, órgano que había existido previamente como grupo de trabajo. Bajo la dirección del Sr. Randall, el Comité inició varios programas, los principales de los cuales son esfuerzos por editar una lista de los organismos del hemisferio que trabajan en terminología y publicar un glosario de términos empleados en las naciones miembros del Instituto Panamericano de Geografía e Historia. La lista ya está preparada para su distribución y los Estados miembros están aportando términos y definiciones. La finalidad principal del glosario, que se basa en un documento publicado hace varios años por la Junta de Nombres Geográficos con el título "Generic terms used in geographic names in the Americas south of the United States" (Términos genéricos utilizados en nombres geográficos en América al sur de los Estados Unidos), es presentar en un volumen un resumen de los principales términos geográficos junto con las variaciones locales de su significado, según se emplean en los países interesados.

*

* *

The United States continues to work with the Pan American Institute of Geography and History (PAIGH), an organization comprising 22 countries of the Western Hemisphere that has been active since the second decade of this century in programmes related to the geography and history of the concerned areas. Since 1941, PAIGH programmes have been expanded to include cartography, geodesy and geophysics.

In partnership with other PAIGH nations, the United States has played various roles in helping organize and administer international programmes in all subject fields. These roles have included key positions within the four major commissions—Geography, History, Cartography and Geophysics—and within committees and working groups subordinate to the commissions.

At the ninth General Assembly of PAIGH, held in Panama in April and May of 1973, authorities acted to establish a Committee on Geographical Terminology. This committee was an outgrowth of a previously existing Working Group on Geographical Terminology, and assumed many of the tasks assigned the former body. So as to clarify its relationship with the United Nations, which has similar interests for the hemisphere, the Committee charter stated that its work was to be developed in close co-ordination with pertinent United Nations programmes. The charter also made clear that the focus of the Committee was on terminology rather than on names.

In Panama, Mr. Richard R. Randall, Executive Secretary of the United States Board on Geographic Names, was appointed President of the Committee for the next four years, or until the next General Assembly, now scheduled to take place at Quito, Ecuador, in August of 1977. At a meeting of Committee representatives from Central America in March 1974, further work programmes were developed; later correspondence with members in other PAIGH nations informed them of Committee projects and served to secure over-all consensus. Although "geographical terminology" is a broad subject, and one capable of elaboration in many directions, the Committee agreed to limit its focus, at least initially, to a few specific areas. Accordingly, two major tasks were defined: the compilation of agencies in the Americas engaging in the processing of geographic names, and the translation and publication of a document entitled "Generic terms used in geographic names in the Americas south of the United States",[1] in which the Iberian Peninsula was included because of close linguistic relationships with Latin America.

Seeing a need for strengthening communications with members in PAIGH countries, Mr. Randall took a 19-day trip to Central and South America in November and December of 1975, during which time programmes were discussed and ideas for future projects were outlined. The trip was most valuable for the insight it gave the president into the points of view held by Committee members and others interested in geographical terminology; the trip also enabled members to grasp a new feeling of identification with Committee goals and programmes. As a result of the exposure, certain aspects of the Committee's work were clarified and new perspectives gained. Two major concerns manifested themselves:

First, there was some feeling that terminology should be pursued as a field separate from geographical names. This is a view in some areas where a geographical name consists only of what generally has been defined as the "specific element". In this view, terminology is seen as a function of physical features, and represents nomenclature applied to features independent of identifying appellations. In certain respects, this view holds that terminology should be tied to lexical meanings. Discussions with Committee members were useful in elaborating opinions on this subject and helping to develop a greater degree of unity about the subject.

The second major concern was that the Committee might be overlapping the field of geographical names, an area already covered by United Nations programmes. Discussions on this topic were helpful in determining that

[1] *Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names*, vol. II, *Technical Papers* (United Nations publication, Sales No. E.74.I.4), pp. 107-108.

although geographical terminology, of necessity, was closely related to geographical names, there was no deliberate effort to be concerned with names *per se*. Further, the discussions helped illuminate the two-fold nature of geographical terminology—i.e., geographical terms could be studied as separate phenomena, yet they held no particular significance to the Committee unless they were studied principally as parts of geographical names. In both regards the Committee programme takes into account various United Nations documents of the 1972 Conference.

With these problems receiving further illumination through personal and written communications, the programmes of the Committee were approached with renewed interest. The first item on the agenda, a directory of agencies concerned with geographical names, is nearing completion. The purpose of the directory is to provide a reference for PAIGH members that indicates which nations are engaging in names work (and, presumably, in terminology work as well). The evident emphasis on names is immaterial, since in no case is there an independent agency that is concerned with terminology and since, on the other hand, all names agencies are concerned with terminology. In addition to providing a useful guide to names-standardizing agencies, the document also can indicate, for those nations having an interest, which countries are engaging in various kinds of work. The ultimate goals are to encourage greater uniformity throughout the Americas in processing terminology associated with names, and to promote a free exchange of information regarding terminology. In any case, the directory is seen as only a first step in organizing other phases of Committee work.

The document cited earlier, "Generic terms used in geographic names in the Americas south of the United States", is now being revised as a result of the view that it should include terms contributed by member nations. Although the original document reflected terms appearing on official maps produced by the countries covered, the members believed that additional terms should be added and that errors should be corrected. This change will cause some delay in original publication plans while individual members accomplish the research to obtain desired terms or to remedy errors.

The aim of the document is to show the variations of meanings given to single geographical (or generic) terms as employed in the countries covered. For example, the word *rio* can have such meanings as "anabranch", "channel", "distributary", "drainage ditch", "estuary", "intermittent stream", "lagoon", "marine channel", "stream", "stream channel", "stream mouth", "stream section" and "tidal creek". These interpretations are derived from actual cartographic evidence and are not necessarily tied to a dictionary meaning. By showing such variations, the document may aid map and chart users who puzzle over the application of terms to unfamiliar features. Finally, it may also encourage national cartographic agencies to develop standards for treating terminology.

The Committee contemplates additional tasks. Under Committee guidance each country could prepare a national glossary of terms to show the wide variety of meanings given to terms. Articles concerning research on the subject could be published in *Revista Cartográfica*, a periodical of the Geography Commission. The problem of native or unwritten languages needs to be probed; here preservation of terminology, both separately and as parts of names, is a goal.

The United States is supporting Committee programmes in Latin America through the offices of the Inter-American Geodetic Survey (IAGS). Already established to assist many countries in Central and South America in co-operative mapping programmes, IAGS has been of material aid in supplementing communications with Committee members and in clarifying Committee intentions.

INTERNATIONAL CARTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENT ENTITLED *CARTACTUAL*

Report presented by Hungary*

Résumé

Le Bureau national hongrois du territoire et des cartes publie deux fois par mois le bulletin de documentation cartographique *Cartactual* en allemand, en anglais, en français et en hongrois. Cette publication fait état de tous les changements de noms géographiques, de limites administratives et de frontières internationales, etc., ce uniquement d'après des informations de sources officielles. Toutes les informations apparaissent sur des cartes; la publication des données communiquées est gratuite. Pour obtenir la publication d'informations, il y a lieu d'envoyer les documents correspondants (cartes, statistiques, textes de traités, etc.) à l'adresse suivante:

Cartographic Department
MEM—National Office of Lands and Mapping
1860 BUDAPEST V, Hongrie

Des spécimens de *Cartactual* peuvent être obtenus à la même adresse.

Resumen

La Oficina Nacional Húngara de Geografía y Cartografía edita la documentación cartográfica quincenal *Cartactual* en alemán, francés, húngaro e inglés. La publicación se refiere a todos los cambios de nombres geográficos, las fronteras administrativas e internacionales, etc. solamente a base de información procedente de fuentes oficiales. Se da toda información sobre mapas; la publicación de los datos presentados es gratuita. Se deben enviar ejemplares de la información pertinente

* The original text of this paper appeared as document E/CONF.69/L.128.

(mapas, estadísticas, textos de tratados, etc.) a la siguiente dirección:

Cartographic Department
MEM—National Office of Lands and Mapping
1860 Budapest V, Hungría

De la misma dirección se pueden obtener ejemplares de *Cartactual.*

*

* *

The Hungarian National Office of Lands and Mapping edits the bi-monthly cartographic document entitled *Cartactual* in English, French, German and Hungarian. The publication is concerned with all changes of geographical names, administrative and international boundaries etc., only information from official sources. All information is given on maps; publication of the data submitted is free of charge. Copies of the relevant information (maps, statistics, treaty texts etc.) are to be sent to the following address:

Cartographic department
MÉM—National Office of Lands and Mapping
1860 BUDAPEST V, Hungary

Sample copies of *Cartactual* can be obtained from the same address.

Annex – Annexe – Anexo

AGENDA

1. Opening of the Conference.
2. Adoption of the rules of procedure.
3. Election of officers.
4. Report on credentials.
5. Adoption of the agenda.
6. Organization of work.
7. Reports by divisions and Governments on the situation in their regions and countries and on the progress made in the standardization of geographical names since the Second United Nations Conference on the Standardization of Geographical Names.
8. National standardization:
   (*a*) Field collection of names;
   (*b*) Office treatment of names;
   (*c*) Treatment of names in multilingual areas;
   (*d*) Administrative structure of national names authorities.
9. Training courses:
   (*a*) Consideration of courses already held;
   (*b*) Programmes of future courses;
   (*c*) Prospective developments.
10. Gazetteers:
    (*a*) National gazetteers;
    (*b*) United Nations series of gazetteers;
    (*c*) Concise world gazetteer;
    (*d*) Other publications.
11. Automated data processing (ADP):
    (*a*) Coding and abbreviation;
    (*b*) Writing.
12. Terminology.
13. Exonyms:
    (*a*) Categories and degree of use of exonyms;
    (*b*) Determination of principles to be followed in the reduction of exonyms.
14. Policies, procedures and co-operative arrangements for the naming of features beyond a single sovereignty:
    (*a*) Features common to two or more nations;
    (*b*) Maritime features;
    (*c*) Undersea features;
    (*d*) Extraterrestrial features.
15. Writing systems:
    (*a*) Conversion of names from one writing system into another:
       (i) Romanization;
       (ii) Conversion into non-Roman writing systems;
    (*b*) Writing of names from unwritten languages.
16. International co-operation:
    (*a*) United Nations Group of Experts on Geographical Names;
    (*b*) Exchange of information:
       (i) Reliability statement;
       (ii) Aids to pronunciation of names nationally standardized in non-phonetic writing;
       (iii) Scope and development of procedures in exchange of information;
    (*c*) Divisional and interdivisional meetings and programmes;
    (*d*) Technical assistance;
    (*e*) Co-operation with international organizations;
    (*f*) Co-operation with public information media.
17. Report of the Conference.

ORDRE DU JOUR

1. Ouverture de la Conférence.
2. Adoption du règlement intérieur.
3. Election du Bureau.
4. Rapport de la Commission de vérification des pouvoirs.
5. Adoption de l'ordre du jour.
6. Organisation des travaux.
7. Rapports des divisions et des gouvernements sùr la situation dans leurs régions et leurs pays et sur les progrès accomplis quant à la normalisation des noms géographiques depuis la deuxième Conférence des Nations Unies sur la normalisation des noms géographiques.
8. Normalisation nationale:
   a) Recherche sur le terrain des données relatives aux noms géographiques;
   b) Traitement des noms géographiques dans les services compétents;
   c) Traitement des noms dans les régions multilingues;
   d) Structure administrative des organismes nationaux s'occupant des noms géographiques.
9. Stages de formation:
   a) Examen des stages ayant déjà eu lieu;
   b) Programme des stages à venir;
   c) Perspectives.
10. Nomenclatures:
    a) Nomenclatures nationales;
    b) Séries de nomenclatures des Nations Unies;
    c) Nomenclature mondiale sommaire;
    d) Autres publications.
11. Traitement automatique des données:
    a) Codification et abréviations;
    b) Graphie.
12. Terminologie.
13. Exonymes:
    a) Catégories d'exonymes et leur degré d'utilisation;
    b) Détermination des principes à observer pour réduire le nombre d'exonymes.
14. Politiques, méthodes et coopération relatives à la nomenclature des détails topographiques échappant à une souveraineté unique:
    a) Détails communs à deux pays au moins;
    b) Détails marins;
    c) Détails sous-marins;
    d) Détails extra-terrestres.
15. Systèmes d'écritures:
    a) Transposition des noms d'un système d'écriture dans un autre:
       i) Romanisation;
       ii) Translittération dans un système d'écriture non romain;
    b) Graphie des noms empruntés à des langues non écrites.

16. Coopération internationale :
    a) Groupe d'experts des Nations Unies pour les noms géographiques;
    b) Echange de renseignements :
        i) Crédibilité;
        ii) Aides pour la prononciation de noms normalisés à l'échelon national dans une graphie non phonétique;
        iii) Portée et évolution des méthodes d'échange de renseignements;
    c) Réunions et programmes divisionnels et interdivisionnels;
    d) Assistance technique;
    e) Coopération avec les organisations internationales;
    f) Coopération avec les organes d'information.
17. Rapport sur la Conférence.

PROGRAMA

1. Apertura de la Conferencia.
2. Aprobación del reglamento.
3. Elección de la Mesa.
4. Informe sobre la verificación de poderes.
5. Aprobación del programa.
6. Organización de los trabajos.
7. Informes de las divisiones y los gobiernos sobre la situación existente en sus regiones y países y sobre los progresos realizados en materia de normalización de nombres geográficos desde la Segunda Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas para Normalizar los Nombres Geográficos.
8. Normalización nacional:
    a) Recopilación de nombres sobre el terreno;
    b) Tratamiento de nombres en oficinas;
    c) Tratamiento de nombres en zonas multilingües;
    d) Estructura administrativa de los organismos nacionales encargados de la nomenclatura geográfica.
9. Cursos de capacitación:
    a) Examen de los cursos ya realizados;
    b) Programas de cursos futuros;
    c) Acontecimientos previstos.
10. Nomenclátores:
    a) Nomenclátores nacionales;
    b) Serie de nomenclátores de las Naciones Unidas;
    c) Nomenclátor mundial conciso;
    d) Otras publicaciones.
11. Elaboración automática de datos:
    a) Codificación y abreviación;
    b) Escritura.
12. Terminología.
13. Exónimos:
    a) Categorías y grado de utilización de los exónimos;
    b) Determinación de los principios que han de seguirse en la reducción de los exónimos;
14. Políticas, procedimientos y acuerdos cooperativos para la designación de accidentes geográficos que corresponden a la soberanía de más de un Estado:
    a) Accidentes comunes a dos o más naciones;
    b) Accidentes marítimos;
    c) Accidentes submarinos;
    d) Accidentes extraterrestres.
15. Sistemas de escritura:
    a) Conversión de nombres de un sistema de escritura a otro:
        i) Romanización
        ii) Conversión a sistemas de escritura no románicos;
    b) Escritura de nombres usados en idiomas ágrafos.
16. Cooperación internacional:
    a) Grupo de Expertos en nombres geográficos de las Naciones Unidas;
    b) Intercambio de información:
        i) Declaración de confiabilidad;
        ii) Ayudas para la pronunciación de nombres normalizados nacionalmente en escritura no fonética;
        iii) Alcance y desarrollo de los procedimientos para el intercambio de información;
    c) Reuniones y programas divisionales e interdivisionales;
    d) Asistencia técnica;
    e) Cooperación con organizaciones internacionales;
    f) Cooperación con los medios de información pública.
17. Informe de la Conferencia.

كيفية الحصول على منشورات الامم المتحدة

يمكن الحصول على منشورات الامم المتحدة من المكتبات ودور التوزيع في جميع انحاء العالم . استعلم عنها من المكتبة التي تتعامل معها أو اكتب الى : الامم المتحدة ،قسم البيع في نيويورك او في جنيف .

如何购取联合国出版物

联合国出版物在全世界各地的书店和经售处均有发售。请向书店询问或写信到纽约或日内瓦的联合国销售组。

HOW TO OBTAIN UNITED NATIONS PUBLICATIONS

United Nations publications may be obtained from bookstores and distributors throughout the world. Consult your bookstore or write to: United Nations, Sales Section, New York or Geneva.

COMMENT SE PROCURER LES PUBLICATIONS DES NATIONS UNIES

Les publications des Nations Unies sont en vente dans les librairies et les agences dépositaires du monde entier. Informez-vous auprès de votre libraire ou adressez-vous à : Nations Unies, Section des ventes, New York ou Genève.

КАК ПОЛУЧИТЬ ИЗДАНИЯ ОРГАНИЗАЦИИ ОБЪЕДИНЕННЫХ НАЦИЙ

Издания Организации Объединенных Наций можно купить в книжных магазинах и агентствах во всех районах мира. Наводите справки об изданиях в вашем книжном магазине или пишите по адресу: Организация Объединенных Наций, Секция по продаже изданий, Нью-Йорк или Женева.

COMO CONSEGUIR PUBLICACIONES DE LAS NACIONES UNIDAS

Las publicaciones de las Naciones Unidas están en venta en librerías y casas distribuidoras en todas partes del mundo. Consulte a su librero o diríjase a: Naciones Unidas, Sección de Ventas, Nueva York o Ginebra.

Litho in United Nations, New York
79-35982—November 1981—2,900

Price: $U.S. 29.00

United Nations publication
Sales No. E/F/S.81.I.7